

# PROJECT MANUAL

VOLUME 1 OF 1: DIVISIONS 00 – 33

## Eastchester Union Free School District



### 2022 CAPITAL BOND PROJECT PHASE 2

MEMASI Project # 102-2202

Waverly School

SED# 66-03-01-03-0-002-011

Greenvale Elementary School

SED# 66-03-01-03-0-006-015

Anne Hutchinson Elementary School

SED# 66-03-01-03-0-001-022

Eastchester Middle / High School

SED# 66-03-01-03-0-003-030

**Issued for Bid: January 3, 2023**

M E M A S I

SECTION 000110 - TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 00 - PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

SECTION

000101	Project Title Page
000110	Table of Contents
000115	Drawing Index
001113	Advertisement for Bids
002113	Instructions to Bidders
002513	Prebid Site Visit
002600	Procurement Substitution Procedures
004116	Bid Form(s)
004313	Bid Security Forms
004324	Procurement Substitution Request Form
004503	Insurance Certification Form
004519	Non-Collusion Affidavit
004520	Iran Divestment Act Affidavit
004521	Inability to Comply with Iran Divestment Act Affidavit
004522	Sexual Harassment Prevention Certification Form
004543	Corporate Resolutions
006000	Project Forms
007343	Wage Rates
	AIA A132-2019 Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor
	AIA A132-2019 Exhibit A Insurance and Bonds
	AIA A232-2019 General Conditions of the Contract for Construction
	AIA A305-1986 Contractor's Qualification Statement
	AIA A310-2010 Bid Bond
	AIA A312-2010 Payment Bond
	AIA A312-2010 Performance Bond
	AIA A701-2018 Instructions to Bidders
	AIA C106-2013 Digital Data Licensing Agreement

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

SECTION

011000	Summary of Work
011100	Milestone Schedule
011500	Special Project Requirements
012100	Allowances
012200	Unit Prices
012300	Alternates
012500	Substitution Procedures
012501	Substitution Request Form
012600	Contract Modification Procedures
012900	Payment Procedures
013100	Project Management and Coordination
013119	Project Meetings
013150	Covid-19 Contractor Compliance
013216	Construction Progress Schedule
013300	Submittal Procedures
013529	Health and Safety Plan
014000	Quality Requirements
014100	Permits and Compliance
014326	Testing Laboratory Services



015000	Temporary Facilities and Controls
016000	Product Requirements
017329	Cutting and Patching
017400	Cleaning Up
017700	Closeout Procedures
017701	Checklist for Project Closeout
017719	Project Record Documents
017823	Operation and Maintenance Requirements
	AIA G703-1992 Continuation Sheet
	AIA G706-1994 Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims
	AIA G706A-1994 Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens
	AIA G707-1994 Consent of Surety to Final Payment
	AIA G710-2017 Architect's Supplemental Instructions
	AIA G716-2004 Request for Information (RFI)
	AIA G731-2019 Change Order
	AIA G732-2019 Application and Certificate for Payment
	AIA G733-2019 Construction Change Directive
	AIA G734-2019 Certificate of Substantial Completion
	Submittal Cover Sheet

DIVISION 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS

SECTION

020810	Asbestos Abatement
024113	Selective Site Demolition
024119	Selective Demolition and Alteration Work

DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE

SECTION

033000	Cast-in-Place Concrete
034500	Architectural Precast Concrete
035416	Cement Leveling Compound

DIVISION 04 - MASONRY

SECTION

040120	Maintenance of Brick Masonry
042113	Unit Masonry

DIVISION 05 - METALS

SECTION

051200	Structural Steel
052100	Steel Joists and Joist Girders
053100	Steel Decking
054000	Cold-Formed Metal Framing
055000	Miscellaneous Metals
055813	Column Covers

DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS AND COMPOSITES

SECTION

062000	Carpentry
064023	Architectural Woodwork

DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

SECTION

071326	Sheet Membrane Waterproofing
071700	Bentonite Waterproofing
072100	Thermal Insulation
072700	Vapor Permeable Air Barrier Liquid Membrane
074113	Metal Roof Panels
074213.23	Metal Composite Material Wall Panel
075216	SBS Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing
076200	Sheet Metal Flashing
077100	Roof Specialties and Accessories
078413	Firestops and Smoke Seals
079200	Joint Sealers
079500	Expansion Control

DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS

SECTION

081113	Steel Doors and Frames
081416	Wood Doors
081743	FRP/Aluminum Hybrid Doors
083113	Access Doors
083324	Roll Up Fire Counter Shutters
083473	Sound Control Door Assemblies
084113	Aluminum Entrances and Storefronts
084900	Fire Rated Glass and Framing Systems
085113	Aluminum Windows
085619	Sliding and Fixed Transoms Windows
087100	Door Hardware
088000	Glass and Glazing
089000	Louvers
089516	Wall Vents

DIVISION 09 - FINISHES

SECTION

092116	Gypsum Board Assemblies
093013	Ceramic Tiling
095113	Acoustical Panel Ceilings
096513	Resilient Base and Accessories
096519	Resilient Tile Flooring
099000	Painting and Finishing

DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES

SECTION

101419	Dimensional Letters
101453	Traffic Signage
102123	Cubicle Curtains and Tracks
102813	Toilet Accessories
104416	Fire Extinguishers and Cabinets
107500	Flagpoles

DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS

SECTION

122413	Window Shades
124823	Entrance Floor Grids

DIVISION 13 - SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

SECTION

133415	Tubular Frame Bleachers
--------	-------------------------

DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING

SECTION

220500	Common Work Results for Plumbing
220517	Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping
220518	Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping
220523	General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping
220529	Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
220553	Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
220719	Plumbing Piping Insulation
221116	Domestic Water Piping
221119	Domestic Water Piping Specialties
221316	Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping
221319	Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties
224000	Plumbing Fixture

DIVISION 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

SECTION

230100	Common HVAC Requirements
230102	Common HVAC Demolition Requirements
230513	Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment
230515	Magnetic Motor Controllers
230517	Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping
230518	Escutcheons for HVAC Piping
230529	Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment
230548	Vibration Controls for HVAC
230553	Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment
230593	Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC
230713	Duct Insulation
230719	HVAC Piping Insulation

230800	Commissioning of HVAC
230923	Instrumentation and Control for HVAC
230993	Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls
232113	Hydronic Piping
232116	Hydronic Piping Specialties
232213	Steam and Condensate Heating Piping
232216	Steam and Condensate Heating Piping Specialties
233113	Metal Ducts
233300	Air Duct Accessories
233423	HVAC Fans
233713	Diffusers Registers and Grilles
238239	Fan Coil Units

DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

SECTION

260500	General Requirements for Electrical Work
260519	Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables
260526	Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
260529	Hangars and Supports for Electrical Systems
260532	Junction Boxes for Electrical Systems
260533	Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems
260543	Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems
260544	Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling
260553	Identification for Electrical Systems
260943	Network Lighting Controls
260950	Empty Conduit Systems
262416	Panelboards
262726	Wiring Devices
262816	Enclosed Switches & Circuit Breakers
265000	Temporary Light and Power
265119	LED Interior Lighting
265213	Emergency and Exit Lighting
265600	Exterior Lighting

DIVISION 27 - COMMUNICATIONS

SECTION

270000	Communications General
270526	Grounding and Bonding
270528	Pathways for Communication Systems
270553	Identification for Telecommunication System
270813	Testing Copper Cables
275123	Integrated Critical Communication System

DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

SECTION

280000	Security Specification
283100	Fire Detection and Alarm

DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK

SECTION

311000	Site Preparation
312000	Earth Moving
312500	Erosion and Sediment Control

DIVISION 32 - SITE IMPROVEMENTS

SECTION

321216	Asphalt Paving
321313	Concrete Paving
321400	Unit Paving
321613	Concrete Curbs
321723	Pavement Markings
323113	Chain Link Fences and Gates
329200	Turf and Grasses

END OF SECTION 000110

SECTION 000115 - DRAWING INDEX

PART 1 - GENERAL

- A. DRAWING PROJECT TITLE: 2022 CAPITAL BOND PROJECT, PHASE 2
- B. ISSUED FOR BID: January 3, 2023
- C. This Drawing Index completes the Project Documents. Bidder shall verify receipt of all within the separately bound drawings:

**WAVERLY SCHOOL SED# 66-03-01-03-0-002-011**

GENERAL DRAWINGS

- WA G001 GENERAL INFORMATION
- WA LS001 LIFE SAFETY PLAN – GROUND & FIRST FLOOR

ASBESTOS ABATEMENT DRAWINGS

- H-001.00 GENERAL NOTES
- H-002.00 FIRST FLOOR PLAN
- H-003.00 SECOND FLOOR PLAN

ARCHITECTURAL DEMOLITION DRAWINGS

- WA AD101 DEMOLITION PLAN – FIRST AND SECOND FLOOR

ARCHITECTURAL DRAWINGS

- WA A101 OVERALL PLAN - FIRST AND SECOND FLOOR
- WA A401 MAIN ENTRY
- WA A402 ELEVATIONS - MAIN ENTRY
- WA A501 BUILDING SECTIONS AND DETAILS
- WA A502 DETAILS
- WA A701 PARTITION TYPES
- WA A901 DOOR SCHEDULE & ELEVATIONS
- WA A902 DOOR DETAILS
- WA A911 STOREFRONT ELEVATIONS
- WA AF001 FIRST FLOOR FINISH PLAN AND MATERIAL SCHEDULE

STRUCTURAL DRAWINGS

- WA S001 GENERAL NOTES
- WA FO100 FOUNDATION PLAN
- WA S100 SECOND FLOOR FRAMING
- WA S500 COLD FORMED STEEL DETAILS I
- WA S501 COLD FORMED STEEL DETAILS II

MECHANICAL DRAWINGS

WA M001	COVER SHEET
WA M101	FIRST FLOOR VESTIBULE PARTIAL PLANS
WA M201	SCHEDULES
WA M301	DETAILS

PLUMBING DRAWINGS

WA P001	COVER SHEET
WA P101	FIRST FLOOR VESTIBULE PARTIAL PLANS
WA P201	DETAILS

ELECTRICAL DRAWINGS

WA E001	COVER SHEET
WA E002	ELECTRICAL GENERAL NOTES
WA E101	FIRST FLOOR VESTIBULE ELECTRICAL PARTIAL PLANS
WA E201	SITE LIGHTING PLAN
WA E301	SECURITY EQUIPMENT POWER PLAN
WA E601	ELECTRICAL PANEL SCHEDULES

SECURITY DRAWINGS

WA TY001	LEGEND AND ABBREVIATIONS
WA TYD101	FIRST AND SECOND FLOOR DEMO PLANS
WA TY101	BASEMENT AND FIRST FLOOR PLANS
WA TY102	SECOND FLOOR PLAN
WA TY201	ENLARGED PLANS
WA TY301	RISER DIAGRAMS
WATY401	DETAILS

**GREENVALE ELEMENTARY SCHOOL SED# 66-03-01-03-0-006-015**

GENERAL DRAWINGS

GR G001	GENERAL INFORMATION
GR LS001	LIFE SAFETY PLAN – FIRST AND SECOND FLOOR
GR LS002	LIFE SAFETY PLAN – THIRD AND FOURTH

ASBESTOS ABATEMENT DRAWINGS

H-001.00	ASBESTOS ABATEMENT GENERAL NOTES
H-002.00	ASBESTOS ABATEMENT THIRD FLOOR PLAN

ARCHITECTURAL DEMOLITION DRAWINGS

GR AD101            DEMOLITION PLAN – FIRST AND SECOND FLOOR  
GR AD102            DEMOLITION PLAN – THIRD AND FOURTH FLOOR

ARCHITECTURAL DRAWINGS

GR A101            OVERALL PLAN - FIRST AND SECOND FLOOR  
GR A102            OVERALL PLAN – THIRD AND FOURTH FLOOR  
GR A401            MAIN ENTRY  
GR A402            MAIN ENTRY II  
GR A501            DETAILS  
GR A502            MAIN ENTRY STAIR DETAIL  
GR A701            PARTITION TYPES  
GR A901            DOOR SCHEDULE & ELEVATIONS  
GR A902            DOOR DETAILS  
GR AF001           FINISHES

STRUCTURAL DRAWINGS

GR S001            GENERAL NOTES  
GR FO100           FOUNDATION PLAN  
GR S100            THIRD FLOOR FRAMING

MECHANICAL DRAWINGS

GR M001            COVER SHEET  
GR M101            THIRD FLOOR VESTIBULE PARTIAL PLANS  
GR M201            SCHEDULES  
GR M301            DETAILS

ELECTRICAL DRAWINGS

GR E001            COVER SHEET  
GR E002            ELECTRICAL GENERAL NOTES  
GR E101            THIRD FLOOR VESTIBULE ELECTRICAL PARTIAL PLANS  
GR E201            SITE LIGHTING PLAN  
GR E301            SECURITY EQUIPMENT POWER PLANS  
GR E601            ELECTRICAL PANEL SCHEDULES

PLUMBING DRAWINGS

GR P001            COVER SHEET  
GR P103            THIRD FLOOR VESTIBULE PARTIAL PLANS  
GR P201            DETAILS



SECURITY DRAWINGS

GR TY001	LEGEND AND ABBREVIATIONS
GR TY101	FIRST AND SECOND FLOOR PLANS
GR TY102	THIRD AND FOURTH FLOOR PLANS
GR TY201	ENLARGED PLANS
GR TY301	RISER DIAGRAMS
GR TY401	DETAILS

**ANNE HUTCHINSON ELEMENTARY SCHOOL SED# 66-03-01-03-0-001-022**

GENERAL DRAWINGS

AH G001	GENERAL INFORMATION
AH LS001	LIFE SAFETY PLAN – GROUND AND FIRST FLOOR

ASBESTOS ABATEMENT DRAWINGS

H-001.00	GENERAL NOTES
H-002.00	GROUND FLOOR PLAN
H-003.00	FIRST FLOOR PLAN

ARCHITECTURAL DEMOLITION DRAWINGS

AH AD101	DEMOLITION PLAN – GROUND FLOOR
AH AD102	DEMOLITION PLAN – FIRST FLOOR

ARCHITECTURAL DRAWINGS

AH A101	OVERALL PLAN – GROUND FLOOR
AH A102	OVERALL PLAN – FIRST FLOOR
AH A401	MAIN ENTRY
AH A402	INTERIOR ELEVATIONS
AH A701	PARTITION TYPES AND DETAILS
AH A901	DOOR SCHEDULE & ELEVATIONS
AH A902	DOOR AND WINDOW DETAILS

MECHANICAL DRAWINGS

AH M001	COVER SHEET
AH M101	FIRST FLOOR VESTIBULE PARTIAL PLANS
AH M201	SCHEDULES
AH M301	DETAILS

ELECTRICAL DRAWINGS

AH E001	COVER SHEET
AH E002	ELECTRICAL GENERAL NOTES
AH E101	FIRST FLOOR VESTIBULE ELECTRICAL PARTIAL PLANS
AH E201	SITE LIGHTING PLAN
AH E301	GROUND FLOOR SECURITY DEVICE POWER PLAN
AH E302	FIRST FLOOR SECURITY DEVICE POWER PLAN
AH E601	ELECTRICAL PANEL SCHEDULES

SECURITY DRAWINGS

AH TY001	LEGEND AND ABBREVIATIONS
AH TY101	GROUND FLOOR PLAN
AH TY102	FIRST FLOOR PLAN
AH TY201	ENLARGED PLANS
AH TY301	RISER DIAGRAMS
AH TY401	DETAILS

**EASTCHESTER MIDDLE / HIGH SCHOOL SED# 66-03-01-03-0-003-030**

GENERAL DRAWINGS

G001	GENERAL INFORMATION
LS001	LIFE SAFETY OVERALL PLANS AND NOTES
LS002	LIFE SAFETY PLAN - BASEMENT
LS003	LIFE SAFETY PLAN - FIRST FLOOR
LS004	LIFE SAFETY PLAN - SECOND FLOOR
LS005	LIFE SAFETY PLAN - THIRD FLOOR

SITWORK DRAWINGS

L001	SITE CODE COMPLIANCE PLAN
L100	SITE DEMOLITION PLAN
L200	SITE LAYOUT PLAN
L300	SITE GRADING PLAN
L400	SITE DETAILS
L401	BLEACHER DETAILS

ASBESTOS ABATEMENT DRAWINGS

H-001.00	GENERAL NOTES
H-002.00	ACM TABLES
H-003.00	MIDDLE SCHOOL FIRST FLOOR PLAN

H-004.00	MIDDLE SCHOOL SECOND FLOOR PLAN
H-005.00	MIDDLE SCHOOL BUILDING ELEVATION
H-006.00	HIGH SCHOOL BASEMENT FLOOR PLAN
H-007.00	HIGH SCHOOL FIRST FLOOR PLAN
H-008.00	HIGH SCHOOL SECOND FLOOR PLAN
H-009.00	HIGH SCHOOL THIRD FLOOR PLAN
H-010.00	HIGH SCHOOL EXTERIOR ELEVATIONS
H-011.00	HIGH SCHOOL EXTERIOR ELEVATIONS
H-012.00	HIGH SCHOOL EXTERIOR ELEVATIONS
H-013.00	HIGH SCHOOL COURTYARD ELEVATIONS

ARCHITECTURAL DEMOLITION DRAWINGS

HS AD100	DEMOLITION PLAN - BASEMENT
MS AD101	DEMOLITION PLAN - FIRST FLOOR
HS AD101	DEMOLITION PLAN - FIRST FLOOR
MS AD102	DEMOLITION PLAN - SECOND FLOOR
HS AD102	DEMOLITION PLAN - SECOND FLOOR
HS AD103	DEMOLITION PLAN - THIRD FLOOR
HS AD201	DEMOLITION EXTERIOR ELEVATIONS
HS AD202	DEMOLITION EXTERIOR ELEVATIONS
HS AD401	ENLARGED DEMOLITION PLAN - MAIN ENTRY

ARCHITECTURAL DRAWINGS

HS A100	OVERALL PLAN - BASEMENT
MS A101	OVERALL PLAN - FIRST FLOOR
HS A101	OVERALL PLAN - FIRST FLOOR
MS A102	OVERALL PLAN - SECOND FLOOR
HS A102	OVERALL PLAN - SECOND FLOOR
HS A103	OVERALL PLAN - THIRD FLOOR
MS A201	EXTERIOR ELEVATIONS
HS A201	EXTERIOR ELEVATIONS
HS A202	EXTERIOR ELEVATIONS
MS A202	EXTERIOR ELEVATIONS
HS A203	EXTERIOR ELEVATIONS
HS A204	EXTERIOR ELEVATIONS
HS A401	MAIN ENTRY
HS A402	ENLARGED PLANS AND SECTIONS - SECURE VESTIBULE
HS A501	DETAILS

HS A502	MASONRY DETAILS
HS A701	PARTITION TYPES
MS A801	REFLECTED CEILING PLAN - FIRST FLOOR
HS A801	REFLECTED CEILING PLAN
MS A802	REFLECTED CEILING PLAN- SECOND FLOOR
HS A802	REFLECTED CEILING PLAN- FIRST FLOOR PLAN
MS A901	DOOR SCHEDULE
HS A901	DOOR SCHEDULE AND ELEVATIONS
HS A902	DOOR DETAILS
HS A903	DOOR DETAILS
HS A911	WINDOW SCHEDULE AND DETAILS
AF101-A	FINISH PLAN AND MATERIAL SCHEDULE

STRUCTURAL DRAWINGS

HS S001	SITE CODE COMPLIANCE PLAN
HS FO100	FOUNDATION PLAN
HS S100	SECOND FLOOR FRAMING
HS S500	TYPICAL STEEL DETAILS

MECHANICAL DRAWINGS

HS M001	COVER SHEET
HS M101	FIRST FLOOR VESTIBULE PART PLAN
HS M201	SCHEDULES
HS M301	DETAILS

ELECTRICAL DRAWINGS

MHS E001	COVER SHEET
MHS E002	ELECTRICAL GENERAL NOTES
MHS ED101	FIRST FLOOR VESTIBULE POWER DEMOLITION PART PLAN
MHS E101	FIRST FLOOR VESTIBULE POWER PART PLAN
MHS E201	FIRST FLOOR VESTIBULE LIGHTING PART PLAN
MHS E202	SITE LIGHTING PLAN
MHS E301	CELLAR SECURITY EQUIPMENT POWER PLAN
MHS E302A	FIRST FLOOR SECURITY EQUIPMENT POWER PLAN (HIGH SCHOOL)
MHS E302B	FIRST FLOOR SECURITY EQUIPMENT POWER PLAN (MIDDLE SCHOOL)
MHS 303A	2 <sup>ND</sup> FLOOR SECURITY EQUIPMENT POWER PLAN (HIGH SCHOOL)
MHS 303B	2 <sup>ND</sup> FLOOR SECURITY EQUIPMENT POWER PLAN (MIDDLE SCHOOL)
MHS 304	3 <sup>RD</sup> FLOOR SECURITY EQUIPMENT POWER PLAN

MHS E601	ELECTRICAL PANEL SCHEDULES SHEET I OF II
MHS E602	ELECTRICAL PANEL SCHEUDLES SHEET II OF II

PLUMBING DRAWINGS

HS P001	COVER SHEET
HS PD101	FIRST FLOOR VESTIBULE DEMOLITION PART PLAN
HS P101	FIRST FLOOR VESTIBULE PART PLAN
HS P201	DETAILS

SECURITY DRAWINGS

HS TY001	LEGEND AND ABBREVIATIONS
HS TY100	BASEMENT PLAN
HS TY101	FIRST FLOOR PLAN
HS TY102	SECOND FLOOR PLAN
HS TY103	THIRD FLOOR PLAN
HS TY201	ENLARGED PLANS
HS TY301	DETAILS
HS TY401	DETAILS
MS TY001	LEGEND AND ABBREVIATIONS
MS TY100	BASEMENT PLAN
MS TY101	FIRST FLOOR PLAN
MS TY102	SECOND FLOOR PLAN
MS TY301	DETAILS

END OF SECTION 000115

## ADVERTISEMENT FOR BIDS

### EASTCHESTER UNION FREE SCHOOL DISTRICT

PUBLIC NOTICE is hereby given that sealed lump sum bids shall be received by the Board of Education, Eastchester Union Free School District, 580 White Plains Road, Eastchester, NY 10709 for the following project according to the Instructions to Bidders:

#### 2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2

**Contract No. 1 – General Construction (GC)**  
**Contract No. 2 – Mechanical Construction (MC)**  
**Contract No. 3 – Electrical Construction (EC)**  
**Contract No. 4 – Window Construction Work (WC)**

Refer to the Bid Documents for a detailed description of the scope of work of the above referenced contracts.

Bid proposals shall be received until 3:00 p.m. prevailing time on **Tuesday, February 7, 2023** by mail or in person, at the Eastchester Union Free School District, 580 White Plains Road, Eastchester, NY 10709, Attn: Lee Lew, Interim Assistant Superintendent for Business. The bids received will be publicly opened and read aloud on **Tuesday, February 7, 2023 at 3:00 p.m.** prevailing time in the Eastchester High School Library. Each bid must be accompanied by a bid bond, in the amount of not less than five percent (5%) of the bid, made payable to the Eastchester Union Free School District in the form and subject to the conditions stipulated in the Instructions to Bidders. The accepted low bidder will be required to furnish specified insurance as well as payment and performance bonds for the full contract sum. No bidder shall withdraw his bid within forty-five (45) days after the bid opening. The School District reserves the right to modify the time and date of bid submission in one or more Addendum. Regardless of whether any change is made by Addendum, in the event that the School District Office is closed due to unforeseen circumstances (e.g., inclement weather, emergency conditions, etc.) the day of the scheduled bid opening, the bid(s) will be received until and opened at the same time specified for the bid opening on the next business day that the School District Office is open.

Bidders shall submit one (1) original signed and sealed bid, and two (2) copies. All envelopes containing bids shall bear on the face of the sealed, opaque envelope the words **“Contract No. X – XX Construction” and “Bid - 2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2”**. Bidders assume full responsibility for having their bids deposited on time and at the place specified. Each bidder assumes the risk of any delay in the mail or delivery method selected as well as in handling of mail and/or delivered packages by employees of the District. Bids received after the time specified on the date specified will not be accepted and will be returned to the Bidder unopened. Fax and/or electronically transmitted bids will not be accepted.

Complete digital sets of the Bid Documents, including Drawings and Specifications, may be obtained online as a download on and after **Tuesday, January 3, 2023** at the following websites: [www.memasiprojects.com](http://www.memasiprojects.com) and [www.revplans.com](http://www.revplans.com) under “Public Projects”. Complete sets of the Bid Documents, including Drawings and Specifications, may be obtained from REVplans, 28 Church Street, Unit 7, Warwick, NY 10990 Tel: 1-877-272-0216, upon depositing the sum of one hundred dollars (\$100) for each combined set of documents. Checks or money orders shall be made payable to “Eastchester Union Free School District”. This deposit for the Bid Documents is refundable in accordance with the terms in the Instructions to Bidders to all submitting bids. Any bidder requiring documents to be shipped shall make arrangements with the printer and pay for all packaging and shipping costs.

All bid addenda will be transmitted to registered holders of the Bid Documents via email and will be available at [www.memasiprojects.com](http://www.memasiprojects.com) and [www.revplans.com](http://www.revplans.com). Holders of the Bid Documents who have paid for hard copies of the Bid Documents will need to determine if hard copies of the addenda are required for their use, and coordinate directly with the printer for hard copies of addenda to be issued. There will be no charge for registered holders of the Bid Documents to obtain hard copies of the bid addenda.

Please note REVplans ([www.revplans.com](http://www.revplans.com)) is the designated location and means for distributing and obtaining all bid package information. Only those Bid Documents obtained in this manner will enable a prospective bidder to be identified as an official holder of record of the Bid Documents. The Provider takes no responsibility for the completeness of Bid Documents obtained from other sources. Bid Documents obtained from other sources may not be accurate or may not contain addenda that may have been issued.

There will be a **Pre-bid meeting at 3:00 p.m. on Thursday, January 19, 2023** starting at the District Office located at 580 White Plains Road, Eastchester, NY 10709. The Pre-Bid site visits are to be scheduled in advance with Frank Roberts of ACCI, who can be contacted at (914) 755-0930.

All Pre-bid "**Requests for Information**" (RFI) or Clarification must be submitted no later than **3:00 p.m. on Tuesday, January 31, 2023** on AIA Document G716-2004 and sent to all three of the following individuals by email: (1) Piere Luigi Pancaldi, MEMASI: [piere.pancaldi@memasidesign.com](mailto:piere.pancaldi@memasidesign.com); (2) John Patrick Jackson, Arris Contracting Company: [jpjackson@arriscontracting.com](mailto:jpjackson@arriscontracting.com) and (3) Linda DiDonato Arris Contracting Company: [ldidonato@arriscontracting.com](mailto:ldidonato@arriscontracting.com).

The Board of Education of Eastchester Union Free School District **reserves the right to** waive any informality relating to a specific bid or in the bidding process; to waive what it deems to be technical defects, irregularities and omissions relating to a specific bid; to request additional information from any bidder; or to reject any or all bids and to advertise for new bids.

SECTION 002113 - INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

1.1 INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

- A. AIA Document A701, "Instructions to Bidders," is hereby incorporated into the Procurement and Contracting Requirements by reference.

- 1. A copy of AIA Document A701, "Instructions to Bidders," is bound in this Project Manual.

END OF SECTION 002113



SECTION 002513 – PREBID SITE VISIT

The following must be completed and submitted with each Bid.

The bidder \_\_\_\_\_ has visited the site during the bid  
bidder to insert name of company here

process for this project and is aware of the existing site and building conditions.

Date of Site Visit(s): \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signed by

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Write Name of Person signing this form

END OF SECTION 002513

## SECTION 002600 - PROCUREMENT SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

### 1.1 DEFINITIONS

- A. Procurement Substitution Requests: Requests for changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those indicated in the Procurement and Contracting Documents, submitted prior to receipt of bids.
- B. Substitution Requests: Requests for changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those indicated in the Contract Documents, submitted following Contract award. See Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for conditions under which Substitution requests will be considered following Contract award.

### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

### 1.3 PROCUREMENT SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Procurement Substitutions, General: By submitting a bid, the Bidder represents that its bid is based on materials and equipment described in the Procurement and Contracting Documents, including Addenda. Bidders are required to request approval of qualifying substitute materials and equipment when the Specifications Sections list materials and equipment by product or manufacturer name.
- B. Procurement Substitution Requests will be received and considered by Owner when the following conditions are satisfied, as determined by Architect; otherwise requests will be returned without action:
  - 1. Extensive revisions to the Contract Documents are not required.
  - 2. Proposed changes are in keeping with the general intent of the Contract Documents, including the level of quality of the Work represented by the requirements therein.
  - 3. The request is fully documented and properly submitted.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Procurement Substitution Request: Submit to Architect. Procurement Substitution Request must be made in writing by prime contract Bidder only in compliance with the following requirements:
  - 1. Requests for substitution of materials and equipment will be considered if received no later than seven (7) days prior to date of bid opening.
  - 2. Submittal Format: Submit three copies of each written Procurement Substitution Request Form in the Project Manual.
- B. Architect's Action:
  - 1. Architect may request additional information or documentation necessary for evaluation of the Procurement Substitution Request. Architect will notify all bidders of acceptance of the proposed substitute by means of an Addendum to the Procurement and Contracting Documents.
  - 2. The Architect reserves the right to reject a substitution request without explanation if the Architect feels the requested substitution does not meet the design intent of the Contract Documents.

- C. Architect's approval of a substitute during bidding does not relieve Contractor of the responsibility to submit required shop drawings and to comply with all other requirements of the Contract Documents.

END OF SECTION 002600

SECTION 004116 - BID FORM

**1.1 BID INFORMATION – Contract No. 3 – Electrical Construction (EC)**

- A. Bidder: \_\_\_\_\_.
- B. Contract No.: \_\_\_\_\_.
- C. Project Name: Eastchester Union Free School District – 2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2
- D. Owner: Eastchester Union Free School District
- E. Architect: MEMASI
- F. Architect Project Number: 102-2202
- G. Construction Manager: Arris Contracting Company, Inc.

**1.2 CERTIFICATIONS AND BASE BID**

- A. Base Bid Contract: The undersigned Bidder, having carefully examined the Procurement and Contracting Requirements, Conditions of the Contract, Drawings, Specifications, and all subsequent Addenda, as prepared by MEMASI (Architect) and Architect's consultants, having visited the site, and being familiar with all conditions and requirements of the Work, hereby agrees to furnish all material, labor, equipment and services, including all scheduled allowances, necessary to complete the construction of the above-named project, according to the requirements of the Procurement and Contracting Documents, for the stipulated sum of:

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
  
Dollars (\$\_\_\_\_\_).

**1.3 ALLOWANCES**

- A. The undersigned Bidder certifies that the Base Bid submission includes the allowances described in the Contract Documents and scheduled in Section 012100 "Allowances".
- B. **Contract No. 3 – Electrical Construction (EC)**
  - 1. Allowance EC-1: contingency allowance of \$45,000.00
  - 2. Allowance EC-2 through EC-6: The undersigned Contractor has included the Allowances (s) as specified in Section 012100 in their Base Bid.

**1.4 UNIT PRICES**

- A. The undersigned Bidder certifies that the Base Bid submission includes the unit prices described in the Contract Documents and scheduled in Section 012200 "Unit Prices".

B. **Contract No. 3 – Electrical Construction (EC)**

1. Unit Price EC No. 1: Access Control Devices  
Description: Access Control Devices supply, install & commission to be used as an **add or deduct** from base bid quantities  
  
\_\_\_\_\_ dollars (\$\_\_\_\_\_) each
2. Unit Price EC No. 2: PA Speaker  
Description: PA Speaker supply, install & commission to be used as an **add or deduct** from base bid quantities  
  
\_\_\_\_\_ dollars (\$\_\_\_\_\_) each
3. Unit Price EC No. 3: Security Camera  
Description: Security Camera supply, install & commission to be used as an **add or deduct** from base bid quantities  
  
\_\_\_\_\_ dollars (\$\_\_\_\_\_) each
4. Unit Price EC No. 4: ¾" EMT/ Cat 6 Security Cabling  
Description: ¾" EMT Raceway with Security Cabling supply, install & commission to be used as an **add or deduct** from base bid quantities  
  
\_\_\_\_\_ dollars (\$\_\_\_\_\_) per  
Linear Foot
5. Unit Price EC No. 5: 700 Wiremold / Cat 6 Security Cabling  
Description: 700 Wiremold with Security Cabling supply, install & commission to be used as an **add or deduct** from base bid quantities  
  
\_\_\_\_\_ dollars (\$\_\_\_\_\_) per Linear  
Foot

1.5 BID SECURITY

- A. The undersigned Bidder agrees to execute a contract for this Work in the Base Bid amount above. This bid is accompanied by a Bid Bond in the following amount, constituting five percent (5%) of the Base Bid amount above, drawn by a recognized surety authorized to conduct business in the State of New York and is made payable to Eastchester Union Free School District:  
  
1. \_\_\_\_\_  
  
Dollars (\$\_\_\_\_\_).
- B. In the event Owner does not offer Notice of Award within the time limits stated above, Owner will return to the undersigned the bid bond.
- C. In all locations sums shall be expressed in both words and figures. In case of discrepancy written word governs.

1.6 TIME OF COMPLETION

- A. The undersigned Bidder proposes and agrees hereby to commence the Work of the Contract Documents on a date specified in a written Notice to Proceed to be issued by Architect and shall fully complete the Work within the timeframe specified by the Owner and Construction Manager.

1.7 ACKNOWLEDGEMENT OF ADDENDA

- A. The undersigned Bidder acknowledges receipt of and use of the following Addenda in the preparation of this Bid:

1. Addendum No. 1, dated \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Addendum No. 2, dated \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Addendum No. 3, dated \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Addendum No. 4, dated \_\_\_\_\_.

1.8 INSURANCE CONFIRMATION

- A. The contractor verifies that they included all of the insurance requirements including the proper limits as required in Division 0 and AIA G232

1.9 BID SUPPLEMENTS

- A. The following supplements are a part of this Bid Form and are attached hereto.

1. Bid Bond Form (AIA Document A310-2010).

1.10 CONTRACTOR'S LICENSE

- A. The undersigned further states that it is a duly licensed contractor for the type of work proposed in Westchester County, New York, and that all fees, permits, etc., pursuant to submitting this proposal have been paid in full.

1.11 SUBMISSION OF BID

- A. Respectfully submitted this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 2022.
- B. Submitted By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Name of bidding company).
- C. Authorized Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ (Handwritten signature).
- D. Signed By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Type or print name).
- E. Title: \_\_\_\_\_ (Owner/Partner/President/Vice President).
- F. Witness By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Handwritten signature).
- G. Attest: \_\_\_\_\_ (Handwritten signature).
- H. By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Type or print name).
- I. Title: \_\_\_\_\_ (Corporate Secretary or Assistant Secretary).
- J. Street Address: \_\_\_\_\_.
- K. City, State, Zip: \_\_\_\_\_.
- L. Phone: \_\_\_\_\_.
- M. License No.: \_\_\_\_\_.
- N. Federal ID No.: \_\_\_\_\_ (Affix Corporate Seal Here).

END OF SECTION 004116

SECTION 004116 - BID FORM

1.1 BID INFORMATION – **Contract No. 1 – General Construction (GC)**

- A. Bidder: \_\_\_\_\_.
- B. Contract No.: \_\_\_\_\_.
- C. Project Name: Eastchester Union Free School District – 2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2
- D. Owner: Eastchester Union Free School District
- E. Architect: MEMASI
- F. Architect Project Number: 102-2202
- G. Construction Manager: Arris Contracting Company, Inc.

1.2 CERTIFICATIONS AND BASE BID

- A. Base Bid Contract: The undersigned Bidder, having carefully examined the Procurement and Contracting Requirements, Conditions of the Contract, Drawings, Specifications, and all subsequent Addenda, as prepared by MEMASI (Architect) and Architect's consultants, having visited the site, and being familiar with all conditions and requirements of the Work, hereby agrees to furnish all material, labor, equipment and services, including all scheduled allowances, necessary to complete the construction of the above-named project, according to the requirements of the Procurement and Contracting Documents, for the stipulated sum of:

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
  
Dollars (\$ \_\_\_\_\_).

1.3 ALLOWANCES

- A. The undersigned Bidder certifies that the Base Bid submission includes the allowances described in the Contract Documents and scheduled in Section 012100 "Allowances".

B. **Contract No. 1 – General Construction (GC)**

- 1. Allowance GC-1: contingency allowance of \$50,000.00
- 2. Allowance GC-2 through GC-8: The undersigned Contractor has included the Allowances (s) as specified in Section 01 2100 in their Base Bid.

1.4 UNIT PRICES

- A. The undersigned Bidder certifies that the Base Bid submission includes the unit prices described in the Contract Documents and scheduled in Section 012200 "Unit Prices".



B. **Contract No. 1 – General Construction (GC)**

1. Unit Price GC No. 1: Abatement of ACM Floor Tile & Mastic (VAT)  
Description: abatement of ACM Floor Tile & mastic (VAT) to be used as an **add or deduct** from base bid quantities ( tented areas)  
  
\_\_\_\_\_ dollars (\$) \_\_\_\_\_) per  
square foot (SF) of VAT
2. Unit Price GC No. 2: Abatement of ACM Fittings/Insulation  
Description: Supply & install all material and labor for abatement of ACM fittings  
(individual glove bag) or insulation to be used as an **add or deduct** from base bid quantities  
  
\_\_\_\_\_ dollars (\$) \_\_\_\_\_) per linear  
foot of elbow or insulation
3. Unit Price GC No. 3: Abatement of ACM Ceiling using a full containment as per code rule 56  
Description: Supply & install all material and labor for ceiling abatement to be used as an **add or deduct** from base bid quantities  
  
\_\_\_\_\_ dollars (\$) \_\_\_\_\_) per sq ft
4. Unit Price GC No. 4: Unsuitable Soil  
Description: Supply & install all material, labor and equipment to remove dispose of unsuitable soil  
and replace with compacted engineered structural fill  
  
\_\_\_\_\_ dollars (\$) \_\_\_\_\_) per  
cubic yard
5. Unit Price GC No. 5: Trench Rock  
Description: Supply & install all material, labor and equipment to remove dispose of unsuitable soil  
and replace with compacted engineered structural fill  
  
\_\_\_\_\_ dollars (\$) \_\_\_\_\_) per  
cubic yard
6. Unit Price GC No. 6: LVT Floor Tile  
Description: Supply & install all material and labor for LVT Floor Tile/ adhesive to be used as an  
**add or deduct** from base bid quantities.  
  
\_\_\_\_\_ dollars (\$) \_\_\_\_\_) per  
square foot
7. Unit Price GC No. 7: Acoustic Ceiling Grid/Tile  
Description: Supply & install all material and labor for Acoustic Ceiling Grid/Tile to be used as an add  
or deduct from base bid quantities.  
  
\_\_\_\_\_ dollars (\$) \_\_\_\_\_) per  
square foot

1.5 ALTERNATES

- A. The undersigned Bidder certifies that the Bid submission includes the alternates described in the Contract Documents and scheduled in Section 012300 "Alternates".

B. **Contract No. 1 – General Construction (GC)**

1. ALTERNATE GC-1: Greenvale Elementary - ADD – Front Entry Exterior Stair replacement. Include all material and labor to remove existing front entrance stairs, replace with new concrete footings / stairs, granite treads/risers and steel handrails, etc.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Dollars (\$\_\_\_\_\_).

2. ALTERNATE GC-2: Eastchester Middle School - ADD – Front Parking lot replacement. Include all material and labor to remove existing front parking lot pavement and sub- base. Replace with new fabric, subbase, asphalt striping, concrete ramp and salvaged pavers, etc. (The High School loop work and entrance remains base bid and is not part of this alternate)

3. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Dollars (\$\_\_\_\_\_).

1.6 BID SECURITY

- A. The undersigned Bidder agrees to execute a contract for this Work in the Base Bid amount above. This bid is accompanied by a Bid Bond in the following amount, constituting five percent (5%) of the Base Bid amount above, drawn by a recognized surety authorized to conduct business in the State of New York and is made payable to Eastchester Union Free School District:

1. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Dollars (\$\_\_\_\_\_).

- B. In the event Owner does not offer Notice of Award within the time limits stated above, Owner will return to the undersigned the bid bond.
- C. In all locations sums shall be expressed in both words and figures. In case of discrepancy written word governs.

1.7 TIME OF COMPLETION

- A. The undersigned Bidder proposes and agrees hereby to commence the Work of the Contract Documents on a date specified in a written Notice to Proceed to be issued by Architect and shall fully complete the Work within the timeframe specified by the Owner and Construction Manager.

1.8 ACKNOWLEDGEMENT OF ADDENDA

- A. The undersigned Bidder acknowledges receipt of and use of the following Addenda in the preparation of this Bid:

1. Addendum No. 1, dated \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Addendum No. 2, dated \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Addendum No. 3, dated \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Addendum No. 4, dated \_\_\_\_\_.

1.9 INSURANCE CONFIRMATION

- A. The contractor verifies that they included all of the insurance requirements including the proper limits as required in Division 00 and AIA G232

1.10 BID SUPPLEMENTS

- A. The following supplements are a part of this Bid Form and are attached hereto.

1. Bid Bond Form (AIA Document A310-2010).

1.11 CONTRACTOR'S LICENSE

- A. The undersigned further states that it is a duly licensed contractor for the type of work proposed in Westchester County, New York, and that all fees, permits, etc., pursuant to submitting this proposal have been paid in full.

1.12 SUBMISSION OF BID

- A. Respectfully submitted this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 2022.
- B. Submitted By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Name of bidding company).
- C. Authorized Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ (Handwritten signature).
- D. Signed By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Type or print name).
- E. Title: \_\_\_\_\_ (Owner/Partner/President/Vice President).
- F. Witness By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Handwritten signature).
- G. Attest: \_\_\_\_\_ (Handwritten signature).
- H. By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Type or print name).
- I. Title: \_\_\_\_\_ (Corporate Secretary or Assistant Secretary).
- J. Street Address: \_\_\_\_\_.
- K. City, State, Zip: \_\_\_\_\_.
- L. Phone: \_\_\_\_\_.
- M. License No.: \_\_\_\_\_.
- N. Federal ID No.: \_\_\_\_\_ (Affix Corporate Seal Here).

END OF SECTION 004116

SECTION 004116 - BID FORM

1.1 BID INFORMATION – **Contract No. 2 – Mechanical Construction (MC)**

- A. Bidder: \_\_\_\_\_.
- B. Contract No.: \_\_\_\_\_.
- C. Project Name: Eastchester Union Free School District – 2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2
- D. Owner: Eastchester Union Free School District
- E. Architect: MEMASI
- F. Architect Project Number: 102-2202
- G. Construction Manager: Arris Contracting Company, Inc.

1.2 CERTIFICATIONS AND BASE BID

- A. Base Bid Contract: The undersigned Bidder, having carefully examined the Procurement and Contracting Requirements, Conditions of the Contract, Drawings, Specifications, and all subsequent Addenda, as prepared by MEMASI (Architect) and Architect's consultants, having visited the site, and being familiar with all conditions and requirements of the Work, hereby agrees to furnish all material, labor, equipment and services, including all scheduled allowances, necessary to complete the construction of the above-named project, according to the requirements of the Procurement and Contracting Documents, for the stipulated sum of:

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
Dollars (\$\_\_\_\_\_).

1.3 ALLOWANCES

- A. The undersigned Bidder certifies that the Base Bid submission includes the allowances described in the Contract Documents and scheduled in Section 012100 "Allowances".

B. **Contract No. 2 – Mechanical Construction (MC)**

- 1. Allowance MC-1: contingency allowance of \$15,000.00

1.4 UNIT PRICES

- A. The undersigned Bidder certifies that the Base Bid submission includes the unit prices described in the Contract Documents and scheduled in Section 012200 "Unit Prices".

B. **Contract No. 2 – Mechanical Construction (MC)**

- 1. None.

1.5 BID SECURITY

- A. The undersigned Bidder agrees to execute a contract for this Work in the Base Bid amount above. This bid is accompanied by a Bid Bond in the following amount, constituting five percent (5%) of the Base Bid amount above, drawn by a recognized surety authorized to conduct business in the State of New York and is made payable to Eastchester Union Free School District:

1. \_\_\_\_\_

Dollars (\$\_\_\_\_\_).

- B. In the event Owner does not offer Notice of Award within the time limits stated above, Owner will return to the undersigned the bid bond.
- C. In all locations sums shall be expressed in both words and figures. In case of discrepancy written word governs.

1.6 TIME OF COMPLETION

- A. The undersigned Bidder proposes and agrees hereby to commence the Work of the Contract Documents on a date specified in a written Notice to Proceed to be issued by Architect and shall fully complete the Work within the timeframe specified by the Owner and Construction Manager.

1.7 ACKNOWLEDGEMENT OF ADDENDA

- A. The undersigned Bidder acknowledges receipt of and use of the following Addenda in the preparation of this Bid:

1. Addendum No. 1, dated \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Addendum No. 2, dated \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Addendum No. 3, dated \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Addendum No. 4, dated \_\_\_\_\_.

1.8 INSURANCE CONFIRMATION

- A. The contractor verifies that they included all of the insurance requirements including the proper limits as required in Division 0 and AIA G232

1.9 BID SUPPLEMENTS

- A. The following supplements are a part of this Bid Form and are attached hereto.

1. Bid Bond Form (AIA Document A310-2010).

1.10 CONTRACTOR'S LICENSE

- A. The undersigned further states that it is a duly licensed contractor for the type of work proposed in Westchester County, New York, and that all fees, permits, etc., pursuant to submitting this proposal have been paid in full.

1.11 SUBMISSION OF BID

- A. Respectfully submitted this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 2022.
- B. Submitted By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Name of bidding company).
- C. Authorized Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ (Handwritten signature).
- D. Signed By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Type or print name).
- E. Title: \_\_\_\_\_ (Owner/Partner/President/Vice President).
- F. Witness By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Handwritten signature).
- G. Attest: \_\_\_\_\_ (Handwritten signature).
- H. By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Type or print name).
- I. Title: \_\_\_\_\_ (Corporate Secretary or Assistant Secretary).
- J. Street Address: \_\_\_\_\_.
- K. City, State, Zip: \_\_\_\_\_.
- L. Phone: \_\_\_\_\_.
- M. License No.: \_\_\_\_\_.
- N. Federal ID No.: \_\_\_\_\_ (Affix Corporate Seal Here).

END OF SECTION 004116

SECTION 004116 - BID FORM

1.1 BID INFORMATION – **Contract No. 4 – Window Construction Work (WC)**

- A. Bidder: \_\_\_\_\_.
- B. Contract No.: \_\_\_\_\_.
- C. Project Name: Eastchester Union Free School District – 2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2
- D. Owner: Eastchester Union Free School District
- E. Architect: MEMASI
- F. Architect Project Number: 102-2202
- G. Construction Manager: Arris Contracting Company, Inc.

1.2 CERTIFICATIONS AND BASE BID

- A. Base Bid Contract: The undersigned Bidder, having carefully examined the Procurement and Contracting Requirements, Conditions of the Contract, Drawings, Specifications, and all subsequent Addenda, as prepared by MEMASI (Architect) and Architect's consultants, having visited the site, and being familiar with all conditions and requirements of the Work, hereby agrees to furnish all material, labor, equipment and services, including all scheduled allowances, necessary to complete the construction of the above-named project, according to the requirements of the Procurement and Contracting Documents, for the stipulated sum of:

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
  
Dollars (\$\_\_\_\_\_).

1.3 ALLOWANCES

- A. The undersigned Bidder certifies that the Base Bid submission includes the allowances described in the Contract Documents and scheduled in Section 012100 "Allowances".
- B. **Contract No. 4 – Window Construction Work (WC)**
  - 1. Allowance WC-1: contingency allowance of \$30,000.00
  - 2. Allowance WC-2 through WC-5: The undersigned Contractor has included the Allowances as specified in Section 012100 in their Base Bid.

1.4 UNIT PRICES

- A. The undersigned Bidder certifies that the Base Bid submission includes the unit prices described in the Contract Documents and scheduled in Section 012200 "Unit Prices".



**B. Contract No. 4 – Window Construction Work (WC)**

1. Unit Price WC No. 1: Steel Lintel Replacement  
Description: abatement of existing lintel assembly with asbestos containing rust inhibitor and waterproofing tar paper behind and replace with new steel lintels per specification to be used as an **add or deduct** from base bid quantities  
  
\_\_\_\_\_ dollars (\$) per 10  
LF lintel
2. Unit Price WC No. 2: Masonry Repointing  
Description: Provide all material, equipment and labor to remove deteriorated masonry prepare/replace with new repointed mortar as per specification to be used as an **add or deduct** from base bid quantities  
  
\_\_\_\_\_ dollars (\$) per  
square foot
3. Unit Price WC No. 3: Brick Replacement  
Description: Provide all material, equipment and labor to remove deteriorated masonry brick and replace with new as per masonry details. to be used as an **add or deduct** from base bid quantities  
  
\_\_\_\_\_ dollars (\$) per  
square foot
4. Unit Price WC No. 4: Abatement of ACM Caulking using a field fabricated tent enclosure as per code rule 56  
Description: Supply & install all material and labor for ACM caulking abatement to be used as an **add or deduct** from base bid quantities  
  
\_\_\_\_\_ dollars (\$) per linear  
foot

**1.5 BID SECURITY**

- A. The undersigned Bidder agrees to execute a contract for this Work in the Base Bid amount above. This bid is accompanied by a Bid Bond in the following amount, constituting five percent (5%) of the Base Bid amount above, drawn by a recognized surety authorized to conduct business in the State of New York and is made payable to Eastchester Union Free School District:

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
  
Dollars (\$\_\_\_\_\_).

- B. In the event Owner does not offer Notice of Award within the time limits stated above, Owner will return to the undersigned the bid bond.
- C. In all locations sums shall be expressed in both words and figures. In case of discrepancy written word governs.

1.6 TIME OF COMPLETION

- A. The undersigned Bidder proposes and agrees hereby to commence the Work of the Contract Documents on a date specified in a written Notice to Proceed to be issued by Architect and shall fully complete the Work within the timeframe specified by the Owner and Construction Manager.

1.7 ACKNOWLEDGEMENT OF ADDENDA

- A. The undersigned Bidder acknowledges receipt of and use of the following Addenda in the preparation of this Bid:

1. Addendum No. 1, dated \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Addendum No. 2, dated \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Addendum No. 3, dated \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Addendum No. 4, dated \_\_\_\_\_.

1.8 INSURANCE CONFIRMATION

The contractor verifies that they included all of the insurance requirements including the proper limits as required in Division 0 and AIA G232

1.9 BID SUPPLEMENTS

- A. The following supplements are a part of this Bid Form and are attached hereto.

1. Bid Bond Form (AIA Document A310-2010).

1.10 CONTRACTOR'S LICENSE

- A. The undersigned further states that it is a duly licensed contractor for the type of work proposed in Westchester County, New York, and that all fees, permits, etc., pursuant to submitting this proposal have been paid in full.

1.11 SUBMISSION OF BID

- A. Respectfully submitted this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 2022.
- B. Submitted By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Name of bidding company).
- C. Authorized Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ (Handwritten signature).
- D. Signed By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Type or print name).
- E. Title: \_\_\_\_\_ (Owner/Partner/President/Vice President).
- F. Witness By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Handwritten signature).
- G. Attest: \_\_\_\_\_ (Handwritten signature).
- H. By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Type or print name).
- I. Title: \_\_\_\_\_ (Corporate Secretary or Assistant Secretary).
- J. Street Address: \_\_\_\_\_.
- K. City, State, Zip: \_\_\_\_\_.
- L. Phone: \_\_\_\_\_.
- M. License No.: \_\_\_\_\_.
- N. Federal ID No.: \_\_\_\_\_ (Affix Corporate Seal Here).

END OF SECTION 004116

SECTION 004313 - BID SECURITY FORMS

1.1 BID FORM SUPPLEMENT

- A. A completed bid bond form is required to be attached to the Bid Form.

1.2 BID BOND FORM

- A. AIA Document A310-2010 "Bid Bond" is the recommended form for a bid bond. A bid bond acceptable to Owner, or other bid security as described in the Instructions to Bidders, is required to be attached to the Bid Form as a supplement.
- B. Copies of AIA standard forms may be obtained from The American Institute of Architects; <https://www.aiacontracts.org/>; email: [docspurchases@aia.org](mailto:docspurchases@aia.org); (800) 942-7732.

END OF SECTION 004313

SECTION 004324 – PROCUREMENT SUBSTITUTION REQUEST FORM

1.1 DEFINITIONS

- A. Procurement Substitution Requests: Requests for changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those indicated in the Procurement and Contracting Documents, submitted prior to receipt of bids. See Section 002600 "Procurement Substitution Procedures" for conditions under which Substitution requests will be considered.

1.2 REQUEST

- A. Should any part or portion of the Bid include substitute products, list all substitutes that are proposed for products that have been specified by one or more manufacturers in the Contract Documents. Attach additional sheets if necessary.

Prime Contract: \_\_\_\_\_

Prime Contractor: \_\_\_\_\_

Specification Section	Referenced Drawing	Specified Item	Substitution

END OF SECTION 004234

SECTION 00 45 03 – INSURANCE CERTIFICATION FORM

Name of Project: Eastchester Union Free School District – Security Phase 2

Your insurance representative must complete the form below in order to be considered for the award of this bid or project, and it is important that you complete the Bidder's Acknowledgement section of this form. **Please note that this Insurance Certification form must accompany your bid submission in order for your bid to be considered.**

**Insurance Representative's Acknowledgement:**

We have reviewed the insurance requirements set forth in AIA A132-2019 Exhibit A and Article 11 of the General Conditions of the Contract for Construction (AIA A232-2019) and are capable of providing such insurance to our insured in accordance with such requirements in the event the contract is awarded to our insured and provided our insured pays the appropriate premium.

Insurance Representative:

\_\_\_\_\_

Address:

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Are you an agent for the companies providing the coverage?

Yes\_\_\_\_No\_\_\_\_\_

Date:\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Insurance Representative Signature

**Bidder's Acknowledgement:**

I acknowledge that I have received the insurance requirements of this bid and have considered the costs, if any, of procuring the required insurance and will be able to supply the insurance required in accordance with the bid, if it is awarded. I understand that this Insurance Certification form must be submitted with my bid and my inability to provide the required insurances may result in the rejection of my bid, and the Eastchester Union Free School District may award the contract to the next lowest/responsive bidder.

Firm name:

\_\_\_\_\_

Address:

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Date:\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Bidder's Signature

SECTION 004519 – NON-COLLUSION AFFIDAVIT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. The following provisions of the New York State General Municipal Law form a part of the Bidding Requirements:

1.2 NON-COLLUSIVE BIDDING CERTIFICATE

- A. By submission of this Bid, each Bidder and each person signing on behalf of any Bidder certifies, and in the case of a joint Bid, each party thereto certifies as to its own organization, under penalty of perjury, that, to the best of his or her knowledge and belief:
1. The prices in this Bid have been arrived at independently without collusion, consultation, communication, or agreement, for the purpose of restricting competition, as to any matter relating to such prices with any other bidder or with any competitor.
  2. Unless otherwise required by law, the prices which have been quoted in this Bid have not been knowingly disclosed by the Bidder and will not knowingly be disclosed by the Bidder prior to opening, directly or indirectly, to any other bidder or to any competitor; and
  3. No attempt has been made or will be made by the Bidder to induce any other person, partnership or corporation to submit or not to submit a bid for the purpose of restricting competition.
- B. A Bid shall not be considered for award nor shall any award be made where (a) (1), (2) and (3) above have not been complied with; provided, however, that if in any case the Bidder cannot make the foregoing certification, the Bidder shall so state and shall so furnish with the Bid, a signed statement which sets forth in detail the reasons therefore. Where (a) (1), (2) and (3) above have not been complied with, the Bid shall not be considered for award nor shall any award be made unless the head of the purchasing unit of the political subdivision, public department, agency or official thereof to which the Bid is made, or his designee, determines that such disclosure was not made for the purpose of restricting competition.
- C. The fact that a bidder (a) has published price lists, rates, or tariffs covering items being procured, (b) has informed prospective customers of proposed or pending publication of new or revised price lists for such items, or (c) has sold the same items to other customers at the same prices being bid, does not constitute, without more, a disclosure within the meaning of subparagraph (a).
- D. Any bid hereafter made to any political subdivision of the State or any public department, agency or official thereof by a corporate bidder for work or services performed or to be performed or goods sold or to be sold, where competitive bidding is required by statute, rule, regulation, or local law, and where such bid contains the certification referred to in subdivision one of this section, shall be deemed to have been authorized by the board of directors of the bidder, and such authorization shall be deemed to include the signing and submission of the bid and the inclusion therein of the certificate as to non-collusion as the act and deed of the corporation.
- E. The person signing this Bid or Proposal certifies that he has fully informed himself regarding the accuracy of the statements contained in this certification, and under the penalties of perjury, affirms the truth thereof, such penalties being applicable to the Bidder as well to the person signing in his behalf.

- A. Respectfully submitted this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 2022.
- B. Submitted By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Name of bidding company).
- C. Authorized Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ (Handwritten signature).
- D. Signed By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Type or print name).
- E. Title: \_\_\_\_\_ (Owner/Partner/President/Vice President).
- F. Street Address: \_\_\_\_\_.
- G. City, State, Zip: \_\_\_\_\_.
- H. Phone: \_\_\_\_\_.
- I. License No.: \_\_\_\_\_.
- J. Federal ID No.: \_\_\_\_\_ (Affix Corporate Seal Here).

END OF SECTION 004519



SECTION 004520 – IRAN DIVESTMENT ACT AFFIDAVIT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. The following provisions of the New York State General Municipal Law form a part of the Bidding Requirements:

1.2 IRAN DIVESTMENT ACT CERTIFICATE

- A. By submission of this Bid, each Bidder and each person signing on behalf of any Bidder certifies, and in the case of a joint Bid, each party thereto certifies as to its own organization, under penalty of perjury, that, to the best of his or her knowledge and belief:

1. That the Bidder is not on the list created pursuant to Paragraph (b) of Subdivision 3 of Section 165-a of the New York State finance law.
2. By submitting a bid in response to this solicitation or by assuming the responsibility of a Contract awarded hereunder, Bidder / Contractor (or any assignee) certifies that once the prohibited entities list is posted on the Office of General Services (OGS) website, it will not utilize on such Contract any subcontractor that is identified on the prohibited entities list; and
3. Additionally, Bidder / Contractor is advised that once the list is posted on the OGS website, any Contractor seeking to renew or extend a Contract or assume the responsibility of a contract awarded in response to the solicitation, must certify at the time the Contract is renewed, extended or assigned that it is not included on the prohibited entities list.

- B. A bid shall not be considered for award nor shall any award be made where the condition set forth in paragraph a of this subdivision has not been complied with; provided, however, that if in any case the bidder cannot make the foregoing certification, the bidder shall so state and shall furnish with the bid a signed statement which sets forth in detail the reasons therefor. A political subdivision may award a bid to a bidder who cannot make the certification pursuant to paragraph a of this subdivision on a case-by-case basis if:

1. The investment activities in Iran were made before the effective date of this section, the investment activities in Iran have not been expanded or renewed after the effective date of this section, and the person has adopted, publicized, and is implementing a formal plan to cease the investment activities in Iran and to refrain from engaging in any new investments in Iran; or
2. The political subdivision makes a determination that the goods or services are necessary for the political subdivision to perform its functions and that, absent such an exemption, the political subdivision would be unable to obtain the goods or services for which the contract is offered. Such determination shall be made in writing and shall be a public document.

- C. Any bid hereafter made to any political subdivision of the State or any public department, agency or official thereof by a corporate bidder for work or services performed or to be performed or goods sold or to be sold, where competitive bidding is required by statute, rule, regulation, or local law, and where such bid contains the certification referred to in subdivision one of this section, shall be deemed to have been authorized by the board of directors of the bidder, and such authorization shall be deemed to include the signing and submission of the bid and the inclusion therein of the certificate as to non-engagement in investment activities in Iran as the act and deed of the corporation.

- D. The person signing this Bid or Proposal certifies that he has fully informed himself regarding the accuracy of the statements contained in this certification, and under the penalties of perjury, affirms the truth thereof, such penalties being applicable to the Bidder as well to the person signing in his behalf.

- A. Respectfully submitted this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 2022.
- B. Submitted By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Name of bidding company).
- C. Authorized Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ (Handwritten signature).
- D. Signed By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Type or print name).
- E. Title: \_\_\_\_\_ (Owner/Partner/President/Vice President).
- F. Street Address: \_\_\_\_\_.
- G. City, State, Zip: \_\_\_\_\_.
- H. Phone: \_\_\_\_\_.
- I. License No.: \_\_\_\_\_.
- J. Federal ID No.: \_\_\_\_\_ (Affix Corporate Seal Here).

END OF SECTION 004520

SECTION 004521 – INABILITY TO COMPLY WITH IRAN DIVESTMENT ACT AFFIDAVIT

Bidders shall complete this form if they cannot certify that the bidder/contractor or any proposed subcontractor is not identified on the Prohibited Entities List. The District reserves the right to undertake any investigation into the information provided herein or to request additional information from the bidder.

Name of the Bidder: \_\_\_\_\_

Address of Bidder: \_\_\_\_\_

Has bidder been involved in investment activities in Iran? (circle one) YES / NO

Describe the type of activities including but not limited to the amounts and the nature of the investments (e.g., banking, energy, real estate)

\_\_\_\_\_

If so, when did the first investment activity occur? \_\_\_\_\_

Have the investment activities ended? (circle one) YES / NO

If so, what was the date of the last investment activity? \_\_\_\_\_

If not, have the investment activities increased or expanded since April 12, 2012? \_\_\_\_\_

Has the bidder adopted, publicized, or implemented a formal plan to cease the investment activities in Iran and to refrain from engaging in any new investments in Iran? (circle one) YES / NO

If so, provide the date of the adoption of the plan by the bidder and proof of the adopted resolution, if any, and a copy of the formal plan. \_\_\_\_\_

In detail, state the reasons why the bidder cannot provide the Certification of Compliance with the Iran Divestment Act below (additional pages may be attached):

\_\_\_\_\_

I, \_\_\_\_\_, being duly sworn, deposes and says that he/she is the

\_\_\_\_\_ of the \_\_\_\_\_ Corporation and the foregoing is true and accurate.

\_\_\_\_\_  
SIGNED

SWORN to before me this

\_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 2022.

Notary Public: \_\_\_\_\_

END OF SECTION 004521

**Sexual Harassment Prevention Certification Form**

By submission of this bid, the person signing on behalf of the bidder certifies, under penalty of perjury, that: the bidder has and has implemented a written policy addressing sexual harassment prevention in the workplace; the bidder provides annual sexual harassment prevention training to all of its employees; and that the principal(s) and all employees of the bidder have completed the sexual harassment prevention training in the last twelve (12) months. Such policy shall, at a minimum, meet the requirements of Section 201-g of the Labor Law.

Bidder Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Bidder Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Print Name and Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Sworn to before me this \_\_\_\_\_

Day of \_\_\_\_\_, 2022.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public

SECTION 004543 - CORPORATE RESOLUTIONS

PART 1 - INCLUDE WITH BID FORM IF BIDDER IS AN INDIVIDUAL

- A. Respectfully submitted this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 2022.
- B. Submitted By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Name of bidding individual).
- C. Authorized Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ (Handwritten signature).
- D. Signed By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Type or print name).
- E. Title: \_\_\_\_\_ (Owner/President).
- F. Street Address: \_\_\_\_\_.
- G. City, State, Zip: \_\_\_\_\_.
- H. Phone: \_\_\_\_\_.
- I. License No.: \_\_\_\_\_.
- J. Federal ID No.: \_\_\_\_\_.

PART 2 - INCLUDE WITH BID FORM IF BIDDER IS A PARTNERSHIP

- A. Respectfully submitted this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 2022.
- B. Submitted By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Name of bidding company).
- C. Authorized Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ (Handwritten signature).
- D. Signed By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Type or print name).
- E. Title: \_\_\_\_\_ (Partner).
- F. Street Address: \_\_\_\_\_.
- G. City, State, Zip: \_\_\_\_\_.
- H. Phone: \_\_\_\_\_.
- I. License No.: \_\_\_\_\_.
- J. Federal ID No.: \_\_\_\_\_.

PART 3 - INCLUDE WITH BID FORM IF BIDDER IS A CORPORATION

- A. Respectfully submitted this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 2022.
- B. Submitted By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Name of bidding company).
- C. Authorized Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ (Handwritten signature).
- D. Signed By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Type or print name).
- E. Title: \_\_\_\_\_ (Owner/Partner/President/Vice President).
- F. Street Address: \_\_\_\_\_.
- G. City, State, Zip: \_\_\_\_\_.
- H. Phone: \_\_\_\_\_.
- I. License No.: \_\_\_\_\_.
- J. Federal ID No.: \_\_\_\_\_ (Affix Corporate Seal Here).

END OF SECTION 004543



SECTION 006000 - PROJECT FORMS

1.1 FORM OF AGREEMENT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS

- A. The following form of Owner/Contractor Agreement and form of the General Conditions shall be used for Project:
  - 1. AIA Document A132-2019 "Standard Form of Agreement between Owner and Contractor, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition".
    - a. Insurance and Bonds requirements for Project are AIA Document A132-2019, Exhibit A "Insurance and Bonds Exhibit".
    - b. The General Conditions for Project are AIA Document A232-2019 "General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition".
  - 2. The General Conditions are included in the Project Manual.

1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE FORMS

- A. Administrative Forms: Additional administrative forms are specified in Division 01 General Requirements.
- B. Copies of AIA standard forms may be obtained from the American Institute of Architects; [www.aiacontractdocsaiacontracts.org](http://www.aiacontractdocsaiacontracts.org); (800) 942-7732.
- C. Preconstruction Forms:
  - 1. Form of Performance Bond and Labor and Material Bond: AIA Document A312-2010 "Performance Bond and Payment Bond".
- D. Information and Modification Forms:
  - 1. Form for Requests for Information (RFIs): AIA Document G716-2004 "Request for Information (RFI)".
  - 2. Change Order Form: AIA Document G731-2019 "Change Order, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition".
  - 3. Form of Architect's Memorandum for Minor Changes in the Work: AIA Document G710-2017 "Architect's Supplemental Instructions".
  - 4. Form of Change Directive: AIA Document G733-2019 "Construction Change Directive, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition".
  - 5. Certificate of Substantial Completion: AIA Document G734-2019 "Certificate of Substantial Completion Construction Manager as Adviser Edition".
- E. Payment Forms:
  - 1. Schedule of Values Form: AIA Document G703-1992 "Continuation Sheet".
  - 2. Payment Application: AIA Document G732-2019 "Application and Certificate for Payment, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition".
  - 3. Form of Contractor's Affidavit: AIA Document G706-1994 "Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims".
  - 4. Form of Affidavit of Release of Liens: AIA Document G706A-1994 "Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Release of Liens".

5. Form of Consent of Surety: AIA Document G707-1994 "Consent of Surety to Final Payment".

END OF SECTION 006000

SECTION 007343 – WAGE RATES

PART 1 – GENERAL

- A. New York State minimum wage rate schedules are bound herewith.
- B. The labor on this contract shall be performed in all respects in full accordance with the Labor Law of the State of New York. In accordance with Section 220, Subdivision 3, and Section 220-D, of the Labor Law, the Industrial Commissioner has designated as the minimum hourly rates to be paid to employees on the work the rates shown on the attached schedules which shall be posted in a prominent and convenient place for the inspection of the Contractor's employees. Article 8, Section 220 of the Labor Law, as amended by Chapter 750 of the Laws of 1956, provides, among other things, that it shall be the duty of the fiscal officer to make a determination of the schedule of wages and supplementals to be paid to all laborers, workmen and mechanics employed on public works projects. The amount of supplementals listed on the enclosed schedule does not necessarily include all types of prevailing supplements.
- C. The Contractor shall make provision for disability benefits, workman's compensation, unemployment insurance and social security, as required by law.
- D. Per the New York State Education Department's directive in its Office of Facilities Planning Newsletter #106 – May 2011, the Contractor is responsible for obtaining updated copies of the prevailing wage schedule and the list of employer's ineligible to bid on or be awarded public work contracts directly from the Department of Labor's Bureau of Public Work's web site at:
  - 1. <https://labor.ny.gov/workerprotection/publicwork/PWRateSch.shtm>
    - a. Select "Access Previously Requested Schedule"
    - b. Click "Wage Rate Schedule online" link
    - c. Enter PRC number **PRC# 2022009751** and click "Submit"
    - d. Select Submit.
  - 2. In the event that the Contractor does not have web access or is unable to access the Department's website, email [PWAsk@labor.state.ny.us](mailto:PWAsk@labor.state.ny.us) or call the Central Office at (518) 457-5589.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 007343

# DRAFT AIA® Document A132™ – 2019

## Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition

**AGREEMENT** made as of the « » day of « » in the year « »  
(In words, indicate day, month, and year.)

**BETWEEN** the Owner:  
(Name, legal status, address, and other information)

Eastchester Union Free School District  
580 White Plains Road  
Eastchester, New York 10709

and the Contractor:  
(Name, legal status, address, and other information)

« »  
« »  
« »  
« »

for the following Project:  
(Name, location, and detailed description)

Contract No. X - XXX  
2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2

The Construction Manager:  
(Name, legal status, address, and other information)

Arris Contracting Company, Inc.  
189 Smith Street  
Poughkeepsie, New York 12601

The Architect:  
(Name, legal status, address, and other information)

Mastracci Mesiti-Ceas Architecture Engineering P.L.L.C.  
d/b/a MEMASI  
2 Lyon Place  
White Plains, NY 10601

The Owner and Contractor agree as follows.

### ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

This document is intended to be used in conjunction with AIA Documents A232™-2019, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition; B132™-2019, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Architect, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition; and C132™-2019, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Construction Manager as Adviser. AIA Document A232™-2019 is adopted in this document by reference. Do not use with other general conditions unless this document is modified.

**ELECTRONIC COPYING** of any portion of this AIA® Document to another electronic file is prohibited and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.

## TABLE OF ARTICLES

1	THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS
2	THE WORK OF THIS CONTRACT
3	DATE OF COMMENCEMENT AND DATES OF SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION
4	CONTRACT SUM
5	PAYMENTS
6	DISPUTE RESOLUTION
7	TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION
8	MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS
9	ENUMERATION OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

## EXHIBIT A INSURANCE AND BONDS

### ARTICLE 1 THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

The Contract Documents consist of this Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary, and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, Addenda issued prior to execution of this Agreement, other documents listed in this Agreement, Instructions to Bidders, Supplemental Instructions Bidders (if any), Contractor's Bid and Modifications issued after execution of this Agreement, all of which form the Contract, and are as fully a part of the Contract as if attached to this Agreement or repeated herein. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. An enumeration of the Contract Documents, other than Modifications, appears in Article 9.

### ARTICLE 2 THE WORK OF THIS CONTRACT

The Contractor shall fully execute the Work described in the Contract Documents, except as specifically indicated in the Contract Documents to be the responsibility of others.

### ARTICLE 3 DATE OF COMMENCEMENT AND DATES OF SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

§ 3.1 The date of commencement of the Work shall be:

*(Check one of the following boxes.)*

☐ [ « » ] The date of this Agreement.

☒ [ X ] A date set forth in a notice to proceed issued by the Construction Manager.

☐ [ « » ] Established as follows:  
*(Insert a date or a means to determine the date of commencement of the Work.)*

« »

If a date of commencement of the Work is not selected, then the date of commencement shall be the date of this Agreement.

§ 3.2 The Contract Time shall be measured from the date of commencement of the Work.

§ 3.3 intentionally omitted

**§ 3.4 When the Work of this Contract, or any Portion Thereof, is Substantially Complete**

**§ 3.4.1** Subject to adjustments of the Contract Time as provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall substantially complete the entire Work of this Contract:

*(Check one of the following boxes and complete the necessary information.)*

☐ [ ☐ ] Not later than ☐ ( ☐ ) calendar days from the date of commencement of the Work.

☒ [ ☒ ] By the following date: **February 15, 2023**

**§ 3.4.2** Subject to adjustments of the Contract Time as provided in the Contract Documents, if portions of the Work of this Contract are to be substantially complete prior to when the entire Work of this Contract shall be substantially complete, the Contractor shall substantially complete such portions by the following dates:

**Portion of Work**

**Date to be substantially complete**

Refer to Specification Section 011100 –  
Milestone Schedule

**§ 3.4.3** If the Contractor fails to substantially complete the Work of this Contract, or portions thereof, as provided in this Section 3.4, liquidated damages, if any, shall be assessed as set forth in Section 4.5.

**ARTICLE 4 CONTRACT SUM**

**§ 4.1** The Owner shall pay the Contractor the Contract Sum in current funds for the Contractor's performance of the Contract. The Contract Sum shall be one of the following:

*(Check the appropriate box.)*

☒ [ ☒ ] Stipulated Sum, in accordance with Section 4.2 below

*(Based on the selection above, complete Section 4.2, 4.3 or 4.4 below.)*

**§ 4.2 Stipulated Sum**

**§ 4.2.1** The Contract Sum shall be ☐ (\$ ☐ ), subject to additions and deductions as provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 4.2.2 Alternates**

**§ 4.2.2.1** Alternates, if any, included in the Contract Sum:

**Item**

**Price**

N/A

**§ 4.2.2.2** Subject to the conditions noted below, the following alternates may be accepted by the Owner following execution of this Agreement. Upon acceptance, the Owner shall issue a Modification to this Agreement.

*(Insert below each alternate and the conditions that must be met for the Owner to accept the alternate.)*

**Item**

**Price**

**Conditions for Acceptance**

**§ 4.2.3** Allowances, if any, included in the Contract Sum:

*(Identify each allowance.)*

**Item**

**Price**

Refer to Specification Section 012100 - Allowances

**§ 4.2.4** Unit prices, if any:

*(Identify the item and state the unit price, and quantity limitations, if any, to which the unit price will be applicable.)*

**Item****Price**

Refer to Specification Section 012200 – Unit Prices

**§ 4.5** Liquidated damages, if any:*(Insert terms and conditions for liquidated damages, if any, to be assessed in accordance with Section 3.4.)*

See Section 8.4 of the AIA Document A232™–2019, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition as revised for this Project.

**§ 4.6** Other:*(Insert provisions for bonus, cost savings or other incentives, if any, that might result in a change to the Contract Sum.)*

Not Applicable

**ARTICLE 5 PAYMENTS****§ 5.1 Progress Payments**

**§ 5.1.1** Based upon Applications for Payment submitted to the Construction Manager by the Contractor, and Certificates for Payment issued by the Construction Manager and Architect, the Owner shall make progress payments on account of the Contract Sum, to the Contractor, as provided below and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

**§ 5.1.2** The period covered by each Application for Payment shall be one calendar month ending on the last day of the month.

&lt;&lt; &gt;&gt;

**§ 5.1.3** Provided that an Application for Payment is received by the Construction Manager not later than the « 7th » day of a month with all required supporting information and documentation required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall make payment of the amount certified to the Contractor not later than the « 7th » day of the « subsequent » month. If an Application for Payment is received by the Construction Manager after the application date fixed above, payment of the amount certified shall be made by the Owner not later than « forty-five » ( « 45 » ) days after the Construction Manager receives the Application for Payment.

*(Federal, state or local laws may require payment within a certain period of time.)***§ 5.1.4 Progress Payments Where the Contract Sum is Based on a Stipulated Sum**

**§ 5.1.4.1** Each Application for Payment shall be based on the most recent schedule of values submitted by the Contractor in accordance with the Contract Documents. The schedule of values shall allocate the entire Contract Sum among the various portions of the Work. The schedule of values shall be prepared in such form, and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy, as the Construction Manager and Architect may require. This schedule of values shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment.

**§ 5.1.4.2** Applications for Payment shall show the percentage of completion of each portion of the Work as of the end of the period covered by the Application for Payment.

**§ 5.1.4.3** In accordance with AIA Document A232™–2019, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition as revised for this Project, and subject to other provisions of the Contract Documents, the amount of each progress payment shall be computed as follows:

**§ 5.1.4.3.1** The amount of each progress payment shall first include:

- .1 That portion of the Contract Sum properly allocable to completed Work;
- .2 That portion of the Contract Sum properly allocable to materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the completed construction, or, if approved in advance by the Owner, suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing; and
- .3 That portion of Construction Change Directives that the Architect determines, in the Architect's professional judgment, to be reasonably justified.

**§ 5.1.4.3.2** The amount of each progress payment shall then be reduced by:

- .1 The aggregate of any amounts previously paid by the Owner;

- .2 The amount, if any, for Work that remains uncorrected and for which the Architect has previously withheld a Certificate for Payment as provided in Article 9 of AIA Document A232–2019;
- .3 Any amount for which the Contractor does not intend to pay a Subcontractor or material supplier, unless the Work has been performed by others the Contractor intends to pay;
- .4 For Work performed or defects discovered since the last payment application, any amount for which the Architect may withhold payment, or nullify a Certificate of Payment in whole or in part, as provided in Article 9 of AIA Document A232–2019;
- .5 Retainage withheld pursuant to Section 5.1.7; and
- .6 One hundred fifty percent (150%) of the amount of any lien(s) on public improvement filed against the Contract Sum that has not been released or discharged.

## § 5.1.7 Retainage

§ 5.1.7.1 For each progress payment made prior to when the Work of this Contract is substantially complete, the Owner may withhold the following amount, as retainage, from the payment otherwise due:

*(Insert a percentage or amount to be withheld as retainage from each Application for Payment. The amount of retainage may be limited by governing law.)*

« Five (5) percent »

§ 5.1.7.1.1 The following items are not subject to retainage:

*(Insert any items not subject to the withholding of retainage, such as general conditions, insurance, etc.)*

« Not applicable »

§ 5.1.7.2 Reduction or limitation of retainage, if any, shall be as follows:

*(If the retainage established in Section 5.1.7.1 is to be modified prior to when the entire Work of this Contract is substantially complete, including modifications for completion of portions of the Work as provided in Section 3.4.2, insert provisions for such modifications.)*

« Not applicable »

§ 5.1.7.3 When the Work of this Contract is substantially complete, the Contractor may submit an Application for Payment that includes the retainage withheld from prior Applications for Payment pursuant to this Section 5.1.7. Following receipt of such an application, the Owner shall pay, in accordance with Section 5.1.3 of this Agreement, the remaining amount of the contract balance less two times the value of any remaining items to be completed or corrected and an amount necessary to satisfy any claims, liens or judgments against the Contractor that have not been suitably released or discharged.

« »

## § 5.2 Final Payment

### § 5.2.1 Final Payment Where the Contract Sum is Based on a Stipulated Sum

§ 5.2.1.1 Final payment, constituting the entire unpaid balance of the Contract Sum less any sum required by law to be held due to a lien(s) on public improvement filed against the Contract Sum that has not been released or discharged, shall be made by the Owner to the Contractor when

- .1 the Contractor has fully performed the Contract except for the Contractor's responsibility to correct Work as provided in Article 12 of AIA Document A232–2019, and to satisfy other requirements, if any, which extend beyond final payment; and
- .2 the Contractor has submitted all Close-Out documents and complied with all Close-Out requirements; and
- .3 a final Certificate for Payment or Project Certificate for Payment has been issued by the Architect.

§ 5.2.1.2 The Owner's final payment to the Contractor, less any sum required by law to be held due to a lien(s) on public improvement filed against the Contract Sum that has not been released or discharged, shall be made no later than 30 days after the issuance of the final Certificate for Payment or Project Certificate for Payment. After final payment, payment of any sums withheld due to a lien against a public improvement filed with the Owner against the Contract Sum will be made to the Contractor when the lien is discharged.



**ARTICLE 6 DISPUTE RESOLUTION****§ 6.1 Initial Decision Maker**

The Architect will serve as Initial Decision Maker pursuant to Article 15 of AIA Document A232–2019, unless the parties appoint by mutual agreement another individual, not a party to this Agreement, to serve as Initial Decision Maker.

**§ 6.2 Binding Dispute Resolution**

For any Claim, the method of binding dispute resolution shall be as follows:

*(Check the appropriate box.)*

☒ Litigation in a court of competent jurisdiction in the County of Westchester in the State of New York.

☐ Other: *(Specify)*

<< >>

**ARTICLE 7 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION****§ 7.1 Where the Contract Sum is a Stipulated Sum**

**§ 7.1.1** The Contract may be terminated by the Owner or the Contractor as provided in Article 14 of AIA Document A232–2019.

**§ 7.1.1.1** If the Contract is terminated, in whole or in part, for the Owner's convenience in accordance with Article 14 of AIA Document A232–2019, then the Owner shall incur no liability to Contractor by reason of such termination except that Contractor shall be entitled to payment in accordance with Section 14.4.3 of AIA Document A232–2019 as reduced in accordance with Section 14.4.4 of AIA Document A232–2019. Contractor shall be entitled to no payment for the terminated portion of the Work and waives and forfeits any claim for damages, overhead and/or lost profits for the terminated portion of the Work.

**§ 7.1.2** The Work may be suspended by the Owner as provided in Article 14 of AIA Document A232–2019.

**§ 7.2.1.2 Termination by the Owner for Cause**

**§ 7.2.1.2.1** If the Owner terminates the Contract for cause as provided in Article 14 of AIA Document A232–2019, the Owner shall then only pay the Contractor if the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum exceeds costs of finishing the Work, including compensation for the Construction Manager's and Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, and other damages incurred by the Owner and not expressly waived, such excess shall be paid to the Contractor. If such costs and damages exceed the unpaid balance, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. The amount to be paid to the Contractor or Owner, as the case may be, shall, upon application, be certified by the Initial Decision Maker after consultation with the Construction Manager, and this obligation for payment shall survive termination of the Contract.

**§ 7.2.1.2.2** The Owner shall also pay the Contractor fair compensation, either by purchase or rental at the election of the Owner, for any equipment owned by the Contractor that the Owner elects to retain and that is not otherwise included in the Cost of the Work under Section 7.2.1.2.1. To the extent that the Owner elects to take legal assignment of subcontracts and purchase orders (including rental agreements), the Contractor shall, as a condition of receiving the payments referred to in this Article 7, execute and deliver all such papers and take all such steps, including the legal assignment of such subcontracts and other contractual rights of the Contractor, as the Owner may require for the purpose of fully vesting in the Owner the rights and benefits of the Contractor under such subcontracts or purchase orders. All Subcontracts, purchase orders and rental agreements entered into by the Contractor will contain provisions allowing for assignment to the Owner as described above and in Section 5.4 of AIA Document A232–2019.

**ARTICLE 8 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

**§ 8.1** Where reference is made in this Agreement to AIA Document A232–2019, it refers to it as revised for this Project.

Where reference is made in this Agreement to a provision, section or article of AIA Document A232–2019 or another

Contract Document, the reference refers to that provision, section or article as amended or supplemented by other provisions of the Contract Documents.

**§ 8.2** The Owner's representative:

*(Name, address, email address, and other information)*

Lee Lew, Interim Assistant Superintendent for Business until appointment of a new Assistant Superintendent for Business, at which time the new Assistant Superintendent for Business will become the Owner's Representative  
Eastchester UFSD  
580 White Plains Road  
Eastchester, New York 10709

**§ 8.3** The Contractor's representative:

*(Name, address, email address, and other information)*

<< >>

<< >>

<< >>

<< >>

<< >>

<< >>

**§ 8.4** Neither the Owner's nor the Contractor's representative shall be changed without ten days' prior notice to the other party.

**§ 8.5 Insurance and Bonds**

**§ 8.5.1** The Owner and the Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance as set forth in AIA Document A132™-2019, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds, as revised for this Project, and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

**§ 8.5.2** The Contractor shall provide bonds as set forth in AIA Document A132™-2019, Exhibit A as revised for this Project, in AIA Document A710™-2018, Instructions to Bidders, as revised for this Project, and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

<< >>

**ARTICLE 9 ENUMERATION OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

**§ 9.1** This Agreement is comprised of the following documents:

- .1 AIA Document A132™-2019, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition, as revised for this Project and completed for the Contractor
- .2 AIA Document A132™-2019, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds Exhibit, as revised for this Project
- .3 AIA Document A232™-2019, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition, as revised for this Project
- .4 AIA Document C106™-2013, Digital Data Licensing Agreement, as revised for this Project
- .5 Drawings: All Drawings as listed in Specification Section 000115 Drawing Index and all drawings in the Issued for Bid drawing set.
- .6 Specifications: All Specifications as listed in Specification Section 000110 Table of Contents and all specifications in the Issued for Bid specification book.
- .7 Addenda, if any: 

Number	Date	Pages
.8 Other Exhibits:		
Reviewed and Accepted Contractor's Construction Schedule		
.9 Other documents, if any, listed below:		
Instructions to Bidders;		
Contractor's Bid Form		
- .8 Other Exhibits:  
Reviewed and Accepted Contractor's Construction Schedule
- .9 Other documents, if any, listed below:  
Instructions to Bidders;  
Contractor's Bid Form

This Agreement is entered into as of the day and year first written above.

OWNER (Signature)

« »« »

(Printed name and title)

CONTRACTOR (Signature)

« »« »

(Printed name and title)



# DRAFT AIA® Document A132™ – 2019

## Exhibit A

### Insurance and Bonds

This Insurance and Bonds Exhibit is part of the Agreement, between the Owner and the Contractor, dated the « » day of « » in the year « »  
(In words, indicate day, month, and year.)

for the following **PROJECT**:  
(Name and location or address)

2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2

**THE OWNER:**  
(Name, legal status, and address)

Eastchester Union Free School District  
580 White Plains Road  
Eastchester, New York 10709

**THE CONTRACTOR:**  
(Name, legal status, and address)

« »  
« »

#### TABLE OF ARTICLES

- A.1 GENERAL
- A.2 OWNER'S INSURANCE
- A.3 CONTRACTOR'S INSURANCE AND BONDS
- A.4 SPECIAL TERMS AND CONDITIONS

#### ARTICLE A.1 GENERAL

The Owner and Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance, and provide bonds, as set forth in this Exhibit. As used in this Exhibit, the term General Conditions refers to AIA Document A232™–2019, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction as revised this Project.

#### ARTICLE A.2 OWNER'S INSURANCE

##### § A.2.1 General

Prior to commencement of the Work, the Owner shall secure the insurance, and provide evidence of the coverage, required under this Article A.2.

##### § A.2.2 Liability Insurance

The Owner shall be responsible for purchasing and maintaining the Owner's usual general liability insurance.

#### ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

This document is intended to be used in conjunction with AIA Document A232™–2019, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction. Article 11 of A232™–2019 contains additional insurance provisions

**ELECTRONIC COPYING** of any portion of this AIA® Document to another electronic file is prohibited and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.

### § A.2.3 Required Property Insurance

§ A.2.3.1 This obligation is placed on the Contractor pursuant to Section A.3.3.1.5. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain, from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located, property insurance written on a builder's risk "all-risks" completed value or equivalent policy form and sufficient to cover the total value of the entire Project on a replacement cost basis. The coverage obtained by the Contractor shall be no less than the amount of the initial Contract Sum, plus the value of subsequent Modifications and labor performed and materials or equipment supplied by others. The Builder's Risk insurance obtained by the Contractor shall be maintained until Substantial Completion and thereafter as provided in Section A.3.3, unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents or otherwise agreed in writing by the parties to this Agreement. This insurance shall include the interests of the Owner, Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors in the Project as insureds. This insurance shall include the interests of mortgagees as loss payees.

§ A.2.3.1.1 **Causes of Loss.** The insurance required of the Contractor by this Section A.2.3.1 and Section A.3.3.1.5 shall provide coverage for direct physical loss or damage, and shall not exclude the risks of fire, explosion, theft, vandalism, malicious mischief, collapse, earthquake, flood, or windstorm. The insurance shall also provide coverage for ensuing loss or resulting damage from error, omission, or deficiency in construction methods, design, specifications, workmanship, or materials.

§ A.2.3.1.2 **Specific Required Coverages.** The insurance required of the Contractor by this Section A.2.3.1 and Section A.3.3.1.5 shall provide coverage for loss or damage to false work and other temporary structures, and to building systems from testing and startup. The insurance shall also cover debris removal, including demolition occasioned by enforcement of any applicable legal requirements, and reasonable compensation for the Architect's, Construction Manager's, and Contractor's services and expenses required as a result of such insured loss, including claim preparation expenses.

§ A.2.3.1.3 Unless the parties agree otherwise, the Contractor shall continue the insurance required by Section A.2.3.1 and Section A.3.3.1.5 in effect until expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2 of the General Conditions or, if necessary, replace the insurance policy required under Section A.2.3.1.1 and Section A.3.3.1.5 with property insurance written for the total value of the Project that shall remain in effect until expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2 of the General Conditions.

§ A.2.3.1.4 **Deductibles and Self-Insured Retentions.** If the insurance required by this Section A.2.3 is subject to deductibles or self-insured retentions, the Contractor shall be responsible for all loss not covered because of such deductibles or retentions.

§ A.2.3.2 **Occupancy or Use Prior to Substantial Completion.** The Owner's occupancy or use of any completed or partially completed portion of the Work prior to Substantial Completion shall not commence until the insurance company or companies providing the insurance under Section A.2.3.1 have consented in writing to the continuance of coverage. The Owner and the Contractor shall take no action with respect to partial occupancy or use that would cause cancellation, lapse, or reduction of insurance, unless they agree otherwise in writing.

### § A.2.4 Optional Extended Property Insurance.

The Owner shall purchase and maintain the insurance selected and described below. **Not applicable – none selected** (Select the types of insurance the Owner is required to purchase and maintain by placing an X in the box(es) next to the description(s) of selected insurance. For each type of insurance selected, indicate applicable limits of coverage or other conditions in the fill point below the selected item.)

[ ☐ ] § A.2.4.1 **Loss of Use, Business Interruption, and Delay in Completion Insurance,** to reimburse the Owner for loss of use of the Owner's property, or the inability to conduct normal operations due to a covered cause of loss.

[ ☐ ] § A.2.4.2 **Ordinance or Law Insurance,** for the reasonable and necessary costs to satisfy the minimum requirements of the enforcement of any law or ordinance regulating the demolition, construction, repair, replacement or use of the Project.

[ ☐ ] § A.2.4.3 **Expediting Cost Insurance,** for the reasonable and necessary costs for the temporary repair of damage to insured property, and to expedite the permanent repair or replacement of the damaged

property.

- [ « » ] **§ A.2.4.4 Extra Expense Insurance**, to provide reimbursement of the reasonable and necessary excess costs incurred during the period of restoration or repair of the damaged property that are over and above the total costs that would normally have been incurred during the same period of time had no loss or damage occurred.
- [ « » ] **§ A.2.4.5 Civil Authority Insurance**, for losses or costs arising from an order of a civil authority prohibiting access to the Project, provided such order is the direct result of physical damage covered under the required property insurance.
- [ « » ] **§ A.2.4.6 Ingress/Egress Insurance**, for loss due to the necessary interruption of the insured's business due to physical prevention of ingress to, or egress from, the Project as a direct result of physical damage.
- [ « » ] **§ A.2.4.7 Soft Costs Insurance**, to reimburse the Owner for costs due to the delay of completion of the Work, arising out of physical loss or damage covered by the required property insurance: including construction loan fees; leasing and marketing expenses; additional fees, including those of architects, engineers, consultants, attorneys and accountants, needed for the completion of the construction, repairs, or reconstruction; and carrying costs such as property taxes, building permits, additional interest on loans, realty taxes, and insurance premiums over and above normal expenses.

#### **§ A.2.5 Intentionally Omitted**

### **ARTICLE A.3 CONTRACTOR'S INSURANCE AND BONDS**

#### **§ A.3.1 General**

**§ A.3.1.1 Certificates of Insurance.** The Contractor shall provide certificates of insurance acceptable to the Owner evidencing compliance with the requirements in this Article A.3 at the following times: (1) prior to commencement of the Work; (2) upon renewal or replacement of each required policy of insurance; and (3) upon the Owner's written request. An additional certificate evidencing continuation of commercial liability coverage, including coverage for completed operations, shall be submitted with the final Application for Payment and thereafter upon renewal or replacement of such coverage until the expiration of the periods required by Section A.3.2.1 and Section A.3.3.1. The certificates will show the Owner, its Board of Education, employees and volunteers, the Architect and the Construction Manager as an additional insured on the Contractor's insurance policies, except for Workers' Compensation and New York State Disability Insurance. The certificate of insurance must describe the services provided by the Contractor (e.g., roofing, carpentry or plumbing) that are covered by the liability policies. A fully completed New York Construction Certificate of Liability Insurance Addendum (ACORD 855 2014/15) must be included with the certificates of insurance. For any "Yes" answers on Items G through L on this Form— additional details must be provided in writing. Waivers of subrogation must be provided to the Owner, its Board of Education, employees and volunteers, the Architect and the Construction Manager on all insurance policies except for Disability, OCP and Builders Risk.

**§ A.3.1.2 Deductibles and Self-Insured Retentions.** The Contractor shall disclose to the Owner any deductible or self-insured retentions applicable to any insurance required to be provided by the Contractor. The Contractor agrees to indemnify the District for any applicable deductibles and self-insured retentions.

**§ A.3.1.3 Additional Insured Obligations.** To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall cause the commercial general liability coverage to include (1) the Owner, its Board of Education, employees and volunteers, the Architect and the Architect's consultants, and the Construction Manager and the Construction Manager's consultants, as additional insureds for claims caused in whole or in part by the negligent acts or omissions, intentional misconduct, or reckless acts or omissions of the Contractor or its officers, directors, owners, employees, contractors, subcontractors, suppliers, volunteers or agents during the Contractor's operations; and (2) the Owner, its Board of Education, employees and volunteers as an additional insured for claims caused in whole or in part by the negligent acts or omissions, intentional misconduct, or reckless acts or omissions of the Contractor or its officers, directors, owners, employees, contractors, subcontractors, suppliers, volunteers or agents for which loss occurs during completed operations. The additional insured coverage shall be primary and non-contributory coverage for the Owner, its Board of Education, employees and volunteers, the Architect and the Construction Manager, and shall apply to both ongoing and completed operations. To the extent commercially available, the additional insured coverage shall be no less than that provided by Insurance Services Office, Inc. (ISO) forms CG 20 10 07 04, CG 20



37 07 04, and, with respect to the Architect and the Architect's consultants, and the Construction Manager and the Construction Manager's consultants, CG 20 32 07 04. Additional insured status shall be provided by standard or other endorsements that extend coverage to the Owner for on-going operations (CG 20 38) and products and completed operations (CG 20 37). The decision to accept an endorsement rests solely with the Owner. A completed copy of the endorsements must be attached to the Certificate of Insurance.

### **§ A.3.2 Contractor's Required Insurance Coverage**

**§ A.3.2.1** The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the following types and limits of insurance from an A.M. Best A- rated or better insurer, licensed and admitted to conduct business in New York State. The Contractor shall maintain the required insurance until the expiration of the period for correction of Work as set forth in Section 12.2.2 of the General Conditions, unless a different duration is stated below. Contractor acknowledges that failure to obtain such insurance on behalf of the Owner constitutes a material breach of contract and subjects it to liability for damages, indemnification and all other legal remedies available to the Owner. The Contractor is to provide the Owner with a certificate of insurance, evidencing these requirements have been met, prior to the commencement of work. Subcontractors are subject to the same terms and conditions as stated herein for the Contractor (with the exception of Builder's Risk insurance) and the Contractor must submit to the Owner certificates of insurance evidencing compliance with same by all of its Subcontractors for the Owner's approval prior to start of any work. In the event the Contractor fails to obtain the required certificates of insurance from its Subcontractor(s) and a claim is made or suffered, the Contractor shall indemnify, defend, and hold harmless the Owner, its Board of Education, employees and volunteers, the Architect and the Construction Manager from any and all claims for which the required insurance would have provided coverage. This indemnity obligation is in addition to any other indemnity obligation provided in the Contract and shall survive the termination of the Contract.

Commercial General Liability Insurance, Personal and Advertising Injury Insurance, Owners Contractors Protective (OCP) Insurance, Automobile Liability, Workers' Compensation and NYS Disability Insurance, Employers' Liability Insurance, Professional Liability Insurance (if applicable), Pollution Liability Insurance (if applicable), Builder's Risk, Umbrella/Excess Insurance, Asbestos/Lead Abatement Insurance, Testing Company Errors and Omission Insurance

### **§ A.3.2.2 Commercial General Liability**

**§ A.3.2.2.1** Commercial General Liability insurance for the Project written on an occurrence form with policy limits of not less than one million dollars (\$ 1,000,000 ) each occurrence, two million dollars (\$ 2,000,000 ) general aggregate, and two million dollars (\$ 2,000,000 ) aggregate for products-completed operations hazard, providing coverage for claims including

- .1 damages because of bodily injury, sickness or disease, including occupational sickness or disease, and death of any person;
- .2 personal injury and advertising injury;
- .3 damages because of physical damage to or destruction of tangible property, including the loss of use of such property;
- .4 bodily injury or property damage arising out of completed operations; and
- .5 the Contractor's indemnity obligations under Section 3.18 of the General Conditions.

**§ A.3.2.2.2** The Contractor's Commercial General Liability policy under this Section A.3.2.2 shall not contain an exclusion or restriction of coverage for the following:

- .1 Claims by one insured against another insured, if the exclusion or restriction is based solely on the fact that the claimant is an insured, and there would otherwise be coverage for the claim.
- .2 Claims for property damage to the Contractor's Work arising out of the products-completed operations hazard where the damaged Work or the Work out of which the damage arises was performed by a Subcontractor.
- .3 Claims for bodily injury other than to employees of the insured.
- .4 Claims for indemnity under Section 3.18 of the General Conditions arising out of injury to employees of the insured.
- .5 Claims or loss excluded under a prior work endorsement or other similar exclusionary language.
- .6 Claims or loss due to physical damage under a prior injury endorsement or similar exclusionary language.
- .7 Claims related to residential, multi-family, or other habitational projects, if the Work is to be performed on such a project.
- .8 Claims related to roofing, if the Work involves roofing.

- .9 Claims related to exterior insulation finish systems (EIFS), synthetic stucco or similar exterior coatings or surfaces, if the Work involves such coatings or surfaces.
- .10 Claims related to earth subsidence or movement, where the Work involves such hazards.
- .11 Claims related to explosion, collapse and underground hazards, where the Work involves such hazards.

**§ A.3.2.2.3** Personal and Advertising Injury insurance with policy limits of not less than one million dollars (\$ 1,000,000 ) each occurrence. Damage to Rented with policy limits of not less than one hundred thousand dollars (\$ 100,000 ) each occurrence, and Medical Expenses with policy limits of not less than ten thousand dollars (\$ 10,000 ) each occurrence. General aggregate on a per project basis.

**§ A.3.2.3** Automobile Liability covering vehicles owned, hired, borrowed, and non-owned vehicles used, by the Contractor, with policy limits of not less than one million dollars (\$ 1,000,000 ) per accident, for bodily injury, death of any person, and property damage arising out of the ownership, maintenance and use of those motor vehicles along with any other statutorily required automobile coverage.

**§ A.3.2.4** The Contractor may achieve the required limits and coverage for Commercial General Liability and Automobile Liability through a combination of primary and excess or umbrella liability insurance, provided such primary and excess or umbrella insurance policies result in the same or greater coverage as the coverages required under Section A.3.2.2 and A.3.2.3, and in no event shall any excess or umbrella liability insurance provide narrower coverage than the primary policy. The excess policy shall not require the exhaustion of the underlying limits only through the actual payment by the underlying insurers.

**§ A.3.2.5** Statutory Workers' Compensation (C-105.2 or U-26.3); and NYS Disability Insurance (DB-120.1) for all employees. Proof of coverage must be on the approved specific form, as required by the New York State Workers' Compensation Board. ACORD certificates are not acceptable.

**§ A.3.2.6** Employers' Liability with policy limits not less than one million dollars (\$ 1,000,000 ) each accident, one million dollars (\$ 1,000,000 ) each employee, and one million dollars (\$ 1,000,000 ) policy limit.

**§ A.3.2.7** Jones Act, and the Longshore & Harbor Workers' Compensation Act, as required, if the Work involves hazards arising from work on or near navigable waterways, including vessels and docks

**§ A.3.2.8** If the Contractor is required to furnish professional services as part of the Work, the Contractor shall procure Professional Liability insurance covering performance of the professional services, with policy limits of not less than two million dollars (\$ 2,000,000 ) per claim and two million dollars (\$ 2,000,000 ) in the aggregate.

**§ A.3.2.9** If the Work involves the transport, dissemination, use, or release of pollutants, the Contractor shall procure Pollution Liability insurance, with policy limits of not less than two million dollars (\$ 2,000,000 ) per claim and two million dollars (\$ 2,000,000 ) in the aggregate.

### **§ A.3.3 Contractor's Other Insurance Coverage**

**§ A.3.3.1** Insurance selected and described in this Section A.3.3 shall be purchased from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Contractor shall maintain the required insurance until the expiration of the period for correction of Work as set forth in Section 12.2.2 of the General Conditions, unless a different duration is stated below:

*(If the Contractor is required to maintain any of the types of insurance selected below for a duration other than the expiration of the period for correction of Work, state the duration.)*

#### **§ A.3.3.1.1 Owners Contractors Protective (OCP) Insurance**

- .1 For projects less than or equal to \$1,000,000 and work on 1 story (10 feet) only; \$1 million per occurrence, \$2 million aggregate with the Owner as the Named Insured.
- .2 For projects greater than \$1,000,000 and work over 1 story (10 feet); \$2 million per occurrence, \$4 million aggregate with the Owner as the Named Insured.



.3 For all projects where General Liability, Auto and Umbrella/Excess Coverage is with non-licensed and non-admitted carriers in New York State; \$2 million per occurrence, \$4 million aggregate with the Owner as the named Insured.

.4 The Owner will be the Named Insured on OCP Policies. There will be no Additional Insureds on any OCP Policies.

**§ A.3.3.1.2 Umbrella/Excess Insurance**

.1 \$5 million each Occurrence and Aggregate for general construction and no work at elevation greater than one story (10 feet) or project values less than or equal to \$1,000,000.

.2 \$10 million each Occurrence and Aggregate for high risk construction, work at elevation greater than one story (or greater than 10 feet) or project values greater than \$1,000,000.

.3 Umbrella/Excess coverage shall be on a follow-form basis.

**§ A.3.3.1.3 Asbestos/Lead Abatement Insurance**

.1 \$2,000,000 per occurrence/\$2,000,000 aggregate, including products and completed operations. Such insurance shall include coverage for the Contractor's operations including, but not limited to, removal, replacement, enclosure, encapsulation and/or disposal of asbestos, or any other hazardous material, along with any related pollution events, including coverage for third-party liability claims for bodily injury, property damage and clean-up costs. If a retroactive date is used, it shall pre-date the inception of the Contract.

.2 If the Contractor is using motor vehicles for transporting hazardous materials, the Contractor shall maintain pollution liability broadened coverage (ISO endorsement CA 9948), as well as proof of MCS 90. Coverage shall fulfill all requirements of these specifications and shall extend for a period of three (3) years following acceptance by the Owner of the Certificate of Completion.

**§ A.3.3.1.4 Testing Company Errors and Omission Insurance**

.1 \$1,000,000 per occurrence/\$2,000,000 aggregate for the testing and other professional acts of the Contractor performed under the Contract with the Owner.

**§ A.3.3.1.5 Builder's Risk**

.1 Must be purchased by the Contractor to include interest of the Owner and Contractor jointly in a form satisfactory to the Owner. The limit must reflect the total completed value – all material and labor costs and provide coverage for fire, lightning, explosion, extended coverage, vandalism, malicious mischief, windstorm, hail and/or flood.

**§ A.3.3.2** The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the following types and limits of insurance in accordance with Section A.3.3.1.

*(Select the types of insurance the Contractor is required to purchase and maintain by placing an X in the box(es) next to the description(s) of selected insurance. Where policy limits are provided, include the policy limit in the appropriate fill point.)*

[ « » ] **§ A.3.3.2.1** If there is only one Contractor performing the Work on the Project, property insurance of the same type and scope satisfying the requirements identified in Section A.2.3, which, if selected in this section A.3.3.2.1, relieves the Owner of the responsibility to purchase and maintain such insurance except insurance required by Section A.2.3.1.3 and Section A.2.3.3. The Contractor shall comply with all obligations of the Owner under Section A.2.3 except to the extent provided below. The Contractor shall disclose to the Owner the amount of any deductible, and the Owner shall be responsible for losses within the deductible. Upon request, the Contractor shall provide the Owner with a copy of the property insurance policy or policies required. The Owner shall adjust and settle the loss with the insurer and be the trustee of the proceeds of the property insurance in accordance with Article 11 of the General Conditions unless otherwise set forth below:

*(Where the Contractor's obligation to provide property insurance differs from the Owner's obligations as described under Section A.2.3, indicate such differences in the space below.*

*Additionally, if a party other than the Owner will be responsible for adjusting and settling a loss with*

the insurer and acting as the trustee of the proceeds of property insurance in accordance with Article 11 of the General Conditions, indicate the responsible party below.)

[ « X » ] § **Riggers Liability Insurance:** If the scope of Work involves rigging, hoisting, raising or moving of property or equipment not belonging to the contractor. Riggers Liability Insurance is required to insure for the full value of the property or equipment against physical damage/loss.

[ « X » ] § **A.3.3.2.3 Asbestos Abatement Liability Insurance:** Refer to A.3.3.1.3.

[ « X » ] § **A.3.3.2.4 Insurance for physical damage to property while it is in storage and in transit to the construction site on an “all-risks” completed value form.**

[ « X » ] § **A.3.3.2.5 Property insurance on an “all-risks” completed value form, covering property owned by the Contractor and used on the Project, including scaffolding and other equipment.**

[ « » ] § **A.3.3.2.6 Other Insurance**  
(List below any other insurance coverage to be provided by the Contractor and any applicable limits.)

#### § **A.3.4 Performance Bond and Payment Bond**

The Contractor shall provide surety bonds, from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located, as follows:

(Specify type and penal sum of bonds.)

##### **Type**

Payment Bond

##### **Penal Sum (\$0.00)**

« Contract Sum plus any increase to the Contract Sum through a Modification issued after execution of the Contract. »

Performance Bond

Contract Sum plus any increase to the Contract Sum through a Modification issued after execution of the Contract.

Payment and Performance Bonds shall be AIA Document A312™, Payment Bond and Performance Bond, or contain provisions identical to AIA Document A312™, current as of the date of this Agreement and be modified as required by Section 7.2.2. of AIA Document A701™-2018, Instructions to Bidders, as revised for this Project.

Payment and Performance Bonds shall be in compliance with all terms and requirements set forth in Article 7 of AIA Document A701™-2018, Instructions to Bidders, as revised for this Project.

#### **ARTICLE A.4 SPECIAL TERMS AND CONDITIONS**

Special terms and conditions that modify this Insurance and Bonds Exhibit, if any, are as follows:

##### § **A.4.1 Waivers of Subrogation**

Waivers of Subrogation: The Owner and Contractor waive all rights against each other and any of their Consultants, Architect, Construction Manager, subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents and employees each of the other and Owner's separate Contractors, if any, and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents and employees, for damages caused by fire or other causes of loss to the extent covered by property insurance obtained pursuant to this Article or other insurance applicable to the Work, except such rights as the Owner and Contractor may have to the proceeds of such insurance held by the Owner as fiduciary. The Contractor shall require each of the subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents and employees of any of them, by appropriate agreements, written where legally required for validity, similar waivers each in favor of other parties enumerated herein. The policies shall provide such waivers of subrogation by endorsement or otherwise. A waiver of subrogation shall be effective as to a person or entity even though that person or entity would otherwise have a duty of indemnification, contractual or otherwise, did not pay the insurance premium directly or indirectly, and whether or not the person or entity had an insurable interest in the property damaged.

# DRAFT AIA® Document A232™ – 2019

## ***General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition***

### **for the following PROJECT:**

*(Name, and location or address)*

2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2

### **THE CONSTRUCTION MANAGER:**

*(Name, legal status, and address)*

Arris Contracting Company, Inc.  
189 Smith Street  
Poughkeepsie, New York 12601

### **THE OWNER:**

*(Name, legal status, and address)*

Eastchester Union Free School District  
580 White Plains Road  
Eastchester, New York 10709

### **THE ARCHITECT:**

*(Name, legal status, and address)*

Mastracci Mesiti-Ceas Architecture Engineering P.L.L.C.  
d/b/a MEMASI  
2 Lyon Place  
White Plains, NY 10601

#### **ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:**

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

This document is intended to be used in conjunction with AIA Documents A132™-2019, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition; B132™-2019, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Architect, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition; and C132™-2019, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Construction Manager as Adviser.

**ELECTRONIC COPYING** of any portion of this AIA® Document to another electronic file is prohibited and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.

## TABLE OF ARTICLES

1	GENERAL PROVISIONS
2	OWNER
3	CONTRACTOR
4	ARCHITECT AND CONSTRUCTION MANAGER
5	SUBCONTRACTORS
6	CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS
7	CHANGES IN THE WORK
8	TIME
9	PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION
10	PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY
11	INSURANCE AND BONDS
12	UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK
13	MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS
14	TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT
15	CLAIMS AND DISPUTES



## ARTICLE 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

### § 1.1 Basic Definitions

**§ 1.1.1 The Contract Documents.** The Contract Documents are enumerated in the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor (hereinafter the Agreement) and consist of the Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, Addenda issued prior to execution of the Contract, other documents listed in the Agreement, Instructions to Bidders, Supplemental Instructions Bidders (if any), Contractor's Bid and Modifications issued after execution of the Contract. A Modification is (1) a written amendment to the Contract signed by both parties, (2) a Change Order, (3) a Construction Change Directive, or (4) a written order for a minor change in the Work issued by the Architect.

**§ 1.1.2 The Contract.** The Contract Documents form the Contract for Construction. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. The Contract may be amended or modified only by a Modification. The Contract Documents shall not be construed to create a contractual relationship of any kind (1) between the Contractor and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, (2) between the Owner and the Construction Manager or the Construction Manager's consultants, (3) between the Owner and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, (4) between the Contractor and the Construction Manager or the Construction Manager's consultants, (5) between the Owner and a Subcontractor or Sub-subcontractor (6) between the Construction Manager and the Architect, or (7) between any persons or entities other than the Owner and Contractor. The Construction Manager and Architect shall, however, be entitled to performance and enforcement of obligations under the Contract intended to facilitate performance of their duties. No obligation of the Architect and/or Construction Manager to the Owner, nor any obligation of the Owner to the Architect and/or Construction Manager, whether expressed by agreement or implied by law, shall be construed as intended for the benefit of the Contractor. Nothing in the Contract Documents nor in any aspect of the Architect's and/or Construction Manager's relationship with the Owner shall create or give rise to any duty whatsoever on the part of the Architect and/or the Construction Manager to the Contractor. The term "Contractor" in this Section shall include the Contractor, its officers, employees, agents, contractees, and sub-contractors of any tier; coordinate with Section 3.18.1 of these conditions.

**§ 1.1.3 The Work.** The term "Work" means the construction and services required by the Contract Documents, whether completed or partially completed, and includes all other labor, materials, equipment, and services provided or to be provided by the Contractor to fulfill the Contractor's obligations. The Work may constitute the whole or a part of the Project. The Contractor is cautioned that the "Work included" is general and in no way limits or qualifies the contract requirements.

**§ 1.1.4 The Project.** The Project is the total construction of which the Work performed under the Contract Documents may be the whole or a part and which may include construction by other Contractors, including other Multiple Prime Contractors, and by the Owner's own forces and Separate Contractors.

**§ 1.1.5 Contractors.** Contractors are persons or entities, other than Separate Contractors, who perform Work under contracts with the Owner that are administered by the Architect and Construction Manager, and include other Multiple Prime Contractors.

**§ 1.1.6 Separate Contractors.** Separate Contractors are persons or entities who perform construction under separate contracts with the Owner not administered by the Architect and Construction Manager.

**§ 1.1.7 The Drawings.** The Drawings are the graphic and pictorial portions of the Contract Documents showing the design, location and dimensions of the Work, generally including plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules, and diagrams.

**§ 1.1.8 The Specifications.** The Specifications are that portion of the Contract Documents consisting of the written requirements for materials, equipment, systems, standards and workmanship for the Work, and performance of related services.

**§ 1.1.9 Instruments of Service.** Instruments of Service are representations, in any medium of expression now known or later developed, of the tangible and intangible creative work performed by the Architect and the Architect's consultants under their respective professional services agreements. Instruments of Service also includes, without limitation, studies, surveys, models, sketches, drawings, specifications, and other similar materials.

**§ 1.1.10 Initial Decision Maker.** The Initial Decision Maker is the person identified in the Agreement to render initial decisions on Claims in accordance with Section 15.2.

**§ 1.1.11 Approved.** When the words “approved,” “satisfactory,” “proper,” or “as directed” are used, acceptance by the Architect shall be understood.

**§ 1.1.12 Provide.** When the word “provide” (including derivatives thereof) is used, it shall mean to properly fabricate, complete, transport, deliver, install, erect, construct, test and furnish all labor, materials, equipment, apparatus, appurtenances, and all items and expenses necessary to properly complete in place ready for operation or use under the terms of the Specifications.

**§ 1.1.13 Addenda.** Addenda are written or graphic instruments issued prior to the execution of the contract which modify or interpret the bidding documents, including the Drawings and Specifications, by additions, deletions, clarification, corrections, or supplementary information.

**§ 1.1.14 Bulletins.** Bulletins are written or graphic instruments issued by the Architect after the execution of the contract, which modify or interpret the bidding documents, including the Drawings and Specifications, by additions, deletions, clarification, corrections, or supplementary information.

**§ 1.1.15 Knowledge.** The terms “knowledge,” “recognize” and “discover,” their respective derivatives and similar terms in the Contract Documents, as used in reference to the Contractor, shall be interpreted to mean that which the Contractor knows (or should know), recognizes (or should recognize) and discovers (or should discover) in exercising the care, skill, and diligence required by the Contract Documents. Analogously, the expression “reasonably inferable” and similar terms in the Contract Documents shall be interpreted to mean reasonably inferable by a contractor familiar with the Project and exercising the care, skill, and diligence required of the Contractor by the Contract Documents.

**§ 1.1.16 Furnish.** “Furnish” shall mean purchasing and/or fabricate and deliver to the job site or other location when so designated.

**§ 1.1.17 Install.** “Install” shall mean build-in, mount in position, connect or apply the specified object(s) and, where applicable, adjust and start-in operation.

**§ 1.1.18 Contractor.** Where the word “Contractor” is used in the Contract Documents, it refers to all Prime Contractors. (See Article 3.1 for additional information.).

**§ 1.1.19 Alternate.** “Alternate” shall mean a variation in Contract requirements on which a separate price is to be received by the Owner as part of the bid. If the Alternate is accepted in writing by the Owner, the variation is then a part of the Contract and the amount of money quoted to be added to or deleted from the base bid is taken into account in determining the Contract Sum.

## **§ 1.2 Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents**

**§ 1.2.1** The intent of the Contract Documents is to include all items necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work by the Contractor. The Contract Documents are complementary, and what is required by one shall be as binding as if required by all; performance by the Contractor shall be required only to the extent consistent with the Contract Documents and reasonably inferable from them as being necessary to produce the indicated results.

**§ 1.2.1.1** The invalidity of any provision of the Contract Documents shall not invalidate the Contract or its remaining provisions. If it is determined that any provision of the Contract Documents violates any law, or is otherwise invalid or unenforceable, then that provision shall be revised to the extent necessary to make that provision legal and enforceable. In such case the Contract Documents shall be construed, to the fullest extent permitted by law, to give effect to the parties’ intentions and purposes in executing the Contract.

**§ 1.2.1.2** In the event of conflict, ambiguity and/or unclear circumstances between any of the requirements of the Contract Documents, the requirement that is most inclusive and of highest quantity and/or cost shall govern. The



Contractor shall (1) provide the better quality or greater quantity of Work or (2) comply with the more stringent requirement; either or both in accordance with the Architect's interpretation. The Contractor herewith agrees that no extra compensation shall be awarded to him, since he herewith received specific instructions to the procedure and values of the work. The terms and conditions of this Section 1.2, however, shall not relieve the Contractor of any obligations set forth in Sections 3.2 and 3.7.

§ 1.2.1.2.1 On the Drawings, given dimensions shall take precedence over small scale drawings.

§ 1.2.1.2.2 Before ordering any materials or doing any Work, the Contractor and each Subcontractor shall verify measurements at the Project Site and shall be responsible for the correctness of such measurements. No extra charge or compensation shall be allowed on account of differences between actual dimensions and the dimensions indicated on the Drawings. Any difference which may be found shall be submitted to the Architect through the Construction Manager for resolution before proceeding with the Work.

§ 1.2.1.2.3 If a minor change in the Work is found necessary due to actual field conditions, the Contractor shall submit through the Construction Manager detailed drawings of such departure for approval by the Architect before making the change.

§ 1.2.1.2.4 Drawings, in general, are made to scale, but all working dimensions shall be taken from the figured dimensions or by actual measurements taken at the Project site and in no case by scaling. The Contractor shall study and compare all Drawings and verify all figures before laying out or constructing the Work. Whether or not an error is believed to exist, deviation from the Drawing and the dimensions given thereon shall be made only after approval in writing is obtained from the Architect through the Construction Manager.

§ 1.2.1.2.5 All indications or notations on the Drawings which apply in one of a number of similar situations, materials or processes shall be deemed to apply to all such situations, material or processes wherever they appear in the Work, except where a contrary result is clearly indicated by the Contract Documents.

§ 1.2.1.3 In case of omissions or discrepancies between the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall secure instructions from the Architect through the Construction Manager before proceeding with the work affected by omissions or discrepancies. The Contractor shall assume full responsibility and cost for proceeding with such work without approval.

§ 1.2.1.4 During the course of the Work, should any errors, omissions, ambiguities, discrepancies or conflicts be found on the Drawings or in the Specifications to which the Contractor has failed to call attention before submitting his bid, the Architect through the Construction Manager shall interpret the intent of the Drawings and Specifications and the Contractor hereby agrees to abide by the Architect's interpretation and agrees to carry out the Work in accordance with the decision of the Architect at no additional cost to the Owner.

§ 1.2.1.5 Whenever any additional materials and/or workmanship not shown or specified are required to complete the Work of the Contract Documents in accordance with the obvious intent thereof, the Contractor shall provide such materials and workmanship at no additional cost to the Owner.

§ 1.2.1.6 Salvageable Materials: All existing materials, equipment, misc. etc. scheduled for demolition are the property of the Owner. If requested, Contractors will remove and store any such items to a location designated by the Owner.

§ 1.2.2 Organization of the Specifications into divisions, sections and articles, and arrangement of Drawings shall not control the Contractor in dividing the Work among Subcontractors or in establishing the extent of Work to be performed by any trade.

§ 1.2.2.1 The organization of the Specifications into divisions, sections and articles and arrangement of Drawings shall not control the Contractor in dividing the Work among Subcontractors or in establishing the extent of the Work to be performed by any trade. The organization of the Specifications into divisions, sections and articles and arrangement of Drawings is for the purpose of convenience, and ready reference only. The Contractor will be permitted to allocate the work of Subcontractors at his own discretion regardless of the grouping in the Specifications. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to settle definitely with each Sub-contractor the portions of

the Work, which each will be required to perform. The Contractor represents that the Subcontractors, manufacturers, vendors and suppliers engaged or to be engaged by it are and will be familiar with the requirements for the performance by them of their obligations. The Contractor shall provide each item listed, of quality noted and subject to qualifications noted, and shall perform operations prescribed according to the conditions stated, including specified operations, processes or methods, furnishing therefore all necessary labor, materials, equipment and incidentals required to complete the Work.

**§ 1.2.3** Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, words that have well-known technical or construction industry meanings are used in the Contract Documents in accordance with such recognized meanings. See also Section 16.3 of these General Conditions.

**§ 1.2.4** Execution of the Contract by the Contractor is a representation that the Contractor has carefully examined the Contract Documents and the site, and represents that the Contractor is thoroughly familiar with the nature and location of the Work, the site and all improvements thereon, the specific conditions under which the Work is to be performed, and all matters which may in any way affect the Work or its performance. The Contractor further represents that as a result of such examinations and investigations, the Contractor thoroughly understands the Contract Documents and their intent and purpose, and is familiar with all applicable codes, ordinances, laws, regulations, and rules as they apply to the Work, and that the Contractor will abide by same. Claims for additional time or additional compensation as a result of the Contractor's failure to follow the foregoing procedure and to familiarize itself with all local conditions and the Contract Documents will not be permitted. The Contractor shall also review accessibility and general character of the site or building(s), the extent of existing work within or adjacent to the site, and any other work being performed thereon at the time of submission of his bid.

**§ 1.2.5** It is intended that all mechanical and electrical systems will be complete and in proper operation and that all construction components will be complete and in compliance with accepted construction practice upon completion of the Work. Even if items are missing from the Drawings and/or Specifications, but are normally required for proper operation of mechanical and electrical systems, or to complete otherwise incomplete construction or to meet governing code requirements, they shall be included by the Contractor, unless he sought and received contradictory interpretation or clarification from the Architect.

**§ 1.2.6** All work mentioned or indicated in the Contract Documents shall be performed by the Contractor as part of this Contract unless it is specifically indicated in the Contract Documents that such Work is to be done by others.

**§ 1.2.7** For applicable codes and standards for material furnished and work installed refer to Section 16.3 of these General Conditions.

**§ 1.2.8** The Contractor and all Subcontractors shall refer to all of the Drawings, including those showing primarily the work of the plumbing, heating, ventilation, air conditioning, electrical, and other specialized trades, and to all of the sections of the Specifications, and shall perform all work reasonably inferable therefrom as being necessary to produce the indicated results.

**§ 1.2.9** All indications or notations on the Drawings which apply to one of a number of similar situations, materials, or processes shall be deemed to apply to all such situations, materials, or processes wherever they appear in the Work, except where a contrary result is clearly indicated by the Contract Documents.

**§ 1.2.10** The Contractor shall provide all labor, materials, equipment, appliances and services necessary to execute and complete all work as required by the Contract Documents and the applicable Building Codes. Contractors shall conduct pre-construction surveys and provide photo/videos of any existing damage in areas where new construction is to take place prior to the start of work.

**§ 1.2.10.1** The Contractor and each Subcontractor shall evaluate and satisfy themselves with the conditions at the site and limitations under which the Work is to be performed including, without limitation, (1) the location, condition, layout and nature of the Project site and surrounding areas, (2) generally prevailing climatic conditions, (3) anticipated labor supply and costs, (4) availability and cost of materials, tools and equipment, (5) any time restrictions for accessing or working at the site, (6) the storage, handling and trucking of materials to be used on-site, and (7) all other matters as may be incidental to the work under the Contract, before and after delivery of the bid proposal.



§ 1.2.10.2 The Owner assumes no responsibility or liability for the physical condition or safety of the Project site or any improvements located on the Project site. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for providing a safe place for the performance of the Work. The Owner shall not be required to make any adjustment in either the Contract Sum or Contract Time in connection with any failure by the Contractor or any Subcontractor to comply with the requirements of this Section 1.2.10.

§ 1.2.10.3 Contractor represents and warrants that its investigation of the site was performed in detail and was sufficient to disclose the condition of the Project Site and all improvements thereon, and the conditions under which the Work is to be performed, including, without limitation (i) the location, condition, layout and nature of the Project Site and surrounding areas; (ii) anticipated labor supply costs; (iii) availability and cost of materials, tools, and equipment; and (iv) other similar issues pertinent to the performance of the Work.

§ 1.2.10.4 The Contractor shall be responsible to remove and/or relocate all items which interfere with the new construction and shall correct all visible code violations at no additional cost to the Owner. Such violations shall include, but not be limited to, electrical panel wires, firestopping at fire-rated partitions.

§ 1.2.11 If the Contract Documents are not in concurrence regarding the quantity or quality of products, the Contractor shall request interpretation from the Architect. The Architect's interpretations shall be based on the following criteria:

- .1 Specifications shall determine quality.
- .2 Drawings shall determine quantity.
- .3 Large scale details shall govern over smaller scale details.

§ 1.2.12 Wherever required by the context, any gender shall include the other gender, the singular shall include the plural, and the plural shall include the singular. Each term defined in the Contract Documents may be used in its singular or plural form whether or not so defined.

§ 1.2.13 In the event of conflicts or discrepancies among the Contract Documents, interpretations will be based on the following priorities:

- .1 Modifications issued after execution of the Agreement.
- .2 The Agreement between the Owner and the Contractor.
- .3 Addenda issued prior to the execution of the Agreement, with those of later dates having precedence over those of earlier dates.
- .4 The Instructions to Bidders;
- .5 The Supplementary Conditions (if any).
- .6 These General Conditions of Contract.
- .7 The Drawings and Specifications.

§ 1.2.14 Should the Architect's written interpretations, in the opinion of the Contractor, show additional work, or work of more expensive character than that shown or inferred by the Contract Drawings, it shall be the duty of the Contractor to so notify the Architect through the Construction Manager within five (5) days from receipt of same in order that proper adjustment may be made if found justifiable in the opinion of the Architect and the Owner. The Contractor shall assume full responsibility for all such work done without the approval of the Architect, the Construction Manager and the Owner.

### § 1.3 Capitalization

Terms capitalized in these General Conditions include those that are (1) specifically defined, (2) the titles of numbered articles, or (3) the titles of other documents published by the American Institute of Architects.

### § 1.4 Interpretation

In the interest of brevity, the Contract Documents frequently omit modifying words such as "all" and "any" and articles such as "the" and "an," but the fact that a modifier or an article is absent from one statement and appears in another is not intended to affect the interpretation of either statement.

### § 1.5 Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications, and Other Instruments of Service

**§ 1.5.1** The Architect and the Architect's consultants shall be deemed the authors and owners of their respective Instruments of Service, including the Drawings and Specifications, and retain all common law, statutory, and other reserved rights in their Instruments of Service, including copyrights, except as otherwise expressly agreed to in writing between the Owner and the Architect and/or the Architect's consultants. The Contractor, Subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, and suppliers shall not own or claim a copyright in the Instruments of Service. Submittal or distribution to meet official regulatory requirements or for other purposes in connection with the Project is not to be construed as publication in derogation of the Owner's, the Architect's or Architect's consultants' reserved rights.

**§ 1.5.2** The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers are authorized to use and reproduce the Instruments of Service provided to them, subject to any protocols established pursuant to Section 1.7, solely and exclusively for execution of the Work. All copies made under this authorization shall bear the copyright notice, if any, shown on the Instruments of Service. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers may not use the Instruments of Service on other projects or for additions to the Project outside the scope of the Work without the specific written consent of the Owner, Architect, and the Architect's consultants.

## **§ 1.6 Notice**

**§ 1.6.1** Except as otherwise provided in Section 1.6.2, where the Contract Documents require one party to notify or give notice to the other party, such notice shall be in writing and given, served or made (1) by depositing the same in the United States mail addressed to the authorized representative as specified in the Contract (or if no representative is specified to such party at the address stated in the Contract) of the party to be notified, postpaid and registered or certified with return receipt requested, (2) by depositing the same for overnight delivery (prepaid or billed to the party giving notice) with a nationally recognized overnight delivery service (e.g. Federal Express, USPS, UPS, etc.) addressed to the authorized representative of the party to be notified (or if no representative is specified to such party at the address stated in the Contract) or (3) by delivering the same in person to the said authorized representative of the party (or if no representative is specified to such party at the address stated in the Contract). Notices may be made by the party giving the notice by the party's counsel, the authorized representative of the party as specified in the Contract, or by an officer of the party that has authority to bind the party. Notices are to be sent to the designated representative of the party specified in the contract, when there is such designation, at the address stated in the Contract. Notice deposited in the mail in accordance with this Section 1.6.1 shall be effective unless otherwise stated in the Contract from and after the fourth (4<sup>th</sup>) day following the date deposited in a U.S. mail receptacle or when actually received by the party to whom addressed, whichever is earlier. Notices transmitted by overnight delivery shall be effective the first business day (excludes holidays, Saturdays and Sundays) following the day of deposit with the nationally recognized overnight delivery service or when actually received by the party to whom addressed, whichever is earlier. Notice given by delivery in person shall be effective only if and when received by the party to be notified. By giving the other parties at least seven (7) days written notice thereof, the Contractor, Owner, Construction Manager and Architect have the right to change their respective designee and respective address to any address in the United States of America for receipt of notices.

**§ 1.6.2** Notice of Claims as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be provided in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly served only if delivered to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed by certified or registered mail, or by courier providing proof of delivery.

## **§ 1.7 Digital Data Use and Transmission**

The parties shall agree upon protocols governing the transmission and use of Instruments of Service or any other information or documentation in digital form. Unless otherwise provided in the Agreement or the Contract Documents or as otherwise agreed to by the parties, the parties will use AIA Document C106™-2013, Digital Data Licensing Agreement, to establish the protocols for the development, use, transmission, and exchange of digital data.

## **§ 1.8 Confidentiality**

**§ 1.8.1** The Contractor warrants and represents that the Contractor shall not knowingly or negligently communicate or disclose at any time to any person or entity any materials or information with respect to the Work or the Project, including without limitation any promotional or marketing media or other material or information related to the Owner, the Work or the Project, except: (1) with prior written consent of the Owner, (2) information that was in the public domain prior to the date of this Agreement, (3) information which becomes part of the public domain by publication or otherwise not due to any unauthorized act or omission of the Contractor, (4) as may be required to perform the Work or by any applicable law, or (5) for purposes of coordination with other prime contractors. The

Contractor and its employees, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors and agents hereby agree to indemnify and hold the Owner, the Construction Manager and Architect and their respective employees, consultants, volunteers and agents harmless from and against any cost, damage, liability, loss or claim arising from violation of the foregoing.

§ 1.8.2 The Contractor, any time upon request of the Owner, shall immediately return and surrender to the Owner all copies of any materials, records, notices, memoranda, recordings, drawings, specifications, and mock-ups and any other documents furnished by the Owner, Construction Manager or the Architect to the Contractor.

§ 1.8.3 The Contractor shall specifically cause all Subcontractors or any other person or entity performing any services, or furnishing any materials or equipment of the Work to warrant and represent all items set forth in this Section 1.8.

§ 1.8.4 The indemnities, representations and warranties contained in this Section 1.8 shall survive the complete performance of the Work or earlier termination of this Agreement.

## ARTICLE 2 OWNER

### § 2.1 General

§ 2.1.1 The Owner is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Owner shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Owner with respect to all matters requiring the Owner's approval or authorization. Except as otherwise provided in Section 4.2.1, the Construction Manager and the Architect do not have such authority. The term "Owner" means the Owner or the Owner's authorized representative.

### § 2.2 Intentionally omitted

### § 2.3 Information and Services Required of the Owner

§ 2.3.1 Unless otherwise provided under the Contract Documents, the Owner, assisted by the Construction Manager and the Architect, shall secure and pay for the building permit. The Contractor shall comply with and obtain, at its expense, all other licenses and permits required by Federal, State and local laws, rules, and ordinances necessary for the Work.

### § 2.3.2 Intentionally omitted

### § 2.3.3 Intentionally omitted

### § 2.3.4 Intentionally omitted

§ 2.3.5 The Owner shall furnish surveys, upon written request of the Contractor and to the extent same exist, describing physical characteristics, legal limitations and utility locations for the site of the Project, and a legal description of the site. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely on the accuracy of information furnished by the Owner but shall exercise proper precautions relating to the safe performance of the Work.

§ 2.3.6 The Owner, through the Architect or Construction Manager, shall furnish information or services required of the Owner by the Contract Documents with reasonable promptness. The Owner shall also furnish, through the Architect or Construction Manager, any other information or services under the Owner's control and relevant to the Contractor's performance of the Work with reasonable promptness after receiving the Contractor's written request for such information or services. "Reasonable promptness" shall be measured from the time of the Owner's receipt of written request for such information or services.

§ 2.3.7 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, The Owner shall furnish to the Contractor one copy of the Contract Documents for purposes of making reproductions pursuant to Section 1.5.2.

§ 2.3.8 The Owner shall forward all communications to the Contractor through the Construction Manager. Other communication shall be made as set forth in Section 4.2.6.

## **§ 2.4 Owner's Right to Stop the Work**

If the Contractor fails to correct Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents as required by Section 12.2 or repeatedly fails to carry out Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Owner may issue a written order to the Contractor to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until the cause for such order has been eliminated; however, the right of the Owner to stop the Work shall not give rise to a duty on the part of the Owner to exercise this right for the benefit of the Contractor or any other person or entity.

## **§ 2.5 Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work**

If the Contractor defaults or neglects to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and fails within a three-day period after receipt of notice from the Owner, Architect or Construction Manager to commence and continue correction of such default or neglect with diligence and promptness, the Owner may, after such three (3) day period and without prejudice to other remedies the Owner may have, correct such default or neglect at Contractor's expense. The Owner's reasonable cost of correcting such default or neglect shall be deducted from payments due the Contractor by Change Order, Construction Change Directive, back charge or other means. The Construction Manager or Architect may, pursuant to Section 9.5.1, withhold, modify and/or nullify a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to reimburse the Owner for the reasonable cost of correcting such deficiencies. The Owner's reasonable costs shall include the cost of labor and materials to complete the correction of such default or neglect, the Owner's expenses and compensation for the Construction Manager's and Architect's and their respective consultants' additional services made necessary by such default, neglect, or failure, and, without limitation, the Owner's reasonable attorney's fees. If current and future payments due the Contractor are not sufficient to cover such amounts, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. If the Contractor disagrees with the actions of the Owner or the Architect, or the amounts claimed as costs to the Owner, the Contractor may file a Claim pursuant to Article 15.

## **§ 2.6 Acceleration Clause**

**§ 2.6.1** The Owner reserves the right to accelerate the work of the Contract. In the event that the Owner directs acceleration, such directive will be only in written form. The Contractor shall keep cost and other Project records related to the acceleration directive separately from normal Project costs and records and shall provide a written record of acceleration cost to the Owner on a daily basis.

**§ 2.6.2** In the event that the Contractor believes that some action or inaction on the part of the Owner constitutes an acceleration directive, the Contractor shall immediately notify the Owner in writing that the Contractor considers the actions an acceleration directive. This written notification shall detail the circumstances of the claimed acceleration directive. The Contractor shall not accelerate their work efforts until the Owner responds in writing to the written notification. If acceleration is then directed or required by the Owner, all cost records referred to above shall be maintained by the Contractor and provided to the Owner on a daily basis.

**§ 2.6.3** In order to preserve a claim to recover additional costs due to acceleration, the Contractor must document that additional expenses were incurred and paid by the Contractor. Labor costs recoverable will be only overtime or shift premium costs or the cost of additional laborers brought to the site to accomplish the accelerated work effort. Equipment costs recoverable will be only the cost of added equipment mobilized to the site to accomplish the accelerated work effort.

**§ 2.6.4** Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in this Section 2.6, the Contractor shall not be entitled to any additional costs, expenses or payments in the event of acceleration due to or required as a result of any delays caused by or attributable to the Contractor.

## **ARTICLE 3 CONTRACTOR**

### **§ 3.1 General**

**§ 3.1.1** The Contractor is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Contractor shall be lawfully licensed, if required in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Contractor shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Contractor with respect to all matters under this Contract. The term "Contractor" means the Contractor or the Contractor's authorized representative.

**§ 3.1.2** The Contractor shall perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall refer to all of the Drawings and all sections of the Specifications and shall perform all work reasonably inferable therefrom as being necessary to produce the indicated results. See also Section 1.2.6 of these General Conditions.

**§ 3.1.3** The Contractor shall not be relieved of its obligations to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents either by activities or duties of the Construction Manager or Architect in their administration of the Contract, or by tests, inspections or approvals required or performed by persons or entities other than the Contractor.

**§ 3.1.4** The Contractor shall attend progress meetings with the Construction Manager and such other persons the Owner may wish to have present. The progress meetings shall include all key personnel on the job, including the Contractor and Sub-contractors, or other persons in charge of various phases of the work.

**§ 3.2 Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions by Contractor**

**§ 3.2.1** Execution of the Contract by the Contractor is a representation that the Contractor has visited the site, become generally familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed, and correlated personal observations with requirements of the Contract Documents. The Contractor is deemed to be a qualified expert in the systems and construction requirements of the Work of his Contract. He is deemed to have anticipated the more expensive way of doing the Work, unless he sought and received a contradictory written interpretation, from the Architect, clarifying any errors, inconsistencies or omissions he may discover in the Contract Documents. Even if items are missing from the Drawings or Specifications, but are normally required for proper execution, function and completion of the Work and the Contractor begins fabrication or execution of the Work without requesting said interpretation from the Architect, no excuse will thereafter be entertained for failure to complete the Work within the cost limits of his Contract. See also Sections 1.2.4, 1.2.10.1 and 1.2.10.2 of these General Conditions

**§ 3.2.1.1** The General Contractor shall establish base lines and benchmarks at the sites of the Work from which the Contractor shall establish reference control points and complete the layout of the Work to be performed under the Contract Documents, including but not limited to establishing wall and partition lines required in laying out the Work. Each Contractor is responsible for utility mark outs as it pertains to the scope of the Contractor's Work.

**§ 3.2.1.1.1** Unless otherwise indicated in the Contract Documents, each Contractor shall furnish all stakes and other required equipment, tools, materials and labor as may be required in laying out any part of the Work from the baselines and benchmarks established by the General Contractor. Each Contractor is solely responsible for the accuracy of the layout of its Work.

**§ 3.2.1.1.2** The Architect or Construction Manager may require the Work be suspended at any time when location and limit marks established by the Contractor are not reasonably adequate to permit checking completed work or work in progress.

**§ 3.2.1.2** Each Contractor shall be responsible for all measurements that may be required for execution of the Work to the exact position and elevation as prescribed by the Contract Documents or as the same may be modified at the direction of the Architect to meet changed conditions or as a result of a modification to the Contract.

**§ 3.2.1.3** If, for any reason, monuments are disturbed, it shall be the responsibility of the offending Contractor to reestablish them, without cost to the Owner.

**§ 3.2.1.4** The accuracy of grades, elevations, dimensions or locations given in the Contract Documents or the work installed by other contractors is not guaranteed by the Architect or the Owner. The Contractor shall satisfy itself as to the accuracy of all grades, elevations, dimensions, utilities and locations. Prior to connecting its Work to existing structures or other contractor's work, the Contractor shall verify all dimensions and the suitability of the existing structures or work to receive the Contractor's Work. Any errors due to the Contractor's failure to verify such grades, elevations, dimensions, or locations shall be rectified promptly by the Contractor without any additional cost to the Owner.

**§ 3.2.1.5** The Contractor shall be responsible to remove and/or relocate all items that interfere with the new construction at no additional cost to the Owner.

**§ 3.2.1.6** The Owner shall not be required to make any adjustment in the Contract Sum or Contract Time in connection with any failure by the Contractor or any Subcontractor to comply with the requirements of this Section 3.2.



**§ 3.2.2** Because the Contract Documents are complementary, the Contractor shall, before starting each portion of the Work and at frequent intervals during the progress of the Work, carefully study and compare the various Contract Documents relative to that portion of the Work, as well as the information furnished by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.5, shall take field measurements of any existing conditions related to that portion of the Work, and shall observe any conditions at the site affecting it. These obligations are for the purpose of facilitating coordination and construction by the Contractor and are not for the purpose of discovering errors, omissions, or inconsistencies in the Contract Documents; however, the Contractor shall promptly report to the Construction Manager and Architect any errors, inconsistencies or omissions discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information submitted to the Construction Manager in such form as the Construction Manager and Architect may require. It is recognized that the Contractor's review is made in the Contractor's capacity as a contractor and not as a licensed design professional, unless otherwise specifically provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.2.2.1** Should the Contractor perform any construction activity knowing it involves an error, inconsistency or omission in the Contract Documents without reporting such error, inconsistency or omission in the Contract Documents to the Construction Manager and Architect, the Contractor shall be solely responsible for such performance and shall bear all costs of correction.

**§ 3.2.2.2** If any words or numbers that are necessary to a clear understanding of the Work are illegible or omitted, or should an error or discrepancy occur in any of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall immediately notify the Construction Manager and Architect, in writing, of such illegibility, omission, error or discrepancy and the Contractor shall not proceed with that portion of the Work until clarification from the Architect is received. If the Contractor proceeds without so notifying the Construction Manager and Architect or waiting for clarification from the Architect, the Contractor shall be responsible for the cost of correcting same, including any resulting damage.

**§ 3.2.3** The Contractor is not required to ascertain that the Contract Documents are in accordance with applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, but the Contractor shall promptly report to the Construction Manager and Architect any nonconformity discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information submitted to Construction Manager in such form as the Construction Manager and Architect may require.

**§ 3.2.4** If the Contractor believes that additional cost or time is involved because of clarifications or instructions the Architect issues in response to the Contractor's notices or requests for information pursuant to Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall submit Claims as provided in Article 15. If the Contractor fails to perform the obligations of Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall pay such costs and damages to the Owner as would have been avoided if the Contractor had performed such obligations. If the Contractor performs those obligations, the Contractor shall not be liable to the Owner, Construction Manager or Architect for damages resulting from errors, inconsistencies or omissions in the Contract Documents, for differences between field measurements or conditions and the Contract Documents, or for nonconformities of the Contract Documents to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities.

**§ 3.2.5** The Contractor may submit requests for information to the Architect through the Construction Manager to help facilitate the Contractor's performance of the Contract. Prior to submitting each request for information, the Contractor shall first carefully study and compare the Contract Documents, field conditions, other Owner provided information, Contractor prepared Coordination Drawings, and prior Project correspondence and documentation to determine that the information to be requested is not reasonably obtainable from such sources.

**§ 3.2.6** Each request for information shall be submitted to the Architect through the Construction Manager, in writing, on AIA Document G716™-2004 Request for Information. Each request for information shall identify the specific sources which were reviewed by the Contractor in an effort to determine the information requested, and a statement to the effect that the information being requested could not be determined from such sources.

**§ 3.2.7** The Contractor shall submit each request for information sufficiently in advance of the date by which such information is required in order to allow the Architect sufficient time, in the Architect's professional judgment, to permit adequate review and response and to permit Contractor compliance with the latest construction schedule.

**§ 3.2.8** The Contractor shall maintain a log at the Project site that sequentially numbers and lists each request for information. This log shall contain the Drawing reference or Specification section to which the request pertains, the

date of the request, to whom the request was made, by whom the request was made, the nature of the request, and the Architect's resolution thereof. This log shall be reviewed at each Project meeting and the status of the requests for information shall be made part of the minutes of such meetings.

**§ 3.2.9** The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner amounts charged to the Owner by the Architect for responding to Contractor requests for information where such information is available to the Contractor from a careful study and comparison of the Contract Documents, field conditions, other Owner provided information, Contractor prepared Coordination Drawings, or prior Project correspondence or documentation.

### **§ 3.3 Supervision and Construction Procedures**

**§ 3.3.1** The Contractor shall supervise and direct the Work, using the Contractor's best skill and attention. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for, and have control over, construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures, and for coordinating all portions of the Work under the Contract. If the Contract Documents give specific instructions concerning construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures, the Contractor shall evaluate the jobsite safety thereof and shall be solely responsible for the jobsite safety of such means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. If the Contractor determines that such means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures may not be safe, the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Owner, the Construction Manager, and the Architect, and the Contractor shall propose alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures, including disclosure of any effect on any warranties, including the Contractor's general warranty. The Architect shall evaluate the proposed alternative solely for conformance with the design intent for the completed construction. The Construction Manager shall review the proposed alternative for sequencing, constructability, and coordination impacts on the other Contractors. Unless the Architect or the Construction Manager objects to the Contractor's proposed alternative, the Contractor shall perform the Work using its alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. All loss, damage, liability or cost of correcting defective work arising from the employment of specific construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures shall be born solely by the Contractor.

**§ 3.3.1.1** The Contractor shall be responsible for and coordinate any and all inspections required by any governmental body having jurisdiction over the Project. Failure to obtain any permits, licenses or other approvals because of the failure of the Contractor to conform to this requirement shall not extend the Contract time, and the Contractor shall not be entitled to any increase in the contract sum therefore. In addition, any additional costs and/or expenses of any nature incurred by the Owner as a result of the Contractor's failure to conform to this requirement shall constitute a charge against the Contractor's contract.

**§ 3.3.2** The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for acts and omissions of the Contractor's employees, Subcontractors and their agents and employees, and other persons performing portions of the Work for, or on behalf of, the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors.

**§ 3.3.3** The Contractor shall be responsible for inspection of portions of the Project already performed to determine that such portions are in proper condition to receive subsequent Work.

**§ 3.3.4** Each Contractor shall be responsible for complying with applicable union regulations existing under current labor agreements in performing construction work on the Project. The Contractor shall make all necessary arrangements to reconcile, without delay, damage or cost to the Owner and without recourse to the Construction Manager, Architect or the Owner, any conflict between the Contractor's Contract with the Owner and any agreements or regulations of any kind at any time in force among members of a trade union or any councils that regulate the activities of a trade. The existing Construction Manager/Owner Contract is an agency contract and all construction contracts will be made directly with the Owner.

**§ 3.3.5** It is understood and agreed that the relationship between the Contractor and the Owner shall be that of an independent contractor. Nothing contained in or inferable from the Contract Documents shall be deemed or construed to (1) make the Contractor the agent, servant or employee of the Owner or (2) create any partnership, joint venture or other association between the Owner and Contractor. Any direction or instruction by the Owner regarding the Work shall be given solely to relate the results the Owner desires to obtain from the Work and shall not be construed as affecting the Contractor's independent contractor status.

### § 3.4 Labor and Materials

§ 3.4.1 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide and pay for labor, materials, equipment, tools, construction equipment and machinery, water, heat, utilities, transportation, and other facilities and services necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work, whether temporary or permanent and whether or not incorporated or to be incorporated in the Work.

§ 3.4.1.1 The Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating the work of its own forces and the work of subcontractors engaged by it to perform the Work of the Project on its behalf. The Contractor shall review any specified procedure(s) or installation procedure(s) with its employees and/or subcontractors, including those recommended by any product manufacturer, prior to the commencement of the relevant portion of the Work to be performed.

§ 3.4.1.2 The Contractor is solely responsible for managing labor and labor relations with respect to those engaged by it to perform the Work of the Project, including labor disputes or concerted activity, direct or indirect. No delay in the performance of the Work shall be excused by reason of labor problems affecting the Contractor or any subcontractor. There shall be no strikes, picketing, work stoppages, slowdowns or other disruptive activity at the Project sites for any reason by anyone employed or engaged by the Contractor to perform its portion of the Work. There shall be no lockout at the Project by the Contractor.

§ 3.4.1.3 Should it become necessary to create a separate entrance for a Contractor involved in a dispute, all costs associated with creating such entrance shall be borne by the Contractor involved in the dispute. Such costs shall include but not be limited to signage, fencing, temporary roads and security personnel.

§ 3.4.1.4 The Contractor shall be liable to the Owner for all damages and additional costs incurred by the Owner as result of strikes, picketing, work stoppages, slowdowns or other disruptive activity at the Project sites.

§ 3.4.1.5 In the event of strikes or labor disputes by the Contractor's forces or other prime contractors, or separate contractors performing work for the Owner, the Contractor shall continue with its work and provide all necessary manpower as required to maintain the schedule and completion dates of the Project. The Contractor shall ensure that its Work continues uninterrupted during the pendency of a labor dispute.

§ 3.4.2 Except in the case of minor changes in the Work approved by the Architect in accordance with Section 3.12.8 or ordered by the Architect in accordance with Section 7.4, the Contractor may make substitutions only with the consent of the Owner, after evaluation by the Architect in accordance with Section 3.4.4 herein, in consultation with the Construction Manager, and in accordance with a Change Order or Construction Change Directive.

§ 3.4.3 The Contractor shall enforce strict discipline and good order among the Contractor's employees and other persons carrying out the Work. The Contractor shall not permit employment of unfit persons or persons not properly skilled in tasks assigned to them. The Owner reserves the right to object to Contractor's use of persons who appear unfit or not skilled in the tasks assigned to them. Should any disorderly, incompetent, unfit or unskilled person be hired or employed by the Contractor, upon or about the premises of the Owner, for any purpose or in any capacity, upon request of the Owner, such person shall be removed from the Project and shall not be reassigned to the Project without the prior written permission of the Owner, through the Construction Manager.

§ 3.4.4 Substitutions: Substitutions may be proposed by the Contractor after award of Contract if, and only if, all specified materials, products or equipment are removed from, or becomes unavailable in, the marketplace after execution of the Contract and only at "no change" or "credit" to the Contract Sum. Such substitutions shall comply with the following requirements:

- .1 The materials, products and equipment described in the Contract Documents establish the standard of required quality, function, dimension and appearance expected. Substitution requests will be considered only if these standards are met, or exceeded, and the Architect and Owner subsequently approve the substitutions.
- .2 Each request for substitution shall be submitted on forms provided by Architect and shall include:
  - (a) The name of the material, product or equipment item for which substitution is requested, the reason for the requested substitution, and a complete description of the proposed substitute including drawings, cuts, performance and test data, warranties, installation instructions, operating procedures,



significant qualities of the proposed substitution (e.g., performance, weight, size, durability and visual effects) and any other information necessary for a complete evaluation. The request shall include a statement setting forth changes in other materials, equipment, or other portions of the Work, including changes in the work of other contracts or the impact on any Project Certifications (such as LEED) and the Project schedule, which will result from incorporation of the proposed substitution.

- (b) A statement setting forth any changes in other materials, products, equipment or other Work that incorporation of the substitution would require and the impact if any on Project Certifications (such as LEED), shall be included.
- .3 The burden of proof of the merit of the proposed substitution is upon the proposer.
- .4 By making a request for substitution, the Contractor:
- (a) represents that it has investigated the proposed substitute product and has determined that it is equal to or superior in all respects to that specified and conforms to and meets all the requirements of the pertinent Specifications and the requirements shown on the Drawings;
  - (b) represents that the warranty for the substitution will be the same, or greater than, that applicable to the specified product;
  - (c) certifies that the cost data is complete and includes all related costs under the Contract, including professional services necessary and/or required for the Architect to implement the proposed substitution and waives any and all claims for additional costs related to the substitution which subsequently become apparent; and
  - (d) represents that it will coordinate the installation of the accepted substitute, making all such changes to the Drawings effected by the change and to all Specifications as required for the Work to be completed.
- .5 The Architect's decision of approval or disapproval of a proposed substitution shall be final and will be set forth in writing. Should the Architect not approve the proposed substitution, the cost of the Architect's and his consultant's review of any subsequent proposed substitutions for the material, product or equipment shall be deducted from the Contract Sum. The rate for the Architect's and his consultant's review shall be one-hundred seventy-five dollars (\$175) per hour of professional time expended for the review.
- .6 Contractor's Responsibilities: If any of the following conditions occur due to substitutions, the Contractor making the substitution shall bear the cost of such conditions, including payment for services rendered by the Architect:
- (a) Redesign required for any of the Work.
  - (b) Material or quantity changes for any of the Work.
  - (c) Delays in any of the Work.
  - (d) Request for information generated due to substitutions.

**§ 3.4.5** All products submitted for use and incorporated into this Project shall be asbestos free. The Contractor is obligated, by executing the Contract with the Owner, to ensure that absolutely no asbestos containing material is used in conjunction with the performance of its Work. It is the Contractor's sole responsibility to ensure that no asbestos containing material is built into the construction, or that any equipment or materials used in the construction contain any asbestos containing material. If asbestos containing material is found, at any time during or after the construction is completed, it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor who installed said material to remove it and replace it with new non-asbestos containing material, in accordance with federal, state and local mandates, and to indemnify all their employees, agents, or servants or any third parties including but not limited to the Owner, the Construction Manager and the Architect, and their respective Boards of Education, contractors, consultants, volunteers or employees for any costs or damages incurred on account of the presence, removal and remediation of asbestos containing material as a result of the acts or omissions of the Contractor, its subcontractors and/or their respective officers, directors, employees, agents or servants. This provision will be limited only to the extent required by law, is in addition to the indemnities provided in Section 3.18 and elsewhere in the Contract Documents and shall survive the termination or expiration of the Contract.

**§ 3.4.6** If not already provided prior to execution of the Contract, within three (3) days of executing the Contract, Contractor shall furnish in writing to the Construction Manager and Architect a list showing the name of the manufacturer proposed to be used for each of the products identified in the Specifications and, where applicable, the name of the installing Subcontractor. The Architect through the Construction Manager will promptly reply in writing stating whether or not the Owner or Architect, after due investigation, has reasonable objection to any such proposed manufacturer or installer. If adequate data on a proposed manufacturer or installer is not available, the

Architect or Owner or Construction Manager may state that action will be deferred until the Contractor provides additional data. Failure of the Owner, Architect or Construction Manager to make objection within ten (10) days of receipt of the list shall be deemed no reasonable objection. Failure to object to a manufacturer or installer shall not constitute a waiver of the requirements of the Contract Documents and products furnished shall conform to the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.4.7** Contractor shall furnish the Construction Manager in writing the names, addresses and telephone numbers of the members of Contractor's organization who can be contacted in the event of an off-hours emergency at the Project site.

**§ 3.4.8** The Owner shall not be responsible for any overtime charges or shift differential charges incurred by the Contractor during the course of this Project. Any and all costs associated with Work performed at hours requiring the payment of overtime or shift differentials by the Contractor to its workers shall be the Contractor's responsibility.

**§ 3.4.8.1** Under no circumstances shall the Contractor or its Subcontractors be entitled to be reimbursed for overtime, except when the Owner specifically agrees in writing to pay for overtime charges that will be incurred by the Contractor for a specified purpose. In such an event, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor or its Subcontractor on the basis of premium payment only, plus the cost of insurance and taxes based on the premium payment period.

### **§ 3.5 Warranty**

**§ 3.5.1** The Contractor warrants to the Owner, Construction Manager, and Architect that materials and equipment furnished under the Contract will be of good quality, new and of recent manufacture unless the Contract Documents require or permit otherwise. The Contractor further warrants that the Work will conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents and will be free from defects, except for those inherent in the quality of the Work the Contract Documents require or permit. Work, materials, or equipment not conforming to these requirements, including substitutions not properly approved and authorized, shall be considered defective and shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense unless otherwise agreed to by the Owner. The Contractor's warranty excludes remedy for damage or defect caused by abuse, alterations to the Work not executed by the Contractor, improper or insufficient maintenance, improper operation, or normal wear and tear and normal usage. If required by the Construction Manager or Architect, the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment.

**§ 3.5.2** All material, equipment, or other special warranties required by the Contract Documents shall be issued in the name of the Owner, or shall be transferable to the Owner, and shall commence in accordance with Section 9.8.4. If not already in the name of the Owner, the Contractor shall assign to the Owner at the time of Substantial Completion of the Work, unless otherwise provided in the Certificate of Substantial Completion, any and all manufacturer's warranties relating to materials, equipment, fixtures and/or labor incorporated into the Work.

**§ 3.5.3** The warranties in this Section 3.5 shall be in force for a minimum duration of two (2) years after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof, or after the date for commencement of warranties established under Section 9.9.1 or by terms of any applicable special or extended warranty required by the Contract Documents or as set forth in the Project Manual's technical specifications for warranties of equipment, whichever duration is longer. The warranty provided by the Contractor in this Section 3.5 is in addition to any warranty provided by equipment and material manufacturer. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in the Contract Documents, all warranties shall be construed in the manner and duration most favorable to the Owner. The warranties in this Section 3.5 shall survive expiration and/or termination of the Contract.

**§ 3.5.4** The Contractor shall furnish maintenance and 24-hour call-back service for the equipment provided by it for a period of three (3) months after Final Completion and acceptance of the Work. This maintenance shall include all necessary adjustments, greasing, oiling, cleaning, supplies and parts to keep the equipment in proper operation except such parts made necessary by misuse, accidents or negligence not caused by the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors.

**§ 3.5.5** The Contractor shall perform its Work in such a manner as to preserve all manufacturer's warranties on materials, equipment, fixtures and/or labor incorporated into the Work. The Contractor will exercise its best efforts

to service and to enforce for the benefit of the Owner all manufacturer's warranties on materials, equipment, fixtures and/or labor incorporated into the Work.

**§ 3.5.6** The Contractor warrants good and legal title to all materials, equipment and fixtures installed or incorporated into the Work.

### **§ 3.6 Taxes**

**§ 3.6.1** Except as otherwise set forth below, the Contractor shall pay applicable sales, consumer, use and similar taxes for the Work or portions thereof provided by the Contractor that are legally enacted when bids are received or negotiations concluded, whether or not yet effective or merely scheduled to go into effect.

**§ 3.6.2** The Owner (Eastchester Union Free School District), a municipal corporation and not-for-profit educational institution, is exempt from payment of sales and compensating use taxes of the State of New York the cities and counties therein, and with Chapter 32 of the Internal Revenue Code, in accordance with all applicable state laws and regulations. These taxes are not to be included in bids.

- .1 Exception: Plumbing and Drainage Contractor/Subcontractor to obtain and pay for all necessary connection taxes and other service charges required by local sewer or water authorities to complete plumbing systems."
- .2 Upon request, Owner will furnish proof of its exemption to the Contractor.
- .3 The Owner's exemption from sales and use tax does not apply to machinery, equipment, tools and other items purchased, leased, rented or otherwise acquired for the Contractor's use in part or entirely in connection with the Work. The exemption only applies to materials fully incorporated into the Work as accepted and approved by the Architect, Construction Manager and Owner.

### **§ 3.7 Permits, Fees, Notices, and Compliance with Laws**

**§ 3.7.1** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner, through and with the assistance of the Construction Manager and Architect, shall secure and pay for the building permit. The Contractor shall secure and pay for all other permits, fees, licenses, and inspections by government agencies necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work that are customarily secured after execution of the Contract and legally required at the time bids are received or negotiations concluded.

**§ 3.7.1.1** The Contractor shall secure approval and comply with requirements of all authorities having jurisdiction over the construction and deliver proofs of approvals to the Construction Manager. The Contractor shall prepare all documents, including drawings, necessary to secure such approvals.

**§ 3.7.2** The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities applicable to performance of the Work.

**§ 3.7.2.1** In the event any violations are placed upon the Owner or its property by any public authority as a result of actions or omissions of the Contractor, the Contractor shall be solely responsible for such violations and shall bear all costs attributable thereto. Funds in an amount at least sufficient to correct such violations, as determined by the Architect in consultation with the Construction Manager, shall be withheld until all such violations are cured to the satisfaction of the issuing public authority.

**§ 3.7.3** If the Contractor performs Work knowing it to be contrary to (or if Contractor should have known it to be contrary to) applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, the Contractor shall assume appropriate responsibility for such Work and shall bear all costs attributable to correction.

**§ 3.7.4 Concealed or Unknown Conditions.** If the Contractor encounters conditions at the site that are (1) subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions that differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents or (2) unknown physical conditions of an unusual nature that differ materially from those ordinarily found to exist and generally recognized as inherent in construction activities of the character provided for in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall promptly provide notice to the Owner, Construction Manager, and the Architect before conditions are disturbed and in no event later than 7 days after first observance of the conditions. The Architect and Construction Manager will promptly investigate such conditions and, if the Architect, in consultation with the

Construction Manager, determines that they differ materially and cause an increase or decrease in the Contractor's cost of, or time required for, performance of any part of the Work, will recommend that an equitable adjustment be made in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. If the Architect, in consultation with the Construction Manager, determines that the conditions at the site are not materially different from those indicated in the Contract Documents and that no change in the terms of the Contract is justified, the Architect shall promptly notify in writing the Owner, Construction Manager, and Contractor, stating the reasons. If the Contractor disputes the Architect's determination or recommendation, the Contractor may submit a Claim as provided in Article 15.

**§ 3.7.5** If, in the course of the Work, the Contractor encounters human remains or recognizes the existence of burial markers, archaeological sites or wetlands not indicated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall immediately suspend any operations that would affect them and shall notify the Owner, Construction Manager, and Architect. Upon receipt of such notice, the Owner shall promptly take any action necessary to obtain governmental authorization required to resume the operations. The Contractor shall continue to suspend such operations until otherwise instructed by the Owner but shall continue with all other operations that do not affect those remains or features. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time arising from the existence of such remains or features may be made as provided in Article 15.

### **§ 3.8 Allowances**

**§ 3.8.1** The Contractor shall include in the Contract Sum all allowances stated in the Contract Documents. Items covered by allowances shall be supplied for such amounts and by such persons or entities as the Owner may direct, but the Contractor shall not be required to employ persons or entities to whom the Contractor has reasonable objection.

**§ 3.8.2** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents:

- .1 allowances shall cover the cost to the Contractor of materials and equipment delivered at the site and all required taxes, less applicable trade discounts;
- .2 Contractor's costs for unloading and handling at the site, labor, installation costs, overhead, profit, and other expenses contemplated for stated allowance amounts shall be included in the Contract Sum but not in the allowances; and
- .3 whenever costs are more than or less than allowances, the Contract Sum shall be adjusted accordingly by Change Order or, absent agreement, by Construction Change Directive. The amount of the Change Order or Construction Change Directive shall reflect (1) the difference between actual costs and the allowances under Section 3.8.2.1 and (2) changes in Contractor's costs under Section 3.8.2.2.

**§ 3.8.3** Refer to Specification Section 012100.

### **§ 3.9 Superintendent**

**§ 3.9.1** Prior to starting the Work, the Contractor shall designate the project manager, full-time superintendent and other key individuals who shall be assigned to the Project through and including final completion. Such designation shall be in writing and provided to the Architect, Construction Manager, and Owner. To the extent Work is being performed contemporaneously at two different facilities of the Owner, the Contractor shall assign different superintendents to each facility. The Superintendent shall be in attendance at the Project site throughout the Work, including completion of the punch list. The Superintendent shall, during the performance of the Work, remain on the Project site not less than eight hours per day, five days per week, until termination of the Contract, unless the job is suspended or work is stopped by the Construction Manager or Owner. The Superintendent shall not be employed or used on any other project during the course of the work. The Superintendent shall be approved by the Owner in its sole discretion. Said representative shall be qualified in the type of work to be undertaken and shall not be changed during the course of construction without the prior written consent of the Owner. Should an approved representative thereafter leave the Contractor's employ, Contractor shall promptly designate a new representative. Owner shall have the right, at any time, to direct a change in the Contractor's representatives if their performance is unsatisfactory. In the event of such demand, Contractor shall, within seven days after notification thereof, replace said individual(s) with an individual satisfactory to Owner, in Owner's sole discretion. If said replacement is disapproved, the Contract may, at Owner's option, be terminated for cause. The Superintendent shall represent the Contractor, and communications given to the Superintendent shall be binding as if given to the Contractor. The Owner shall have no obligation to direct or monitor the Contractor's employees, Subcontractors, or suppliers. All references herein to the Superintendent shall be taken to mean the Contractor's superintending staff.

**§ 3.9.2** The Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect, through the Construction Manager, of the name and qualifications of a proposed superintendent. The Contractor will provide a resume of Contractor's proposed Superintendent to the Owner, Architect and Construction Manager. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Construction Manager may notify the Contractor, stating whether the Owner, the Construction Manager, or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to the proposed superintendent or (2) require additional time for review. Failure of the Construction Manager to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

**§ 3.9.3** The Contractor shall not employ a proposed superintendent to whom the Owner, Construction Manager, or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not change the superintendent, during the duration of the Project including the completion of Punch List, without the Owner's consent, which shall not unreasonably be withheld or delayed. The Superintendent shall be changed upon request of the Owner for good cause shown.

**§ 3.9.4** The Contractor shall coordinate and supervise the work performed by its subcontractors so that the Work is carried out without conflict between trades and so that no trade, at any time, causes delay to the general progress of the Work. The Contractor and all subcontractors shall afford each trade reasonable opportunity for the installation of their work and the storage of their materials.

**§ 3.9.5** It is required of any and all supervisory personnel proposed for use by any Contractor that said personnel be versed in the English language or, said Contractor shall furnish a full-time on-site interpreter to facilitate communications between and with all Subcontractors, the Owner, the Construction Manager and the Architect.

### **§ 3.10 Contractor's Construction and Submittal Schedules**

**§ 3.10.1** The Contractor, per the Instructions to Bidders within forty-eight (48) hours after bid opening, shall submit for the Owner's and Architect's information, and the Construction Manager's use in developing the Project schedule, a Contractor's construction schedule for the Work. The schedule shall contain detail appropriate for the Project, including (1) the date of commencement of the Work, interim schedule milestone dates, and the date of Substantial Completion; (2) an apportionment of the Work by construction activity; and (3) the time required for completion of each portion of the Work. The schedule shall provide for the orderly progression of the Work to completion and shall not exceed time limits current under the Contract Documents. The schedule shall be revised at appropriate intervals as required by the conditions of the Work and Project. The Contractor shall cooperate with the Construction Manager in scheduling and performing the Contractor's Work to avoid conflict with, and as to cause no delay in, the work or activities of other Contractors, or the construction or operations of the Owner's own forces or Separate Contractors.

**§ 3.10.1.1** Submission of an accepted Construction Schedule shall be a prerequisite to initial payment. If the schedule is not submitted by said dates the Contractor has acknowledged his approving the Owner, through the Construction Manager, to complete a schedule for the Contractor. Such schedule will become the product and ownership of the Contractor and the Contractor will be back-charged all costs pertaining to the service of producing the schedule. The Contractor shall provide revised schedules at appropriate intervals as required by the Conditions of the Work and Project.

**§ 3.10.1.2** Revisions to schedule shall be approved by the Owner and the Construction Manager.

**§ 3.10.2** The Contractor shall prepare a submittal schedule, within the timeframe detailed in the Instructions to Bidders, and thereafter update it as necessary to maintain a current submittal schedule, and shall submit the schedule(s) for the Construction Manager's and Architect's approval. The Architect and Construction Manager's approval shall not be unreasonably delayed or withheld. The submittal schedule shall (1) be coordinated with the Contractor's construction schedule, and (2) allow the Construction Manager and Architect reasonable time to review submittals. If the Contractor fails to submit a submittal schedule, or fails to provide submittals in accordance with the approved submittal schedule, the Contractor shall not be entitled to any increase in Contract Sum or extension of Contract Time based on the time required for review of submittals.

**§ 3.10.3** The Contractor shall participate with other Contractors, the Construction Manager, and the Owner in reviewing and coordinating all schedules for incorporation into the Project schedule that is prepared by the



Construction Manager. The Contractor shall revise the construction schedule and submittal schedule as deemed necessary by the Construction Manager to conform to the Project schedule.

§ 3.10.4 The Contractor shall perform the Work in general accordance with the most recent schedules submitted to the Owner, Construction Manager, and Architect, and incorporated into the approved Project schedule.

§ 3.10.5 All Construction Schedules are the product and ownership of the Contractor.

§ 3.10.6 The Construction Schedule.

§ 3.10.6.1 The construction schedule shall be in a detailed precedence style critical path method (CPM) or Primavera-type format satisfactory to the Owner, the Construction Manager and the Architect which shall also:

- (a) provide a graphic representation of all activities and events that will occur during performance of the Work including the submission, review and approval of all submittals (i.e., Shop Drawings, etc.) required by the Contract Documents;
- (b) identify with each phase of construction and occupancy; and
- (c) set forth dates that are critical in insuring the timely and orderly completion of the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents (hereinafter referred to as the Milestone dates).

§ 3.10.6.2 Upon review and acceptance by the Owner and the Construction Manager of the Milestone Dates, the construction schedule shall be deemed part of the Contract Documents. If not accepted by the Owner and the Construction Manager, the construction schedule shall be promptly revised by the Contractor in accordance with the recommendations of the Owner and the Construction Manager and re-submitted for acceptance.

§ 3.10.6.3 The Contractor shall monitor the progress of the Work for conformance with the requirements of the construction schedule and shall promptly advise the Construction Manager and Architect, with a copy to the Owner, of any delays or potential delays.

§ 3.10.6.4 The accepted construction schedule shall be updated to reflect actual conditions (sometimes referred to as progress reports) as set forth in this Section 3.10 or if requested by the Owner, the Construction Manager or the Architect. In the event any progress report indicates any delays, the Contractor shall propose an affirmative plan to correct the delay, including overtime and/or additional labor, if necessary. In no event shall any progress report constitute an adjustment in the contract time, any Milestone Date or the Contract Sum unless any such adjustment is agreed to by the Owner and authorized pursuant to Change Order.

§ 3.10.6.5 The construction schedule shall be updated at least once a month or more frequently if requested. The Contractor shall furnish the Owner the Construction Manager and Architect with sufficient copies of the original schedules and all updated schedules as the Owner, the Construction Manager, or Architect may require.

§ 3.10.6.6 In the event the Owner determines that the performance of the Work, as of a Milestone Date, has not progressed or reached the level of completion required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall have the right to order the Contractor to take corrective measures necessary to expedite the progress of construction, including, without limitation, (1) working additional shifts or overtime, (2) supplying additional manpower, equipment, and facilities and (3) other similar measures (hereinafter referred to collectively as Extraordinary Measures). Such Extraordinary Measures shall continue until the progress of the Work complies with the stage of completion required by the Contract Documents. The Owner's right to require Extraordinary Measures is solely for the purpose of ensuring the Contractor's compliance with the construction schedule and shall not be construed as or deemed to constitute an acceleration directive by the Owner.

§ 3.10.6.6.1 The Contractor shall not be entitled to an adjustment in the Contract Sum in connection with Extraordinary Measures required by the Owner under or pursuant to this Section 3.10.6.

§ 3.10.6.6.2 The Owner may exercise the rights furnished the Owner under or pursuant to this Section 3.10.6 as frequently as the Owner deems necessary to ensure that the Contractor's performance of the Work will comply with any Milestone Date or completion date set forth in the Contract Documents.

§ 3.10.6.6.3 The Owner reserves the right to withhold payment until such time as the Contractor submits a daily schedule showing work to be again on schedule with the Construction Schedule and the Work is being performed per revised schedule, without additional cost to the Owner.

§ 3.10.7 The Owner shall have the right to direct a postponement or rescheduling of any date or time for the performance of any part of the Work that may interfere with the operation of the owner's premises or any tenants or invitee thereof. The Contractor shall, upon the Owner's request, reschedule any portion of the Work affecting operation of the premises to hours when the premises are not in operation. Any postponement, rescheduling or performance of the Work under this Section 3.10.7 may be grounds for an extension of the Contract Time, if permitted under Section 8.3.1 if: (1) the performance of the Work was properly scheduled by the Contractor in compliance with the requirements of the Contract Documents and (2) such rescheduling or postponement is required for the convenience of the Owner.

§ 3.10.8 The various Prime Contractors shall be responsible for the coordination and orderly arrangement of the various equipment, lines and piping and architectural features, and to avoid any unsightly arrangements in exposed work.

§ 3.10.9 All Construction Schedules are the product and ownership of the Contractor.

§ 3.10.10 Contractor shall provide all required labor and material to proceed with work as per the approved and accepted Construction Schedule and shall work continuously and expeditiously through Project completion.

### § 3.11 Documents and Samples at the Site

§ 3.11.1 The Contractor shall maintain and make available at the Project site, the Contract Documents, including Drawings, Specifications, Addenda, Change Orders, Construction Change Directives, and other Modifications, in good order and marked currently to indicate field changes and selections made during construction, as well as the approved Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar required submittals. These shall be in electronic form or paper copy, available to the Construction Manager, Architect, and Owner and representatives of any governmental agency with authority over the Project and shall be delivered to the Construction Manager for submittal to the Owner upon completion of the Work as a record of the Work as constructed. In accordance with the requirements established in the Project Manual, Specification Section 017719 Project Record Documents is hereby made part of this Section.

§ 3.11.1.1 Each Prime Contractor shall provide a copy of its daily field reports to the Construction Manager at the end of each week.

§ 3.11.2 The Contractor shall maintain at the Project site, and shall make available to Owner, Construction Manager, Architect and representatives of any governmental agency with authority over the Project, one record copy of the Drawings (the "Record Drawings", which are also referred to herein as "As-built Drawings") in good order.

§ 3.11.2.1 The Record Drawings shall be prepared and updated during the prosecution of the Work in accordance with procedures specified in Section 017719.

§ 3.11.2.2 Final payment and any retainage shall not be due and owing to Contractor until the Record Drawings receive the approval from the Architect and the Owner (and all other closeout requirements are met).

### § 3.12 Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples

§ 3.12.1 Shop Drawings are drawings, diagrams, schedules, and other data specially prepared for the Work by the Contractor or a Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier, or distributor to illustrate some portion of the Work. One complete set of all product data and approved Shop Drawings shall be submitted to the Owner as part of the close-out requirements.

§ 3.12.2 Product Data are illustrations, standard schedules, performance charts, instructions, brochures, diagrams and other information furnished by the Contractor to illustrate materials or equipment for some portion of the Work.

§ 3.12.3 Samples are physical examples that illustrate materials, equipment, or workmanship, and establish standards by which the Work will be judged.

§ 3.12.3.1 The Contractor shall submit for review to the Architect through the Construction Manager samples of materials listed under each section of the Specifications. Samples shall be properly labeled for identification, consisting of the following information: job titles, sample number, submission number, and label large enough to receive Architect's stamps.

§ 3.12.3.2 The Contractor shall not commence Work under sections of the Specifications that require samples until the Architect's approval in writing is obtained for all listed samples.

§ 3.12.3.3 The Contractor shall not construe approval of advance samples as total guarantee of acceptance of materials. Materials will be subjected to field inspections, from time to time, as work progresses.

§ 3.12.3.4 Samples of specific manufactured products shall be accompanied with appropriate manufacturer's literature at time of submission.

§ 3.12.4 Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals are not Contract Documents. Their purpose is to demonstrate how the Contractor proposes to conform to the information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents for those portions of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittals. Review by the Architect and Construction Manager is subject to the limitations of Sections 4.2.10 through 4.2.12. Informational submittals upon which the Construction Manager and Architect are not expected to take responsive action may be so identified in the Contract Documents. Submittals that are not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Construction Manager or Architect without action.

§ 3.12.5 The Contractor shall review for compliance with the Contract Documents, approve, and submit to the Construction Manager, Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals required by the Contract Documents, in accordance with the Project submittal schedule approved by the Construction Manager and Architect or, in the absence of an approved Project submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the Work or in the activities of other Contractors, Separate Contractors, or the Owner's own forces. The Contractor shall cooperate with the Construction Manager in the coordination of the Contractor's Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals with related documents submitted by other Contractors.

§ 3.12.5.1 The Contractor shall submit all Shop Drawings that are considered long lead items according to the time requirements of Section 013300 of the Specifications.

§ 3.12.5.2 The Contractor shall submit to the Architect through the Construction Manager all other shop drawings and schedules in sufficient time to allow at least ten (10) working days for the Architect's review. Approval signatures of contractors and all sub-contractors affected by the work shown therein must appear on all shop drawings before submission to Architect through the Construction Manager. A copy of Shop Drawings shall be provided for Owner's review as requested.

§ 3.12.6 By submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals, the Contractor represents to the Owner, Construction Manager, and Architect, that the Contractor has (1) reviewed and approved them, (2) determined and verified materials, field measurements and field construction criteria related thereto, or will do so, and (3) checked and coordinated the information contained within such submittals with the requirements of the Work and of the Contract Documents.

§ 3.12.7 The Contractor shall perform no portion of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittal and review of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, until the respective submittal has been reviewed and approved by the Architect.

§ 3.12.7.1 If the Contractor elects to perform work without such approvals, same shall be at the Contractor's own risk and expense.

§ 3.12.8 The Work shall be in accordance with approved submittals except that the Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from the requirements of the Contract Documents by the Architect's approval of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, unless the Contractor has specifically notified the Construction Manager and Architect of such deviation at the time of submittal and (1) the Architect has given



written approval to the specific deviation as a minor change in the Work, or (2) a Change Order or Construction Change Directive has been issued authorizing the deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, by the Architect's approval thereof.

**§ 3.12.9** Upon the Architect's rejection of the Contractor's Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples or other similar submittals, the Contractor shall review the rejection and re-submit such Shop Drawing, Product Data, Sample or other similar submittal in accordance with the Architect's instruction. The Contractor shall direct specific attention, in writing or on resubmitted Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, to revisions which have been made, including revisions not specifically requested by the Construction Manager or Architect on previous submittals. In the absence of such notice, the Architect's approval of a resubmission shall not apply to such revisions. No claim for delay or additional cost shall be accepted as a result of rejected submittals.

**§ 3.12.10** The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services that constitute the practice of architecture or engineering unless such services are specifically required by the Contract Documents for a portion of the Work or unless the Contractor needs to provide such services in order to carry out the Contractor's responsibilities for construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures. The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services in violation of applicable law.

**§ 3.12.10.1** If professional design services or certifications by a design professional related to systems, materials, or equipment are specifically required of the Contractor by the Contract Documents, the Owner and the Architect will specify all performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. The Contractor shall cause such services or certifications to be provided by a design professional appropriately licensed in New York State, whose signature and seal shall appear on all drawings, calculations, specifications, certifications, Shop Drawings, and other submittals prepared by such professional. Shop Drawings, and other submittals related to the Work, designed or certified by such professional, if prepared by others, shall bear such professional's written approval when submitted to the Architect. The Owner, the Architect, and the Construction Manager shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy and accuracy of the services, certifications, and approvals performed or provided by such design professionals, provided the Owner and Architect have specified to the Contractor the performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. Pursuant to this Section 3.12.10, the Architect will review and approve or take other appropriate action on submittals only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents. The Construction Manager shall review submittals for sequencing, constructability, and coordination impacts on other Contractors.

**§ 3.12.10.2** If the Contract Documents require the Contractor's design professional to certify that the Work has been performed in accordance with the design criteria, the Contractor shall furnish such certifications to the Construction Manager and Architect at the time and in the form specified by the Architect.

**§ 3.12.10.3** When professional certification of performance criteria of materials, systems or equipment is required of the Contractor, the Architect shall be entitled to rely in a reasonable and professional fashion upon the accuracy and completeness of such calculations and certifications, provided, however, if the Architect, in its reasonable and professional judgment considers it advisable, the Architect shall verify the accuracy and completeness of any and all such calculations and/or certifications. In the event any and all such calculations and/or certifications are found to be inaccurate and/or incomplete by the Architect, the Contractor shall assume full responsibility and shall bear all costs attributable or related thereto, including, without limitation, the expense of the Architect's additional services associated with the verification of such calculations and/or certifications and the expense of the Architect's additional service made necessary by the failure of such calculations and/or certifications to be accurate or complete.

**§ 3.12.11** All shop drawings for any architectural, structural, mechanical or electrical work must be submitted to the Architect through the Construction Manager. The Contractor represents and warrants that all shop drawings shall be prepared by persons and entities possessing expertise and experience in the trade for which the shop drawing is prepared and, if required by the Architect or applicable law, by a licensed engineer.

**§ 3.12.11.1** Each shop drawing shall contain a title block with provisions for the following:

- (1) Number and Title of Drawing.
- (2) Date of Drawing or Revision.

- (3) Name of Project.
- (4) Name of Contractor or Sub-contractor submitting Drawing.
- (5) Specification Section Title and Number.
- (6) Space for Architect's Stamp and Received Stamps.

§ 3.12.11.2 Each shop drawing shall have listed on it all Contract Reference Drawing Numbers plus Shop Drawing Numbers on related work by other Sub-contractors if available.

§ 3.12.11.3 Each shop drawing submission cover sheet shall indicate the number of times the submittal has been submitted (e.g. whether first, second, third, etc.).

§ 3.12.11.4 Shop drawings for work of one trade shall be checked by Sub-contractors of related trades, and shall have received their stamp of approval before being submitted to the Architect, through the Construction Manager.

§ 3.12.11.5 Each shop drawing submission after the first submission shall be clear of all previous stamps.

§ 3.12.12 Contractor shall communicate and supply Shop Drawings to other Contractors to ensure proper coordination.

§ 3.12.13 If the Architect is required to review any Contractor submittal more than twice, the Contractor shall bear the cost and expense incurred by the Owner for the Architect and Construction Manager to perform such additional review.

### § 3.13 Use of Site

§ 3.13.1 The Contractor shall confine operations at the site to areas permitted by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, lawful orders of public authorities, and the Contract Documents and shall not unreasonably encumber the site with materials or equipment.

§ 3.13.1.1 The Construction Manager shall establish the limits of the construction site in addition to any contract limit lines shown on the drawings. The Contractor shall continue his operations within these limits, unless upon written request and reply, a variance is agreed to by the Construction Manager and the Owner. The Contractor shall be responsible for trespassing on and/or damage to other property by any of his employees or his subcontractors' employees.

§ 3.13.1.2 The Contractor's right to entry and use thereof arises solely from the permission granted by the Owner under the Contract Documents. This permission shall be deemed to be withdrawn upon termination of the Contractor's Contract with the Owner.

§ 3.13.1.3 The Contractor shall be required to perform the Work of the Project with no interruption to the Owner's operations. Any work which will interfere with the Owner's operations shall be performed after Regular School Hours, and/or during weekends, holidays or other times when the Owner's facilities are not in session for students at no additional cost to the Owner. All costs incurred by the Owner to make the facilities available during those times shall be borne by the Contractor, including time charges incurred for the Owner's own forces and additional charges of the Construction Manager. The Owner reserves to itself the right to determine what work will "interfere" with its operations and said determination shall be final.

§ 3.13.2 The Contractor shall coordinate the Contractor's operations with, and secure the approval of, the Construction Manager before using any portion of the site. Only materials and equipment which are to be used directly in the Work shall be brought to and stored on the Project site by the Contractor. After equipment is no longer required for the Work, it is to be promptly removed from the Project site. Protection of construction materials and equipment stored at the Project site from weather, theft, damage, and all other adversity is solely the responsibility of the Contractor. The Contractor shall be held responsible for repairs, patching, or cleaning arising from such use.

§ 3.13.2.1 The Contractor shall provide all temporary access walkways, both interior and exterior, temporary partitioning and the like necessary to complete the operations. The Contractor shall maintain in an unobstructed

condition all entrances and/or exits from present buildings.

**§ 3.13.3** The Contractor and any entity for which the Contractor is responsible shall not erect any sign on the Project site without the written consent of the Owner provided through the Construction Manager, which may be withheld in the sole discretion of the Owner.

**§ 3.13.4** Without prior approval of the Owner through the Construction Manager, the Contractor shall not permit any workers to use any existing facilities at the Project site, including, without limitation, lavatories, toilets, entrances, and parking areas other than those designated by the Owner. Without limitation of any other provision of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall use his best efforts to comply with all rules and regulations promulgated by the Owner in connection with the use and occupancy of the Project site and the Owner's facilities (including but not limited to school buildings) as amended from time to time. The Contractor shall immediately notify the Owner in writing, if during the performance of the Work, the Contractor finds compliance with any portion of the rules and regulations to be impracticable, setting forth the problems of such compliance and suggesting alternatives through which the same results intended by such portions of the rules and regulations can be achieved. The Owner may, in the Owner's sole discretion, adopt such suggestions, develop new alternatives or require compliance with the existing requirements of the rules and regulations. The Contractor shall also comply with all insurance requirements and collective bargaining agreements applicable to use and occupancy of the Project site and the Owner's facilities (including but not limited to school buildings).

**§ 3.13.4.1** All Contractors shall confine their use of the premises, for all purposes, to the areas provided by the Owner and Construction Manager.

**§ 3.13.4.2** The responsibility for the safe working conditions at the site shall be the Contractor's. The Architect, Construction Manager and Owner shall not be deemed to have any responsibility or liability in connection therewith.

**§ 3.13.5** Contractor's, their workers, suppliers, etc. will be held to adhere strictly to the requirements stated in this Section 3.13 and shall not occupy or carry traffic through other parts of the site or interior of present buildings except by specific permission of the Construction Manager.

**§ 3.13.6** The Contractor shall repair or replace any existing trees, shrubbery or other planting damaged by operations and/or workers employed in performance of its Contract.

**§ 3.13.7** Contractor shall insure that the Work, at all times, is performed in a manner that affords reasonable access, both vehicular and pedestrian, to the site of the Work and all adjacent areas. The Work shall be performed, to the fullest extent reasonably possible, in such a manner that public areas adjacent to the site of the Work shall be free from all debris, building materials and equipment likely to cause hazardous conditions. Without limitation of any other provision of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall use its best efforts to minimize any interference with the occupancy or beneficial use of (1) any areas and buildings adjacent to the site of the Work or (2) the building(s) in which the Work is performed in the event of partial occupancy, as more specifically described in Section 9.9 of these General Conditions.

**§ 3.13.7.1** The Contractor shall provide full and free access for the Architect, Construction Manager, Owner and/or their representatives, to inspect job materials, equipment, fabrication, facilities, and storage locations, at and away from the job site.

**§ 3.13.8** Employees, vehicles, equipment and material of the Contractor and of all others utilized by the Contractor for the performance of its Work, shall enter onto the construction site only at those locations designated or approved by the Construction Manager.

**§ 3.13.9** The Contractor shall not unreasonably encumber the Project sites with materials or equipment. To the extent storage space is available, only materials and equipment that will be used directly in the performance of the Contractor's Work shall be brought to and stored on the Owner's property. The Contractor shall schedule delivery of materials and equipment to minimize long term storage at the Project sites, to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces and/or the Project sites, and to ensure minimum holding times for materials that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft or other loss. After equipment is no longer required for its Work, the Contractor shall promptly remove such equipment from the Owner's property..

§ 3.13.10 Only such vehicles, trucks and equipment shall be parked or stored within the work areas as are absolutely necessary for performing the Work, for the length of time that particular phase of work is performed. All other contractor's vehicles and/or employees and/or workers' vehicles including passenger cars shall be parked off the site. There are no exceptions to the rule.

§ 3.13.11 It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to provide necessary and required security measures to adequately safeguard the construction site from vandalism and intrusion of unauthorized persons.

§ 3.13.11.1 The Contractor shall submit the means and methods of security to the Owner through the Construction Manager for approval. The Project site must be secured 24 hours a day, seven (7) days a week including holidays.

§ 3.13.11.2 All workers and employees of any Contractor are prohibited from:

- .1 Trespassing or leaving any vehicle on any property not assigned by the Owner as set aside for the use of the Contractor.
- .2 leaving any vehicle on the grounds unless it is locked and the ignition keys removed.

§ 3.13.11.3 All employees or persons entering the property surrounding the facilities affected by the construction are restricted to the immediate area of work. Only persons having official business will be admitted to the construction site.

§ 3.13.11.4 Rules of Conduct

- .1 No smoking is allowed anywhere on Owner's property per New York State law. Violators are subject to a \$1,000 fine and/or banishment from the property.
- .2 No drinking of alcoholic beverages or use of controlled substances allowed on Owner's property. No reporting to work impaired by alcohol or controlled substances allowed. The Contractor bears the responsibility of ensuring its, and its subcontractors, employees are not impaired in any manner that would jeopardize the safety of the public, the employees of other Contractors and their Subcontractors, the Owner, Architect, and Construction Manager.
- .3 All Contractors, subcontractors, suppliers and their employees are to refrain from conversing with the Owner's personnel, volunteers, invitees and students. Any construction employees found doing so will be removed from the site. No communication between workers and students will be tolerated.
- .4 All Contractors, subcontractors, suppliers, and their employees are to refrain from using indecent language. All doing so will be removed from the site. Artwork and decoration found on vehicles belonging to Contractor's or Subcontractor's employees parked on or near the Owner's property that contain indecent language or pictures shall either be covered or removed from the location.
- .5 All construction personnel shall wear photo ID badges. Photo ID badges are to be provided by the Contractor and receive approval of the Owner, through the Construction Manager.
- .6 The use of radios, tape players, and the like is prohibited within the job site.

#### § 3.14 Cutting and Patching

§ 3.14.1 The Contractor shall be responsible for cutting, fitting, or patching required to complete the Work or to make its parts fit together properly. All areas requiring cutting, fitting, or patching shall be restored to the condition existing prior to the cutting, fitting, or patching, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents.

§ 3.14.2 No Contractor shall damage or endanger a portion of the Work or fully or partially completed construction of the Owner, Separate Contractors, or of other Contractors by cutting, patching, or otherwise altering such construction, or by excavation. No Contractor shall cut or otherwise alter construction by the Owner, Separate Contractors, or by other Contractors except with written consent of the Construction Manager, Owner, and such other Contractors or Separate Contractors. The Contractor shall not unreasonably withhold, from the Separate Contractors, other Contractors, the Construction Manager or the Owner, its consent to cutting or otherwise altering the Work.

§ 3.14.3 Only trades persons skilled and experienced in cutting and patching shall perform such work.

**§ 3.14.4** Each Contractor before starting work shall consult with the Construction Manager and other Contractors to determine locations and sizes of required chases and openings for others. Construct chases and leave openings at proper locations and size to receive work of others. After work of others has been installed, fill in openings and/or patch around installed materials. After executing the above procedure, if chases, sleeves or openings are required after floors, walls, etc. are in place, the Contractor requiring such chases, sleeves or openings shall be responsible for cutting and patching as required for his work.

### **§ 3.15 Cleaning Up**

**§ 3.15.1** The Contractor shall keep the premises and surrounding area free from accumulation of waste materials and rubbish caused by operations under the Contract. At completion of the Work, the Contractor shall remove waste materials, rubbish, the Contractor's tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus materials from and about the Project, and shall leave the entire area clean or its equivalent.

**§ 3.15.1.1** All Contractor's work areas shall be kept clean each day, of refuse, including containers, cups and the like. The facilities will remain in operation during the course of the entire construction operation. All Contractors performing work on this Contract shall schedule their work so as not to interfere with any traffic to and from the required areas of use. The Contractor shall be responsible for maintaining all traffic and shall provide all barriers and protection as required to safeguard the work and the public and the occupants of the building during construction. The Prime Contractors shall comply with all fire code regulations during construction. They include vehicular parking, smoke partitions, rescue window obstructions, use of extension cords.

**§ 3.15.1.2** Each Contractor shall be responsible for cleaning their rubbish daily and removing all rubbish from the interior and exterior site weekly or when otherwise requested by the Owner. The General Contractor shall broom sweep all construction areas at least every Friday. Surfaces shall be left clean of mortar and paint spots and the like. An inspection will occur on Friday afternoon and failure to properly clean will result in the Owner engaging a cleaning company each time the requirement is not met, without prior notification to the Contractor.

**§ 3.15.2** If the Contractor fails to clean up as provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner, or Construction Manager with the Owner's approval, may do so and the Owner shall be entitled to reimbursement from the Contractor. The cost will be divided among each Contractor who has not cleaned their debris and shall include any custodial overtime, Construction Manager's administration fees, etc. If the Owner is not reimbursed for such costs, the Contractor's share of such costs shall be deducted from the next payment to the Contractor.

**§ 3.15.3** Refer to Section 017400 for additional cleaning requirements.

### **§ 3.15.4 Final Cleaning**

- A.** General: General cleaning during construction is required by the Specifications and included in Division 01.
- B.** Final Cleaning: Clean each surface or unit to the condition expected in normal commercial building cleaning. Comply with manufacturer instructions. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion.
  - 1.** Clean transparent materials including glass in doors windows. Replace any damaged glass.
  - 2.** Clean exposed finishes to a dust free condition, free of stains, films, fingerprints and similar foreign substances. Clean floors as recommended by the manufacturers if new, if existing carpeted floors shall be vacuumed and wood, ceramic tile and vinyl tile floors shall be mopped.
  - 3.** Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment. Remove excess lubrication and other substances. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition. Clean light fixtures and lamps.
- C.** Removal of Protection: Remove temporary protection and facilities installed for protection of work during construction unless otherwise directed by the Owner, Architect or Construction Manager.
- D.** Compliance: Comply with authorities having jurisdiction and safety standards for cleaning. Do not burn waste materials. Do not discharge volatile, harmful or dangerous materials into drainage systems. Remove waste materials from the site and dispose of in a lawful manner.



### **§ 3.16 Access to Work**

The Contractor shall provide the Owner, Construction Manager, and Architect with access to the Work in preparation and progress wherever located.

### **§ 3.17 Royalties, Patents and Copyrights**

The Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees. The Contractor shall defend suits or claims for infringement of copyrights and patent rights and shall hold the Owner, Construction Manager, and Architect harmless from loss on account thereof, but shall not be responsible for defense or loss when a particular design, process, or product of a particular manufacturer or manufacturers is required by the Contract Documents, or where the copyright violations are contained in Drawings, Specifications, or other documents prepared by the Owner, Architect, or Construction Manager. However, if an infringement of a copyright or patent is discovered by, is believed to exist by or made known to, the Contractor, the Contractor shall be responsible for the loss unless the information is promptly furnished to the Architect and Owner through the Construction Manager.

### **§ 3.18 Indemnification**

**§ 3.18.1** To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, Owner's Board of Education, Construction Manager, Architect, and their respective officers, directors, consultants, agents and employees or any third parties from and against claims, damages, losses, suits, obligations, fines, penalties, costs, charges and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work by reason of any act or omission of the Contractor, its officers, directors, employees, suppliers, Subcontractors, or any person or firm directly or indirectly engaged by such Contractor, including but not limited to claims, damages, losses, suits, obligations, fines, penalties, costs, charges and expenses attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property. The Contractor's obligation to indemnify shall be effective regardless of whether or not such claim, damage, loss, suit, obligation, fine, penalty, cost, charge or expense is caused in part by a party indemnified hereunder. Such obligation shall not be construed to negate, abridge, or reduce other rights or obligations of indemnity that would otherwise exist as to a party or person described in this Section 3.18. The obligation in this Section 3.18 shall survive the expiration and/or termination of the Contract.

**§ 3.18.1.1** The Owner's right to indemnification shall in no way be diminished, waived or discharged by the exercise of any other remedy provided by the Contract Documents or by law.

**§ 3.18.1.2** The Owner may withhold from an offending Contractor's Contract Sum an amount sufficient to cover any damages sustained by person or entity indemnified by the Contractor pursuant to this Section 3.18 and all expenses and costs associated with the damage sustained.

**§ 3.18.2** In claims against any person or entity indemnified under this Section 3.18 by an employee of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, the indemnification obligations under this Section 3.18 shall not be limited by a limitation on amount or type of damages, compensation, or benefits payable by or for the Contractor or a Subcontractor under workers' compensation acts, disability benefit acts, or other employee benefit acts.

**§ 3.18.3.** To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor's indemnity obligations under this Section 3.18 shall, but not by way of limitation, specifically include all claims, fines, penalties and judgments which may be made against the Owner, the Architect, the Construction Manager and their respective consultants, officers, directors, officials, employees, servants and agents under any applicable statute, rule, regulation or ordinance, including the New York State Labor Law, the New York State Occupational Safety and Health Act, the Federal Occupational Safety and Hazardous Act and similar laws of other governmental bodies having jurisdiction over the Owner's property or Project due to the method of execution of the Work of the Contractor or its Subcontractor(s) or their respective officers, directors, employees, contractors, suppliers, servants, agents or any person or firm directly or indirectly engaged by such Contractor or Subcontractor.

**§ 3.18.3.1** As an addition to and not a limitation of the indemnity provided in Section 13.18.1, to the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, the Owner's Board of Education, the Architect and the Construction Manager and their respective consultants, officers, directors, officials, employees, servants and agents (the "Indemnitees") of and from any and all liability for violation of any statute, rule, regulation

or ordinance applicable to the Contractor's Work and shall defend any claims, proceedings or actions which may be brought against one or more of the Indemnitees as a result thereof.

**§ 3.18.4** Except for the special agreement in Section 3.18, nothing contained in the Contract Documents shall be construed to create any contractual relationship of any kind between the Architect or the Construction Manager or any of their respective agents, consultants or employees and the Contractor.

**§ 3.18.5** A certificate of the required insurance naming the Architect, Engineers, Owner, Owner's Board of Education, Construction Manager, Consultants, Sub-consultants and other such professional parties and their respective consultants, officers, directors, officials, employees, servants and agents shall be submitted prior to the start of work. Said insurance shall be maintained through the entire Project life. (Refer to AIA Document A132™-2019, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds as revised for this Project, which is contained in the Project Manual).

**§ 3.18.6** As an addition to and not a limitation of the indemnity provided in Section 13.18.1, to the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, Architect and Construction Manager from any and all claims, damages, losses, suits, obligations, fines, penalties, costs, charges, and expenses which may be imposed upon or incurred by or asserted against any of them by reason of act or omission of such Contractor or any person or firm for whose acts such Contractor may be liable, with respect to such Contract or the performance or failure to perform the Work under such Contract.

**§ 3.18.7** As an addition to and not a limitation of the indemnity provided in Section 13.18.1, to the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor also shall defend, indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, the Owner's Board of Education, the Architect and the Construction Manager and their respective consultants, officers, directors, officials, employees, servants and agents (the "Indemnitees"), at the Contractor's sole expense, against any actions, lawsuits or proceedings brought against the Indemnitees as a result of any and all public improvement liens filed against the payments due the Contractor as well as any other liens filed against the Owner's property or facilities.

**§ 3.18.8** Whenever any party to the Contract is required in words or substance to indemnify or hold harmless another party, whether or not the following is expressly included in whole or in part in the paragraph or section with regard to such particular indemnification and hold harmless provision, such indemnification and hold harmless provision shall include, but not be limited to, the payment or reimbursement of all judgments, claims, damages, losses, fees costs and expenses and litigation costs and expenses, including but not limited to, the reasonable fees of its attorneys and witnesses.

**§ 3.18.9** Whenever the Contractor is required in this Section 3.18 or any other provision of the Contract Documents to defend the Owner, the Owner's Board of Education, the Architect, or the Construction Manager or their respective consultants, officers, directors, officials, employees, servants and agents (the "Indemnitees") against any claim, action, or proceeding, in the event the Contractor shall fail or refuse to defend any one or more of the Indemnitees, the Contractor shall be liable to such Indemnitee for all costs such Indemnitee incurs in defending such claim, action or proceeding and all costs of such Indemnitee, including attorneys' fees, incurred to recover such defense costs from the Contractor.

**§ 3.18.10** The Contractor's obligations under this Section 3.18 are in addition to and in no way limits or abrogates any other indemnity obligation of the Contractor included in any other provision of the Contract Documents. The Contractor's obligations under this Section 3.18 shall survive the expiration and/or termination of the Contract, in whole or in part.

### **§ 3.19 Daily Records Clause**

**§ 3.19.1** The Contractor shall prepare and maintain Daily Inspection Records to document the progress of the work on a daily basis. Such daily records shall include a daily accounting of all labor and all equipment on the site for the Contractor and all subcontractors, at any tier. Such daily records will make a clear distinction between work being performed under Change Order, base scope work and/or disputed work.

**§ 3.19.2** In the event that any labor or equipment is idle the daily records shall record which laborers and equipment were idle, for how long and the reason such labor or equipment was idle. In the event that specific work activities were stopped, solely as a result of Owner, Construction Manager or Architect actions or inactions, and labor and equipment

was reassigned to perform work on other activities, the daily records will make a clear record of which activities were stopped and where labor and equipment was redirected to.

§ 3.19.3 Such daily records shall be copied and provided to the Owner through the Construction Manager at the end of every week.

## **ARTICLE 4 ARCHITECT AND CONSTRUCTION MANAGER**

### **§ 4.1 General**

§ 4.1.1 The Architect is the person or entity retained by the Owner and identified as such in the Agreement.

§ 4.1.2 The Construction Manager is the person or entity retained by the Owner and identified as such in the Agreement.

### **§ 4.2 Administration of the Contract**

§ 4.2.1 The Construction Manager and Architect will provide administration of the Contract and the Architect will provide professional services as described in the Contract Documents and both will be the Owner's representatives during construction until the date the Architect issues the final Certificate for Payment. The Construction Manager and Architect will have authority to act on behalf of the Owner only to the extent provided in the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2.2 The Architect will visit the site at intervals appropriate to the stage of construction, or as otherwise agreed with the Owner, to become generally familiar with the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and to determine in general if the Work observed is being performed in a manner indicating that the Work, when fully completed, will be in accordance with the Contract Documents. However, the Architect will not be required to make exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work. On the basis of the site visits, the Architect will keep the Owner and the Construction Manager reasonably informed about the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and promptly report to the Owner and Construction Manager (1) known deviations from the Contract Documents and from the most recent Project schedule prepared by the Construction Manager, and (2) defects and deficiencies observed in the Work. The Architect will recommend to the Owner what actions are needed to remedy the defects and deficiencies observed in the Work

§ 4.2.3 The Construction Manager shall provide one or more representatives who shall be in attendance at the Project site whenever the Work is being performed. The Construction Manager will determine in general if the Work observed is being performed in accordance with the Contract Documents, will keep the Owner and Architect reasonably informed of the progress of the Work, and will promptly report to the Owner and Architect (1) known deviations from the Contract Documents and from the most recent Project schedule, and (2) defects and deficiencies observed in the Work.

§ 4.2.4 The Construction Manager will schedule and coordinate the activities of the Contractor and other Contractors in accordance with the latest approved Project schedule.

§ 4.2.5 The Construction Manager, except to the extent required by Section 4.2.4, and Architect will not have control over, or charge of, construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures, or for the safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work, since these are solely the Contractor's rights and responsibilities under the Contract Documents, except as provided in Section 3.3.1, and neither will be responsible for the Contractor's failure to perform the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents. Neither the Construction Manager nor the Architect will have control over or charge of, or be responsible for acts or omissions of, the Contractor, Subcontractors, or their agents or employees, or of any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

§ 4.2.6 **Communications.** Except when direct communications have been specifically authorized or emergency circumstances necessitate direct communications, the Owner and Contractor shall endeavor to communicate with each other and the Construction Manager's consultants through the Construction Manager about matters arising out of or relating to the Contract Documents or the Project. The Owner and Construction Manager shall include the Architect in all communications that relate to or affect the Architect's services or professional responsibilities. Except when emergency circumstances necessitate direct communications, communications by and with the Architect's consultants shall be through the Architect. Except when emergency circumstances necessitate direct



communications, communications by and with Subcontractors and suppliers shall be through the Contractor. Communications by and with other Contractors shall be through the Construction Manager. Except when emergency circumstances necessitate direct communications, communications by and with the Owner's own forces and Separate Contractors shall be through the Owner. The Contract Documents may specify other communication protocols.

**§ 4.2.7** The Construction Manager and Architect will review and certify all Applications for Payment by the Contractor, in accordance with the provisions of Article 9.

**§ 4.2.8** The Architect and Construction Manager have authority to reject Work that does not conform to the Contract Documents and will notify each other about the rejection. The Construction Manager shall determine in general whether the Work of the Contractor is being performed in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents and notify the Owner, Contractor and Architect of defects and deficiencies in the Work. Whenever the Construction Manager or Architect considers it necessary or advisable, the Construction Manager will have authority to require inspection or testing of the Work in accordance with Sections 13.4.2 and 13.4.3, upon written authorization of the Owner, whether or not the Work is fabricated, installed or completed. The foregoing authority of the Construction Manager will be subject to the provisions of Sections 4.2.18 through 4.2.20 inclusive, with respect to interpretations and decisions of the Architect. However, neither the Architect's nor the Construction Manager's authority to act under this Section 4.2.8 nor a decision made by either of them in good faith either to exercise or not to exercise such authority shall give rise to a duty or responsibility of the Architect or the Construction Manager to the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, their agents or employees, or other persons performing any of the Work.

**§ 4.2.9** Utilizing the submittal schedule provided by the Contractor, the Construction Manager shall prepare, and revise as necessary, a Project submittal schedule incorporating information from other Contractors, the Owner, Owner's consultants, Owner's Separate Contractors and vendors, governmental agencies, and participants in the Project under the management of the Construction Manager. The Project submittal schedule and any revisions shall be submitted to the Architect for approval.

**§ 4.2.10** The Construction Manager will receive and promptly review for conformance with the submittal requirements of the Contract Documents, all submittals from the Contractor such as Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples. Where there are other Contractors, the Construction Manager will also check and coordinate the information contained within each submittal received from the Contractor and other Contractors, and transmit to the Architect those recommended for approval. By submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals, the Construction Manager represents to the Owner and Architect that the Construction Manager has reviewed and recommended them for approval. The Construction Manager's actions will be taken in accordance with the Project submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved Project submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness while allowing sufficient time to permit adequate review by the Architect.

**§ 4.2.11** The Architect will review and approve, or take other appropriate action upon, the Contractor's submittals such as Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples, but only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents. The Architect's action will be taken in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness while allowing sufficient time in the Architect's professional judgment to permit adequate review. Upon the Architect's completed review, the Architect shall transmit its submittal review to the Construction Manager.

**§ 4.2.12** Review of the Contractor's submittals by the Construction Manager and Architect is not conducted for the purpose of determining the accuracy and completeness of other details such as dimensions and quantities, or for substantiating instructions for installation or performance of equipment or systems, all of which remain the responsibility of the Contractor as required by the Contract Documents. The Construction Manager and Architect's review of the Contractor's submittals shall not relieve the Contractor of the obligations under Sections 3.3, 3.5, and 3.12. The Construction Manager and Architect's review shall not constitute approval of safety precautions or, unless otherwise specifically stated by the Construction Manager and Architect, of any construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect's approval of a specific item shall not indicate approval of an assembly of which the item is a component.

§ 4.2.13 The Construction Manager will prepare Change Orders and Construction Change Directives.

§ 4.2.14 The Construction Manager and the Architect will take appropriate action on Change Orders or Construction Change Directives in accordance with Article 7, and the Architect will have authority to order minor changes in the Work as provided in Section 7.4. The Architect, in consultation with the Construction Manager, will investigate and make determinations and recommendations regarding concealed and unknown conditions as provided in Section 3.7.4.

§ 4.2.15 Utilizing the documents provided by the Contractor, the Construction Manager will maintain at the site for the Owner one copy of all Contract Documents, approved Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar required submittals, in good order and marked currently to record all changes and selections made during construction. These will be available to the Architect and the Contractor, and will be delivered to the Owner upon completion of the Project.

§ 4.2.16 The Construction Manager will assist the Architect in conducting inspections to determine the date or dates of Substantial Completion and the date of Final Completion; issue Certificates of Substantial Completion in conjunction with the Architect pursuant to Section 9.8; and receive and forward to the Owner written warranties and related documents required by the Contract and assembled by the Contractor pursuant to Section 9.10. The Construction Manager will forward to the Architect a final Application and Certificate for Payment or final Project Application and Project Certificate for Payment upon the Contractor's compliance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2.17 If the Owner and Architect agree, the Architect will provide one or more project representatives to assist in carrying out the Architect's responsibilities at the site. The Owner shall notify the Construction Manager of any change in the duties, responsibilities and limitations of authority of the project representatives.

§ 4.2.18 The Architect will interpret and decide matters concerning performance under, and requirements of, the Contract Documents on written request of the Construction Manager, Owner, or Contractor through the Construction Manager. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness. If no agreement is made concerning the time within which interpretations or information requested of the Architect shall be furnished in compliance with this Section 4.2, then no delay may be claimed by the Contractor based on the failure of the Architect to furnish such interpretations or information if they are provided within 15 days after the Architect's receipt of the request.

§ 4.2.19 Interpretations and decisions of the Architect will be consistent with the intent of, and reasonably inferable from, the Contract Documents and will be in writing or in the form of drawings. When making such interpretations and decisions, the Architect will endeavor to secure faithful performance by both Owner and Contractor, will not show partiality to either, and will not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions that are consistent with the Contract Documents. Such interpretations may, at the Architect's option, be issued in the form of additional drawings or instructions or both indicating in greater detail the construction or design of the various parts of the Work; such drawings or instructions may be effected by Field Order, Construction Change Directive, Bulletin or other notice to the Contractor, and provided such drawings and/or instructions are, in the opinion of the Architect, reasonably consistent with the previously existing Contract Documents, the Work shall be executed in accordance with such additional drawings and/or instructions without additional cost or extensions of Contract Time.

§ 4.2.20 The Architect's decisions on matters relating to aesthetic effect will be final if consistent with the intent expressed in the Contract Documents and accepted by the Owner.

§ 4.2.21 The Construction Manager will receive and review requests for information from the Contractor, and forward each request for information to the Architect, with the Construction Manager's recommendation. The Architect will review and respond in writing, through the Construction Manager, to requests for information about the Contract Documents. The Construction Manager's recommendation and the Architect's response to each request will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness. If appropriate, the Architect will prepare and issue supplemental Drawings and Specifications in response to the requests for information.

## ARTICLE 5 SUBCONTRACTORS

### § 5.1 Definitions

§ 5.1.1 A Subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct contract with the Contractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site or to otherwise furnish labor, material, equipment, or fixtures or other services with respect to a portion of the Work. The term "Subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Subcontractor. The term "Subcontractor" does not include other Contractors or Separate Contractors or the subcontractors of other Contractors or Separate Contractors.

§ 5.1.2 A Sub-subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct or indirect contract with a Subcontractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Sub-subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Sub-subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Sub-subcontractor.

§ 5.1.3 The term "Specialist" or "Specialty Contractor" as used in these specifications shall mean an individual or firm of established reputation, or, if newly organized, whose personnel have previously established a reputation in the same field, which is regularly engaged in, and which maintains a regular force of workers skilled in either manufacturing or fabricating items required by the contract, installing items required by the Contract, or otherwise performing work required by the Contract.

Where the Contract Specifications require installation by a "Specialist", that term shall also be deemed to mean either the manufacturer of the item, an individual or firm licensed by the manufacturer, or an individual or firm who will perform such work under the manufacturer's direct supervision. All other requirements and provisions contained in these documents pertaining to subcontractors and sub-subcontractors are applicable to Specialty Contractors.

### § 5.2 Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work

§ 5.2.1 Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract but no more than seven (7) days after receipt of official notice of award of the Contract, shall notify the Construction Manager, for review by the Owner, Construction Manager and Architect, of the persons or entities proposed for each principal portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Construction Manager may notify the Contractor whether the Owner, the Construction Manager or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to any such proposed person or entity or, (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Construction Manager to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

§ 5.2.1.1 Refer to Instructions to Bidders for requirements for delivery of a list of subcontractors to Architect's office after receipt of bids and before award of Contract.

§ 5.2.1.2 Subcontractors will not be acceptable unless, when required by the Construction Manager, evidence is furnished that the proposed subcontractor has satisfactorily completed similar subcontracts as contemplated under this prime contract, and has the necessary experience, personnel, equipment, plant, and financial ability to complete the subcontract in accordance with the intent to the Contract Documents.

§ 5.2.1.3 Failure to object to a Subcontractor shall not constitute a waiver of the requirements of the Contract Documents and all labor and materials furnished shall conform to such requirements.

§ 5.2.2 The Contractor shall not contract with a proposed person or entity to whom the Owner, Construction Manager or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not be required to contract with anyone to whom the Contractor has made reasonable objection.

§ 5.2.3 If the Owner, Construction Manager or Architect has reasonable objection to a person or entity proposed by the Contractor, the Contractor shall propose another to whom the Owner, Construction Manager or Architect has no reasonable objection. If the proposed but rejected Subcontractor was reasonably capable of performing the Work, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be increased or decreased by the difference, if any, occasioned by such change, and an appropriate Change Order shall be issued before commencement of the substitute Subcontractor's Work. However, no increase in the Contract Sum or Contract Time shall be allowed for such change unless the

Contractor has acted promptly and responsively in submitting names as required. In addition, no increase in the Contract Price or Contract Time shall be allowed where a subcontractor is rejected by the Architect, Construction Manager or Owner who (1) is deemed unqualified to perform the particular work subcontracted by the Contractor, (2) has too many current projects to reasonably be expected to have sufficient personnel to timely perform the subcontracted work, (3) does not have the necessary experience, personnel, equipment, plant and financial ability to complete the subcontract or (4) has a history of poor performance in work of a similar nature.

**§ 5.2.4** The Contractor shall not substitute a Subcontractor, person, or entity for one previously selected if the Owner, Construction Manager or Architect makes reasonable objection to such substitution.

**§ 5.2.5** Notwithstanding any other provision of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall perform at least twenty-five percent (25%) of the field work by its own employees. For the purpose of the preceding sentence, any part of the work performed by supervisory personnel (persons above level of foreman) or by the office personnel shall not be considered part of the field work performed by the Contractor's employees. Such items as bonds, certificates of insurance, shop drawings and similar items do not count towards the twenty-five percent (25%) requirements.

**§ 5.2.6** All Subcontracts over \$5,000 shall be in writing. Fully executed copies of all subcontracts shall be provided to the Owner through the Construction Manager, including but not limited to all addenda, appendices and/or exhibits to such subcontracts, including scope of work sheets. All such subcontracts shall be submitted to the Construction Manager for the Owner before work by such subcontractors commences. Upon request, any Purchase Orders for materials, equipment or supplies related to the performance of the Work shall be furnished to the Owner through the Construction Manager.

### **§ 5.3 Subcontractual Relations**

By appropriate written agreement, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor, to the extent of the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor, to be bound to the Contractor by the terms of the Contract Documents, and to assume toward the Contractor all the obligations and responsibilities, including the responsibility for safety of the Subcontractor's Work, that the Contractor, by these Contract Documents, assumes toward the Owner, Construction Manager and Architect. Each subcontract agreement shall preserve and protect the rights of the Owner, Construction Manager and Architect under the Contract Documents with respect to the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor so that subcontracting thereof will not prejudice such rights, and shall allow to the Subcontractor, unless specifically provided otherwise in the subcontract agreement, the benefit of all rights, remedies, and redress against the Contractor that the Contractor, by the Contract Documents, has against the Owner. Where appropriate, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to enter into similar agreements with Sub-subcontractors. The Contractor shall make available to each proposed Subcontractor, prior to the execution of the subcontract agreement, copies of the Contract Documents to which the Subcontractor will be bound, and, upon written request of the Subcontractor, identify to the Subcontractor terms and conditions of the proposed subcontract agreement that may be at variance with the Contract Documents. Subcontractors will similarly make copies of applicable portions of such documents available to their respective proposed Sub-subcontractors. The agreement between the Contractor and Subcontractor shall not provide, nor shall the Contract Documents be deemed to provide, any rights, remedies or redress by the Subcontractor(s) against the Owner.

**§ 5.3.1** The Contractor shall not enter into any subcontract, contract, agreement, purchase order or other arrangement for the furnishings of any portion of the materials, services, equipment or Work with any party or entity if such party or entity is an Affiliated Entity, unless such Arrangement has been approved by the Owner through the Construction Manager, after full disclosure of the relationship and all details relating to the proposed Arrangement. The term "Affiliated Entity" means any entity with respect to which the Contractor has direct or indirect ownership or control, including, without limitation,

- .1 Any entity owned in whole or in part by the Contractor;
- .2 Any holder of more than ten percent (10%) of the issued and outstanding shares of, or the holder of any interest in, the Contractor; or
- .3 Any entity in which any officer, director, employee, partner or shareholder or member of the family of any of the foregoing persons) of the Contractor or any entity owned by the Contractor has a direct or indirect interest, which interest includes, but is not limited to, that of a partner, employee, agent or shareholder.

§ 5.3.2 The Contractor shall promptly notify the Owner, the Construction Manager, and Architect of any material defaults by any Subcontractors and/or whether it has terminated its agreement with any of its Subcontractors for any reason. Notwithstanding any provision contained in this Article 5 to the contrary, it is hereby acknowledged and agreed that the Owner has in no way agreed, expressly or impliedly, nor will the Owner agree, to allow any Subcontractor or other material supplier or worker employed by the Contractor the right to obtain a judgment or decree against the Owner for the amount due it from the Contractor.

§ 5.3.3 The Contractor shall check record drawings of its Subcontractors each month. Written confirmation that the record drawings are “up to date” shall be required by the Construction Manager prior to approval of the Contractor’s monthly payment requisition.

#### § 5.4 Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts

§ 5.4.1 Each subcontract agreement for a portion of the Work is assigned by the Contractor to the Owner, provided that:

- .1 assignment is effective only after termination of the Contract by the Owner for cause pursuant to Section 14.2 and only for those subcontract agreements that the Owner accepts by notifying the Subcontractor and Contractor; and
- .2 assignment is subject to the prior rights of the surety, if any, obligated under bond relating to the Contract.

When the Owner accepts the assignment of a subcontract agreement, the Owner assumes the Contractor’s rights and obligations under the subcontract, except for sums due and owing by Contractor under the subcontract for work performed or material supplied prior to receipt of Owner’s notice of its determination to accept the subcontract. Owner shall only be required to compensate the Subcontractor of an accepted subcontract for compensation accruing to such Subcontractor for Work done or materials delivered after the date on which Owner provided notice of its determination to accept the subcontract. All sums due and owing by Contractor to the Subcontractor of an accepted subcontract shall constitute a debt between the Contractor and Subcontractor.

§ 5.4.2 It is agreed and understood that the contingent assignment of subcontracts is part of the consideration to Owner for entering into the Contract with Contractor and may not be withdrawn prior to Final Completion or Termination of all remaining Work of the Contractor pursuant to Section 14.4 hereof. Contractor shall deliver acknowledgement in form and substance satisfactory to Owner from each Subcontractor of the contingent assignment of subcontracts described herein no later than ten (10) days after the date of execution of each subcontract.

§ 5.4.3 Upon assignment to the Owner under this Section 5.4, the Owner may further assign the subcontract to a successor Contractor or other entity. If the Owner assigns the subcontract to a successor Contractor or other entity, the Owner shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all of the successor Contractor’s obligations under the subcontract.

§ 5.4.4 Each subcontract shall specifically provide that the Owner shall be responsible to the Subcontractor only for those obligations of the Contractor that accrue subsequent to the Owner’s exercise of any rights under this conditional assignment.

#### § 5.5 Owner Payment to Subcontractors

§ 5.5.1 In the event of any default hereunder by the Contractor, or in the event the Owner, Construction Manager, or Architect fails to approve any application for payment, that is not the fault of a Subcontractor, the Owner may make direct payment to the Subcontractor, less appropriate retainage. In that event, the amount so paid the Subcontractor shall be deducted from the payment to the Contractor.

§ 5.5.2 Nothing contained herein shall create any obligation on the part of the Owner to make any payments to any Subcontractor, and no payment by the Owner to any Subcontractor shall create any obligation to make any further payments to any Subcontractor.



## **ARTICLE 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS**

### **§ 6.1 Owner's Right to Perform Construction with Own Forces and to Award Other Contracts**

**§ 6.1.1** The Owner reserves the right to perform construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces, and with Separate Contractors. Should the Contractor sustain any damage or delay through any act or omission of any other Contractor having a contract with the Owner for the delivery of materials, supplies, equipment, plant or appliances, the Contractor shall have no claim against the Owner, Construction Manager or Architect for such damage or delay but shall have a right to recover or to claim such damage only from the other Contractor or Subcontractor; however, the Contractor shall notify the Owner through the Construction Manager within fifteen (15) days of the event or act of any other Contractor or Separate Contractor that causes damage or delay to the Contractor.

**§ 6.1.2** When the Owner performs construction or operations with the Owner's own forces or Separate Contractors, the Owner shall provide for coordination of such forces and Separate Contractors with the Work of the Contractor, who shall cooperate with them.

**§ 6.1.2.1** Where the term "Contractor" or "Prime Contractor" is used in the General Conditions, Supplementary General Conditions, and other Contract Documents, it shall mean the Contractor who executed the Owner-Contractor Agreement that is administered by the Construction Manager and Architect.

**§ 6.1.2.2** Where the term "separate contractor" is used in this Article it shall mean other contractor performing construction or operation on the site not administered by the Construction Manager or Architect.

**§ 6.1.3** The Contractor shall not interfere with the erection, installation or storage upon the premises of any work, materials, supplies or equipment not included in the Work, but which is to be performed and furnished by other Contractors, and the Contractor shall properly connect and coordinate the work therewith. The Contractor shall be responsible for the coordination and intermeshing of the work of his various sub-contractors and the work of other Contractors with the Work.

**§ 6.1.4** All Contractors, including the Owner's Separate Contractors, shall cooperate with each other in the installation and construction of each contractor's work and in such manner as the Owner and/or Construction Manager may direct. All Contractors shall control and coordinate the work of their subcontractors, if any. The Owner and/or Construction Manager shall approve or require the modification of the work schedules of all contractors to the end of the Project so the whole Project may be progressed, as expeditiously as possible, as one unit. The Award of more than one Contract for the Project requires sequential or otherwise inter-related contractor operations, and may involve inherent delays in the progress of any individual contractor's work. Accordingly, the Owner and/or Construction Manager cannot guarantee the unimpeded operations of any contractor. Each Contractor acknowledges these conditions and understands that he shall bear the risk of all ordinary delays caused by the presence or operations of other contractors engaged upon the Project and ordinary delays attended upon the approved Construction Schedule.

**§ 6.1.5** The Contractor accepts assignment of, and liability for, all purchase orders and other agreements for procurement of materials and equipment that are identified as part of the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall be responsible for such pre-purchased items, if any, as if the Contractor were the original purchaser. The Contract Sum includes, without limitation, all costs and expenses in connection with delivery, storage, insurance, installation and testing of items covered in any assigned purchase orders or agreements. All warranty and correction of the Work obligations under the Contract Documents shall also apply to any pre-purchased items, unless the Contract Documents specifically provide otherwise.

**§ 6.1.6** The Owner reserves the right to perform work on any phase of the Project pursuant to Section 2.5 of these General Conditions through a change order plus appropriate administrative costs when the established milestones become jeopardized due to any contractor's inaction. Inaction includes, but is not limited to, failure to man the work properly, failure to prosecute approved submittals, failure to prosecute contracts and purchase orders, and other acts or omissions which are deemed by the Owner to be in the best interests of the work."

**§ 6.1.7** During the progress of the work, other contractors, utilities and the Owner's own personnel (referred to collectively as "Others") may be engaged in performing work or may be awarded other contracts for additional work on this Project. In such event, the Contractor shall coordinate the work to be done hereunder with such Others and the Contractor shall fully cooperate with such Others, and carefully fit its own work to such Other's work.

## § 6.2 Mutual Responsibility

§ 6.2.1 The Contractor shall afford the Owner's own forces, Separate Contractors, Construction Manager and other Contractors reasonable opportunity for introduction and storage of their materials and equipment and performance of their activities, and shall connect and coordinate the Contractor's construction and operations with theirs as required by the Contract Documents.

§ 6.2.1.1 Unless directed by the Owner to the contrary, the Contractor shall coordinate its operations with those of other contractors, whether prime contractors or separate contractors, and shall be responsible for the coordination of the work of its various subcontractors which shall be arranged and conducted to avoid delays.

§ 6.2.1.2 The Contractor shall not commit or permit any act which will interfere with the performance of work by any separate or Prime Contractor involved with the Work.

§ 6.2.1.2.1 If the Contractor sustains any damage through any act or omission of other contractors or utilities having a Contract with the Owner for the performance of work upon the site or of work which may be necessary to be performed for the proper execution of the work to be performed hereunder, or through any act or omission of a subcontractor of such contractor and/or utility, the Contractor shall have no claim against the Owner for such damage, but shall have a right to recover such damage from the contractor and/or utility; however, the Contractor shall notify the Owner through the Construction Manager within fifteen (15) days of the event or act that causes damage to the Contractor.

§ 6.2.1.2.2 Should any other contractor having or who shall hereunder have a Contract with the Owner for the performance of Work upon the site, sustain any damage through any act or omission of the Contractor hereunder or through any act or omission of any subcontractor of the Contractor, the Contractor agrees to reimburse the Owner and/or such other Contractor for all such damages and to defend at its own expense any suit based upon such claim.

§ 6.2.1.2.3 The Contractor agrees to defend and indemnify Owner, Architect, Construction Manager, Consultants and Sub-consultants, from all claims made against any of them arising out of Contractor's acts or omissions of the acts or omissions of any subcontractor of the Contractor. The Owner's right to indemnification hereunder shall in no way be diminished, waived or discharged, by the exercise of any other remedy provided for by the contract or by law and the Owner's right to indemnification hereunder shall survive the expiration and/or termination of the contract.

§ 6.2.1.2.4 When the work of the Contractor or its subcontractors overlap or dovetail with that of other Contractors, material shall be delivered and operations conducted to carry on the work continuously, in an efficient, workmanlike manner.

§ 6.2.1.2.5 In case of interference between the operations of different Contractors, the Architect or Construction Manager, will be sole judge of the rights of each Contractor and shall have the authority to decide in what manner the work may proceed, and in all cases its decision shall be final.

§ 6.2.1.2.6 Any decision as to the method and times of conducting the work or the use of space as required in this 6.2.1, shall not be made the basis of claims for delay or damages.

§ 6.2.1.3 The Contractor, including its subcontractors, shall keep itself informed of the progress of other contractors and shall notify the Architect or Owner's Representative immediately of lack of progress on the part of the other Contractors where such delay will interfere with its own operations. Failure of a Contractor to keep informed of the work progressing on the Project and failure to give notice of lack of progress by others shall be construed as acceptance by the Contractor of the status of the work as being satisfactory for proper coordination with the Contractor's own work.

§ 6.2.1.4 Delays or oversights on the part of any contractor or subcontractor in getting any or all of their work done in the proper way, thereby causing cutting, removing and replacing work already in place, shall not be the basis for a claim for extra compensation by such contractor.

§ 6.2.2 If part of the Contractor's Work depends for proper execution or results upon construction or operations by the Owner's own forces, Separate Contractors or other Contractors, the Contractor shall, prior to proceeding with that portion of the Work, promptly notify the Construction Manager and Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor or other Contractors that would render it unsuitable for proper execution and results of the Contractor's Work. Failure of the Contractor to notify the Construction Manager and the Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects prior to proceeding with the Work shall constitute an acknowledgment that the Owner's or Separate Contractor's or other Contractors' completed or partially completed construction is fit and proper to receive the Contractor's Work. The Contractor shall not be responsible for discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that are not apparent.

§ 6.2.3 The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for costs the Owner incurs, including costs that are payable to a separate Contractors or to other Contractors, because of the Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities or defective construction. Failure to provide such reimbursement shall entitle the Owner to deduct such costs from the payment(s) due the Contractor until the Owner has fully recovered such costs.

§ 6.2.4 The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage that the Contractor wrongfully causes to completed or partially completed construction, or to property of the Owner, separate contractors, or other Contractors as provided in Section 10.2.5. The Contractor shall promptly correct discrepancies or defects in its Work which have been identified by other contractor(s) as affecting proper execution and results of the Work of such other contractor(s).

§ 6.2.5 The Owner, Separate Contractors, and other Contractors shall have the same responsibilities for cutting and patching as are described for the Contractor in Section 3.14.

### § 6.3 Owner's Right to Clean Up

If a dispute arises among the Contractor, Separate Contractors, other Contractors, and the Owner as to the responsibility under their respective contracts for maintaining the premises and surrounding area free from waste materials and rubbish, the Owner may clean up and the Construction Manager, with notice to the Architect, will allocate the cost among those responsible. If the Owner is not reimbursed promptly for such costs, the Contractor's share of such costs shall be deducted from the next payment to the Contractor.

## ARTICLE 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK

### § 7.1 General

§ 7.1.1 Changes in the Work may be accomplished after execution of the Contract, and without invalidating the Contract, by Change Order, Construction Change Directive or order for a minor change in the Work, subject to the limitations stated in this Article 7 and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

§ 7.1.1.1 Change Orders shall be submitted in total amounts for a particular change and not in installments for each trade thereafter. All partial change order submissions will be rejected and returned to the contractor for completion.

§ 7.1.2 A Change Order shall be based upon agreement among the Owner, Construction Manager, Architect and Contractor. A Construction Change Directive requires agreement by the Owner, Construction Manager and Architect and may or may not be agreed to by the Contractor. An order for a minor change in the Work may be issued by the Architect alone. No Change Order or Construction Change Directive shall become effective unless and until it is approved by the Owner in writing.

§ 7.1.3 Changes in the Work shall be performed under applicable provisions of the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall proceed promptly with changes in the Work, unless otherwise provided in the Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or order for a minor change in the Work. Except as otherwise expressly permitted in Articles 7 or 9, a change in the Contract Sum shall be accomplished only by Change Order or, when no agreement can be reached with the Contractor, by a Construction Change Directive. No course of conduct or dealings between the Contractor and Owner, Construction Manager or Architect, nor express or implied acceptance of alterations or additions to the Work, whether or not there is, in fact, any unjust enrichment to the Work, shall be the basis of any claim to an increase the amounts due under the Contract Documents or a change in any time period provided for in the Contract Documents.



§ 7.1.4 The Contractor shall notify the Architect and Construction Manager within three (3) days of any proposed change in the Work.

## § 7.2 Change Orders

A Change Order is a written instrument prepared by the Construction Manager and signed by the Owner, Construction Manager, Architect, and Contractor, stating their agreement upon all of the following:

- .1 The change in the Work;
- .2 The amount of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum; and
- .3 The extent of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Time.

§ 7.2.1 A change order proposal prepared by the Contractor shall include the value of the Change of Work, which shall be determined by one or more of the following, subject to the approval of the Owner, Construction Manager and Architect:

- a. Unit Prices or alternates previously agreed to by Contractor and Owner;
- b. If no such Unit Price or Alternates are previously agreed to, then value of the Change shall be determined by adding or deducting a fixed sum amount agreed on between the Owner and the Contractor; or
- c. By adding:
  - (i) The actual cost to Contractor and/or Subcontractor of labor for base wages only, including required union benefits as set forth in the applicable collective bargaining agreement, plus premiums required to be paid by Contractor for liability and workers' compensation insurance for such labor, plus state taxes for unemployment insurance and federal social security taxes; plus
  - (ii) The actual cost to Contractor and/or Subcontractor of materials incorporated or to be incorporated into the Project, including transportation to the site, plus rental costs of machinery and equipment (excluding hand tools) rented from others required exclusively for the Change of Work (or the added costs to extend rental of machinery and equipment if extended solely to perform Change of Work); plus
  - (iii) Contractor's and Subcontractor's overhead and profit as defined in Section 7.2.2 below.
- d. Should Contractor be required or permitted to subcontract all or a portion of the Change to be performed on the basis of the cost of labor and materials, payments to a Subcontractor of any tier that actually performs the Change shall be governed by the provision in subparagraph above.
- e. In order to facilitate checking of quotations for extras or credits, all proposals, shall be accompanied by a complete itemization of costs including labor, materials and sub-contracts. Where major cost items are sub-contracts, they shall be itemized also. All proposals without such itemization will be returned to the Contractor for resubmission, and Owner may issue a Construction Change Directive in lieu thereof.
- f. Additional bond costs incurred, if any, for add and deduct adjustments to the Contract Sum as a result of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives will be reviewed at the conclusion of the Project and any net increase or decrease cost will be adjusted in the contract without markup.
- g. When performing any Work on the basis of the cost of labor and materials, and Contractor or its Subcontractors are permitted or required to perform any overtime work, the cost of labor shall include additional wages over and above straight time rates, as well as wages at straight time rates.

§ 7.2.2 Overhead and Profit: The combined overhead and profit included in the total cost to the Owner shall not exceed the following:

- .1 Prime Contractor: For Work performed by the Prime Contractor's own forces, markup shall not exceed a total of fifteen percent (15%) of the value of labor and materials (L+M).
  - (i) Example: total Prime Contractor Amount = (L+M) + 15% O&P = (L+M) + (15% x (L+M))
- .2 Prime Contractor's Subcontractor: For Work performed by the Subcontractor's own forces, markup shall not exceed a total of ten percent (10%) of the value of labor and materials (L+M). For the Prime

Contractor, for work performed by the Prime Contractor's Subcontractor, markup shall not exceed five percent (5%) for the value of the Subcontractor amount.

(i) Example:

Total Subcontractor Amount =  $(L+M) + (10\% \times (L+M))$

Total Prime Contractor Amount (O&P) = Total Subcontractor Amount x 5% O&P

Total Change Order = Total Subcontractor Amount + Prime Contractor Amount

- 3 Sub-Subcontractor: For Work performed by the Sub-Subcontractor's own forces, markup shall not exceed a total of five percent (5%) of the value of labor and materials (L+M). For the Subcontractor, for work performed by the Subcontractor's Sub-Subcontractor, markup shall not exceed five percent (5%) for the value of the Sub-Subcontractor Amount. For the Prime Contractor, for work performed by the Subcontractor's Sub-Subcontractor, markup shall not exceed five percent (5%) for the value of the Subcontractor amount.

(i) Example:

Total Sub-Subcontractor Amount =  $(L+M) + (5\% \times (L+M))$

Total Subcontractor Amount (O&P) = Total Sub-Subcontractor Amount x 5%

Total Prime Contractor Amount (O&P) = Total Subcontractor Amount x 5%

Total Change Order = Total Sub-Subcontractor Amount + Total Subcontractor Amount + Prime Contractor Amount

**§ 7.2.3** A fully-executed Change Order shall constitute a final settlement of all matters relating to the change in the Contractor's Work reflected in the Change Order, including but not limited to, all direct and indirect costs associated with such change and any and all adjustments to the Contractor's Contract Sum, Contract Time and the construction schedule.

### **§ 7.3 Construction Change Directives**

**§ 7.3.1** A Construction Change Directive is a written order prepared by the Construction Manager and signed by the Owner, Construction Manager and Architect, directing a change in the Work prior to agreement on adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. The Owner may by Construction Change Directive, without invalidating the Contract, order changes in the Work within the general scope of the Contract consisting of additions, deletions, or other revisions, the Contract Sum and Contract Time being adjusted accordingly.

**§ 7.3.2** A Construction Change Directive shall be used in the absence of total agreement on the terms of a Change Order.

**§ 7.3.3** If the Construction Change Directive provides for an adjustment to the Contract Sum, the adjustment shall be based on one of the following methods:

- 1 Mutual acceptance of a lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation;
- 2 Unit prices stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon;
- 3 Cost to be determined in a manner agreed upon by the parties and a mutually acceptable fixed or percentage fee; or
- 4 As provided in Section 7.3.4.

**§ 7.3.4** If the Contractor does not respond promptly or disagrees with the method for adjustment in the Contract Sum, the Construction Manager shall determine the adjustment on the basis of reasonable expenditures and savings of those performing the Work attributable to the change. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, costs for the purposes of this Section 7.3.4 shall be limited to the following:

- 1 Costs of labor, including applicable payroll taxes, fringe benefits required by agreement or custom, workers' compensation insurance, and other employee costs approved by the Construction Manager and Architect;
- 2 Costs of materials, supplies, and equipment, including cost of transportation, whether incorporated or consumed;
- 3 Rental costs of machinery and equipment, exclusive of hand tools, that are rented from others required exclusively for the Change of work (or the added costs to extend rental of machinery and

equipment that are rented from others if extended solely to perform the Change of Work). There shall be no rental payments for Contractor's own machinery and equipment.;

- .4 Additional costs of supervision and field office personnel directly attributable to the change.
- .5 In case of an increase in the Contract Sum, an amount for overhead and profit as set forth in Section 7.2.2 above. In such case, and also under Section 7.3.3.3 above, the Contractor shall keep and present, in such form as the Construction Manager may prescribe, an itemized accounting together with appropriate supporting data.

**§ 7.3.5** If the Contractor disagrees with the adjustment in the Contract Time, the Contractor may make a Claim in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15. Failure to timely file any claim in accordance with the requirements set forth therein shall constitute a waiver of such claim.

**§ 7.3.6** Upon receipt of a Construction Change Directive, the Contractor shall promptly proceed with the change in the Work involved and advise the Construction Manager of the Contractor's agreement or disagreement with the method, if any, provided in the Construction Change Directive for determining the proposed adjustment in the Contract Sum or Contract Time.

**§ 7.3.7** A Construction Change Directive signed by the Contractor indicates the Contractor's agreement therewith, including adjustment in Contract Sum and Contract Time or the method for determining them. Such agreement shall be effective immediately and shall be recorded as a Change Order.

**§ 7.3.8** The amount of credit to be allowed by the Contractor to the Owner for a deletion or change that results in a net decrease in the Contract Sum shall be actual net cost as confirmed by the Construction Manager and Architect. When both additions and credits covering related Work or substitutions are involved in a change, the allowance for overhead and profit shall be figured on the basis of net increase, if any, with respect to that change.

**§ 7.3.9** Pending final determination of the total cost of a Construction Change Directive to the Owner, the Contractor may request payment for Work completed under the Construction Change Directive in Applications for Payment. The Construction Manager and Architect will make an interim determination for purposes of monthly certification for payment for those costs and certify for payment the amount that the Construction Manager and Architect determine to be reasonably justified. The interim determination of cost shall adjust the Contract Sum on the same basis as a Change Order, subject to the right of the Contractor to disagree and assert a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

**§ 7.3.10** When the Owner and Contractor agree with a determination made by the Construction Manager and Architect concerning the adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time, or otherwise reach agreement upon the adjustments, such agreement shall be effective immediately and the Construction Manager shall prepare a Change Order. Change Orders may be issued for all or any part of a Construction Change Directive.

**§ 7.3.11** Once a Change Order has been signed by the Contractor, Construction Manager, Architect and Owner, it shall constitute a final settlement of all matters relating to the change in the Work that is the subject of the Change Order, including, but not limited to, all direct and indirect costs associated with such change and any and all adjustments to the Contract Sum, Contract Time and the Construction Schedule.

#### **§ 7.4 Minor Changes in the Work**

The Architect may order minor changes in the Work that are consistent with the intent of the Contract Documents and do not involve an adjustment in the Contract Sum or an extension of the Contract Time. The Architect's order for minor changes shall be in writing. The work included in such order shall be performed by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner and shall not form the basis for a claim for an extension of the Contractor's time to complete its Work. A signed minor change in the Work is not and does not constitute an approved change order. If the Contractor believes that the proposed minor change in the Work will affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor shall notify the Construction Manager and shall not proceed to implement the change in the Work. If the Contractor performs the Work set forth in the Architect's order for a minor change without prior notice to the Construction Manager that such change will affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor waives any adjustment to the Contract Sum or extension of the Contract Time. The Contractor shall perform the work included in such orders so as to cause no delay to its Work and/or the work of other contractors engaged by the Owner in connection with the Project.

## **§ 7.5 Field Orders**

**§ 7.5.1** Field Orders are an interpretation of the Contract Documents or an order to do minor changes in the Work. Since time is of the essence, Contractor shall promptly complete the Work directed in the Field Order, which shall be in writing. Failure to proceed with a Field Order, which will adversely impact the completion of the Project or delay the work of another contractor, shall be just cause for the Owner taking over the Work, or termination of Contract.

**§ 7.5.2** Field Orders are not to be construed as Change Orders. A signed field order is not an approved Change Order.

**§ 7.5.3** Neither the Owner, Architect nor Construction Manager shall sign field tickets, work orders or any other document prepared by the Contractor. Should the Contractor desire to record extra work performed, the Contractor may request that the work be monitored by the Construction Manager and submit a copy of the field ticket/work order immediately upon completion of such work. The Contractor may also request a copy of the Construction Manager's log.

## **ARTICLE 8 TIME**

### **§ 8.1 Definitions**

**§ 8.1.1** Unless otherwise provided, Contract Time is the period of time, including authorized adjustments, allotted in the Contract Documents for Substantial Completion of the Work.

**§ 8.1.2** The date of commencement of the Work is the date established in the Agreement.

**§ 8.1.3** The date of Substantial Completion is the date certified by the Architect in accordance with Section 9.8.

**§ 8.1.4** The term "day" as used in the Contract Documents shall mean calendar day unless otherwise specifically defined.

**§ 8.1.5** The Date of Final Completion of the Work is the date all of the Work required under the Contract Documents is completed, all required materials and documents have been delivered to the Owner, and all applicable licenses, permits, certificates, or approvals have been obtained by the Contractor and delivered to the Owner to the extent provided for in the Contract Documents.

**§ 8.1.6** Regular School Hours shall mean the time Owner's school(s) is in session on any given day. Off Regular Hours shall mean all other time during the day. Regular School Days shall mean days Owner's school(s) is in session. (See Owner's school calendar)

### **§ 8.2 Progress and Completion**

**§ 8.2.1** Time limits stated in the Contract Documents are of the essence. By executing the Agreement, the Contractor confirms that the Contract Time is a reasonable period for performing the Work.

**§ 8.2.2** The Contractor shall not knowingly, except by agreement or instruction of the Owner in writing, commence the Work prior to the effective date of the payment and performance bond and the insurance required to be furnished by the Contractor and Owner. The date of commencement of the Work shall not be changed by the effective date of such bonds or such insurance.

**§ 8.2.2.1** Contractor shall not commence work on the site until certificates of insurance as described in Exhibit A (Insurance and Bonds) to AIA Document A132–2019, attesting that the required coverage is in force, have been received and accepted by the Owner.

**§ 8.2.3** The Contractor shall proceed expeditiously with adequate forces and shall achieve Substantial Completion within the Contract Time.

**§ 8.2.3.1** Contractor shall cooperate with the Owner, Architect, Engineer, Construction Manager and other Contractors on the Project, making every reasonable effort to reduce the Contract Time.

§ 8.2.4 Milestone Dates are dates critical to the Owner's operations that establish when a part of the Work is to commence or be complete. All Milestone Dates are of the essence and shall have the same meaning as Substantial Completion for the purpose of Liquidated Damages in this Article 8. Liquidated Damages applied to Substantial Completion shall apply to Milestone Dates.

§ 8.2.5 The Contractor may request access to the site during times beyond the work hours permitted. Approval of such a request is solely at the discretion of the Owner. If approval is given, the Contractor is responsible for paying all additional costs incurred by the Owner for providing Project sites to the Contractor during the additional time periods, including but not limited to any costs incurred for the Owner's staff to be present or provide access and additional fees the Owner incurs for services of the Architect and Construction Manager.

### § 8.3 Delays and Extensions of Time

§ 8.3.1 If the Contractor is delayed at any time in the commencement or progress of the Work by (1) an act or neglect of the Owner, Architect, Construction Manager, or an employee of any of them, or of the Owner's own forces, Separate Contractors, or other Contractors; (2) by changes ordered in the Work; (3) by fire, unavoidable casualties, adverse weather conditions documented in accordance with Section 15.1.6.2, or other causes beyond the Contractor's control; (4) by delay authorized by the Owner; or (5) by any unforeseeable cause beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the Contractor, including but not restricted to, acts of God or of the public enemy, fires, floods, epidemics, freight embargoes or other causes that the Contractor asserts and the Architect, based on the recommendation of the Construction Manager, determines may justify delay, then the Contract Time shall be extended by Change Order to the extent such delay will prevent the Contractor from achieving Substantial Completion within the Contract Time and if performance of the Work is not, was not or would not have been delayed by any other cause for which the Contractor is not entitled to an extension in the Contract Time under the Contract Documents. The Contractor further acknowledges and agrees that adjustments in the Contract Time will be permitted for a delay only to the extent such delay (i) is not caused, or could not have been anticipated, by the Contractor, (ii) could not be limited or avoided by the Contractor's timely notice to the Owner of the delay, (iii) is of a duration not less than one (1) day and (iv) the Contractor has made all reasonable effort to recover the alleged lost time. No extension of time will be granted for changes in work for labor disputes, picketing, hand billing, refusal to deliver, work stoppages due to asbestos removal, material procurement delays or other stoppages not authorized by the Owner.

§ 8.3.1.1 An extension or extensions, of time may be granted subject to the provisions of this article, but only after written application thereof by the Contractor.

§ 8.3.1.2 An extension of time shall be only for the number of days of delay which the Architect may determine to be due solely to the causes set forth in the application of extension of time. The Contractor shall not be entitled to receive a separate extension of time for each one of several causes of delay operating concurrently; but if at all, only the actual period of delay as determined by the Architect. For each day of delay in completion of the work so caused, the Contractor shall be allowed one day additional to the time limitation specified in the Contract, it being understood and agreed that the allowance of same shall be solely at the discretion and approval of the Owner.

§ 8.3.1.3 No claim for any damages or any claim other than for extensions of time as herein provided shall be made or asserted against the Owner by reason of any delays caused by the reasons set forth in this section 8.3.

§ 8.3.1.4 The Contractor shall be responsible for labor peace on the Project and shall at all times exert its best efforts and judgement as an experienced contractor to adopt and implement policies and practices designed to avoid work stoppages, slowdowns, disputes, or strikes where reasonably possible and practical under the circumstances and shall, at all times, maintain Project wide labor harmony. The Contractor shall be liable to the Owner for all damages suffered by the Owner occurring as a result of work stoppages, slowdowns, disputes or strikes.

§ 8.3.1.5 All costs for expedited material procurement to meet the schedule shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.

§ 8.3.2 Claims relating to time shall be made in accordance with this Section 8.3 and applicable provisions of Article 15.



§ 8.3.3 If the Contractor submits a progress report indicating, or otherwise expresses an intention to achieve, completion of the Work prior to any completion date required by the Contract Documents or expiration of the Contract Time, no liability of the Owner to the contractor for any failure of the Contractor to so complete the Work shall be created or implied.

§ 8.3.4 When the Contract Time has been extended, as provided under this Section 8.3, such extension of time shall not be considered as justifying extra compensation to the Contractor for administrative costs or other similar reasons.

#### § 8.4 Liquidated Damages

§ 8.4.1 Contractor realizes that time is of the essence on this Contract and the Construction Schedule shall be submitted per Section 3.10.1. In the event the Contractor fails to submit a Construction Schedule by said schedule date, the sum per calendar day, of Three Hundred Dollars (\$300.00) will be subtracted from the Payment due the Contractor or, if the amount due Contractor as Payment is insufficient, any deficiency shall be paid by the Contractor to the Owner.

§ 8.4.2 Contractor realizes that time is of the essence on this Contract and the completion date (including any applicable Milestone Dates) for any work and the date of Substantial Completion shall be no later than the dates for same indicated in these Contract Documents. The Contractor understands that substantial disruption of the School District's educational process will occur if the Project is not completed by the date of Substantial Completion and if any portion of the Project is not completed by the applicable Milestone Date. In the event the Contractor fails to complete any work or substantially complete the work under this contract by said schedule date, the sum listed below per calendar day will be subtracted from the Payment due the Contractor until final completion (or, if the amount due Contractor as Payment is insufficient, any deficiency shall be paid by the Contractor to the Owner per the following table), except in cases where a delay is due to unforeseeable causes beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the Contractor, including, acts of God, or of the public enemy, acts of the Government, in either its sovereign or contractual capacity, fires, floods, epidemics, freight embargoes, or delays of Subcontractors or suppliers due to such causes. Delay in acquisition of materials other than by reason of freight embargoes will not constitute a delay excusable under this provision unless approved by the Owner in writing.

Liquidated damages will be assessed in the following amounts for each and every calendar day AFTER such time allowed for completion:

Total Contract Amount:	Amount of Liquidated Damages per Day	
Under \$50,000	\$500	per day
\$50,001 - \$100,000	\$1,000	per day
\$100,001 - \$500,000	\$2,000	per day
\$500,001 - \$1,000,000	\$3,000	per day
\$1,000,001 - \$5,000,000	\$4,000	per day

Within five (5) calendar days from occurrence of any such delay, the Contractor shall notify the Owner in writing of cause of delay. The Owner will ascertain the facts and extent of the delay, and extend the time for completing the Work when in his judgment the findings of fact justify such an extension. Owner's findings of fact will be final and binding in any litigation.

The said sum per calendar day shall constitute the Liquidated Damages incurred by the Owner for each day of delay beyond the agreed upon dates of Substantial Completion. Such Liquidated Damages shall be in addition to any other damages (other than by reason of delay) Owner may incur as a result of Contractor's breach of Contract. In the event the Contractor fails to complete all work under this Contract by said scheduled dates, the Contractor will not be permitted to perform any work during Regular School Hours. Such work shall only be performed after Regular School Hours, Saturdays, Sundays, holidays or periods when school is unoccupied at no additional cost of any kind to the Owner. In addition to Liquidated Damages, the Contractor shall be liable for all additional costs incurred by the Owner after the Substantial Completion Date (as well as Milestone Dates) stated in the Contract Documents for its own employees to make the Owner's property and facilities accessible to the Contractor beyond Regular School Hours and incurred by the Owner for Construction Manager services and Architect services performed for the Project due to the Contractor's failure to complete its work by the Substantial Completion Date (and Milestone Date) stated in the Contract Documents, including but not limited to the additional costs incurred for

extending the duration of their services and for performing inspections after Regular School Hours or on Saturdays, Sundays or holidays .

All such costs incurred by the Owner as well as the cost of additional inspections, at the greater rate of One Thousand Dollars (\$1000) per inspection or (b) at the hourly rate of each consultant of the Owner (including the Architect and Construction Manager and their respective consultants) times the hours spent per inspection, will be subtracted from payment due the Contractor. If the amount due the Contractor for payment is insufficient, any deficiency shall be paid by the Contractor to the Owner.

## **ARTICLE 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION**

### **§ 9.1 Contract Sum**

**§ 9.1.1** The Contract Sum is stated in the Agreement and, including authorized adjustments, is the total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor for performance of the Work under the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.1.2** If unit prices are stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon, and if quantities originally contemplated are materially changed so that application of such unit prices to the actual quantities causes substantial inequity to the Owner or Contractor, the applicable unit prices shall be equitably adjusted.

**§ 9.1.3** Each Application for Payment shall include such instruments, evidence, and materials as Owner shall require including, without limitation, such requisition forms, disbursements requests, indemnities (including evidence of All Risk physical damage insurance coverage on materials and equipment stored off-site), and undertaking as they may specify and an estimate of the total labor done and materials stored at the site (or other location approved in writing by Owner) or installed in the building, less cost for which payment has been made, and also less retainage. All applications for Payment shall be made on and in compliance with a form acceptable to Owner or Owner's lender, and Architect. Contractor shall supply such additional documentation and information as Construction Manager or Architect shall request in connection with each disbursement to Contractor.

**§ 9.1.4** Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in the Contract Documents, the Owner may withhold any payments, to the Contractor if and for so long as the Contractor fails to perform any of its obligations or otherwise is in default under any of the Contract Documents; provided, however, that any such hold back shall be limited to an amount sufficient in the reasonable opinion of the Owner to cure any such default or failure of performance by the Contractor.

**§ 9.1.5** If the Owner is entitled to reimbursement or payment from the Contractor under or pursuant to the Contract Documents, such payment shall be made promptly upon demand by the Owner. Notwithstanding anything contained in the Contract Documents to the contrary, if the Contractor fails to promptly make any payment due the Owner, or the Owner incurs any costs and expenses to cure any default of the Contractor or to correct defective Work of the Contractor, the Owner shall have an absolute right to offset such amount against the Contract Sum and may, in the Owner's sole discretion, elect either to: (1) deduct an amount equal to that to which the Owner is entitled from any payment then or thereafter due the Contractor from the Owner or (2) issue through the Construction Manager a written notice to the Contractor reducing the Contract Sum by an amount equal to that which the Owner is entitled.

### **§ 9.2 Schedule of Values**

Where the Contract is based on a Stipulated Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, the Contractor shall submit a schedule of values to the Construction Manager, before the first Application for Payment, allocating the entire Contract Sum to the various portions of the Work. The schedule of values shall be prepared in the form, and supported by the data to substantiate its accuracy, required by the Construction Manager and the Architect. The Construction Manager shall forward to the Architect the Contractor's schedule of values. This schedule, unless objected to by the Construction Manager or Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment. Any changes to the schedule of values shall be submitted to the Construction Manager and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy as the Construction Manager and the Architect may require, and unless objected to by the Construction Manager or the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's subsequent Applications for Payment.

**§ 9.2.1** The Contractor and each Subcontractor shall prepare a trade payment breakdown for the Work for which each is responsible, such breakdown being submitted on a uniform standardized form approved by the Architect and

Owner. The form shall be divided in detail sufficient to exhibit areas, floors and/or sections of the Work, and/or by convenient units and shall be updated as required by either the Owner or the Architect as necessary to reflect (1) description of Work (listing labor and material separately), (2) total value, (3) percent of the Work completed to date, (4) value of Work completed to date, (5) percent of previous amount billed, (6) previous amount billed, (7) current percent completed and (8) value of Work completed to date. Any trade breakdown which fails to include sufficient detail, is unbalanced or exhibits "front loading" of the value of the Work shall be rejected. If trade breakdown had been initially approved and subsequently used, but later found improper for any reason, sufficient funds shall be withheld from future Applications for Payment to ensure an adequate reserve (exclusive of normal retainage) to complete the Work. Breakdown shall include multiple construction site, multiple locations within each site, additions versus renovation work, etc. as required to satisfy State Education Department requirements.

### **§ 9.3 Applications for Payment**

**§ 9.3.1** By the seventh day of the month, the Contractor shall submit to the Construction Manager an itemized Application for Payment prepared in accordance with the schedule of values, if required under Section 9.2, for completed portions of the Work as of the last day of the preceding month. The application shall be notarized, if required, and supported by all data substantiating the Contractor's right to payment that the Owner, Construction Manager or Architect require, such as copies of requisitions, and releases of waivers of lien from Subcontractors and suppliers, and shall reflect retainage if provided for in the Contract Documents. Each item listed in the Application for Payment shall have a separate amount for labor and a separate amount for material and other costs.

**§ 9.3.1.1** As provided in Section 7.3.9, such applications may include requests for payment on account of changes in the Work that have been properly authorized by Construction Change Directives, or by interim determinations of the Construction Manager and Architect, but not yet included in Change Orders.

**§ 9.3.1.2** Applications for Payment shall not include requests for payment for portions of the Work for which the Contractor does not intend to pay a Subcontractor or supplier unless such Work has been performed by others whom the Contractor intends to pay.

**§ 9.3.1.3** Until substantial completion of the Work in accordance with Section 9.8, the Owner shall pay 95 percent of the amount of each progress payment due the Contractor.

**§ 9.3.1.4** Applications for Payment must be accompanied by any and all releases of liens for previous applications from Contractor and his subcontractors and a sworn and notarized statement that all subcontractors have been paid to at least ninety-five percent (95%) of previously requisitioned sums.

**§ 9.3.1.5** Contractors must submit separate Applications for Payment for each facility or per State Education Department Project Number. Only one Application for Payment per State Education Department Project Number may be submitted for payment for each month.

**§ 9.3.2** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, payments shall be made on account of materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the Work. If approved in advance by the Owner, payment may similarly be made for materials and equipment suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing. Payment for materials and equipment stored on or off the site shall be conditioned upon compliance by the Contractor with procedures satisfactory to the Owner to establish the Owner's title to such materials and equipment or to otherwise protect the Owner's interest, and shall include the costs of applicable insurance, storage, and transportation to the site for such materials and equipment stored off the site.

Additionally, the Contractor must furnish the following information where payment is requested for materials and equipment stored off the project site, as part of its Application for Payment:

1. Type of material must be specifically identified by the Trade Contractor.
2. Trade Contractor must furnish an invoice from his supplier showing the total value of the material and/or equipment being stored off site.
3. Trade Contractor must provide a Certificate of Insurance for the full value of the item plus ten (10%) percent.
4. Trade Contractor must execute a Security Agreement.
5. Trade Contractor must execute a bill of Sale for stored material and/or equipment.
6. Trade Contractor must file a UCC-1 Form with the Security Agreement.



§ 9.3.2.1 Procedures required by Owner shall include, but are not necessarily limited to, submission by the Contractor to the Architect of bills of sale and bills of lading for such materials and equipment, provision of opportunity for Architect's visual verification that such materials and equipment are in fact in storage, and, if stored off-site, submission by the Contractor of verification that materials and equipment are stored in a bonded warehouse.

§ 9.3.2.2 All such materials and equipment, including materials and equipment stored on-site but not yet incorporated into the Work, upon which partial payments have been made shall become the property of the Owner, but the care and protection of such materials and equipment shall remain the responsibility of the Contractor until incorporation into the Work, including maintaining insurance coverage on a replacement cost basis without voluntary deductible.

§ 9.3.2.3 The consent of any surety shall be obtained to the extent required prior to payment for any materials stored off the Project site. The Construction Manager, Architect and Owner shall have the right to make inspections of the materials stored off the Project site.

§ 9.3.3 The Contractor warrants that title to all Work covered by an Application for Payment will pass to the Owner no later than the time of payment. The Contractor further warrants that upon submittal of an Application for Payment all Work for which Certificates for Payment have been previously issued and payments received from the Owner shall, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information, and belief, be free and clear of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances, in favor of the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, or other persons or entities that provided labor, materials and equipment relating to the Work.

§ 9.3.3.1 The Contractor shall save and keep the Owner, the Contract Sum and the Owner's property free from all liens and claims, legal or equitable, arising out of Contractor's work hereunder. In the event any such lien is filed by anyone claiming by, through or under the Contractor, the Contractor shall remove and discharge same within ten (10) days of the filing thereof. The Contractor further expressly undertakes to defend the Owner, the Owner's Board of Education, the Architect and the Construction Manager and their respective consultants, officers, directors, officials, employees, servants and agents (the "Indemnitees") at the Contractor's sole expense against any actions, lawsuits or proceedings brought against Indemnitees as a result of liens filed against the Work, the site of any of the Work, the Project site and any improvements thereon, payments due the Contractor or any portion of the property of any of the Indemnitees referred to collectively as liens in this Section 9.3.3.1. The Contractor hereby agrees to indemnify and hold Indemnitees harmless against any such liens or claims of lien and agrees to pay any judgment or lien resulting from any such actions, lawsuits or proceedings.

§ 9.3.3.2 The Owner shall release any payments withheld due to a lien or claim of lien if the Contractor obtains security acceptable to the Owner or a lien bond which is: (1) issued by a surety acceptable to the Owner, (2) in form and substance satisfactory to the Owner, and (3) in an amount not less than One Hundred Ten percent (110%) of such lien claim. By posting a lien bond or other acceptable security, however, the Contractor shall not be relieved of any responsibilities or obligations under this Section 9.3, including, without limitation, the duty to defend and indemnify the Indemnitees. The cost of any premiums incurred in connection with such bonds and security shall be the responsibility of the Contractor and shall not be part of, or cause any adjustment to, the Contract Sum.

§ 9.3.4 Each Application for Payment shall be accompanied by the following, all in form and substance satisfactory to the Owner, Construction Manager and Architect:

§ 9.3.4.1 A current Contractor's lien waiver and duly executed and acknowledged sworn statement showing all Subcontractors and material men with whom the Contractor has entered into subcontracts, the amount of each such subcontract, the amount requested for any Subcontractor and material men in the requested progress payment and the amount to be paid to the Contractor for all such Subcontractors and material men;

§ 9.3.4.2 Duly executed waivers of mechanic's and material men's liens from all Subcontractors and, when appropriate, from material men and lower tier Subcontractors establishing payment or satisfaction of payment of all amounts requested by the Contractor on behalf of such entities or persons in any previous Application for Payment; and

**§ 9.3.4.3** All information and materials required to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents or reasonably requested by the Owner, Construction Manager or the Architect. If required by the Owner's title insurer, if any, the Contractor shall execute a personal gap undertaking in form and substance satisfactory to such title insurer.

**§ 9.3.4.4** All Applications for Payment must be accompanied with certified payrolls for all Contract Work performed. In addition, each Contractor and sub-contractor shall submit to the Owner within thirty days after issuance of its first payroll, and every thirty days thereafter, a transcript of the original payroll record, as provided by Assembly Bill 6394-B amending Article 8, Section 220, of the NYS Labor Law, subscribed and affirmed as true under penalties of perjury. The Owner shall be required to receive and maintain such payroll records. The original payrolls or transcripts shall be preserved for three years from the completion of the Work on the awarded project. An out of state contractor must post a wage rate schedule at the job site.

**§ 9.3.5** The Contractor shall submit a "pencil-copy" requisition to the Construction Manager no later than the date as directed by the Construction Manager for work completed up to that day for review with field personnel and for comparison to the Contractor's As-built Drawings which shall be updated daily per the General Conditions. After any adjustments are made, the Contractor shall finalize and submit to the Construction Manager no later than the date as directed by the Construction Manager five (5) copies of the requisition, signed and notarized, for the Construction Manager's final approval and signature. The Owner shall make payment within 30 days after the Construction Manager's receipt of the final (not pencil-copy) of the requisition.

**§ 9.3.6** Applications for Payment that, when received, are missing information or required documentation will be rejected by the Construction Manager or Architect and will not be considered for payment by the Owner, Architect or Construction Manager until resubmitted with all required information and documents.

#### **§ 9.4 Certificates for Payment**

**§ 9.4.1** The Construction Manager will, within seven days after the Construction Manager's receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, review the Application, certify the amount the Construction Manager determines is due the Contractor, and forward the Contractor's Application and Certificate for Payment to the Architect. Within seven days after the Architect receives the Contractor's Application for Payment from the Construction Manager, the Architect will either (1) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment, in the full amount of the Application for Payment, with a copy to the Construction Manager; or (2) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment for such amount as the Architect determines is properly due, and notify the Construction Manager and Owner of the Architect's reasons for withholding certification in part as provided in Section 9.5.1; or (3) withhold certification of the entire Application for Payment, and notify the Construction Manager and Owner of the Architect's reason for withholding certification in whole as provided in Section 9.5.1. The Construction Manager will promptly forward to the Contractor the Architect's notice of withholding certification.

**§ 9.4.2** Where there is more than one Contractor performing portions of the Project, the Construction Manager will, within seven days after the Construction Manager receives all of the Contractors' Applications for Payment: (1) Review the Applications and certify the amount the Construction Manager determines is due each of the Contractors; (2) Prepare a Summary of Contractors' Applications for Payment by combining information from each Contractor's application with information from similar applications for progress payments from the other Contractors; (3) Prepare a Project Application and Certificate for Payment; (4) Certify the amount the Construction Manager determines is due all Contractors; and (5) Forward the Summary of Contractors' Applications for Payment and Project Application and Certificate for Payment to the Architect.

**§ 9.4.2.1** Within seven days after the Architect receives the Project Application and Project Certificate for Payment and the Summary of Contractors' Applications for Payment from the Construction Manager, the Architect will either (1) issue to the Owner a Project Certificate for Payment, with a copy to the Construction Manager; or (2) issue to the Owner a Project Certificate for Payment for such amount as the Architect determines is properly due, and notify the Construction Manager and Owner of the Architect's reasons for withholding certification in part as provided in Section 9.5.1; or (3) withhold certification of the entire Project Application for Payment, and notify the Construction Manager and Owner of the Architect's reason for withholding certification in whole as provided in Section 9.5.1. The Construction Manager will promptly forward the Architect's notice of withholding certification to the Contractors.

**§ 9.4.3** The Construction Manager's certification of an Application for Payment or, in the case of more than one Contractor, a Project Application and Certificate for Payment, shall be based upon the Construction Manager's evaluation of the Work and the data in the Application or Applications for Payment. The Construction Manager's certification will constitute a representation that, to the best of the Construction Manager's knowledge, information, and belief, the Work has progressed to the point indicated, the quality of the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, and that the Contractor is, or Contractors are, entitled to payment in the amount certified.

**§ 9.4.4** The Architect's issuance of a Certificate for Payment or, in the case of more than one Contractor, Project Application and Certificate for Payment, shall be based upon the Architect's evaluation of the Work, the recommendation of the Construction Manager, and data in the Application for Payment or Project Application for Payment. The Architect's certification will constitute a representation that, to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information, and belief, the Work has progressed to the point indicated, the quality of the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, and that the Contractor is, or Contractors are, entitled to payment in the amount certified.

**§ 9.4.5** The representations made pursuant to Sections 9.4.3 and 9.4.4 are subject to an evaluation of the Work for conformance with the Contract Documents upon Substantial Completion, to results of subsequent tests and inspections, to correction of minor deviations from the Contract Documents prior to completion, and to specific qualifications expressed by the Construction Manager or Architect.

**§ 9.4.6** The issuance of a Certificate for Payment or a Project Certificate for Payment will not be a representation that the Construction Manager or Architect has (1) made exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work; (2) reviewed construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures; or (3) made examination to ascertain how or for what purpose the Contractor has used money previously paid on account of the Contract Sum.

#### **§ 9.5 Decisions to Withhold Certification**

**§ 9.5.1** The Construction Manager or Architect may withhold a Certificate for Payment or Project Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to protect the Owner, if in the Construction Manager's or Architect's opinion the representations to the Owner required by Sections 9.4.3 and 9.4.4 cannot be made. If the Construction Manager or Architect is unable to certify payment in the amount of the Application, the Construction Manager will notify the Contractor and Owner as provided in Sections 9.4.1 and 9.4.2. If the Contractor, Construction Manager and Architect cannot agree on a revised amount, the Architect will promptly issue a Certificate for Payment or a Project Certificate for Payment for the amount for which the Architect is able to make such representations to the Owner. The Construction Manager or Architect may also withhold a Certificate for Payment or, because of subsequently discovered evidence or subsequent observations, may nullify the whole or a part of a Certificate for Payment or Project Certificate for Payment previously issued, to such extent as may be necessary in the Construction Manager's or Architect's opinion to protect the Owner from loss for which the Contractor is responsible, including loss resulting from the acts and omissions described in Section 3.3.2 because of:

- .1 defective Work not remedied;
- .2 third party claims filed or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of such claims, unless security acceptable to the Owner is provided by the Contractor;
- .3 failure of the Contractor to make payments properly to Subcontractors or suppliers for labor, materials or equipment;
- .4 reasonable evidence that the Work cannot be completed for the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum;
- .5 damage to the Owner or a separate contractor or other Contractor;
- .6 reasonable evidence that the Work will not be completed within the Contract Time, and that the unpaid balance would not be adequate to cover actual or liquidated damages for the anticipated delay; or
- .7 failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- .8 Contractor's failure to give notice of errors and inconsistencies; or
- .9 failure of the Contractor or its subcontractors to comply with the mandatory requirements for maintaining Record Drawings.

**§ 9.5.2** When the Contractor disputes the Architect's decision regarding a Certificate for Payment under Section 9.5.1, in whole or in part, the Contractor may submit a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

§ 9.5.3 When the reasons for withholding certification are removed, certification will be made for amounts previously withheld.

§ 9.5.4 If the Architect or Construction Manager withholds certification for payment under Section 9.5.1, the Owner may, at its sole option, issue joint checks to the Contractor and to any Subcontractor or supplier to whom the Contractor failed to make payment for Work properly performed or material or equipment suitably delivered. If the Owner makes payments by joint check, the Owner shall notify the Architect and the Construction Manager, and both will reflect such payment on the next Certificate for Payment.

## § 9.6 Progress Payments

§ 9.6.1 After the Architect has issued a Certificate for Payment or Project Certificate for Payment, the Owner shall make payment in the manner and within the time provided in the Contract Documents and shall so notify the Construction Manager and Architect.

§ 9.6.2 The Contractor shall pay each Subcontractor, no later than seven days after receipt of payment from the Owner, the amount to which the Subcontractor is entitled, reflecting percentages actually retained from payments to the Contractor on account of the Subcontractor's portion of the Work. The Contractor shall, by appropriate agreement with each Subcontractor, require each Subcontractor to make payments to Sub-subcontractors in a similar manner. The Contractor shall also comply with paragraph entitled "Payment by Contractors to Subcontractors" contained in section 106-b of the New York General Municipal Law.

§ 9.6.3 The Construction Manager will, on request, furnish to a Subcontractor, if practicable, information regarding percentages of completion or amounts applied for by the Contractor and action taken thereon by the Owner, Construction Manager and Architect on account of portions of the Work done by such Subcontractor.

§ 9.6.4 The Owner through the Construction Manager or directly has the right to request written evidence from the Contractor that the Contractor has properly paid Subcontractors and suppliers amounts paid by the Owner to the Contractor for subcontracted Work. If the Contractor fails to furnish such evidence within seven days, the Owner shall have the right to contact Subcontractors and suppliers to ascertain whether they have been properly paid. Neither the Owner, Construction Manager nor Architect shall have an obligation to pay, or to see to the payment of money to, a Subcontractor or supplier, except as may otherwise be required by law.

§ 9.6.5 The Contractor's payments to suppliers shall be treated in a manner similar to that provided in Sections 9.6.2, 9.6.3 and 9.6.4 for payments to Subcontractors.

§ 9.6.6 A Certificate for Payment, a progress payment, or partial or entire use or occupancy of the Project by the Owner shall not constitute acceptance of Work not in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 9.6.7 Unless the Contractor provides the Owner with a payment bond in the full penal sum of the Contract Sum, payments received by the Contractor for Work properly performed by Subcontractors or provided by suppliers shall be held by the Contractor for those Subcontractors or suppliers who performed Work or furnished materials, or both, under contract with the Contractor for which payment was made by the Owner. Nothing contained herein shall require money to be placed in a separate account and not commingled with money of the Contractor, create any fiduciary liability or tort liability on the part of the Contractor for breach of trust, or entitle any person or entity to an award of punitive damages against the Contractor for breach of the requirements of this provision.

§ 9.6.8 The Contractor shall defend and indemnify the Owner from all loss, liability, damage or expense, including reasonable attorney's fees and litigation expenses, arising out of any lien claim or other claim for payment by any Subcontractor or supplier of any tier. Upon receipt of notice of a lien claim or other claim for payment, the Owner shall notify the Contractor. Pursuant to applicable law or court order, when required, the Contractor may substitute a surety bond for the property against which the lien or other claim for payment has been asserted.

§ 9.7 [Deleted.]

## § 9.8 Substantial Completion

§ 9.8.1 Substantial Completion is date certified by the Architect when the construction is code compliant and when

the Work or designated portion thereof is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use; provided, however that as a condition precedent to Substantial Completion, the Owner has received all Certificates of Occupancy and any permits, approvals, licenses, and other documents from any governmental authority having jurisdiction thereof necessary for the beneficial occupancy of the Project.

**§ 9.8.1.1** When advised by the Contractor that the Work is substantially completed, the Architect and the Contractor shall, within a reasonable time, make a joint inspection of the work and if the Architect shall determine the Work is substantially completed, the Contractor shall submit a substantial completion application.

**§ 9.8.1.2** If the Architect's inspection discloses any item which is not sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work or designated portion thereof for its intended use, the Contractor shall, before issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion, complete or correct such item upon notification by the Architect. In such case, the Contractor shall then submit a request for another inspection by the Architect, assisted by the Construction Manager, to determine Substantial Completion.

**§ 9.8.1.3** If more than two (2) inspections by the Architect and Construction Manager are needed to confirm Substantial Completion, the contractor shall pay for the time spent by the Construction Manager and Architect to conduct subsequent inspections.

**§ 9.8.2** When the Contractor considers that the Work, or a portion thereof which the Owner agrees to accept separately, is substantially complete, the Contractor shall notify the Construction Manager, and the Architect and Construction Manager shall jointly prepare and submit to the Contractor a comprehensive list of items to be completed or corrected prior to final payment. This list shall be provided to the Contractor not more than thirty (30) business days after the date of Substantial Completion. Failure to include an item on such list does not alter the responsibility of the Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.8.3** When the Architect, assisted by the Construction Manager, determines that the Work of all of the Contractors, or designated portion thereof, is substantially complete, the Construction Manager will prepare, and the Construction Manager and Architect shall execute, a Certificate of Substantial Completion that shall establish the date of Substantial Completion; establish responsibilities of the Owner and Contractor for security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance; and fix the time within which the Contractor shall finish all items on the list accompanying the Certificate. Warranties required by the Contract Documents shall commence on the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof unless otherwise provided in the Certificate of Substantial Completion.

**§ 9.8.4** The Certificate of Substantial Completion shall be submitted to the Owner and Contractor for their written acceptance of responsibilities assigned to them in the Certificate. Upon such acceptance, and consent of surety if any, the Owner shall make payment in accordance with Section 9.8.5 of these General Conditions.

**§ 9.8.5** When the Work, or major portions thereof as contemplated by the terms of the Contract, has been substantially completed, the Contractor shall submit to the Owner through the Construction Manager and the Architect an Application for Payment of the remaining amount of the Contract balance. Upon receipt of such application, the Owner shall approve and promptly pay the remaining amount of the Contract balance less two times the value of any remaining items to be completed and an amount necessary to satisfy any claims, liens or judgments against the Contractor which have not been suitably discharged. As the remaining items of Work are satisfactorily completed or corrected, the Owner shall promptly pay, upon receipt of a requisition through the Construction Manager and the Architect, for those items less an amount necessary to satisfy any claims, liens or judgments against the Contractor which have not been suitably discharged. Any claims, liens and judgments referred to in this subparagraph shall pertain to the Project and shall be filed in accordance with the terms of the applicable Contract and/or applicable laws.

## **§ 9.9 Partial Occupancy or Use**

**§ 9.9.1** The Owner may occupy or use any completed or partially completed portion of the Work at any stage, provided such occupancy or use is consented to by the insurer and authorized by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Project. Such partial occupancy or use may commence whether or not the portion is substantially complete, provided the Owner and Contractor have accepted in writing the responsibilities assigned to each of them for payments, retainage if any, security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and



insurance, and have agreed in writing concerning the period for correction of the Work and commencement of warranties required by the Contract Documents. Such occupancy does not relieve the Contractor from completing the Work within the time period specified. When the Contractor considers an occupied portion to be substantially complete, the Contractor will proceed in accord with Section 9.8.2 of these General Conditions. Consent of the Contractor to partial occupancy or use shall not be unreasonably withheld. The stage of the progress of the Work shall be determined by written agreement between the Owner and Contractor or, if no agreement is reached, by decision of the Architect after consultation with the Construction Manager.

**§ 9.9.2** Immediately prior to such partial occupancy or use, the Owner, Construction Manager, Contractor, and Architect shall jointly inspect the area to be occupied or portion of the Work to be used in order to determine and record the condition of the Work, and in order to prepare a complete punch list of omissions of materials, faulty workmanship, or any items to be repaired torn out or replaced.

**§ 9.9.3** Unless otherwise agreed upon, partial occupancy or use of a portion or portions of the Work shall not constitute acceptance of Work not complying with the requirements of the Contract Documents, nor does it waive the Owner's right to liquidated damages. Further such occupancy alone shall not determine when Substantial Completion has been reached.

#### **§ 9.10 Final Completion and Final Payment**

**§ 9.10.1** Upon completion of the Work, the Contractor shall forward to the Construction Manager a notice that the Work is ready for final inspection and acceptance and shall also forward to the Construction Manager a final Contractor's Application for Payment. Upon receipt, the Construction Manager shall perform an inspection to confirm the completion of Work of the Contractor. The Construction Manager shall make recommendations to the Architect when the Work of all of the Contractors is ready for final inspection, and shall then forward the Contractors' notices and Application for Payment or Project Application for Payment, to the Architect, who will promptly make such inspection. When the Architect finds the Work acceptable under the Contract Documents and the Contract fully performed, the Construction Manager and Architect will promptly issue a final Certificate for Payment or Project Certificate for Payment stating that to the best of their knowledge, information and belief, and on the basis of their on-site visits and inspections, the Work has been completed in accordance with the Contract Documents and that the entire balance found to be due the Contractor and noted in the final Certificate is due and payable. The Construction Manager's and Architect's final Certificate for Payment or Project Certificate for Payment will constitute a further representation that conditions listed in Section 9.10.2 as precedent to the Contractor's being entitled to final payment have been fulfilled. All warranties and guarantees required under the Contract Documents shall be assembled and delivered by the Contractor to the Architect through the Construction Manager as part of the final Application, no final payment will be issued until all warranties and guarantees have been received and accepted by the Owner.

**§ 9.10.1.1** If the Work is not accepted by the Owner after final inspection and additional time is required to complete items identified during the final inspection, the date starting the two (2) year correction period described in Article 12 shall be set by the Architect at his discretion, but no later than the date of the Final Certificate for Payment.

**§ 9.10.1.2** If the Architect and/or Owner's Representative is required to perform additional final inspections because Work fails to comply with the certifications of the Contractor, the amount of compensation paid to the Architect and Construction Manager by the Owner for additional services for such additional inspections shall be deducted from the final payment to the Contractor.

**§ 9.10.2** Neither final payment nor any remaining retained percentage shall become due until the Contractor submits to the Architect through the Construction Manager (1) an affidavit that payrolls, bills for materials and equipment, and other indebtedness connected with the Work for which the Owner or the Owner's property might be responsible or encumbered (less amounts withheld by Owner) have been paid or otherwise satisfied, (2) a certificate evidencing that insurance required by the Contract Documents to remain in force after final payment is currently in effect, (3) a written statement that the Contractor knows of no reason that the insurance will not be renewable to cover the period required by the Contract Documents, (4) consent of surety, if any, to final payment, (5) documentation of any special warranties, such as manufacturers' warranties or specific Subcontractor warranties, (6) a Punch List Item Letter stating that all items on the punch list have been completed to the Owner's satisfaction, (7) all site documents, all procedures manuals and spare parts, all equipment guarantees and warranties, Contractor Affidavit of Release of Liens, complete set of Shop Drawings and a set of As-built Drawings in red ink or other reproducible

color except black, (8) a close-out meeting is with Owner, Architect and Construction Manager is required to review final documentation, and (9), if required by the Owner, other data establishing payment or satisfaction of obligations, such as receipts and releases and waivers of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract, to the extent and in such form as may be designated by the Owner. If a Subcontractor refuses to furnish a release or waiver required by the Owner, the Contractor may furnish a bond satisfactory to the Owner to indemnify the Owner against such lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance. If a lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance remains unsatisfied after payments are made, the Contractor shall refund to the Owner all money that the Owner may be compelled to pay in discharging the lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance, including all costs and reasonable attorneys' fees.

**§ 9.10.2.1** In addition to the submittals required in Section 9.10.2 above, the Contractor shall submit separate release or waivers of liens for each subcontractor, material supplier, and others with lien rights against the Owner's property or against all or part of the Contract Sum, and shall submit a list of such parties.

**§ 9.10.2.2** Submittals required above shall be made in accordance with procedure described in the Project Manual.

**§ 9.10.3** If, after Substantial Completion of the Work, final completion thereof is materially delayed through no fault of the Contractor or by issuance of Change Orders affecting final completion, and the Construction Manager and Architect so confirm, the Owner shall, upon application by the Contractor and certification by the Construction Manager and Architect, and without terminating the Contract, make payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed, corrected, and accepted. If the remaining balance for Work not fully completed or corrected is less than retainage stipulated in the Contract Documents, and if bonds have been furnished, the written consent of the surety to payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed and accepted shall be submitted by the Contractor to the Architect through the Construction Manager prior to certification of such payment. Such payment shall be made under terms and conditions governing final payment, except that it shall not constitute a waiver of Claims.

**§ 9.10.4** The making of final payment shall constitute a waiver of Claims by the Owner except those arising from:

- .1 liens, Claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract and unsettled;
- .2 failure of the Work to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents;
- .3 terms of special warranties required by the Contract Documents; or
- .4 audits performed by the Owner, if permitted by the Contract Documents, after final payment.

**§ 9.10.5** Acceptance of final payment by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a supplier, shall constitute a waiver of claims by that payee except those previously made in writing and identified by that payee as unsettled at the time of final Application for Payment.

In the event the Contractor does not achieve final completion within sixty (60) days after the date of substantial completion, allowing for any approved extensions of the contract time, Contractor shall not be entitled to any further payment and Contractor hereby agrees that such failure to complete the work within the time set forth above shall constitute a waiver of all claims by the Contractor to any money that may be due. This provision shall not operate as a waiver by the Owner of any claims or remedies of any nature against the Contractor arising out of the Contract.

**§ 9.10.6** Contractor shall submit all documentation identified in this section within thirty (30) from the date of Substantial Completion. If the documentation has not been submitted, the Owner will obtain such through whatever means necessary. The Contractor shall solely be responsible for all expenses incurred by the Owner, provided the Owner has advised the Contractor by written notice of its intent to obtain such documentation at Contractor's expense at least seven (7) days prior to initiating efforts to obtain the documentation. .

## **ARTICLE 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY**

### **§ 10.1 Safety Precautions and Programs**

The Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining, and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with the performance of the Contract. The Contractor shall submit the Contractor's safety program to the Construction Manager for review and coordination with the safety programs of other Contractors.

The Construction Manager's responsibilities for review and coordination of safety programs shall not extend to direct control over or charge of the acts or omissions of the Contractors, Subcontractors, agents or employees of the

Contractors or Subcontractors, or any other persons performing portions of the Work and not directly employed by the Construction Manager.

## **§ 10.2 Safety of Persons and Property**

**§ 10.2.1** The Contractor shall provide for the safety and protection of the Project sites, all persons who come in contact with the Work and all real and personnel property located at or adjacent to the Project sites. Without limitation to the foregoing, the Contractor, at its sole cost and expense, shall take reasonable precautions for safety of, and shall provide reasonable protection to prevent damage, injury, or loss to:

- .1 employees on the Work and other persons who may be affected thereby;
- .2 the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated therein, whether in storage on or off the site, under care, custody, or control of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a Sub-subcontractor;
- .3 other property at the site or adjacent thereto, such as trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, roadways, structures, and utilities not designated for removal, relocation, or replacement in the course of construction;
- .4 construction or operations by the Owner, Separate Contractors, or other Contractors; and
- .5 the work of the Owner or other separate contractors.

Prior to commencement of the Work, the Contractor shall document existing conditions, and record existing damage to construction or property that is to remain at the site and notify the Construction Manager and Architect of same in writing.

**§ 10.2.2** The Contractor shall comply with, and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities, bearing on health and safety of persons or property or their protection from damage, injury, or loss. The Contractor agrees in working on the Owner's premises, to comply with all applicable codes and health and safety regulations as they apply to the work and as set forth in the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970, as revised to date, and any applicable federal, state and/or local laws, rules, regulations and/or executive orders regarding COVID-19.

**§ 10.2.2.1** The Contractor agrees, in order that the work will be completed with the greatest degree of safety: To conform to the requirements of Regulation 155.5 of the NYS Commissioner of Education, the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 (OSHA) as amended and the Construction Safety Act of 1969 as amended, including all standards and regulations that have been since or shall be promulgated by the governmental authorities which administer such acts, and shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, the Owner's Board of Education, the Construction Manager, the Architect, and all their respective employees, consultants, officers, directors, volunteers and representatives from any and all claims, damages, losses, suits obligations, fines, penalties, costs, charges and expenses which may be imposed upon or incurred by or asserted against any of them by reason of any act or omission of such Contractor or its subcontractors, employees, suppliers, material men, agents or any person or firm directly or indirectly employed by such Contractor, with respect to violations of OSHA or other safety requirements, rules and/or regulations.

### **§ 10.2.2.2 Additional Requirements:**

- .1 All construction materials shall be stored in safe and secure manner.
- .2 Fences around construction supplies and debris shall be maintained.
- .3 Gates shall always be locked unless a worker is in attendance to prevent unauthorized entry.
- .4 During exterior renovation work, overhead protection shall be provided for any sidewalks or areas immediately beneath the work site or such areas shall be fenced off and provided with warning signs to prevent entry.
- .5 Ladders and scaffolding shall be in good operating condition. Any damaged ladders, bakers, and rolling scaffolding shall be immediately removed from job.
- .6 Ground properly all electric operated tools.
- .7 Wear protective eye goggles during any cutting, whether by hand or mechanical means.
- .8 Remove nails, screws, bolts and tack strips from floor immediately after demolition.
- .9 Workmen to have proper shoes and clothing as per OSHA recommendation.
- .10 No smoking is allowed in Owner's buildings or on Owner's property. No drinking of alcoholic beverages or use of controlled substances allowed on Owner's property. No reporting to work



impaired by alcohol or controlled substances allowed. Any employee found to be under the influence of any controlled substance or alcohol will be banned from the site.

- .11 All Contractors are to refrain from conversing with Owner's school personnel and students. Any construction employees found doing so, will be removed from the site.
- .12 All contractors are to refrain from using indecent language. All doing so, will be removed from the site.
- .13 All construction personnel to wear photo ID badges. Photo ID badges to be provided by Contractor and receive Owner's approval.
- .14 All Contractors and their personnel shall implement and comply with all applicable safety precautions and programs, including New York State, federal and/or CDC guidelines regarding social distancing and the provision of personal protective equipment to the Contractor's employees.

**§ 10.2.3** The Contractor shall erect and maintain, as required by existing conditions and performance of the Contract, reasonable safeguards for safety and protection, including posting danger signs and other warnings against hazards; promulgating safety regulations; and notifying the owners and users of adjacent sites and utilities of the safeguards.

**§ 10.2.3.1** The Contractor shall be solely responsible for providing a safe place for the performance of the Work.

**§ 10.2.3.2** Protection of construction materials and equipment stored at the Project sites from weather, theft, damage, and all other adversity is solely the responsibility of the Contractor.

**§ 10.2.3.3** The Contractor shall provide all temporary access walkways, both interior and exterior, temporary partitioning and the like necessary to complete its Work. The Contractor shall maintain in an unobstructed condition all entrances and/or exits from present buildings.

**§ 10.2.3.4** Construction areas which are under the control of a Contractor and therefore not occupied by the Owner's staff or students shall be separated from occupied areas. Provisions shall be made to prevent the passage of dust and contaminants into occupied parts of any building in which construction is occurring. Periodic inspection and repair of the dust and contaminant barriers must be made to prevent exposure to dust or contaminants. Heavy duty plastic sheeting may be used only for a vapor, fine dust or air infiltration barrier, and shall not be used to separate occupied spaces from construction areas.

**§ 10.2.3.4.1** Pursuant to Section 222-a of New York Labor Law, when a harmful dust is created, if the Contractor fails to install, maintain and effectively operate appliances and methods approved by the board of standards and appeals for the elimination of harmful dust, the Contract between Owner and Contractor shall be void.

**§ 10.2.3.5** The Contractor shall provide necessary and required security measures to adequately safeguard the construction sites from vandalism and intrusion of unauthorized persons. The Project sites must be secured 24 hours a day, 7 days a week, including holidays. The Contractor's failure to secure the site as required by this section may result in the Owner engaging security services. All costs and expenses associated with the Owner's security of the Project sites will be back charged to the Contractor. While the Owner may have security guards patrolling its properties, including but not limited to the Project sites, the function of such security guards is not for the purpose of guarding the Contractor's property, operations or work.

**§ 10.2.4** When use or storage of explosives or other hazardous materials or equipment or unusual methods are necessary for execution of the Work, the Contractor shall exercise utmost care and carry on such activities under supervision of properly qualified personnel.

**§ 10.2.4.1** When use or storage of hazardous materials or equipment or unusual construction methods are necessary to promulgate the Work, the Contractor shall give the Owner reasonable advance notice, and shall maintain on the site, a full set of safety instructions relating to all such materials.

**§ 10.2.5** The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage and loss (other than damage or loss insured under property insurance required by the Contract Documents) to property referred to in Section 10.2.1 of these General Conditions caused in whole or in part by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts they may be liable, except to the extent such damage or loss is attributable to acts or omissions of the Owner, Construction Manager or Architect or anyone directly or indirectly

employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, and not attributable to the fault or negligence of the Contractor. The foregoing obligations of the Contractor are in addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.18 herein.

**§ 10.2.6** The Contractor shall designate a responsible member of the Contractor's organization at the site whose duty shall be the prevention of accidents. This person shall be the Contractor's superintendent unless otherwise designated by the Contractor in writing to the Owner, Construction Manager and Architect.

**§ 10.2.7** The Contractor shall not permit any part of the construction or site to be loaded so as to cause damage or create an unsafe condition.

**§ 10.2.8 Injury or Damage to Person or Property**

If either party suffers injury or damage to person or property because of an act or omission of the other party, or of others for whose acts such party is legally responsible, notice of the injury or damage, whether or not insured, shall be given to the other party within a reasonable time not exceeding 7 days after discovery. The notice shall provide sufficient detail to enable the other party to investigate the matter.

When all or a portion of the Work is suspended for any reason, the Contractor shall securely fasten down all coverings and protect the Work, as necessary, from injury by any cause.

**§ 10.2.9** The Contractor shall promptly report in writing to the Owner, Construction Manager and Architect all accidents arising out of or in connection with the Work which cause death, person injury, or property damage, giving full details and statements of any witnesses. In addition, if death, serious personal injuries, or serious property damages are caused, the accident shall be reported immediately by telephone or messenger to the Owner and the Construction Manager. The Contractor is in no way relieved of its responsibility to abide by the Occupational Safety Health Act (OSHA) regulations and for recording and registering accidents by the reporting of accidents to the Construction Manager, Architect or Owner.

The Contractor solely assumes the following distinct and several risks whether said risks arise from acts or omissions, whether supervisory or otherwise, of the Owner, of the Construction Manager, of third persons or from any other cause, including unforeseen obstacles and difficulties which may be encountered in the prosecution of the Work, whether said risks are within or beyond the control of the Contractor and whether said risks involve any legal duty, primary or otherwise, imposed upon the Owner or Construction Manager, excepting only risks which arise from fault designs as shown by the Drawings and Specifications or from affirmative acts of the Owner or the Owner's members, officers, representatives or employees committed with intent to cause the loss, damage or injuries hereinafter set forth:

- .1 The risk of loss or damage, includes direct or indirect damage or loss, of whatever nature to the Work or to any plant, equipment, tools, materials or property furnished, used, installed or received by the Owner, the Construction Manager, the Contractor or any Subcontractor, materialmen or workmen performing services or furnishing materials for the Work. The Contractor shall bear said risk of loss or damage until Final Acceptance of the Work by the Owner or until completion or removal of said plant, equipment, tools, materials or property from the Site and the vicinity thereof, whichever event occurs last. In the event of said loss or damage, the Contractor immediately shall repair, replace or make good any said loss or damage.
- .2 The risk of claims, just or unjust, by third persons against the Contractor or the Owner, the Architect and the Construction Manager on account of wrongful death, bodily injuries and property damage, direct or consequential, loss or damage of any kind whatsoever arising or alleged to arise out of or as a result of or in connection with the performance by the Contractor of the Work, whether actually caused by or resulting from the performance of the Work, or out of or in connection with the Contractor's operations or presence at or in the vicinity of the Site. The Contractor shall bear the risk for all deaths, injuries, damages or losses sustained or alleged to have been sustained prior to the Final Acceptance of the Work. The Contractor shall bear the risk for all deaths, injuries, damages or losses sustained or alleged to have been sustained resulting from the Contractor's negligence or alleged negligence which is discovered, appears, or is manifested after acceptance by the Owner.
- .3 The Contractor assumes entire responsibility and liability for any and all damage or injury of any kind or nature whatsoever, including death resulting therefrom, to all person, whether employees of the Contractor or otherwise, and to all property, caused by, resulting from, arising out of, or occurring in connection with the

execution of the Work. If any person shall make said claim for any damage or injury, including death resulting therefrom, or any alleged breach of any statutory duty or obligation on the part of the Owner, the Owner's Board of Education, the Architect, the Construction Manager, or their respective consultants, officers, directors, volunteers, contractors, representatives, servants and employees, the Contractor shall assume the defense and pay on behalf of the Owner, the Owner's Board of Education, the Architect, the Construction Manager, and their respective consultants, officers, directors, volunteers, contractors, representatives, servants and employees, any and all loss, expense, damage or injury that the Owner the Owner's Board of Education, the Architect, the Construction Manager, or their respective consultants, officers, directors, volunteers, contractors, representatives, servants and employees may sustain as the result of any claim. The Contractor agrees to assume, and pay on behalf of the Owner, the Owner's Board of Education, the Architect, and Construction Manager, and their respective consultants, officers, directors, volunteers, contractors, representatives, servants and employees, the defense of any action at law or equity which may be brought against them. The assumption of defense and liability by the Contractor include, but is not limited to, the amount of any legal fees associated with defending, all costs of investigation, expert evaluation and any other costs including any judgment or interest or penalty that may be entered against the Owner, the Owner's Board of Education, the Architect and the Construction Manager, and their respective consultants, officers, directors, volunteers, contractors, representatives, servants and employees, in any said action.

**§ 10.2.10** Title to all completed or partially completed work at the job site, and to all materials delivered to and stored at said job site which are intended to become a part of the complete work covered by the Contract, shall be in the name of the Owner. Notwithstanding the foregoing, and prior to acceptance of the complete work by the Owner, the Contractor shall be liable for all loss of or damage to said completed work, partially completed work, materials furnished by the Contractor, and materials or equipment, furnished by others, the custody of which has been given to the Contractor, arising from any cause other than those against which the Owner herein undertakes to carry insurance. In the event of loss or damage from cause other than those against which the Owner undertakes to carry insurance, the Contractor shall replace or repair the said work or materials at his own cost and expense.

**§ 10.2.10.1** The Contractor shall sustain any loss or damage arising from the nature of the work to be done under this Contract or from any unforeseen or unusual obstructions or difficulties which may be encountered in prosecuting the work or from the actions of the elements including water, wind and frost. The Contractor shall maintain suitable adequate safeguards to protect all property and personnel, public or private.

**§ 10.2.10.2** The Contractor's obligations under this Article shall not be deemed waived, limited or discharge by the enumeration or procurement of any insurance for liability for damages. The Contractor shall notify its insurance carrier within twenty-four (24) hours after receiving a notice of loss or damage or claim from the Owner, Architect or Construction Manager. The Contractor shall make a claim on its insurer specially under the provisions of the contractual liability overages and any other overages afforded the Owner, Architect or the Construction Manager including those of being an additional insured where applicable.

**§ 10.2.10.3** Neither Final Acceptance of the Work nor making any payment shall release the Contractor from the Contractor's obligations under this Article. The enumeration in this Article or elsewhere in the Contract Documents of particular risks assumed by the Contractor or of particular claims for which the Contractor is responsible shall not be deemed to limit the effect of the provisions of this Article or imply that the Contractor assumes or is responsible for only risks or claims of the type enumerated; and neither the enumeration in this Article nor the enumeration elsewhere in the Contract of particular risks assumed by the Contractor of particular claims for which the Contractor is responsible shall be deemed to limit the risks which the Contractor would assume or the claims for which the Contractor would be responsible in the absence of said enumerations.

**§ 10.2.11** Any precautions for fire protection necessary for the execution of a Contractor's Work shall be the responsibility of the Contractor requiring same and the cost of such precautions shall be paid for by that Contractor. The Contractor shall take all necessary precautions to insure against fire during construction and be responsible to ensure that the area within contract limits is kept orderly and clean and that combustible rubbish shall be stored on the site in such a manner and at such locations as designated by Owner through the Construction Manager to:

- .1 Provide and maintain adequate fire protection. The fire protection shall be adequate at all times and shall be subject to applicable codes and regulations.

- .2 Comply with regulations, OSHA standards, and codes of local Fire Marshall, agencies, and departments having jurisdictions.

§ 10.2.11.1 The Contractor shall be required to keep all fire alarms operational at all times or provide fire watch approved by Fire Marshal.

§ 10.2.11.2 The Contractor shall provide shielding for heat and keep smoke detectors from accidentally going off. Contractor will be back-charged for all fines imposed for fire alarms.

§ 10.2.11.3 The Contractor shall at all times provide the proper housekeeping to minimize potential fire hazards, and shall provide approved spark arresters on all steam engines, internal combustion engines and flues.

§ 10.2.11.4 No fires shall be built on the premises nor shall open flame devices of any kind be employed within the building except for field welding with supervised fire watch.

§ 10.2.12 Free access to fire hydrants and standpipe connections shall be maintained at all times during construction operations, and portable fire extinguishers shall be provided by the Contractor and made conveniently available throughout the construction site. The Contractor shall notify its employees and subcontractors of the location of the nearest fire alarm box at all locations where the Work is in progress.

§ 10.2.13 No equipment, other than equipment with rubber tires, will be allowed on any existing or new pavement within the limits of the contract, unless the pavement has been first protected with planking or by other means approved by the Construction Manager.

§ 10.2.14 From the commencement to the completion of the Project, the Contractor shall keep the parts of the Work and the buildings free from accumulation of water no matter what the source or cause of water.

§ 10.2.15 The Contractor shall be responsible for all costs incurred by the Owner caused by false security alarms set off by the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors, employees, suppliers, material men, agents or any person or firm directly or indirectly employed by such Contractor. Costs shall include custodial response charges, charges for additional services of the Construction Manager, Architect or their consultants, etc.

§ 10.2.16 Temporary partitions are to be constructed where shown on drawings or where otherwise required for safety of the public or to prevent dust from entering occupied areas. Partitions shall be dustproof from floor to ceiling (if existing condition is a drop in tile ceiling, Contractor shall remove tile and install partition to structure above). In addition to framing and sheetrock, each partition is to have plastic on the work area side. If an access door is required, an alternating 3 layer plastic system shall be used. The door shall be a standard hollow metal door with lockset and closer. Keys shall be distributed to the prime contractors, Owner and Construction Manager.

§ 10.2.17 During construction, the General Contractor shall be responsible for maintaining a watertight structure. This shall include additions and existing buildings. The Contractor shall be responsible for temporary roofing, tarps, and other protection at roofs, cavity walls, etc. Should the Contractor fail to provide adequate protection, causing flooding, damage, or other disturbance to the existing building, Contractor shall be responsible for all costs associated with clean up and repairs. Inasmuch as flooding and damage have safety implications to the general public, clean up and repairs may be made by the Owner without warning to the Contractor. Administration costs incurred by the Owner, Construction Manager and Architect in connection with such repairs and clean-up will also be back charged to the Contractor. The Contractor, by entering into contract with the Owner agrees to be liable for these costs.

§ 10.2.18 The Contractor and their Subcontractors shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, Owner's Board of Education, Architect, Construction Manager and any of their respective consultants, officers, directors, volunteers, contractors, representatives, and employees from any and all claims, damages, losses, suits, obligations, fines, penalties, costs charges and expenses which may be imposed upon or incurred by or asserted against any of them by reason of any act or omission of such Contractor or any of its Subcontractors, employees, suppliers, material men, agents or any person or firm directly or indirectly employed by such Contractor that resulted in an incident and/or accident causing personal injury and/or property damage.

§ 10.2.19 The Contractor agrees that any unsatisfied claim of the Owner, Architect and/or Construction Manager arising from obligations in this Article 10 shall be set off or deducted from payments due the Contractor.

### § 10.3 Hazardous Materials

§ 10.3.1 The Contractor is responsible for compliance with any requirements included in the Contract Documents regarding hazardous materials or substances. If the Contractor encounters a hazardous material or substance not addressed in the Contract Documents and if reasonable precautions will be inadequate to prevent foreseeable bodily injury or death to persons resulting from a hazardous material or substance, including but not limited to asbestos or polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB), encountered on the site by the Contractor, the Contractor shall, upon recognizing the condition, immediately stop Work in the affected area and notify in writing the Owner, Construction Manager and Architect of the condition.

§ 10.3.2 Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice, the Owner shall obtain the services of a licensed laboratory to verify the presence or absence of the material or substance reported by the Contractor and, in the event such material or substance is found to be present, to cause it to be rendered harmless. Unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish in writing to the Contractor, Construction Manager and Architect the names and qualifications of persons or entities who are to perform tests verifying the presence or absence of the material or substance or who are to perform the task of removal or safe containment of the material or substance. When the material or substance has been rendered harmless, Work in the affected area shall resume upon direction of the Owner. By Change Order, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable additional costs of shutdown and start-up.

§ 10.3.3 [Deleted.]

§ 10.3.4 The Owner shall not be responsible under this Section 10.3 for hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site unless such materials or substances are required by the Contract Documents. The Owner shall be responsible for hazardous materials or substances required by the Contract Documents, except to the extent of the Contractor's fault or negligence in the use and handling of such materials or substances.

§ 10.3.5 The Contractor shall reimburse and indemnify the Owner for the cost and expense the Owner incurs (1) for remediation of hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site and negligently handles, or (2) where the Contractor fails to perform its obligations under Section 10.3.1, except to the extent that the cost and expense are due to the Owner's fault or negligence.

§ 10.3.6 The definition of "hazardous materials" shall include, but not be limited to, all of the materials and substances listed as being hazardous by the United States Environmental Protection Agency and the corresponding agency in the State where the Project is located.

### § 10.4 Emergencies

In an emergency immediately affecting safety of persons or property, the Contractor shall act, at the Contractor's discretion, to prevent threatened damage, injury, or loss. Additional compensation or extension of time claimed by the Contractor on account of an emergency shall be determined as provided in Article 15 and Article 7. The word "immediately" for the purposes of this Section shall mean a time period which is less than the time it would take to notify the Construction Manager of the emergency.

## ARTICLE 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS

### § 11.1 Contractor's Insurance and Bonds

§ 11.1.1 The Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents, including Exhibit A (Insurance and Bonds) to AIA Document A132-2019. The Contractor shall provide proof of such insurance as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents, including Exhibit A (Insurance and Bonds) to AIA Document A132-2019. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Owner, Construction Manager and Construction Manager's consultants, and the Architect and Architect's consultants, shall be named as additional insureds under the Contractor's commercial general liability policy or as otherwise described in the Contract Documents.



§ 11.1.2 The Contractor shall provide surety bonds of the types, for such penal sums, and subject to such terms and conditions as required by the Instructions to Bidders and other Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required bonds from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

§ 11.1.2.1 The Contractor shall keep the surety informed of the progress of the Work, and, where necessary, obtain the surety's consent to, or waiver of: (1) request for reduction or release of retention; (2) request for final payment; and (3) any other material required by the surety. The Owner and Construction Manager shall be notified by the Contractor, in writing, of all communications with the surety. The Owner may, in the Owner's sole discretion and without prior notice to the Contractor, through the Construction Manager, Architect or directly inform the Contractor's surety of the progress of the Contractor's work and obtain consents as necessary to protect the Owner's rights, interest, privileges and benefits under and pursuant to any bond issued in connection with the Contractor's Work.

§ 11.1.3 Upon the request of any person or entity appearing to be a potential beneficiary of bonds covering payment of obligations arising under the Contract, the Contractor shall promptly furnish a copy of the bonds and consents to the Owner, Construction Manager or Architect furnishing a copy of the bonds to potential beneficiaries upon request.

§ 11.1.4 **Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Contractor's Required Insurance.** Within thirty (30) calendar days of the date the Contractor becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide notice directly to the Owner, and separately to the Construction Manager, of such impending or actual cancellation or expiration. Upon receipt of notice from the Contractor, the Owner shall, unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Owner, have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by the Contractor. The furnishing of notice by the Contractor shall not relieve the Contractor of any contractual obligation to provide any required coverage.

## § 11.2 Owner's Insurance

§ 11.2.1 The Owner shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Owner shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

## § 11.2.2 Intentionally omitted

§ 11.2.3 **Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Owner's Required Property Insurance.** Within thirty (30) calendar days of the date the Owner becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall provide notice to the Construction Manager, who will notify the Contractor, of such impending or actual cancellation or expiration. If the Contractor purchases replacement coverage, the cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by an appropriate Change Order. The furnishing of notice by the Owner shall not relieve the Owner of any contractual obligation to provide required insurance.

## § 11.3 Waivers of Subrogation

§ 11.3.1 The Owner and Contractor waive all rights against (1) each other and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, each of the other; (2) the Construction Manager and Construction Manager's consultants; (3) the Architect and Architect's consultants; (4) other Contractors and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees; and (5) Separate Contractors, if any, and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, for damages caused by fire, or other causes of loss, to the extent those losses are covered by property insurance required by the Agreement or other property insurance applicable to the Project, except such rights as they have to proceeds of such insurance. The Owner or Contractor, as appropriate, shall require similar written waivers in favor of the individuals and entities identified above from the Construction Manager, Construction Manager's consultants, Architect, Architect's consultants, other Contractors, Separate Contractors, subcontractors, and sub-subcontractors. The policies of insurance purchased and maintained by each person or entity agreeing to waive claims pursuant to this Section 11.3.1 shall not prohibit this waiver of subrogation. This waiver of subrogation shall be effective as to a person or entity (1) even though that person or entity would otherwise have a duty of indemnification, contractual or otherwise, (2) even though that person or entity did not pay the insurance

premium directly or indirectly, or (3) whether or not the person or entity had an insurable interest in the damaged property.

#### **§ 11.4 Loss of Use, Business Interruption, and Delay in Completion Insurance**

The Owner, at the Owner's option, may purchase and maintain insurance that will protect the Owner against loss of use of the Owner's property, or the inability to conduct normal operations, due to fire or other causes of loss.

#### **§ 11.5 Adjustment and Settlement of Insured Loss**

**§ 11.5.1** A loss insured under the property insurance required by the Agreement shall be adjusted by the Owner as fiduciary and made payable to the Owner as fiduciary for the insureds, as their interests may appear, subject to requirements of any applicable mortgagee clause and of Section 11.5.2. The Owner shall pay the Construction Manager, Architect and Contractor their just shares of insurance proceeds received by the Owner, and by appropriate agreements the Construction Manager, Architect and Contractor shall make payments to their consultants and subcontractors in similar manner.

**§ 11.5.2** Prior to settlement of an insured loss, the Owner shall notify the Contractor of the terms of the proposed settlement as well as the proposed allocation of the insurance proceeds. The Contractor shall have 14 days from receipt of notice to object to the proposed settlement or allocation of the proceeds. If the Contractor does not object, the Owner shall settle the loss and the Contractor shall be bound by the settlement and allocation. Upon receipt, the Owner shall deposit the insurance proceeds in a separate account and make the appropriate distributions. Thereafter, if no other agreement is made or the Owner does not terminate the Contract for convenience, the Owner and Contractor shall execute a Change Order for reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work in the amount allocated for that purpose. If the Contractor timely objects to either the terms of the proposed settlement or the allocation of the proceeds, the Owner may proceed to settle the insured loss, and the Contractor may dispute the terms of the settlement or allocation of the proceeds through a claim asserted pursuant to Article 15. Pending resolution of any dispute, the Owner may issue a Construction Change Directive for the reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work.

### **ARTICLE 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK**

#### **§ 12.1 Uncovering of Work**

**§ 12.1.1** If a portion of the Work is covered contrary to the Construction Manager's, Architect's or governmental authority's request or to requirements specifically expressed in the Contract Documents, it must, if requested in writing by the Construction Manager, Architect or governmental authority, be uncovered for their examination and be replaced at the Contractor's expense without change in the Contract Time or Contract Sum.

**§ 12.1.2** If a portion of the Work has been covered that the Construction Manager, Architect or governmental authority has not specifically requested to examine prior to its being covered, the Construction Manager, Architect or governmental authority may request to see such Work and it shall be uncovered by the Contractor. If such Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, the cost of uncovering and recovering the Work shall be the Owner's responsibility and the Contractor shall be entitled to an equitable adjustment to the Contract Sum and Contract Time as may be appropriate. If such Work is not in accordance with the Contract Documents, the costs of uncovering the Work and the cost of correction shall be borne by the Contractor.

#### **§ 12.2 Correction of Work**

##### **§ 12.2.1 Before or After Substantial Completion**

The Contractor shall promptly correct Work rejected by the Construction Manager or Architect for failing to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, whether discovered before or after Substantial Completion, and whether or not fabricated, installed or completed. Costs of correcting such rejected Work, including additional testing and inspections, the cost of uncovering and replacement, and compensation for the Construction Manager's and Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, shall be at the Contractor's expense. If prior to the date of Substantial Completion, the Contractor, a subcontractor or anyone for whom either is responsible uses or damages any portion of the Work, including, without limitation, mechanical, electrical, plumbing and other building systems, machinery, equipment or other mechanical device, the Contractor shall cause such item to be restored to "like new" condition at no expense to the Owner

## **§ 12.2.2 After Substantial Completion**

**§ 12.2.2.1** In addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.5, if, within two years after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof, or after the date for commencement of warranties established under Section 9.9.1, or by terms of any applicable special warranty required by the Contract Documents, any of the Work is found to be not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall correct it promptly after receipt of notice from the Owner to do so, unless the Owner has previously given the Contractor a written acceptance of such condition. The Owner shall give such notice promptly after discovery of the condition. During the two-year period for correction of Work, if the Owner fails to notify the Contractor and give the Contractor an opportunity to make the correction, the Owner waives the rights to require correction by the Contractor and to make a claim for breach of warranty. If the Contractor fails to correct nonconforming Work within a reasonable time after receipt of notice from the Owner, Construction Manager or Architect, the Owner may correct it in accordance with Section 2.5. In the judgment of the Owner should any material, equipment or systems require corrective work because of defects in material or workmanship within the (2) two-year warranty period, or extended warranty periods, the Contractor shall complete all required corrective work within thirty (30) days of notice. In the event the Contractor does not, in accordance with the terms and provisions of the Contract, complete all corrective work within thirty (30) days, or comply with and fulfill his warranty obligations, the Owner may choose to correct same and recover the costs incurred to do so from the Contractor or offset the costs incurred against any sums the Owner owes the Contractor or the Owner may notify the bonding company to have such work and/or obligations performed at no additional cost to the Owner. The obligations of the Contractor under the terms and provisions of the Contract, shall not however be limited to the surety retained by the Owner pursuant to the provisions of the Contract.

**§ 12.2.2.2** The two-year period for correction of Work shall be extended with respect to portions of Work first performed after Substantial Completion by the period of time between Substantial Completion and the actual completion of that portion of the Work.

**§ 12.2.2.3** The obligations under this Section 12.2 shall cover any repairs and replacement to any part of the Work or other property caused by the defective work.

**§ 12.2.3** The Contractor shall remove from the site portions of the Work that are not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents and are neither corrected by the Contractor nor accepted by the Owner.

**§ 12.2.4** The Contractor shall bear the cost of correcting destroyed or damaged construction of the Owner, Separate Contractors, or other Contractors, whether completed or partially completed, caused by the Contractor's correction or removal of Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

**§ 12.2.5** Nothing contained in this Section 12.2 shall be construed to establish a period of limitation with respect to other obligations the Contractor has under the Contract Documents. Establishment of the two-year period for correction of Work as described in Section 12.2.2 relates only to the specific obligation of the Contractor to correct the Work, and has no relationship to the time within which the obligation to comply with the Contract Documents may be sought to be enforced, nor to the time within which proceedings may be commenced to establish the Contractor's liability with respect to the Contractor's obligations other than specifically to correct the Work.

## **§ 12.3 Acceptance of Nonconforming Work**

If the Owner prefers to accept Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so instead of requiring its removal and correction, in which case the Contract Sum will be reduced as appropriate and equitable. Such adjustment shall be effected whether or not final payment has been made.

## **ARTICLE 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

### **§ 13.1 Governing Law**

**§ 13.1.1** The Contract shall be governed by the law of the place where the Project is located excluding that jurisdiction's choice of law rules. The Contractor shall at all times observe and comply with all Federal, State and Local Laws, rules and regulations and all policies, rules, regulations and protocols of the Owner, in any manner affecting the Work and all such orders as exist at present and those which may be enacted in the future, by bodies or tribunals having jurisdiction or authority over the Work and the Contractor shall indemnify and save harmless the Owner and its Board of Education, employees, officers, agents, or servants against any claim or liability arising from, or based on, a violation of any such law, ordinances, regulation, order or decree by the Contractor or the Contractor's officers, directors, employees, Subcontractors and suppliers.



§ 13.1.2 Historical lack of enforcement of any law, rule or regulation local or otherwise, shall not constitute a waiver of Contractor's responsibility for compliance with such law, rule or regulation in a manner consistent with the Contract Document unless and until the Contractor has received written consent for the waiver of such compliance from the Owner and the Agency responsible for enforcement of the law, rule or regulation.

§ 13.1.3 The parties expressly agree that any claim, dispute, or other controversy of any nature arising out of the contract or performance of the Work shall be commenced and maintained in New York State Supreme Court located in Westchester County.

§ 13.1.4 The Contractor specifically agrees, as required by New York Labor Law, Sections 220 and 220-d, as amended, that:

- .1 No laborer, workman or mechanic in the employ of the Contractor, Subcontractor or other person doing or contracting to do the whole or any part of the Work contemplated by the Contract, shall be permitted or required to work more than eight hours in any one calendar day or more than five days in any one week, except in the emergencies set forth in the Labor Law.
- .2 The wages paid for a legal day's work shall not be less than the prevailing rate of wages as defined by law.
- .3 The minimum hourly rate of wages to be paid shall not be less than that stated in the Specifications, and any redetermination of the prevailing rate of wages after the Contract is approved shall be deemed to be incorporated therein by reference as of the effective date of redetermination and shall form a part of this Contract. The Labor Law provides that the Contract may be forfeited, and no sum paid for any work done thereunder on a second conviction for willfully paying less than:
  - (a) The stipulated wage scale as provided in Labor Law, Section 220, Subdivision 3, as amended; or
  - (b) The stipulated minimum hourly wage scale as provided in Labor Law, Section 220-d, as amended.

§ 13.1.5 The Contractor specifically agrees, as required by the provisions of New York Labor Law Section 220-e, as amended, with respect to operations performed within the territorial limits of New York State, that:

- .1 In hiring of employees for the performance of work under this Contract or any subcontract hereunder, or for the manufacture, sale or distribution of materials, equipment or supplies hereunder, no Contractor, Subcontractor nor any person acting on behalf of such Contractor or Subcontractor, shall by reason of race, creed, color, disability, sex or national origin discriminate against any citizen of the State of New York who is qualified and available to perform the work to which the employment relates.
- .2 No Contractor, Subcontractor, nor any person on his behalf shall, in any manner, discriminate against or intimidate any employee hired for the performance of work under this Contract on account of race, creed, color, disability, sex or national origin.
- .3 There may be deducted from the amount payable to the Contractor by the Owner under this Contract a penalty of fifty (\$50.00) dollars for each person for each calendar day during which such person was discriminated against or intimidated in violation of this Section 13.1.5.
- .4 The Contract may be cancelled or terminated and all monies due under the Contract forfeited for a second or any subsequent violation of the terms and conditions set forth in this Section 13.1.5.

§ 13.1.6 The Contractor and each of its Subcontractors shall comply with Prevailing Wage Rates as issued by the State of New York Department of Labor for the location and duration of this Project and shall comply with all requirements governing its payments to its employees as set forth in Labor Law, Section 220 et seq of the New York State Labor Law.

§ 13.1.7 The Contractor shall comply with all the provisions of the Immigration Reform and Control Act of 1986 and regulations promulgated pursuant thereto and shall require its Subcontractors to comply with same. The Contractor shall and does hereby agree to fully indemnify, protect, defend, and hold harmless the Owner, Owner's Board of Education, agents and employees from and against any penalties, fees, costs, liabilities, suits, claims, or expenses of any kind or nature, including reasonable attorney's fees, arising out of or resulting from any violation or alleged

violation of the provisions of said laws by Contractor or its Subcontractor(s) in connection with the Work of the Contract Documents.

**§ 13.1.8** The Contractor shall maintain policies of employment as follows:

- .1 The Contractor and the Contractor's Subcontractors shall not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of age, creed, race, religion, color, sex, national origin, sexual orientation, gender identify or expression, military status, disability, predisposing genetic characteristics, familial status, marital status or status as a victim of domestic violence. The Contractor shall take affirmative action to ensure that applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment without regard to their age, race, creed, religion color, sex, national origin, sexual orientation, gender identify or expression, military status, disability, predisposing genetic characteristics, familial status, marital status or status as a victim of domestic violence. Such action shall include, but not be limited to, the following: employment, upgrading, demotion or transfer; recruitment or recruitment advertising; layoff or termination; rates of pay or other forms of compensation; and selection for training, including apprenticeship. The Contractor agrees to post in conspicuous places, available to employees and applicants for employment, notices setting forth the policies of non-discrimination.
- .2 The Contractor and the Contractor's Subcontractors shall, in all solicitations or advertisements for employees placed by them or on their behalf, state that all qualified applicants will receive consideration for employment without regard to age, creed, race, religion, color, sex, national origin, sexual orientation, gender identify or expression, military status, disability, predisposing genetic characteristics, familial status, marital status or status as a victim of domestic violence.

**§ 13.2 Successors and Assigns**

**§ 13.2.1** The Owner and Contractor respectively bind themselves, their partners, successors, assigns, and legal representatives to covenants, agreements, and obligations contained in the Contract Documents. Except as provided in Section 13.2.2, neither party to the Contract shall assign the Contract as a whole without written consent of the other. If either party attempts to make an assignment without such consent, that party shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all obligations under the Contract. The Contractor shall not assign any monies due or to become due to him under the Contract without the previous consent of the Owner.

**§ 13.2.2** The Owner may, without consent of the Contractor, assign the Contract to a lender providing construction financing for the Project, if the lender assumes the Owner's rights and obligations under the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall execute all consents reasonably required to facilitate the assignment.

**§ 13.3 Rights and Remedies**

**§ 13.3.1** Duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and rights and remedies available thereunder shall be in addition to and not a limitation of duties, obligations, rights, and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law or in equity or by other agreement, and such rights and remedies shall survive acceptance of the Work and/or termination of the Contract Documents.

**§ 13.3.2** No action or failure to act by the Owner, Construction Manager, Architect, or Contractor shall constitute a waiver of a right or duty afforded them under the Contract, nor shall such action or failure to act constitute approval of or acquiescence in a breach thereunder, except as may be specifically agreed upon in writing.

**§ 13.3.3** Whenever possible, each provision of the Contract Documents shall be interpreted in a manner as to be effective and valid under applicable law. If, however, part or provision of the Contract Documents is prohibited by law or found invalid under any law, only such part or provision thereof shall be ineffective, without in any manner invalidating or affecting the remaining provisions of the Contract Documents or valid portions of such provision, which here hereby deemed severable.

**§ 13.4 Tests and Inspections**

**§ 13.4.1** Tests, inspections, and approvals of portions of the Work shall be made as required by the Contract Documents and by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules, and regulations or lawful orders of public authorities. Unless otherwise provided, the Contractor shall make arrangements for such tests, inspections, and approvals with an independent testing laboratory or entity acceptable to the Owner, or with the appropriate public

authority, and shall bear all related costs of tests, inspections, and approvals. The Contractor shall give the Construction Manager and Architect timely notice of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Construction Manager and Architect may be present for such procedures. The Owner shall bear costs of tests, inspections, or approvals that do not become requirements until after bids are received or negotiations concluded. The Owner shall directly arrange and pay for tests, inspections, or approvals where building codes or applicable laws or regulations so require.

**§ 13.4.2** If the Construction Manager, Architect, Owner, or public authorities having jurisdiction determine that portions of the Work require additional testing, inspection, or approval not included under Section 13.4.1, the Construction Manager and Architect will, upon written authorization from the Owner, instruct the Contractor to make arrangements for such additional testing, inspection, or approval, by an entity acceptable to the Owner, and the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Construction Manager and Architect of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Construction Manager and Architect may be present for such procedures. Such costs, except as provided in Section 13.4.3, shall be at the Owner's expense.

**§ 13.4.3** If procedures for testing, inspection, or approval under Sections 13.4.1 and 13.4.2 reveal failure of the portions of the Work to comply with requirements established by the Contract Documents, all costs made necessary by such failure, including those of repeated procedures and compensation for the Construction Manager's and Architect's services and expenses, shall be at the Contractor's expense. The Contractor agrees that the cost of testing services required for the convenience of the Contractor in his scheduling and performance of the Work, and the cost of testing services relating to remedial operations performed to correct deficiencies in the Work shall be borne by the Contractor.

**§ 13.4.4** Required certificates of testing, inspection, or approval shall, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, be secured by the Contractor and promptly delivered to the Construction Manager for transmittal to the Architect.

**§ 13.4.5** If the Construction Manager or Architect is to observe tests, inspections, or approvals required by the Contract Documents, the Construction Manager or Architect will do so promptly and, where practicable, at the normal place of testing.

**§ 13.4.6** Tests or inspections conducted pursuant to the Contract Documents shall be made promptly to avoid unreasonable delay in the Work.

**§ 13.4.7** Upon request the Contractor shall deliver test samples of any of the materials specified in the Specifications to an independent testing agency. The Owner shall pay for the test of samples, which are found to conform to the Specifications. The Contractor shall pay for the tests of samples, which do not conform to the Specifications. This shall not relieve the Contractor of his obligations to perform specific tests described elsewhere in the Specifications.

**§ 13.4.8** Where the Specifications require part of the Work to be specially tested and approved, it shall not be tested or covered up without timely notice thereof or consent thereto. Should any part of the work be covered up without notice, approval or consent, such part of the Work shall be uncovered for examination at the Contractor's expense if the Owner, Architect, Construction Manager or governmental authority with jurisdiction over the Contractor, the Work or the Project shall so require.

**§ 13.4.9** Where operating tests are specified, the Contractor shall test the Work as it progresses, on his own account, and shall make satisfactory preliminary tests in all cases before applying for official tests.

**§ 13.4.10** Tests shall be made in the manner specified, for the different branches of the Work. Each test shall be made on the entire system for which such test is required, wherever practical. In case it is necessary to test portions of the work independently, the Contractor shall do so.

**§ 13.4.11** Should defects appear, they shall be corrected by the Contractor and the test repeated until the installation is acceptable.

**§ 13.4.12** When notice of tests is to be given to the Architect, it shall also be given to the Construction Manager.

§ 13.4.13 All Sections wherein the Architect is entitled to additional compensation from the Contractor shall be revised to reflect that the Construction Manager is also so entitled.

§ 13.5 [Deleted.]

### § 13.6 Time Limits on Claims

The Owner and the Contractor shall commence all claims and causes of action, whether in contract, tort, breach of warranty or otherwise, against the other arising out of or related to the Contract in accordance with the requirements of the final dispute resolution method selected in the Agreement within the time period specified by applicable law.

### § 13.7 Sexual Harassment Prohibited

Federal and state laws and the policies of the Owner prohibit sexual harassment of employees. Sexual harassment includes any unwelcome sexual advances, requests for sexual favors or other verbal or physical conduct of a sexual nature that create a hostile or offensive working environment for students, employees and volunteers of the Owner and employees, agents, consultants, suppliers, subcontractors and others engaged directly or indirectly by Contractor to perform work on the Projects. The Contractor shall exercise control over its employees, agents, consultants, subcontractors, and suppliers so as to prohibit acts of sexual harassment of students, employees and volunteers of the Owner. In the event the Owner, in its reasonable judgment, determines that the Contractor or its employees, agents, consultants, subcontractors and/or suppliers have committed an act of sexual harassment, upon notice from the Owner, the Contractor shall cause such person to be removed and shall take such other action as may be reasonably necessary to cause such sexual harassment to cease. In the event the Contractor or its employees, agents, Subcontractors or suppliers believes it has been the subject of sexual harassment by the Owner, its elected and appointed officials, students, volunteers, vendors, employees or agents, it shall give notice to the Owner; so, the Owner can take such action as may be reasonably necessary to cause any sexual harassment to cease.

§ 13.8 The Contractor and Architect agree to do all acts and things and to make, execute and deliver such written instruments, as shall be from time to time be reasonably required to carry out the terms and provisions of the Contract Documents.

## ARTICLE 14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

### § 14.1 Termination By the Contractor

§ 14.1.1 The Contractor may terminate the Contract if the Work is stopped for a period of 90 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, for any of the following reasons:

- .1 Issuance of an order of a court or other public authority having jurisdiction that requires all Work to be stopped;
- .2 An act of government, such as a declaration of national emergency, that requires all Work to be stopped;
- .3 Owner has repeatedly failed to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract Documents with respect to matters important to the progress of the Work
- .4 Line Omitted.

§ 14.1.2 Section Omitted.

§ 14.1.3 If one of the reasons described in Section 14.1.1 exists, the Contractor may, upon thirty days' written notice to the Owner, Construction Manager and Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner payment for Work executed, including reasonable overhead and profit, and costs incurred directly as a result of such termination. The Owner shall not be liable for loss of anticipated profits not performed on account of any termination described in Sections 14.1.1 and 14.1.4 hereof.

### § 14.2 Termination By the Owner for Cause

§ 14.2.1 The Owner may terminate the Contract if the Contractor

- .1 repeatedly refuses or fails to supply enough properly skilled workers or proper materials or equipment to complete the Work in a diligent, efficient, timely, workmanlike, skillful and careful manner;

- .2 fails to make prompt payment to Subcontractors or suppliers in accordance with the respective agreements between the Contractor and the Subcontractors or suppliers;
- .3 disregards applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of a public authority;
- .4 disregards the instructions of the Architect, the Construction Manager or the Owner, when such instructions are based on the requirements of the Contract Documents;
- .5 breaches any warranty made by the Contractor under or pursuant to the Contract Documents;
- .6 fails to furnish the Owner with assurances satisfactory to the Owner evidencing the Contractor's ability to complete the Work in compliance with all of the requirements of the Contract Documents;
- .7 fails after commencement of the Work to proceed continuously with the construction and completion;
- .8 fails to keep the Project free from strikes, work stoppages, slowdowns, lockouts or other disruptive activity as required by Section 3.4.3 hereof;
- .9 does not fully comply with the Contract Documents or otherwise is guilty of substantial breach of a provision of the Contract Documents; and
- .10 fails or neglects to prosecute the Work in such a manner to reasonably assure completion within the Contract Time.

§ 14.2.2 When any of the reasons described in Section 14.2.1 exist, after consultation with the Construction Manager and Architect, the Owner may, without prejudice to any other rights or remedies of the Owner and after giving the Contractor and the Contractor's surety, if any, seven days' notice, terminate employment of the Contractor and may, subject to any prior rights of the surety:

- .1 Exclude the Contractor from the site and take possession of all materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery thereon owned by the Contractor and take possession of materials stored offsite by the Contractor;
- .2 Accept assignment of subcontracts pursuant to Section 5.4; and
- .3 Finish the Work by whatever reasonable method the Owner may deem expedient. Upon written request of the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor a detailed accounting of the costs incurred by the Owner in finishing the Work and the Contractor will be back charged for costs incurred by the Owner.

§ 14.2.3 When the Owner terminates the Contract for one of the reasons stated in Section 14.2.1, the Contractor shall not be entitled to receive further payment until the Work is finished.

§ 14.2.4 If the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum exceeds costs of finishing the Work, including compensation for the Construction Manager's and Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, and other damages incurred by the Owner and not expressly waived, such excess shall be paid to the Contractor. If such costs and damages exceed the unpaid balance, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. The amount to be paid to the Contractor or Owner, as the case may be, shall, upon application, be certified by the Initial Decision Maker after consultation with the Construction Manager, and this obligation for payment shall survive termination of the Contract.

§ 14.2.4.1 The costs of finishing the Work include, without limitation, all reasonable attorney's fees, additional title costs, insurance, additional interest because of any delay in completing the Work, and all other direct and indirect and consequential damages incurred by the Owner by reason of the termination of the Contractor as stated herein.

§ 14.2.5 It is recognized that: (1) if an order for relief is entered on behalf of the Contractor pursuant to Title 11 of the United States Code, (2) if any other similar order is entered under any other debtor relief laws, (3) if Contractor makes general assignment for the benefit of its creditors, (4) if a receiver is appointed for the benefit of its creditors, or (5) if a receiver is appointed on account of its insolvency and such event could impair or frustrate Contractor's performance of the Contract. Accordingly, it is agreed that upon the occurrence of any such event, Owner shall be entitled to request of contractor or its successor in interest adequate assurance of future performance in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Contract. To the extent permitted by law, failure to comply with such request within ten (10) days of delivery of the request or a determination that the assurance given is not adequate by the Owner, a court or a receiver shall entitle Owner to terminate the Contract and to the accompanying rights set forth in Sections 14.2.1 through 14.2.4 hereof. In all events, pending receipt of adequate assurance or performance and actual performance in accordance therewith, Owner shall be entitled to proceed with the Work with its own forces or



with other contractors on a time and material or other appropriate basis, the cost of which will be back charged against the Contract Sum.

**§ 14.2.6** Upon a determination by legal means (e.g. court action, etc.) that termination of Contractor pursuant to Section 14.2.2 hereof was wrongful, such termination will be deemed converted to a termination for convenience pursuant to Section 14.4 hereof and Contractor's remedy for such termination shall be limited to the recovery of the payments permitted for termination for convenience as set forth in Section 14.4.3 hereof as reduced pursuant to Section 14.4.4 hereof.

#### **§ 14.3 Suspension By the Owner for Convenience**

**§ 14.3.1** In addition to Owner's right to suspend, delay, or interrupt Contractor from any part of the Work pursuant to the Contract Documents, Owner may at any time, at will and without cause suspend, delay, or interrupt any part of the Work or any subcontract or all Work for any reason whatsoever for such period of time as the Owner may determine by giving three (3) day's prior written notice to Contractor, specifying the part of the Work or subcontract to be suspended, delayed, or interrupted, and the effective date of such suspension, delay, or interruption, as the case may be. Contractor shall continue to prosecute the part of the Work not suspended, delayed, or interrupted, and shall properly protect and secure the part of the Work so suspended, delayed, or interrupted, so far as is necessary in Owner's reasonable opinion. In accordance with Section 8.3 hereof, if the Work or any subcontract is so suspended, delayed, or interrupted, Owner shall incur no liability to Contractor by reason of such suspension, delay, or interruption except that Contractor shall be entitled to an extension of time to complete its Work, which shall be computed in accordance with Section 8.3.1 hereof (including Subsections 8.3.1.1 through 8.3.1.4). . . In case of such suspension, delay or interruption, Owner will authorize the issuance of a Change Order or, if the Contractor does not agree to the Change Order, a Construction Change Directive that makes any required adjustment to the Date of Substantial Completion. For the remainder of the Work that has not been suspended, delayed or interrupted, the Contract Documents shall remain in full force and effect.

#### **§ 14.3.2 [Deleted.]**

#### **§ 14.4 Termination By the Owner for Convenience**

**§ 14.4.1** In addition to Owner's right to remove Contractor from any part of the work pursuant to the Contract Documents, Owner may for the Owner's convenience at any time, at will and without cause, terminate any part of the Work or any subcontract or all remaining Work for any reason whatsoever by giving three (3) days' notice to Contractor, specifying the part of the Work or subcontract to be terminated and the effective date of termination. Contractor shall continue to prosecute the part of the Work not terminated. This right may be exercised by the Owner in its complete and absolute discretion. If the Work or any subcontract is so terminated, Owner shall incur no liability to Contractor by reason of such termination except as set forth in Section 14.4.3 of this Agreement as reduced by Section 14.4.4 of this Agreement. In case of such termination, Owner will authorize the issuance of a Change Order or, if the Contractor does not agree to the Change Order, a Construction Change Directive making any required adjustment to the Date of Substantial Completion and/or the Contract Sum. For the remainder of the Work that is not terminated, the Contract Documents shall remain in full force and effect. Contractor shall be entitled to no payment for the terminated portion of the Work and waives and forfeits any claim for damages and/or lost profits.

**§ 14.4.2** Upon receipt of notice from the Owner of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Contractor shall immediately, in accordance with instruction from the Owner, proceed with performance of the following duties regardless of delay in determining or adjusting amounts due under this Section:

- .1 cease operations as directed by the Owner in the notice;
- .2 place no further orders and enter into no further purchase orders and enter into no further subcontracts for materials, labor, services or facilities except as necessary to complete continued portions of the Contract or to complete Work directed to be performed prior to the effective date of termination stated in the notice;
- .3 terminate all subcontracts and orders to the extent they relate to the Work terminated;
- .4 proceed to complete the performance of the Work not terminated; and
- .5 take actions that may be necessary, or that the Owner may direct, for the protection and preservation of the terminated Work.

§ 14.4.3 Upon such termination, the Contractor shall recover as its sole remedy payment for the following Work and items set forth below less the credits due the Owner pursuant to Section 14.4.4 and less the sums required by law to be held by the Owner due to any liens on public improvement filed against the Contract Sum that have not been discharged (which sums withheld due to such liens will be paid when such liens are discharged or released):

- .1 for Work properly performed in connection with the terminated portion of the Work prior to the effective date of termination;
- .2 for items properly and timely fabricated off the project site, delivered and stored in accordance with the Owner's instructions; and
- .3 solely to the extent authorized by the Owner and Construction Manager in advance, Work performed by Contractor for the protection and preservation of the Work completed prior to termination; and
- .4 solely to the extent authorized by the Owner and Construction Manager in advance, Work performed after the effective date of termination for the terminated portion of the Work and costs incurred solely and directly as a result of such termination .

The Owner shall incur no other liability by reason of a termination for convenience of all or part of the Contractor's remaining Work. The Contractor hereby waives and forfeits all other claims for payment and damages, including, without limitation, anticipated profits, lost profits and overhead on Work terminated pursuant to Section 14.4 hereof.

§ 14.4.4 From the payment due pursuant to Section 14.4.3 of this Agreement, shall be subtracted (1) payments previously made by the Owner to the Contractor for the terminated portion of the Work, (2) claims and offsets which the Owner has against the Contractor under the Contract, (3) any credits or reductions to which the Owner is entitled under the Contract and (3) the value of the materials, supplies, equipment or other items that are to be disposed of by the Contractor that are part of the Contract Sum.

§ 14.4.5 In the event the Owner commences legal proceedings against the Contractor, or same is commenced against the Owner by the Contractor, if the Owner prevails, the Contractor shall be liable to the Owner for the expenses incurred by the Owner in connection with said proceedings. Said expenses shall include reasonable attorney's fees, costs, interest, penalties, and/or witness fees.

§ 14.4.6 The Owner shall not be responsible for damages or for loss of anticipated profits or for loss overhead on Work not performed on account of any termination described in

§ 14.4.7 Contractor agrees and acknowledges that payments for the work have been obtained through obligations or bonds which have been sold after public referendum. In the event the work is suspended or cancelled as a result of the order of any court, department entity or individual having jurisdiction, or in the event the work is suspended or cancelled due to the fact that a court, agency, department, entity or individual having jurisdiction has issued an order, the result of which is the aforesaid obligations or bond are no longer available for payment for the work, Contractor expressly agrees that it shall be solely entitled to pay for work accomplished until a notice of suspension or cancellation is served upon Contractor. Contractor expressly waives any and all rights to institute an action, claim, cause of action or similar for any damages it may suffer as a result of the suspension or cancellation of the Work and/or its Contract pursuant to this section.

## § 14.5 Limitation of Owner's Liability

§ 14.5.1 The Owner shall not be responsible for damages or for loss of anticipated profits on Work not performed on account of any termination of the Contractor by it and the Contractor hereby expressly waives and forfeits its right to claim such damages against the Owner.

§ 14.5.2 The Owner shall not be liable to the Contractor for punitive damages on account of its termination of the Contractor and the Contractor hereby expressly waives and forfeits its right to claim such damages against the Owner.

## ARTICLE 15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

### § 15.1 Claims

§ 15.1.1 **Definition.** A Claim is a demand or assertion by the Contractor seeking, as a matter of right, payment of money, a change in the Contract Time, or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract. The responsibility to substantiate a Claim shall rest with the Contractor. This Section 15.1.1 does not require the Owner to file its claims

against the Contractor, including but not limited to a Claim in order to impose liquidated damages in accordance with the Contract Documents.

### **§ 15.1.2 Time Limits on Claims**

The Owner and Contractor shall commence all Claims and causes of action against the other and arising out of or related to the Contract, whether in contract, tort, breach of warranty or otherwise, in accordance with the requirements of the binding dispute resolution method selected in the Agreement and within the period specified by applicable law.

### **§ 15.1.3 Notice of Claims**

**§ 15.1.3.1** Claims by the Contractor shall be initiated by notice to the Owner and to the Initial Decision Maker with a copy sent to the Construction Manager and Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker. Such Claims shall be initiated within 21 days after occurrence of the event giving rise to such Claim or within 21 days after the Contractor first recognizes the condition giving rise to the Claim, whichever is later.

**§ 15.1.3.2** Should any Contractor wish to reserve its rights regarding filing of claims as set forth above, written notice of any event that may give rise to a claim must be given within 21 days of said event, whether or not any impact in time or money has been determined.

### **§ 15.1.4 Continuing Contract Performance**

**§ 15.1.4.1** Pending final resolution of a Claim, except as otherwise agreed in writing or as provided in Section 9.7 and Article 14, the Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of the Contract and the Owner shall continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 15.1.4.2** The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted in accordance with the Initial Decision Maker's decision. The Architect will prepare Change Orders and/or construction Change Directives and will issue Certificates for Payment in accordance with the decision of the Initial Decision Maker.

**§ 15.1.5 Claims for Additional Cost.** If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Sum, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given before proceeding to execute the portion of the Work that is the subject of the Claim. Prior notice is not required for Claims relating to an emergency endangering life or property arising under Section 10.4. No claim will be permitted for additional costs or time as provided in this Section 15.1, should damages arise from the Contractor's failure to have adequately reviewed the Contract Documents and to have reported the error or inconsistency in an expeditious time and manner.

**§ 15.1.5.1** If the Contractor believes additional cost is involved for reasons including but not limited to (1) a written interpretation from the Architect, (2) an order by the Owner to stop the Work where the Contractor was not at fault, (3) a written order for a minor change in the Work issued by the Architect, (4) failure of payment by the Owner, (5) termination of the Contract by the Owner, (6) Owner's suspension or (7) other reasonable grounds, a claim shall be filed in accordance with this Section 15.1.

### **§ 15.1.6 Claims for Additional Time**

**§ 15.1.6.1** If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Time, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given. The Contractor's Claim shall articulate the reason additional time is requested, how the basis for the request will effect the progress of the Work and the number of additional days requested for performance of the Contractor's work. In the case of a continuing delay only one Claim is necessary.

**§ 15.1.6.2** If adverse weather conditions are the basis for a Claim for additional time, such Claim shall be documented by data substantiating that weather conditions were abnormal for the period of time, could not have been reasonably anticipated and had an adverse effect on the scheduled construction.

### **§ 15.1.7 Waiver of Claims.**

**§ 15.1.7.1** The timelines provided herein for the making of claims shall be a condition precedent to any payment for such claims or the granting of any extension of time. Failure of the Contractor to comply with the time and notice provisions of this Article shall be an absolute bar to making any payment to or extending the time of the Contractor for such claim. All claims of any type seeking any monies, or an extension of time shall be accompanied by full



documentation. A claim submittal without full documentation shall be rejected by the Architect and, if not timely resubmitted within the original claim period, as set forth above, shall be waived.

**§ 15.1.7.2** The Owner shall not be responsible for damages or for loss of anticipated profits on Work not performed on account of any termination of the Contractor by the Owner or by virtue of the Owner's exercise of its right to take over the Contractor's Work pursuant to the Contract Documents.

**§ 15.1.7.3** The Contractor hereby expressly waives any rights it may have in law or in equity to lost bonding capacity as a result of any of the actions of the Owner, Construction Manager or the Architect taken in connection with the Contractor's Work on the Project.

#### **§ 15.1.8 OWNER'S OVERTIME AND DAMAGE CLAIMS**

Any overtime or expenses incurred by the Owner for services of its maintenance staff, Architect and/or Construction Manager, in connection with any claim for damages as a result of or in connection with the Contractor's activities, unless otherwise specifically agreed to in writing by the Owner, will be back-charged to the Contractor at the following rates:

The hourly rates for the Architect shall be as follows:

Managing Partner	\$250
Project Manager	\$175
Senior Project Architect	\$175
Project Architect	\$150
Senior Architectural Designer	\$110
Junior Architectural Designer	\$90

The rates for the District's maintenance staff shall be as follows:

Double time	\$82.42
Time and a half	\$61.82
Straight time	\$41.21

The hourly rates for the Construction Manager shall be as follows:

Executive Project Manager	\$150.00
Project Manager	\$135.00
Site Manager	\$125.00
Administrative Assistant	\$70.00

Except when deemed an emergency or specialty service (i.e.: fire or security alarm) by the Owner, the Contractor will be given written notice concerning required repairs to damages caused by the Contractor's activities. If the damages are not corrected to the Owner's satisfaction and per the Owner's time frame, the Owner will make the corrections and back-charge the Contractor accordingly via a reduction in the Contract Amount.

#### **§ 15.2 Initial Decision**

**§ 15.2.1** Claims shall be referred to the Initial Decision Maker for initial decision. The Architect will serve as the Initial Decision Maker, unless otherwise indicated in the Agreement. An initial decision shall be required as a condition precedent to binding dispute resolution of the Contractor's Claim(s). If an initial decision has not been rendered within 30 days after the Claim has been referred to the Initial Decision Maker, the party asserting the Claim may demand binding dispute resolution without a decision having been rendered. Unless the Initial Decision Maker and all affected parties agree, the Initial Decision Maker will not decide disputes between the Contractor and persons or entities other than the Owner.

**§ 15.2.2** The Initial Decision Maker will review Claims and within ten (10) business days of the receipt of a Claim take one or more of the following actions: (1) request additional supporting data from the claimant or a response with supporting data from the other party, (2) reject the Claim in whole or in part, (3) approve the Claim, (4) suggest a compromise, or (5) advise the parties that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim if the Initial Decision Maker lacks sufficient information to evaluate the merits of the Claim or if the Initial Decision Maker

concludes that, in the Initial Decision Maker's sole discretion, it would be inappropriate for the Initial Decision Maker to resolve the Claim.

**§ 15.2.3** In evaluating Claims, the Initial Decision Maker may, but shall not be obligated to, consult with or seek information from either party or from persons with special knowledge or expertise who may assist the Initial Decision Maker in rendering a decision. The Initial Decision Maker may request the Owner to authorize retention of such persons at the Owner's expense.

**§ 15.2.4** If the Initial Decision Maker requests a party to provide a response to a Claim or to furnish additional supporting data, such party shall respond, within ten days after receipt of the request, and shall either (1) provide a response on the requested supporting data, (2) advise the Initial Decision Maker when the response or supporting data will be furnished, or (3) advise the Initial Decision Maker that no supporting data will be furnished. Upon receipt of the response or supporting data, if any, the Initial Decision Maker will either reject or approve the Claim in whole or in part.

**§ 15.2.5** The Initial Decision Maker will render an initial decision approving or rejecting the Claim, or indicating that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim. This initial decision shall (1) be in writing; (2) state the reasons therefor; and (3) notify the parties, the Construction Manager, and the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker, of any change in the Contract Sum or Contract Time or both.

**§ 15.2.6** In the event of a Claim against the Contractor, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety, if any, of the nature and amount of the Claim. If the Claim relates to a possibility of a Contractor's default, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety and request the surety's assistance in resolving the controversy.

**§ 15.2.7** If a Claim relates to or is the subject of a mechanic's lien, the party asserting such Claim may proceed in accordance with applicable law to comply with the lien notice or filing deadlines.

## **ARTICLE 16    ADDITIONAL CONDITIONS**

### **§ 16.1 No Damages for Delay**

**§ 16.1.1** Notwithstanding any other terms or conditions set forth in the Contract Documents, the Contractor agrees to make no claim for damages for delay in the performance of the Work occasioned by any act or omission of the Owner, Owner's Board of Education, Construction Manager, Architect or their respective consultants, contractors, employees, agents or representatives. Contractor agrees that any such claim shall be fully compensated for solely by an extension of time to complete the Work. The Contractor hereby expressly assumes the risk of all delays to the Work and waives all claims for monetary damages or additional payment for delays to the Work provided the Contract schedule is extended for excusable and acceptable delays in accordance with Section 8.3.1 of these General Conditions.

**§ 16.1.2** Contractor agrees and acknowledges that payments for the Work have been obtained through obligations or bonds which have been sold after public referendum. In the event the Work is suspended or canceled as a result of the order of any court, agency, department entity or individual having jurisdiction, or in the event the Work is suspended or canceled due to the fact that a court, agency, department, entity or individual having jurisdiction has issued an order, the result of which is that the afore said obligations or bonds are no longer available for payment for the Work, Contractor expressly agrees that it shall be solely entitled to payment for Work accomplished until a notice of suspension or cancellation is served upon Contractor. Contractor expressly waives any and all rights to institute an action, claim, cause of action or similar for any damages it may suffer as a result of the suspension or cancellation of the Work and /or its contract pursuant to this section 16.1

### **§ 16.2 Prohibited Interests**

**§ 16.2.1** No official of the Owner who is authorized in such capacity and on behalf of the Owner to negotiate, make, accept, approve of, or take part in negotiating, making, accepting, or approving any architectural, engineering, inspection, construction, or material supply contract, or any subcontract in connection with the construction of the Project, shall become directly or indirectly interested personally in the contract or in any part thereof.

**§ 16.2.2** No officer, employee, architect, attorney, engineer, or inspector of the Owner who is authorized in such capacity and on behalf of the Owner to exercise any legislative, executive, supervisory, or other similar functions in connection with the construction of the Project shall become directly or indirectly interested personally in this

Contract or in any part thereof, any material supply contract, subcontract, insurance contract, or any other contract pertaining to this Project.

### **§ 16.3 Performance and Specification Standards**

**§ 16.3.1** Applicable codes and standards for material furnished and work installed shall include all state laws, local ordinances, requirements of governmental agencies having jurisdiction, and requirements of state, federal and industry codes and standards that apply to the Project and its components, including but not limited to:

1. New York State Uniform Fire Prevention and Building Code and amendments thereto.
2. New York State Energy Conservation Construction Code.
3. State Education Department Manual of Planning Standards and 8 N.Y.C.R.R. § 155.5.
4. New York State Department of Transportation, Office of Engineering, Standard Specification, Construction and Materials, dated January 2, 1990, and latest addendum thereto.
5. Life Safety Code – NFPA 101-91.
6. National Electric Code
7. National Board of Fire Underwriters
8. Any other codes or standards referenced in the Specifications and Drawings.

**§ 16.3.2** Where specific performance requirements are listed in the Specifications, it is the intent of this specification that all manufacturers, fabricators, suppliers, installers, contractors, subcontractors, specialty and sub-subcontractors will provide services satisfying these requirements whether mentioned by trade or manufacturer's name or submitted for approval as a substitute.

**§ 16.3.3** Wherever in the Specifications reference is made to ANSI or ASTM Standards, Federal Specifications, Consumer Product Standards, or similar recognized standards, the latest edition of the respective publishing agency in effect at the date of "Bid Issuance" shall be accepted as establishing the technical requirements which shall be complied with, unless a different date of publication is recorded in the Specifications.

**§ 16.3.4** Where no explicit quality or standards for materials or workmanship are established for work, such work shall be of quality consistent with industry standards and of the construction quality established for the Project generally.

### **§ 16.4 Blasting Operations**

**§ 16.4.1** Use of explosives on Site is not allowed.

### **§ 16.5 Welding**

**§ 16.5.1** Each Prime Contractor shall control the safe handling and storage of all welding materials, acetylene and oxygen tanks, and other equipment required for welding and cutting work at the job site.

**§ 16.5.2** All welding materials and equipment shall be removed promptly from the premises upon completion of the welding and cutting work.

**§ 16.5.3** Appropriate fire extinguishing equipment shall be provided where welding or cutting is to be performed. Sprinklers subject to fusing from heat due to welding or cutting shall be temporarily shielded, with valves to remain open. Contractors will be back charged for all fines imposed for false fire alarms.

**§ 16.5.4** Welding or cutting shall not be performed in or near rooms or locations where flammable gases, liquids or vapors, lint, dust or loose combustible stocks are present unless suitably protected when sparks or hot metal from welding or cutting operations may cause ignition or explosion of such materials.

**§ 16.5.5** Combustible construction or material shall be wetted down or protected by noncombustible shields or covers from possible sparks, hot metal or oxide.

### **§ 16.6 Ventilation During Construction**

**§ 16.6.1** The General Contractor shall provide ventilation of enclosed areas during construction as may be required to permit proper curing and drying out and to prevent excessive humidity moisture and condensation.

§ 16.6.2 Ventilation shall be by natural or artificial means as required by conditions involved.

§ 16.7 Broken Glass

§ 16.7.1 Each Prime Contractor shall be responsible for all broken, scratched, or damaged glass, which shall be replaced upon completion of the Work. Said Prime Contractor shall reimburse the General Contractor for replacement costs of all such damaged glass upon completion of the Work.

§ 16.7.2 The responsibility shall terminate upon acceptance of the Work by the Owner, except as provided in the Conditions of Contract (General, Supplementary and Other) and Specifications with respect to defective materials, workmanship, and guarantee/warranty provisions.



# DRAFT AIA® Document A305™ – 1986

## Contractor's Qualification Statement

The Undersigned certifies under oath that the information provided herein is true and sufficiently complete so as not to be misleading.

**SUBMITTED TO:** Eastchester Union Free School District

**ADDRESS:** 580 White Plains Road, Eastchester, New York 10709

**SUBMITTED BY:** « »

**NAME:** « »

**ADDRESS:** « »

**PRINCIPAL OFFICE:** « »

[ « » ] Corporation

[ « » ] Partnership

[ « » ] Individual

[ « » ] Joint Venture

[ « » ] Other « »

**NAME OF PROJECT:**

2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2  
Eastchester Union Free School District  
580 White Plains Road  
Eastchester, New York 10709

**TYPE OF WORK:** *(file separate form for each Classification of Work)*

[ « » ] General Construction

[ « » ] HVAC

[ « » ] Electrical

[ « » ] Plumbing

[ « » ] Other: Window Work

### § 1 ORGANIZATION

§ 1.1 How many years has your organization been in business as a Contractor? « »

§ 1.2 How many years has your organization been in business under its present business name? « »

§ 1.2.1 Under what other or former names has your organization operated?

### ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

This form is approved and recommended by the American Institute of Architects (AIA) and The Associated General Contractors of America (AGC) for use in evaluating the qualifications of contractors. No endorsement of the submitting party or verification of the information is made by AIA or AGC.

**ELECTRONIC COPYING** of any portion of this AIA® Document to another electronic file is prohibited and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.

« »

§ 1.3 If your organization is a corporation, answer the following:

§ 1.3.1 Date of incorporation: « »

§ 1.3.2 State of incorporation: « »

§ 1.3.3 President's name: « »

§ 1.3.4 Vice-president's name(s)

« »

§ 1.3.5 Secretary's name: « »

§ 1.3.6 Treasurer's name: « »

§ 1.4 If your organization is a partnership, answer the following:

§ 1.4.1 Date of organization: « »

§ 1.4.2 Type of partnership (if applicable): « »

§ 1.4.3 Name(s) of general partner(s)

« »

§ 1.5 If your organization is individually owned, answer the following:

§ 1.5.1 Date of organization: « »

§ 1.5.2 Name of owner:

« »

§ 1.6 If the form of your organization is other than those listed above, describe it and name the principals:

« »

§ 2 LICENSING

§ 2.1 List jurisdictions and trade categories in which your organization is legally qualified to do business, and indicate registration or license numbers, if applicable.

« »

§ 2.2 List jurisdictions in which your organization's partnership or trade name is filed.

« »

§ 3 EXPERIENCE

§ 3.1 List the categories of work that your organization normally performs with its own forces.

« »

§ 3.2 Claims and Suits. (If the answer to any of the questions below is yes, please attach details.)

§ 3.2.1 Has your organization ever failed to complete any work awarded to it?

« »

§ 3.2.2 Are there any judgments, claims, arbitration proceedings or suits pending or outstanding against your organization or its officers?

« »

§ 3.2.3 Has your organization filed any law suits or requested arbitration with regard to construction contracts within the last five years?

« »

§ 3.3 Within the last five years, has any officer or principal of your organization ever been an officer or principal of another organization when it failed to complete a construction contract? (If the answer is yes, please attach details.)

« »

§ 3.4 On a separate sheet, list major construction projects your organization has in progress, giving the name of project, owner, architect, contract amount, percent complete and scheduled completion date.

« »

§ 3.4.1 State total worth of work in progress and under contract:

« »

§ 3.5 On a separate sheet, list the major projects your organization has completed in the past five years, giving the name of project, owner, architect, contract amount, date of completion and percentage of the cost of the work performed with your own forces.

« »

§ 3.5.1 State average annual amount of construction work performed during the past five years:

« »

§ 3.6 On a separate sheet, list the construction experience and present commitments of the key individuals of your organization.

« »

## § 4 REFERENCES

§ 4.1 Trade References:

« »

§ 4.2 Bank References:

« »

§ 4.3 Surety:

§ 4.3.1 Name of bonding company:

« »

§ 4.3.2 Name and address of agent:

« »

## § 5 FINANCING

§ 5.1 Financial Statement.

§ 5.1.1 Attach a financial statement, preferably audited, including your organization's latest balance sheet and income statement showing the following items:

Current Assets (e.g., cash, joint venture accounts, accounts receivable, notes receivable, accrued income, deposits, materials inventory and prepaid expenses);

Net Fixed Assets;

Other Assets;

Current Liabilities (e.g., accounts payable, notes payable, accrued expenses, provision for income taxes, advances, accrued salaries and accrued payroll taxes);

Other Liabilities (e.g., capital, capital stock, authorized and outstanding shares par values, earned surplus and retained earnings).

**§ 5.1.2** Name and address of firm preparing attached financial statement, and date thereof:

« »

**§ 5.1.3** Is the attached financial statement for the identical organization named on page one?

« »

**§ 5.1.4** If not, explain the relationship and financial responsibility of the organization whose financial statement is provided (e.g., parent-subsidiary).

« »

**§ 5.2** Will the organization whose financial statement is attached act as guarantor of the contract for construction?

« »

**§ 6 SIGNATURE**

**§ 6.1** Dated at this « » day of « » « »

Name of Organization: « »

By: « »

Title: « »

**§ 6.2**

« »

M « » being duly sworn deposes and says that the information provided herein is true and sufficiently complete so as not to be misleading.

Subscribed and sworn before me this « » day of « » « »

Notary Public: « »

My Commission Expires: « »



# DRAFT AIA® Document A310™ – 2010

## Bid Bond

**CONTRACTOR:**

(Name, legal status and address)

<< >>< >>  
<< >>

**SURETY:**

(Name, legal status and principal place of business)

<< >>< >>  
<< >>

**OWNER:**

(Name, legal status and address)

Eastchester Union Free School District  
580 White Plains Road  
Eastchester, New York 10709

**BOND AMOUNT:** \$ << >>

**PROJECT:**

(Name, location or address, and Project number, if any)

2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2  
Eastchester Union Free School District  
580 White Plains Road  
Eastchester, New York 10709

The Contractor and Surety are bound to the Owner in the amount set forth above, for the payment of which the Contractor and Surety bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, as provided herein. The conditions of this Bond are such that if the Owner accepts the bid of the Contractor within the time specified in the bid documents, or within such time period as may be agreed to by the Owner and Contractor, and the Contractor either (1) enters into a contract with the Owner in accordance with the terms of such bid, and gives such bond or bonds as may be specified in the bidding or Contract Documents, with a surety admitted in the jurisdiction of the Project and otherwise acceptable to the Owner, for the faithful performance of such Contract and for the prompt payment of labor and material furnished in the prosecution thereof and gives proof of the insurance as specified in the bidding or Contract Documents, with an insurer(s) licensed to do business in the jurisdiction of the Project and otherwise acceptable to the Owner; or (2) pays to the Owner the difference, not to exceed the amount of this Bond, between the amount specified in said bid and such larger amount for which the Owner may in good faith contract with another party to perform the work covered by said bid, then this obligation shall be null and void, otherwise to remain in full force and effect. The Surety hereby waives any notice of an agreement between the Owner and Contractor to extend the time in which the Owner may accept the bid. Waiver of notice by the Surety shall not apply to any extension exceeding sixty (60) days in the aggregate beyond the time for acceptance of bids specified in the bid documents, and the Owner and Contractor shall obtain the Surety's consent for an extension beyond sixty (60) days.

If this Bond is issued in connection with a subcontractor's bid to a Contractor, the term Contractor in this Bond shall be deemed to be Subcontractor and the term Owner shall be deemed to be Contractor.

When this Bond has been furnished to comply with a statutory or other legal requirement in the location of the Project, any provision in this Bond conflicting with said statutory or legal requirement shall be deemed deleted herefrom and provisions conforming to such

**ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:**

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

Any singular reference to Contractor, Surety, Owner or other party shall be considered plural where applicable.

**ELECTRONIC COPYING** of any portion of this AIA® Document to another electronic file is prohibited and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.

statutory or other legal requirement shall be deemed incorporated herein. When so furnished, the intent is that this Bond shall be construed as a statutory bond and not as a common law bond.

Signed and sealed this « » day of « », « »

	« »	
	(Contractor as Principal)	(Seal)
	« »	
	(Title)	
	« »	
	(Surety)	(Seal)
	« »	
	(Title)	

# DRAFT AIA® Document A312™ - 2010

## Payment Bond

**CONTRACTOR:**

(Name, legal status and address)

« »  
« »

**SURETY:**

(Name, legal status and principal place of business)

« »  
« »

**OWNER:**

(Name, legal status and address)

Eastchester Union Free School District  
580 White Plains Road  
Eastchester, New York 10709

**CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT**

Date: « »

Amount: \$ « »

Description:

(Name and location)

2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2  
Eastchester Union Free School District  
580 White Plains Road  
Eastchester, New York 10709

**BOND**

Date:

(Not earlier than Construction Contract Date)

« »

Amount: \$ « »

Modifications to this Bond:

☐

None

☒

See Section  
18

**CONTRACTOR AS PRINCIPAL**

Company: (Corporate Seal)

**SURETY**

Company: (Corporate Seal)

Signature:

Name and « »

Title:

Signature:

Name and « »

Title:

(Any additional signatures appear on the last page of this Payment Bond.)

(FOR INFORMATION ONLY — Name, address and telephone)

**AGENT or BROKER:**

« »  
« »  
« »

**OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE:**

(Architect, Engineer or other party:)

MEMASI  
2 Lyon Place  
White Plains, NY 10601

**ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:**

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

Any singular reference to Contractor, Surety, Owner or other party shall be considered plural where applicable.

**ELECTRONIC COPYING** of any portion of this AIA® Document to another electronic file is prohibited and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.

§ 1 The Contractor and Surety, jointly and severally, bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns to the Owner to pay for labor, materials and equipment furnished for use in the performance of the Construction Contract, which is incorporated herein by reference, subject to the following terms.

§ 2 If the Contractor promptly makes payment of all sums due to Claimants, and defends, indemnifies and holds harmless the Owner from claims, demands, liens or suits by any person or entity seeking payment for labor, materials or equipment furnished for use in the performance of the Construction Contract, then the Surety and the Contractor shall have no obligation under this Bond.

§ 3 If there is no Owner Default under the Construction Contract, the Surety's obligation to the Owner under this Bond shall arise after the Owner has promptly notified the Contractor and the Surety (at the address described in Section 13) of claims, demands, liens or suits against the Owner or the Owner's property by any person or entity seeking payment for labor, materials or equipment furnished for use in the performance of the Construction Contract and tendered defense of such claims, demands, liens or suits to the Contractor and the Surety.

§ 4 When the Owner has satisfied the conditions in Section 3, the Surety shall promptly and at the Surety's expense defend, indemnify and hold harmless the Owner against a duly tendered claim, demand, lien or suit.

§ 5 The Surety's obligations to a Claimant under this Bond shall arise after the following:

§ 5.1 Claimants, who do not have a direct contract with the Contractor,

- .1 have furnished a written notice of non-payment to the Contractor, stating with substantial accuracy the amount claimed and the name of the party to whom the materials were, or equipment was, furnished or supplied or for whom the labor was done or performed, within ninety (90) days after having last performed labor or last furnished materials or equipment included in the Claim; and
- .2 have sent a Claim to the Surety (at the address described in Section 13).

§ 5.2 Claimants, who are employed by or have a direct contract with the Contractor, have sent a Claim to the Surety (at the address described in Section 13).

§ 6 If a notice of non-payment required by Section 5.1.1 is given by the Owner to the Contractor, that is sufficient to satisfy a Claimant's obligation to furnish a written notice of non-payment under Section 5.1.1.

§ 7 When a Claimant has satisfied the conditions of Sections 5.1 or 5.2, whichever is applicable, the Surety shall promptly and at the Surety's expense take the following actions:

§ 7.1 Send an answer to the Claimant, with a copy to the Owner, within sixty (60) days after receipt of the Claim, stating the amounts that are undisputed and the basis for challenging any amounts that are disputed; and

§ 7.2 Pay or arrange for payment of any undisputed amounts.

§ 7.3 The Surety's failure to discharge its obligations under Section 7.1 or Section 7.2 shall not be deemed to constitute a waiver of defenses the Surety or Contractor may have or acquire as to a Claim, except as to undisputed amounts for which the Surety and Claimant have reached agreement. If, however, the Surety fails to discharge its obligations under Section 7.1 or Section 7.2, the Surety shall indemnify the Claimant for the reasonable attorney's fees the Claimant incurs thereafter to recover any sums found to be due and owing to the Claimant.

§ 8 The Surety's total obligation shall not exceed the amount of this Bond, plus the amount of reasonable attorney's fees provided under Section 7.3, and the amount of this Bond shall be credited for any payments made in good faith by the Surety.

§ 9 Amounts owed by the Owner to the Contractor under the Construction Contract shall be used for the performance of the Construction Contract and to satisfy claims, if any, under any construction performance bond. By the Contractor furnishing and the Owner accepting this Bond, they agree that all funds earned by the Contractor in the performance of the Construction Contract are dedicated to satisfy obligations of the Contractor and Surety under this Bond, subject to the Owner's priority to use the funds for the completion of the work.

§ 10 The Surety shall not be liable to the Owner, Claimants or others for obligations of the Contractor that are unrelated to the Construction Contract. The Owner shall not be liable for the payment of any costs or expenses of any Claimant under this Bond, and shall have under this Bond no obligation to make payments to, or give notice on behalf of, Claimants or otherwise have any obligations to Claimants under this Bond.

§ 11 The Surety hereby waives notice of any change, including changes of time, to the Construction Contract or to related subcontracts, purchase orders and other obligations.

§ 12 No suit or action shall be commenced by a Claimant under this Bond other than in a court of competent jurisdiction in the state in which the project that is the subject of the Construction Contract is located or after the expiration of one year from the date (1) on which the Claimant sent a Claim to the Surety pursuant to Section 5.1.2 or 5.2, or (2) on which the last labor or service was performed by anyone or the last materials or equipment were furnished by anyone under the Construction Contract, whichever of (1) or (2) first occurs. If the provisions of this Paragraph are void or prohibited by law, the minimum period of limitation available to sureties as a defense in the jurisdiction of the suit shall be applicable.

§ 13 Notice and Claims to the Surety, the Owner or the Contractor shall be mailed or delivered to the address shown on the page on which their signature appears. Actual receipt of notice or Claims, however accomplished, shall be sufficient compliance as of the date received.

§ 14 When this Bond has been furnished to comply with a statutory or other legal requirement in the location where the construction was to be performed, any provision in this Bond conflicting with said statutory or legal requirement shall be deemed deleted herefrom and provisions conforming to such statutory or other legal requirement shall be deemed incorporated herein. When so furnished, the intent is that this Bond shall be construed as a statutory bond and not as a common law bond.

§ 15 Upon request by any person or entity appearing to be a potential beneficiary of this Bond, the Contractor and Owner shall promptly furnish a copy of this Bond or shall permit a copy to be made.

## § 16 Definitions

§ 16.1 Claim. A written statement by the Claimant including at a minimum:

- .1 the name of the Claimant;
- .2 the name of the person for whom the labor was done, or materials or equipment furnished;
- .3 a copy of the agreement or purchase order pursuant to which labor, materials or equipment was furnished for use in the performance of the Construction Contract;
- .4 a brief description of the labor, materials or equipment furnished;
- .5 the date on which the Claimant last performed labor or last furnished materials or equipment for use in the performance of the Construction Contract;
- .6 the total amount earned by the Claimant for labor, materials or equipment furnished as of the date of the Claim;
- .7 the total amount of previous payments received by the Claimant; and
- .8 the total amount due and unpaid to the Claimant for labor, materials or equipment furnished as of the date of the Claim.

§ 16.2 Claimant. An individual or entity having a direct contract with the Contractor or with a subcontractor of the Contractor to furnish labor, materials or equipment for use in the performance of the Construction Contract. The term Claimant also includes any individual or entity that has rightfully asserted a claim under an applicable mechanic's lien or similar statute against the real property upon which the Project is located. The intent of this Bond shall be to include without limitation in the terms "labor, materials or equipment" that part of water, gas, power, light, heat, oil, gasoline, telephone service or rental equipment used in the Construction Contract, architectural and engineering services required for performance of the work of the Contractor and the Contractor's subcontractors, and all other items for which a mechanic's lien may be asserted in the jurisdiction where the labor, materials or equipment were furnished.

§ 16.3 Construction Contract. The agreement between the Owner and Contractor identified on the cover page, including all Contract Documents and all changes made to the agreement and the Contract Documents.

§ 16.4 **Owner Default.** Failure of the Owner, which has not been remedied or waived, to pay the Contractor as required under the Construction Contract or to perform and complete or comply with the other material terms of the Construction Contract.

§ 16.5 **Contract Documents.** All the documents that comprise the agreement between the Owner and Contractor.

§ 17 If this Bond is issued for an agreement between a Contractor and subcontractor, the term Contractor in this Bond shall be deemed to be Subcontractor and the term Owner shall be deemed to be Contractor.

§ 18 Modifications to this bond are as follows:

**ADD HERE OR ATTACH A RIDER TO INCORPORATE MODIFICATIONS REQUIRED IN  
AIA DOCUMENT A701-2018, INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS AS REVISED FOR THIS PROJECT**

« »

*(Space is provided below for additional signatures of added parties, other than those appearing on the cover page.)*

**CONTRACTOR AS PRINCIPAL**

Company: \_\_\_\_\_ (Corporate Seal)

**SURETY**

Company: \_\_\_\_\_ (Corporate Seal)

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Name and Title: « »« »

Address: « »

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Name and Title: « »« »

Address: « »

# DRAFT AIA® Document A312™ - 2010

## Performance Bond

**CONTRACTOR:**

(Name, legal status and address)

« »  
« »

**SURETY:**

(Name, legal status and principal place of business)

« »  
« »

**OWNER:**

(Name, legal status and address)

Eastchester Union Free School District  
580 White Plains Road  
Eastchester, New York 10709

**CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT**

Date: « »

Amount: \$ « »

Description:

(Name and location)

2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2  
Eastchester Union Free School District  
580 White Plains Road  
Eastchester, New York 10709

**BOND**

Date:

(Not earlier than Construction Contract Date)

« »

Amount: \$ « »

Modifications to this

Bond:

☐

None

☒

See Section 16

**CONTRACTOR AS PRINCIPAL**

Company: (Corporate Seal)

Signature:

Name and « »

Title:

**SURETY**

Company: (Corporate Seal)

Signature:

Name and « »

Title:

(Any additional signatures appear on the last page of this Performance Bond.)

(FOR INFORMATION ONLY — Name, address and telephone)

**AGENT or BROKER:**

« »  
« »  
« »

**OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE:**

(Architect, Engineer or other party:)

MEMASI  
2 Lyon Place  
White Plains, NY 10601

**ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:**

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

Any singular reference to Contractor, Surety, Owner or other party shall be considered plural where applicable.

**ELECTRONIC COPYING** of any portion of this AIA® Document to another electronic file is prohibited and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.



§ 1 The Contractor and Surety, jointly and severally, bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns to the Owner for the performance of the Construction Contract, which is incorporated herein by reference.

§ 2 If the Contractor performs the Construction Contract, the Surety and the Contractor shall have no obligation under this Bond, except when applicable to participate in a conference as provided in Section 3.

§ 3 If there is no Owner Default under the Construction Contract, the Surety's obligation under this Bond shall arise after

- .1 the Owner first provides notice to the Contractor and the Surety that the Owner is considering declaring a Contractor Default. Such notice shall indicate whether the Owner is requesting a conference among the Owner, Contractor and Surety to discuss the Contractor's performance. If the Owner does not request a conference, the Surety may, within five (5) business days after receipt of the Owner's notice, request such a conference. If the Surety timely requests a conference, the Owner shall attend. Unless the Owner agrees otherwise, any conference requested under this Section 3.1 shall be held within ten (10) business days of the Surety's receipt of the Owner's notice. If the Owner, the Contractor and the Surety agree, the Contractor shall be allowed a reasonable time to perform the Construction Contract, but such an agreement shall not waive the Owner's right, if any, subsequently to declare a Contractor Default;
- .2 the Owner declares a Contractor Default, terminates the Construction Contract and notifies the Surety; and
- .3 the Owner has agreed to pay the Balance of the Contract Price in accordance with the terms of the Construction Contract to the Surety or to a contractor selected to perform the Construction Contract.

§ 4 Failure on the part of the Owner to comply with the notice requirement in Section 3.1 shall not constitute a failure to comply with a condition precedent to the Surety's obligations, or release the Surety from its obligations, except to the extent the Surety demonstrates actual prejudice.

§ 5 When the Owner has satisfied the conditions of Section 3, the Surety shall promptly and at the Surety's expense take one of the following actions:

§ 5.1 Arrange for the Contractor, with the consent of the Owner, to perform and complete the Construction Contract;

§ 5.2 Undertake to perform and complete the Construction Contract itself, through its agents or independent contractors;

§ 5.3 Obtain bids or negotiated proposals from qualified contractors acceptable to the Owner for a contract for performance and completion of the Construction Contract, arrange for a contract to be prepared for execution by the Owner and a contractor selected with the Owner's concurrence, to be secured with performance and payment bonds executed by a qualified surety equivalent to the bonds issued on the Construction Contract, and pay to the Owner the amount of damages as described in Section 7 in excess of the Balance of the Contract Price incurred by the Owner as a result of the Contractor Default; or

§ 5.4 Waive its right to perform and complete, arrange for completion, or obtain a new contractor and with reasonable promptness under the circumstances:

- .1 After investigation, determine the amount for which it may be liable to the Owner and, as soon as practicable after the amount is determined, make payment to the Owner; or
- .2 Deny liability in whole or in part and notify the Owner, citing the reasons for denial.

§ 6 If the Surety does not proceed as provided in Section 5 with reasonable promptness, the Surety shall be deemed to be in default on this Bond seven days after receipt of an additional written notice from the Owner to the Surety demanding that the Surety perform its obligations under this Bond, and the Owner shall be entitled to enforce any remedy available to the Owner. If the Surety proceeds as provided in Section 5.4, and the Owner refuses the payment or the Surety has denied liability, in whole or in part, without further notice the Owner shall be entitled to enforce any remedy available to the Owner.



§ 7 If the Surety elects to act under Section 5.1, 5.2 or 5.3, then the responsibilities of the Surety to the Owner shall not be greater than those of the Contractor under the Construction Contract, and the responsibilities of the Owner to the Surety shall not be greater than those of the Owner under the Construction Contract. Subject to the commitment by the Owner to pay the Balance of the Contract Price, the Surety is obligated, without duplication, for

- .1 the responsibilities of the Contractor for correction of defective work and completion of the Construction Contract;
- .2 additional legal, design professional and delay costs resulting from the Contractor's Default, and resulting from the actions or failure to act of the Surety under Section 5; and
- .3 liquidated damages, or if no liquidated damages are specified in the Construction Contract, actual damages caused by delayed performance or non-performance of the Contractor.

§ 8 If the Surety elects to act under Section 5.1, 5.3 or 5.4, the Surety's liability is limited to the amount of this Bond.

§ 9 The Surety shall not be liable to the Owner or others for obligations of the Contractor that are unrelated to the Construction Contract, and the Balance of the Contract Price shall not be reduced or set off on account of any such unrelated obligations. No right of action shall accrue on this Bond to any person or entity other than the Owner or its heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns.

§ 10 The Surety hereby waives notice of any change, including changes of time, to the Construction Contract or to related subcontracts, purchase orders and other obligations.

§ 11 Any proceeding, legal or equitable, under this Bond may be instituted in any court of competent jurisdiction in the location in which the work or part of the work is located and shall be instituted within two years after a declaration of Contractor Default or within two years after the Contractor ceased working or within two years after the Surety refuses or fails to perform its obligations under this Bond, whichever occurs first. If the provisions of this Paragraph are void or prohibited by law, the minimum period of limitation available to sureties as a defense in the jurisdiction of the suit shall be applicable.

§ 12 Notice to the Surety, the Owner or the Contractor shall be mailed or delivered to the address shown on the page on which their signature appears.

§ 13 When this Bond has been furnished to comply with a statutory or other legal requirement in the location where the construction was to be performed, any provision in this Bond conflicting with said statutory or legal requirement shall be deemed deleted herefrom and provisions conforming to such statutory or other legal requirement shall be deemed incorporated herein. When so furnished, the intent is that this Bond shall be construed as a statutory bond and not as a common law bond.

#### § 14 Definitions

§ 14.1 **Balance of the Contract Price.** The total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor under the Construction Contract after all proper adjustments have been made, including allowance to the Contractor of any amounts received or to be received by the Owner in settlement of insurance or other claims for damages to which the Contractor is entitled, reduced by all valid and proper payments made to or on behalf of the Contractor under the Construction Contract.

§ 14.2 **Construction Contract.** The agreement between the Owner and Contractor identified on the cover page, including all Contract Documents and changes made to the agreement and the Contract Documents.

§ 14.3 **Contractor Default.** Failure of the Contractor, which has not been remedied or waived, to perform or otherwise to comply with a material term of the Construction Contract.

§ 14.4 **Owner Default.** Failure of the Owner, which has not been remedied or waived, to pay the Contractor as required under the Construction Contract or to perform and complete or comply with the other material terms of the Construction Contract.

§ 14.5 **Contract Documents.** All the documents that comprise the agreement between the Owner and Contractor.

§ 15 If this Bond is issued for an agreement between a Contractor and subcontractor, the term Contractor in this Bond shall be deemed to be Subcontractor and the term Owner shall be deemed to be Contractor.

§ 16 Modifications to this bond are as follows:

**ADD HERE OR ATTACH A RIDER TO INCORPORATE MODIFICATIONS REQUIRED IN  
AIA DOCUMENT A701-2018, INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS AS REVISED FOR THIS PROJECT**

« »

*(Space is provided below for additional signatures of added parties, other than those appearing on the cover page.)*

**CONTRACTOR AS PRINCIPAL**

Company: \_\_\_\_\_ (Corporate Seal)

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Name and Title: « »« »

Address: « »

**SURETY**

Company: \_\_\_\_\_ (Corporate Seal)

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Name and Title: « »« »

Address: « »

# DRAFT AIA® Document A701™ - 2018

## Instructions to Bidders

for the following Project:

2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2  
Eastchester Union Free School District  
580 White Plains Road  
Eastchester, New York 10709

### THE OWNER:

Eastchester Union Free School District  
580 White Plains Road  
Eastchester, New York 10709

### THE ARCHITECT:

Mastracci Mesiti-Ceas Architecture Engineering P.L.L.C.  
d/b/a MEMASI  
2 Lyon Place  
White Plains, NY 10601

### THE CONSTRUCTION MANAGER:

Arris Contracting Company, Inc.  
189 Smith Street  
Poughkeepsie, New York 12601

### TABLE OF ARTICLES

- 1 DEFINITIONS
- 2 BIDDER'S REPRESENTATIONS
- 3 BIDDING DOCUMENTS
- 4 BIDDING PROCEDURES
- 5 CONSIDERATION OF BIDS
- 6 POST-BID INFORMATION
- 7 PERFORMANCE BOND AND PAYMENT BOND
- 8 ENUMERATION OF THE PROPOSED CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

#### ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

FEDERAL, STATE, AND LOCAL LAWS MAY IMPOSE REQUIREMENTS ON PUBLIC PROCUREMENT CONTRACTS. CONSULT LOCAL AUTHORITIES OR AN ATTORNEY TO VERIFY REQUIREMENTS APPLICABLE TO THIS PROCUREMENT BEFORE COMPLETING THIS FORM.

It is intended that AIA Document G612™-2017, Owner's Instructions to the Architect, Parts A and B will be completed prior to using this document.

**ELECTRONIC COPYING** of any portion of this AIA® Document to another electronic file is prohibited and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.

## ARTICLE 1 DEFINITIONS

§ 1.1 Bidding Documents include the Bidding Requirements and the Proposed Contract Documents. The Bidding Requirements consist of the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, supplementary instructions to bidders, the bid form, and any other bidding forms. The Proposed Contract Documents consist of the unexecuted form of Agreement between the Owner and Contractor and that Agreement's Exhibits, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, all Addenda, and all other documents enumerated in Article 8 of these Instructions.

§ 1.2 Definitions set forth in the General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, or in other Proposed Contract Documents apply to the Bidding Documents.

§ 1.3 Addenda are written or graphic instruments issued by the Architect, which, by additions, deletions, clarifications, or corrections, modify or interpret the Bidding Documents.

§ 1.4 A Bid is a complete and properly executed proposal to do the Work for the sums stipulated therein, submitted in accordance with the Bidding Documents.

§ 1.5 The Base Bid is the sum stated in the Bid for which the Bidder offers to perform the Work described in the Bidding Documents including all required allowances, to which Work may be added or deleted by sums stated in Alternate Bids.

§ 1.6 An Alternate Bid (or Alternate) is an amount stated in the Bid to be added to or deducted from, or that does not change, the Base Bid if the corresponding change in the Work, as described in the Bidding Documents, is accepted.

§ 1.7 A Unit Price is an amount stated in the Bid as a price per unit of measurement for materials, equipment, or services, or a portion of the Work, as described in the Bidding Documents.

§ 1.8 A Bidder is a person or entity who submits a Bid and who meets the requirements set forth in the Bidding Documents.

§ 1.9 A Sub-bidder is a person or entity who submits a bid to a Bidder for materials, equipment, or labor for a portion of the Work.

## ARTICLE 2 BIDDER'S REPRESENTATIONS

§ 2.1 By submitting a Bid, the Bidder represents that:

- .1 the Bidder has read and understands the Bidding Documents;
- .2 the Bidder understands how the Bidding Documents relate to other portions of the Project, if any, being bid concurrently or presently under construction;
- .3 the Bid complies with the Bidding Documents;
- .4 the Bidder has visited the site, become familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed, and has correlated the Bidder's observations with the requirements of the Proposed Contract Documents;
- .5 the Bidder has evaluated and satisfied itself as to the conditions and limitations under which the Work is to be performed, including without limitation (1) the location, condition, layout and nature of the Project site and surrounding areas, (2) generally prevailing climatic conditions, (3) anticipated labor supply and costs, and (4) availability and cost of materials, tools and equipment;
- .6 the Bid is based upon the materials, equipment, and systems required by the Bidding Documents without exception; and
- .7 the Bidder has read and understands the provisions for liquidated damages, if any, set forth in the form of Agreement between the Owner and Contractor.

§ 2.2 To be considered qualified, the Bidder must demonstrate to the Owner's satisfaction the following:

- .1 The corporation, partnership, sole proprietorship or other business entity whose name the Bid is submitted in has been in business continuously for no less than the previous five (5) years performing or coordinating the Work which it is bidding on;
- .2 The Bidder has satisfactorily completed no less than five (5) projects of comparable size, complexity, and type to this Project as a prime contractor to project owner;

- .3 The Bidder is not currently involved in bankruptcy proceedings;
- .4 The Bidder is licensed to perform the Work it is bidding on in the jurisdiction where the Work will take place;
- .5 The Bidder is capable and intends to perform at least twenty five percent (25%) of the Work with its own forces;
- .6 The Bidder is able to perform the Work with the manpower available to it; and
- .7 The Bidder and its subcontractors have a minimum five (5) years' experience in the Work and applicable trades.

## **ARTICLE 3 BIDDING DOCUMENTS**

### **§ 3.1 Distribution**

**§ 3.1.1** Bidders shall obtain complete Bidding Documents, as indicated below, from the issuing office designated in the advertisement or invitation to bid, for the deposit sum, if any, stated therein.

*(Indicate how, such as by email, website, host site/platform, paper copy, or other method Bidders shall obtain Bidding Documents.)*

See Advertisement for Bids.

**§ 3.1.2** Any required deposit shall be refunded to Bidders who submit a bona fide Bid and return the paper Bidding Documents in good condition within ten days after receipt of Bids. The cost to replace missing or damaged paper documents will be deducted from the deposit. A Bidder receiving a Contract award may retain the paper Bidding Documents, and the Bidder's deposit will be refunded.

**§ 3.1.3** Bidding Documents will not be issued directly to Sub-bidders unless specifically offered in the advertisement or invitation to bid, or in supplementary instructions to bidders.

**§ 3.1.4** Bidders shall use complete Bidding Documents in preparing Bids. Neither the Owner nor Architect assumes responsibility for errors or misinterpretations resulting from the use of incomplete Bidding Documents.

**§ 3.1.5** The Bidding Documents will be available for the sole purpose of obtaining Bids on the Work. No license or grant of use for any other purpose is conferred by distribution of the Bidding Documents.

**§ 3.1.5** All materials submitted as part of the bid shall become the property of the Owner and will not be returned to the Bidder. The Bidder is responsible for making its own copies of any or all parts of the Bid Documents for its files.

### **§ 3.2 Modification or Interpretation of Bidding Documents**

**§ 3.2.1** The Bidder shall carefully study the Bidding Documents, shall examine the site and local conditions, and shall notify the Architect of errors, inconsistencies, or ambiguities discovered and request clarification or interpretation pursuant to Section 3.2.2.

**§ 3.2.2** Requests for clarification or interpretation of the Bidding Documents shall be submitted by the Bidder in writing via email and shall be received by the Construction Manager and Architect as instructed in the Advertisement for Bids.

See Advertisement for Bids.

**§ 3.2.3** Modifications and interpretations of the Bidding Documents shall be made by Addendum. Modifications and interpretations of the Bidding Documents made in any other manner shall not be binding, and Bidders shall not rely upon them.

### **§ 3.3 Substitutions**

**§ 3.3.1** The materials, products, and equipment described in the Bidding Documents establish a standard of required function, dimension, appearance, and quality to be met by any proposed substitution.

#### **§ 3.3.2 Substitution Process**

**§ 3.3.2.1** Written requests for substitutions shall be received by the Architect no later than seven days prior to the date for receipt of Bids. Requests shall be submitted in the manner established in the Contract Documents.

§ 3.3.2.2 Bidders shall submit substitution requests on a Substitution Request Form if one is provided in the Bidding Documents.

§ 3.3.2.3 If a Substitution Request Form is not provided, requests shall include (1) the name of the material or equipment specified in the Bidding Documents; (2) the reason for the requested substitution; (3) a complete description of the proposed substitution including the name of the material or equipment proposed as the substitute, performance and test data, and relevant drawings; (4) all supporting data including technical information, catalog cuts, warranties, installation instructions, operating procedures, significant qualities of proposed substitution (e.g. performance, weight, size, durability and visual effects); (5) samples, if applicable and requested; and (6) any other information necessary for an evaluation. The request shall include a statement setting forth changes in other materials, equipment, or other portions of the Work, including changes in the work of other contracts or the impact on any Project Certifications (such as LEED), that will result from incorporation of the proposed substitution.

§ 3.3.2.3 By making a request for substitution, the Bidder:

- .1 represents that a representative of it has personally investigated the proposed substitute product and has determined that it is equal to or superior in all respects to that specified;
- .2 represents that the warranty for the substitution will be the same, or greater than, that applicable to the specified product;
- .3 certifies that the cost data is complete and includes all related costs under the Contract to be awarded, including professional services necessary and/or required for the Architect to implement the proposed substitution and waives any and all claims for additional costs related to the substitution which subsequently become apparent;
- .4 represents that it will coordinate the installation of the accepted substitute, making all such changes to the Drawings effected by the change and to all Specifications as required for the work to be completed in all respects;
- .5 shall submit an affidavit stating that (a) the proposed substitution conforms and meets all the requirements of the pertinent Specifications and the requirements shown on the Drawings and (b) the Bidder accepts the warranty and correction obligations in connection with the proposed substitution as if originally specified by the Architect; and
- .6 represents the proposed substitution will have no effect on the construction schedule.

§ 3.3.3 The burden of proof of the merit of the proposed substitution is upon the proposer. The Architect's decision of approval or disapproval of a proposed substitution shall be final.

§ 3.3.4 If the Architect approves a proposed substitution prior to receipt of Bids, such approval shall be set forth in an Addendum. Approvals made in any other manner shall not be binding, and Bidders shall not rely upon them.

§ 3.3.5 No substitutions will be considered after the Contract award unless specifically provided for in the Contract Documents.

#### § 3.4 Addenda

§ 3.4.1 Addenda will be transmitted to Bidders known by the issuing office to have received complete Bidding Documents.

See Advertisement for Bids.

§ 3.4.2 Addenda will be available where Bidding Documents are on file.

§ 3.4.3 Addenda will be issued no later than four days prior to the date for receipt of Bids, except an Addendum withdrawing the request for Bids or one which includes postponement of the date for receipt of Bids.

§ 3.4.4 Prior to submitting a Bid, each Bidder shall ascertain that the Bidder has received all Addenda issued, and the Bidder shall acknowledge their receipt in the Bid.

§ 3.4.5 The failure of any Bidder to receive any such Addenda will not relieve the Bidder of any obligation contained in the Addenda. Any Addenda issued shall become part of the Bidding Documents and Contract Documents.

## ARTICLE 4 BIDDING PROCEDURES

### § 4.1 Preparation of Bids

§ 4.1.1 Bids shall be submitted on the forms included with or identified in the Bidding Documents.

§ 4.1.2 All blanks on the bid form shall be legibly executed. Paper bid forms shall be executed in a non-erasable medium.

§ 4.1.3 Sums shall be expressed in both words and numbers, unless noted otherwise on the bid form. In case of discrepancy, the amount entered in words shall govern.

§ 4.1.4 Edits to entries made on paper bid forms must be initialed by the signer of the Bid.

§ 4.1.5 All requested Alternates shall be bid. If no change in the Base Bid is required, enter "No Change" or as required by the bid form.

§ 4.1.6 Where two or more Bids for designated portions of the Work have been requested, the Bidder may, without forfeiture of the bid security, state the Bidder's refusal to accept award of less than the combination of Bids stipulated by the Bidder. The Bidder shall neither make additional stipulations on the bid form nor qualify the Bid in any other manner.

§ 4.1.7 Each copy of the Bid shall state the legal name and legal status of the Bidder. As part of the documentation submitted with the Bid, the Bidder shall provide evidence of its legal authority to perform the Work in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. Each copy of the Bid shall be signed by the person or persons legally authorized to bind the Bidder to a contract. A Bid by a corporation shall further name the state of incorporation and have the corporate seal affixed. A Bid submitted by an agent shall have a current power of attorney attached, certifying the agent's authority to bind the Bidder.

§ 4.1.8 A Bidder shall incur all costs associated with the preparation of its Bid.

### § 4.2 Bid Security

§ 4.2.1 Each Bid shall be accompanied by the following bid security:

Every bid shall be accompanied by a Bid Bond in the amount of five (5) percent of the total base bid (including allowances) plus the sum of all alternates.

§ 4.2.2 The Bidder pledges to enter into a Contract with the Owner on the terms stated in the Bid, shall furnish proof of the required insurance in form acceptable to the Owner, and shall furnish bonds covering the faithful performance of the Contract and payment of all obligations arising thereunder. Should the Bidder refuse to enter into such Contract or fail to furnish proof of the required insurance in form acceptable to the Owner or fail to furnish such bonds if required, the amount of the bid security shall be forfeited to the Owner as liquidated damages, not as a penalty.

§ 4.2.3 If a surety bond is required as bid security, it shall be written on AIA Document A310™, Bid Bond as revised for this Project. The attorney-in-fact who executes the bond on behalf of the surety shall affix to the bond a certified and current copy of an acceptable power of attorney. The Bidder shall provide surety bonds from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

§ 4.2.4 The Owner will have the right to retain the bid security of Bidders to whom an award is being considered until (a) the Contract has been executed, bonds, if required, have been furnished in a form acceptable to the Owner and proof of all required insurance has been furnished in a form acceptable to the Owner; (b) the specified time has elapsed so that Bids may be withdrawn; or (c) all Bids have been rejected. However, if no Contract has been awarded or a Bidder has not been notified of the acceptance of its Bid, a Bidder may, beginning forty-five (45) days after the opening of Bids, withdraw its Bid and request the return of its bid security.

### § 4.3 Submission of Bids

§ 4.3.1 A Bidder shall submit its Bid as indicated below:

See Advertisement for Bids.



§ 4.3.2 Paper copies of the Bid, the bid security, and any other documents required to be submitted with the Bid shall be enclosed in the same sealed opaque envelope. Bid envelopes shall be addressed to “Attn: Lisa Sanfilippo, CPA, Assistant Superintendent for Business”.

§ 4.3.3 Bids shall be submitted by the date and time and at the place indicated in the Advertisement for Bids subject to any modification of such date, time and place included in any Addenda. Bids submitted after the date and time for receipt of Bids, or at an incorrect place, will not be accepted.

§ 4.3.4 The Bidder shall assume full responsibility for timely delivery at the location designated for receipt of Bids. The Bidder assumes the risk of any delay in the mail or in the handling of the mail by employees of the Owner and the employees of the mail or delivery service used.

§ 4.3.5 A Bid submitted by any method other than as provided in this Section 4.3 will not be accepted.

§ 4.3.6 Bids shall remain open for a period of forty-five (45) days following the date of the bid opening.

§ 4.3.7 Executed forms required for each submitted Bid: Refer to Specification Section 004393. Failure to provide the required forms with bid package may result in Owner finding the bidder non-responsive to the bid documents and the bid may be rejected.

#### § 4.4 Modification or Withdrawal of Bid

§ 4.4.1 Prior to the date and time designated for receipt of Bids, a Bidder may submit a new Bid to replace a Bid previously submitted, or withdraw its Bid entirely, by notice to the party designated to receive the Bids. Such notice shall be received and duly recorded by the receiving party on or before the date and time set for receipt of Bids. The receiving party shall verify that replaced or withdrawn Bids are removed from the other submitted Bids and not considered. Notice of submission of a replacement Bid or withdrawal of a Bid shall be worded so as not to reveal the amount of the original Bid.

§ 4.4.2 Withdrawn Bids may be resubmitted up to the date and time designated for the receipt of Bids in the same format as that established in Section 4.3, provided they fully conform with these Instructions to Bidders. Bid security shall be in an amount sufficient for the Bid as resubmitted.

§ 4.4.3 After the date and time designated for receipt of Bids, a Bidder who discovers that it made a clerical error in its Bid shall notify the Construction Manager or Architect of such error within two days, or pursuant to a timeframe specified by the law of the jurisdiction where the Project is located, requesting withdrawal of its Bid. Upon providing evidence of such error to the reasonable satisfaction of the Construction Manager, Architect and Owner, the Bid shall be withdrawn and not resubmitted. If a Bid is withdrawn pursuant to this Section 4.4.3, the bid security will be attended to as follows:

Bid Security will be returned within three (3) business days.

### ARTICLE 5 CONSIDERATION OF BIDS

#### § 5.1 Opening of Bids

If stipulated in an advertisement or invitation to bid, or when otherwise required by law, Bids properly identified and received within the specified time limits will be publicly opened and read aloud. A summary of the Bids may be made available to Bidders. After the low bid is announced, the sealed list of subcontractors submitted with such low bid shall be opened and the names of such subcontractors shall be announced. The sealed lists of subcontractors submitted by all other bidders shall be returned to them unopened after the contract is awarded.

#### § 5.2 Rejection of Bids

Unless otherwise prohibited by law, the Owner shall have the right to reject any or all Bids.

#### § 5.3 Acceptance of Bid (Award)

§ 5.3.1 The responsibility of Bidders and of their proposed subcontractors will be considered in making the award. The Owner through the Architect and Construction Manager may make such investigation as the Owner deems necessary to determine the responsibility of any Bidder or to determine the ability of any Bidder to perform the Work.



§ 5.3.2 When requested by the Architect or Construction Manager, Bidders shall furnish all information and data required by the Owner, including financial data, within the time and in the form and manner required by the Owner.

§ 5.3.3 It is the intent of the Owner to award a Contract to the lowest responsive and responsible Bidder, provided the Bid has been submitted in accordance with the requirements of the Bidding Documents. Unless otherwise prohibited by law, the Owner shall have the right to waive informalities and irregularities in a Bid received, to waive what it deems to be informalities relating to the bidding process, to waive what it deems to be technical defects, irregularities and omissions relating to a specific Bid, to request additional information from any Bidder, to re-advertise and invite new Bids and to accept the Bid which, in the Owner's judgment, is in the Owner's best interests.

§ 5.3.4 Unless otherwise prohibited by law, the Owner shall have the right to accept Alternates in any order or combination, unless otherwise specifically provided in the Bidding Documents, and to determine the lowest responsive and responsible Bidder on the basis of the sum of the Base Bid and Alternates accepted.

§ 5.3.5 When separate specifications are not required pursuant to WICKS LAW (General Municipal Law Section 101), any change to the subcontractor or the amount to be paid to subcontractor as stated in the Contractor's bid shall require the approval of the Owner, upon a showing presented to the Owner of legitimate construction need for such change, which shall be open to public inspection. Legitimate construction need shall include, but not be limited to, a change in project specifications, a change in construction material costs, a change to subcontractor status as determined pursuant to Labor Law 222 (c)(2), or the subcontractor has become otherwise unwilling, unable or unavailable to perform the subcontract.

## ARTICLE 6 POST-BID INFORMATION

### § 6.1 Contractor's Qualification Statement

§ 6.1.1 The Owner shall have the right to take such steps as it deems necessary to determine the ability of the Bidder to perform its obligations under the Contract, and the Bidder shall furnish the Owner all such information and data for this purpose as the Owner may request. The right is reserved to reject any Bid where an investigation of the available evidence or information does not satisfy the Owner that the Bidder is qualified and capable to carry out properly the terms of the Contract. The issuing of Bid Documents and acceptance of the Bidder's payment by the Owner shall not be construed as pre-qualification of that Bidder. If the Bidder is later discovered to have misrepresented or provided false or incorrect information with regard to any material party of the information submitted to the Owner, including but not limited to information regarding experience, debarment, claims, lawsuits, arbitrations, mediations, finances, license, contract termination, the Owner reserves the right to reject the Bid of such Bidder and, if a construction contract has been awarded, it will become automatically voidable at the sole discretion and election of the Owner.

§ 6.1.2 Within forty-eight (48) hours after the Bids are opened, the two (2) apparent low Bidders for each Prime Contract must submit the required pre-award submittal package described below to the Construction Manager via email:

- .1 Workforce and Work Plan – Provide a detailed written Work Plan which shall demonstrate the Contractor's understanding of overall Project scope and shall include, but not be limited, to the following:
- .2 Sequential listing of specific Project activities required to successfully complete the Work of the Contract Documents.
  - .1 Include Schedule and list Critical Milestones.
  - .2 Include phasing of the Work, if required.
  - .3 Include listing of long lead items.
  - .4 Statement that the Project can be completed in the established time.

- .3 Resumes for the Bidder's proposed supervisory staff, including qualifications for specialized expertise or any certification(s).
- .4 Any special coordination requirements with other trades.
- .5 Any special storage and staging requirements for construction materials.
- .6 Detailed Cost Estimate: A copy of a Detailed Cost Estimate outlined in CSI format by material and labor.
- .7 Copy of most recent financial statements from CPA.
- .8 AIA A305 – Qualification Form.
- .9 Required Insurance Certificates.
- .10 A designation of the Work to be performed by the Bidder's own forces.
- .11 Names of the principal products and systems proposed for the Work and the manufacturers and suppliers of each.
- .12 Names of persons or entities (including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design) proposed for the principal portions of the Work.
- .13 Names, addresses and phone numbers of the subcontractors that the Bidder proposes to use on the Project.
- .14 A description of its experience with at least five similar projects (completed in the last five years) of comparative size, complexity and cost together with documentary evidence showing that said projects were completed to the owner's satisfaction and were completed in a timely fashion listing type and scope of work. Provide names, addresses and current phone numbers of owners, architect and Construction manager associated with each project

## **§ 6.2 intentionally omitted**

### **§ 6.3 Submittals**

**§ 6.3.1** The Bidder will be required to establish to the satisfaction of the Architect, Construction Manager and Owner the reliability and responsibility of the persons or entities proposed to furnish and perform the Work described in the Bidding Documents.

**§ 6.3.2** Prior to the execution of the Contract, the Architect or Construction Manager will notify the Bidder if either the Owner, Construction Manager or Architect, after due investigation, has reasonable objection to a person or entity proposed by the Bidder. If the Owner, Construction Manager or Architect has reasonable objection to a proposed person or entity, the Bidder may, at the Bidder's option, withdraw the Bid or submit an acceptable substitute person or entity. The Bidder may also submit any required adjustment in the Base Bid or Alternate Bid to account for the difference in cost occasioned by such substitution. The Owner may accept the adjusted bid price or disqualify the Bidder. In the event of either withdrawal or disqualification, bid security will not be forfeited.

**§ 6.3.3** Persons and entities proposed by the Bidder and to whom the Owner, Construction Manager and Architect have made no reasonable objection must be used on the Work for which they were proposed and shall not be changed except with the written consent of the Owner, which may be provided through the Construction Manager.

## **ARTICLE 7 PERFORMANCE BOND AND PAYMENT BOND**

### **§ 7.1 Bond Requirements**

**§ 7.1.1** The Bidder shall furnish bonds covering the faithful performance of the Contract and payment of all obligations arising thereunder.

**§ 7.1.2** The cost of furnishing the performance bond and payment bond shall be included in the Bid. I

**§ 7.1.3** The Bidder shall provide surety bonds from a company or companies licensed and admitted to do business in New York State and lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in New York State.

**§ 7.1.4** Unless otherwise indicated below, the Penal Sum of the Payment and Performance Bonds shall be the amount of the Contract Sum and shall be increased if and when the Contract Sum is increased by any Modification (as defined AIA Document A232™–2019, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition, as revised for this Project) in issued after award of the Contract.

## **§ 7.2 Time of Delivery and Form of Bonds**

**§ 7.2.1** The Bidder shall deliver the required bonds to the Owner not later than three (3) days following the date of execution of the Contract. If the Work is to commence sooner in response to a letter of intent, the Bidder shall, prior to commencement of the Work, submit evidence satisfactory to the Owner that such bonds will be furnished and delivered in accordance with this Section 7.2.1.

**§ 7.2.2** Unless otherwise provided, the bonds shall be written on AIA Document A312, Performance Bond and Payment Bond and shall contain the following modifications in a rider to each bond or stated in the Modifications section of each bond (Section 16 of the Performance Bond and Section 18 of the Payment Bond):

- .1** Surety hereby agrees that it consents to and waives notice of any addition, alteration, omission, change, or other modification of the Contract Documents. Such addition, alteration, change, extension of time, or other modification of the Contract Documents, or a forbearance on the part of either the Owner or the Contractor to the other, shall not release the Surety of its obligations hereunder and notice to the Surety of such matters is hereby waived.
- .2** Notwithstanding any prior provision of this bond, the Surety also agrees that no meeting is required to be offered, arranged or held with the Owner, Contractor and/or Surety prior to termination of the Contract or the Contractor.
- .3** Surety further agrees that in event of any default by the Owner in the performance of the Owner's obligations to the Contractor under the Contract, the Contractor or Surety shall cause written notice of such default (specifying said default in detail) to be given to the Owner, and the Owner shall have thirty (30) days from receipt of such notice within which to cure such default, or such additional reasonable period of time as may be required if the nature of such default is such that it cannot be cured within thirty (30) days. Such Notice of Default shall be sent by certified or registered U.S. Mail, return receipt requested, first class postage prepaid, to the Owner.

**§ 7.2.3** The bonds shall be dated on or after the date of the Contract.

**§ 7.2.4** The Bidder shall require the attorney-in-fact who executes the required bonds on behalf of the surety to affix to the bond a certified and current copy of the power of attorney.

## **ARTICLE 8 ENUMERATION OF THE PROPOSED CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

**§ 8.1** Copies of the proposed Contract Documents have been made available to the Bidder and consist of the following documents:

- .1** AIA Document A132™–2019, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition, as revised for this Project and completed for the Contractor
- .2** AIA Document A132™–2019, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds Exhibit, as revised for this Project
- .3** AIA Document A232™–2019, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition, as revised for this Project
- .4** AIA Document C106™–2013, Digital Data Licensing Agreement, as revised for this Project
- .5** Drawings: As in the Contract Documents
- .6** Specifications: As in the Contract Documents.
- .7** Other Exhibits:  
Not Applicable.
- .8** Other documents, if any, listed below:  
Instructions to Bidders;  
Contractor's Bid Form

# DRAFT AIA® Document C106™ – 2013

## Digital Data Licensing Agreement

**AGREEMENT** made as of the « » day of « » in the year « »  
(In words, indicate day, month and year.)

**BETWEEN** the Party transmitting Digital Data (“Transmitting Party”):  
(Name, address and contact information, including electronic addresses)

Mastracci Mesiti-Ceas Architecture Engineering P.L.L.C.  
d/b/a MEMASI  
2 Lyon Place  
White Plains, New York 10601

and the Party receiving the Digital Data (“Receiving Party”):  
(Name, address and contact information, including electronic addresses)

« »  
« »  
« »  
« »  
« »

for the following Project:  
(Name and location or address)

2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2  
Eastchester Union Free School District  
580 White Plains Road  
Eastchester, New York 10709

The Transmitting Party and Receiving Party agree as follows.

### TABLE OF ARTICLES

- 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS
- 2 TRANSMISSION OF DIGITAL DATA
- 3 LICENSE CONDITIONS
- 4 LICENSING FEE OR OTHER COMPENSATION
- 5 DIGITAL DATA

### ARTICLE 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

§ 1.1 The purpose of this Agreement is to grant a license from the Transmitting Party to the Receiving Party for the Receiving Party’s use of Digital Data on the Project, and to set forth the license terms.

§ 1.2 This Agreement is the entire and integrated agreement between the parties. Except as specifically set forth herein, this Agreement does not create any other contractual relationship between the parties.

#### ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

**ELECTRONIC COPYING** of any portion of this AIA® Document to another electronic file is prohibited and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.

§ 1.3 For purposes of this Agreement, the term Digital Data is defined to include only those items identified in Article 5 below.

§ 1.3.1 Confidential Digital Data is defined as Digital Data containing confidential or business proprietary information that the Transmitting Party designates and clearly marks as “confidential.”

## ARTICLE 2 TRANSMISSION OF DIGITAL DATA

§ 2.1 The Transmitting Party grants to the Receiving Party a nonexclusive limited license to use the Digital Data identified in Article 5 solely and exclusively to perform services for, or construction of, the Project in accordance with the terms and conditions set forth in this Agreement.

§ 2.2 The transmission of Digital Data constitutes a warranty by the Transmitting Party to the Receiving Party that the Transmitting Party is the copyright owner of the Digital Data, or otherwise has permission to transmit the Digital Data to the Receiving Party for its use on the Project in accordance with the terms and conditions of this Agreement.

§ 2.3 If the Transmitting Party transmits Confidential Digital Data, the transmission of such Confidential Digital Data constitutes a warranty to the Receiving Party that the Transmitting Party is authorized to transmit the Confidential Digital Data. If the Receiving Party receives Confidential Digital Data, the Receiving Party shall keep the Confidential Digital Data strictly confidential and shall not disclose it to any other person or entity except as set forth in Section 2.3.1.

§ 2.3.1 The Receiving Party may disclose the Confidential Digital Data as required by law or court order, including a subpoena or other form of compulsory legal process issued by a court or governmental entity. The Receiving Party may also disclose the Confidential Digital Data to its employees, consultants or contractors in order to perform services or work solely and exclusively for the Project, provided those employees, consultants and contractors are subject to the restrictions on the disclosure and use of Confidential Digital Data as set forth in this Agreement.

§ 2.4 The Transmitting Party retains its rights in the Digital Data. By transmitting the Digital Data, the Transmitting Party does not grant to the Receiving Party an assignment of those rights; nor does the Transmitting Party convey to the Receiving Party any right in the software used to generate the Digital Data.

§ 2.5 To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Receiving Party shall indemnify and defend the Transmitting Party from and against all claims arising from or related to the Receiving Party’s modification to, or unlicensed use of, the Digital Data.

## ARTICLE 3 LICENSE CONDITIONS

The parties agree to the following conditions on the limited license granted in Section 2.1:

*(State below rights or restrictions applicable to the Receiving Party’s use of the Digital Data, requirements for data format, transmission method or other conditions on data to be transmitted.)*

« »

## ARTICLE 4 LICENSING FEE OR OTHER COMPENSATION

The Receiving Party agrees to pay the Transmitting Party the following fee or other compensation for the Receiving Party’s use of the Digital Data:

*(State the fee, in dollars, or other method by which the Receiving Party will compensate the Transmitting Party for the Receiving Party’s use of the Digital Data.)*

« »

## ARTICLE 5 DIGITAL DATA

The Parties agree that the following items constitute the Digital Data subject to the license granted in Section 2.1:

*(Identify below, in detail, the information created or stored in digital form the parties intend to be subject to this Agreement.)*

« »

This Agreement is entered into as of the day and year first written above and will terminate upon Substantial Completion of the Project, as that term is defined in A232™–2019, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition, as revised for this Project, unless otherwise agreed by the parties and set forth below.

*(Indicate when this Agreement will terminate, if other than the date of Substantial Completion.)*

« »

TRANSMITTING PARTY *(Signature)*

Daryl Mastracci, Managing Partner  
*(Printed name and title)*

RECEIVING PARTY *(Signature)*

« »« »  
*(Printed name and title)*

## **SECTION 011000 - SUMMARY OF WORK - MULTIPLE PRIME CONTRACTS**

### **GENERAL**

#### **1.1 PROJECT INFORMATION**

- A. Project: 2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2
- B. Project Location: District-Wide
- C. Owner: Eastchester Union Free School District
- D. Architect: MEMASI
- E. Construction Manager: Arris Contracting Company, Inc.
- F. The overall scope of work includes: secure entrance vestibules at all schools (Additions at High School and Waverly), asbestos abatement, new VCT flooring, ACT Ceilings, light fixtures, door and hardware replacements, security devices, window replacements, masonry repairs, etc.
  - a. The contractor shall provide all labor, materials, equipment and services to furnish deliver and install all materials and related work as shown on the drawings, as required by these specifications and/or as directed by the Architect/Construction Manager.
- G. Contracts:
  - 1. The Project will be constructed under a multiple prime-contracting arrangement.
  - 2. Prime Contracts are separate contracts between the Owner and separate contractors, representing significant construction activities. Each prime contract is performed concurrently with and closely coordinated with construction activities performed on the Project under prime contracts. Prime contracts for this Project include:
    - a. Contract No. 1 – General Construction (GC)
    - b. Contract No. 2 – Mechanical Construction (MC)
    - c. Contract No. 3 – Electrical Construction (EC)
    - d. Contract No. 4 – Window Construction Work (WC)

#### **1.2 DIVISION OF WORK**

- A. Each contract shall include all labor materials, plans, tools, equipment and supervision which are required for or incidental to the proper completion of the work as indicated on the drawings and described in the following specification sections:

#### **1.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS – ALL CONTRACTS**

### **DIVISION 00 - PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS**

#### **SECTION**

000101	Project Title Page
000110	Table of Contents
000115	Drawing Index
001113	Advertisement for Bids
002113	Instructions to Bidders
002513	Prebid Site Visit
002600	Procurement Substitution Procedures
004116	Bid Form(s)
004313	Bid Security Forms
004324	Procurement Substitution Request Form
004503	Insurance Certification Form
004519	Non-Collusion Affidavit

004520	Iran Divestment Act Affidavit
004521	Inability to Comply with Iran Divestment Act Affidavit
004522	Sexual Harassment Prevention Certification Form
004543	Corporate Resolutions
006000	Project Forms
007343	Wage Rates
	AIA A132-2019 Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor
	AIA A132-2019 Exhibit A Insurance and Bonds
	AIA A232-2019 General Conditions of the Contract for Construction
	AIA A305-1986 Contractor's Qualification Statement
	AIA A310-2010 Bid Bond
	AIA A312-2010 Payment Bond
	AIA A312-2010 Performance Bond
	AIA A701-2018 Instructions to Bidders
	AIA C106-2013 Digital Data Licensing Agreement

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

SECTION

011000	Summary of Work
011100	Milestone Schedule
012100	Allowances
012200	Unit Prices
012300	Alternates
012500	Substitution Procedures
012501	Substitution Request Form
012600	Contract Modification Procedures
012900	Payment Procedures
013100	Project Management and Coordination
013119	Project Meetings
013150	Covid-19 Contractor Compliance
013216	Construction Progress Schedule
013300	Submittal Procedures
013529	Health and Safety Plan
014000	Quality Requirements
014100	Permits and Compliance
014326	Testing Laboratory Services
015000	Temporary Facilities and Controls
016000	Product Requirements
017329	Cutting and Patching
017400	Cleaning Up
017700	Closeout Procedures
017701	Checklist for Project Closeout
017719	Project Record Documents
017823	Operation and Maintenance Requirements
	AIA G703-1992 Continuation Sheet
	AIA G706-1994 Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims
	AIA G706A-1994 Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens
	AIA G707-1994 Consent of Surety to Final Payment
	AIA G710-2017 Architect's Supplemental Instructions
	AIA G716-2004 Request for Information (RFI)
	AIA G731-2019 Change Order
	AIA G732-2019 Application and Certificate for Payment



AIA G733-2019 Construction Change Directive  
AIA G734-2019 Certificate of Substantial Completion  
Submittal Cover Sheet

**1.4 Contract No. 1 – General Construction (GC)**

**In addition to the General Requirements, Division 01, included in this bid package contractor shall provide for proper completion of work as indicated on all drawings and in accordance with the terms and conditions described in the following specification sections:**

DIVISION 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS

SECTION

020810	Asbestos Abatement
024113	Selective Site Demolition
024119	Selective Demolition and Alteration Work

DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE

SECTION

033000	Cast-in-Place Concrete
034500	Architectural Precast Concrete
035416	Cement Leveling Compound

DIVISION 04 - MASONRY

SECTION

040120	Maintenance of Brick Masonry
042113	Unit Masonry

DIVISION 05 - METALS

SECTION

051200	Structural Steel
052100	Steel Joists and Joist Girders
053100	Steel Decking
054000	Cold-Formed Metal Framing
055000	Miscellaneous Metals
055813	Column Covers

DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS AND COMPOSITES

SECTION

062000	Carpentry
064023	Architectural Woodwork

DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

SECTION

071326	Sheet Membrane Waterproofing
071700	Bentonite Waterproofing
072100	Thermal Insulation

072700	Vapor Permeable Air Barrier Liquid Membrane
074113	Metal Roof Panels
074213.23	Metal Composite Material Wall Panel
075216	SBS Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing
076200	Sheet Metal Flashing
077100	Roof Specialties and Accessories
078413	Firestops and Smoke seals
079200	Joint Sealers
079500	Expansion Control

DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS

SECTION

081113	Steel Doors and Frames
081416	Wood Doors
081743	FRP/Aluminum Hybrid Doors
083113	Access Doors
083324	Roll Up Fire Counter Shutters
083473	Sound Control Door Assemblies
084113	Aluminum Entrances and Storefronts
084900	Fire Rated Glass and Framing Systems
085113	Aluminum Windows
085619	Sliding and Fixed Transom Windows
087100	Door Hardware
088000	Glass and Glazing
089000	Louvers
089516	Wall Vents

DIVISION 09 - FINISHES

SECTION

092116	Gypsum Board Assemblies
093013	Ceramic Tiling
095113	Acoustical Panel Ceilings
096513	Resilient Base and Accessories
096519	Resilient Tile Flooring
099000	Painting and Finishing

DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES

SECTION

101419	Dimensional Letters
101453	Traffic Signage
102123	Cubicle Curtains and Tracks
102813	Toilet Accessories
104416	Fire Extinguishers and Cabinets
107500	Flagpoles

DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS

SECTION

122413	Window Shades
--------	---------------

124823 Entrance Floor Grids

DIVISION 13 - SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

SECTION

133415 Tubular Frame Bleachers

DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING (ROOF DRAINS AND ASSOCIATED PIPING AT WAVERLY AND HIGH SCHOOL)

SECTION

220500	Common Work Results for Plumbing
220517	Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping
220518	Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping
220523	General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping
220529	Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
220553	Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
220719	Plumbing Piping Insulation
221116	Domestic Water Piping
221119	Domestic Water Piping Specialties
221316	Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping
221319	Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties
224000	Plumbing Fixture

DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK

SECTION

311000	Site Preparation
312000	Earth Moving
312500	Erosion and Sediment Control

DIVISION 32 - SITE IMPROVEMENTS

SECTION

321216	Asphalt Paving
321313	Concrete Paving
321400	Unit Paving
321613	Concrete Curbs
321723	Pavement Markings
323113	Chain Link Fences and Gates
329200	Turf and Grasses

Special Notes: Contract No. 1 – General Construction (GC):

1. Work hours M-F 7:00AM – 4:30PM. Contractor will appropriately manage the project to avoid Saturday and Overtime hours which result in Owner, Construction Manager and Architect additional costs.
2. General Work Contractor to carry insurance coverages per the “Eastchester Insurance Requirements” which are located in the DIV O specification.
3. Access doors for MEP trades furnished by trade requiring access; installation by Contract No. 1 – General Construction (GC).

4. The General Work Contractor No. 1 is responsible for all Asbestos abatement work on the project, with the exception of the HS/MS exterior window/lintel work ( Drawings H010 – H -013) which is part of the Window Work Contract No. 4.
5. In ceiling areas which contain asbestos: The GC's abatement subcontractor will remove and clean all devices within the abatement area ( FA, WAP, Speakers , Cameras, Projectors etc ) so that they are certified free of contamination . The abatement contractor will also fully clean and tie-up all light fixtures so they are certified free of contamination and ready to be removed by the EC.
6. GC and subcontractors will not be allowed to use existing or new plumbing fixtures to wash out mortar pans, grout, adhesives, etc.
7. GC will utilize lead-safe work practices – when impacting/ removing / disposing of any lead containing items.
8. GC is specifically reminded that there may be miscellaneous asbestos pipe insulation / fittings above some ceilings and inside wall areas. Contractor will investigate above the ceiling and walls prior to demolition and carefully perform the work as necessary to not disturb any insulation / fittings.
9. GC is notified that phasing will require multiple mobilizations and multiple crews of various subcontractors.
10. All work at Stone Portico and exterior of main entrance / security vestibule canopy including masonry repairs/cleaning is by Contract No. 1 – General Construction (GC) ( Drawings HS AD401, HS A401 & HS A403 & HS A404)
11. All existing ceiling removal / replacements necessary to install GC work will be by GC Contract No.1 including temporary support for all lighting fixtures, smoke detectors, etc.
12. All staging area work ( signage, parking areas, fence enclosures, etc.) shown in staging drawing ( located in spec 015000) is by GC. Remove all temporary materials and restore all temporary roadways / staging surfaces at conclusion of the project.
13. GC to provide negative air environments to properly exhaust all work areas of any odors, dust, fumes.
14. GC and their Door Hardware consultant will field measure all existing door frames scheduled to remain and receive new doors for proper hardware placement.
15. All roof drain and piping work at HS/MS and Waverly security vestibules shown on P- Drawings is by the General Work Contractor ( HS P001, HS PD101, HS P101, HS P201, WA P001, WA P101 & WA P201 ). Core drilling all openings included.
16. The General Work Contractor's Abatement subcontractor will remove all VAT flooring and mastic up to fixed perimeter casework. ( e.g. – science rooms ).  
No chemical removal of mastic permitted. Any island teacher stations will be temporarily removed ( disconnect any utilities), abated beneath and reinstalled by GC after new flooring is installed.  
Abatement subcontractor to remove any VAT / mastic projecting beneath unit ventilators."
17. GC will install floor protections (utilizing heavy duty "Ram-Board" with taped joints, or equivalent) to protect floor surfaces from damage for all room areas and corridor access routes necessary for construction.

18. GC is specifically notified that access to any tunnels and/or crawl spaces are confined work environment and all workers must have appropriate OSHA certifications and training.
19. In addition to daily general housekeeping, the General Work Contractor (Contract No.1) shall provide a weekly broom sweep and damp mop of all areas for the entire duration of the project.
20. The GC will hire their own private utility survey company to perform underground survey at locations of new addition excavations / Sitework at HS/MS and Waverly Elementary. No compensation for utility damage due to contractors failure to properly survey.
21. The GC will install Vapor lock 20/20 additive (or equal ) to new concrete slab areas to insure that new flooring can be immediately installed without moisture issues.
22. The GC is specifically notified that ALL floor areas will receive self-leveling underlayment. The thickness will vary due to varying floor slab elevations from room to room, areas where chases and walls removed, ceramic tile removed, floor abatement, grind down high spots, etc. Contractor will closely review and bid accordingly to achieve a consistent flat and level floor at no additional cost to the Owner.
23. Contractor is specifically reminded of their responsibilities for clean up as per Section 017400. Maintaining a clean jobsite is considered a safety issue and will be strictly enforced. In addition to daily cleaning, the contractor is required to hire a professional cleaning company to final clean all areas impacted by the construction. This includes completely cleaning any surfaces/equipment/furniture which has been dusted by the construction work. If the contractor does not properly perform this function when directed by the Owner/CM, within 4 hours of being notified the owner will perform the work with others and deduct the cost from the contractor.

#### **1.5 Contract No. 2 – Mechanical Construction (MC)**

**In addition to the General Requirements, Division 01, included in this bid package contractor shall provide for proper completion of work as indicated on all drawings and in accordance with the terms and conditions described in the following specification sections:**

#### DIVISION 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS

##### SECTION

024119 Selective Demolition and Alteration Work

#### DIVISION 05 - METALS

##### SECTION

055000 Miscellaneous Metals (for any HVAC related supports)

#### DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS AND COMPOSITES

##### SECTION

062000 Carpentry (for any HVAC related blocking)

#### DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

##### SECTION

078413 Firestops and Smoke seals  
079200 Joint Sealers

DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS

SECTION

083113	Access Doors
089000	Louvers

DIVISION 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

SECTION

230100	Common HVAC Requirements
230102	Common HVAC Demolition Requirements
230513	Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment
230515	Magnetic Motor Controllers
230517	Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping
230518	Escutcheons for HVAC Piping
230529	Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment
230548	Vibration Controls for HVAC
230553	Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment
230593	Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC
230713	Duct Insulation
230719	HVAC Piping Insulation
230800	Commissioning of HVAC
230923	Instrumentation and Control for HVAC
230993	Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls
232113	Hydronic Piping
232116	Hydronic Piping Specialties
232213	Steam and Condensate Heating Piping
232216	Steam and Condensate Heating Piping Specialties
233113	Metal Ducts
233300	Air Duct Accessories
233423	HVAC Fans
233713	Diffusers Registers and Grilles
238239	Fan Coil Units

DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

SECTION

260519	Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables
--------	--

Special Notes: Contract No. 2 – Mechanical Construction (MC):

1. Work hours M-F 7:00AM – 4:30PM. Contractor will appropriately man the project to avoid Saturday and Overtime hours which result in Owner, Construction Manager and Architect additional costs.
2. Mechanical Contractor to carry insurance coverages per the “ Eastchester Insurance Requirements” which are located in the DIV O specification.
1. Access doors are furnished by Mechanical Contract No. 2 and installed by GC Contract No.1.
3. MC is specifically notified that access to any tunnels and/or crawl spaces are confined work environment and all workers must have appropriate OSHA certifications and training.
4. All existing ceiling removal / replacements necessary to install new MC work will be by MC Contract No.2. Includes temporary supports for light fixtures, smoke detectors, etc. ( e.g. – hydronic piping, valves etc. )

5. Any wood blocking by MC items by Contract No. 2 – Mechanical Construction (MC).
6. All steel supports /angles associated with Mechanical work is by MC Contract No. 2.
7. Where GC is removing existing ceilings, the MC will remove any ceiling diffusers, registers, grilles etc. MC to reinstall as new ceilings are being completed.
8. VFD's, disconnects, starters, etc. supplied by MC will be installed by EC, unless noted otherwise.
9. MC will utilize lead-safe work practices– if impacting/ removing / disposing of any lead containing items.
10. MC Contract No.2 is responsible for making their own through wall and through floor duct/piping penetrations and associated patching/fire-stopping.
11. If any new mechanical units are too large to fit through existing openings the Mechanical contractor will either disassemble equipment into sections or remove existing construction to enlarge opening and reconstruct to match (at no additional cost).
12. Duct detectors supplied and wired by EC (MC installs the duct detector)
13. MC specifically notified construction is phased which necessitates that utilities/services will need to be temporarily connected and maintained as necessary to ensure that all occupied areas have the required services.
14. All HVAC control wiring is provided and installed by Mechanical Contract No. 2. (Power wiring by EC)
2. Contractor is specifically reminded about their responsibilities for clean-up as per section 017400. Maintaining a clean jobsite is considered a safety issue and will be strictly enforced. In addition to daily cleaning, the contractor is required to hire a professional cleaning company to final clean all areas impacted by the construction. This includes completely cleaning any surfaces/equipment/furniture which has been dusted by the construction work. If the contractor does not properly perform this function when directed by the Owner/CM within 4 hours of being notified the owner will perform the work with others and deduct the cost from the contractor.

#### **1.6 Contract No. 3 – Electrical Construction (EC)**

**In addition to the General Requirements, Division 01, included in this bid package contractor shall provide for proper completion of work as indicated on all drawings and in accordance with the terms and conditions described in the following specification sections.**

#### DIVISION 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS

##### SECTION

024119 Selective Demolition and Alteration Work

#### DIVISION 05 - METALS

##### SECTION

055000 Miscellaneous Metals (for any electrical related supports)

#### DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS AND COMPOSITES

##### SECTION

062000 Carpentry (for any electrical related blocking or plywood backboards)

DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

SECTION

078413	Firestops and Smoke seals
079200	Joint Sealers

DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS

SECTION

083113	Access Doors
--------	--------------

DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

SECTION

260500	General Requirements for Electrical Work
260519	Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables
260526	Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
260529	Hangars and Supports for Electrical Systems
260532	Junction Boxes for Electrical Systems
260533	Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems
260543	Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems
260544	Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling
260553	Identification for Electrical Systems
260943	Network Lighting Controls
260950	Empty Conduit Systems
262416	Panelboards
262726	Wiring Devices
262816	Enclosed Switches & Circuit Breakers
265000	Temporary Light and Power
265119	LED Interior Lighting
265213	Emergency and Exit Lighting
265600	Exterior Lighting

DIVISION 27 - COMMUNICATIONS

SECTION

270000	Communications General
270526	Grounding and Bonding
270528	Pathways for Communication Systems
270553	Identification for Telecommunication System
270813	Testing Copper Cables
275123	Integrated Critical Communication System

DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

SECTION

280000	Security Specification
283100	Fire Detection and Alarm

DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK

SECTION

312000	Earth Moving (for electrical-related trenching/backfill)
--------	--



DIVISION 32 - SITE IMPROVEMENTS

SECTION

321216	Asphalt Paving (for electrical-related patching)
321313	Concrete Paving (for electrical-related patching)
329200	Turf and Grasses (for electrical-related restoration)

Special Notes: Contract No. 3 – Electrical Construction (EC):

1. Work hours M-F 7:00AM – 4:30PM. Contractor will appropriately man the project to avoid Saturday and Overtime hours which result in Owner, Construction Manager and Architect additional costs.
2. Electrical Contractor to carry insurance coverages per the “ Eastchester Insurance Requirements” which are located in the DIV O specification.
3. Any existing ceiling removal/replacement necessary to install new electrical work to be done by Electric Contract No.3. ( e.g – new conduits for feeders through existing ceilings , etc )
4. VFD’s, disconnects, motor starters, etc. which are supplied by MC will be installed by EC, unless noted otherwise.
5. Electrical Contractor will submit for engineer approval, marked plans showing the wiring pathways for security and Shelter lock systems.
6. All Excavation / Backfill for electrical items (feeder conduits, site lighting bases, etc.) is by Electrical Contract No.3. This includes restoration to original condition for any impacted lawns, sidewalks, curbs, roadways, asphalt, etc.
7. Concrete Site Lighting bases are supplied and installed by EC contract No. 3.
8. Any wood blocking or panel backboards for electrical items by EC contract No.3
9. In ceiling areas which contain asbestos : Electrical contractor will review abatement drawing scope, survey the ceiling device locations with the GC’s abatement subcontractor and mark them on a drawing for record. The EC will shutdown power and decommission any systems to the abatement areas. The GC’s abatement subcontractor will then remove and clean all devices within the abatement area ( FA, WAP, Speakers , Cameras, Projectors etc ) so that they are certified free of contamination. The abatement contractor will also fully clean and tie-up all light fixtures so they are certified free of contamination and ready to be removed by the EC. Once final air clearance is received, the electrical contractor will remove /dispose of the cleaned fixtures which are not being reused and store / protect the temporarily removed devices. After the new ceilings are installed, the electrical contractor will reinstall and re-commission all devices ( FA, WAP, Speakers , Cameras, Projectors etc ).
10. In non-abatement areas where GC is removing existing ceilings, the EC will remove any ceiling mounted electrical items, Light Fixtures, FA devices, Speakers, WAP, exit signs, cameras, etc. EC to reinstall as new ceilings are being completed.
11. After GC ceiling removals for areas scheduled to receive new acoustic grid/tile, the EC will properly tie up any sagging wires at 6’ o.c. to be supported above the ceiling grid in accordance with code. Electrical Contract No. 3 is responsible to neatly tie up and secure all existing wiring after ceiling removals by others.

12. For Plumbers flushometers: the EC will install the PC provided transformer above the ceiling and install the wire to in-wall box. The EC then makes the wire connection from the electrical in -wall box to the flushometer.
13. EC will utilize lead-safe work practices – if impacting/ removing / disposing of any lead containing items.
14. Access doors are furnished by Electrical Contract No. 3 and installed by GC Contract No. 1.
15. All systems wiring reconnections are by Electric Contract No. 3 – including Fire Alarm, Door Access, Security Camera, Speakers, Data, etc.
16. All security and shelter system wiring will be roughed above acoustic ceiling grid. In areas where there is existing asbestos ceiling plaster, the Contractor will mount new security and shelter system wiring in new wiremold just below the plaster ceiling. Devices and Cameras in these asbestos locations will be wall mounted with 10 lf slack coiled for relocation above the ceiling in a future phase.
17. Electrical Contract No. 3 to provide and wire Fire Alarm duct detectors and HVAC unit shutdown connections (MC install the duct detector)
18. Electrical Contractor is specifically notified construction is phased which necessitates that utilities & services will need to be temporarily connected and maintained as necessary to ensure that all occupied areas have the required services.
19. Contractor is specifically reminded about their responsibilities for clean-up as per Section 017400. Maintaining a clean jobsite is considered a safety issue and will be strictly enforced. In addition to daily cleaning, the contractor is required to hire a professional cleaning company to final clean all areas impacted by the construction. This includes completely cleaning any surfaces/equipment/furniture which has been dusted by the construction work. If the contractor does not properly perform this function when directed by the Owner/CM within 4 hours of being notified the owner will perform the work with others and deduct the cost from the contractor.

#### **1.7 Contract No. 4 – Window Construction Work (WC)**

**In addition to the General Requirements, Division 1, included in this bid package contractor shall provide for proper completion of work as indicated on all drawings and in accordance with the terms and conditions described in the following specification sections.**

#### DIVISION 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS

##### SECTION

020810	Asbestos Abatement – HS/ MS only (Dwgs H-010, H-011, H012 & H-013 )
024119	Selective Demolition and Alteration Work

#### DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE

##### SECTION

034500	Architectural Precast Concrete ( window sills)
--------	--

DIVISION 04 - MASONRY

SECTION

040120	Maintenance of Brick Masonry
042113	Unit Masonry

DIVISION 05 - METALS

SECTION

051200	Structural Steel ( Lintels )
055000	Miscellaneous Metals

DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS AND COMPOSITES

SECTION

062000	Carpentry ( wood blocking for windows )
--------	---

DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

SECTION

076200	Sheet Metal Flashing
079200	Joint Sealers

DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS

SECTION

085113	Aluminum Windows ( No work at Elementary Schools )
088000	Glass and Glazing

DIVISION 09 - FINISHES

SECTION

092116	Gypsum Board Assemblies ( patching)
099000	Painting and Finishing

DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS

SECTION

122413	Window Shades
--------	---------------

Special Notes: Contract No. 4 – Window Construction Work (WC):

1. Work hours M-F 7:00AM – 4:30PM. Contractor will appropriately man the project to avoid Saturday and Overtime hours which result in Owner, Construction Manager and Architect additional costs.
2. Window Contractor to carry insurance coverages per the “ Eastchester Insurance Requirements” which are located in the DIV O specification.
3. The Window Work Contractor No. 4 is responsible for all Environmental abatement work associated with the Window, Masonry, caulk & Lintel replacements as shown on Asbestos Abatement drawings ( H-010, H-011, H-012 & H -013).

4. The Window Work Contractor No. 4 is responsible for all exterior masonry repairs and lintel replacements at both High School and Middle School as per the Exterior elevations drawings ( WC does not have any work at Elementary Schools and HS/MS entry vestibule is by GWC).
5. Window Work Contractor No. 4 is responsible for all interior work directly related to the window replacements. ( e.g. - Shade removals, wall patching repairs, interior wood trim, sills, paint patch, shade install, cleaning, etc.)
6. Window Work Contractor is notified that phasing will require multiple mobilizations and multiple crews of various subcontractors.
7. Contractor is specifically reminded of their responsibilities for clean up as per Section 017400. Maintaining a clean jobsite is considered a safety issue and will be strictly enforced. In addition to daily cleaning, the contractor is required to hire a professional cleaning company to final clean all areas impacted by the construction. This includes completely cleaning any surfaces/equipment/furniture which has been dusted by the construction work. If the contractor does not properly perform this function when directed by the Owner/CM, within 4 hours of being notified the owner will perform the work with others and deduct the cost from the contractor.

#### **1.8 PRIME CONTRACTOR'S USE OF PREMISES**

Use of the Site: Limit use of the premises to work in areas indicated. Confine operations areas within contract limits indicated. Do not disturb portions of the site beyond the areas in which the work is indicated.

Driveways and Entrances: Keep driveways and entrances serving the premises clear and available to the Owner, the Owner's employees, and emergency vehicles at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or storage of materials. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on site.

Existing building spaces may not be used for storage unless approved by the CM and Owner.

Time Restrictions: Working hours M-F 7:00AM – 4:30PM.

Owner's representative(s) will cover the project for the standard Monday-Friday shift. If contractor requests additional hours to make up schedule time or weekends, he will need to reimburse owner for any additional coverage or costs (e.g. – Architect, Construction Manager, etc.) at their contractual rate.

General: Limitations on site usage as well as specific requirements that impact utilization are indicated on the drawings and by other contract documents. In addition to these limitations and requirements, the Contractor shall administer allocation of available space equitably among the separate sub contractors and other entities needing access and space, so as to produce the best overall efficiency in performance of the total work of the project. The Contractor shall schedule deliveries so as to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on site.

After equipment is no longer required for the work, it shall be promptly removed from the project site. Protection of construction materials and equipment stored at the project site from weather, theft, damage and all other adversity is solely the responsibility of the Contractors.

Do not unreasonably encumber the site with materials or equipment. Confine stockpiling of materials and location of storage sheds to the areas indicated. If additional storage is necessary, obtain and pay for such storage off-site.

The Contractor(s) and any entity for which the Contractor is responsible shall not erect any sign of the Project site without the prior written consent of the Owner, which may be withheld in the sole discretion of the Owner.

Contractor shall ensure that the work, at all times, is performed in a manner that affords reasonable access, both vehicular and pedestrian, to the site of the work and all adjacent areas. The work shall be performed, to the fullest extent reasonably possible, in such a manner that public areas adjacent to the site of the work shall be free from all debris, building materials and equipment likely to cause hazardous conditions. Without limitation of any other provision of the Contract Documents, contractor shall use its best efforts to minimize any interference with the occupancy or beneficial use of: Any areas and buildings adjacent to the site of the work or; The Building in the event of partial occupancy.

Maintain the building in a safe and weathertight condition throughout the construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations. Take all precautions necessary to protect the building during the construction period.

Each Prime contractor is responsible for maintaining a safe jobsite. This include actively reviewing their work areas to ensure that they are in compliance with all required OSHA regulations. It is a contract requirement that each contractor conducts weekly tool-box safety meetings to ensure that their employees are properly educated and utilizing safe work practices. (Copies of these weekly meetings and a list of the attendees will be forwarded to the CM site superintendent on a weekly basis). Contractors will comply with all requirements outlined in the General Conditions including providing their employees with PPE (personal protective equipment), such as masks, hand sanitizer for COVID, hard hats, proper work boots, safety harness, safety glasses, etc.

Smoking, drinking of alcoholic beverages or open fires will not be permitted on the project site.

Utility Outages and Shutdown:

- a. Limit disruption of utility services to hours the building is unoccupied, weekends or holidays at no additional cost.
- b. Do not disrupt or shut down life safety systems, including but not limited to fire sprinklers and fire alarm system, without 7 days' notice to Eastchester Union Free School District and authorities having jurisdiction.
- c. Prevent accidental disruption of utility services to other facilities.
- d. All costs for manning of temporary shutdowns and utility crossovers, including 24-hour fire watch if necessary, is included in the contractor's bid regardless of weekend, holiday, etc.

## 1.9 OCCUPANCY REQUIREMENTS

**Partial owner Occupancy: The Owner reserves the right to occupy the place and install equipment in completed areas of the work prior to Substantial Completion, provided such occupancy does not interfere with completion of the Work, such placing of equipment and partial occupancy shall not constitute acceptance of the total Work.**

The Architect will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion for each specific portion of the Work to be occupied prior to Owner occupancy.

Obtain a Certificate of Occupancy from local building officials prior to Owner occupancy.

Prior to partial Owner occupancy, mechanical and electrical systems shall be fully operational. Required inspections and tests shall have been successfully completed. Upon occupancy, the Owner will operate and maintain mechanical and electrical systems serving occupied portions of the building.

Upon occupancy, the Owner will assume responsibility for maintenance and custodial service for occupied portions of the building.

**1.10 Not used**

**1.11 DEFINITIONS**

Definitions as applied to “Contractors” involved with the work of this Project:

“The Contractor” or “Contractor” meaning that Respective Prime Contractor normally responsible for that work referenced;

“Respective Prime Contractor” meaning either the – General Contractor, Plumbing, HVAC , Electrical , Sitework, Fire Protection Contractors normally responsible for the referenced work;

“Trade Contractor” meaning that Respective Prime Contractor as above; and such other terms relating to Contractors to be taken in context with respect to referenced work.

Further, wherein said Division 0 and 1 and respective Sections therein, any reference is made to “General Contractor”, same shall be construed to mean “Contractor for the General Construction, or General Work Contractor”.

The Owner cannot guarantee the correctness of the existing conditions shown and assumes no responsibility therefore, it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to visit the site and verify all existing conditions prior to bid.

The Owner will purchase certain items required for the overall operation of this facility through outside vendors.

The Contractor(s) will cooperate with said vendors as may be necessary to permit the work to be accomplished.

- a. The cooperation may extend to the receiving, unloading and placement of said equipment if directed by the Owner.
- b. Each Contractor is advised that the Owner may enter into separate contracts as may be in their best interest.
- c. Each Contractor is further advised that there will be a full on-site Project Representative / Construction Manager, whose duties will be defined at the pre-construction meeting.

**ADDITIONAL SECURITY PROVISIONS.**

1. All Contractors’ employees shall use a single means of access and egress, except in the case of emergency, to be designated by the Construction Manager.
2. Each Contractor and each Subcontractor shall require his employees, while on the job site, to wear, in a conspicuous location, a photo I.D. button bearing the name of the employee and the Contractor. The buttons of each Contractor shall be numbered consecutively. An up-to-date list of all I.D. buttons, indicating the name and number for each employee, shall be furnished to the Construction Manager.

### **1.12 ASBESTOS AND LEAD PAINT AWARENESS REQUIREMENTS**

Contractor agrees not to use or permit the use of any asbestos containing material in or on any property belonging to the Owner.

For purposes of this requirement, asbestos free shall mean free from all forms of asbestos, including - actinolite, amosite, anthrophyhlite, chrysotile, cricidolite and tremolite, both in friable and non-friable states and without regard to the purposes for which such material is used.

### **1.13 CONSTRUCTION TIME AND PHASING REQUIREMENTS**

Each Contractor is advised the “time is of the essence” of the Contract as defined in the “General Conditions” for the completion of the construction of the facility.

It is understood that the work is to be carried through to completion with the utmost speed consistent with good workmanship.

Time of Completion shall be as established in the Milestone Schedules (Section 011100).

The Contractor shall maintain fences and barricades at all times and shall repair/ restore and/ or pay for any temporary fencing damaged by their work.

Maintain at all times, all exits and walkways.

Where the barricade is removed for work, the Contractor performing such work shall provide adequate safety personnel to prevent unauthorized persons from approaching the work area.

Construction Phasing

The phasing and/ or milestone schedule contained in Section 011100 has been established for the overall construction of the project.

Electrical and mechanical services to the functioning spaces shall be maintained at all times.

Swing-overs to new facilities shall be made so as to cause the least interruption to the facilities’ operations.

1. The Contractor shall provide and maintain all required separations between old and new construction to prevent: Unauthorized entrance to construction areas by others than Architect, Construction Manager, or Owner, heat loss from existing building, water (rain or ground) infiltration into existing building.
2. Exterior alteration and restoration, as required, may proceed outside of phasing schedule at the Contractor’s option with concurrence from the Architect, Construction Manager and Owner.
3. Site development work shall proceed in such a manner to cause the least amount of disruption to the ongoing operations as possible.

### **1.14 PROOF OF ORDERS, DELIVERY DATES AND SUPPLY CHAIN TRACKING - Coordinate with Sections 013300 and 013216.**

Within 2 weeks after the approval of shop drawings, samples, product data and the like, the Contractor shall provide copies of purchase orders for all equipment and materials which are not available in local stock. The Contractor shall submit written statements from suppliers confirming the orders and stating promised delivery dates. Failure to provide this critical information will result in Owner holding monthly requisition payments until received.

**Due to COVID-19 and its potential to disrupt material supply-chains, the contractors are required to obtain all materials for the project and store them onsite in their individual Conex boxes. This includes general**

**material items typically readily available (piping, conduits, wire, metal studs, etc.). The owner will pay for these stored items delivered to the jobsite in accordance with Section 012900.**

This information shall be incorporated within the progress schedules so required as part of Section 013216 and 013300 and shall be monitored so as to ensure compliance with promised dates.

#### **1.15 FIELD MEASUREMENTS**

Each Respective Contractor shall take all necessary field measurements prior to fabrication, release and installation of work and shall assume complete responsibility for accuracy of same.

#### **1.16 INITIAL SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS**

As outlined in Division 01, each Contractor shall provide items noted including - bonds, insurance, emergency telephone numbers, progress scheduling, schedules of submittals, subcontractor listings and the like prior to the start of any work. The owner will not issue contracts until all bonds and insurance information is received by the contractor and verified correct.

#### **1.17 SCHEDULES**

The milestone schedule presented in the documents is for bidding and general purposes. Due to the nature of the work, it is the intention of the Construction Manager to negotiate actual work periods for the project among the various Prime Contractors involved with this bidding process, as well as separate contractors involved with other phases of the work solicited under separate proposals. Each Contractor shall, under terms of the General Conditions, mutually cooperate in the rescheduling of work to permit an uninterrupted use of the facilities by the Owner, without additional cost to the Owner.

General:

1. The objective of this project is to complete the overall work in the shortest period of time and to protect the building and occupants from damages caused by weather and construction activity during the progress of the work.
2. To meet these objectives, the Contractor shall plan the work, obtain materials, and execute the construction in the most expeditious manner possible in accordance with the requirements listed below.
3. If the Contractor fails to expedite and pursue any part of the work, the Owner may terminate the contract or may carry out the work with others per the General Conditions.
4. The Contractor shall work in coordination with work of other Contractors and Owner
5. All contractors are required to comply with proper sequencing of work and provide other prime contractors sufficient time to install their work (e.g. – HVAC contractor to provide preassembled roof curbs on roof in time for the GC roofing work). If contractor “boxes out” another prime contractor, he will be directed to stop work and open if necessary, to enable other trades to complete their work. No compensation for lost time due to stop-work will be provided.

Milestone Schedule (See Section 01 11 00).

#### **1.18 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS**

The following are additional general and special requirements which will govern the work of the projects covered by these Documents.



15. If it appears that some of the work cannot be completed by the scheduled date, the Contractor shall increase the work force or increase the hours of work, including evenings and weekends as necessary, and cover any additional costs to the Owner, architect and Construction Manager.
16. If the work is complete but the area is not cleaned and debris or equipment is not removed, the Owner shall have the right to prepare the area for occupancy with his own forces and deduct the costs from the Contract Amount. (If Contractor does not respond within 4 hours' notice).
17. If the Contractor fails to staff the job adequately to meet the completion date, the Owner reserves the right to assume possession of the material and complete installation with the Owner's forces or other Contractors or to require the Contractor to work evenings and weekends at no additional cost.
18. The jobsite may be made available on weekends and evenings to allow the Contractor additional time to complete the work before final completion date. Any custodial or Construction Manager costs resulting in this after-hours scheduling will be the Contractor's responsibility as their contractual hourly rate.
19. Work in each work period shall progress at least at a pace in proportion to the Contract time available.
20. The Contractor is responsible for temporary protection of all work until acceptance.
21. All existing conditions must be verified in the field. The Owner takes no responsibility for actual conditions found deviating from the drawings. If existing condition interferes with contract work, contractor is responsible to eliminate this condition.
22. Contractor must plan, provide and maintain his own access, ramping, and egress as required into and out of the site, staging of trailer(s), materials, machinery, and equipment in agreement with the Construction Manager's Superintendent. Maintain free and safe access on the jobsite for other related project personnel. Maintain safe pedestrian or vehicular traffic must be regulated by a flagman. Trucking and delivery operation should be coordinated with Construction Manager's Superintendent and all other trades.
23. Contractor is responsible for all work shown on Contract Documents, including drawings of other trade disciplines. For example, the HVAC Contractor will be responsible for HVAC work shown on Architectural Drawings.
24. Contractor is responsible to maintain existing site fencing in its existing condition. Modifications to the fence to better accommodate the contract work can be discussed with the Construction Manager. These changes shall then be handled by this contractor at his expense and in accordance with the Construction Manager's Superintendent's direction. Any cost incurred as a result of damages shall be charged to this contractor.
25. Contractor's personnel will not be permitted to use Eastchester Union Free School District's facilities (including toilet, telephone, food services, etc.) for their own benefit. Contractors' Superintendent must explain this to all their field forces.
26. Time is of the essence. Contractors' proposed schedule must be approved by the Construction Manager. Contractor shall indicate significant events such as submittals, shop drawings, material ordering, fabrication, delivery, coordination precedents, installation, testing and turnover by area or system as agreed with Construction Manager. A revised progress status shall be required on a weekly basis.
27. Decisions required from the Construction Manager, Architect and/or Engineer, shall be anticipated by the Contractor to provide ample time for inspection, investigation or detailed drawings.
28. Contractor shall limit his operations including storage of materials and prefabrication to areas within the Contract Limit Lines unless otherwise permitted by the Construction Manager at the Owner's option.

29. Contractor shall coordinate the use of premises with the Owner and Construction Manager and shall move at his own expense any stored products under Contractor's control, including excavated material, which interfere with operations of the Owner or separate contractors.
30. Contractor shall obtain and pay for the use of additional storage of work areas needed for operations.
31. Contractor shall assume full responsibility for the protection and safekeeping of products under this Contract stored on the site and shall cooperate with the Construction Manager to ensure security for the Owner's Property.
32. The intention of the work is to follow a logical sequence; however, the Contractor may be required by Construction Manager to temporarily omit or leave out any section of his work, or perform his work out of sequence. All such out of sequence work and come back time to these areas shall be performed at no additional cost.
33. Contractor shall submit a three-week schedule (man-loaded by work activity and area) to Construction Manager each week. Contractor's representative shall attend a weekly meeting with all contractors, chaired by Construction Manager, for the purpose of job coordination and sequencing. Contractor is responsible to coordinate the job with other trades and Construction Manager, and to cooperate with other trades in pursuit of the overall project's shop drawings and actively participate in resolving discrepancies, conflicts, interferences, etc.
34. Each Prime Contractor shall prepare an overall job schedule for his portion of work upon award of Contract, as per section 013216 - Construction Progress Schedule.
35. Sufficient manpower shall be provided at all times to maintain progress of the job. A shortage of labor in the industry shall not be accepted as an excuse for not properly manning the job.
36. The contractor shall take special care in verifying that his equipment matches the characteristics of the power being supplied.
37. Any contractor personnel including project managers, supervisors, etc. who engage in any personal attacks, belligerent or threatening speech/texts, etc., to the owner, or any of its agents, will be removed from working on the project.
38. Insubordination, unsafe practices, horseplay, abusive behavior or language, wanton destruction of property, use of drugs or alcohol, possession of firearms, and solicitation shall not be tolerated. There will be no warnings, and Contractor shall designate a responsible on-site supervisor to handle any situations that may arise, including termination.
39. Each contractor is responsible to supply and install all wood blocking/bracing necessary to properly secure their work. This responsibility includes coordinating the installation in concealed areas without delaying other trades.
40. Union business shall not be conducted on site. Any Union representatives that visit the site must declare what Contractor's personnel they represent, and must be escorted by that Contractor's Union steward at all times. No visitors, sales representative or non-working personnel shall be permitted on site without prior consent of the Construction Manager. No photographs shall be taken without the Construction Manager's prior approval.
41. Organize daily clean ups as well as participating in a weekly joint clean up involving all prime contractors onsite. Clean up shall be considered a safety issue. If any contractor fails to keep the site safe and brook clean within 4 hours of being notified by the Construction Manager, either verbally or in writing, the Construction Manager will have the cleanup work performed by others and will back charge accordingly.
42. Contractor shall provide protection from damage to adjacent and adjoining work and/or structures. Contractor shall clean, repair and/or replace any damage for which this contractor is responsible.
43. Contractor shall submit hourly rate sheets that would apply to time and material work for all pertinent trades upon Award of Contract.

44. Contractor shall examine surfaces and conditions prior to start of work. Report unacceptable conditions to the Construction Manager. Do not proceed until unacceptable conditions are corrected and acceptable. Starting of work implies acceptance.
45. Upon removal of exterior walls and window units, the building security and weather protection is the responsibility of the prime contractor performing the removals.
46. Each Prime Contractor shall include general housekeeping of light debris. All debris from each Prime Contractor will be collected daily and disposed of into their dumpsters. **In addition to daily general housekeeping, the General Work Contractor (Contract No.1) shall provide a weekly broom sweep and damp mop of all areas for the entire duration of the project.** The broom sweep shall include debris from all trades working on site.
47. It is the responsibilities of all Prime Contractors to review the entire summary of work and remaining documents for additional work items.
48. SLEEVES AND SLEEVE LAYOUT - It is the responsibility of the Prime Contractor requiring a sleeve to provide the sleeve and a layout sketch to the Prime Contractor performing the construction activity that the sleeve goes in.
49. Each contractor is responsible to review and become familiar with the scope of work included in all Contracts.
50. Limited site space is available in areas as designated by the Construction Manager. Construction trade parking is not permitted in Owner's employee parking lot.
51. Each contractor shall provide the engineering layout required to properly complete his work from an established working point. Contractor shall employ only competent engineering personnel skilled in performing layout tasks of similar complexity.
52. Prior to commencing the work, each Contractor shall provide written acceptance of grades, structures, substrates, and/or systems installed by other Contractors as suitable for installation of his work. Failure to provide this verification prior to commencing work shall constitute acceptance of the existing conditions.
53. Each Contractor shall coordinate with the Construction Manager for lay down areas, staging areas, and overall use of project site.
54. All contractors and their employees, subcontractors and supplier are expressly prohibited from entering the occupied areas of the school buildings during school hours without prior written permission of the Construction Manager and for using any of its facilities (i.e. restrooms, cafeteria, etc.).
55. Each contractor is responsible for the timely provision of the information required by other Contractors for the progress of other Contractors' work.
56. All contractor foremen must have working cell phone and number provided to CM.
57. No recycled import fill materials are permitted.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION 011000

SECTION 011100 - MILESTONE SCHEDULE

Part 1 - GENERAL

1.1 MILESTONE

The following milestone schedule serves as a basis for bidding. A Master Schedule will be developed at a general meeting within 21 days of Letter of Intent to Award the Contracts. Contractor will coordinate activities, forward submittals, deliver materials and provide necessary manpower to meet the milestones listed below.

1.2 MILESTONE SCHEDULE

<b>Eastchester Phase 2 Safety &amp; Security Project</b>	<b>Start</b>	<b>Finish</b>
• HS/MS Sitework / Asphalt Areas	06/26/23	08/18/23
• HS/MS Security Vestibule ( Existing vestibule V, security office and exterior pavers must be completed by August 25, 2023 to allow safe student entry/egress for school occupancy )	06/26/23	10/20/23
• High School Abatement Areas Basement & 1 <sup>st</sup> Floor	06/26/23	07/19/23
• High School New Floors , Corridor Ceilings & Lights 1 <sup>st</sup> Floor	07/20/23	08/09/23
• High School Abatement 2 <sup>nd</sup> & 3 <sup>rd</sup> Floor Areas	07/19/23	07/31/23
• High School New Floors 2 <sup>nd</sup> & 3 <sup>rd</sup> Floor Areas	08/01/23	08/11/23
• High School Exterior Sitework Lighting	07/24/23	08/07/23
• High School Door & Hardware Replace ( 2 <sup>nd</sup> Shift )	10/02/23	12/29/23
• High School Security Wiring ( 2 <sup>nd</sup> shift )	09/11/23	10/27/23
• High School Security System Complete	-----	12/29/23
• High School Window Replacements Window Abate/remove existing , lintel, masonry work and replace with new windows drawings H-012 & H-013 ( WC Contract # 4 )	06/26/23	08/25/23
• High School Window Replacements Window Abate/remove existing , lintel, masonry work and replace with new windows drawings H-010 & H-011 ( WC Contract # 4 )	07/01/24	08/23/24
• Middle School Exterior Masonry Repairs ( WC Contract # 4 )	06/26/23	08/25/23
• Middle School Abatement 2 <sup>nd</sup> Floor Areas ( full air clearance by 07/09/22 )	06/26/23	07/14/23
• Middle School New Floors, Corridor Ceilings & Lights 2 <sup>nd</sup> Floor	07/17/23	08/04/23
• Middle School Parking lot Replacement	06/26/23	07/21/23
• Middle School Abatement 1 <sup>st</sup> Floor Areas	07/17/23	07/26/23
• Middle School New Floors, Corridor Ceilings & Lights 1 <sup>st</sup> Floor	07/27/23	08/11/23
• Middle School Door & Hardware Replace ( 2 <sup>nd</sup> Shift )	12/29/23	02/16/24
• Middle School Security Wiring ( 2 <sup>nd</sup> shift )	10/27/23	12/15/23
• Middle School Security System Complete	----	12/29/23
• Greenvale Elementary Abatement	06/26/23	06/30/23
• Greenvale Elementary Security Vestibule	06/26/23	08/31/23
• Greenvale Elementary Door & Hardware Replace ( 2 <sup>nd</sup> Shift )	02/16/24	03/29/24
• Greenvale Elementary Exterior Site Lighting	07/24/23	08/11/23
• Greenvale Elementary School Security Wiring ( 2 <sup>nd</sup> shift )	12/16/23	02/02/24
• Greenvale Elementary School Security System Complete	-----	03/15/24
• Waverly Elementary Abatement Areas	06/26/23	06/29/23

• Waverly Elementary Security Vestibule	06/26/23	08/31/23
• Waverly Elementary Exterior Site Lighting	06/26/23	07/14/23
• Waverly Elementary Door & Hardware Replace ( 2 <sup>nd</sup> Shift )	03/29/24	05/17/24
• Waverly Elementary Security Wiring ( 2 <sup>nd</sup> shift )	02/02/24	03/15/24
• Waverly Elementary Security System Complete	-----	04/19/24
• Anne Hutchinson Elementary Abatement Work Areas 1	06/26/23	06/29/23
• Anne Hutchinson Elementary Abatement Work Areas 2 including air clearance, Multiple Crews, work 6/24 & 7/1/23 weekends, double shift if necessary, for full final air clearance by July 3 <sup>rd</sup> .	06/23/23	07/03/23
• Anne Hutchinson Elementary Security Vestibule	07/05/23	08/31/23
• Anne Hutchinson Elementary Exterior Site Lighting	07/10/23	07/28/22
• Anne Hutchinson Elementary Door/Hardware Replace ( 2 <sup>nd</sup> Shift )	05/17/24	06/21/24
• Anne Hutchinson Elementary Security Wiring ( 2 <sup>nd</sup> shift )	03/15/24	04/30/24
• Anne Hutchinson Elementary Security System Complete	-----	05/19/24

**Work hours will vary: 1<sup>st</sup> shift during summer months; 2<sup>nd</sup> shift during school year.** Contractors will figure second shift work in base bid. Contractor is specifically notified that they will need to work multiple crews simultaneously in order to meet the production rates to complete the work (M-F work week) by the above completion dates.

**GC Abatement contractor will work additional shifts & weekends as necessary to meet contract Milestone dates. Abatement contractor must work multiple crews simultaneously at each school. ( Milestone dates include final air clearances )**

Any additional work/coverage costs required by the owner's representatives including Construction Manager, Architect and custodians due to schedule overage beyond the milestone dates, if determined to be caused by the contractor, will result in a deduct change order at the owners/representative's contractual rate.

All work required by any of the Owner's representatives and consultants, including the Construction Manager, Architect, Architect's consultants, Owner's Attorneys, etc., to execute final the contract beyond Milestone dates, or to execute final closeout after 30 days past substantial completion, if determined to be caused by contractor, shall result in payment(s) to the Owner for additional services to the Construction Manager, Architect, Architect's consultants, Owner's Attorneys, etc. These costs will then be issued in the form of a deduct change order to the contractor's contract at the Owners consultant's contractual rate.

PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 011100

SECTION 011500 - SPECIAL PROJECT REQUIREMENTS

*Excerpts from 8 NYCRR Section 155.5 as they address "General Safety and Security Standards for Construction Projects".*

**STATEMENT OF PURPOSE: "The occupied portion of any school building shall always comply with the minimum requirements necessary to maintain a certificate of occupancy"**

1.1 GENERAL

- A. Requirements set forth herein are in addition to and shall be considered as complementary to the Conditions of the Contract and the Project specifications.
- B. All Contractors, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, Vendors and the like shall be required to familiarize themselves with said provisions.
- C. All contractors, subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, vendors and the like shall monitor their workers and require that they adhere to the following safety provisions during all construction and maintenance activities for the duration of the project.

1.2 REQUIREMENTS INCLUDED IN THIS SECTION AS APPLICABLE TO THE PARTICULAR PROJECT SCOPE OF WORK

- A. Safe and Secure Storage of Construction Materials
- B. Fencing – Project; Material storage areas; Container/Refuse areas
- C. Gates – Manned during working hours; locked and secure off hours.
- D. Sidewalk bridges, security barriers, etc. reference "Exterior Renovations"
- E. Worker identification system
- F. Temporary partitions – separation of construction areas from occupied spaces; construction, materials, inspection and maintenance.
- G. Worker access both horizontal and vertical in occupied buildings
- H. Debris removal.
- I. Ventilation of workspaces
- J. Exiting
- K. Fire and hazard prevention
- L. No Smoking
- M. Fire extinguishers
- N. Temporary sprinklers (if any)
- O. Smoke detectors (temporary)
- P. Fire watch and maintenance of existing fire alarm systems
- Q. Storage of gas and welding equipment
- R. Noise abatement procedures
- S. Construction fume controls

- T. Off-Gassing/bake out procedures
- U. Material Safety Data Sheet log
- V. Asbestos Code Rule 56
- W. Asbestos TEM
- X. Lead Abatement/Lead paint
- Y. Indoor Air Quality

1.3 SAFE AND SECURE STORAGE OF CONSTRUCTION MATERIALS

- A. Materials stored on the Site shall be neatly arranged and protected and shall be stored in an orderly fashion in locations that shall not interfere with the progress of the Work.

NOTE: If approval is given to store materials in any part of the building area, they shall be so stored as to cause no overloading of the structure.

1.4 FENCING – PROJECT; MATERIAL STORAGE AREAS; CONTAINER/REFUSE AREAS

- A. Barrier fencing constructed as outlined in Section 015000 shall be provided surrounding all work areas, material storage locations and around dumpsters and/or chutes when involved with demolition/removal operations.
- B. Fencing shall be maintained in good sound condition throughout the entire course of construction by the Owner's Representative and/or Contractor and removed only when directed by the Architect and/or Owner's Representative.

1.5 GATES

- A. Gates in construction fencing shall be of construction outlined in Section 015000 and shall be under either the Owner's Representative or Contractors' supervision throughout the workday and shall be secured in a locked condition at the close of any single business day and on all non-workdays. Gates shall be manned at all times work is in progress.

1.6 SIDEWALK BRIDGES, SECURITY BARRIERS, ETC. REFERENCE "EXTERIOR RENOVATIONS"

- A. As applicable to the project involved, provide overhead protective devices for the work consisting of tubular framed scaffold bridges, joist trusses and solid decking. Provide guard rails, lights and warning signs.

1.7 WORKER IDENTIFICATION SYSTEM

- A. All Contractors' employees shall use a single means of access and egress, except in the case of emergency, to be designated by the General Contractor.
- B. The Contractor shall, for all work covered under the Contract, establish a security control system for personnel and material involved with the work herein.
- C. The control system shall include photo identification badges and the like so as to insure against unauthorized entry to the site and resultant entry to the building proper.

1.8 TEMPORARY PARTITIONS – SEPARATION OF CONSTRUCTION AREAS FROM OCCUPIED SPACES; CONSTRUCTION, MATERIALS, INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE

- A. Provide temporary partitions from floors to underside of structure above, in sash and any other openings created by new construction, additions and alterations.
- B. Such partitions shall be constructed dust-tight using steel studs and acoustically and/or thermally insulated, Level 1 taped fire rated gypsum board.
- C. Locate enclosures as directed by the Architect and/or as shown on the drawings.
- D. In addition to partitions and closures, provide tight fitting filters over all return air grilles and/or open ducts in order to properly protect central air handling equipment.
- E. Take all necessary precautions to avoid unnecessary dust spreading to adjoining rooms and spaces.
- F. Keep all doors to spaces closed and provide positive seals around cracks, frames, doors and other openings within work areas.
- G. Where exterior closures are required, insulate same to maintain a temperature of sixty-five (65) degrees Fahrenheit within the space without the use of special heating equipment.
- H. All temporary enclosures/partitions/containment barriers shall be periodically inspected and maintained in good repair so as to prevent exposure to dust and contaminants outside the work and/or containment areas.

1.9 WORKER ACCESS BOTH HORIZONTAL AND VERTICAL IN OCCUPIED BUILDINGS

- A. A specific stairwell and/or elevator shall be assigned for construction worker use during work hours. Workers may not use corridors, stairs or elevators designated for students or school staff.

1.10 DEBRIS REMOVAL

- A. Large amounts of debris must be removed by use of enclosed chutes or similar systems. There shall be no movement of debris through corridors of occupied spaces of the building. No materials shall be dropped or thrown outside the walls of the building.
- B. All occupied parts of the building or buildings affected by renovation activity shall be cleaned at the close of each workday.
- C. School buildings occupied during any construction period shall maintain required health, safety and educational capabilities at all times that classes are in session.

1.11 VENTILATION OF WORKSPACES

- A. The General Contractor shall provide indoor air quality management as follows:
  - 1. Provide an exhaust air system for the project indoor areas which could produce fumes, VOC's off-gasses, gasses, dusts, mists, or other emissions both during construction activities and during required curing periods, coordinate with manufacturer's requirements for all materials used.



2. Exhaust air system for the project areas which could produce emissions listed in Paragraph 1 shall be utilized. Work area exhaust shall terminate at the building exterior.
  3. Provide temporary partitions and air seals to prevent the migration of airborne contaminants from unoccupied areas to occupied areas when applicable.
  4. Quality assurance:
    - a. Maintain a negative pressure between the work area and the space surrounding the work area.
    - b. Before start of work, submit a design for the exhaust air system. Do not begin work until approval of the Construction Manager is obtained. The design shall include, but not be limited to:
      1. The number of machines required.
      2. Location of the machines in the workspace.
      3. Description of the methods used to test air flow and pressure differential.
  5. System operation:
    - a. A sufficient quantity of exhaust fans in existing window openings or other approved locations shall be operated in accordance with the following standards:

Provide one workplace air change every 15 minutes.

To calculate total air flow requirements:

$$\frac{\text{TOTAL FT}^3/\text{MIN} - \text{VOLUME OF WORK AREA (IN FT}^3\text{)}}{15 \text{ MINUTES}}$$

To calculate the number of units needed for the work area.

$$\frac{\text{NUMBER OF UNITS NEEDED} - \text{TOTAL FT}^3/\text{MIN}}{(\text{CAPACITY OF UNIT IN FT}^3/\text{MIN})}$$
    - b. Exhaust air system shall operate for a minimum of 72 hours after work is completed, or until all materials have cured sufficiently as to stop out gassing of fumes or odors and area has been ventilated to remove all detectable traces of odors and fumes.
    - c. Maintain 25 feet clearance from all temporary exhaust outlets to all active building outdoor air intakes.
  6. During reroofing operations, air intakes shall be "shut-down" or made safe in other approved manners.
- B. The HVAC Specialty Contractor is to be completely responsible for maintaining all required ventilation in the occupied areas of the building during construction as follows:
1. Prior to construction, the HVAC Specialty contractor will examine the existing ductwork in the occupied areas of the building.
  2. The layout of existing ductwork is shown, to the extent that it was originally documented, on the HVAC drawings.
  3. The HVAC Specialty contractor will reroute, disconnect, or cap any duct, which because of its proximity to the construction area, may carry contaminants from the construction area to the occupied area.

- 4. This alteration of the existing ventilation system must prevent contaminants from entering the occupied areas but must not prevent the maintenance of necessary ventilation in the occupied area.
- C. Additionally, as the HVAC Specialty contractor provides and connects new ductwork it will continue to evaluate the effect of such ducts and connections on contaminant migration. It will reroute, disconnect or cap this ductwork as needed to prevent contaminants from the construction area from entering the occupied section of the building.
- D. At each point in the construction where such evaluation and rerouting, disconnecting or capping is required, the HVAC Specialty contractor will confer with the Architect and Construction Manager (as appropriate) in determining its course of action and will obtain the Architect's approval prior to executing this work."

#### 1.12 EXITING

- A. At all times, the General Contractor is responsible for maintenance of safety and egress requirements from work areas.

NOTE: All legal forms of egress must be maintained at all times.

- B. Provide temporary exit passage system(s) with guard and handrails and ramps and such other measures indicated on the drawings and as specified.

#### 1.13 NO SMOKING – No smoking is permitted on the grounds or within the construction area of any project.

#### 1.14 FIRE EXTINGUISHERS – Fire extinguishers shall be provided within the work area and shall be monitored on a scheduled maintenance basis and so tagged to indicate same.

#### 1.15 SMOKE DETECTORS – The Electrical contractor shall provide a temporary battery powered smoke detection system for all areas under construction.

#### 1.16 FIRE WATCH AND MAINTENANCE OF EXISTING FIRE ALARM SYSTEMS

- A. All Contractors shall comply with the safety provisions of the National Fire Protection Association's "National Fire Codes" pertaining to the work and, particularly, in connection with any cutting or welding performed as part of the work.
- B. During welding or cutting operations, a contractor's man shall act as a fire watcher. The fire watcher shall have proper eye protection and suitable firefighting equipment including fire extinguisher (bearing current inspection Certificate), protective gloves and any other equipment deemed necessary.
- C. The Electrical Specialty Contractor will provide for and maintain the proper operation of fire alarm and smoke detection systems in all areas throughout the course of the project. The Electrical Specialty Contractor will provide all labor and material required to accomplish this in occupied areas of the school buildings and in areas under construction.

#### 1.17 NOISE ABATEMENT PROCEDURES

- A. Develop and maintain a noise abatement program and enforce strict discipline over all personnel to keep noise to a minimum. Equipment and work shall not produce noise in excess of 60db in occupied areas or shall be scheduled for off hours or acoustical abatement procedures shall be

taken. Noise level measurements (dba) shall be taken with a type 2 sound level meter in the occupied space in a location closest to the source of the noise.

- B. Execute construction work by methods and by use of equipment which will reduce excess noise.
- C. Equip air compressors with silencers, and power equipment with mufflers.

1.18 CONSTRUCTION FUME CONTROLS – See Article 1.11 herein.

1.19 OFF-GASSING / BAKE OUT PROCEDURES

- A. Heat all areas of new construction to 95 degrees for a minimum of 72 hours.
- B. At the end of this period ventilate area with 100 percent outside air and exhaust air for a minimum of 24 hours to eliminate off gassing that occurs during bake out period.
- C. Change all air filters upon completion.
- D. Manufacturers shall be contacted to obtain information regarding appropriate temperatures and times needed to cure or ventilate the product during use and before safe occupancy of a space can be assured. Building materials or furnishings which “off-gas” chemical fumes, gases, or other contaminants shall be aired out in well-ventilated heated warehouse before they are brought to the project for installation or the manufacturer’s recommended “off-gassing” periods must be scheduled between installation and use of the space. If the work will generate toxic gases that cannot be contained in an isolated area, the work must be done when school classes and programs are not in session. The building must be properly ventilated, and the material must be given proper time to cure or “off-gas” before re-occupancy.

1.20 MATERIAL SAFETY DATA SHEET LOG

- A. Contractor shall maintain "MSDS" file on site, accessible to workers and otherwise in compliance with jurisdiction's "Right To Know" legislation.
- B. The submittal of the required MSDS information shall be segregated from the required material/shop drawing/sample submittals in a separate binder and not co-mingled with the technical submittals, failure to so conform will be cause for rejection of any submittal.

1.21 ASBESTOS CODE RULE 56 AND ASBESTOS CONTAMINATED MATERIALS (ACM)

- A. Abatement projects as defined by Rule 56 shall not be performed while the building is occupied.
- B. In the event asbestos-contaminated materials are encountered during the work Contractor shall immediately notify the Architect and/or Owner for instructions as to procedures to be taken.
- C. All asbestos abatement projects shall comply with all applicable federal and State laws including but not limited to the New York State Department of Labor industrial code rule 56 (12 NYCRR 56), and the federal Asbestos Hazard Emergency Response Act (AHERA), 40 CFR Part 763 (Code of Federal Regulations, 1998 Edition, Superintendent of Public Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402; 1998; available at the Office of Facilities Planning, Education Building Annex, Room 1060, State Education Department, Albany, New York 12234). Large and small asbestos projects as defined by 12 NYCRR 56 shall not be performed while the building is occupied. Minor asbestos projects defined by 12 NYCRR 56 as an asbestos project involving the removal, disturbance, repair, encapsulation, enclosure or handling of 10 square feet or less of

asbestos or asbestos material, or 25 linear feet or less of asbestos or asbestos material may be performed in unoccupied areas of an occupied building in accordance with the above referenced regulations.

1.22 LEAD ABATEMENT/LEAD PAINT

- A. In the event lead-based paint is encountered during the work Contractor shall immediately notify the Architect and/or Owner for instructions as to procedures to be taken.
- B. Any construction or maintenance operations which will disturb lead-based paint shall be abated pursuant to protocols detailed in the "Guidelines for the Evaluation and Control of Lead-Based Paint Hazards in Housing" (June 1995; U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development, Washington, DC 20410; available at the Office of Facilities Planning, Education Building Annex, Room 1060, State Education Department, Albany, NY 12234). All areas scheduled for construction as well as areas of flaking and peeling paint shall be tested for the presence of lead and abated or encapsulated in accordance with the above noted guidelines

END OF SECTION 011500

SECTION 012100 - ALLOWANCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements governing allowances.
- B. Selected materials and equipment are specified in the Contract Documents by allowances. In some cases, these allowances include installation. Allowances have been established in lieu of additional requirements to defer selection of actual materials and equipment to a later date when additional information is available for evaluation. If necessary, additional requirements will be issued by Change Order.
- C. Types of allowances include the following:
  - 1. Contingency allowances.
  - 2. Quantity allowances.
- D. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
  - 1. Division 1 Section "Modification Procedures" specifies procedures for submitting and handling Change Orders.
  - 2. Division 1 Section "Quality Control Services" specifies procedures governing the use of allowances for inspection and testing.

1.3 SELECTION AND PURCHASE

- A. At the earliest practical date after award of the Contract, advise the Architect of the date when the final selection and purchase of each product or system described by an allowance must be completed to avoid delaying the Work.
- B. At the Architect's request, obtain proposals for each allowance for use in making final selections. Include recommendations that are relevant to performing the Work.
- C. Purchase products and systems selected by the Architect from the designated supplier

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit proposals for purchase of products or systems included in allowances, in the form specified for Change Orders.
- B. Submit invoices or delivery slips to show the actual quantities of materials delivered to the site for use in fulfillment of each allowance.

1.5 CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCES

- A. Use the contingency allowance only as directed for the Owner's purposes and only by Change Orders that indicate amounts to be charged to the allowance.
- B. **The Contractor's overhead and profit, including costs for bonds and insurance, delivery, equipment rental and similar costs, for these allowances shall be included in the values of the general requirements of contract sum and are not chargeable under allowance disbursement.**
- C. At Project closeout, credit unused amounts remaining in the contingency allowance to the Owner by Change Order.

### 1.6 UNUSED MATERIALS

- A. Return unused materials to the manufacturer or supplier for credit to the Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.
  - 1. When requested by the Architect, prepare unused material for storage by Owner where it is not economically practical to return the material for credit. When directed by the Architect, deliver unused material to the Owner's storage space. Otherwise, disposal of unused material is the Contractor's responsibility.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

### PART 3 – EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine products covered by an allowance promptly upon delivery for damage or defects.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate materials and their installation for each allowance with related materials and installations to ensure that each allowance item is completely integrated and interfaced with related work.

#### 3.3 SCHEDULE OF ALLOWANCES

##### **Contract No. 1 – General Construction (GC)**

Allowance GC-1: Contingency Allowance - Contractor shall include a contingency allowance of \$ 50,000.00 for use according to the Owner's Instructions.

Allowance GC-2: VAT Floor tile/mastic - in addition to the base bid abatement work identified on Abatement drawings the Contractor shall include in their base bid an allowance of 250 sf ( 5 ea. 10' x 5' tented areas ) for abatement of any additional Asbestos Floor Tile if encountered.

Allowance GC-3: Asbestos Fittings / Insulation - in addition to the base bid abatement work identified on Abatement drawings the Contractor shall include in their base bid an allowance of 50 lf fittings/ Insulation( Figure individual glove bag removal ) for abatement of any additional Asbestos Fittings / Insulation if encountered.

Allowance GC-4: Asbestos Ceilings - in addition to the base bid abatement work identified on Abatement drawings the Contractor shall include in their base bid an allowance of 500 SF for abatement of any additional Asbestos Plaster Ceiling if encountered.

Allowance GC-5: Unsuitable Soil- Contractor shall include in their base bid an allowance of 20 cy for removal of unsuitable soil material and replace with compacted engineered structural fill

Allowance GC-6: Trench Rock- Contractor shall include in their base bid an allowance of 5 cy trench rock removal and replace with compacted engineered structural fill

Allowance GC-7: LVT Floor Tile- in addition to the base bid flooring work identified on the drawings the Contractor shall include in their base bid an allowance of 500 sf for additional installed LVT Floor Tile ( Includes substrate self level )

Allowance GC-8: Acoustic Ceiling Grid/Tile - in addition to the base bid ceiling work identified on the drawings the Contractor shall include in their base bid an allowance of 500 sf for additional installed acoustic ceiling tile grid

**Contract No. 2 – Mechanical Construction (MC)**

Allowance MC-1: Contingency Allowance - Contractor shall include a contingency allowance of \$ 15,000.00 for use according to the Owner's Instructions.

**Contract No. 3 – Electrical Construction (EC)**

Allowance EC-1: Contingency Allowance- Contractor shall include a contingency allowance of \$ 45,000.00 for use according to the Owner's Instructions.

Allowance EC-2 Access Control Devices - In addition to the base bid card access devices indicated, Contractor shall include in their base bid an additional allowance of 5 ea additional devices supply, install & commission as per the specifications.

Allowance EC-3 PA Speakers – In addition to the base bid PA speaker devices indicated, Contractor shall include in their base bid an additional allowance of 5 ea additional Speakers supply , install & commission as per the specifications.

Allowance EC-4: Security Cameras In addition to the base bid security cameras indicated, Contractor shall include in their base bid an additional allowance of 5 ea security cameras supply, install & commission as per the specifications.

Allowance EC-5: ¾" EMT / Cat 6 Security Cabling In addition to the base bid raceway with security cabling indicated, Contractor shall include in their base bid an additional allowance of 500 lf of ¾" EMT with Cat 6 security cabling supply, install & commission as per the specifications

Allowance EC-6: 700 Wiremold / Cat 6 Security Cabling In addition to the base bid raceway with security cabling indicated, Contractor shall include in their base bid an additional allowance of 500 lf of new 700 Wiremold with Cat 6 security cabling supply, install & commission as per the specifications

**Contract No. 4 – Window Construction Work (WC)**

Allowance WC-1: Contingency Allowance- Contractor shall include a contingency allowance of \$30,000.00 for use according to the Owner's Instructions.

Allowance WC-2 Steel Lintel Replacement - In addition to the base bid Steel Lintel replacement indicated, Contractor shall include in their base bid an additional allowance of (5 ea. 10' lintels) to remove existing lintel with asbestos containing rust inhibitor or waterproofing tar paper behind and replace with new lintel for any areas which may be encountered as per Section 053100 – Steel

Allowance WC-3 Masonry Repointing – In addition to the base bid masonry work, Contractor shall include in their base bid an additional allowance of 500 sf to remove deteriorated masonry mortar and repoint with new as per specification.

Allowance WC-4 Brick Replacement – In addition to the base bid masonry work, Contractor shall include in their base bid an additional allowance of 250 sf to remove deteriorated brick and replace with new as per masonry details.

Allowance WC-5: Asbestos Containing Caulking - In addition to the base bid abatement work identified on Abatement drawings the Contractor shall include in their base bid an allowance of 100 LF ACM caulking for abatement of any additional Asbestos caulking if encountered.

END OF SECTION 01200

SECTION 012200 - UNIT PRICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. This Section specifies the requirements for measurements and records made for payment purposes and describes the item(s) under which payment(s) will be made for the Work performed under this Contract.
- B. All work shown or specified in the Contract Documents shall be performed.
- C. Items not specified to be measured or paid for (for which no specific pay item exists in the Price Schedule) shall be included in an appropriate unit price item or in a lump-sum item.

1.2 MEASUREMENT REQUIREMENTS

- A. All required measurements shall be made by the Contractor with the Architect and Construction Manager.
- B. Any measurements not witnessed by Architect and Construction Manager and which cannot be verified or substantiated will not be approved and payment under the item(s) requiring such measurements will not be made.
- C. Coordinate measurements monthly, for the preparation of periodic pay estimates.
- D. Where payments will be made for removing rock and existing materials, notify Architect so that he may witness the measurements.
  - 1. All materials removed without conforming to the above procedures, which Engineer cannot verify or substantiate, will not be paid for.
  - 2. Maintain complete, neat, clean, and legible field notes for all measured items.
  - 3. Notes shall contain spaces for Contractor's and Architect's signatures plus additional space for comments.
  - 4. An original and a carbon copy shall be made for all notes and one copy shall be turned over to Construction Manager daily.
  - 5. The Construction managers signature shall not be constituted as an acceptance of the work, or the measurements made, but shall mean that he was present when the measurements were made.
  - 6.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013300.
- B. Field notes of all measurements for payment purposes delivered to the Construction Manager daily.
- C. Copies of all invoices required for payments out of cash allowance(s).
- D. Monthly Applications for Payment.
- E. Record Drawings showing the locations and quantities of all items measured for payment purposes.

1.4 SCHEDULING

- A. Notify Construction Manager, as far in advance as possible, of the recording of measurements so that they may observe existing conditions, work being performed, and measurements being made.
- B. Allow for and afford Construction Manager ample time, space, and equipment to observe measurements and to verify measurements and elevations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

- A. Provide all labor, materials, facilities, levels, measuring devices and all other equipment and items necessary to properly and accurately perform all measurements for payment purposes.



- B. Payment for certain items not specifically listed in the bid forms but otherwise required by the technical specifications shall be deemed included as part of the General Conditions and the individual unit price and lump sum bid items provided for in the proposal. (material handling, delivery, overhead, profit, etc.)

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 GENERAL

Perform all measuring required under this Section.

- A. Record all measurements and calculated quantities on the Record Drawings.
- B. No measurement shall be made for work performed within the limits of Lump Sum Items.

#### 3.2 UNIT PRICE SCHEDULE

##### **Contract No. 1 – General Construction (GC)**

Unit Price GC No. 1: Abatement of ACM Floor Tile & Mastic (VAT)

- a. Description : abatement of ACM Floor Tile & mastic ( VAT ) to be used as an add or deduct from base bid quantities ( tented areas)
- b. Unit of Measurement : per square foot (SF) of VAT

Unit Price GC No. 2: Abatement of ACM Fittings/Insulation

- a. Description : Supply & install all material and labor for abatement of ACM fittings ( individual glove bag) or insulation to be used as an add or deduct from base bid quantities
- b. Unit of Measurement : per linear foot of elbow or insulation

Unit Price GC No. 3: Abatement of ACM Ceiling using a full containment as per code rule 56

- a. Description : Supply & install all material and labor for ceiling abatement to be used as an add or deduct from base bid quantities
- b. Unit of Measurement : per square foot

Unit Price GC No. 4: Unsuitable Soil

- a. Description : Supply & install all material, labor and equipment to remove dispose of unsuitable soil and replace with compacted engineered structural fill
- b. Unit of Measurement : per cubic yard in place

Unit Price GC No. 5: Trench Rock

- a. Description : Supply & install all material, labor and equipment to remove trench rock and replace with compacted engineered structural fill.
- b. Unit of Measurement : per cubic yard in place

Unit Price GC No. 6: LVT Floor Tile

- a. Description : Supply & install all material and labor for LVT Floor Tile/ adhesive to be used as an add or deduct from base bid quantities.
- b. Unit of Measurement : per square foot

Unit Price GC No. 7: Acoustic Ceiling Grid/Tile

- a. Description : Supply & install all material and labor for Acoustic Ceiling Grid/Tile to be used as an add or deduct from base bid quantities.
- b. Unit of Measurement : per square foot.

**Contract No. 2 – Mechanical Construction (MC)**

NONE

**Contract No. 3 – Electrical Construction (EC)**

Unit Price EC No. 1: Access Control Devices

- a. Description : Access Control Devices supply, install & commission to be used as an add or deduct from base bid quantities
- b. Unit of Measurement : each

Unit Price EC No. 2: PA Speaker

- a. Description : PA Speaker supply, install & commission to be used as an add or deduct from base bid quantities
- b. Unit of Measurement : each

Unit Price EC No. 3: Security Camera

- a. Description : Security Camera supply, install & commission to be used as an add or deduct from base bid quantities
- b. Unit of Measurement : each

Unit Price EC No. 4: ¾" EMT/ Cat 6 Security Cabling

- a. Description : ¾" EMT Raceway with Security Cabling supply, install & commission to be used as an add or deduct from base bid quantities
- b. Unit of Measurement : per Linear Foot

Unit Price EC No. 5: 700 Wiremold / Cat 6 Security Cabling

- a. Description : 700 Wiremold with Security Cabling supply, install & commission to be used as an add or deduct from base bid quantities
- b. Unit of Measurement : per Linear Foot

**Contract No. 4 – Window Construction Work (WC)**

Unit Price WC No. 1: Steel Lintel Replacement

- a. Description : abatement of existing lintel assembly with asbestos containing rust inhibitor and waterproofing tar paper behind and replace with new steel lintels per specification to be used as an add or deduct from base bid quantities
- b. Unit of Measurement : per 10 LF lintel each

Unit Price WC No. 2: Masonry Repointing

- a. Description: Provide all material, equipment and labor to remove deteriorated masonry prepare/replace with new repointed mortar as per specification to be used as an add or deduct from base bid quantities
- b. Unit of measurement: per square foot

Unit Price WC No. 3: Brick Replacement

- a. Description: Provide all material, equipment and labor to remove deteriorated masonry brick and replace with new as per masonry details. to be used as an add or deduct from base bid quantities
- b. Unit of measurement: per square foot

Unit Price WC No. 4: Abatement of ACM Caulking using a field fabricated tent enclosure as per code rule 56

- a. Description : Supply & install all material and labor for ACM caulking abatement to be used as an add or deduct from base bid quantities
- b. Unit of Measurement : per linear foot

END OF SECTION 012200

SECTION 012300 - ALTERNATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Submission procedures.
- B. Documentation of changes to Contract Sum/Price and Contract Time.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Proposal Form.
- B. Other sections referencing this section.
- C. All contractual requirements are outlined in the documents.

1.3 SUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Submit Alternates on Proposal Forms identifying the effect on adjacent or related components.
- B. Alternates will be reviewed and accepted or rejected at the Owner's option.
- C. Coordinate related work and modify surrounding work to integrate the Work of each Alternate.

1.4 SELECTION AND AWARD OF ALTERNATES

- A. Indicate variation of Bid Price for Alternates listed on the PROPOSAL FORM. This form requests a "difference" in Bid Price by adding to or deducting from the base Bid Price.
- B. Alternates quoted on PROPOSAL FORM will be reviewed and accepted or rejected at Owner's option.
- C. Accepted alternates will be identified in Owner-Contractor Agreement.
- D. Bids will be evaluated on the base bid price, plus any combination of alternate items.

1.5 WORK FOR ALTERNATES

- A. Work for alternate items selected shall include all related materials, labor, equipment and operations necessary to conduct and complete the alternate work and all other affected work or adjacent areas.
- B. There shall be no change in time or completion date for the selected alternates, unless specified herein or approved in writing by the Architect/Engineer and Owner.
- C. Alternates and associated work shall meet all standards and specifications delineated in the Contract Documents.

- D. Contractor shall coordinate pertinent related Work and modify surrounding Work as required to complete the project under each alternate selected by the Owner.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

Not Used

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

- A. Work for each alternate, related items and collateral work shall be completed in their entirety.
- B. If alternate items are not selected, work for the base bid and collateral work shall be completed in their entirety.
- C. Schedule of Alternates

### 3.1 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES

#### **Contract No. 1 – General Construction (GC)**

ALTERNATE GC-1: Greenvale Elementary - ADD – Front Entry Exterior Stair replacement. Include all material and labor to remove existing front entrance stairs, replace with new concrete footings / stairs, granite treads/risers and steel handrails, etc.

ALTERNATE GC-2: Eastchester Middle School - ADD – Front Parking lot replacement. Include all material and labor to remove existing front parking lot pavement and sub- base. Replace with new fabric, subbase, asphalt striping, concrete ramp and salvaged pavers, etc. ( The High School loop work and entrance remains base bid and is not part of this alternate )

END OF SECTION 012300

SECTION 012500 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Requests for changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those indicated in the Contract Documents, submitted following Contract award.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Document 002600 "Procurement Substitution Procedures" for requirements for substitution requests submitted prior to receipt of bids.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
  - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit documentation identifying product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
  - 1. Substitution Request Form: Use form provided in Project Manual.
  - 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
    - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.
    - b. Coordination of information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
    - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
    - d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
    - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
    - f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
    - g. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses as well as names and addresses of architects and owners.
    - h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency, indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
    - i. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified

- product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
  - j. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
  - k. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
  - l. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor through Construction Manager of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within fifteen (15) business days of receipt of request, or ten (10) business days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
- a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

#### 1.5 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

#### 1.6 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than fifteen (15) business days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.
- 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
  - a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
  - b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
  - c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
  - d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
  - f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
  - g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
  - h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- B. Substitutions for Convenience: Architect will consider requests for substitution if received within 60 (sixty) days after the Notice to Proceed. Requests received after that time may be considered or rejected at discretion of Architect.

1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
  - a. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
  - b. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
  - c. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
  - d. Requested substitution does not change the specified product's appearance, performance, or design intent in any way.
  - e. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
  - f. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
  - g. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - h. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
  - i. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
  - j. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
  - k. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
2. Architect reserves the right to reject the Contractor's request for substitutions for convenience without explanation if the Architect feels the requested substitution does not meet the design intent of the Contract Documents.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012500



SUBSTITUTION REQUEST FORM

SPECIFICATION SECTION	SPECIFIED ITEM	SUBSTITUTION

REFERENCED DRAWING	SPECIFIED ITEM	SUBSTITUTION

THE UNDERSIGNED REQUESTS CONSIDERATION OF THE FOLLOWING SUBSTITUTION:

Attached data shall include in a tabular format to provide a line-by-line comparison - product description, specifications, drawings, photographs, performance and laboratory tests and the like with applicable portions of said data clearly identified.

FURTHER, THE PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION WILL (OR WILL NOT) AFFECT:

Dimensions indicated on the drawings? \_\_\_\_\_

Wiring, piping, ductwork, or other building services indicated on the drawings? \_\_\_\_\_

Other trades and abutting or interconnection work? \_\_\_\_\_

Manufacturer's guarantees and warranties? \_\_\_\_\_

The construction schedule? \_\_\_\_\_

Maintenance and service parts locally available? \_\_\_\_\_

(NOTE - If Substitution WILL affect any item above, explain in detail.)

THE UNDERSIGNED AGREES TO PAY FOR:

1. Any and all changes to the building design including structural, site/civil, mechanical, electrical, plumbing or technology systems (if any), detailing; and
2. Any and all additional construction costs caused by the requested substitution.

THE UNDERSIGNED FURTHER STATES THAT THE FUNCTION, APPEARANCE AND QUALITY OF THE PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION ARE EQUIVALENT OR SUPERIOR TO THE SPECIFIED ITEM.

SUBMITTED BY

DATE:	
BY:	
PRIME CONTRACT NUMBER:	
PRIME CONTRACT NAME:	

ARCHITECT/ENGINEER ACTION

DATE:	
BY:	
ACTION:	
REMARKS:	

END OF SECTION 012501

## SECTION 012600 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications. Provisions of this Section apply to the work of each prime contractor.

#### 1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- A. Architect will issue through Construction Manager supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710.

#### 1.4 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: The Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that will require adjustment to the Contract Sum or Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.

1. Proposal requests issued by the Architect are for information only. Do not consider them as an instruction either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
  2. Within 7 days of receipt of a proposal request, submit an estimate of cost necessary to execute the change to the Architect for the Owner's review.
    - a. Include an itemized list of quantities of products required and unit costs, with the total amount of purchases to be made. Furnish survey data and backup invoices, quotes paperwork to substantiate.
    - b. Separate labor hours by trade and indicate labor rate. (Submit attached labor rate worksheet notarized for each trade / classification.)
    - c. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
    - d. Include an updated Contractors Construction Schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including but not limited to; changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available float before requesting an extension of contract time.
- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: When latent or unforeseen conditions require modifications to the Contract, the Contractor may propose changes by submitting a request for a change to the Architect.
1. Include a statement outlining the reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and Contract Time.
  2. Include an itemized list of quantities of products required and unit costs, with the total amount of purchases to be made. Furnish survey data to substantiate quantities. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts. Include labor rate breakdown sheets for each trade.
  3. Comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for a product or system specified.
  4. Include an updated Contractors Construction Schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including but not limited to; changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available float before requesting an extension of contract time.

1.5 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on AIA Document G733-2019. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
  - 1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.
  - 1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

1.6 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. On Owner's approval of a Work Change Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on AIA Document G731-2019.
- B. Contractor cannot requisition for any allowance or change order work until the paperwork has been fully executed by the Contractor, CM, Architect and Owner.
- C. Requests for changes in bond fees, if any, will be analyzed at the conclusion of the project. Contractors bonding company to submit substantiation. (Bond amount based on total adjusted contract value)

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012600



**Arris Contracting Company, Inc.**  
**189 Smith Street**  
**Poughkeepsie, NY 12601**

**LABOR RATE WORKSHEET**

Project No. \_\_\_\_\_

Contractor Name: _____		County: _____		Date: _____	
Address: _____					
Telephone Number: _____					
Trade: _____ (Provide separate sheet for each trade, foreman/journeyman, etc.)				REGULAR BASE RATE	PREMIUM TIME BASE RATE
<b>A. WAGE RATE PER HOUR</b>					
BENEFITS ( * Identifies benefits paid directly to the Employee.)	*	% per hour	\$ per hour		
Vacation and Holiday					
Health and Welfare					
Pension					
Annuity					
Education / Apprentice Training					
Supplemental Unemployment					
Security Fund					
Industry Advancement					
UBC-Appr., Health, Safety, Educ.					
Labor Management Fund					
<b>B. TOTAL BENEFITS PER HOUR</b>					
<b>PAYROLL TAXES AND INSURANCE</b>					
F.I.C.A. / Social Security (up to the maximum required by law)			%		
Medicare			%		
Federal Unemployment (up to a maximum of \$56.00 per employee per year)			%		
State Unemployment (up to 1st \$8,500 of base salary paid per employee per year)			%		
Workers' Compensation Code: _____			%		
Disability			%		
<b>C. TOTAL TAXES AND INSURANCE PER HOUR</b>					
All Benefits are paid directly to Employee. _____ x _____ % =					
Only benefits identified by * are paid directly to Employee.					
<b>D. TOTAL LABOR RATE</b>				<b>( A + B + C ) =</b>	
<b>E. DOCUMENTATION</b>					
For General Liability and Workers Compensation, provide policy renewal page from insurance carrier (with contractor name, address, and insurance agent) for substantiation purposes.					
<b>F. CONTRACTOR'S CERTIFICATION</b>					
I certify that the labor rates, insurance enumerations, labor fringe enumerations and expenses are correct and in accordance with actual and true cost incurred.					
Signature _____			Sworn before me this _____ day		
Print Name of Authorized Representative _____			of _____, 20 _____.		
Print Title _____			Notary Public _____		

SECTION 012900 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

1.4 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.

1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
2. Correlate line items in the Schedule of Values with other required administrative schedules and forms, including:
  - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule
  - b. Application for Payment forms, including Continuation Sheets
  - c. List of subcontractors
  - d. Schedule of allowances
  - e. Schedule of alternates
  - f. Schedule of submittals
3. Submit the Schedule of Values to the Construction Manager within 10 days of receipt of Letter of Intent but no later than 10 days before the date scheduled for submittal of the initial Applications for Payment. (SOV's received after the 15th of the month, will not be allowed to requisition until the following month, due to input time for CM & Owner into their computer systems.

- B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.

1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:
  - a. Project name and location.
  - b. Owner's name.
  - c. Owner's Project number.
  - d. Name of Architect.
  - e. Architect's Project number.
  - f. Contractor's name and address.
  - g. Date of submittal.
2. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format of AIA Document G703.
3. Arrange the schedule of values in tabular form, with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:
  - a. Related Specification Section or division.

- b. Description of the Work.
- c. Name of subcontractor.
- d. Name of manufacturer or fabricator.
- e. Name of supplier.
- f. Change Orders (numbers) that affect value.
- g. Dollar value of the following, as a percentage of the Contract Sum to nearest one-hundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent.
  - 1) Labor.
  - 2) Materials.
  - 3) Equipment.
- 4. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in sufficient detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Coordinate with the Project Manual table of contents. Break principal subcontract amounts down into several line items where requested by Construction Manager. Multiple line items will be provided for amounts in excess of five percent of the contract sum, broken out into sub-components equaling not greater than five percent each. Separate all line items by material & labor.
  - a. Breakdown shall be separated between additions and renovations with subtotals for each.
- 5. In addition to the breakdown of specification sections, separate line items will be required for the following front-end line items:
  - a. Bonds & OCP insurances to have separate line items. (Substantiation letters required from bonding & insurance company for any amounts higher than industry standard). Only OCP insurance allowed for insurance line item. All other insurance costs must be distributed by contractor throughout the various sections.
  - b. Supervision - include a minimum of one percent of contract sum.
  - c. Project Administration - include a minimum of one percent of contract sum.
  - d. Project meetings (appropriate value for weekly attendance for entire duration of project - see Section 013119 for amount)
  - e. Punchlist - include a minimum of .5 percent of contract sum
  - f. Closeout: separate lines for demobilization, Operation & maintenance manuals, closeout paperwork, demonstration & training (total for closeout minimum two percent of contract value)
  - g. Continuous Clean-up and Final Clean-up values each at minimum of .5%
  - h. General Contractor to add line item for Broom sweep/damp mopping
- 6. Round amounts to nearest whole dollar; the total shall equal the Contract Sum.
- 7. Provide a separate line item in the Schedule of Values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment, purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
  - a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site. Include requirements for insurance and bonded warehousing.
- 8. Provide separate line items on the Schedule of Values for initial cost of the materials, for each subsequent stage of completion, and for total installed value of that part of the Work.
- 9. Unit-Cost Allowances: Show the line-item value of unit-cost allowances, as a product of the unit cost, multiplied by the measured quantity. Estimate quantities from the best indication in the Contract Documents.
- 10. Margins of Cost: Show line items for indirect costs and margins on actual costs only when such items are listed individually in Applications for Payment. Each item in the Schedule of Values and Applications for Payment shall be complete. Include the total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit margin for each item.
  - a. Temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place may be shown either as separate line items in the Schedule of Values or distributed as general overhead expense, at the Contractor's option.
- 11. Schedule Updating: Update and resubmit the Schedule of Values prior to the next Applications for Payment when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum.

1.5 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments, as certified by Architect and Construction Manager and paid for by Owner.
  - 1. The initial Application for Payment, the Application for Payment at time of Substantial Completion, and the final Application for Payment involve additional requirements.
- B. Payment Application Times: Submit Application for Payment to Architect by the twentieth day of the month. The period covered by each Application for Payment is one month, ending on the last day of the month.
  - 1. Submit draft copy of Application for Payment seven days prior to due date for review by Architect.
- C. Application for Payment Forms: Use AIA Document G732 and AIA Document G703 as form for Applications for Payment.
- D. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Construction Manager will return incomplete applications without action.
  - 1. Entries shall match data on the Schedule of Values and the Contractor's Construction Schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
  - 2. Include amounts of Change Orders and Allowances issued prior to the last day of the construction period covered by the application. (No Change Order or Allowance requisitions can be made or listed on the requisition, unless the formal CO/AD paperwork has been fully executed by Contractor, Construction Manager, Architect and Owner).
  - 3. Provide copies of payrolls which are signed and notarized documenting compliance with prevailing wage laws. Payroll for contractors is required from the 25th of the previous month to the 24th of the current month. Payroll for subcontractors is required from the 15th of the previous month to the 14th of the current month.
  - 4. Provide copies of lien waivers for the previous payment (or anticipated payment). Include certificate of monthly payment for subcontractors for the previous month.
  - 5. Provide OSHA 10 certificates for all workers on site.
  - 6. Payment for stored materials (whether onsite but not installed, or offsite in a secured warehouse) will require a bill of lading showing the exact value and photographs. In no case shall more than 90% be approved for uninstalled stored materials. An Insurance certificate must be provided, specific to the materials stored with the appropriate dollar value (for onsite or offsite materials).
- E. Stored Materials: Include in Application for Payment amounts applied for materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
  - 1. Provide certificate of insurance, evidence of transfer of title to Owner, and consent of surety to payment for stored materials.
  - 2. Provide supporting documentation that verifies amount requested, such as paid invoices. Match amount requested with amounts indicated on documentation; do not include overhead and profit on stored materials.
  - 3. Provide summary documentation for stored materials indicating the following:
    - a. Value of materials previously stored and remaining stored as of date of previous Applications for Payment.
    - b. Value of previously stored materials put in place after date of previous Application for Payment and on or before date of current Application for Payment.
    - c. Value of materials stored since date of previous Application for Payment and remaining stored as of date of current Application for Payment.



- F. Transmittal: Submit one digital copy, using blue ink signatures and digital notarization, of each Application for Payment to Construction Manager by a method ensuring receipt within 24 hours. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
  - 1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application, in a manner acceptable to the Architect and Construction Manager.
- G. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's lien from subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, and suppliers for construction period covered by the previous application.
  - 1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
  - 2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers.
  - 3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
  - 4. Submit final Application for Payment with or preceded by conditional final waivers from every entity involved with performance of the Work covered by the application who is lawfully entitled to a lien.
  - 5. Waiver Forms: Submit executed waivers of lien on forms acceptable to Owner.
- H. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
  - 1. List of subcontractors.
  - 2. List of principal suppliers and fabricators.
  - 3. Schedule of values.
  - 4. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
  - 5. Combined Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final) incorporating Work of multiple contracts, with indication of acceptance of schedule by each Contractor.
  - 6. Products list (preliminary if not final).
  - 7. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
  - 8. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
  - 9. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
  - 10. Copies of building permits.
  - 11. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
  - 12. Initial progress report.
  - 13. Report of preconstruction conference.
  - 14. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
  - 15. Performance and payment bonds.
  - 16. Data needed to acquire Owner's insurance.
- I. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
  - 1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
    - a. Complete administrative actions, submittals, and Work preceding this application, as described in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."
  - 2. This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
  - 3. Administrative actions and submittals that shall precede or coincide with this application include:
    - a. Occupancy permits and similar approvals.
    - b. Warranties (guarantees) and maintenance agreements.
    - c. Test/adjust/balance records.

- d. Maintenance instructions.
  - e. Meter readings.
  - f. Startup performance reports.
  - g. Changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
  - h. Final cleaning.
  - i. Application for reduction of retainage and consent of surety.
  - j. Advice on shifting insurance coverages.
  - k. Final progress photographs.
  - l. List of incomplete Work recognized as exceptions to Architect's Certificate of Substantial Completion.
- J. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
- 1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
  - 2. Certification of completion of final punch list items.
  - 3. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
  - 4. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
  - 5. AIA Document G706.
  - 6. AIA Document G706A.
  - 7. AIA Document G707.
  - 8. Evidence that claims have been settled.
  - 9. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
  - 10. Final liquidated damages settlement statement.
  - 11. Proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations are paid.
  - 12. Waivers and releases.
  - 13. Removal of temporary facilities and services.
  - 14. Removal of surplus materials, rubbish, and similar elements.
  - 15. Change of door locks to Owner's access.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 No retainage release will be approved by owner until all closeout documents (Closeout paperwork, as-builts, O & M manuals, AIA release forms, warranties, material turnover receipts, etc.) are received and verified complete.

END OF SECTION 012900

SECTION 013100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. General coordination procedures.
  - 2. Coordination drawings.
  - 3. RFIs.
  - 4. Digital project management procedures.
  - 5. Web-based Project management software package.
  - 6. Project meetings.

- B. Each contractor shall participate in coordination requirements. Certain areas of responsibility are assigned to a specific contractor.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BIM: Building Information Modeling.
- B. RFI: Request for Information. Request from Owner, Construction Manager, Architect, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Subcontract List: Included in Bid Form:
  - 1. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
  - 2. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
- B. Key Personnel Names: Within 15 days of starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses, cellular telephone numbers, and e-mail addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as alternates in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.
  - 1. Post copies of list in Project meeting room, in temporary field office, in web-based Project software directory, and in prominent location in each built facility. Keep list current at all times.

1.5 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination of Multiple Contracts: Each Contractor shall cooperate with Project coordinator, who shall coordinate its construction operations with those of other contractors and entities to ensure efficient

and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Each Contractor shall coordinate its own operations with operations included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results, where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
  2. Coordinate installation of different components with other contractors to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
  3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate Contractors if coordination of their Work is required.
- C. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities and scheduled activities of other contractors and direction of Project coordinator to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
  3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
  4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
  5. Progress meetings.
  6. Preinstallation conferences.
  7. Project closeout activities.
  8. Startup and adjustment of systems.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely indicated on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.
1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.
    - b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to coordination drawings by multiple contractors in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before submitting for review.
    - c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.

- d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
- e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
- f. Indicate required installation sequences.
- g. Indicate dimensions shown on Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternative sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.

B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:

- 1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
- 2. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within plenums to accommodate layout of light fixtures and other components indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
- 3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms, showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
- 4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
- 5. Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
- 6. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:
  - a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
  - b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
  - c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
- 7. Electrical Work: Show the following:
  - a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
  - b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other fire-alarm locations.
  - c. Panel board, switchboard, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor-control center locations.
  - d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center lines.
- 8. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that, in general, the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Architect determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Architect will so inform Contractor, who shall make suitable modifications and resubmit.
- 9. Coordination Drawing Prints: Prepare coordination drawing prints according to requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."

C. Coordination Drawing Process: Prepare coordination drawings in the following manner:

1. Schedule submittal and review of Fire Sprinkler, Plumbing, HVAC, and Electrical Shop Drawings to make required changes prior to preparation of coordination drawings.
2. Commence routing of coordination drawing files with HVAC Installer, who will provide drawing plan files denoting approved ductwork. HVAC Installer will locate ductwork and piping on a single layer, using orange color. Forward drawings to Plumbing Installer.
3. Plumbing Installer will locate plumbing and equipment on a single layer, using blue color.
4. Electrical Installer will indicate service and feeder conduit runs and equipment in green color. Electrical Installer shall forward drawing files to Communications and Electronic Safety and Security Installer.
5. Communications and Electronic Safety and Security Installer will indicate cable trays and cabling runs and equipment in purple color. Communications and Electronic Safety and Security Installer shall forward completed drawing files to Contractor.
6. Contractor shall perform the final coordination review. As each coordination drawing is completed, Contractor will meet with Architect to review and resolve conflicts on the coordination drawings.

D. Coordination Digital Data Files: Prepare coordination digital data files according to the following requirements:

1. File Preparation Format:
  - a. DWG , Version 2020 , operating in Microsoft Windows operating system.
2. File Submittal Format: Submit or post coordination drawing files using format same as file preparation format and PDF format.
3. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of Drawings for use in preparing coordination digital data files.
  - a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Drawings.
  - b. Digital Data Software Program: Drawings are available in AutoCAD 2020 format.
  - c. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of AIA Document C106 .

1.7 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.

1. Architect will return without response those RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor.
2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.

B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:

1. Project name.
2. Owner name.
3. Owner's Project number.
4. Name of Architect and Construction Manager.
5. Architect's Project number.

6. Date.
  7. Name of Contractor.
  8. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
  9. RFI subject.
  10. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
  11. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  12. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
  13. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
  14. Contractor's signature.
  15. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
    - a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.
- C. RFI Forms: AIA Document G716 .
1. Attachments shall be electronic files in PDF format.
- D. Architect's and Construction Manager's Action: Architect and Construction Manager will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect or Construction Manager after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
    - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
    - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
    - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
    - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
    - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
    - f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
    - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
  2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt by Architect or Construction Manager of additional information.
  3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures."
    - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect and Construction Manager in writing within 5 days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log weekly. Use software log that is part of web-based Project management software. Include the following:
1. Project name.

2. Name and address of Contractor.
3. Name and address of Architect and Construction Manager.
4. RFI number, including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.
5. RFI description.
6. Date the RFI was submitted.
7. Date Architect's and Construction Manager's response was received.
8. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.

- F. On receipt of Architect's and Construction Manager's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect and Construction Manager within three days if Contractor disagrees with response.

#### 1.8 DIGITAL PROJECT MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES

- A. Use of Architect's Digital Data Files: Digital data files of Architect's CAD drawings will be provided by Architect for Contractor's use during construction.

1. Digital data files may be used by Contractor in preparing coordination drawings, Shop Drawings, and Project Record Drawings.
2. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Contract Drawings.
3. Digital Drawing Software Program: Contract Drawings are available in AutoCAD 2020 format.
4. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of AIA Document C106 Digital Data Licensing Agreement.
  - a. Subcontractors and other parties granted access by Contractor to Architect's digital data files shall also execute a data licensing agreement in the form of AIA Document C106 .
5. The following digital data files will be furnished for each appropriate discipline:
  - a. Floor plans.
  - b. Reflected ceiling plans.

- B. Web-Based Project Management Software Package: Use Construction Manager's web-based Project management software package for purposes of hosting and managing Project communication and documentation until Final Completion.

1. Web-based Project management software includes, at a minimum, the following features:
  - a. Compilation of Project data, including Contractor, subcontractors, Architect, Architect's consultants, Owner, and other entities involved in Project. Include names of individuals and contact information.
  - b. Access control for each entity for each workflow process, to determine entity's digital rights to create, modify, view, and print documents.
  - c. Document workflow planning, allowing customization of workflow between project entities.
  - d. Creation, logging, tracking, and notification for Project communications required in other Specification Sections, including, but not limited to, RFIs, submittals, Minor Changes in the Work, Construction Change Directives, and Change Orders.
  - e. Track status of each Project communication in real time, and log time and date when responses are provided.



- f. Procedures for handling PDFs or similar file formats, allowing markups by each entity. Provide security features to lock markups against changes once submitted.
  - g. Processing and tracking of payment applications.
  - h. Processing and tracking of contract modifications.
  - i. Creating and distributing meeting minutes.
  - j. Document management for Drawings, Specifications, and coordination drawings, including revision control.
  - k. Management of construction progress photographs.
  - l. Mobile device compatibility, including smartphones and tablets.
- C. PDF Document Preparation: Where PDFs are required to be submitted to Architect, prepare as follows:
- 1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file, incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
  - 2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
  - 3. Certifications: Where digitally submitted certificates and certifications are required, provide a digital signature with digital certificate on where indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013100

SECTION 013119 - PROJECT MEETINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements for project meetings, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Preconstruction conferences.
  - 2. Preinstallation conferences.
  - 3. Progress meetings.
  - 4. Coordination meetings.
- B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
  - 1. Division 1 Section "Coordination" for procedures for coordinating project meetings with other construction activities.
  - 2. Division 1 Section "Submittals" for submitting the Contractor's Construction Schedule.

1.3 PRECONSTRUCTION CONFERENCE

- A. A preconstruction conference will be scheduled before starting construction, at a time convenient to the Owner, Construction Manager and the Architect, but no later than 15 days after issuance of the Letter of Intent. The conference will be held at the Project Site or another convenient location.
- B. Attendees: Authorized representatives of the Construction Manager, Owner, Architect, and their consultants; the Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; manufacturers; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. All participants at the conference shall be familiar with the Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
- C. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
  - 1. Tentative construction schedule.
  - 2. Critical work sequencing.
  - 3. Designation of responsible personnel.
  - 4. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
  - 5. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
  - 6. Distribution of Contract Documents.
  - 7. Submittal of Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples.
  - 8. Preparation of record documents.
  - 9. Use of the premises.
  - 10. Parking availability.

11. Office, work, and storage areas
12. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
13. Safety procedures.
14. First aid.
15. Security.
16. Housekeeping.
17. Working hours.

D. Reporting: CM shall prepare and issue minutes to attendees and interested parties.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION CONFERENCES

- A. Conduct a pre-installation conference at the Project Site before each construction activity that requires coordination with other construction.
- B. Attendees: The Installer and representatives of the Prime Contractor, manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation, and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise the Construction Manager and Architect of scheduled meeting dates.

1. Review the progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration at each pre-installation conference, including requirements for the following:

- a. Contract Documents.
- b. Options.
- c. Related Change Orders.
- d. Purchases.
- e. Deliveries.
- f. Shop Drawings, Product Data, and quality-control samples.
- g. Review of mockups.
- h. Possible conflicts.
- i. Compatibility problems.
- j. Time schedules.
- k. Weather limitations.
- l. Manufacturer's recommendations.
- m. Warranty requirements.
- n. Compatibility of materials.
- o. Acceptability of substrates.
- p. Temporary facilities.
- q. Space and access limitations.
- r. Governing regulations.
- s. Safety.
- t. Inspecting and testing requirements.
- u. Required performance results.
- v. Recording requirements
- w. Protection.

2. Record significant discussions and agreements and disagreements of each conference and the approved schedule. Promptly distribute the record of the meeting to everyone concerned,

- including the Owner and the Architect.
3. Do not proceed with the installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of Work and reconvene the conference at the earliest feasible date.
  4. Reporting: Prime Contractor or Installer shall issue minutes to attendees, CM, Owner and Architect.

#### 1.5 PROGRESS MEETINGS

- A. Progress meetings will be held at the Project Site at regular intervals (typically weekly) as determined by the Construction Manager.
- B. Attendees: In addition to representatives of the Owner, Construction Manager, and the Architect, each Prime Contractor shall be represented at these meetings. Attendance is mandatory at meetings and contractor will include in their bid a sum of \$250.00 per meeting (figure 35 meetings) to have an authorized individual in attendance capable of making decisions and providing direction. This amount will be listed as a separate line item on the contractors Schedule of Values. If the contractor misses a meeting without prior written authorization from the Construction Manager, they will be issued a deduct change order in the amount of \$250.00 per occurrence. Subcontractors, suppliers, or other entities will be invited at the discretion of the Owner, Construction Manager, and the Architect. All participants at the conference shall be familiar with the Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
- C. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to the status of the Project.
  1. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine where each activity is in relation to the Contractor's Construction Schedule, whether on time or ahead or behind schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
  2. Review the present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
    - a. Interface requirements.
    - b. Time.
    - c. Sequences.
    - d. Status of submittals.
    - e. Deliveries.
    - f. Off-site fabrication problems.
    - g. Access.
    - h. Site utilization.
    - i. Temporary facilities and services.
    - j. Hours of work.
    - k. Hazards and risks.
    - l. Housekeeping.
    - m. Quality and work standards.
    - n. Change Orders.
    - o. Documentation of information for payment requests.

- D. Reporting: Approximately 5 days after each meeting, CM will prepare and distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to parties who should have been present. Include a brief summary, in narrative form, of progress since the previous meeting and report.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION MEETINGS

- A. Conduct project coordination meetings at regular intervals convenient for all parties involved. Project coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as regular progress meetings and special pre-installation meetings.
- B. Request representation at each meeting by every party currently involved in coordination or planning for the construction activities involved.
- C. Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.
- D. The CM's Field Manager will conduct daily meetings with the prime contractors and major subcontractors' foremen. The purpose of the meetings is to provide the opportunity for each contractor to communicate to the Field Manager any items relating to their respective construction activity for that day (request for shutdown, deliveries, etc.) The meetings will commence from 7:00 o'clock am until 7:30 o'clock am. These meetings are generally informal. The CM's Field Manager will keep minutes of these meetings when appropriate and will be available upon request.

#### 1.7 SAFETY MEETINGS

- A. Each Contractor will be responsible to conduct their own safety meetings on a regular basis (but not less than four times during any thirty-day period.)
- B. Minutes of the Safety Meeting must be maintained by each contractor onsite and must be made available upon request. Failure to conduct and submit meeting minutes will be grounds to reject the Prime Contractor's progress payment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION

## **SECTION 013150 – COVID-19 CONTRACTOR COMPLIANCE**

**The contents of this Section are NOT authored by the Owner, Architect of Record, Engineers of Record, nor the Construction Manager, but are provided as guidelines published by others, including but not limited to, the CDC, OSHA, etc.**

- 1.1 In response to the public health emergency for the COVID-19, Governor Andrew Cuomo has declared a State disaster emergency and temporarily suspended or modified laws that would prevent, hinder, or delay action necessary to cope with the disaster or emergency. The Governor has also issued directives to allow for the expansion of certain services including those relating to emergency procurement, and to facilitate the continued work of essential businesses. Under Executive Order 202.6, and all following amendments, a construction project is permitted to continue if it is essential. Please refer to Empire State Development (ESD) guidance to determine if your project is essential <https://esd.ny.gov/guidance-executive-order-2026>. The purpose of this guidance is to set forth the recommended practices for all Contractors performing work at construction sites in the context of the COVID-19 health crisis.

**A. Contractor Responsibilities:**

Under standard contracting agency/authority agreements,

1. Contractors and their subcontractors are always required to guard the safety and health of all persons on and in the vicinity of the work site
  2. Contractors and their subcontractors are required to comply with all applicable rules, regulations, codes, and bulletins of the New York State Department of Labor and the standards imposed under the Federal Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970, as amended ("OSHA")
  3. Contractors and their subcontractors are also required to comply with all Client safety requirements
  4. **The Eastchester Union Free School District maintains strict COVID protocols. Each Monday morning at 7:00 am , all prime contractors are required to provide a listing of all construction personnel employed for their contract, whether employed by the prime contractor or subcontractor, who will be onsite that week and their status of vaccinated or non – vaccinated. The listing is to include, 1) The company the worker is employed by, 2) copy of proof of vaccination or 3) a weekly negative test result taken within 72 hours.**
  5. Contractors and their subcontractors must comply with all City or State of New York safety requirements for projects within the City or State of New York constructed in accordance with the applicable building code, and contractors are required to provide written safety plans for the site showing how all safety requirements of applicable law will be implemented for the duration of the contract
  6. Contractors will comply with these requirements as part of their contract, as well as any updates / revisions which are subsequently issued by the governing agencies.
- 1.2 Contractors and their subcontractors must also adhere to the following practices to help prevent exposure and spread of COVID-19. The following recommendations are based on what is currently known about COVID-19. Contractors and their subcontractors are advised to stay current and immediately implement the most up-to-date practices to protect the safety and health of your employees, clients, and the general public.

A. Contractor Submittals

1. All contractors are required to submit a copy of their own company policy which confirms their compliance with these requirements and demonstrates your workers will properly comply.
2. Include in your submission the name of the designated individual who will be onsite.

B. General Responsibilities:

1. Contractors and their subcontractors should educate their employees on the symptoms of COVID-19, which include cough, fever, trouble breathing, and pneumonia. Contractors and their subcontractors must instruct any employee who feels they may meet the above criteria to refrain from reporting to the jobsite and immediately contact their local health department in the county in which they reside.
2. If the employee begins to exhibit these symptoms while in the workplace, steps should be taken to isolate the individual, place a surgical mask on the individual and inform your local health department and the contracting agency/authority.
3. Personnel should be advised to self-quarantine in accordance with the requirements of the New York State and local health department. Contracting agencies/authorities reserve the right to require any employee of the Contractor, and their subcontractors exhibiting symptoms, to be removed from the jobsite.
4. If an employee is confirmed to have COVID-19 infection, contractors and their subcontractors should inform fellow employees, who have been in contact with this employee, of their possible exposure to COVID-19 in the workplace while maintaining confidentiality as required by applicable New York State and federal law. The fellow employees should then self-monitor for symptoms (i.e., cough, fever, trouble breathing, and pneumonia) and self-quarantine in accordance with the requirements of the New York State and local health department.
5. If an employee tests positive for COVID-19, Contractors and their subcontractors should direct the employee to self-quarantine or remain quarantined for 14 days, following the guidance of New York State and local health department.
6. Contractors and their subcontractors may permit such employee to return to the jobsite when this employee produces a negative COVID-19 test or receives medical clearance to return to work.
7. If an employee tests negative for COVID-19, contractors and their subcontractors may direct the employee to return to work after recovery from their illness. Any direct contacts on pre-cautionary quarantine may return to the jobsite and resume their work activities.

C. Social Distancing:

1. Do not host large group meetings or congregate in large groups. When meetings are necessary, maintain a distance of 6 feet between people
2. Perform any toolbox or other training maintaining the distance of 6 feet between people
3. Perform meetings online or via conference call whenever possible
4. Only essential personnel should be permitted on the jobsite
5. Discourage handshaking and other contact greetings

D. General Jobsite Practices:

1. Procedures and supplies should be in place to encourage proper hand and respiratory hygiene. **(General contractor is required to provide and install a self-contained temporary washing station(s) for use by all workers )**
  - a. Hand Hygiene:  
Signage with handwashing procedures should be posted in prominent locations promoting hand hygiene:

1. Regular handwashing with soap and water for at least 20 seconds should be done:
  - o Before and after eating.
  - o After sneezing, coughing, or nose blowing
  - o After using the restroom
  - o Before handling food
  - o After touching or cleaning surfaces that may be contaminated
  - o After using shared equipment and supplies; and also
  - o Whenever a contractor or subcontractor believes it is necessary
2. If soap and water are not available, use an alcohol-based hand sanitizer that contains at least 60% alcohol
- b. Respiratory Hygiene:
  1. **ALL EMPLOYEES MUST WEAR FACE MASK PROTECTION AT ALL TIMES TO COVER MOUTH AND NOSE IF REQUIRED BY DISTRICT**
  2. Covering coughs and sneezes with tissues or the corner of elbow
  3. Disposing of soiled tissues immediately after use
2. **At the end of each work shift each Contractor will perform routine environmental cleaning and disinfecting of all frequently touched surfaces on the jobsite.** This includes corridor surfaces, doorknobs, workstations, project trailers and offices, portable toilets, countertops, handles, gang boxes, tools and equipment. See OSHA Guidance on Preparing Workplaces for COVID-19. [www.osha.gov/Publications/OSHA3990.pdf](http://www.osha.gov/Publications/OSHA3990.pdf)
3. Appropriate cleaning agents and directions should be utilized to perform all cleaning. Ensure all workers are trained on the hazards of cleaning chemicals used in the workplace and comply with all OSHA requirements regarding same in accordance with the Hazard Communication (Global Harmonization) Standard. Information about <https://coronavirus.health.ny.gov/home>
4. Do not use a common water bottle
5. If using a common water cooler clean dispenser knob after use
6. Do not share tools
7. Utilize personal protection equipment (PPE) for the job being performed
8. Sanitize reusable PPE per manufacturer's recommendation prior to each use
9. Do not share PPE
10. Ensure used PPE and other trash is disposed of properly
11. Utilize disposable gloves where appropriate and instruct workers to wash hands after removing gloves
12. Disinfect reusable supplies and equipment
13. Stagger work schedules to minimize the number of people on a job site at any one time
14. Keep one contractor or subcontractor in an area at a time. Indicate an area is occupied with workers with a sign or flag indicating which contractor or subcontractor is in the area at that time. Remove the sign or flag after completion of work in that area to let others know they may then enter into that area to perform their work. The next contractor or subcontractor will then post their sign or flag to notify others that the area is occupied.
15. Minimize the number of workers in an area as much as possible by using indicators of an occupied area (signs or flags) scheduling work activities to stagger those required to be in any one time to a minimal number of workers.
16. Minimize entryways into a work area so that employees will be able to observe flagging practices described above. Do not reduce number of emergency exits.



17. Avoid cleaning techniques, such as pressurized air or water sprays that may result in generation of bioaerosols
- 1.3 Contracting agencies/authorities may request an updated written safety plan for the site to address practices to help prevent exposure and spread of COVID-19 at the jobsite pursuant to New York State, OSHA recommendations and Centers for Disease Control requirements, which include:
  1. Assessment of potential worker exposure hazards, taking into account the specific recommendations and controls for the four levels of worker exposure risk identified in OSHA's Guidance on Preparing Workplaces for COVID-19 (i.e. very high, high, med, Low)
  2. Selecting, implementing, and ensuring the use of control (i.e., social distancing appropriate personal protective equipment, hygiene, and cleaning supplies);
  3. Minimizing the number of workers in an area as much as possible by using indicators of an occupied area (signs or flags) and scheduling work activities to stagger those required to be in any one area to a minimal number of workers.
  4. Minimize entryways into a work area so that employees will be able to observe flagging practices described above. Do not reduce number of emergency exits; and
  5. Additional criteria consistent with health and safety practices at the work site
- 1.4 Project Closure:
  1. Where work is suspended on a project, contractors are directed to follow any additional project shut-down protocols as provided by the contracting agency/authority
  2. For NYS Business Reopening Safety Plan Template and Construction Master Guidance Plan please refer to below links:

[https://www.governor.ny.gov/sites/governor.ny.gov/files/atoms/files/NYS\\_BusinessReopeningSafetyPlanTemplate.pdf](https://www.governor.ny.gov/sites/governor.ny.gov/files/atoms/files/NYS_BusinessReopeningSafetyPlanTemplate.pdf)

<https://www.governor.ny.gov/sites/governor.ny.gov/files/atoms/files/ConstructionMasterGuidance.pdf>

E. For additional resources:

OSHA COVID-19 Resources

OSHA Guidance on Preparing Workplaces for COVID-19

DOL COVID-19 Resources

Interim Guidance for Business and Employers

Centers for Disease Control - - <https://www.cdc.gov/coronavirus/2019-ncov/index.html>

END OF SECTION 013150

## SECTION 013216 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS SCHEDULE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. Contractor shall develop a full schedule, in sufficient detail and clarity of form and technique so that the contractor can plan and control his work properly and the Construction Manager/Owner can readily monitor and follow the progress for all portions of the work. The Contractor shall complete the detailed schedule within 10 days after contract award.
- B. The schedule shall comply with the various limits imposed by the scope of work any by any contractually intermediate milestone dates and completion dates included in the contract.
- C. The activities identified in the schedule shall be analyzed in detail to determine activity time durations in units of whole working days. All durations shall be the result of definitive manpower and resource planning by the Contractor. The contractor will provide specific manpower loading information / crew size to support the duration proposed. (e.g. – 4-man crew can get 1000 sf per day, project has 11000 sf; thus, duration was identified as 11 days)
- D. The activity data shall include activity codes to facilitate selection, sorting and preparation of summary reports and graphics. Activity codes shall be developed for:
  - 1. Area: Subdivision of the site into logical modules or blocks and levels.
  - 2. Responsibility: contractor or subcontractor responsible for the work.
  - 3. Specifications: 33 Division CSI format.
  - 4. System: Division of the work into building systems for summary purposes.
  - 5. Milestone: Work associated with completion of interim completion dates or milestones.
  - 6. Pay Item: Work identified with a pay item on the Schedule of Values.

#### 1.2 REPORTS

- A. For initial submittal and each update, the contractor shall prepare the following standard report:
  - 1. Tabular Schedule Report sorted by Activity code and Early Start.

#### 1.3 GRAPHICS

- A. For initial submittal the contractor shall prepare the following graphics:
  - 1. Pure logic diagram (Precedence Format) of entire data, not time scaled, grouped by Activity code.
  - 2. Detailed bar chart sorted by Activity Code with Early Start and Early Finish.
  - 3. Summary bar chart summarizing by Activity Code with Early Start and Early Finish.
- B. For each update the contractor shall prepare the following graphic:
  - 1. Bar Chart showing work activities with Early Start in the next 40 workdays sorted by Activity Code and Early Start.
  - 2. Summary Bar Chart summarizing by Activity Code showing progress with Early Start and Early Finish.
- C. For each Change Order involving adjustment in the contract time for performance the contractor shall prepare a pure logic diagram showing the changed work with all predecessor and successor activities (Fragnet).

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. In no case shall first application for payment be approved prior to submission of acceptable preliminary schedule, detailed submittal schedule, and schedule of values.
- B. Monthly updates, required schedules and graphics shall be submitted to the Construction Manager/Owner within five working days following the end of the preceding month. Monthly updates, schedules and graphics shall be submitted in five copies.
- C. If any of the required submissions are returned to the Contractor for corrections or revisions, they shall be resubmitted within ten (10) calendar days after the return mailing date. Resubmittals shall be in the same quantities as noted above. Review and response by the Construction Manager/Owner will be given within (10) calendar days after resubmission.

1.5 PAYMENT WITHHELD

- A. If the Contractor fails to submit the required schedule information as indicated in this section within the time prescribed or revision thereof within the requested time, the Construction Manager/Owner may withhold approval of Progress Payment Estimates until such time as the Contractor submits the required information.

1.6 UPDATES

- A. Updates of the Schedule shall be made every two weeks reflecting actual or reasonably anticipated progress as of the last working day of the month. Monthly updates of the Detailed Schedule will be made each month until all work is substantially complete.
- B. The Contractor will meet with the Construction Manager/Owner at the end of the updated period to review information in draft form before preparation of the required schedules and graphics. The Contractor will present data, prepared in advance, for review and approval of the Construction Manager/Owner including:
  - 1. Actual Start Dates.
  - 2. Actual Completion Dates.
  - 3. Activity percent complete and/or Remaining Duration.
  - 4. Revised logic, changes in activity durations or resource assignments.
  - 5. Narrative report discussing progress through the update period; changes, delays or other circumstances affecting progress; status of the project with respect to completion schedule; and any efforts by the Contractor to improve progress.
- C. The update meeting will establish the values to be submitted for payment and will be directly related to the schedule of values in the application for payment.
- D. The Contractor shall prepare a report of the meeting and make all changes, additions or corrections to the data resulting from the review. The contractor shall promptly prepare the monthly submittal following the update meeting.

1.7 CHANGES, DELAYS AND EXTENSIONS OF TIME

- A. When changes or delays are experienced, the Contractor shall submit to the Construction Manager/Owner a Time Impact Analysis illustrating the influence of each change or delay on the current Contract scheduled completion date. Each time analysis shall include a Fragnet (network analysis) demonstrating how the Contractor proposed to incorporate the change or delay into the Detailed Schedule. Additionally, the analysis shall demonstrate the time impact based on the date the change was given to the Contractor, the status of construction at that point in time, and the activity duration of all

effected activities. The activity duration used in this analysis shall be those included in the latest update of the Detailed Schedule, closest to the time of delay or as adjusted by mutual agreement.

- B. Each Time Impact Analysis shall be submitted within ten (10) calendar days after a delay occurs or a notice of change order is given to the Contractor. In cases where the Contractor does not submit a Time Impact Analysis for a specific change or delay with a specified period of time, it shall be mutually agreed that no time extension is required. Final evaluation of each Time Impact Analysis by the Construction Manager/Owner shall be made within fourteen (14) calendar days after receipt unless subsequent meetings and negotiations are necessary. Adjustments in the Contract time for performance shall be made only by written change order approved by the Owner. Upon approval of the Owner, Fragnets illustrating the influence of changes and delays shall be incorporated into the Detailed Schedule by the contractor during the first update after agreement is reached.
- C. The time difference between the Early Finish date and the Late Finish Date is defined as "float." The "float" belongs to the Project and may be used by the Construction Manager/Owner to benefit the Project. Changes or delays that influence activities in the network with "float" and do not extend the Critical Path (the network of activities with zero days "float") shall not be justification for an adjustment in Contract time for performance.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013216

SECTION 013300 – SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for submittals required for performance of the Work, including the following:
  - 1. Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Submittal schedule.
  - 3. Daily construction reports.
  - 4. Shop Drawings.
  - 5. Product Data.
  - 6. Samples.
  - 7. Quality assurance submittals.
- B. Administrative Submittals: Refer to other Division 1 Sections and other Contract Documents for requirements for administrative submittals. Such submittals include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Permits.
  - 2. Applications for Payment.
  - 3. Performance and payment bonds.
  - 4. Insurance certificates.
  - 5. List of subcontractors.
- C. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
  - 1. Division 1 Section " Payment Procedures" specifies requirements for submittal of the Schedule of Values.
  - 2. Division 1 Section " Project Management and Coordination" specifies requirements governing preparation and submittal of required Coordination Drawings.
  - 3. Division 1 Section "Project Meetings" specifies requirements for submittal and distribution of meeting and conference minutes.
  - 4. Division 1 Section "Quality Control" specifies requirements for submittal of inspection and test reports.
  - 5. Division 1 Section "Project Record Documents " specifies requirements for submittal of Project Record Documents and warranties at project closeout.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Coordination Drawings show the relationship and integration of different construction elements that require careful coordination during fabrication or installation to fit in the space provided or to function as intended.
  - 1. Preparation of Coordination Drawings is specified in Division 1 Section " Project Management and Coordination" and may include components previously shown in detail on Shop Drawings or Product Data.
- B. Field samples are full-size physical examples erected on-site to illustrate finishes, coatings, or finish materials. Field samples are used to establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.

- C. Mockups are full-size assemblies for review of construction, coordination, testing, or operation; they are not Samples.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities. Transmit each submittal sufficiently in advance of performance of related construction activities to avoid delay.
  - 1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
  - 2. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related elements of the Work so processing will not be delayed by the need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
    - 1. The Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until all related submittals are received.
  - 3. Processing: To avoid the need to delay installation as a result of the time required to process submittals, allow sufficient time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals.
    - 1. Submittals must be transmitted in accordance with the requirements of Section 1.6.
    - 2. Allow between 10 and 12 business days for initial review of the first round of submittals. See 1.6 for more information. Allow additional time if the Architect must delay processing to permit coordination with subsequent submittals.
    - 3. If an intermediate submittal is necessary, process the same as the initial submittal.
    - 4. Allow an additional 10 business days for reprocessing each resubmittal.
    - 5. No extension of Contract Time will be authorized because of contractor's failure to transmit submittals to the Architect sufficiently in advance of the Work to permit processing.
    - 6. If the contractor delays on key submittals which can negatively impact the project schedule, the owner and his agent(s) can withhold payments as necessary until the proper submittal paperwork is received.
- B. Submittal Preparation:
  - 1. Each copy of each submittal will have a "submittal cover sheet" attached identifying all information requested by Architect. (see copy after this section) All SCS must be approved by contractor (see electronic stamp B.5) signed, dated and have all fields completely filled-out. Any submittal received without proper use of this Cover Sheet will be returned immediately to the contractor. Cover sheet for contractor's use is included at the end of this section.
  - 2. A Submittals Website, an internet (web-based) service shall be used by all contractors to provide an on-line database and repository which shall be used to transmit and track project related documents. The Submittals Website is provided by the Construction Manager. Upon Contract award the successful bidders will be given log on instructions. The intent for using the Submittals Website is to expedite the construction process by reducing paperwork, improving information flow, and decreasing submittal review turnaround time.
  - 3. Project submittals (shop drawing, product data and quality assurance submittals) shall be transmitted by the Contractor in Portable Document Format (PDF) to the Submittals Website, where it will be tracked and stored for retrieval for review. After the submittal is reviewed it is uploaded back to the Submittals Website for action or use by the Contractor and Owners Representatives.
  - 4. The service also tracks and stores documents related to the project such as RFI's (Request for Information), Contacts, Meeting Minutes, Punchlist, and Non-Compliance Notices.
  - 5. For each submittal, the Contractor shall review and apply electronic stamp certifying that the submittal complies with the requirements of the Contract Documents, including verification of manufacturer/product, dimensions and coordination of information with other parts of the work. (contractor sign and date)
  - 6. It is the Contractor's responsibility to provide the submittals in a PDF format. The contractor may use any of the following options:

- a. Subcontractors and suppliers provide paper submittals to the Contractor, who electronically scans and converts them to PDF format.
    - b. Contract a Scanning Service, which will allow the Contractor and the Contractor's subcontractors and suppliers to provide paper submittals to the Scanning Service, which electronically scans and converts them to PDF format. It will be the Contractor's responsibility to transmit the scanned submittals to the Submittals Website.
  7. Image Quality:
    - a. Image resolution: The PDF files shall be created at a minimum resolution of 200 dots per inch utilizing the original document size. The Contractor will be responsible to increase the resolution of the scanned file or images being submitted as required to adequately presenting the information.
    - b. Image Color Rendition: When information represented requires color to convey the intent and compliance, provide full color PDF reproduction.
- C. Contractor Internet Service and Equipment Requirements:
  1. The Contractor will be required to have an Email address and Internet access at Contractor's main office.
  2. Unless the Contractor will exclusively be using a Scanning Service to create all PDF documents, the Contractor will be required to own a PDF reviewing, creating and editing software, such as Adobe Acrobat ([www.adobe.com](http://www.adobe.com)), Bluebeam PDF Revu ([www.bluebeam.com](http://www.bluebeam.com)), or other similar PDF reviewing, creating and editing software for applying electronic stamps and comments.
  3. The Contractor will be required to have a web browser such as Internet Explorer 11, Firefox 30-51.
  4. The Contractor will be required to have Java Run Time Environment: Minimum Java version 8 update 121.
  5. The Contractor will be required to have Adobe Reader version 11: Sage uses a pdf creator to generate forms. In order to print / view forms you will need Adobe Reader.
  6. Contractors are required to have network securities in place such as anti-virus that is active and up to date. Do not access Contract Management from unsecured or public network location such as free WI-FI hotspots.
- D. Training and Support:
  - I. A training manual shall be available, free of charge from the Construction Manager, for all project participants regarding use of the Submittals Website and PDF submittals.
  2. Training will be provided by the Construction Manager at Arris's main office located in Poughkeepsie NY ( or in a virtual Zoom meeting). The appropriate personnel from each contractor office are required to attend this meeting.
- E. Paper Copies:
  1. Contractor Copies: The Contractor will be responsible for making copies, for the Contractors own use and for use by its subcontractors and suppliers.
- F. Submittal Transmittal: Package each submittal appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal from the Contractor to the CM electronically using a transmittal form. The CM will then transmit to the Architect. The Architect will not accept submittals received from sources other than the Construction Manager.
  1. On the transmittal, record relevant information and requests for data. On the form, or separate sheet, record deviations from Contract Document requirements, including variations and limitations. Include Contractor's certification that information complies with Contract Document requirements.
  2. Transmittal Form: Use AIA Document G810 and submit Sage notification to ACCI that the submittal has been uploaded. The contractor's transmittal must have the subject description

- properly filled out, so that all parties can see what section/product is being submitted without having to open the actual submittal.
3. Transmittal Form: Use the sample form at the end of this Section for transmittal of submittals.

## 1.5 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Distribution: It is the contractor's responsibility to coordinate submittals with each subcontracting trade. Each contractor shall be required to provide their subcontractors with a complete list of their submittals in order that other contractors can request required submittal information.
1. When revisions are made, distribute to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in construction activities.

## 1.6 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

- A. Submittals must be prepared and transmitted as follows, unless otherwise approved by the Construction Manager:
1. Within 15 working days after Notice to Proceed:
    1. Concrete & Rebar Shop Drawings
    2. Structural Steel
    3. Aluminum Window Submittals and Shop Drawings
    4. Aluminum/FRP Doors, Frames & Hardware
    5. Hollow Metal, Wood Doors & Hardware
    6. HVAC Units submittals ( multiple sections )
    7. Electrical Fixtures
    8. Electrical Panelboards
    9. Security Windows
    10. Casework and Countertops
    11. Granite Stairs ( Greenvale )
    12. All other submittals critical to the schedule.
  2. Balance of Submittals – within 30 days after Notice to Proceed.
  3. If the contractor misses the milestone submittal timeframes listed above, the owner / agents can withhold requisition payments until the required paperwork is received. **If there are any open submittals beyond 45 days of contract award, the owner will stop all contractor payments until all missing paperwork is received.**
  4. Upon approval by the Construction Manager, non-critical submittals may be transmitted later.
  5. Prepare submittals including information in paragraph 1.4B above.
- B. Schedule Updating: Revise the submittal schedule after each meeting or activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue the updated schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.

## 1.7 DAILY CONSTRUCTION REPORTS

- A. Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at the site, and electronically submit one copy to the Construction Manager's field superintendent by 10:00 am the following day. Any contractor not submitting required reports will not receive approval on the subsequent application for payment until such time that all required information is submitted. The following items should be address in the daily report :
1. List of subcontractors at the site.
  2. Count of personnel at the site (substantiates payroll).
  3. High and low temperatures, general weather conditions.
  4. Accidents and unusual events.



5. Description of work completed, location(s) and approximate quantities
6. Meetings and significant decisions.
7. Orders and requests of governing authorities.
8. Services connected, disconnected.
9. Equipment or system tests and startups.

#### 1.8 SHOP DRAWINGS

- A. Submit newly prepared information drawn accurately to scale. Highlight, encircle, or otherwise indicate deviations from the Contract Documents. Do not reproduce Contract Documents or copy standard information as the basis of Shop Drawings. Standard information prepared without specific reference to the Project is not a Shop Drawing.
- B. Shop Drawings include fabrication and installation Drawings, setting diagrams, schedules, patterns, templates and similar Drawings. Include the following information:
  1. Dimensions.
  2. Identification of products and materials included by sheet and detail number.
  3. Compliance with specified standards.
  4. Notation of coordination requirements.
  5. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
  6. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns and similar full-size Drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches but no larger than 36 by 48 inches.
  7. All Technical Submittals:
    1. Electronic shop drawing submittal to Construction Manager.
  8. Do not use Shop Drawings without an appropriate final stamp indicating action taken.
  9. Maintain approved copies on site to record "as-built" conditions.
  10. Submit additional copies of as-built, approved drawings as specified in project closeout.

#### 1.9 PRODUCT DATA

- A. Collect Product Data into a single submittal for each element of construction or system. Submit prior to shop drawings or simultaneously when products are specified items or A/E approval is granted. Product Data includes printed information, such as manufacturer's installation instructions, catalog cuts, standard color charts, roughing-in diagrams and templates, standard wiring diagrams, and performance curves.
  1. Mark each copy to show applicable choices and options. Where printed Product Data includes information on several products that are not required, mark copies to indicate the applicable information. Include the following that are not required, mark copies to indicate the applicable information. Include the following information:
    1. Manufacturer's printed recommendations.
    2. Compliance with trade association standards.
    3. Compliance with recognized testing agency standards.
    4. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
    5. Notation of dimensions verified by field measurement.
    6. Notation of coordination requirements.
  2. Do not submit Product Data until compliance with requirements of the Contract Documents has been confirmed.
  3. Submit digitally through the Submittals Website to CM.
  4. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittal to installers, subcontractors, suppliers, manufacturers, fabricators, and others required for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
    1. Do not proceed with installation until a copy of Product Data is in the Installer's possession.
    2. Do not permit use of unmarked copies of Product Data in connection with construction.

## 1.10 SAMPLES

- A. Submit full-size, fully fabricated Samples cured and finished as specified and physically identical with the material or product proposed. Samples include partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components, cuts or containers of materials, color range sets, and swatches showing color, texture, and pattern. Sample are submitted directly to the architect's home office and copy Construction Manager with transmittal.
1. Mount or display Samples in the manner to facilitate review of qualities indicated. Prepare Samples to match the Architect's sample. Include the following:
    1. Specification Section number and reference.
    2. Generic description of the Sample.
    3. Sample source.
    4. Product name or name of the manufacturer.
    5. Compliance with recognized standards.
  2. Submit Samples for review of size, kind, color, pattern, and texture. Submit Samples for a final check of these characteristics with other elements and a comparison of these characteristics between the final submittal and the actual component as delivered and installed.
    1. Where variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in the material or product represented, submit at least 3 multiple units that show approximate limits of the variations.
    2. Refer to other Specification Sections for requirements for Samples that illustrate workmanship, fabrication techniques, details of assembly, connections, operation, and similar construction characteristics.
    3. Refer to other Sections for Samples to be returned to the Contractor for incorporation in the Work. Such Samples must be undamaged at time of use. On the transmittal, indicate special requests regarding disposition of Sample submittals.
    4. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as the Owner's property, are the property of the Contractor and shall be removed from the site prior to Substantial Completion.
  3. Preliminary Submittals: Submit a full set of choices where Samples are required for selection of color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics from a range of standard and premium choices.
    1. The Architect will review and distribute selections made or other action.
  4. Submittals: Except for Samples illustrating assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and similar characteristics, submit 6 sets to the Architect who will distribute one set to CM and two (2) to the contractor marked with the action taken.
  5. Maintain sets of Samples, as returned, at the Project Site, for quality comparisons throughout the course of construction.
    1. Unless noncompliance with Contract Document provisions is observed, the submittal may serve as the final submittal.
    2. Sample sets may be used to obtain final acceptance of the construction associated with each set.
- B. Distribution of Samples: Prepare and distribute additional sets to subcontractors, manufacturers, fabricators, suppliers, installers, and others as required for performance of the Work. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
1. Field samples are full-size examples erected on-site to illustrate finishes, coatings, or finish materials and to establish the Project standard.
    1. Comply with submittal requirements to the fullest extent possible. Process transmittal forms to provide a record of activity.

## 1.11 QUALITY ASSURANCE SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit quality-control submittals, including design data, certifications, manufacturer's instructions, manufacturer's field reports, and other quality-control submittals as required under other Sections of the Specifications.
- B. Certifications: Where other Sections of the Specifications require certification that a product, material, or installation complies with specified requirements, submit a notarized certification from the manufacturer certifying compliance with specified requirements.
  - 1. Signature: Certification shall be signed by an officer of the manufacturer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of the company.
- C. Inspection and Test Reports: Requirements for submittal of inspection and test reports from independent testing agencies are specified in Division 1 Section "Quality Control."

#### 1.12 ARCHITECT'S ACTION

- A. Except for submittals for the record or information, where action and return is required, the Architect will review each submittal, mark to indicate action taken, and return promptly.
  - 1. Compliance with specified characteristics is the Contractor's responsibility, as stated on the approval stamp.
- B. Action Stamp: The Architect will stamp each submittal with a uniform, action stamp. The Architect will mark the stamp appropriately to indicate the action taken, as follows:
  - 1. Unsolicited Submittals: The Architect will return unsolicited submittals to the sender without action.
  - 2. Final Unrestricted Release: When the Architect marks a submittal "Furnish as Corrected", the Work covered by the submittal may proceed provided it complies with requirements of the Contract Documents. Final payment depends on that compliance.
  - 3. Final-But-Restricted Release: When the Architect marks a submittal "Make Corrections Noted", the Work covered by the submittal may proceed provided it complies with notations or corrections on the submittal and requirements of the Contract Documents. Final payment depends on that compliance. (No resubmittal is required.)
  - 4. "Revise and Resubmit" When the Architect marks a submittal "Revise and Resubmit", do not proceed with Work covered by the submittal, including purchasing, fabrication, delivery, or other activity. Revise or prepare a new submittal according to the notations; resubmit without delay.
  - 5. Returned for Resubmittal: When the Architect marks a submittal "Rejected", do not proceed with Work covered by the submittal, including purchasing, fabrication, delivery, or other activity. Revise or prepare a new submittal according to the notations; resubmit without delay. Repeat if necessary, to obtain different action mark.
    - I. Do not use, or allow others to use, submittals marked "Rejected" at the Project Site or elsewhere where Work is in progress.
  - 6. Other Action: Where a submittal is for information or record purposes only and does require approval and the contractor is responsible for the conformance of the product, the Architect will return the submittal marked "Reviewed".
  - 7. "Submit specified item": When submittal is marked "Submit Specified Item", the Contractor shall immediately submit the specified item,

#### PART 2 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 013300

SECTION 013529 - HEALTH AND SAFETY PLAN

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 REQUIREMENTS INCLUDED IN THIS SECTION

- A. Provide all labor, equipment and materials and perform all operations in connection with monitoring air quality, decontaminating equipment and providing worker health and safety protection for all Contractor and Subcontractor personnel.
- B. Develop a site specific Health and Safety Plan (HASP) specifically addressing the potential hazards that may be encountered. This plan shall meet all Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) requirements.
- C. Review the requirements and data presented and supplement the program with any additional measures deemed necessary to fully comply with regulatory requirements and adequately protect personnel on the site.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. OSHA Regulation 29 CFR 1910.120
- B. OSHA Regulation 29 CFR 1926.62

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Site Safety Official (SSO): The individual who is responsible to the Contractor and has the authority and knowledge necessary to implement the site safety and health plan and verify compliance with applicable safety and health requirements.
- B. SSO shall possess full and complete authority to order stoppage of any work which he deems unsafe.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Provide within seven (7) days after execution of the Agreement.
  - 1. Site-specific HASP including the Emergency Response Plan to the Owner, Construction Manager and Architect for review, including provisions for decontamination and a contingency plan for unforeseen emergencies. The review is only to determine if the HASP meets basic regulatory requirements and the minimum requirements of this Section. The review will not determine the adequacy of the HASP to address all potential hazards, as that remains the sole responsibility of the Contractor.
  - 2. Current certification of employee's health and safety training and certification of employee's baseline medical exam status.
  - 3. Certification of additional required health and safety training for Supervisors.
  - 4. Qualifications and experience of the SSO for approval.
- B. Submit minutes of weekly safety meetings at periodic progress meetings.

1.6 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Contractor is solely responsible for the health and safety of workers employed by the Contractor, any Subcontractor and anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them.
- B. Develop and follow a site specific Health & Safety Plan (HASP) in accordance with the requirements of paragraph 1.07.
- C. Provide a full-time SSO regardless of whether or not the Work is at a defined Uncontrolled Hazardous Waste Site.
- D. Pre-arrange emergency medical care services at a nearby hospital, including establishment of emergency routes of travel.
- E. Meetings:
  - 1. Conduct daily job briefings with all site personnel to discuss relevant health and safety issues including but not limited to hazards, monitoring, procedures and controls. Document attendance and topics covered.
  - 2. At a minimum, conduct weekly safety meetings with all site personnel, documenting attendance and topics covered.
- F. Train all workers assigned to areas where contaminated media are likely to be encountered in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.120.
- G. Include those workers involved with the abatement of Asbestos containing materials in a medical surveillance program and respiratory protection program that meet the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.120 and 29 CFR 1910.134, respectively.
- H. In areas where contaminated media are likely to be encountered, monitor air quality in and around work area using appropriate air monitoring equipment/analysis, as indicated in Part 2. Record all readings and maintain record on site. Stop work and/or upgrade respiratory protection or personal protective equipment levels if action levels established in the HASP are exceeded. Ensure that degree and type of respiratory protection provided is consistent with the monitored concentrations and individual chemical parameters. Lawfully dispose of all contaminated clothing and equipment that cannot be decontaminated.

1.7 HEALTH & SAFETY PLAN (HASP) REQUIREMENTS

- A. The following items shall be addressed in the HASP:
  - 1. Safety and health hazard assessment;
  - 2. Procedures for emergency medical treatment and first aid;
  - 3. Map indicating route to hospital for emergency medical care;
  - 4. Lead exposure control plan (29 cfr 1926.62);
  - 5. Equipment decontamination procedures;
  - 6. Air monitoring procedures and action levels;
  - 7. Personal protective equipment and decontamination;

8. Physical hazard evaluation and abatement including:
  - a. Equipment operation;
  - b. Confined space entry;
  - c. Slips and falls;
  - d. Building collapse;
  - e. Falling debris;
  - f. Encountering unmarked utilities;
  - g. Cold and heat stress;
  - h. Hot work (cutting and welding);
  - i. Excavation entry;
9. Training requirements;
10. Recordkeeping requirements;
11. Emergency response plan that includes:
  - a. Names of three (3) Emergency Response Contractors, experienced in the removal and disposal of oils and hazardous chemicals, that the Contractor intends to use in the event of an emergency;
  - b. Evacuation routes and procedures;
  - c. Emergency alerting and response procedures.

#### 1.8 CONTINGENCY MEASURES & NOTIFICATIONS

- A. The potential for encountering hazardous buried objects or materials that could pose a threat to human health or the environment exists at the Project Site. In the event that potentially hazardous materials are encountered during the work under this contract, the responsibilities of the Contractor and the Construction Manager are described herein.
- B. The procedures and protocols to be used by the SSO in defining materials that are potentially hazardous include screening with a photoionization detector, odor, visual appearance of a material, and obvious oil or chemical contaminated materials.
- C. Upon encountering suspected hazardous buried objects or materials as described above, cover the excavation immediately if no imminent danger, as defined by the SSO, is present. If there is an imminent danger, as defined by the SSO, evacuate the area immediately. The SSO shall then notify the Construction Manager of the situation.
- D. Establish, properly barricade, and mark the area as an exclusion zone under the direction of the SSO. The SSO shall establish the exclusion zone boundaries based upon air quality monitoring using a photoionization detector and other equipment as appropriate. The exclusion zone shall be established at a minimum 50-foot radius around the location where the potentially hazardous material is encountered. Work within the exclusion zone shall be discontinued until the hazardous condition has been remediated and testing indicates that a hazard does not exist. Other activities of the site, outside the limits of the exclusion zone shall continue. Ambient air quality monitoring shall be performed by the SSO to demonstrate that ambient air quality in other portions of the site is not adversely impacted by the exclusion zone condition.

- E. Notify Owner's Representative regarding the presence of potentially hazardous materials. Construction Manager or the Owner may direct the Contractor to notify regulators and to obtain necessary regulatory approvals for remediation.
- F. Mobilize the appropriate equipment and personnel to sample and test the hazardous material within the exclusion zone to determine the remedial action required, subject to the Construction Manager's or the Owner's direction. Contractor may be directed to remove and legally dispose of the material. Compensation for the removal and disposal of hazardous material will be as a Change in Work and Change in Contract Price in accordance with the Subcontract Agreement, if not covered under a specific bid item.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION 013529

SECTION 014000 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspection services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 1. Specific quality-assurance and quality-control requirements for individual work results are specified in their respective Specification Sections. Requirements in individual Sections may also cover production of standard products.
  - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and quality-control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and quality-control services required by Architect, Owner, Construction Manager, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for testing and inspection allowances.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced," unless otherwise further described, means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Quality-Control Tests and Inspections: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- C. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, subcontractor, or sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, assembly, and similar operations.
  - 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a Work result does not require that certain construction activities specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- D. Mockups: Physical assemblies of portions of the Work constructed to establish the standard by which the Work will be judged. Mockups are not Samples.
  - 1. Mockups are used for one or more of the following:
    - a. Verify selections made under Sample submittals.
    - b. Demonstrate aesthetic effects.
    - c. Demonstrate the qualities of products and workmanship.



- d. Demonstrate successful installation of interfaces between components and systems.
    - e. Perform preconstruction testing to determine system performance.
  - 2. Product Mockups: Mockups that may include multiple products, materials, or systems specified in a single Section.
  - 3. In-Place Mockups: Mockups constructed on-site in their actual final location as part of permanent construction.
- E. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria. Unless otherwise indicated, copies of reports of tests or inspections performed for other than the Project do not meet this definition.
- F. Product Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) according to 29 CFR 1910.7, by a testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP), or by a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- G. Source Quality-Control Tests and Inspections: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source (e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop).
- H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. The term "testing laboratory" has the same meaning as the term "testing agency."
- I. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work, to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- J. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work, to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Contractor's quality-control services do not include contract administration activities performed by Architect or Construction Manager.

#### 1.4 DELEGATED DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
  - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated Design Services Statement: Submit a statement signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional, indicating that the products and systems are in compliance with performance and design criteria indicated. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

#### 1.5 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or requirements is specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, inform the Architect regarding the conflict and obtain clarification prior to

proceeding with the Work. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for clarification before proceeding.

- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified is the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

#### 1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Mockup Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, sections, elevations, and details, indicating materials and size of mockup construction.
  - 2. Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components.
  - 3. Provide axonometric drawings for conditions difficult to illustrate in two dimensions.

#### 1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Quality-Control Plan: For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.
- B. Qualification Data: For Contractor's quality-control personnel.
- C. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility: When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility submitted to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:
  - 1. Seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
  - 2. Primary wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
- D. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- E. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following:
  - 1. Specification Section number and title.
  - 2. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
  - 3. Description of test and inspection.
  - 4. Identification of applicable standards.
  - 5. Identification of test and inspection methods.
  - 6. Number of tests and inspections required.
  - 7. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
  - 8. Requirements for obtaining samples.
  - 9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.
- F. Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports and documents as specified.
- G. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's record, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments,

correspondence, records, and similar documents established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

#### 1.8 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN

- A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan within 10 days of Notice of Award , and not less than five days prior to preconstruction conference. Submit in format acceptable to Architect. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and quality-control responsibilities and to coordinate Owner's quality-assurance and quality-control activities. Coordinate with Contractor's Construction Schedule.
- B. Quality-Control Personnel Qualifications: Engage qualified personnel trained and experienced in managing and executing quality-assurance and quality-control procedures similar in nature and extent to those required for Project.
  - 1. Project quality-control manager may also serve as Project superintendent .
- C. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.
- D. Testing and Inspection: In quality-control plan, include a comprehensive schedule of Work requiring testing or inspection, including the following:
  - 1. Contractor-performed tests and inspections, including subcontractor-performed tests and inspections. Include required tests and inspections and Contractor-elected tests and inspections. Distinguish source quality-control tests and inspections from field quality-control tests and inspections.
  - 2. Special inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction and indicated on the Statement of Special Inspections.
  - 3. Owner-performed tests and inspections indicated in the Contract Documents.
- E. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified. Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring the Work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.
- F. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports, including log of approved and rejected results. Include Work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming Work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.9 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:
  - 1. Date of issue.
  - 2. Project title and number.
  - 3. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of testing agency.
  - 4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
  - 5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
  - 6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
  - 7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
  - 8. Complete test or inspection data.

9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample-taking and testing and inspection.
11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.

B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:

1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of technical representative making report.
2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
6. Statement of whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:

1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of factory-authorized service representative making report.
2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
4. Statement of whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

1.10 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units. As applicable, procure products from manufacturers able to meet qualification requirements, warranty requirements, and technical or factory-authorized service representative requirements.
- C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, applying, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind

indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that is similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.

- F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists will satisfy qualification requirements indicated and engage in the activities indicated.
  - 1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction supersede requirements for specialists.
- G. Testing and Inspecting Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspection indicated, as documented in accordance with ASTM E329, and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
- H. Preconstruction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following Contractor's responsibilities, including the following:
  - 1. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
  - 2. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
  - 3. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.
  - 4. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups, using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
  - 5. When testing is complete, remove test specimens and test assemblies, and mockups; do not reuse products on Project.
  - 6. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect, through Construction Manager, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections, and state in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
- I. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
  - 1. Build mockups of size indicated.
  - 2. Build mockups in location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect or Construction Manager.
  - 3. Notify Architect and Construction Manager seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
  - 4. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers who will be employed to perform same tasks during the construction at Project.
  - 5. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
  - 6. Obtain Architect's and Construction Manager's approval of mockups before starting corresponding Work, fabrication, or construction.
    - a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
  - 7. Promptly correct unsatisfactory conditions noted by Architect's preliminary review, to the satisfaction of the Architect, before completion of final mockup.
  - 8. Approval of mockups by the Architect does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 9. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
  - 10. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.

1.11 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
  - 1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspection they are engaged to perform.
  - 2. Payment for these services will be made from testing and inspection allowances specified in Section 012100 "Allowances," as authorized by Change Orders.
  - 3. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor, and the Contract Sum will be adjusted by Change Order.
- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities, whether specified or not, to verify and document that the Work complies with requirements.
  - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
  - 2. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform quality-control services.
    - a. Contractor will not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.
  - 3. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspection will be performed.
  - 4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
  - 5. Testing and inspection requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
  - 6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
- C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- D. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
- E. Contractor's Associated Requirements and Services: Cooperate with agencies and representatives performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
  - 1. Access to the Work.
  - 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
  - 3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspection. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
  - 4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
  - 5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
  - 6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
  - 7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspection equipment at Project site.

- F. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and quality-control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspection.
  - 1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- G. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare a schedule of tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services required by the Contract Documents as a component of Contractor's quality-control plan. Coordinate and submit concurrently with Contractor's Construction Schedule. Update and submit with each Application for Payment.
  - 1. Schedule Contents: Include tests, inspections, and quality-control services, including Contractor- and Owner-retained services, commissioning activities, and other Project-required services paid for by other entities.
  - 2. Distribution: Distribute schedule to Owner, Architect, Construction Manager, testing agencies, and each party involved in performance of portions of the Work where tests and inspections are required.

#### 1.12 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Special Tests and Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency special inspector to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner, and as follows:
  - 1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures, and reviewing the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
  - 2. Notifying Architect, Construction Manager, and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  - 3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect, through Construction Manager, with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
  - 5. Interpreting tests and inspections, and stating in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
  - 6. Retesting and reinspecting corrected Work.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

##### 3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
  - 1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
  - 2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
  - 3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
  - 4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's and Construction Manager's and authorities' having jurisdiction reference during normal working hours.

1. Submit log at Project closeout as part of Project Record Documents.

3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspection, sample-taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
  1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 017300 "Execution."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 014000



SECTION 014100 - PERMITS AND COMPLIANCE

1.1 GENERAL

- A. Requirements set forth herein are in addition to and shall be considered as complementary to the General Conditions of the Contract and the balance of Division 01 and the Technical Specifications.
- B. All Contractors, Subcontractors, Vendors and the like shall be required to familiarize themselves with said provisions.

1.2 REQUIREMENTS INCLUDED IN THIS SECTION

- A. Preconstruction Meeting
- B. Permits and Licenses
- C. Compliance
- D. Additional Compliance

1.3 PRECONSTRUCTION MEETING

- A. After award of Contract and prior to the commencement of the Work, schedule and conduct meeting with Owner and Architect to discuss the applicable environmental regulations and requirements; coordinate with Sections 015000 and 017400.
- B. For Owner's records, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents, established for compliance with environmental regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

1.4 PERMITS AND LICENSES

- A. The Contractor shall obtain, maintain and pay for all permits and licenses necessary for the execution of the work and for the use of such work when completed.

1.5 COMPLIANCE

- A. The Contractor shall give all notices, pay all fees and comply with all laws, rules and regulations applicable to the work.

1.6 ADDITIONAL COMPLIANCE

- A. The Contractor, Subcontractors, and the employees of the Contractor and Subcontractors, shall comply with all regulations governing conduct, access to the premises, operation of equipment and systems, and conduct while in or near the premises and shall perform the work in such a manner as not to unreasonably interrupt or interfere with the conduct of business of the Facility.

END OF SECTION 014100

SECTION 014326 - TESTING LABORATORY SERVICES

1.1 GENERAL

- A. Requirements set forth herein are in addition to and shall be considered as complementary to the General Conditions of the Contract and the balance of Division 01 and the Technical Specifications.
- B. All Contractors, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, Vendors and the like shall be required to familiarize themselves with said provisions.
- C. Pursuant to the provisions of Section 013300, Submittal Requirements, it is further required that unless otherwise specified, tests called for in the Specifications applicable to the work and/or required to implement the work shall be paid for by the Owner.
- D. Where tests are required by the Architect to substantiate conformance to the specifications the Owner will pay all costs of such tests and engineering services unless said tests indicate that the workmanship or materials used by the Contractor are not in conformance with the Drawings, Specifications, Approved Shop Drawings or the approved materials.
- In such event, the Contractor shall pay for the tests, remove all work and material so failing to conform, REPLACE with work and materials which are in full conformity.
- F. Requirements related to testing services and specified elsewhere in these documents include:
1. Inspections and testing as required by laws, ordinances, rules, regulations or orders of public authorities having jurisdiction over the work.
  2. Certification of compliance as required by individual specification sections.
  3. Testing, adjusting and balancing of mechanical equipment and systems.
  4. Project record documents, including operation and maintenance manuals, record drawings and the like.
  5. Tests and standards governing work and/or materials as may be specified throughout these specifications and/or as shown on the drawings.
- G. The Owner will employ, and pay for, the services of an Independent Testing Laboratory to perform all specified services.
- H. Inspection, sampling and testing is required for the following as applicable to the particular project:
- Refer to attached Statement of Special Inspections and Tests
- However, this listing is to be considered as partial only with the burden placed on the Contractor to advise, and the Laboratory to provide, all such inspections, sampling and testing as may be specified and/or required by these Contract Documents and the applicable laws and ordinances of the jurisdiction.
- I. Employment of the Testing Laboratory shall not relieve the Contractor of his obligation to perform Work in accordance with the Contract.

1.2 REQUIREMENTS INCLUDED IN THIS SECTION

- A. Laboratory Qualifications
- B. Laboratory Duties
- C. Contractor's Responsibilities
- D. Tests Required

1.3 LABORATORY QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Laboratory shall meet -
  - 1. The "Recommended Requirements for Independent Laboratory Qualifications", latest edition as published by the American Council of Independent Laboratories.
  - 2. Basic requirements of ASTM E 329, latest edition, governing "Standards of Recommended Practice for Inspection and Testing Agencies for Concrete and Steel as Used in Construction".
- B. Laboratory shall submit copy of inspection of facilities as made by Materials Reference Laboratory of the National Bureau of Standards during most recent tour of inspection; with memorandum of remedies of any deficiencies reported by inspection.
- C. Testing equipment shall be calibrated at maximum 12-month intervals by devices of accuracy traceable to either - National Bureau of Standards or accepted values of natural physical constants; submit copy of certificate of calibration as executed by an accredited calibration agency.

1.4 LABORATORY DUTIES

- A. Cooperate with Architect and Contractor; provide qualified personnel promptly on notice.
- B. Perform specified inspections, sampling and testing of materials and methods of construction in conformance with specified standards, recognized authorities and the like so as to ascertain compliance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.
- C. Promptly notify Architect and Contractor of irregularities or deficiencies of Work which are observed during performance of services.
- D. Promptly submit sufficient copies (minimum 5) of reports and tests to Architect for distribution. Reports shall contain -
  - 1. Issue date
  - 2. Project title and number
  - 3. Testing laboratory name and address
  - 4. Name and signature of inspector
  - 5. Date of inspection or sampling
  - 6. Temperature and weather observations
  - 7. Test date
  - 8. Identification of product and specification section
  - 9. Location in project
  - 10. Type of inspection or test
  - 11. Observations regarding Contract Document compliance.
- E. Perform additional services as required by the Owner and/or Architect.
- F. The laboratory is not authorized to - release, revoke, alter or enlarge on, requirements of the Contract Documents; approve or accept any portion of Work; perform any duties of the

Contractor.

## 1.5 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. The Contractor shall to the best of his ability -
1. Cooperate with laboratory personnel, provide access to the Work and to Manufacturer's operations as may be necessary.
  2. Provide to the laboratory preliminary representative samples of materials to be tested in required quantities.
  3. Furnish copies of mill test reports.
  4. Provide casual labor and facilities as required to provide access to Work to be tested; to obtain and handle samples at the Site; to facilitate inspections and tests; for laboratory's exclusive use for storage and curing of test samples.
  5. Notify Construction Manager a minimum of 48 hours in advance of operations to allow for his assignment of personnel and scheduling of tests.
  6. Arrange with laboratory and PAY FOR, additional sampling and testing required for the Contractor's convenience.
  7. Employ, AND PAY FOR, services of a separate, equally qualified Independent Testing Laboratory to perform additional inspections, sampling and testing required when initial tests indicate Work does not comply with Contract Documents. Coordinate with Paragraph 1.05.A.4 above.

## 1.6 TESTS REQUIRED


- A. General Construction Tests: More detailed testing requirements are given in individual Specification Sections. The Owner shall retain the right to make any additional tests the Architect deem necessary or appropriate. The Contractor is responsible for providing his own tests to determine that materials meet specified requirements. The scope of tests required and paid for by the Owner (unless otherwise noted below) shall include as a minimum the following:
1. Concrete Paving and General Concrete Work: Concrete mix design testing shall be paid for by Contractor. Owner reserves the right to retain and pay for his own testing for checking purposes.
  2. Concrete Paving and General Concrete Work: Concrete test cylinders as specified in Section 03 30 00, Cast-in-Place Concrete. All concrete cylinder testing will be performed by the Owner's testing laboratory at the cost of the Owner.
  5. Masonry Mortar: Three cubes tested for compressive strength at 10 days; ASTM C 91 tests.
  6. Metals: Strength dimension; coating thickness; bolt torque; welding X-ray or ultrasonic tests.
- B. Plumbing: At least the following tests will be performed. Conform to requirements specified in individual Division 22 Specification Sections. The test shall be performed and paid for by the subcontractor and witnessed by the Contractor and Owner's on-site representative:
1. Water supply piping hydrostatic pressure test.
  2. Sanitary piping test before fixture installation: Cap pipes and fill to highest point in system.
  3. Plumbing fixture operation.
- C. Fire Protection System: At least the following tests will be performed. Conform to requirements specified in individual Division 21 Specification Sections. The test shall be performed and paid for by the subcontractor and witnessed by the Contractor and Owner's on-site representative:
1. Fire protection system flushed and pressure tested.

- D. HVAC Testing: All HVAC work shall be tested by an independent testing and balancing agency. Conform to requirements specified in individual Division 23 Specification Sections. All costs of these tests will be paid by the subcontractor. Adjustments shall be made by the subcontractor as directed by the Owner. At least the following tests will be performed:
1. Piping hydrostatic tests.
  2. Air and water balancing.
  3. Thermostat control monitoring and testing.
  4. Boiler efficiency testing.
- E. Electrical Power System Testing: At least the following tests will be performed. Conform to requirements specified in individual Division 26 Specification Sections. The test shall be performed and paid for by the subcontractor and witnessed by the Contractor and Owner's on-site representative:
1. Polarity tests.
  2. Operation of all circuits.
  3. Testing of emergency system.
  4. Security systems.
  5. Generation system.
  6. Grounding systems.
- F. Electrical Lighting System Testing: Conform to requirements specified in individual Division 26 Specification Sections. At least the following tests shall be performed and paid for by the subcontractor.
1. Operation of every component of entire system.
- G. Fire Alarm System Testing: At least the following tests will be performed. Conform to requirements specified in individual Division 28 Specification Sections. The test shall be performed and paid for by the subcontractor and witnessed by the Contractor and Owner's on-site representative:
1. All smoke and heat detectors.
  2. Proper operation as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- H. Contractor's Responsibilities: The Contractor shall notify the Owner, Architect, Construction Manager and Testing Laboratory personnel at least 48 hours prior to performance of work requiring testing. The Contractor shall fully cooperate with testing agencies and permit free access to all areas at all times. The Contractor shall permit taking samples at any time during construction, either before or after installation. Prior to notice to proceed with construction, the Contractor shall submit a Testing Log of planned tests and scheduled test dates. Tests shall be numbered based on type of work, type of test, and sequence. The Testing Log shall be maintained by the Contractor and updated weekly.
1. Coordination: The Contractor shall coordinate all testing, including all testing and inspections to be paid for by the Owner. The Contractor will arrange testing and sampling performed by the Owner's testing agency and will have prepared test record forms. Upon receipt of test results, the Owner will distribute 2 copies to the Contractor, 2 copies to the Architect, and 2 copies to the Construction Manager with test results.
- I. Follow-up and Corrective Action: The Contractor and the Owner will note the test record on the Testing Log to acknowledge test procedures and results. If the follow-up or corrective action is needed, the Contractor shall submit to the Owner, Architect and Construction Manager 2 written copies of proposed follow-up or corrective plans and obtain the Owner's written approval before proceeding.
1. Cost of Testing: If tests indicate that materials or work do not comply with requirements,

the contractor shall pay for all retesting, and shall remove and replace non-complying work at no additional cost to the Owner.

- J. Local Owner Inspections: The Contractor is also responsible for coordinating and cooperating with local requirements for inspections.

END OF SECTION 014326

 <b>NYS EDUCATION DEPARTMENT</b> <b>Office of Facilities Planning</b> <b>89 Washington Avenue, Room 1060 EBA</b> <b>Albany, NY 12234</b>		<b>STATEMENT OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS</b> As required by the Building Code of NYS (2020 BCNYS) <i>Note: The code listings below are not to be considered all inclusive.</i>	
BCNYS § 1704.2.3 requires the NYS Licensed Design Professional (of record) to complete the Statement of Special Inspections and Tests. Completion of the Statement of Special Inspections & Tests, <b>and</b> ; Submission to the Office of Facilities Planning with the Construction Permit Application is a condition for issuance of the Building Permit.			
School District Eastchester Union Free School District		Project Title 2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2	
Building Eastchester Middle / High School			
SED Project # 660301-03-0003-030		Project Address 2 Stewart Place, Eastchester, NY 10709	
Architect/Engineer: Daryl Mastracci			
A/E Firm (or Dba): MEMASI		Phone 9149159521	Date 8/1/2022
Comments: NYBC 1704.2 Special Inspections and Tests, Exception 1. 'Special Inspections and tests not required for construction of a minor nature [...]'			

INSPECTION AND TESTING Continuous & Periodic is as Defined by the BCNYS CHAPTER 17 All reports to be submitted to the owners representative for use, approval and record.		CONTINUOUS	PERIODIC	REFERENCE STANDARD	BCNYS REFERENCE	CHECK IF REQUIRED	IDENTIFY SPEC SECTION AND PROVIDE CLARIFYING NOTES IF NECESSARY
<b>A. Steel Construction</b>		<b>Ch. 22</b>					
1.	Material verification of high-strength bolts, nuts and washers.		X	AISC 360	1705.2 2204	<input type="checkbox"/>	
2.	Inspection of high-strength bolting.	X	X	AISC 360 ACI 318	1705.2 2204.2	<input type="checkbox"/>	
3.	Material verification of <b>Structural Steel. Open Web Steel Joist and Girders.</b> Basic protection of steel members, <b>Seismic Resistance</b>			AISC 360 ASTM A6, A514, A29 SJ100, 200 AISC 341	1705.2 2203, 2205 1705.2 2207	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>	
4.	Spray Applied Fire Resistant Materials & Specialized Finishes			ASTM E605, E736	1705.14 1705.15	<input type="checkbox"/>	
5.	<b>Cold Formed Steel Construction-</b> load bearing. <b>Seismic Resistance</b>			AISI S100, S220, S240 ANSI/SDI -NC1.0, RD1.0, SDI-C, ASCE 7, 8 AISI S400	1704.2.5 2210 2211	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>	
6.	Material verification of weld filler materials.			AWS D1.1, D1.3	1705.2 2204.1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
7.	Inspection of welding:			ACI 318: 26.6.4	T 1705.3 2204	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
a.	Structural steel	X	X	AWS D1.1, D1.3	1705.2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
b.	Reinforcing steel	X	X	AWS D1.1, D1.3	1705.3.1	<input type="checkbox"/>	
c.	Cold Formed Steel Deck			AISC S100, ASCE 7, 8	1705.2.2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
8.	Inspection of steel frame joint details.		X		1705.2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	

INSPECTION AND TESTING Continuous & Periodic as Defined by the BCNYS CHAPTER 17 All reports to be submitted to the owners representative for use, approval and record.		CONTINUOUS	PERIODIC	REFERENCE STANDARD	BCNYS REFERENCE	CHECK IF REQUIRED	IDENTIFY SPEC SECTION AND PROVIDE CLARIFYING NOTES IF NECESSARY
<b>B. Concrete Construction</b>		<b>Ch. 19</b>					
1.	Inspection of reinforcing steel, including prestressing tendons, and verify placement.		X	Ch. 21, 22 ACI 318; Ch 20, 25.2, 25.3, 26.6.1, 26.6.3 AISC 360	T 1705.3 1901 1905	<input type="checkbox"/>	
2.	Inspection of reinforcing steel bar welding.			ACI 318, AWS D1.4	T 1705.3	<input type="checkbox"/>	
3.	Inspection of anchors to be installed in concrete prior to and during placement.	X		ACI 318: 17.8.2, 17.8.2.4	T 1705.3	<input type="checkbox"/>	
4.	Verify use of required design mix.		X	ACI 318: Ch. 19, 26.4.3, 26.4.4	T 1705.3 1904 1908	<input type="checkbox"/>	
5.	Sampling fresh concrete: slump, air content, temperature, strength test specimens.	X		ASTM C172, C31 ACI 318: 26.5, 26.9, 26.10, 26.11	T 1705.3 1901 1905 1908	<input type="checkbox"/>	
6.	Inspection of placement for proper application techniques.	X		ACI 318: 26.5	T 1705.3	<input type="checkbox"/>	
7.	Inspection for maintenance of specified curing temperature and techniques.		X	ACI 318: 26.5	T 1705.3 1908 1909	<input type="checkbox"/>	
8.	Inspection of prestressed concrete.	X		ACI 318: 26.10	T 1705.3	<input type="checkbox"/>	
9.	Erection of precast concrete members.		X	ACI 318: 26.9	T 1705.3	<input type="checkbox"/>	
10.	Verification of in-situ concrete strength prior to stressing of tendons and prior to removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.		X	ACI 318: 26.11.2	T 1705.3	<input type="checkbox"/>	
11	Inspection of formwork		X	ACI 318: 26.11.1.2 (b)	T 1705.3	<input type="checkbox"/>	



C. Masonry Construction				Ch. 21					
INSPECTION AND TESTING Continuous & Periodic as is Defined by the BCNYS CHAPTER 17 All reports to be submitted to the owners representative for use, approval and record.				CONTINUOUS	PERIODIC	REFERENCE STANDARD	BCNYS REFERENCE	CHECK IF REQUIRED	IDENTIFY SPEC SECTION AND PROVIDE CLARIFYING NOTES IF NECESSARY
	L1 = Level 1 Inspection required for nonessential facilities. L2 = Level 2 Inspection required for essential facilities. * In general, schools are not considered essential facilities unless they are a designated emergency shelter.					ASTM E119 UL 263 ASTM C1364 ASTM C1670 ASTM A706 ASCE 7, 8	TMS 402, 403, 404, 504, 602  1705.4 2101 1604		
1.	Verify to ensure compliance:								
	a.	Proportions of site prepared mortar and grout.			X L1 & L2		1705.4 2103.2	<input type="checkbox"/>	
	b.	Placement of masonry units and construction of mortar joints.			X L1 & L2		1705.4 T 1705.3	<input type="checkbox"/>	
	c.	Location and placement of reinforcement, connectors, tendons, anchorages.			X L1 & L2		1705.45 2103.4 T 1705.3	<input type="checkbox"/>	
	d.	Prestressing technique.			X L1		1705.4	<input type="checkbox"/>	
		Grout space prior to grouting.		X L2			1705.4	<input type="checkbox"/>	
	e.	Grade and size of prestressing tendons and anchorages.			X L1		1705.4	<input type="checkbox"/>	
		Placement of grout.		X L2			1705.4	<input type="checkbox"/>	
	f.	Grout specs prior to grouting.		X L2			1705.4	<input type="checkbox"/>	
2.	Inspection program shall verify:								
	a.	Size and location of structural elements.			X L1 & L2		1704.5 1705.4	<input type="checkbox"/>	
	b.	Type, size, and location of anchors.		X L2	X L1		1705.4 T 1705.3	<input type="checkbox"/>	
	c.	Specified size, grade, and type of reinforcement.			X L1 & L2		1704.5	<input type="checkbox"/>	
	d.	Welding of reinforcing bars.		X L1 & L2			1704.5	<input type="checkbox"/>	
	e.	Cold/hot weather protection of masonry construction.			X L1 & L2		1704.5, 2104.3, 2104.4	<input type="checkbox"/>	
	f.	Prestressing force measurement and application.		X L2	X L1		1704.5	<input type="checkbox"/>	
3.	Verification accessory placement prior to grouting:			X L2	X L1		1704.5, 2105.2.2, 2105.3	<input type="checkbox"/>	
4.	Grout placement.			X L1			1704.5	<input type="checkbox"/>	
5.	Preparation of grout specimens, mortar specimens, and/or prisms.			X L1 & L2			1704.5, 2105.2.2, 2105.3	<input type="checkbox"/>	
6.	Compliance with documents and submittals.				X L1 & L2		1704.5	<input type="checkbox"/>	

INSPECTION AND TESTING Continuous & Periodic is as Defined by the BCNYS CHAPTER 17 All reports to be submitted to the owners representative for use, approval and record.		CONTINUOUS	PERIODIC	REFERENCE STANDARD	BCNYS REFERENCE	CHECK IF REQUIRED	IDENTIFY SPEC SECTION AND PROVIDE CLARIFYING NOTES IF NECESSARY
<b>D. Wood Construction</b>		<b>Ch. 23</b>					
1.	Fabrication process of prefabricated <b>Wood Structural Elements</b> and assemblies.		X	Ch. 16 AWC, APA, CPA, DOC PS1, PS2	1704.6, 1705.5 2302, 2303 2304	<input type="checkbox"/>	
2.	High-load diaphragms <b>Seismic Resistance</b>		X		1704, 1705, 1704.6 2304, 2305 2306, 2307, 2308	<input type="checkbox"/>	
<b>E. Soils</b>		<b>Ch. 18</b>					
1.	Geotechnical Investigations, Excavations, Grading, Fill Damp-proofing/ Water-Proofing		X	ASTM, NYS DOT OSHA Appendix J- BCNYS	1704, 1706 1803, 1804, 1805	<input type="checkbox"/>	
2.	<b>Flood &amp; Stormwater Hazards</b> [ per BCNYS 106 ]		X	<u>Local Highway Authority</u> <u>Flood Plain Admin.</u> Appendix G- BCNYS	1703 1610, 1611, 1612 1805.1.2.1	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>	
<b>F. Specialized Foundations- Piers, Piles</b>		<b>Ch. 16</b>					
1.	Deep Foundation Elements: Driven Piles Cast in Place Helical Piles		X		T 1705.7 T 1705.8 1705.7 1705.8 1705.9	<input type="checkbox"/>	
<b>G. Exterior Wall Coverings</b>		<b>Ch. 14</b>					
1.	Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS) MCM, HPL, Other Combustible Materials		X	ASTM E2568, E2273, E2570 E2393, E84 Ch. 16 NFPA 268, 275, 285, 286	1405, 1406, 1407, 1408 1704.2, 1705.12.5 1705.16	<input type="checkbox"/>	
<b>H. Misc.</b>							
1.	Access Floors and Storage Racks Other Architectural, MEP Components <b>Seismic Resistance</b>		X		1705.12	<input type="checkbox"/>	
2.	In-Situ Testing		X		1604.6, 1708	<input type="checkbox"/>	
3.	Pre-Construction Load Testing		X		1604.7, 1709	<input type="checkbox"/>	
4.	Fire Resistant Penetrations & Joints Fire Stops Testing for Smoke Control		X	Ch. 7 ASTM E119 UL 263	1705.17 1705.18	<input type="checkbox"/>	
5.	<b>Pre-Submission:</b> <b>Inventory of all Fire-Resistant-Rated</b> <b>Construction- Level 2 Alterations and</b> <b>greater [ per BCNYS 106 ]</b>	X		verification required EBCNYS Ch. 3 C. of E. 155 Regulations.	<b>FCNYS 701.6</b> <b>BCNYS 703.7</b> <b>19CRR-NY XXXII</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
6.	<b>Pre-Submission:</b> <b>Hazardous Material Survey</b> <b>Water Quality Survey</b>	X X		verification required <u>ACM Letter- Certificate</u> C. of E. 155 Regulations.	US-EPA NYS-DOH	<input type="checkbox"/>	
7.	Other:					<input type="checkbox"/>	

SECTION 01 50 00 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes requirements for temporary facilities and controls, including temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- B. Temporary utilities include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Sanitary facilities, including toilets, wash facilities, and drinking-water facilities.
  - 2. Ventilation.
  - 3. Electric power service.
  - 4. Lighting.
  - 5. Temporary Heating.
- C. Security and protection facilities include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Environmental protection.
  - 2. Tree and plant protection.
  - 3. Site enclosure fence.
  - 4. Security enclosure and lockup.
  - 5. Barricades, warning signs, and lights.
  - 6. Temporary enclosures.
  - 7. Temporary partitions.
  - 8. Fire protection.
- D. Unless work of this section is indicated to be provided under a specific contract, each Prime Contractor must provide, maintain and remove required temporary facilities necessary to perform his own construction activities.
- E. Accessible Temporary Egress: Comply with applicable provisions in ICC/ANSI A117.1.

1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulations: Comply with industry standards and applicable laws and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Building code requirements.
  - 2. Health and safety regulations.
  - 3. Utility company regulations.
  - 4. Police, fire department, and rescue squad rules.
  - 5. Environmental protection regulations.
  - 6. NYS SED 155.5

- B. Standards: Comply with NFPA 241 “Standard for Safeguarding Construction, Alterations, and Demolition Operations,” ANSI A10 Series standards for “Safety Requirements for Construction and Demolition,” and NECA Electrical Design Library “Temporary Electrical Facilities.”
  - 1. Electrical Service: Comply with NEMA, NECA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service in compliance with NFPA 70 “National Electric Code.”
- C. Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to inspect and test each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.

### 1.3 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Utilities: Each contractor will prepare a schedule indicating dates for implementation and termination of each temporary utility. At the earliest feasible time, when acceptable to the Owner, change over from use of temporary service to use of permanent service.
- B. Conditions of Use: Keep temporary services and facilities clean and neat in appearance. Operate in a safe and efficient manner. Relocate temporary services and facilities as the work progresses. Do not overload facilities or permit them to interfere with progress. Take necessary fire-preventive measures. Do not allow hazardous, dangerous, or unsanitary conditions, or public nuisances to develop or persist onsite.

### 1.4 DIVISION OF RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. General: These Specifications assign the Contractor responsibilities.
- B. Each Prime Contractor is responsible for the following:
  - 1. Installation, operation, maintenance and removal of each temporary facility considered as its own normal construction activity, as well as the costs and use charges except as listed below.
  - 2. Plug-in electric power cords and extension cords, supplementary plug-in task lighting, and special lighting necessary exclusively for its own activities.
  - 3. Its own storage, Conex boxes and fabrication sheds. ( Locate / Move as directed by CM )
  - 4. Hoisting requirements, including hoisting loads in excess of 2 tons, hoisting material or equipment into spaces below grade, and hoisting requirements outside the building enclosure. ( Rigging insurance must be provided when contractor hoisting equipment )
  - 5. Collection and disposal of its own hazardous, dangerous, unsanitary, and all waste material.
  - 6. Secure lock-up of its own tools, materials and equipment.
  - 7. Construction aids and miscellaneous services and facilities necessary exclusively for its own construction activities.
  - 8. Maintaining temporary facilities provided by Contractor.
  - 9. Complying with the regulations of the Commissioner of Education - 8 NYCRR 155.5 - Uniform Safety Standards for School Construction and Maintenance Projects specified in Division 1 Section “01 50 00 – Uniform Safety Standards for School Construction.”
  - 10. Containers for non-hazardous waste and debris generated by their own demolition and construction operations.

## 1.5 USE CHARGES

- A. General: Cost or use charges for temporary facilities are not chargeable to Owner, Architect or Construction Manager and shall be included in the Contract Sum. Allow other entities to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. The Architect and Construction Manager
  - 2. Other Contractors.
  - 3. Owners construction forces, including testing agencies
  - 4. Personnel of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Water Service: Use water from the Owner's existing water system without metering and without payment of use charges. Access to water shall be approved by the Owner.
- C. Electric Power Service: Temporary electric power including set-up and maintenance is the responsibility of the Electrical Contractor. Use charges by owner

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide new materials. If acceptable to the Architect / CM, the Contractor may use undamaged, previously used materials in good condition. Provide materials suitable for use intended.
- B. Lumber and Plywood:
  - 1. For signs and directory boards, provide exterior-type, Grade B-B high density concrete form overlay plywood of sizes and thicknesses indicated.
  - 2. For safety barriers, sidewalk bridges, and similar uses, provide minimum 5/8-inch-thick exterior plywood.
- C. Paint: Paint surfaces exposed to view from Owner occupied areas.
- D. Tarpaulins: Provide waterproof, fire-resistant, UL-labeled tarpaulins with flame-spread rating of 15 or less. For temporary enclosures, provide translucent, nylon-reinforced, laminated polyethylene or polyvinyl chloride, fire-retardant tarpaulins.
- E. Temporary Roofing – minimum ½" gypsum sheeting and 30 mil reinforced EPDM membrane.

### 2.2 EQUIPMENT

- A. Water Hoses: Provide 3/4-inch, heavy-duty, abrasion-resistant, flexible rubber hoses 100 feet long, with pressure rating greater than the maximum pressure of the water distribution system. Provide adjustable shutoff nozzles at hose discharge.
- B. Fire Extinguishers: Provide hand-carried, portable, UL-rated, Class A fire extinguishers for temporary offices and similar spaces. In other locations, provide hand-carried, portable, UL-rated, Class ABC, dry-chemical extinguishers or a combination of extinguishers of NFPA-recommended classes for the exposures.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. Use qualified personnel for installation of temporary facilities. Locate facilities where they will serve Protect adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the work. Relocate and modify facilities as required.
- B. Contractor shall provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Maintain and modify as required. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.
  - 1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.

### 3.2 CONTRACTOR FIELD OFFICES

- A. Contractor may with permission from the architect and construction manager establish a field office for their own use. Said offices for the individual prime contractor, sub contractors, specialty contractors and the like shall be of such size and design as approved by the owner and architect and shall be located where directed by the Owner/CM. Each representative contractor will arrange for telephone service and electric service, if required, directly with the utility company. (No field offices or storage trailers will be allowed by the buildings.)
- B. Maintain, in the contractor's field office, all articles for First Aid treatment. The contractor shall also establish standing arrangements for the immediate removal and hospital treatment of any employees and other persons on the job site who may be injured or who may become ill during the course work.

### 3.3 TEMPORARY AND PERMANENT SERVICES, GENERAL

- A. The Contractor's use of any permanent system or service of the building or portions thereof shall be subject to the Owners approval.
- B. The Contractor shall be responsible for any and all damage to permanent services used, and shall make good any and all damage to the satisfaction of the owner, prior to final completion and acceptance.
- C. NOTE - In accordance with OSHA and other applicable regulations, the representative Contractors performing erection of "skeleton" type work are solely responsible for the netting, guard rail protection and such other safety devices as deemed necessary to protect the workers and public from harm.

### 3.4 TEMPORARY LIGHT AND POWER

- A. Temporary Electric Power Service: **Electrical Contractor** shall provide and pay all costs to provide a weatherproof, grounded electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics to accommodate performance of work during the construction period.
  - 1. Responsibility: All work under this section to be provided by the **Electrical Contractor**.
  - 2. Applicability: This section applies to all renovation and new construction work areas for this Project.
  - 3. Electrical Contractor shall make arrangements with utility company for temporary and permanent services immediately after award of contract.
  - 4. Temporary or permanent services for temporarily or permanently installed building equipment such as sump pumps, boilers, cabinet heating and/ or cooling units and fans shall be furnished, installed, operated and maintained so that the said equipment may be operated for drainage and temporary heat when required and/ or when so ordered by the Architect/ Construction Manager.

5. **Electrical Contractor shall maintain all parts of the electrical system (temporary and permanent) active and in-service at all times throughout the contract duration.** All temporary lighting to be controlled by standard switches per code (outside of power panels).
6. Electrical contractor shall provide temporary generator power to maintain power during any electric service switch over. This includes all electric service in the building (power, fire alarm, lighting, communication, information technology, kitchen freezers/coolers, heating units, etc). Contractor shall assume generator(s) and temporary panels as necessary. Generators shall be located at the building exterior. Provide feeder cables, adequately sized, in accordance with NEC to feed temporary panels or existing sub-panels. Contractor shall include required fuel for operation.
7. Electrical Contractor shall maintain power during the hours established by Construction Manager.
8. Temporary Service: Install service and grounding in compliance with the National Electric Code (NFPA 70). Include necessary meters, transformers, overload protected disconnect and main distribution switch gear. Comply with all NECA, NEMA and UL Standards
9. Provide temporary service with an automatic ground-fault interrupter feature, activated from the circuits of the system.
10. Power Distribution System: Provide circuits of adequate size and proper characteristics for each use. In general run wiring overhead. Rise vertically where wiring will be least exposed to damage from construction operations.
11. Provide metal conduit, tubing or armored cable for protection of temporary power wiring where exposed to possible damage during construction operations. Where permitted by code, wiring of circuits not exceeding 110-120 Volt 20 Amp rating and wiring of lighting circuits may be non-metallic sheathed cable in areas where located overhead and exposed. Do not wire temporary lighting with plain, exposed (insulated) electrical conductors. Provide metal enclosures or boxes for wiring devices.
12. Provide overload-protected disconnect switch as required by code.
13. For power hand tools and task lighting, provide temporary 4-gang outlets at each floor level, spaced so that a 100 foot extension cord can reach each work area. Provide separate 110-120 Volt, 20 Amp circuit for each 4-gang outlet (4 outlets per circuit).
14. Maintaining all existing systems, including but not limited to, power, lighting, fire alarm, intercom, etc., within the existing building operational at all times for Owner occupancy and construction.

**B. TEMPORARY ELECTRICAL AND TELEPHONE SERVICES**

1. Temporary Power Source: At each building / renovation area, use the existing electrical power distribution system for temporary power source.
2. Owner's Requirements: Do not disrupt the Owner's needs for continuous power at each building.
3. Electrical Contractor shall provide temporary power and lighting facilities for use of all trades. All temporary light and power shall be in accordance with the required Codes and Safety Standards.
4. Electrical Contractor will include in their base bid: Construction Manager trailer hook up at Eastchester High School staging area ( behind building at new gym) with : a) power, b) two phone lines, and c) DSL connection within 5 days after notification by CM. Lines will be run in conduit below grade and/or install utility poles as necessary.
5. All other contractor trailer use / connection charges for power and telephone to be paid for by the respective contractor.

**C. RECEPTACLE REQUIREMENTS**

1. General Requirements: Provide temporary receptacle outlets as required Minimum Requirements: Provide a minimum of one quad 120 volt receptacle per 2500 square feet of building floor area, with maximum spacing of 50 feet on center for operation of portable tools and appliances during the construction period.
2. Branch Circuits: All temporary receptacle branch circuits to be rated 20 amps with a maximum of (3) duplex receptacles per circuit. Temporary receptacle branch circuits shall be independent of temporary lighting circuits.

D. LIGHTING REQUIREMENTS

1. General Requirements: Electrical Contractor shall provide both interior and exterior lighting at areas where existing lighting has been removed and at new construction areas, as required to provide adequate illumination for safe and proper construction operations and Project Site security.
2. Minimum Requirements: Provide illumination levels adequate for construction operations and safe traffic conditions. As a minimum provide one 200 watt lamp per 400 square feet of building floor area, with maximum spacing of 20 feet. Any rooms in excess of 500 sf will receive one 400 watt metal halide fixture for each 1000 sf of area.
3. Stairways: Provide one 200 watt lamp per landing at each stairway and covered walkway.
4. Supplemental Lighting: If required, supplemental lighting beyond minimum requirements shall be provided via suitable portable lighting units with cord and plugs, and shall be paid for by the Contractor or Sub- Contractor requiring such additional lighting.
5. Restrictions: Do not use permanent lighting systems for temporary construction lighting purposes.

E. MAXIMUM LOADS

1. General: Lighting and power loads connected to the temporary power distribution system shall be limited to the following maximum individual loads:

a.	Load Type	Maximum
b.	120 volt, 1-phase	1.5 KVA
c.	208 volt, 1-phase	2.5 KVA
d.	208 volt, 3-phase	5.0 KVA
2. General: The temporary power distribution system shall be sufficiently sized to provide temporary power as required within this section. Meter and Meter connections to be part of electrical contractors base bid.

F. ELECTRICAL WELDERS

1. Separate Power Sources Required: Power for electric welders and for other loads larger than the maximum allowable sizes shall be taken from portable power sources provided, paid for and operated by the Contractor or Sub-Contractor requiring the use of such equipment. Remove such power sources when no longer needed.

G. ELECTRICAL ENERGY COSTS

1. Paid By Owner: Charges for electrical energy usage for temporary power and lighting will be paid by the Owner, when taken from the Owner's electrical services. Contractor and Sub-Contractors shall exercise measures to conserve energy usage. Use of owner electric for items not specific to project (e.g. heating construction shanties, etc.) will not be permitted



### 3.5 TEMPORARY TOILET FACILITIES

- A. Sanitary Facilities: Sanitary facilities include temporary toilets, wash facilities and drinking water fixtures. Comply with governing regulations including safety and health codes for the type, number, location, operation and maintenance of fixtures and facilities; provide not less than specified requirements. Install in locations which will best serve the project's needs. Existing facilities should not be used.
- B. Responsibilities: The **General Contractor** is responsible for temporary sanitary facilities and their maintenance, cleaning and supplies for use by all trades at each of the four school locations. Sufficient quantity/locations to properly handle the amount of workers onsite.
- C. Supply and maintain toilet tissue, paper towels, paper cups and other disposable materials as appropriate for each facility, including Owner's Representative's temporary offices for full contract duration. Provide covered waste containers for used material.
- D. Provide separate toilet facilities for male and female construction personnel.
- E. Provide separate toilet facilities for Construction Manager personnel located at direction of Construction Manager.

### 3.6 TEMPORARY HEATING

- A. The **Mechanical Contractor** will maintain 60 degree temperature in all areas via temporary or permanent systems. The Mechanical Contractor will submit a detailed plan including sketches indicating his proposed temporary heating system for engineer approval within 4 weeks of contract award. The **Electrical Contractor** will provide permanent or temporary power for Mechanical Contractor's units for temporary heating. The fuel, equipment, materials, operating personnel and methods used therefore shall be at all times satisfactory to the Architect and Construction Manager and adequate for the purpose intended. The use of electric heaters is not acceptable. All required fuel is part of the Mechanical contract.
- B. The Contractor shall maintain the critical installation temperatures provided in the technical provisions of the specifications herein for all work in those areas where same is being performed.
- C. The maintenance of proper heating, ventilation and adequate drying out of the work is the responsibility of the contractor and any work damaged by dampness, insufficient or abnormal heating, shall be replaced to the satisfaction of the Architect by and at the sole expense of the contractor.
- D. Before and during the placing of gypsum and the application of other interior finishes, taping, varnishing, painting, etc. and until final acceptance by the Owner of all work covered by the Contract, the contractor shall, unless otherwise specified in the contract documents, maintain a temperature of 65 degrees F. Coordinate with Division 9 of the Technical Specifications.
- E. Use of the permanent system, **if approved by engineer and owner permission granted, shall not shorten, or negate any equipment, or system guarantees** required under this contract. (the warranty period starts upon date of substantial completion ). Two additional filter changes are to be provided by Mechanical Contract. A program of use, maintenance and restoration will be submitted with request for use of systems for temporary services.

### 3.7 TEMPORARY WATER

- A. Each Contractor shall:
  - 1. Provide all hose and other extensions from connections at the building. Contractor and all labor, materials and supplies required to supply water to their work.

2. Prevent water damage to the work.

### 3.8 STORAGE FACILITIES

- A. Each Contractor shall provide temporary storage shanties, tool houses and other facilities as required for their own use. Temporary structures shall be located at the Construction Manager's designated staging area, and shall be removed upon completion of the work or when directed.
- B. Materials delivered to the site shall be safely stored and adequately protected against loss or damage in watertight, environmentally controlled, lockable, Conex boxes. Particular care shall be taken to protect humidity/temperature sensitive materials (e.g. – wood doors, casework, ceiling tile, etc) in the proper climate controlled environment. All costs for properly storing materials is paid for by applicable contractor in their base bid.
- C. Due to limited on site storage space, each Contractor shall coordinate delivery of his materials with the Construction Manager who will determine when large deliveries shall be made and shall be designate storage locations on site for delivered materials. All stored materials must be stored in locked, watertight trailers, paid for by applicable contractor.

### 3.9 SCAFFOLDING AND STAGING

- A. All scaffold, staging and appurtenances thereto shall comply in total to the requirements of Safety and Health Regulations for Construction Chapter XVII of OSHA, Part 1926 and all related amendments.

### 3.10 RUBBISH CONTAINER

- A. Each Contractor shall provide suitable rubbish container device(s) for his own use (both demolition and construction debris), properly maintained and serviced, replaced as required and protected from access by the public fencing as may be specified herein or approved by the Architect or Construction Manager.
- B. Contractor and Subcontractor shall sweep up and gather together daily all his own rubbish and removed materials and place same in containers.

### 3.11 CONSTRUCTION FENCING

- A. Construction fencing and barriers shall be provided by the **General Contractor**, enclosing all work and storage areas as outlined in **staging plans at the end of this section and in addition to specified below**. Temporary construction fencing shall be of good quality and neat in appearance; 8' high chain link fencing, 9 ga fabric on stanchions with vision barrier screening fabric securely fastened. ( Post driven installation where approved by CM ) Open-Mesh Chain Link Fencing: Provide 0.120-inch-thick, galvanized steel posts, and 2.875" dia. Gate posts. Provide lockable gates. ( Keys to owner, architect and CM )
- B. Site access gates shall be provided as required, complete with all operating hardware and security devices.
- C. Should fencing be required to be relocated or modified during the course of the project due to additional access needed by the contractor, same shall be done at the total expense of the contractor.
- D. In addition to fencing indicated on drawings for the Security Additions at the HS/MS, Waverly and Greenvale Schools the **General Contractor** will provide fencing/staging in locations as designated by owner and CM. ( match specifications above, stanchion-type). Provide the following :

**HS/MS** - 50' x 100' enclosed staging area(s) with 16' wide gates, for use by all trades.

**Greenvale**- 50' x 50' enclosed staging area(s) with 12' wide gates, for use by all trades

**Waverly** - 50' x 50' enclosed staging area(s) with 12' wide gates, for use by all trades

**Anne Hutchinson** - 50' x 50' enclosed staging area(s) with 12' wide gates, for use by all trades

### 3.12 JANITORIAL SERVICE/DAILY CLEANUP

- A. Each Contractor shall furnish daily janitorial services for the project and perform any required maintenance of facilities as deemed necessary by the Architect and Construction Manager during the entire life of the contract. If any contractor fails to keep the site safe and broom clean within 4 hours of being notified by CM, either verbally or in writing, the construction manager will have the cleanup work performed by others and the contractors will be back charged accordingly.
  - 1. In addition to the above, the **General Contractor** shall provide a daily sweep and a weekly damp mop of all work areas.

### 3.13 BURNING

- A. Burning will not be permitted.

### 3.14 FIRE PREVENTION CONTROL

- A. Each Contractor shall comply with the safety provisions of the National Fire Protection Association's "National Fire Codes" pertaining to the work and, particularly, in connection with any cutting or welding performed as part of the work.

### 3.15 TEMPORARY FIRE PROTECTION

- A. Each Contractor shall take all possible precautions for the prevention of fires.
  - 1. Where flame cutting torches, blow torches, or welding tools are required to be used, their use shall be as approved by the Construction Manager at the site.
  - 2. When welding tools or torches of any type are in use, have available in the immediate vicinity of the work a fire extinguisher of the dry chemical 20 lbs. Type. The fire extinguisher(s) shall be provided and maintained by the Contractor doing such work.
- B. Fuel for cutting and heating torches shall be gas only and shall be contained in Underwriters laboratory approved containers.
- C. No volatile liquids shall be used for cleaning agents or as fuels for motorized equipment or tools within a building except with the express approval of the Owner and/or Architect and in accordance with local codes. On-site bulk storage of volatile liquids shall be outside the buildings at locations directed by the Owner, who shall determine the extent of volatile liquid allowed within the building at any given time.
- D. Each Contractor shall comply with the following requirements relating to compressed gas:
  - 1. Where compressed gas of any type is used for any purpose at the site, it shall be contained in cylinders complying with ICC regulations. Gases of different types shall not be stored together except when in use and when such proximity is required.
  - 2. All persons required to handle gas cylinders or to act as temporary firemen (Fire Watchers) shall be able to read, write and understand the English language; they shall also be required by the Contractor to read Part 3 of Pamphlet P-1 "Safe Handling of Compressed Gases" published by the Compressed Gas Association, 500 Fifth Avenue, New York, NY 10036.

- E. Each Contractor shall comply with the following requirements relating to welding and cutting:
1. All cutting and/or welding (electric or gas) must be done only by skilled, certified and licensed personnel.
  2. During welding or cutting operations, a contractors man shall act as a fire watcher. The fire watcher shall have proper eye protection and suitable fire fighting equipment including fire extinguisher (bearing current inspection Certificate), protective gloves and any other equipment deemed necessary.
  3. Tanks supplying gases for welding or cutting are to be placed in an upright position securely fastened, and close as practical to the operation. Tanks, actives or spares, shall be protected from excess heat and shall not be placed in stairways, hallways or exits. When not in use, protective valve cap shall be screwed on the cylinder.
  4. Adequate fire extinguishing equipment shall be maintained at all welding or cutting operations.

3.16 VENTILATION AND HUMIDITY CONTROL FOR CONSTRUCTION:

- A. **General Contractor** will provide temporary ventilation as required for protecting the building from any adverse effects of high humidity during abatement and construction activities. Select dehumidification and ventilating equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed. Coordinate ventilation requirements and have sufficient quantity of units to produce necessary ambient conditions.
1. Each Contractor shall be responsible for his own temporary ventilation required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of high humidity.
  2. Ventilate enclosed area to dissipate humidity, and to prevent accumulation of dust, fumes, vapors or gases.
  3. Provide equipment as necessary for air and fresh exchange for the work area per OSHA standards.
  4. If Contractor fails to adequately ventilate the building during the construction, abatement / roofing process, thereby causing humidity and possible mold issues, the owner will hire others to properly address and deduct costs from the Contractor accordingly.
  5. General Contractor will provide negative air machines of sufficient size/qty to fully ventilate the square footage of work areas and exhaust any dust/fumes through flexible duct hose to exterior top eliminate any orders / smoke.
  6. Any contractor whom allows water infiltration to building is responsible for cleanup and commercial dehumidifiers of sufficient size/qty to prevent mold growth. Failure to immediately address ( 4 hours notice) will result in the owners hiring others and backcharging in order to insure a safe environment.

3.17 TEMPORARY ROADS AND PERMANENT PAVED AREAS :

- A. **General Contractor** shall construct and maintain temporary road areas adequate to support loads and to withstand exposure to traffic during construction period.
1. Temporary roads/ staging areas will consist of one layer soil separation fabric, 8" of compacted NYS DOT Item 4. Contractor will maintain and field dress with additional material as necessary to prevent ruts and potholes.
  2. Includes access for delivery through staging area to building work areas, and to equipment and storage areas and sheds.
  3. Provide dust-control treatment that is nonpolluting and nontracking. Reapply treatment as required to minimize dust.

4. Road Cleaning: Maintain roads and walkways in an acceptably clean condition. This includes the removal of debris daily, if required, and/or a minimum of once a week due to all project traffic. Road cleaning equipment to be wet/vacuum type. The General Contractor will clean roads for debris from building-related activities.
5. Staging Areas:  
Temporary parking by construction personnel shall be allowed only in areas so designated.

### 3.18 DE-WATERING FACILITIES AND DRAINS

- A. Each Prime Contractor is directly responsible for de-watering of their excavations. The responsibility of de-watering of the site as to facilitate the work will be the responsibility of the General Contractor, coordinate with CM.
- B. Comply with requirements in applicable Division 31 Sections for temporary drainage and de-watering facilities and operations not directly associated with construction activities included in individual Sections. Where feasible, use same facilities. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
- C. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining property nor endanger permanent drainage piping system, provide temporary drainage where roofing or similar waterproof deck construction is completed.
- D. Remove snow and ice as required to minimize accumulations.

### 3.19 ROOF PROTECTIONS

- A. All Contractors shall provide temporary protection on the roof surface when it is necessary for work to take place on completed sections. ( Minimum 2" polyiso insulation and plywood )
- B. Upon such notification as required in subparagraph A, the Contractor shall assume responsibility for damages, if any, to the roofing system caused by the work of other trades, except that financial liability for any and all damages rests with the offending trade.

### 3.20 TEMPORARY SITE SAFETY AND DIRECTIONAL SIGNS

- A. The **General Contractor** shall provide signs as required below. Install signs where required or indicated to inform public and persons seeking entrance to project. All signage and posts become the property of the owner at the conclusion of the project.
- B. Construct signs in accordance with section 619 of the NYS DOT standard specifications (MUTCD overall sign size, letter size, metal signage). Support on breakaway metal posts or attach to fencing; do not attach signs to buildings or permanent construction.
- C. Include relocating temporary site safety and directional signs as many times as required or directed.
- D. For construction traffic control/flow at entrances/exits, as designated by the Owner (6 required) Large sign 4' x4' Orange with Black Letters ( "Construction Entrance Only")
- E. To direct visitors (4 required)
- F. For construction parking (2 required)
- G. To direct deliveries (4 required)
- H. Emergency egress only – Construction area (4 required)

- I. Per OSHA standards as necessary
- J. For “No Smoking” safe work site at multiple locations (12 required)
- K. Construction Area – Do Not Enter (30) mount on fence
- L. No Trespassing (30) mount on fence
- M. A premobilization meeting to establish location and quantities of all signage will be held with contractor, Construction Manager, and owner. Prior to the start of any actual work the signage must be reviewed / approved by the Construction Manager.

### 3.21 STORMWATER CONTROL

- A. The **General Contractor** shall provide earthen embankments, silt fence, haybales, and similar barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction, sufficient to prevent flooding by runoff of storm water from heavy rains during sitework activities.

### 3.22 BARRICADES, WARNING SIGNS AND LIGHTS:

- A. Comply with standards and code requirements for erecting structurally adequate barricades. Paint with appropriate colors, graphics, and warning signs to inform personnel and public of possible hazard.
  - 1. For safety barriers, sidewalk bridges, and similar uses, provide minimum 5/8-inch-(16-mm-) thick exterior plywood.

### 3.23 TEMPORARY ENCLOSURES

- A. Mechanical Contractor will provide temporary watertight enclosures for protection of construction, from exposure, foul weather and safety for any roof related openings. Close openings in roof deck with load bearing wood framed construction, 3/4" plywood and watertight membrane
- B. **General Contractor and Window Contractor** will provide temporary 2" x4" wood framing, 2" polyiso insulation, 1/2" plywood, and cover with 6 mil plastic; for any open exterior window removal, wall removal, door entrance locations, etc. created as part of their contract for weather and security protection at the end of each workday.
- C. Any other temporary enclosures for specific openings for a contractor to perform their work are the responsibility of the contractor creating the opening and shall be installed to protect the building from exterior elements, security issues, odors / noise resulting from construction.

### 3.24 TEMPORARY PARTITIONS and FLOOR PROTECTIONS

- A. **General Contractor** shall erect and maintain dustproof partitions and temporary enclosures to limit dust and dirt migration and to separate work areas from fumes.
  - 1. Construct dustproof, floor to ceiling partitions of not less than 3-5/8" – 20 ga. studs , 2 layers of 6 mil poly sheets inside / outside, sound batt insulation, exterior sheathing 5/8" plywood , interior sheathing 5/8" gypsum taped/painted where owner occupied. Caulk seal joints and perimeter to prevent dust migrations. Equip partitions with dustproof doors and security locks.
  - 2. Cover floor with 2 layer poly and extend up the side 18". Overlap and tape full length joints
  - 3. In addition to any temporary partition locations shown on drawings, General Contractor will include in his base bid 12 ea. 9' x12' temporary partitions meeting the above criteria for use where directed.

4. Temporary Floor Protections – Shall be “Ram-Board” **Heavy Duty** with taped joints or equivalent. Finish Flooring ( new or existing ) will be fully covered by GC. Areas of isolated MEP work will be protected with Ram- Board by the individual prime contractor
5. Any unfinished openings ( e.g. – windows , doors , fire shutters, etc) which remain in place by the start of school in September will be completely enclosed with fire-rated AC plywood painted.

3.25 AREAS OF SPECIAL PROTECTION:

- A. In the event of an emergency (designated by the sounding of the fire alarm system) all construction activities must immediately cease. Contractor’s work force will evacuate themselves from work areas and remain outside of work areas until the “all clear” is given. No work operations will be tolerated during the evacuation of the building or during an emergency

3.26 ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION:

- A. Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction in ways and by methods that comply with environmental regulations, and minimize the possibility that air, waterways, and subsoil might be contaminated or polluted or that other undesirable effects might result. Avoid use of tools and equipment that produce harmful noise. Restrict use of noise-making tools and equipment to hours that will minimize complaints from persons or firms near the site.

3.27 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. Limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses to minimize waste and abuse.
- B. Termination and Removal: Unless the Architect/ CM requests that it be maintained longer, remove each temporary facility when the need has ended or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been affected because of interference with the temporary facility. Repair damaged work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
  1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are the Contractors property.
  2. At Substantial Completion, clean and renovate permanent facilities used during the construction period including.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 016000 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for requests for substitutions.
  - 2. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting warranties.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
  - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
  - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Salvaged items or items reused from other projects are not considered new products. Items that are manufactured or fabricated to include recycled content materials are considered new products, unless indicated otherwise.
  - 3. Comparable Product: Product by named manufacturer that is demonstrated and approved through the comparable product submittal process described in Part 2 "Comparable Products" Article, to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a single manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation. Published attributes and characteristics of basis-of-design product establish salient characteristics of products.
  - 1. Evaluation of Comparable Products: In addition to the basis-of-design product description, product attributes and characteristics may be listed to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other special features and requirements for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification.
- C. Subject to Compliance with Requirements: Where the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements" introduces a product selection procedure in an individual Specification Section, provide products qualified under the specified product procedure. In the event that a named product or product by a named manufacturer does not meet the other requirements of the specifications, select another named product



or product from another named manufacturer that does meet the requirements of the specifications; submit a comparable product request or substitution request, if applicable.

- D. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: An action submittal complying with requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
- E. Substitution: Refer to Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for definition and limitations on substitutions.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
  - 1. Resolution of Compatibility Disputes between Multiple Contractors:
    - a. Contractors are responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with products and construction methods of other contractors.
    - b. If a dispute arises between the multiple contractors over concurrently selectable but incompatible products, Architect will determine which products shall be used.
- B. Identification of Products: Except for required labels and operating data, do not attach or imprint manufacturer or product names or trademarks on exposed surfaces of products or equipment that will be exposed to view in occupied spaces or on the exterior.
  - 1. Labels: Locate required product labels and stamps on a concealed surface, or, where required for observation following installation, on a visually accessible surface that is not conspicuous.
  - 2. Equipment Nameplates: Provide a permanent nameplate on each item of service- or power-operated equipment. Locate on a visually accessible but inconspicuous surface. Include information essential for operation, including the following:
    - a. Name of product and manufacturer.
    - b. Model and serial number.
    - c. Capacity.
    - d. Speed.
    - e. Ratings.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Modify or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of approved comparable products and approved substitutions.

#### 1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products, using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Delivery and Handling:
  - 1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
  - 2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.

3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and that products are undamaged and properly protected.

C. Storage:

1. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment.
2. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
3. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
4. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation and with adequate protection from wind.
5. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
6. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
7. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
8. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

1.7 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.

1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written standard warranty form furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and issued in the name of the Owner or endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner and issued in the name of the Owner or endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.

- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.

1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included in the Project Manual, prepare a written document, using indicated form properly executed.
3. See other Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.

- C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.

1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.

2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties meeting requirements of the Contract Documents.
4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.

B. Product Selection Procedures:

1. Sole Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
  - a. Sole product may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following."
2. Sole Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
  - a. Sole manufacturer/source may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following."
3. Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Limited list of products may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following."
4. Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following."
5. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications may additionally indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.
  - a. For approval of products not as specified in the Contract Documents, comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for substitutions for convenience.

C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require the phrase "match Architect's sample," provide a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.

1. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for proposal of product.

D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or a similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

## 2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Conditions for Consideration of Comparable Products: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with the following requirements:
1. Evidence that proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, is consistent with the Contract Documents, will produce the indicated results, and is compatible with other portions of the Work.
  2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those of the named basis-of-design product. Significant product qualities include attributes, such as type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other specific features and requirements.
  3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
  4. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
  5. Samples, if requested.
  6. Compliance with Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures".
  7. Completion of Section 012501 "Substitution Request Form".
- B. Architect's Action on Comparable Products Submittal: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation, as specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
1. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a comparable product request within time allocated.
- C. Submittal Requirements, Two-Step Process: Approval by the Architect of Contractor's request for use of comparable product is not intended to satisfy other submittal requirements. Comply with specified submittal requirements.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 016000

SECTION 017329 – CUTTING AND PATCHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes procedural requirements for cutting and patching.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 02 through 28 Sections for specific requirements and limitations applicable to cutting and patching individual parts of the Work.
    - a. Requirements in this Section also apply to mechanical and electrical installations associated with this project.
- C. Division of Responsibilities for Cutting and Patching Work: Each subcontractor shall perform cutting and patching required for its portion of the Work.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of existing construction necessary to permit installation or performance of other Work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore surfaces to original conditions after installation of other Work.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Cutting and Patching Plan: Where approval of procedures for cutting and patching is required before proceeding (see Article 1.4 below), submit a proposed plan describing procedures at least 14 days before the time cutting and patching will be performed requesting approval to proceed. Include the following information, as applicable, in the proposal:
  - 1. Extent: Describe cutting and patching, show how they will be performed, and indicate why they cannot be avoided.
  - 2. Changes to Existing Construction: Describe anticipated results. Include changes to structural elements and operating components as well as changes in building's appearance and other significant visual elements.
  - 3. Products: List products to be used and firms or entities that will perform the Work.
  - 4. Dates: Indicate when cutting and patching will be performed.
  - 5. Utilities: List utilities that cutting and patching procedures will disturb or affect. List utilities that will be relocated and those that will be temporarily out of service. Indicate how long service will be disrupted.
  - 6. Structural Elements: Where cutting and patching involved adding reinforcement to structural elements, submit details and engineering calculations showing integration of reinforcement with original structure.
- B. Architect's Approval: Obtain approval of cutting and patching proposal before cutting and patching. Approval does not waive right to later require removal and replacement of unsatisfactory work.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Minimize cutting and patching of work by properly coordinating construction sequences with Architect.
- B. Structural Elements: Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or load-deflection ratio.
  - 1. Obtain Architect's approval before cutting and patching any structural work that is not indicated on drawings.
- C. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
  - 1. Obtain Architect's approval before cutting and patching any operational element that is not indicated on drawings.
- D. Miscellaneous Elements: Do not cut and patch the following elements or related components, that are not indicated on drawings, in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operation life or safety.
  - 1. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
  - 2. Membranes and flashings.
  - 3. Equipment supports.
  - 4. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
  - 5. Noise and vibration-control elements and systems.
- E. Visual Requirements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch construction exposed on the exterior or in occupied spaces in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections of these Specifications.
- B. OSHA Approved materials, systems, equipment, scaffolding, PPE, rigging, lanyards, etc.
- C. Existing Materials: Use materials identical to existing materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match existing adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
  - 1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will match the visual and functional performance of existing materials.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces to be cut and patched and conditions under which cutting and patching are to be performed.
- B. Compatibility: Before patching, verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsafe or unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of Work to be cut.
- B. Roof Watertightness – Contractor must ensure that proper weather, protections, and manpower are present prior to demolishing the existing roof areas. Only remove what can be replaced/watertight in the same day. Contractor is responsible for any interior damages and any direct/indirect costs which accrue if they fail to maintain watertightness.
- C. Protection: Protect existing construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection for any portions of Project that might be damaged / soiled during cutting and patching operations.

3.3 PERFORMANCE

- A. General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
  - 1. Cut existing construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
  - 2. Related Electrical and Mechanical work will be performed by licensed subcontractors
- B. Cutting: Cut existing construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
  - 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots as small as possible, neatly to size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
  - 2. Existing Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
  - 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
  - 4. Mechanical and Electrical Services: By-pass utility services such as pipe or conduit, before cutting, where services are shown or required to be removed, relocated or abandoned. Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
  - 5. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.

- C. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other Work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections of these Specifications.
1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate integrity of installation.
  2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will eliminate evidence of patching and refinishing.
  3. Floors and Walls: Where portions of walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove existing floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
    - a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, apply primer and intermediate paint coats over the patch and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch, from wall-to-wall or corner-to-corner. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
  4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang existing ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
  5. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition.

#### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Thoroughly clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching is performed or used as access. Remove completely paint, mortar, oils, putty and items of similar nature. Thoroughly clean piping, conduit and similar features before painting or other finishing is applied. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.

END OF SECTION 017329



SECTION 01 74 00 - CLEANING UP

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION OF THE WORK:

A. The work of this section relates to the following:

1. Maintain all premises and public properties/roadways free from accumulations of waste, debris, dirt, mud and rubbish caused by operations on a daily basis.
2. At completion of work, remove waste materials, rubbish tools, equipment, machinery and surplus materials, and clean all sight exposed surfaces; leave project clean and ready for occupancy.
3. Remove all overspray caused by construction operations from adjacent construction, surfaces and vehicles.

B. Related Requirements Specified Elsewhere

1. Summary of work: Section 011000
2. Cleaning for Specific Products or Work: the respective sections of the specifications:

1.2 SAFETY REQUIREMENTS

A. Standards: Maintain project in accord with safety and insurance standards.

B. Hazard Control/Cleaning Products

1. Store volatile waste in covered metal containers and remove from premises daily.
2. Provide adequate ventilation during use of volatile or noxious substances.

C. Conduct cleaning and disposal operations to comply with local ordinances and anti-pollution laws.

1. Do not burn or bury rubbish and waste materials on project site.
2. Do not dispose of volatile waste such as mineral spirits, oil, or paint thinner in storm or sanitary drains.
3. Do not dispose of waste into streams or waterways.

1.3 PRODUCTS

A. Materials: Use only cleaning materials recommended by manufacturer of surface to be cleaned.

PART 2 - EXECUTION

2.1 REQUIREMENTS DURING CONSTRUCTION:

- A. Execute daily cleaning to ensure that building, grounds, and public properties and roadways are maintained free from accumulations of waste materials, rubbish, dirt, mud and dust.

- B. Wet down dry materials and rubbish to lay dust and prevent blowing dust.
- C. Each day, all contractors shall adhere to the following:
  - 1. Areas of intense activity, such as cutting and sawing must be swept clean and reorganized at the end of each day. Utilize dust control methods such as plastic containment , containment hut and/or wetting of surfaces.
  - 2. Areas of moderate activity such as installation of plumbing, ductwork, electrical work must be returned to good order at the end of each day.
  - 3. Debris below scaffolds (and shoring/re-shoring) must at all time, be kept sufficiently consolidated to keep walkways free of tripping hazards. These work areas must also be swept clean immediately upon removal of scaffolds.
  - 4. All swept up debris, waste materials, and packing must be removed and placed in the dumpster by the end of the workday.
  - 5. All stored material must be protected and kept in good order.
  - 6. As portions of the work are completed, all used and excess materials must be removed promptly.
  - 7. Daily Clean-up and good housekeeping is the responsibility of each contractor individually and will be monitored by the Construction Manager. If any contractor fails to perform cleaning when directed or does not properly clean within 4 hours of being notified by Construction Manager, the owner will hire others and charge contractor(s) accordingly.
  - 8. **During school occupied times, each contractor will be required to have a dedicated cleaner to insure there is NO TRACE of construction ( including dust ) at the end of each shift. If contractor does not comply the CM will direct the Owners staff to properly clean and all additional costs for Owner and CM will be charged to the contractor via a deduct Change order.**
- D. **Each Contractor** is responsible for furnishing all dumpsters or other such containers as required for collection, storage and legal disposal of all debris and rubbish resultant from their construction operations. The Construction Manager shall locate and request to move such containers as necessary and legally dispose of waste as containers are filled. Separate and recycle as required authorities and regulations.
- E. Vacuum clean areas when ready to receive finish painting, and continue vacuum cleaning on an as needed basis until building is ready for Substantial Completion or occupancy.
- F. Handle materials in a controlled manner with as few handlings as possible; do not drop or throw materials from heights.
- G. Schedule cleaning operations so that dust and other containment resulting from cleaning process will not fall on wet, newly painted surfaces.

## 2.2 FINAL CLEANING

- A. **Each Contractor** Shall:
  - 1. Employ professional cleaners for final cleaning.
  - 2. In preparation for substantial completion or occupancy, conduct final inspection of sight exposed interior and exterior surfaces, and of concealed spaces.

3. Remove grease, dust, dirt, stains, labels, fingerprints, and other foreign materials from sight-exposed interior and exterior finished surfaces; polish surface so designated to shine finish.
  4. Maintain cleaning until project, or portion thereof, is occupied by owner.
  5. Repair, patch and touch up marred surfaces to specified finish, to match adjacent surfaces.
  6. If the contractor fails to perform final cleaning when directed or does not properly clean within 4 hours of being notified by Construction Manager, the owner will hire others and charge contractor accordingly.
- B. **General Contractor:** shall complete the following restoration operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or portion of Project:
1. Restoration of any lawn and walk/curb areas disturbed by construction operations. This includes repairs of any ruts / damage created by Heavy equipment, Lulls, cranes, etc.
  2. Hire professional cleaning company ( not construction tradesmen ) to thoroughly clean all surfaces, including glass, floors, carpeting, ceramic tile , doors , windows, casework, etc.
  3. Wax resilient tile, linoleum, terrazzo floors using the exact same products / coats as the owners custodial staff for compatibility purposes. Vacuum all carpet areas
  4. Power sweep all asphalt areas using a commercial street sweeper (water method)
  5. Remove any stickers, protective coverings, etc.
  6. Clean all casework, food service equipment , tables , equipment etc. inside and out.
- C. **Electrical Contractor:** shall complete the following cleaning operations before requesting final inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire project or portion of project.
1. Clean surfaces of all electrical equipment from any dust. Remove any labels or protective films
  2. Replace any burned out or non functioning bulbs
  3. Remove any stickers, protective coverings, etc.
- D. **Mechanical Contractor:** shall complete the following cleaning operations before requesting final inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire project or portion of project.
1. Clean all Mechanical units , including removal of any stickers, protective covering. Wipe down of all unit surfaces for clean streak free surfaces
  2. Vacuum out all ductwork, grills / louvers to insure there is no construction debris or dust
  3. Replace all air filters at no additional cost immediately prior to owner occupancy
- E. **Window Work Contractor** shall complete the following restoration operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or portion of Project:
1. Restoration of any lawn and walk/curb areas disturbed by construction operations. This includes repairs of any ruts / damage created by Heavy equipment, Lulls, cranes, etc.
  2. Magnet sweeping of all exterior lawn areas to insure that no stray nails / screws, etc. remain in lawn areas.
  3. Thoroughly clean all masonry surfaces, to remove any staining or efflorescence while full protecting adjacent surfaces.

4. Professionally clean all glass surfaces on windows inside and outside. ( Re-clean if adjacent construction activities re-dust ).
5. Remove any stickers, protective coverings, etc. from windows and glass.

2.3 RUBBISH REMOVAL

- A. Contractors shall comply with all Local, State and Federal Laws, Codes and Requirements regarding recycling and trash or rubbish removal.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Requirements set forth herein are in addition to and shall be considered as complementary to the General Conditions of the Contract and the project specifications.
- B. All Contractors, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, Vendors and the like shall be required to familiarize themselves with said provisions.

1.2 REQUIREMENTS

- A. Final Cleaning
- B. Required Closeout Documentation
- C. Orientation Instruction
- D. Project Closeout Inspections

1.3 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

- 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
  - a. Clean Project site of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
  - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
  - c. Rake grounds that are not planted, mulched, or paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
  - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
  - e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
  - f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
  - g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited-access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
  - h. Clean flooring, removing debris, dirt, and staining; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations.
  - i. Vacuum and mop concrete.
  - j. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.
  - k. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
  - l. Remove labels that are not permanent.

- m. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
- n. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
- o. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
- p. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter on inspection.
- q. Clean luminaires, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
- r. Clean strainers.
- s. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.

- C. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste-disposal requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls." and Section 017400 "Cleaning Up".

#### 1.4 REQUIRED CLOSEOUT DOCUMENTATION

- A. Prior to final payment the Owner shall receive, in addition to those documents required by the General Conditions, the following:

- 1. Project record documents as per Section 017719.
- 2. The Contractor's general guarantees.
- 3. Specific guarantees of material, equipment and systems installed in the work.
- 4. A copy of all test data taken in connection with the work.
- 5. Three (3) copies of all operation and maintenance manuals which shall include:
  - a. Parts List, including illustrations, assembly drawings and diagrams required for maintenance, predicted life of parts subject to wear, and recommendations for stocking spare parts.
  - b. Copies of accepted shop drawings, charts and diagrams.
  - c. Names, addresses and telephone numbers of manufacturer's representative and service company.
  - d. Letters from each manufacturer certifying that his equipment was properly installed and is operating in accordance with manufacturer's intent.
- 6. All keys, tools, screens, spare construction material and equipment required to be furnished to the Owner as part of the work.
- 7. Final survey if required by Municipality AND/OR Owner.
- 8. Record of Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS).
- 9. Certified Payroll Records.

#### 1.5 ORIENTATION INSTRUCTION

- A. Prior to final payment appropriate maintenance personnel of the Owner shall be oriented and instructed by the Contractor in the operation of all systems and equipment as required by the Contract. Contractor will video record all training sessions and provide three (3) digital copies on USB stick for Owner's future use.

1.6 PROJECT CLOSEOUT INSPECTIONS

- A. When the Work has reached such a point of completion that the building or buildings, equipment, apparatus or phase of construction or any part thereof required by the Owner for occupancy or use can be so occupied and used for the purpose intended, the Contractor, prior to notification to the Architect, shall make a preliminary inspection of the Work to ensure that all the requirements of the Contract have been met and the Work is substantially complete and is acceptable.
- B. Upon such notification, the Owner or the Architect and the Construction manager shall make a detailed inspection of the Work to ensure that all the requirements of the Contract have been met and that the Work is complete and is acceptable.
- C. A copy of the report of the inspection shall be furnished to the Contractor as the inspection progresses so that the Contractor may proceed without delay with any part of the Work found to be incomplete or defective.
- D. When the items appearing on the report of inspection have been completed or corrected, the Contractor shall so advise the Construction Manager and the Architect. After receipt of this notification, the Construction Manager or the Architect shall inform the Contractor of the date and time of final inspection.
- E. A copy of the report of the final inspection containing all remaining contract exceptions, omissions and incompletions shall be furnished to the Contractor.
- F. After the receipt of notification of completion and all remaining contract exceptions, omissions and incompletions from the Contractor, the Owner and Architect and the Construction Manager will reinspect the Work to verify completion of the exception items appearing on the report of final inspection.
- G. Upon completion of reinspection, the Architect will prepare a certificate of final acceptance or will furnish to the Contractor a copy of the report of the Architect's reinspection detailing Work that is incomplete or obligations that have not been fulfilled but are required for final acceptance.
- H. The Contractor shall pay the Architect and Construction Manager for services performed in inspection beyond the original inspection and one reinspection of the same area, through a "credit" change order to the Owner in accordance with the project specifications.

END OF SECTION 017700

SECTION 017701 – CHECKLIST FOR PROJECT CLOSEOUT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 FINAL PAYMENT

- A. Final payment will not be processed until all items on this checklist are completed and received in accordance with the contract documents. Retainage reduction will not be considered until all items are received in accordance with Section 017700 Closeout Procedures.

1.2 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- ☐ Three (3) bound, hard cover, 3-ring binder brochures of Operation and Maintenance Manuals for all equipment installed on the project (1 additional electronic copy):
- ☐ Typed or printed instructions covering the care and operations of equipment and systems furnished and installed.
- ☐ Manufacturer's instruction books, diagrams, spare parts lists covering all equipment.
- ☐ Instruction of Owner's Representative in care and maintenance of new equipment.
- ☐ All approved shop drawings.
- ☐ Certificates of compliance and inspection. (Where applicable – electric, elevator, etc.)
- ☐ Spare parts and Maintenance Materials. (Receipt signed by Construction Manager)
- ☐ Evidence of compliance with requirements of governing authorities (Certificates of Inspection, Waste Manifests).
- ☐ Certificates of insurance for products and completed operations.
- ☐ Notarized statement that only non-asbestos materials were installed on this project.
- ☐ Fully executed certificate of substantial completion: AIA G734.
- ☐ Contractor's written one-year warranty and extended warranties (if any required).
- ☐ Project Record Documents.
- ☐ As-Built Drawings (1 full-size hard copy and 1 electronic copy).

1.3 EVIDENCE OF PAYMENT AND RELEASE OF LIENS

- ☐ Payment Application for Final Payment: AIA Document G732-2019 "Application and Certificate for Payment, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition".
- ☐ Form of Contractor's Affidavit: AIA Document G706-1994 "Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims".
- ☐ Separate AIA G706A for subcontractors, suppliers, and others with lien rights against the property of Owner, together with a list of those parties.
- ☐ Form of Affidavit of Release of Liens: AIA Document G706A-1994 "Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Release of Liens".
- ☐ Form of Consent of Surety: AIA Document G707-1994 "Consent of Surety to Final Payment".

END OF SECTION 017701



SECTION 017719 – PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Requirements set forth herein are in addition to and shall be considered as complementary to the General Conditions of the Contract and the project specifications.
- B. All Contractors, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, Vendors and the like shall be required to familiarize themselves with said provisions.

1.2 REQUIREMENTS

- A. Project Record Drawings
- B. Record Drawing Certification

1.3 PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. The purpose of the project drawings is to record the actual location of the work in place including but not limited to underground lines, concealed piping within buildings, concealed valves and control equipment, and to record changes in the work.
- B. In addition to the above, these drawings shall be "color-coded", by each trade, on a daily basis to indicate progress of the work. Color legend will be assigned by the Architect.
- C. In addition to the sets of contract drawings that are required by the Contractor on the site to perform the work, the Contractor shall maintain, at the site, one (1) copy of all drawings, specifications and addenda that are part of the Contract as awarded.
- D. Each of these documents should be clearly marked "Project Record Copy", maintained in a clean and neat condition available at all times for inspection by the Owner, Construction Manager or the Architect, and shall not be used for any other purpose during the progress of the work.
- E. The Construction Manager will be the custodian of the project record documents until the end of the Project.
- F. Project Record Requirements
  - 1. The Contractor shall mark-up the "Project Record Copy" to show:
    - a. Approved changes in the work.
    - b. Location of underground work and concealed work.
    - c. Details not shown in the original Contract Documents.
    - d. Any relocation of work including piping, conduits, ducts and the like.
    - e. All changes in dimensions.
    - f. All access doors and "tack" locations access points in accessible ceilings.
    - g. Location of all plumbing, heating, ventilating, air conditioning or electrical assemblies, whether existing to remain or newly installed.
    - h. Revisions to any electrical circuitry.
  - 2. Such information shall include, but shall not be limited to:
    - a. Footing depth in relation to finished grade elevations.
    - b. Any change in floor elevations.
    - c. Any structural changes.

- d. Any substitutions.
  - e. Elevations and locations of all underground utilities, services, or structures referenced to permanent above ground structures or monuments.
  - f. Designation of all utilities as to the size and use of such utilities.
  - g. All invert elevations of manholes.
  - h. The location of all utilities, services and appurtenances concealed in building structures that have been installed differently from that required by the Contract.
  - i. Any approved change order.
  - j. Other such data as required by the Architect and/or Owner so as to establish a complete record of "As-Constructed" conditions.
- G. The Contractor shall keep the project record documents up-to-date from day to day as the work progresses. Appropriate documents are to be updated promptly and accurately; no work is to be permanently concealed until all required information has been recorded.
- H. The project record drawings are to be submitted by the Contractor to the Architect through the Construction Manager when all the work is completed and is approved by the Owner and the Architect before the Contractor may request final payment.
- I. If the project record drawings as submitted are found to be unacceptable due to incompleteness or inaccurate information, the drawings shall be returned to the offending Contractor for corrective action and resubmitted for approval prior to the release of final payment.

FINAL PAYMENT IS CONTINGENT UPON DELIVERY OF FINAL PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS TO THE OWNER AND ARCHITECT ON A SET OF FULL-SIZE PLOTS AND ELECTRONIC FILES IN .DWG AND .PDF FORMATS.

- J. In addition to the drawings required as mentioned above, the Contractor shall submit a list of all approved Shop Drawings of the Work as installed.
- K. From this list the Architect will select the drawings desired for permanent records. The Contractor shall furnish these in a bound set to the Owner as part of the closeout requirements.

#### 1.4 RECORD DRAWING CERTIFICATION

- A. The record drawings required under the terms and conditions of this Section shall be reviewed and processed by each of the Prime Contractors as part of their overall contractual responsibility.
- B. This certification may be issued for individual trades or as a collective document to cover the entire record drawing requirements of the project.

The format of this certification shall be as follows:

These record drawings prepared by:

\_\_\_\_\_

for \_\_\_\_\_ have been reviewed by the  
undersigned and:

Appear to be an accurate representation of the work incorporated within the project and are accepted as  
submitted in accordance with the technical documents.

This record document review made by this office is for determination of compliance to the requirements  
of the contract documents.

Firm Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Review Date: \_\_\_\_\_ By: \_\_\_\_\_.

END OF SECTION 017719

SECTION 017823 – OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Requirements set forth herein are in addition to and shall be considered as complementary to the General Conditions of the Contract and the project specifications.
- B. All Contractors, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, Vendors and the like shall be required to familiarize themselves with said provisions.

1.2 REQUIREMENTS

- A. Startup and Demonstration
- B. Parts List
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data

1.3 STARTUP AND DEMONSTRATION

- A. The work required herein consists of starting up and demonstrating all systems and equipment to operating personnel and includes training of said operating personnel.
- B. The respective Trade or Subcontractor shall make arrangements, via the Construction Manager and/or the Owner (with notification to the Architect), as to whom the instructions are to be given in the operation of the basic and auxiliary systems and the period of time in which they are to be given.
- C. As specified in individual sections, furnish the services of instructors to train designated personnel in adjustment, operation, maintenance, and safety requirements of equipment and systems. If procedures are not specified for specific items of equipment, follow that recommended by the item Manufacturer.
- D. Instructors shall be thoroughly familiar with the equipment and systems and shall be trained in operating theory as well as practical operation and maintenance work. Instruction shall be given after the equipment or system has been accepted and turned over to the Owner. The duration of instruction shall be as specified in individual sections but shall be not less than two (2) days on each portion of operating mechanical/electrical systems. Use Operating and Maintenance Data as a training guide.
- E. The Architect shall be completely satisfied that the representative of the Owner has been thoroughly and completely instructed in the proper operation of all systems and equipment before final payment is made. If the Architect determines that complete and thorough instructions have not been given by the contractor to the Owners' Representative, then the offending Contractor shall be directed by the Architect to provide whatever instructions are necessary until the intent of this paragraph of the Specification has been complied with as determined by the Architect.

1.4 PARTS LIST

- A. As required the respective Trade or Subcontractor shall furnish three (3) typed sets of instructions for the ordering and stocking of spare parts for all equipment installed. The lists shall include parts numbered and suggested supplier. Each set shall also include an itemized list of component parts that should be kept on hand and where such parts can be purchased.

1.5 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

- A. The Contractor shall submit to the Architect for approval three (3) typed sets, bound neatly in hard backed loose-leaf binders, of all instructions for the installation, operation, care and maintenance of all equipment, fixtures and systems.
  - 1. Provide typed or printed label identifying binder as operating and maintenance data. List title of project, contract number, and location of equipment.
  - 2. Furnish manufacturer's printed data or sheets neatly typewritten on 8-1/2 inch by 11-inch, 20 pound minimum white paper. Provide indexed tabs.
  - 3. Drawings: Bind in with text. Provide reinforcement rings. Fold larger drawings to the size of the text pages.
  - 4. Information shall indicate possible problems with equipment and suggested corrective action.
- B. CONTENT OF MANUAL FOR EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS
- C. The instructions shall contain information deemed necessary by the Architect and include but not be limited to the following:
  - 1. Introduction:
    - a. Explanation of Manual and its use.
    - b. Summary description of all mechanical and electrical and equipment operating systems.
    - c. Purpose of systems.
    - d. Maintenance scheduling summary analysis, sheets and software operating instructions and diskette(s).
  - 2. System:
    - a. Detailed description of all systems.
    - b. Illustrations, schematics, block diagrams, photographs and other exhibits.
    - c. Complete wiring diagrams, tabulations and installation drawings.
    - d. Valve tag charts and control diagrams.
    - e. 1/2 size reduced copy of "Record Drawings".
  - 3. Operations:
    - a. Complete detailed, step-by-step, sequential description of all phases of operation for portion of the systems, including startup, shutdown, adjusting and balancing, and emergency procedures. Include all posted instruction charts.
  - 4. Maintenance:
    - a. Parts list and parts number.
    - b. Maintenance, lubrication and replacement charts and Contractor's recommendations for preventative maintenance.
    - c. Trouble shooting charts for systems and components.
    - d. Instructions of testing each type of part.
    - e. Recommended list of on-hand spare parts.
    - f. Complete calibration instructions for all parts and entire systems.

- g. Instruction for charging, filling, draining and purging.
  - h. General or miscellaneous maintenance notes.
- 5. Manufacturer's Literature:
  - a. Complete listing for all parts with names, addresses and telephone numbers.
  - b. Care and operation.
  - c. All and only pertinent brochures, illustrations, drawings, cuts, bulletins, technical data, certified performance charts and other literature with the model actually furnished to be clearly and conspicuously identified.
  - d. Internal wiring diagrams and engineering data sheets for all items and/or equipment to be furnished.
  - e. Guarantee and warranty data.
- 6. Instructions for lubricating each piece of equipment installed. Instructions shall state type of lubricant, where and how frequently lubrication is required.
- 7. Frame all instructions under glass and hang in the Mechanical Room or other location as directed by Architect.

D. MANUALS FOR PRODUCTS, MATERIALS, AND FINISHES:

- 1. Submit three (3) copies of complete manual.
- 2. Content: Provide complete information for architectural products, applied materials, and finishes.
  - a. Manufacturer's data, including catalog number, size, composition, color and texture designations, and information for reordering.
  - b. Instructions for care and maintenance, including manufacturer's recommendations for cleaning agents and methods; cautions against detrimental cleaning agents and methods; and recommended schedule for cleaning and maintenance.

END OF SECTION 017823



AIA Document G702®, Application and Certification for Payment, or G732™, Application and Certificate for Payment, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition, containing Contractor's signed certification is attached.  
Use Column I on Contracts where variable retainage for line items may apply.

ARCHITECT'S PROJECT NO:

	H	I
	BALANCE TO	RETAINAGE

**AIA Document G703® – 1992.** Copyright © 1963, 1965, 1966, 1967, 1970, 1978, 1983 and 1992 by The American Institute of Architects. All rights reserved. **The “American Institute of Architects,” “AIA,” the AIA Logo, “G703,” and “AIA Contract Documents” are registered trademarks and may not be used without permission.** This document was produced by AIA software at 09:16:05 ET on 07/28/2022 under Order No.2114277222 which expires on 01/11/2023, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail [copyright@aia.org](mailto:copyright@aia.org).

1

# DRAFT AIA<sup>®</sup> Document G706™ - 1994

## Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims

**PROJECT:** *(Name and address)*  
2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2  
Eastchester Union Free School  
District

**ARCHITECT'S PROJECT NUMBER:**  
102-2202

OWNER: ☐  
ARCHITECT: ☐  
CONTRACTOR: ☐  
SURETY: ☐  
OTHER: ☐

**TO OWNER:** *(Name and address)*  
Eastchester Union Free School  
District  
580 White Plains Road  
Eastchester, New York 10709

**CONTRACT FOR:**  
**CONTRACT DATED:**

**STATE OF:** New York  
**COUNTY OF:** Westchester

The undersigned hereby certifies that, except as listed below, payment has been made in full and all obligations have otherwise been satisfied for all materials and equipment furnished, for all work, labor, and services performed, and for all known indebtedness and claims against the Contractor for damages arising in any manner in connection with the performance of the Contract referenced above for which the Owner or Owner's property might in any way be held responsible or encumbered.

### EXCEPTIONS:

#### SUPPORTING DOCUMENTS ATTACHED HERETO:

1. Consent of Surety to Final Payment. Whenever Surety is involved, Consent of Surety is required. AIA Document G707, Consent of Surety, may be used for this purpose.  
Indicate Attachment ☐ Yes ☐ No

*The following supporting documents should be attached hereto if required by the Owner:*

1. Contractor's Release or Waiver of Liens, conditional upon receipt of final payment.
2. Separate Releases or Waivers of Liens from Subcontractors and material and equipment suppliers, to the extent required by the Owner, accompanied by a list thereof.
3. Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens (AIA Document G706A).

**CONTRACTOR:** *(Name and address)*

BY:

*(Signature of authorized representative)*

*(Printed name and title)*

Subscribed and sworn to before me on this date:

Notary Public:  
My Commission Expires:



# DRAFT AIA<sup>®</sup> Document G706A<sup>™</sup> – 1994

## Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens

**PROJECT:** *(Name and address)*  
2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2  
Eastchester Union Free School District

**ARCHITECT'S PROJECT NUMBER:**  
102-2202

**TO OWNER:** *(Name and address)*  
Eastchester Union Free School District  
580 White Plains Road  
Eastchester, New York 10709

**CONTRACT FOR:**  
**CONTRACT DATED:**

OWNER: ☐  
ARCHITECT: ☐  
CONTRACTOR: ☐  
SURETY: ☐  
OTHER: ☐

**STATE OF:** New York  
**COUNTY OF:** Westchester

The undersigned hereby certifies that to the best of the undersigned's knowledge, information and belief, except as listed below, the Releases or Waivers of Lien attached hereto include the Contractor, all Subcontractors, all suppliers of materials and equipment, and all performers of Work, labor or services who have or may have liens or encumbrances or the right to assert liens or encumbrances against any property of the Owner arising in any manner out of the performance of the Contract referenced above.

### EXCEPTIONS:

#### SUPPORTING DOCUMENTS ATTACHED HERETO:

1. Contractor's Release or Waiver of Liens, conditional upon receipt of final payment.
2. Separate Releases or Waivers of Liens from Subcontractors and material and equipment suppliers, to the extent required by the Owner, accompanied by a list thereof.

**CONTRACTOR:** *(Name and address)*

BY:

*(Signature of authorized representative)*

*(Printed name and title)*

Subscribed and sworn to before me on this date:

Notary Public:  
My Commission Expires:

# DRAFT AIA® Document G707™ - 1994

## Consent Of Surety to Final Payment

**PROJECT:** *(Name and address)*  
2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2  
Eastchester Union Free School District

**ARCHITECT'S PROJECT NUMBER:** 102-2202

**CONTRACT FOR:**

**TO OWNER:** *(Name and address)*  
Eastchester Union Free School District  
580 White Plains Road  
Eastchester, New York 10709

**CONTRACT DATED:**

OWNER: ☐

ARCHITECT: ☐

CONTRACTOR: ☐

SURETY: ☐

OTHER: ☐

In accordance with the provisions of the Contract between the Owner and the Contractor as indicated above, the  
*(Insert name and address of Surety)*

on bond of  
*(Insert name and address of Contractor)*

hereby approves of the final payment to the Contractor, and agrees that final payment to the Contractor shall not relieve the Surety of any of its obligations to  
*(Insert name and address of Owner)*

as set forth in said Surety's bond.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Surety has hereunto set its hand on this date:  
*(Insert in writing the month followed by the numeric date and year.)*

\_\_\_\_\_  
*(Surety)*

\_\_\_\_\_  
*(Signature of authorized representative)*

Attest:  
(Seal):

\_\_\_\_\_  
*(Printed name and title)*

DRAFT

# AIA® Document G710™ – 2017

## Architect's Supplemental Instructions

**PROJECT:** *(name and address)*  
2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2  
Eastchester Union Free School District

**CONTRACT INFORMATION:**  
Contract For:

**ASI INFORMATION:**  
ASI Number:

Date:

Date:

**OWNER:** *(name and address)*  
Eastchester Union Free School District  
580 White Plains Road  
Eastchester, New York 10709

**ARCHITECT:** *(name and address)*  
MEMASI  
2 Lyon Place  
White Plains, NY 10601

**CONTRACTOR:** *(name and address)*

The Contractor shall carry out the Work in accordance with the following supplemental instructions without change in Contract Sum or Contract Time. Proceeding with the Work in accordance with these instructions indicates your acknowledgment that there will be no change in the Contract Sum or Contract Time.

*(Insert a detailed description of the Architect's supplemental instructions and, if applicable, attach or reference specific exhibits.)*

### ISSUED BY THE ARCHITECT:

MEMASI

ARCHITECT *(Firm name)*

### SIGNATURE

Daryl Mastracci, PE, LEED AP BD+C

Managing Partner

PRINTED NAME AND TITLE

DATE

DRAFT

# AIA<sup>®</sup> Document G716™ – 2004

## Request for Information ("RFI")

TO:

MEMASI  
2 Lyon Place  
White Plains, NY 10601

FROM:

PROJECT:

2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2  
Eastchester Union Free School District

ISSUE DATE:

RFI No.

PROJECT NUMBERS: MEMASI / 102-2202

REQUESTED REPLY DATE:  
COPIES TO:

**RFI DESCRIPTION:** *(Fully describe the question or type of information requested.)*

**REFERENCES/ATTACHMENTS:** *(List specific documents researched when seeking the information requested.)*  
**SPECIFICATIONS:** **DRAWINGS:** **OTHER:**

**SENDER'S RECOMMENDATION:** *(If RFI concerns a site or construction condition, the sender may provide a recommended solution, including cost and/or schedule considerations.)*

**RECEIVER'S REPLY:** *(Provide answer to RFI, including cost and/or schedule considerations.)*

BY

DATE

COPIES TO

**Note:** This reply is not an authorization to proceed with work involving additional cost, time or both. If any reply requires a change to the Contract Documents, a Change Order, Construction Change Directive or a Minor Change in the work must be executed in accordance with the Contract Documents.

DRAFT

# AIA® Document G731™ – 2019

## Change Order, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition

**PROJECT:** *(name and address)*  
2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2  
Eastchester Union Free School District

**CONTRACT INFORMATION:**  
Contract For:

**CHANGE ORDER INFORMATION:**  
Change Order Number:

**OWNER:** *(name and address)*  
  
Eastchester Union Free School District  
580 White Plains Road  
Eastchester, New York 10709

Date:  
**ARCHITECT:** *(name and address)*  
  
MEMASI  
2 Lyon Place  
White Plains, NY 10601

Date:  
**CONSTRUCTION MANAGER:** *(name and address)*  
  
Arris Contracting Company, Inc.  
189 Smith Street  
Poughkeepsie, New York 12601

**CONTRACTOR:** *(name and address)*

### THE CONTRACT IS CHANGED AS FOLLOWS:

*(Insert a detailed description of the change and, if applicable, attach or reference specific exhibits. Also include agreed upon adjustments attributable to executed Construction Change Directives.)*

The original Contract Sum was  
Net change by previously authorized Change Orders  
The Contract Sum prior to this Change Order was  
The Contract Sum will be increased by this Change Order in the amount of  
The new Contract Sum including this Change Order will be

\$	0
\$	0.00
\$	0.00
\$	0.00
\$	0.00

The Contract Time will be increased by Zero (0) days.  
The Contractor's Work shall be substantially complete on .

**NOTE:** This Change Order does not include adjustments to the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, or the Contract Time, that have been authorized by Construction Change Directive until the cost and time have been agreed upon by both the Owner and Contractor, in which case a Change Order is executed to supersede the Construction Change Directive.

**NOT VALID UNTIL SIGNED BY THE ARCHITECT, CONSTRUCTION MANAGER, CONTRACTOR, AND OWNER.**

MEMASI  
**ARCHITECT** *(Firm name)*

Arris Contracting Company, Inc.  
**CONSTRUCTION MANAGER** *(Firm name)*

**SIGNATURE**  
Daryl Mastracci, PE, LEED AP BD+C, Managing Partner  
**PRINTED NAME AND TITLE**

**SIGNATURE**  
  
**PRINTED NAME AND TITLE**

**DATE:**

**DATE:**

**CONTRACTOR** *(Firm name)*

**OWNER** *(Firm name)*

**SIGNATURE**  
  
**PRINTED NAME AND TITLE**

**SIGNATURE**  
  
**PRINTED NAME AND TITLE**

**DATE:**

**DATE:**

# **Document G732™ – 2019**

## **Application and Certificate for Payment, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition**

<b>TO OWNER:</b> Eastchester Union Free School District 580 White Plains Road Eastchester, NY 10709	<b>PROJECT:</b> EUFSD 2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2	<b>APPLICATION NO:</b>	<b>Distribution to:</b> OWNER: <input type="checkbox"/> CONSTRUCTION MANAGER: <input type="checkbox"/> ARCHITECT: <input type="checkbox"/> CONTRACTOR: <input type="checkbox"/> FIELD: <input type="checkbox"/> OTHER: <input type="checkbox"/>
<b>FROM CONTRACTOR:</b>	<b>VIA CONSTRUCTION MANAGER:</b> Arris Contracting Company, Inc.	<b>PERIOD TO:</b>	
<b>CONTRACT FOR:</b>	<b>VIA ARCHITECT:</b> MEMASI	<b>CONTRACT DATE:</b> <b>PROJECT NOS:</b> MEMASI / 102-2202 /	

### **CONTRACTOR'S APPLICATION FOR PAYMENT**

Application is made for payment, as shown below, in connection with the Contract. AIA Document G703™, Continuation Sheet, is attached.

1. ORIGINAL CONTRACT SUM .....	\$0.00	
2. NET CHANGES IN THE WORK .....	\$0.00	
3. CONTRACT SUM TO DATE (Line 1 ± 2) .....	\$0.00	
4. TOTAL COMPLETED AND STORED TO DATE (Column G on G703) .....	\$0.00	
<b>5. RETAINAGE:</b>		
a. 0 % of Completed Work (Column D + E on G703) .....	\$0.00	
b. 0 % of Stored Material (Column F on G703) .....	\$0.00	
Total Retainage (Lines 5a + 5b or Total in Column I of G703) .....	\$0.00	
6. TOTAL EARNED LESS RETAINAGE .....	\$0.00	
(Line 4 minus Line 5 Total)		
7. LESS PREVIOUS CERTIFICATES FOR PAYMENT .....	\$0.00	
(Line 6 from prior Certificate)		
8. CURRENT PAYMENT DUE .....	\$0.00	
9. BALANCE TO FINISH, INCLUDING RETAINAGE .....	\$0.00	
(Line 3 minus Line 6)		

SUMMARY OF CHANGES IN THE WORK	ADDITIONS	DEDUCTIONS
Total changes approved in previous months by Owner	\$0.00	\$0.00
Total approved this month including Construction Change Directives	\$0.00	\$0.00
TOTALS	\$0.00	\$0.00
NET CHANGES IN THE WORK		\$0.00

The undersigned Contractor certifies that to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information and belief the Work covered by this Application for Payment has been completed in accordance with the Contract Documents, that all amounts have been paid by the Contractor for Work for which previous Certificates for Payment were issued and payments received from the Owner, and that current payment shown herein is now due.

### **CONTRACTOR:**

By: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_  
 State of: \_\_\_\_\_  
 County of: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Subscribed and sworn to before  
 me this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_  
 Notary Public: \_\_\_\_\_  
 My Commission expires: \_\_\_\_\_

### **CERTIFICATE FOR PAYMENT**

In accordance with the Contract Documents, based on evaluations of the Work and the data comprising this application, the Construction Manager and Architect certify to the Owner that to the best of their knowledge, information and belief the Work has progressed as indicated, the quality of the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, and the Contractor is entitled to payment of the AMOUNT CERTIFIED.

**AMOUNT CERTIFIED** ..... \$0.00

(Attach explanation if amount certified differs from the amount applied. Initial all figures on this Application and on the Continuation Sheet that are changed to conform with the amount certified.)

### **CONSTRUCTION MANAGER:**

By: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**ARCHITECT:** (NOTE: If multiple Contractors are responsible for performing portions of the Project, the Architect's Certification is not required.)

By: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

This Certificate is not negotiable. The AMOUNT CERTIFIED is payable only to the Contractor named herein. Issuance, payment and acceptance of payment are without prejudice to any rights of the Owner or Contractor under this Contract.

DRAFT

**AIA® Document G733™ – 2019**

**Construction Change Directive, Construction Manager as Adviser Edition**

**PROJECT:** *(name and address)*  
2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2  
Eastchester Union Free School District

**CONTRACT INFORMATION:**  
Contract For:

**CCD INFORMATION:**  
Directive Number:

**OWNER:** *(name and address)*  
Eastchester Union Free School District  
580 White Plains Road  
Eastchester, New York 10709

Date:  
**ARCHITECT:** *(name and address)*  
MEMASI  
2 Lyon Place  
White Plains, NY 10601

Date:  
**CONSTRUCTION MANAGER:** *(name and address)*  
Arris Contracting Company, Inc.  
189 Smith Street  
Poughkeepsie, New York 12601

**CONTRACTOR:** *(name and address)*

The Contractor is hereby directed to make the following change(s) in this Contract:  
*(Insert a detailed description of the change and, if applicable, attach or reference specific exhibits.)*

**PROPOSED ADJUSTMENTS**

1. The proposed basis of adjustment to the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price is:

☐ Lump Sum increase of \$0.00

☐ Unit Price of \$ per

☐ Cost, as defined below, plus the following fee:  
*(Insert a definition of, or method for determining, cost)*

☐ as follows:

2. The Contract Time is proposed to . The proposed adjustment, if any, is .

Signature by the Contractor indicates the Contractor's agreement with the proposed adjustments in Contract Sum and Contract Time set forth in this Construction Change Directive.

**CONTRACTOR** *(Firm name)*

**SIGNATURE**

**PRINTED NAME AND TITLE**

**DATE:**

**NOTE:** The Owner, Construction Manager, Architect, and Contractor should execute a Change Order to supersede this Construction Change Directive to the extent they agree upon adjustments to the Contract Sum, Contract Time, or Guaranteed Maximum price for the change(s) described herein.

When signed by the Owner, Construction Manager and Architect and received by the Contractor, this document becomes effective IMMEDIATELY as a Construction Change Directive (CCD), and the Contractor shall proceed with the change(s) described above.

Eastchester Union Free School District  
**OWNER** *(Firm name)*

Arris Contracting Company, Inc.  
**CONSTRUCTION MANAGER** *(Firm name)*

MEMASI  
**ARCHITECT** *(Firm name)*

\_\_\_\_\_  
**SIGNATURE**

\_\_\_\_\_  
**SIGNATURE**

\_\_\_\_\_  
**SIGNATURE**

\_\_\_\_\_  
**PRINTED NAME AND TITLE**

\_\_\_\_\_  
**PRINTED NAME AND TITLE**

Daryl Mastracci, PE, LEED AP BD+C,  
 Managing Partner  
**PRINTED NAME AND TITLE**

\_\_\_\_\_  
**DATE**

\_\_\_\_\_  
**DATE**

\_\_\_\_\_  
**DATE**





DRAFT

# AIA® Document G734™ – 2019

## Certificate of Substantial Completion Construction Manager as Adviser Edition

**PROJECT:** *(name and address)*  
2022 Capital Bond Project, Phase 2  
Eastchester Union Free School District

**CONTRACT INFORMATION:**  
Contract For:

**CERTIFICATE INFORMATION:**  
Certificate Number:

**OWNER:** *(name and address)*  
Eastchester Union Free School District  
580 White Plains Road  
Eastchester, New York 10709

Date:  
**ARCHITECT:** *(name and address)*  
MEMASI  
2 Lyon Place  
White Plains, NY 10601

Date:  
**CONSTRUCTION MANAGER:** *(name and address)*  
Arris Contracting Company, Inc.  
189 Smith Street  
Poughkeepsie, New York 12601

**CONTRACTOR(S):**  
*(Enter names and addresses for all Contractors)*

The Work identified below has been reviewed and found, to the Construction Manager's and Architect's best knowledge, information and belief, to be substantially complete. Substantial Completion is the stage in the progress of the Work when the Work of all of the Contractors, or designated portion thereof, is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use. The date of Substantial Completion of the Project, or portion thereof designated below, is the date established by this Certificate

*(Identify the Work of all of the Contractors, or portion thereof, that is substantially complete.)*

For all Contractors, the date of Substantial Completion of the Project, or portion thereof, is:  
*(Insert the date of Substantial Completion for all Contractors of the Work described above.)*

Arris Contracting  
Company, Inc.

**CONSTRUCTION MANAGER**  
*(Firm Name)*

**SIGNATURE**

**PRINTED NAME AND TITLE**

**DATE**

MEMASI  
**ARCHITECT** *(Firm Name)*

**SIGNATURE**

Daryl Mastracci, PE,  
LEED AP BD+C  
Managing Partner  
**PRINTED NAME AND TITLE**

**DATE**

### WARRANTIES

The date of Substantial Completion of the Project, or portion designated above, is also the date of commencement of applicable warranties required by the Contract Documents, except as stated below:

*(Identify warranties that do not commence on the date of Substantial Completion, if any, and indicate their date of commencement.)*

### WORK TO BE COMPLETED OR CORRECTED

A list of items to be completed or corrected by each of the Contractors, including a cost estimate, is attached hereto or transmitted as agreed upon by the parties, and identified as follows:

*(Attach a list of items to be completed or corrected by each of the Contractors and provide an identification of each list.)*

The failure to include any items on such list does not alter the responsibility of a Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. Unless otherwise agreed to in writing, the date of commencement of warranties for items on the attached lists will be the date of issuance of the final Certificate of Payment or the date of final payment, whichever occurs first. Each Contractor will complete or correct the Work on the appropriate list of items attached hereto within ( ) days from the above date of Substantial Completion.

As of the date of Substantial Completion, the Owner shall be responsible for security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work, and insurance, except as noted below:

*(Identify any responsibilities that are assigned to the Contractors.)*

*(Note: Owner's and Contractor's legal and insurance counsel should review insurance requirements and coverage.)*

The Owner and Contractor hereby accept the responsibilities assigned to them in this Certificate of Substantial Completion:

_____ <b>CONTRACTOR</b> <i>(Firm Name)</i>	_____ <b>SIGNATURE</b>	_____ <b>PRINTED NAME AND TITLE</b>	_____ <b>DATE</b>
Eastchester Union Free School District _____ <b>OWNER</b> <i>(Firm Name)</i>	_____ <b>SIGNATURE</b>	_____ <b>PRINTED NAME AND TITLE</b>	_____ <b>DATE</b>

## Submittal Cover

Submittal No.:

Contract No.:

Contract For:

Contractor:

Subcontractor:

Owner Name:

Project Name:

MEMASI Project No.:

### Submittal Information

---

☐ 1<sup>ST</sup>

Submission Date:

☐ 1<sup>st</sup>

Re-Submittal Date:

☐ 2<sup>nd</sup>

Re-Submittal Date:

Description:

Shop Drawing Title:

Shop Drawing No.:

Contents:

☐ Product Data☐ Samples☐ Tests☐ Schedules

Manufacturer:

Specification Section:

Drawing No.:

### Contractor's Approval

---

Date:

By:

☐ Submitted product has been reviewed for release to Architect/Engineer☐ Submitted product is as specified

Upon Approval, delivery lead time will be:

☐ Submitted product is equal to specific product

days

### Architect/Engineer Action

---

Date:

By:

☐ No Exception Taken☐ Make Correction Noted☐ Revise & Resubmit☐ Rejected

Reviewing is only for conformance with the Project's design concept and compliance with the information in the Contract Documents. The Contractor is responsible for quantities and dimensions to be confirmed and correlated at the site; for information that pertains solely to the fabrication processes or to the mean, methods, techniques, sequences & procedures of construction; and for coordination of the Work of all trades. Any corrections on the submittal shall not be deemed an order for extra work.

Architect/Engineer Remarks:

---

---

**TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION 020810**

---

---

**ASBESTOS ABATEMENT PROJECT AT:**

**2022 CAPITAL BOND PROJECT - PHASE 2**

**EASTCHESTER MIDDLE SCHOOL / HIGH SCHOOL**

**THE WAVERLY SCHOOL**

**GREENVALE ELEMENTARY SCHOOL**

**ANNE HUTCHINSON ELEMENTARY SCHOOL**

---

---

Prepared for:



**580 White Plains Road  
Eastchester, New York 10709**

Prepared by:



**WSP USA Solutions, Inc.  
500 Summit Lake Drive, Suite 450  
Valhalla, NY 10595**

December 16, 2022  
Project No. 31402573.008-011  
Steven Eget  
NYS Project Designer  
06-06432



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>PART 1 – GENERAL .....</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1.01 DESCRIPTION OF WORK.....</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1.02 PHASING OF WORK .....</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>1.03 AUTHORITY TO STOP WORK .....</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>1.04 SITE REQUIREMENTS .....</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>1.05 HEALTH AND SAFETY .....</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>1.06 WORK SUPERVISION AND COORDINATION.....</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>1.07 SUBMITTALS .....</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>1.08 FIRE PROTECTION AND EMERGENCY EGRESS .....</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>1.09 CLEAN-UP.....</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>1.10 CODES, PERMITS, AND STANDARDS .....</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>1.11 TERMINOLOGY .....</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>1.12 REQUIREMENTS AND QUALIFICATIONS .....</b>	<b>22</b>
<b>1.13 TESTING AND INSPECTION REQUIREMENTS AND RESPONSIBILITIES.....</b>	<b>23</b>
 <b>PART 2 - PRODUCTS.....</b>	 <b>26</b>
<b>2.01 MATERIALS .....</b>	<b>26</b>
<b>2.02 EQUIPMENT.....</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>2.03 WORKER PROTECTIVE CLOTHING AND EQUIPMENT .....</b>	<b>30</b>
 <b>PART 3 - EXECUTION .....</b>	 <b>32</b>
<b>3.01 DECONTAMINATION ENCLOSURE SYSTEMS .....</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>3.02 PERSONNEL PROTECTION AND DECONTAMINATION PROCEDURES .....</b>	<b>38</b>
<b>3.03 PREPARATION OF WORK AREA.....</b>	<b>42</b>
<b>3.04 PRE-REMOVAL INSPECTIONS.....</b>	<b>43</b>
<b>3.05 MAINTENANCE OF CONTAINED WORK AREA AND DECONTAMINATION ENCLOSURE SYSTEMS.....</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>3.06 REMOVAL OF ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIAL. ....</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>3.07 ACM WASTE PACKAGING AND LOAD OUT PROCEDURES.....</b>	<b>52</b>
<b>3.08 CLEANUP AND CLEARANCE TESTING OF WORK AREAS.....</b>	<b>53</b>
<b>3.09 DISPOSAL AND TRANSPORTATION OF ASBESTOS-CONTAMINATED WASTE .....</b>	<b>54</b>



**SECTION 02081**  
**ASBESTOS ABATEMENT**

**PART 1 – GENERAL**

**1.01 DESCRIPTION OF WORK**

- A. The Asbestos abatement contractor shall perform the following work as described below and indicated on the drawings. The drawings are only a diagrammatic representation of the Work Areas and do not constitute the actual quantities of material. Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible for the confirmation of the actual total quantities of the Work. The Asbestos Contractor shall provide all plant, labor, equipment and materials complete for performance of the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. All asbestos material is to be disposed of as ACM waste. Quantities indicted below are confirmed asbestos.

**EASTCHESTER MIDDLE SCHOOL**

2 Stewart Place, Eastchester, NY 10709

**1. Drawing H-003.00: First Floor Plan**

- a. Remove and dispose of asbestos-containing Acoustical Ceiling Plaster within **Work Area 1**. Asbestos-containing Acoustical Ceiling Plaster shall be removed utilizing NYS DOL 12 NYCRR Part 56 Full Containment Procedures.
- b. Remove and dispose of asbestos-containing Mastic assoc. with 12"x12" Beige Floor Tiles, and Contaminated 12"x12" Beige Floor Tiles within **Work Area 2**. Mastic assoc. with 12"x12" Beige Floor Tiles, and Contaminated 12"x12" Beige Floor Tiles shall be removed utilizing NYS DOL 12 NYCRR Part 56 §11.7 Procedures for Non-Friable Flooring and/or Mastic Removal.

Work Area #	Location	Asbestos-Containing Material	Approximate Quantity	Removal Procedure
1	MIDDLE SCHOOL 1 <sup>ST</sup> FLOOR HALLWAY	ACOUSTICAL CEILING PLASTER	1,100 SF	NYS DOL 12 NYCRR PART 56 FULL CONTAINMENT PROCEDURES <sup>1</sup>
2	MIDDLE SCHOOL ROOM 110	MASTIC ASSOC. WITH 12"X12" FLOOR TILES, CONTAMINATED 12"X12" FLOOR TILES	383 SF	NYS DOL 12 NYCRR PART 56 §11.7 PROCEDURES FOR NON-FRIABLE FLOORING AND/OR MASTIC REMOVAL



## 2. Drawing H-004.00: Second Floor Plan

- a. Remove and dispose of asbestos-containing Acoustical Ceiling Plaster, 9"x9" Floor Tiles and assoc. Mastic within **Work Areas 3**. Asbestos-containing 9"x9" floor tiles and associated mastic shall be removed utilizing NYS DOL 12 NYCRR Part 56 §11.7 Procedures for Non-Friable Flooring and/or Mastic Removal Procedures. Asbestos-containing Acoustical Ceiling Plaster shall be removed utilizing NYS DOL 12 NYCRR Part 56 Full Containment Procedures.

Work Area #	Location	Asbestos-Containing Material	Approximate Quantity	Removal Procedure
3	MIDDLE SCHOOL 2 <sup>ND</sup> FLOOR HALLWAY	ACOUSTICAL CEILING PLASTER	3,600 SF	NYS DOL 12 NYCRR PART 56 FULL CONTAINMENT PROCEDURES <sup>1</sup>
	MIDDLE SCHOOL ROOMS 211, 212, 213, 222, 223, 232	9"X9" FLOOR TILES AND ASSOC. MASTIC	4,600 SF	NYS DOL 12 NYCRR PART 56 §11.7 PROCEDURES FOR NON-FRIABLE FLOORING AND/OR MASTIC REMOVAL
	MIDDLE SCHOOL ROOMS 230, 231	9"X9" FLOOR TILES AND ASSOC. MASTIC, CONTAMINATED CARPET AND ASSOC. MASTIC	1,500 SF	

## 3. Drawing H-005.00: Exterior Elevations

- a. Remove and dispose of asbestos-containing Weatherproofing Tar on Brick Walls, and Expansion Joint Caulking within **Work Areas 4**. Asbestos-containing Weatherproofing Tar on Brick Walls, and Expansion Joint Caulking shall be removed utilizing NYS DOL 12 NYCRR Part 56 §11.6 Procedures for Exterior Non-Friable Removal.

Work Area #	Location	Asbestos-Containing Material	Approximate Quantity	Removal Procedure
4	MIDDLE SCHOOL EXTERIOR THROUGHOUT	WEATHERPROOFING TAR ON BRICK WALLS, EXPANSION JOINT CAULKING	10 SF / 25 LF	NYS DOL 12 NYCRR PART 56 §11.6 EXTERIOR PROJECT REMOVAL OF NON-FRIABLE ACM ROOFING, SIDING, CAULKING, GLAZING, COMPOUND, TRANSITE, TARS SEALERS, COATING, AND OTHER NOB ACMS

**EASTCHESTER HIGH SCHOOL**  
2 Stewart Place, Eastchester, NY 10709

**4. Drawing H-006.00: Basement Floor Plan**

- a. Remove and dispose of assumed asbestos-containing Fire Door Insulation within **Work Areas 5a and 5b**. Assumed asbestos-containing fire door insulation shall be removed utilizing NYS DOL 12 NYCRR PART 56 Part 56 §7.11 Tent Procedures.

Work Area #	Location	Asbestos-Containing Material	Approximate Quantity	Removal Procedure
5A and 5B	HIGH SCHOOL BASEMENT GYMNASIUM	METAL FIRE DOOR INSULATION	300 SF	NYS DOL 12 NYCRR PART 56 §7.11 TENT REMOVAL PROCEDURE

**5. Drawing H-007.00: 1<sup>st</sup> Floor Plan**

- a. Remove and dispose of assumed asbestos-containing 12"x12" Floor Tiles and Acoustical Ceiling Plaster within **Work Area 6**. Asbestos-containing 12"x12" floor tiles and Acoustical Ceiling Plaster shall be removed utilizing NYS DOL 12 NYCRR Part 56 Full Containment Procedures.
- b. Remove and dispose of assumed asbestos-containing Acoustical Ceiling Plaster, Assumed ACM Fire Door Insulation and Rust Inhibitor on Lintels, Window Lintel Caulking, Weatherproofing Tar/paper behind outer walls within **Work Area 7**. Asbestos-containing Acoustical Ceiling Plaster and Fire Door Insulation shall be removed utilizing NYS DOL 12 NYCRR Part 56 Full Containment Procedures. Asbestos-containing Rust Inhibitor on Lintels, Window Lintel Caulking, Weatherproofing Tar/paper behind outer walls shall be removed utilizing NYS DOL 12 NYCRR Part 56 §11.6 Procedures for Exterior Non-Friable Removal.
- c. Remove and dispose of assumed asbestos-containing 9"x9" Floor Tiles within **Work Area 8**. Asbestos-containing 9"x9" floor tiles and shall be removed utilizing NYS DOL 12 NYCRR Part 56 §11.7 Procedures for Non-Friable Flooring and/or Mastic Removal procedures.

EASTCHESTER UNION FREE SCHOOL DISTRICT  
2022 CAPITAL BOND PROJECT  
PHASE 2

Work Area #	Location	Asbestos-Containing Material	Approximate Quantity	Removal Procedure
6	HIGH SCHOOL 1 <sup>ST</sup> FLOOR HALLWAY BEHIND AUDITORIUM STAGE (CORR 68)	12"X12" FLOOR TILES	240 SF	NYS DOL 12 NYCRR PART 56 FULL CONTAINMENT PROCEDURES
		ACOUSTICAL CEILING PLASTER	240 SF	
7	HIGH SCHOOL 1 <sup>ST</sup> FLOOR HALLWAY	ACOUSTICAL CEILING PLASTER	2,100 SF	NYS DOL 12 NYCRR PART 56 FULL CONTAINMENT PROCEDURES
		FIRE DOOR INSULATION	25 SF / 1 DOOR	NYS DOL 12 NYCRR PART 56 FULL CONTAINMENT PROCEDURES
		RUST INHIBITOR ON LINTELS, WINDOW LINTEL CAULKING, WEATHERPROOFING TAR/PAER BEHIND OUTER WALLS	30 SF	NYS DOL 12 NYCRR PART 56 §11.6 EXTERIOR PROJECT REMOVAL OF NON-FRIABLE ACM ROOFING, SIDING, CAULKING, GLAZING, COMPOUND, TRANSITE, TARS, SEALERS, COATING, AND OTHER NOB ACMS
8	HIGH SCHOOL SHARED WING, 1 <sup>ST</sup> FLOOR ROOMS 125, 127, 127A, 128, 129, 130	9"X9" FLOOR TILES AND ASSOC. MASTIC	4,800 SF	NYS DOL 12 NYCRR PART 56 §11.7 PROCEDURES FOR NON-FRIABLE FLOORING AND/OR MASTIC REMOVAL

## 6. Drawing H-008.00: 2<sup>nd</sup> Floor Plan

- a. Remove and dispose of asbestos-containing 9"x9" floor tiles and associated mastic within **Work Areas 9 and 10**. Asbestos-containing 9"x9" floor tiles and associated mastic shall be removed utilizing NYS DOL 12 NYCRR Part 56 §11.7 Procedures for Non-Friable Flooring and/or Mastic Removal procedures.

Work Area #	Location	Asbestos-Containing Material	Approximate Quantity	Removal Procedure
9	HIGH SCHOOL ROOM 209	9"X9" FLOOR TILES AND ASSOC. MASTIC	670 SF	NYS DOL 12 NYCRR PART 56 §11.7 PROCEDURES FOR NON-FRIABLE FLOORING AND/OR MASTIC REMOVAL
10	HIGH SCHOOL ROOMS 231, 232, 236	9"X9" FLOOR TILES AND ASSOC. MASTIC	2,430 SF	NYS DOL 12 NYCRR PART 56 §11.7 PROCEDURES FOR NON-FRIABLE FLOORING AND/OR MASTIC REMOVAL

### 7. Drawing H-009.00: 3<sup>rd</sup> Floor Plan

- a. Remove and dispose of asbestos-containing 9"x9" floor tiles and associated mastic within **Work Area 11**. Asbestos-containing 9"x9" floor tiles and associated mastic shall be removed utilizing NYS DOL 12 NYCRR Part 56 §11.7 Procedures for Non-Friable Flooring and/or Mastic Removal procedures.

Work Area #	Location	Asbestos-Containing Material	Approximate Quantity	Removal Procedure
11	HIGH SCHOOL ROOMS 311, 313, 315, 317	9"X9" FLOOR TILES AND ASSOC. MASTIC, CONTAMINATED CARPET AND ASSOC. MASTIC	2,700 SF	NYS DOL 12 NYCRR PART 56 §11.7 PROCEDURES FOR NON-FRIABLE FLOORING AND/OR MASTIC REMOVAL

### 8. Drawings H-010.00, H-011.00 and H-012.00: Exterior Elevations

- d. Remove and dispose of asbestos-containing Rust Inhibitor on Lintels, Window Lintel Caulking, Weatherproofing Tar/paper behind outer walls within **Work Area 12**. Asbestos-containing Rust Inhibitor on Lintels, Window Lintel Caulking, Weatherproofing Tar/paper behind outer walls shall be removed utilizing NYS DOL 12 NYCRR Part 56 §11.6 Procedures for Exterior Non-Friable Removal.

Work Area #	Location	Asbestos-Containing Material	Approximate Quantity	Removal Procedure
12	HIGH SCHOOL EXTERIOR THROUGHOUT	RUST INHIBITOR ON LINTELS, WINDOW LINTEL CAULKING, WEATHERPROOFING TAR/PAER BEHIND OUTER WALLS	970 SF	NYS DOL 12 NYCRR PART 56 §11.6 EXTERIOR PROJECT REMOVAL OF NON-FRIABLE ACM ROOFING, SIDING, CAULKING, GLAZING, COMPOUND, TRANSITE, TARS, SEALERS, COATING, AND OTHER NOB ACMS

**THE WAVERLY SCHOOL**

45 Hall Avenue, Eastchester, NY 10709

**9. Drawing H-002.00: First Floor Plan**

- a. Remove asbestos-containing Door Frame Caulking (Gray) utilizing within **Work Area 1** NYS DOL 12 NYCRR Part 56 §11.6 Exterior Project Removal Of Non-Friable ACM Roofing, Siding, Caulking, Glazing, Compound, Transite, Tars, Sealers, Coating, And Other NOB ACMs

Work Area #	Location	Asbestos-Containing Material	Approximate Quantity (Square Feet – Linear Feet)	Removal Procedure
1	1 <sup>ST</sup> FLOOR, EXTERIOR OFFICE 120B	DOOR FRAME CAULKING (GRAY)	17 LF	NYS DOL 12 NYCRR PART 56 §11.6 EXTERIOR PROJECT REMOVAL OF NON-FRIABLE ACM ROOFING, SIDING, CAULKING, GLAZING, COMPOUND, TRANSITE, TARS, SEALERS, COATING, AND OTHER NOB ACMS

**GREENVALE ELEMENTARY SCHOOL**

1 Gabriel Rescigno Drive, Scarsdale, NY 10583

**10. Drawing H-002.00: Third Floor Plan**

- b. Remove and dispose of asbestos-containing pipe insulation, fitting insulation within **Work Areas 1**. Asbestos-containing pipe insulation and fitting insulation shall be removed utilizing NYS DOL 12 NYCRR Part 56 § 7.11 (ii) Tent Procedures. Asbestos-containing acoustical plaster/ceiling material shall be removed utilizing NYS DOL 12 NYCRR Part 56 Full Containment Procedures.

Work Area #	Location	Asbestos-Containing Material	Approximate Quantity	Removal Procedure
1	3 <sup>rd</sup> Floor, Plenums and Bathroom Chases	Fitting Insulation	100 LF	NYS DOL 12 NYCRR Part 56 § 7.11 (ii) Tent Procedures
		Pipe Insulation		

**ANNE HUTCHINSON ELEMENTARY SCHOOL**

60 Mill Road, Eastchester, NY 10709

**11. Drawing H-002.00: Ground Floor Plan**

- a. Remove and dispose of asbestos-containing Door Frame Caulking (Gray/Beige) within **Work Area 1** utilizing NYS DOL 12 NYCRR Part 56 § 7.11 (ii) Tent Procedures.

Work Area #	Location	Asbestos-Containing Material	Approximate Quantity (Square Feet – Linear Feet)	Removal Procedure
1	Exterior Exits Adjacent Classrooms 102 And 118	Door Frame Caulking (Gray/Beige)	42 LF	NYS DOL 12 NYCRR Part 56 §11.6 Exterior Project Removal Of Non-Friable ACM Roofing, Siding, Caulking, Glazing, Compound, Transite, Tars, Sealers, Coating, And Other NOB ACMs

**12. Drawing H-003.00: First Floor Plan**

- b. Remove and dispose of asbestos-containing Black Mastic/Yellow Adhesive Under Carpet and Acoustical Ceiling Plaster within **Work Area 2**. Asbestos-containing Black Mastic/Yellow Adhesive Under Carpet shall be removed utilizing NYS DOL 12 NYCRR Part 56 §11.7 Procedures for Non-Friable Flooring and/or Mastic Removal. Asbestos-containing Acoustical Ceiling Plaster shall be removed utilizing NYS DOL 12 NYCRR Part 56 Full Containment Procedures.

Work Area #	Location	Asbestos-Containing Material	Approximate Quantity (Square Feet – Linear Feet)	Removal Procedure
2	Auditorium	Black Mastic/Yellow Adhesive Under Carpet	120 SF	NYS DOL 12 NYCRR Part 56 §11.7 Procedures For Non-Friable Flooring And/or Mastic Removal
	Vestibule By Gym, Main Lobby	Acoustical Ceiling Plaster	900 SF	NYS DOL 12 NYCRR Part 56 Full Containment Procedures

- B. The Contractor is responsible for completing all notifications and variances required to meet the determined start date (if applicable).
- C. If asbestos containments are required, the Contractor shall establish the asbestos containments so as to not interfere with operation of or access to the temporary equipment that shall be installed by others.
- D. The Contractor shall field verify the amount of ACM and familiarize him/her-self with all variable field conditions in the building before the submission of his/her quote. The quantities presented in this specification are approximate only and should not be used solely as the basis for any quote. Any discrepancies or difference in the approximate and actual quantities shall be resolved before the award of any Contract. No change order relative to ACM material quantity will be permitted after the award of the Contract. In the event that suspect materials not included in this Specification are encountered while the work is in progress, such material shall be tested and, if confirmed ACM, removed as ACM, in accordance with the procedures contained herein. The discovery of any new material(s) should not delay the progress of the work as contained in this specification. Payment for any additional work will be considered on a case-by-case basis by the Environmental Consultant and Eastchester Union Free School District (EUFSD). It is the responsibility of the Contractor to determine and negotiate the full cost of any such payment prior to performance of any additional work.
- F. ACM shall be properly handled, packaged, and transported for disposal in a landfill in accordance with all Federal, State and Local regulations. After September 4, 2006, the Contractor shall follow Part 56 of Title 12 of the Official Compilation of Codes, Rules and Regulations of the State of New York (Cited as 12 NYCRR Part 56) as amended effective March 21, 2007. All related manifests and shipping logs shall be provided to EUFSD upon or before the end of the project.
- G. All work shall be accomplished in strict adherence to the project Specification, applicable Federal, State, and Local Regulations. Whenever there is a conflict or overlap of the above references, the more stringent provision shall apply.
- H. The Contractor's industrial hygiene practices during asbestos abatement will be monitored by EUFSD's Environmental Consultant. The Contractor shall be responsible for monitoring his/her own construction safety work practices for compliance with the OSHA regulations.
- I. The Asbestos Contractor shall provide the best available technology, and state-of-the-art procedures and methods of execution, clean-up, disposal, and safety.

- J. The Contractor will be required, if approved by EUFSD and/or its Representative, to obtain at his/her own expense appropriate variances from regulatory agencies as required to complete the safe removal of asbestos containing material as described in this specification.
- K. EUFSD's environmental consultant will sample all suspect materials that may be identified during the course of demolition, if applicable. The Contractor shall provide access to the consultant to perform the testing and no additional costs will be paid for the time it takes to perform the testing. The contractor shall provide itemized cost proposal to EUFSD which must include separate costs for the abatement of the individual materials revealed to be ACM (if applicable). Additional asbestos-containing materials shall not be abated without written authorization from EUFSD or environmental consultant. The contractor will not be compensated for any additional materials that can be encountered during the abatement project, without prior written authorization from EUFSD or environmental consultant.

**1.02 PHASING OF WORK:** This work shall include asbestos abatement associated with upcoming interior, exterior and roof upgrades project. The Asbestos Contractor shall perform and complete the abatement of asbestos-containing materials during regular working hours, Monday through Friday between 8:00 am and 4:00 pm or as directed by the facility. It is the Contractor's responsibility to ensure that acceptable visual inspection and air monitoring results are obtained with fiber count of <70 Structures/mm<sup>2</sup> of air using AHERA analysis method and are completed prior to the return of building occupants or other trades. All work shall be coordinated with EUFSD and EUFSD's Environmental Consultant prior to start of any work. The EUFSD's Environmental Consultant shall be present whenever any asbestos abatement work is being conducted.

**1.03 AUTHORITY TO STOP WORK:** EUFSD and the Environmental Consultant shall have the authority to stop the abatement work at any time the contractor's work is not in conformance with the Specifications and applicable regulations. The stoppage of work shall continue until conditions have been corrected to the satisfaction of EUFSD and the Environmental Consultant. Standby time to resolve the problems shall be at the contractor's expense.

**1.04 SITE REQUIREMENTS:**

- A. Noise Control: Provide mufflers or other acceptable means of noise reduction for all equipment to be used by the Contractor. Observe local laws regarding noise control.



- B. Wastewater: All water used by the Contractor during asbestos abatement activities shall be collected and passed through a water filtration system capable of filtering particles down to 5 microns prior to being discharged into the sanitary sewer. The Contractor shall contact the Westchester County engineering department to determine the acceptable location(s) to access the sanitary sewer. The Contractor shall be responsible for connection to the sanitary sewer, and for providing piping, pumps, water filtration systems, and other items necessary to collect, transport, filter, and dispose of the wastewater.
- C. Log In/Out: The Asbestos Contractor must ensure all workers log in and out daily at the site.
- D. The location of the Decontamination Unit shall be as per abatement design drawings. All variations must be coordinated and approved by the site manager and EUFSD's Environmental Consultant.

#### **1.05 HEALTH AND SAFETY:**

- A. Toxic Effects: The Contractor shall assume all responsibility for any toxic effects to workers from the air supplied to respirators, or from toxic or damaging vapors or residues resulting from the use of encapsulant and/or wetting agents or other substances used by the Contractor during construction.
- B. Chemical/Biological Hazards: The known chemical/biological hazards on site include asbestos-containing material and debris. The Contractor shall provide materials, equipment and training to its workers to ensure their protection from these and any other chemical/biological hazards which may be identified during the course of this work.
- C. Physical Hazards: The Contractor shall provide safety equipment and training to his/her workers to ensure their protection from any physical hazards including but not limited to trip/fall hazards, working at elevation, heat stress, contact with energized (hot) active equipment, noise, overhead bump hazards, and electrical shock that may be present during the Work.
- D. Safety Act: The Occupational and Safety Health Act (OSHA) of 1970, as amended, shall be strictly complied with during the course of this project. This Act shall govern the conduct of the Contractor's workmen, tradesmen, material-men, and subcontractors, and visitors to the project site.
- E. Accident Prevention: In order to protect the lives and health of his/her employees, the Contractor shall comply with all pertinent provisions of the latest edition of the "Manual of Accident Prevention in Construction" issued by the Associated General Contractors of America, Inc. and shall maintain an accurate record of all accidents which occur during the project. An injury or loss of life must be immediately

reported by the Contractor to the EUFSD and/or its Representatives, and a copy of the Contractor's report to his/her insurer of an accident must be provided to the EUFSD and/or its Representatives.

- F. **Emergency Response:** The Contractor shall establish an Emergency Response Team made up of members of his/her work force. Team members shall be trained, organized, and capable of responding in the event of an accident, fire, or other emergency. The Contractor shall designate a site Safety Coordinator to train team members regarding the location and use of site-specific fire/life safety equipment. As a minimum requirement, members of the Emergency Response Team shall be knowledgeable in standard first aid and CPR techniques, fire extinguisher use, and evacuation procedures.
- G. **Workmen Protection:** The Contractor shall provide and maintain all safety measures necessary to properly protect workmen.
- H. **Emergency Actions:** In an emergency affecting the safety of life, the work, or adjoining property, the Contractor, to prevent such threatened loss or injury without special instruction or authorization from the EUFSD and/or its Representatives, is hereby permitted to act at his/her discretion.
- I. **Hazard Communication Act:** The Contractor shall comply with the Hazard Communication Standard promulgated by the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA No. 29 CFR 1910.1200). This program ensures that all employers provide the information they need to inform and train employees properly and to design and put in place employee protection program. It also provides necessary hazard information to employees so they can participate in, and support, the protective measures needed at their work place. The contractor shall ensure that labels or other forms of warning are legible in English. Employer having employees who speak other languages must add the information in their languages. See OSHA 29 CFR 1910.1200 for more details.

#### **1.06 WORK SUPERVISION AND COORDINATION:**

- A. **Abatement Contractor's Supervisor:** From the start of work through to the project completion the Contractor shall have on-site a responsible and competent supervisor who possesses valid NYSDOL Supervisor certifications. As a minimum, the Asbestos Contractor's Supervisor shall meet the qualifications as required by Article 1.12, for a job supervisor. The Supervisor shall be on site during all working hours. When the Supervisor must leave site during work, a temporary Supervisor shall be appointed.

- B. Quality of Work: The Supervisor shall supervise, inspect and direct the Work competently and efficiently, devoting such skills and expertise as may be necessary to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Supervisor shall be responsible to see that Work complies accurately with the Contract Documents, and that all Work installed is of good quality and workmanship.

**1.07 SUBMITTALS:** Unless otherwise noted the Contractor shall submit three (3) copies of each APPLICABLE submittal to the EUFSD's Environmental Consultant and its Representatives for review and/or approval. The Contractor shall provide the following:

A. Pre-Project Submittal:

1. Certificates of Insurance naming EUFSD as additional insured.
2. All required bonds. All bonds shall be underwritten by a United States based, preferably New York State, A or B rated bonding company.
3. List of Subcontractors.
4. Health and Safety Plan: Provide a written Health and Safety Plan addressing procedures for work place safety. As a minimum, the following topics shall be addressed in the plan:
  - a. Hazard Communication. Procedure on how physical and health hazards associated with the work are identified and communicated to employees, and name of the person responsible for implementation of the Hazard Communication Program.
  - b. Guidelines for assessment and prevention of heat stress.
  - c. Procedures for using ladders safely.
  - d. Electrical safety procedures.
  - e. Emergency Action Plan: The Contractor shall submit for review a written Emergency Action Plan. This Plan shall outline the contingency actions to be performed for emergencies including fire, accident, power failure, supplied air system failure, breach of work area containment, unexpected asbestos contamination in the site area and on the adjoining grounds, or spilling of asbestos material being hauled to storage and/or disposal. This Plan shall identify the manner in which emergencies are announced, emergency escape procedures and routes, and procedures to account for all employees after evacuation. The Plan shall identify those persons responsible for fire/life safety duties including the Site Safety Coordinator,

persons responsible for fire prevention equipment and the control of fuel source hazards, and the members of the Emergency Response Team (see Paragraph "Emergency Response" of this Section). This Plan shall be readily available for review by all workers.

- f. Fall Protection Plan: The Contractor shall submit for review a written Fall Protection Plan. This plan shall outline the actions to be performed to protect personnel when they are working at elevation. The plan shall detail specific fall protection devices to be utilized, training provided to personnel for same and training of designated competent person in charge of and responsible for the elevated work site.
4. Proof of written notifications required by Paragraph "Codes, Permits and Standards" of this Section. Proof that all required permits and variances have been obtained.
5. Proof of written notification to the local police department, fire department and Facility (include a copy of required by NYS DOL ICR 56 section 56-3.6a ten day notice) that asbestos abatement work is being conducted. As a minimum, the notification letter shall include the address of the Facility, dates work is to be performed, and drawings indicating the areas to undergo abatement.
6. Documentation of compliance with all requirements of paragraph "Requirements and Qualifications" of this Section. Submittal shall include:
  - a. Proof that the job supervisors, foremen, and asbestos abatement workers meet State certification and license requirements.
  - b. Proof of a current medical surveillance program for all Contractor's personnel to work on this project.
  - c. Completed and notarized Certificate of Worker's Release for each asbestos abatement worker, workers of other trades, or supervisory personnel who enter the work area or otherwise contact ACM.
7. Proof of a respiratory protection program. Submit level of respiratory protection intended for each operation required by the project.

8. Proof of historic airborne fiber data. Submit airborne asbestos fiber monitoring data from an independent air monitoring firm to substantiate selection of respiratory protection proposed. Data shall include the following for each procedure required by the work: 1. date of measurement; 2. type of work task monitored; 3. methods used for sample collection and analysis, and; 4. number, duration and results of samples taken.
9. Proof that a landfill site has been located, and arrangements for transport and disposal of asbestos-containing or asbestos-contaminated materials have been made. Provide the name and location of the landfill, and waste transport company, if applicable.
10. Manufacturer's literature on all proposed job related equipment and products to be used on this project. Include Safety Data Sheets (SDS) for encapsulant, fire retardant plastics, mastic remover and other chemicals to be used on this project.
11. A detailed Asbestos Removal and Disposal Work Plan which describes all aspects of the work to be performed for this project. The Plan shall include the following:
  - a. A detailed description of the work area enclosure. Provide shop drawings (with dimensions and locations) of proposed decontamination facilities and work areas. These drawings shall indicate the following: 1) areas to be sealed off and work area boundaries; and 2) proposed layout and location of the decontamination enclosure systems. Include a detailed description of any modifications or changes to be made to the specified negative pressure work area enclosure.
  - b. Specimen of the daily log proposed for use. Minimally, the log should include the date(s) and time(s) when all personnel enter and leave the work area(s).

B. During Work Submittal:

1. Schedule of Work Changes: Any changes in the Schedule of Work proposed by the Contractor shall be submitted for approval to EUFSD no later than seven days prior to the commencement date of the proposed change. A revised Schedule shall be submitted at the end of each week.
2. Notarized copy of payroll showing that prevailing wage rates have been paid shall be submitted to the EUFSD on a weekly basis. Contractor shall use DOL form for wage payment.

EASTCHESTER UNION FREE SCHOOL DISTRICT  
2022 CAPITAL BOND PROJECT  
PHASE 2

3. A "Request For Services" form shall be submitted at least 24 hours in advance of required air monitoring tests and inspections to be performed by the EUFSD's Environmental Consultant.
4. Results of all air monitoring performed by the Contractor shall be posted within 24 hours for regular abatement project after collection for all workers to see. A copy of the results shall be given to the EUFSD's Environmental Consultant at the same time.
5. A certified, signed, and completed copy of each "Waste Shipment Record" form used, and receipts from the landfill operator which acknowledge the Contractor's delivery(s) of material, shall be submitted to the Consultant and Engineer within thirty days following removal of ACM from building.
6. A copy of the bound log book.

C. Post Project Submittal:

1. A notarized "Release of Liens" in a form acceptable to the EUFSD. Use the standard AIA form. Such notarized release of all liens shall certify that all subcontractors, labor suppliers, etc., have been paid their pro rate share of all payments to date, that the contractor has no basis for further claim, and will not make further claim for payment in any account after the first payment is made to him.
2. Proof of payment of prevailing wage rate to direct employees and subcontractor.
3. Notarized copies of a daily log showing the date(s) and time(s) of entrance to and exit from the work area(s) for all persons.
4. Compilation in chronological order of all air monitoring records pertaining to this project.
5. Compilation of all completed and signed Waste Shipment Record forms, bills of lading, or disposal receipts pertaining to this project.
6. Copies of notifications and checks to applicable agencies (see Subparagraph "Pre-Project Submittal Information" of this Section) that the asbestos abatement project has been completed.
7. Contractor shall submit the following items as part of his final submittals: Paid invoice verifications for sub-contractor (for Time and Material job), service contract agreement, insurance certificates, copies of the workers licenses (NYSDOL), and other submittal required for the Specification.

**1.08 FIRE PROTECTION AND EMERGENCY EGRESS:** The Contractor shall be responsible to the security and safeguarding of all areas turned over by the facility to the Contractor. The Contractor shall designate to his/her workers and other building occupants a means of egress in case of emergency.

- A. The Contractor shall establish emergency and fire exits from the work area. First aid kit, 2 full sets of protective clothing and respirators shall be provided for use by qualified emergency personnel in the clean room of the decontamination facility.
- B. For full containment only, the Contractor shall provide a secure work area to protect against unauthorized entry into and around the work area. Any hazardous conditions shall be reported to the contractor's Supervisor and the contractor shall correct the hazard immediately. Any intrusion or incident shall be documented in a bound log book which shall be maintained at the project site.

**1.09 CLEAN-UP:**

- A. Asbestos Related Clean-up: All clean-up work related to asbestos abatement work shall be in strict accordance with general technical requirements and this specification.
- B. Final Site Cleaning: Upon completion of the work, the Contractor shall remove all temporary construction, decontamination facilities, and unused materials placed on site by the Contractor; put the premises in a neat and clean condition; and provide all sweeping, cleaning, and washing required to restore the site to its original condition.

**1.10 CODES, PERMITS, AND STANDARDS:**

- A. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for compliance with all applicable federal, state (12 NYCRR Part 56 Adopted March 21, 2007), and local laws, ordinances, codes, rules, and regulations which govern asbestos abatement work or hauling and disposal of asbestos waste material. The current issue of each document shall govern. All work shall comply with all applicable codes and regulations as amended including: EPA Title 40CFR, Part 763, OSHA Title 29CFR, part 1910(including sections 1001,134,1926.2 and 1926.1200); EPA Title 40 CRF Part 61; NYSDEC Title 6,Part 364 and NYSDOH Title 10,Part 73
- B. Before starting the work, the Contractor shall examine the Technical Specification for compliance with codes and regulations applicable to the work and shall immediately report any discrepancy to the EUFSD's Environmental Consultant.
- C. Where conflict among requirements or with these Specifications exists, the more stringent requirements shall apply.
- D. Permits, State Licenses, and Notifications: The Contractor shall be responsible for obtaining necessary permits, variances, state licenses, and certifications of personnel in conjunction with asbestos removal, hauling, and disposition and shall provide timely notification of such actions as may be required by federal, state, regional, and local authorities. Fees and/or charges for these licenses, permits, and notifications shall be paid by the Contractor. Contractor shall use all notification forms where applicable.
  - 1. Agency Notification: At least 10 days prior to commencement of any asbestos removal, the Contractor shall prepare written notification to EPA Region 2, to the New York State Department of Labor (NYSDOL), and all other applicable agencies having jurisdiction. In addition, the Contractor shall be required to obtain any other permits for work covered under this specification including permits required for air sampling.



**1.11 TERMINOLOGY:** The following commonly-used terms are defined in the context of these Specifications:

- A. Asbestos Project: Work that involves the removal, encapsulation, enclosure, repair or disturbance of friable or non-friable asbestos, or any handling of asbestos material that may result in the release of asbestos fibers. For the purpose of compliance with this Part, an asbestos project shall include any disturbance of asbestos fibers, and the planning, asbestos survey (as per Subpart 56-5.1), design, background air sampling, inspection, air sampling and oversight of abatement work, cleanup, and the handling of all asbestos material subject to abatement, as well as the supervising of such activities. Installation of friable ACM shall also be considered an asbestos project. An asbestos project starts with Phase I when the planning, asbestos survey, and design work begins or is required to begin.
- B. Asbestos-Containing Material (ACM): Any material or product which contains more than 1 percent asbestos.
- C. Aggressive Air Sampling: Air monitoring samples collected while a leaf blower, fans, or other such devices are used to generate air turbulence within the work area.
- D. Air Filtration Device (AFD) - A portable local exhaust system equipped with HEPA filtration, capable of maintaining a constant low velocity air flow into contaminated areas from adjacent, uncontaminated areas and capable of maintaining a negative air pressure with respect to the adjacent, uncontaminated areas.
- E. Air Lock: A system for permitting ingress or egress to the work area while permitting minimal air movement between a contaminated area and an uncontaminated area, typically consisting of two curtained doorways placed a minimum of three feet apart.
- F. Air Monitoring: The process of measuring the fiber content of a specific volume of air in a stated period of time. Personal air sampling results shall be calculated to reflect the employee's eight-hour time weighted average (TWA) exposure. Area sampling results are reported directly, without calculating the TWA.
- G. Amended Water: Water to which a surfactant has been added.
- H. Asbestos Removal Encapsulant: A chemical solution used in place of amended water during asbestos removal to penetrate, bind, and encapsulate the asbestos-containing material.
- I. Authorized Visitor: EUFSD's Environmental Consultant or representatives of any regulatory or other agency having jurisdiction over the project.

- J. EUFSD's Environmental Consultant: EUFSD's agent who is authorized to exercise general contract administration and industrial hygiene inspection of the work.
- K. Certified Industrial Hygienist (CIH): One certified in the comprehensive practice of industrial hygiene by the American Board of Industrial Hygiene.
- L. Class II asbestos work: Activities involving the removal of ACM which is not thermal system insulation or surfacing material. This includes, but is not limited to, the removal of asbestos-containing wallboard, floor tile and sheeting, roofing and siding shingles, and construction mastic. Class I asbestos work includes the removal of thermal system or surfacing materials.
- M. Competent Person: Definition and responsibilities as set down in 29 CFR 1926.1101(b) and as outlined herein.
- N. Curtained Doorway: A device to allow ingress or egress from one room to another while permitting minimal air movement between the rooms.
- O. Decontamination Enclosure System: A series of connected rooms for the decontamination of workers (a Personnel Decontamination Enclosure System) or of materials and equipment (Equipment Decontamination Enclosure System).
- P. Equipment Decontamination Enclosure System: A decontamination system for waste materials and equipment, typically consisting of a designated area of the work area, a washroom, and a holding area, with an air lock between any two adjacent rooms and a curtained doorway between the holding area and the non-work area. Not to be used for personnel entry/exit.
- Q. Encapsulant (Sealant): A liquid material which can be applied to ACM and which controls the possible release of asbestos fibers from the material, either by creating a membrane over the surface (bridging encapsulant) or by penetrating into the material and binding its components together (penetrating encapsulant).
- R. Encapsulation: Application of an encapsulant to asbestos-containing building materials to control the possible release of asbestos fibers into the ambient air.
- S. Enclosure: Procedures necessary to completely enclose ACM behind air-tight, impermeable, permanent barriers.
- T. Excursion Limit (EL): The EL is an airborne concentration of asbestos to which no employee shall be exposed when not using respiratory protection. The EL is 1.0 f/cc as averaged over a 30 minute period.

- U. Fixed Object: A unit of equipment or furniture in the work area which cannot be removed from the work area.
- V. Friable: Any material which, when dry, may be crumbled, pulverized, or reduced to powder by hand pressure, or is capable of being released into the air by hand pressure.
- W. Full Facepiece High Efficiency Respirator (FFHER): A respirator which covers the wearer's entire face from the hairline to below the chin and which is equipped with a HEPA filter.
- X. Half Mask High Efficiency Respirator (HMHER): A respirator which covers one-half of the wearer's face, from the bridge of the nose to below the chin, and is equipped with HEPA filters.
- Y. HEPA Filter: A high efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filter capable of trapping and retaining 99.97 percent of the fibers of 0.3 micrometer or larger in diameter.
- Z. HEPA Vacuum Equipment: High efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filtered vacuuming equipment having a UL 586 filter system capable of collecting and retaining asbestos fibers.
- AA. Large Asbestos Project: Large asbestos project shall mean an asbestos project involving the disturbance, enclosure, encapsulation, repair or handling of 160 square feet or more of ACM, PACM or asbestos material or 260 linear feet or more of ACM, PACM or asbestos material.
- AB. Lockdown: Procedure of applying an encapsulant as a protective coating or sealant to a surface from which ACM has been removed in order to control and minimize airborne asbestos fiber generation that might result from residual asbestos-containing debris.
- AC. Minor Asbestos Project: Minor project shall mean an asbestos project involving the disturbance, enclosure, encapsulation, repair or handling of 10 square feet or less of ACM, PACM or asbestos material or 25 linear feet or less of ACM, PACM or asbestos material.
- AD. Movable Object: A unit of equipment or furniture which can be removed from the work area.
- AE. Plasticize: To cover floors and walls with plastic sheeting as herein specified.

- AF. Permissible Exposure Limit (PEL): The PEL is an airborne concentration of ACM to which no employee shall be exposed when not using respiratory protection. The OSHA PEL is 0.1 f/cc expressed on an 8-hour time weighted average (TWA).
- AG. Personnel Decontamination Enclosure System: A decontamination system for personnel and limited equipment, typically consisting of an equipment room, shower room, and clean room, with an air lock between any two adjacent rooms, and a curtained doorway between the equipment room and the work area, and a curtained doorway between the clean room and the non-work area. The decontamination system serves as the only entrance/exit for the work area.
- AH. Powered Air Purifying Respirator (PAPR): Either a full face-piece, helmet, or hooded respirator that powers breathing air to the wearer after the air has been purified through a HEPA filter.
- AI. Regulated Abatement Work Area: The portion of the restricted area where abatement work actually occurs. For tent work areas, the interior of each tent is a regulated abatement work area. For OSHA Class I and Class II asbestos abatement, the interior of the restricted area containment enclosure is the regulated abatement work area. For exterior non-friable asbestos abatement conducted without the establishment of negative air ventilation systems or containment enclosures, the entire restricted area surrounding the abatement location is considered to be the regulated abatement work area.
- AJ. Removal: The act of removing and transporting asbestos-containing or asbestos-contaminated materials from the work area to a suitable disposal site.
- AK. Small Asbestos Project: Small asbestos project shall mean an asbestos project involving the removal, disturbance, repair, encapsulation enclosure or handling of more than 10 and less than 160 square feet of ACM, PACM or asbestos material or more than 25 and less than 260 linear feet of ACM, PACM or asbestos material.
- AL. Surfactant: A chemical wetting agent added to water to improve penetration, thus reducing the quantity of water required for a given operation or area.
- AM. Tent Procedure: A fire retardant polyethylene enclosure that includes walls, ceiling and a floor as required to remove ACM, PACM or asbestos material.
- AN. Type C Respirator: A respirator which supplies air to the wearer from a source outside the work area by means of a compressor.
- AO. Wet Cleaning: The process of eliminating asbestos contamination from building surfaces and objects by using cloths, mops, or other cleaning tools which have

been dampened with amended water or asbestos removal encapsulant and by afterwards disposing of these cleaning tools as asbestos-contaminated waste.

- AP. Work Area: Designated rooms, spaces, or areas of the project where asbestos abatement actions are to be undertaken or which may become contaminated as a result of such abatement actions. A contained work area has been sealed, plasticized, and equipped with an airlock entrance or a decontamination enclosure system. A non-contained work area is an isolated or controlled-access area which has not been plasticized.

### **1.12 REQUIREMENTS AND QUALIFICATIONS:**

- A. Minimum Experience: The Contractor shall have experience with abatement work, as evidenced through participation in at least *two* asbestos abatement projects of complexity comparable to this project.
- B. Experience and Training: The Contractor's job supervisors, foremen, and workers shall be adequately trained and knowledgeable in the field of asbestos abatement. All personnel engaged in asbestos abatement or related activities shall have New York State DOL certifications. All phases of the work shall be executed by skilled craftsmen experienced in each respective trade. Proof of such experience shall be submitted upon request by the EUFSD. Improperly trained, untrained, or inexperienced personnel shall not be allowed in the work area(s). Personnel shall meet minimum training and experience requirements outlined in this Section.
1. The Contractor's on-site job supervisor shall have successfully completed, within the last twelve months, the NYSDOH-approved course "Supervision of Asbestos Abatement Projects", and shall be qualified as a NYSDOL-certified Contractor/Supervisor. Course must be provided by an NYSDOH-approved training provider. The supervisor shall have experience with abatement work, as evidenced through participation in at least two asbestos abatement projects of complexity comparable to this project.
  2. The job supervisors and foremen shall be thoroughly familiar with and experienced in asbestos removal and related work and shall meet the requirements of a competent person set down in OSHA Standard 29 CFR 1926.1101.
  3. All asbestos abatement workers shall be knowledgeable, qualified, and trained in the removal, handling, and disposal of asbestos material and in subsequent cleaning of the affected environment. All asbestos abatement workers shall be certified as having attended and satisfactorily completed asbestos worker training in accordance with OSHA Standard 29 CFR 1926.1101(k)(3). Course must be provided by an NYSDOH-approved training provider.

4. The Contractor's job supervisors, foremen, and asbestos abatement workers shall be certified and licensed as required by the NYSDOL.
  5. Prior to commencement of work, all personnel who are to enter the work area shall be instructed in and shall be knowledgeable of the appropriate procedures for personnel protection and asbestos abatement. On-site training in the use of equipment and facilities unique to this job site shall be performed. Emergency evacuation procedures from the work area shall also be included in worker training.
- C. Supervision Requirements: The Contractor shall provide adequate job supervision for all phases of the asbestos abatement work.
1. The Contractor shall have a NYSDOL job supervisor present on site whenever work described in this Section is in progress. If the job supervisor leaves the site for any reason a qualified and certified supervisor, who meets the requirements of this Section and is familiar with the current status of the work, shall be designated. EUFSD's Designated Representative shall be informed of the substitution. The supervisor must be familiar and experienced with asbestos removal and its related work, safety procedures, and equipment.
- D. Worker Medical Examinations: The Contractor shall provide medical examinations for all employees engaged in asbestos removal and disposal operations, in accordance with OSHA Standards 29 CFR 1910.134(b), 1926.1101, and applicable state regulations. The Contractor shall ensure that all employee examination results are on file in his office and available for review and are maintained in accordance with OSHA Standard 29 CFR 1926.1101 (n) (3).
- E. Certificate of Worker's Release: Each asbestos abatement worker, workers of other trades, or any supervisory personnel who enter the work area, or otherwise contact ACM, shall submit a Certificate of Worker's Release, as required in the Section "Submittal".

#### **1.13 TESTING AND INSPECTION REQUIREMENTS AND RESPONSIBILITIES:**

Visual inspections and air monitoring will be performed before, during, and after asbestos abatement to document airborne asbestos fiber concentrations as defined in this specification.

- A. EUFSD's Responsibilities:
1. EUFSD will employ an Environmental Consultant to perform Project Monitoring and air testing. The project monitor will have the authority to approve the contractor's work, stop the contractor's work and direct the contractor to take corrective actions where required.

2. Area air samples will be collected and analyzed using NIOSH Method 7400. Air samples will be collected during each shift as required by the regulations.
3. Clearance testing by Transmission electron microscopy (TEM) will be conducted as per AHERA regulations. Air samples will be collected to demonstrate final re-occupancy clearance for work areas within the building. The fiber concentration must comply with the specified clearance level as per AHERA and this specification. EUFSD will provide for collection and analysis of one round of samples required to demonstrate clearance in each discrete work area.
4. EUFSD's Environmental Consultant will perform inspections of the work area, as specified, upon request of the Contractor.

B. Contractor's Responsibilities:

1. TEM air samples which fail to meet the re-occupancy clearance standard shall be paid for by the Contractor. Should a delay occur, due to failure(s) of clearance air testing, all associated expenses such as TEM analysis, and the Environmental Consultant's time for additional cleaning and air testing, shall be paid by the asbestos contractor. If results of the inside work area group of air samples are unsatisfactory, recleaning of regulated abatement work area surfaces using wet methods, followed by another drying time period and then collection and analysis of an additional set (both inside and outside work area samples) of clearance air samples is required. If only the results of the outside work area group of air samples is unsatisfactory, clean-up of surfaces outside of the regulated abatement work area using HEPA-vacuums and wet-cleaning methods shall be performed prior to collection and analysis of an additional group of outside work area clearance air samples as required by ICR 56 Section 56-9.2. This recleaning/clean-up and sampling process shall be repeated until satisfactory clearance air sampling results have been achieved for all asbestos project non-exempt regulated abatement work areas throughout the entire work site.
2. The Contractor, at his/her expense, shall provide OSHA monitoring and all other all tests required by specified applicable regulations, codes, and standards and any other tests for his/her use. The use of a testing laboratory by EUFSD does not release the Contractor from providing tests required for the protection and safety of his/her employees.
3. The Contractor shall employ an independent testing laboratory for analysis of OSHA personal air monitoring samples. The laboratory used for air sample analysis shall be successfully participating in the "Proficiency

Analytical Testing (PAT) Program for Laboratory Quality Control for Asbestos." The monitoring shall be supervised by an Industrial Hygienist certified by the American Board of Industrial Hygiene (A.B.I.H.). Each testing laboratory shall be ELAP (Environmental Laboratory Accreditation Program) and NVLAP (National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program) certified. EUFSD shall approve the contractor's testing laboratory.

4. From each work area the Contractor, at his/her expense, shall collect and analyze OSHA personal air monitoring samples. Sampling shall be repeated during each different work activity. Sample collection and analysis shall be performed using the OSHA Reference Method as outlined in 29 CFR 1926.1101, Appendix A.
  5. Results of all air monitoring performed by the Contractor shall be posted within 24 hours for regular abatement project after collection for all workers to see. A copy of the results shall be given to the EUFSD's Environmental Consultant at the same time.
  5. The Contractor shall be advised whenever questions arise concerning compliance with standards of quality and completeness of the work, and shall use his/her best efforts to resolve any such questions to the satisfaction of the EUFSD's Environmental Consultant.
  6. Where air monitoring tests and/or inspections are specified, the Contractor shall notify EUFSD's Environmental Consultant, in writing, 24 hours, in advance of the required test and/or inspection.
  8. The Contractor is responsible for ensuring the Work is complete to the level that meets the criteria of the inspection. The Contractor shall perform an inspection of the Work to evaluate completeness prior to requesting an inspection by the EUFSD's Environmental Consultant.
- C. Time Requirements for EUFSD's Environmental Consultant's Inspections and Testing: Where visual inspections or air testing is required to be performed by the EUFSD's Environmental Consultant, the Contractor shall allow for the following response/analytical time for completion of the inspection/test.
1. Where visual inspections are required, allow 24 hours, beginning from the time the Contractor's request is received by the EUFSD's Environmental Consultant, for the performance of the inspection.
  2. Where TEM clearance air monitoring tests are required, allow 24 hours, beginning from the time the Contractor's written request is received by the EUFSD's Environmental Consultant, to the beginning of the air test.



## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MATERIALS:** Materials provided under this section shall be standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of the items and shall conform to OSHA Standard 29 CFR 1926.1101; EPA Standard 40 CFR 61, Subpart M; Department of Transportation Standards 49 CFR 171, 172, and 173; applicable state regulations; and requirements specified herein. Materials listed under this section "or equal" shall be provided for work under contract.

- A. Plastic: Provide fire retardant plastic of 6-mil thickness shall be provided in rolls of sizes which will minimize the frequency of joints. Fire retardant plastic sheet shall be used for plasticizing the enclosed work area, for preparation of the decontamination enclosure system, and for waste packaging.
- B. Reinforced Fire Retardant Plastic: Provide reinforced polyethylene sheet for the floor area of the decontamination enclosure system. Reinforced plastic sheet provided for this project shall be a 19 mil, 3-ply, high density flame resistant-reinforced-polyethylene sheet. Plastic color shall be opaque.
- C. Duct Tape: Duct tape shall be capable of sealing joints of adjacent sheets of plastic and of attaching plastic sheeting to finished surfaces without damage to existing finish and shall be capable of adhering under both dry and wet conditions, including use of amended water
- D. Surfactant: Surfactant (Wetting Agent) shall consist of resin materials in a water base, which have been tested to ensure materials are non-toxic and non-hazardous. Surfactants shall be installed according to the manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Lockdown Encapsulants: Encapsulants used after asbestos removal to lockdown fugitive fibers shall carry a Class "A" fire resistance rating and shall have an ASTM E-162 flame spread index of 15 or less. A tint shall be given to the encapsulant by means of the addition of non-toxic, nonflammable colorings before application. The encapsulant shall be installed according to the manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Caulking Sealant: Caulking sealant shall be single component, non-sag elastomer with 1600% elongation capacity. Sealant shall meet the requirements of Federal Specification TT-S-00230C, Class A Type II. Sealant shall be used to form an airtight seal around plywood barriers or temporary partitions, to seal along the seams of the decontamination enclosure system's plywood sheathing, and to seal around piping or other small penetrations of the work area. Sealant application shall be according to the manufactures written instructions.

- G. Foam Sealant: Foam Sealant shall be expanding urethane Class 1 foam sealant with an Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (U.L. 723) flame spread index of 25 or less, smoke developed index of 0, and a minimum operating temperature range between -30°F and 250°F.
- H. Plywood: Plywood used for temporary partitions, decontamination enclosure systems, and tunnels shall be an exterior grade and a minimum 3/8-inch thick.
- I. Spray Adhesive: Spray Aerosol Adhesive shall be specially formulated to stick to sheet polyethylene (3M 76, 3M 77, or equivalent).
- J. Other Materials: All other materials, such as lumber, plywood, tools, scrapers, brushes, cleaning materials, adhesive, nails, hardware, etc., which are required to perform the work described in this Section shall be provided. Materials and equipment shall be new or used, uncontaminated by asbestos, in serviceable condition, and appropriate for the intended purpose.
- K. Disposal Bags: Plastic Disposal Bags shall be a minimum of six mils in thickness. Bags shall be labeled in accordance with this Section.
- L. Shipping Containers: Impermeable Containers shall be suitable to receive and retain any asbestos-containing or asbestos-contaminated materials until they are disposed of at an approved landfill. The containers shall be labeled in accordance with this Section. Containers shall be both airtight and watertight and conform to DOT Standard 49 CFR 178.224. Each container shall be constructed of fiber, hard plastic, or metal, with locking, airtight lids.
- L. Shipping Containers: Impermeable Containers shall be suitable to receive and retain any asbestos-containing or asbestos-contaminated materials until they are disposed of at an approved landfill. The containers shall be labeled in accordance with this Section. Containers shall be both airtight and watertight and conform to DOT Standard 49 CFR 178.224. Each container shall be constructed of fiber, hard plastic, or metal, with locking, airtight lids.
- M. Markings and Labels: Disposal bags and shipping containers shall bear danger labels, transportation packaging labels, and generator identification information. Labels shall be permanently affixed to all bags and shipping containers containing ACM, in accordance with OSHA Standard 29 CFR 1926.1101(k)(2), DOT Standard 49 CFR Part 171 and 172, and EPA Standard 40 CFR Part 61.150(a)(1)(v).

1. Danger label format and color shall conform to OSHA Standard 29 CFR 1926.200. Danger labels shall display the following legend/information:

DANGER  
CONTAINS ASBESTOS FIBERS  
MAY CAUSE CANCER  
CAUSES DAMAGE TO LUNGS  
DO NOT BREATHE DUST  
AVOID CERATING DUST

2. DOT Marking and Labels: Markings and labels shall be permanently affixed to all bags and containers containing ACM, in accordance with DOT 49 CFR 172.304 and 172.407.

- a. Markings shall display the following text:

RQ, ASBESTOS, NA 2212

- b. Labels shall be diamond shape and shall be located near the Marking text. Labels will consist of a diamond a minimum of 100 millimeters (mm) on each side with each side having a solid line inner boarder 5.0 to 6.3 mm from the edge. The label shall be white with seven black vertical stripes on the top half. Black stripes and white spaces shall be equally spaced. The lower half of the label shall be white with the class number "9" underlined and centered at the bottom. Refer to DOT 40 172.446 for label format.

3. Generator identification information shall be affixed to each DOT label format and color shall conform to DOT Standard 49 CFR 172.304. Generator identification information labels shall display the following legend/information:

GENERATOR'S NAME  
GENERATOR'S 24 HOUR PHONE  
GENERATOR'S FACILITY ADDRESS

- N. Reuse of Containers: If impermeable containers used to transport bagged asbestos waste to the landfill are to be reused, the empty containers shall display the following label:

RESIDUE:  
LAST CONTAINED ASBESTOS RQ

- O. Warning Signs: Warning Signs shall be posted at the perimeter of the work area prior to abatement operations in accordance with OSHA Standard 29 CFR 1926.1101. Danger sign format and color shall conform to OSHA Standard 29 CFR 1926.200. The signs shall display the legend indicated below:

DANGER  
ASBESTOS  
MAY CAUSE CANCER  
CAUSES DAMAGE TO LUNGS  
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY  
RESPIRATORS AND PROTECTIVE  
CLOTHING ARE REQUIRED IN THIS AREA

- P. Mastic remover. The contractor shall use an odorless mastic remover. Manufacture and brand of mastic remover shall be approved by the Facility prior to commencing removal work.

**2.02 EQUIPMENT:** Equipment provided under this section shall conform to applicable federal and state regulations, local codes, and the requirements specified herein.

- A. Spraying Equipment: Equipment used to apply amended water or removal encapsulant shall be of a low pressure type to prevent disturbance of the asbestos prior to physical controlled removal. Airless spray equipment shall be provided for the application of asbestos encapsulant.
- B. Vehicles: Trucks or Vans used for the transportation of asbestos waste shall be enclosed and suitable for loading, temporary storage, transit, and unloading of asbestos-contaminated waste without exposure to persons or property.
- C. Fall Protection Equipment: Certified and approved equipment to be used by trained personnel when working at elevation to protect against falling from an elevated work area.
- D. Fire Extinguisher: Type "ABC" dry chemical extinguisher or a combination of several extinguisher of NFPA recommended types for the fire hazard exposures in each extinguisher location shall be provided. Minimum size of extinguisher shall be 4-A, and 40-B:C. Supply a minimum of one extinguisher for every 1,000 square feet of floor area, with a maximum travel distance to an extinguisher of 75-feet. Supply at least one extinguisher in each decontamination enclosure equipment room, and clean room. Supply 2 additional extinguishers inside the work area
- E. Smoke Detectors: Smoke detectors of the battery powered ionization type will be required at a rate of one per 5,000 square feet, with a minimum of one smoke detector in the decontamination enclosure clean room, and one in the work area.

- F. Water Filtration System: A system capable of filtering and retaining particles larger than 5.0 microns in size shall be provided.
- G. Carts: Provide water tight wheeled carts with tight fitting lids suitable for movement of non-contaminated waste or bagged asbestos waste from the decontamination enclosure system to the waste storage container or transport vehicle.
- H. Power Tools: Provide power tools necessary to complete the Work. Power tools used directly for asbestos removal shall be equipped with a dust collection system. Attach a shroud connected to a HEPA vacuum system for capture of dust.

**2.03 WORKER PROTECTIVE CLOTHING AND EQUIPMENT:** Protective clothing and equipment shall conform to OSHA Standard 29 CFR 1926.1101.

- A. Protective Clothing: Workers shall be provided with sufficient sets of properly fitting, full-body, disposable coveralls, head covers, gloves, and 18-inch high boot-type foot covers. Disposable coveralls, head covers, and 18-inch high boot-type foot covers shall be constructed of material equal to DuPont "TYVEK-Type 14" or Kimberly-Clark "Kleenguard", as a minimum requirement.
  - 1. The Contractor shall provide authorized visitors and the EUFSD's Environmental Consultant suitable properly fitting protective disposable clothing, headgear, hard hats, eye protection, respiratory protection, and footwear (up to four sets per 8-hour shift) whenever they are required to enter the work area.
- B. Equipment: Eye protection and hard hats required for job conditions or by applicable safety regulations shall be provided.
- C. Respiratory Protection: The Contractor shall be solely responsible for providing adequate respiratory protection at all times for all individuals in the work area. Types of respirators used shall be approved by MSHA/NIOSH for asbestos in accordance with OSHA Standard 29 CFR 1926.1101 and 29 CFR 1910.134. The Contractor shall provide a level of respiratory protection which supplies an airborne fiber level inside the respirator below 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeter (f/cc), as the minimum level of protection allowed. Determine the proper level of protection by dividing the actual airborne fiber count in the work area by the "protection factors" given below for each respirator type:

EASTCHESTER UNION FREE SCHOOL DISTRICT  
2022 CAPITAL BOND PROJECT  
PHASE 2

<u>Respirator Type</u>	<u>Protection Factor</u>
Air purifying: Negative-pressure respirator, High efficiency HEPA filter, Half-facepiece	10
Air purifying: Negative-pressure respirator, High efficiency HEPA filter, Full-Facepiece	50 (quantitative)
Powered air purifying (PAPR): Positive pressure respirator High efficiency HEPA filter, Full-facepiece	1000
Type C supplied air: Positive-pressure respirator, Pressure-demand, Full-facepiece HEPA escape	1000
Type C supplied air: Positive-pressure respirator, Pressure-demand, Full-facepiece HEPA escape	1000
Type C supplied air: Pressure-demand, Full-facepiece equipped with an auxiliary SCBA	1000

1. The Contractor shall provide workers with individually issued and marked respiratory equipment. Respiratory equipment shall be suitable for the asbestos exposure level(s) in the work area(s), as specified in OSHA Standard 29 CFR 1926.1101, and as more stringently specified otherwise, herein.
2. During the use of supplied air systems the Contractor shall provide authorized visitors, EUFSD's Environmental Consultant, and the testing laboratory representative with individually issued and marked respiratory equipment (up to six units). Respiratory equipment shall be compatible with the supplied air system in use, and shall be suitable for the asbestos

exposure level(s) in the work area(s), as specified in OSHA Standard 29 CFR 1926.1101, and as more stringently specified otherwise, herein.

3. Where respirators with disposable filter parts are employed, the Contractor will provide sufficient filter parts for replacement as necessary or as required by the applicable regulation.
4. Breathing air supply systems shall conform to the USEPA NIOSH Document EPA-560-OPTS-86-001 (September 1986) entitled "A Guide to Respiratory Protection for the Asbestos Abatement Industry."
5. The Contractor shall have a minimum of two spare air hoses with connectors to permit the EUFSD's Environmental Consultant or testing laboratory's representative to connect his/her assigned Type C respirator to the air system at any time without having to wait for personnel to exit the work area in order to obtain a spare hose.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 DECONTAMINATION ENCLOSURE SYSTEMS:**

- A. Personal decontamination system enclosures shall be constructed and functional prior to commencing the regulated abatement work area preparation activities. Waste decontamination system enclosures shall be constructed and functional at the completion of preparation activities. After installation of the personal decontamination system enclosure, all access to the regulated abatement work area shall be via the installed personal decontamination system enclosure.
- B. Personal Decontamination System Enclosure - Large Project.
  - (1) Enclosure – General. A personal decontamination system enclosure shall be provided outside the regulated abatement work area and in close proximity to all locations where personnel shall enter or exit the regulated abatement work area. One personal decontamination enclosure system for each regulated abatement work area shall be required. This system may utilize adequate existing lighting sources separate from the decontamination system enclosure, or shall be supplied with a GFCI protected temporary lighting system. The personal decontamination system enclosure shall be sized to accommodate the number of workers and equipment required for the intended purpose. Such system may consist of existing attached rooms outside of the regulated abatement work area, if the layout is appropriate, that can be plasticized and are accessible from the regulated abatement work area. When this situation does not exist, personal decontamination enclosure systems may be constructed of metal, wood or plastic supports covered with fire-retardant plastic sheeting. A minimum of one (1) layer of

six (6) mil fire-retardant plastic sheeting shall be installed on the ceiling, and walls of the enclosure system. At least two (2) layers of six (6) mil fire-retardant reinforced plastic sheeting shall be used for flooring protection of this area. This system must be kept clean, sanitary and climate controlled at all times in conformance with all federal, state and local government requirements. This system shall remain on-site, operational and be used until completion of Phase II C of the asbestos project.

- (2) Rooms and Configuration. The personal decontamination system enclosure shall consist of a clean room, a shower room and an equipment room connected in series but separated from each other by airlocks. There shall be a curtained doorway separation between the equipment room and the regulated abatement work area, and there shall be a lockable door to the outside. (See Figure 1 within ICR 56) Minimum dimensions for each airlock, shower room and equipment room shall be three (3) feet wide by six (6) feet in height, to allow for adequate access to and from the regulated abatement work area.
- (3) Curtained Doorway. An assembly which consists of at least three (3) overlapping sheets of six (6) mil fire retardant plastic over an existing or temporarily framed doorway. One sheet shall be secured at the top and left side, the second sheet at the top and right side, and the third sheet at the top and left side. All sheets shall have weights attached to the bottom to insure that the sheets hang straight and maintain a seal over the doorway when not in use.
- (4) Framing. Enclosures systems accessible to the public shall be fully framed, hard-wall sheathed and utilize a lockable door for safety and security.
- (5) Sheathing. A plywood or oriented strand board (OSB) sheathing material of at least 3/8-inch thickness.
- (6) Plastic Sheeting. Enclosure systems constructed at the work site shall use at least one (1) layer of six (6) mil fire-retardant plastic sheeting on walls and ceiling. At least two (2) layers of six (6) mil fire-retardant reinforced plastic sheeting shall be used for floor protection of this area.
- (7) Prefabricated or Trailer Units. A completely watertight fiberglass or marine painted prefabricated unit does not require plasticizing. Rooms shall be configured as per paragraph (2) of this Section. All prefabricated or trailer decontamination units shall be kept in good condition, and shall be completely decontaminated after final cleaning and immediately prior to clearance air sampling. Upon receiving satisfactory clearance air results, the prefabricated units shall be sealed then separated from the regulated abatement work area and removed from the site.
- (8) Clean Room. The clean room shall be sized to accommodate a full workshift of asbestos abatement contractor personnel, as well as the air sampling technician and the project monitor. The clean room shall be a minimum of six (6) feet in height. A minimum of thirty-two (32) square feet of floor space shall be provided for every six (6) full shift abatement workers, calculated on the basis of the largest work shift.



consists of three (3) or less full shift abatement workers, the minimum clean room size requirement is reduced to twenty-four (24) square feet of floor space. Benches, lockers and hooks shall be provided for street clothes. Shelves for storing respirators shall be provided. Clean clothing, replacement filters for respirators, towels and other necessary items shall be provided. The clean room shall not be used for storage of tools, equipment or materials. It shall not be used for office space. A lockable door shall be provided to permit access to the clean room from outside the regulated abatement work area or enclosure and shall be used to secure the regulated abatement work area and decontamination enclosure during non-work hours.

- (9) Shower Room. The shower room shall contain one (1) shower per every six (6) full shift abatement workers, calculated on the basis of the largest work shift. Multiple showers shall be simultaneously accessible (installed in parallel) to certified personnel. Each showerhead shall be supplied with hot and cold water adjustable at the tap. The shower enclosure shall be constructed to ensure against leakage of any kind. Uncontaminated soap, shampoo and towels shall be available at all times. Shower water shall be drained, collected and filtered through a system with at least 5.0-micron particle size collection capability. Submersible pumps shall be installed, maintained and utilized in accordance with pertinent OSHA regulations and manufacturer's recommendations. A multi-stage filtering system containing a series of several filters with progressively smaller pore sizes shall be used to avoid rapid clogging of the filtering system by larger particles. Filtered wastewater shall be discharged in accordance with applicable codes. Contaminated filters shall be disposed of as asbestos-contaminated waste.
- (10) Equipment Room. The equipment room shall be used for the storage of decontaminated equipment and tools. A one (1) day supply of replacement filters for HEPA-vacuums and negative pressure ventilation equipment in sealed containers, extra tools, containers of surfactant and other materials and equipment that may be required during the abatement project may also be stored here. A container lined with a labeled, at least six (6) mil plastic bag for collection of clothing shall be located in this room. Contaminated footwear and work clothes shall be stored in this area.
- (11) Airlocks. Airlock construction shall consist of two (2) curtained doorways with three (3) alternating six (6) mil fire retardant polyethylene curtains per doorway, separated by a distance of at least three (3) feet, such that one passes through one doorway into the airlock, allowing the doorway sheeting to overlap and close off the opening before proceeding through the next doorway. Minimum airlock size shall be three (3) feet wide, by three (3) feet long, by six (6) feet in height.

C. Personal Decontamination System Enclosure - Small Project

- (1) Enclosure Requirements. A personal decontamination system enclosure for a Small asbestos project shall consist of, at a minimum, an equipment room, a shower room and a clean room separated from each other and from the regulated abatement work area and other areas by curtained doorways as defined in ICR 56 Section 56-2.1. All other provisions for personal decontamination system for a Large asbestos project shall apply. Equipment storage, personal gross decontamination and removal of clothing shall occur in the equipment room just prior to entering the shower. (See Figure 4 in the ICR 56) The full personal decontamination system enclosure specified for Large asbestos projects is recommended.

D. Remote Personal Decontamination System Enclosure. If a personal decontamination system cannot be attached to the regulated abatement work area, due to available space restrictions or other building and fire code restrictions, a remote personal decontamination system enclosure may be used for limited Special Projects as per subpart 56-11, negative pressure tent enclosure work areas with glovebag only abatement, or if non-friable ACM is being removed in a manner which will not render the ACM friable.

Limitation. If it is found during removal, that the non-friable ACM or asbestos material will become friable during the removal process, and it is logistically possible to attach the decontamination system enclosure, abatement work must stop immediately while the remote personal decontamination system is relocated to be attached and contiguous to the regulated abatement work area.

The following requirements apply for all remote personal decontamination systems:

- (1) Protective Clothing. Workers shall don two (2) sets of disposable protective clothing and a supply of protective clothing shall be kept in the airlocks attached to the regulated abatement work area.
- (2) Location. The remote personal decontamination system shall be constructed as close to the regulated abatement work area as physically possible. If the remote personal decontamination system must be located at the exterior of the building/structure due to space or code restrictions, it shall be constructed within fifty (50) feet of the building/structure exit used for access by the asbestos abatement contractor personnel. The decontamination unit shall be cordoned off at a distance of twenty-five (25) feet to separate it from public areas.
- (3) Airlocks. At a minimum, two (2) extra airlocks as defined in ICR 56 Section 56-2.1 shall be constructed as per ICR 56 Section 56-7.5(b)(11). One shall be constructed at the entrance to the equipment room or equipment/washroom. The other extra airlock shall be constructed at the

entrance to the containment or regulated abatement work area(s). These airlocks shall have lockable doorways at the entrance to the airlock from uncontaminated areas. These airlocks shall be cordoned off at a distance of twenty-five (25) feet and appropriately signed in accordance with ICR 56 Section 56-7.4(c). Airlocks shall not be used as a waste decontamination area and shall be kept clean and free of asbestos containing material.

- (4) Designated Pathway. The walkway from the regulated abatement work area to the personal decontamination system or next regulated abatement work area shall be cordoned off and signage installed as per ICR 56 Section 56-7.4(c), to delineate it from public areas while in use during Phase IIA through IID.
- (5) Travel Through Uncontaminated Areas. If at any time a worker must travel through an uncontaminated area to access the personal decontamination area, the worker shall HEPA-vacuum and/or wet wipe his/her outer protective clothing while in the regulated abatement work area, then proceed into the airlock, which serves as a changing area, where he/she shall remove the outer clothing and don a clean set of protective clothing. The worker may then proceed to the personal decontamination system enclosure only along a designated pathway as described above. Travel in any other area shall not be allowed.
- (6) Removal. The remote personal decontamination unit shall be removed only after satisfactory clearance air sampling results have been achieved.

E. Waste Decontamination System Enclosure - Large and Small Asbestos Projects.

- (1) Enclosure – General. A waste decontamination system enclosure shall be provided outside the regulated abatement work area and shall be attached to the regulated abatement work area. One (1) waste decontamination enclosure for each regulated abatement work area shall be required. This system may utilize adequate existing lighting sources separate from the decontamination system enclosure, or shall be supplied with a GFCI protected temporary lighting system. The waste decontamination system enclosure shall be sized to accommodate the number of workers and equipment for the intended purpose. Such system may consist of existing attached rooms outside of the regulated abatement work area, if the layout is appropriate, that can be plasticized and are accessible from the regulated abatement work area. When this situation does not exist, enclosure systems may be constructed of metal, wood or plastic supports covered with fire-retardant plastic sheeting. A minimum of one (1) layer of six (6) mil fire-retardant plastic sheeting shall be installed on the ceiling, and walls of the enclosure system. At least two (2) layers of six (6) mil fire-retardant reinforced plastic

sheeting shall be used for flooring protection of this area. This system must be kept clean, sanitary and climate controlled at all times in conformance to all federal, state and local government requirements. This system shall remain and be used until completion of Phase II C of the asbestos project.

- (2) Rooms and Configuration. A waste decontamination system enclosure shall consist of a washroom and a holding area connected in series but separated from each other by an airlock. There shall be a lockable door to the outside, and there shall be a curtained doorway between the washroom and the regulated abatement work area. (See Figure 2 in the ICR 56)
- (3) Curtained Doorway. An assembly which consists of at least three (3) overlapping sheets of six (6) mil fire retardant plastic over an existing or temporarily framed doorway. One (1) sheet shall be secured at the top and left side, the second sheet at the top and right side, and the third sheet at the top and left side. All sheets shall have weights attached to the bottom to insure that the sheets hang straight and maintain a seal over the doorway when not in use.
- (4) Washroom. A room/chamber between the regulated abatement work area and the holding area in the waste decontamination system enclosure, where equipment and waste containers are wet cleaned or HEPA-vacuumed. Adequate drainage and bag/container wash water shall be provided within the room/chamber, as well as a sufficient quantity of clean waste bags/containers.
- (5) Equipment/Washroom Alternative. Where there is only one (1) exit from the regulated abatement work area, the holding area of the waste decontamination system enclosure may branch off from the equipment room of the personal decontamination system enclosure. The equipment room will also be used as a waste washroom. (See Figure 3 in the ICR 56)
- (6) Plastic Sheeting. Waste decontamination system enclosures constructed at the work site shall use at least one (1) layer of six (6) mil fire-retardant plastic sheeting on walls and ceiling. At least two (2) layers of six (6) mil fire-retardant reinforced plastic sheeting shall be used for flooring protection of these areas.
- (7) Enclosure Security. The waste decontamination system enclosure and regulated abatement work area airlock(s) (when remote decontamination systems are used) shall be constructed with lockable doors to prevent unauthorized entry. Enclosures systems located within twenty-five (25) feet of an area of public access shall be fully framed and hard-wall sheathed for safety.
- (8) Drains. The waste washroom shall be equipped with a wash bin of sufficient size to perform waste container washing operations and shall have a submersible pump installed to collect waste water and deliver it

- to the shower wastewater filtration system where it shall be filtered in accordance with paragraph (b)(9) of this Section.
- (9) Shower/Washroom Alternative - Small Asbestos Project. For Small asbestos projects with only one (1) exit from the regulated abatement work area, the shower room may be used as a waste washroom. The clean room shall not be used for waste storage, but shall be used for waste transfer to carts, which shall be immediately removed from the enclosure. Waste shall be transferred only during times when the showers are not in use. (See Figure 4 in this Section)
- F. Waste Decontamination System Enclosure – When Remote Personal Is Allowed. When a remote personal decontamination system enclosure is allowed and utilized for a regulated abatement work area, the following requirements shall apply:
- (1) Minor Size Regulated Abatement Work Area. No specific waste decontamination system enclosure is required for minor size regulated abatement work areas. The waste generated shall be immediately bagged/containerized within the regulated abatement work area.
- (2) Small & Large Size Regulated Abatement Work Areas.
- (i) Washroom. An additional chamber shall be constructed within the regulated abatement work area, attached to the existing airlock used to access the work area. The washroom/airlock combination shall be utilized as the contiguous waste decontamination enclosure for waste bagging/containerization and waste transfer activities. The washroom shall be constructed and supplied with equipment/materials consistent with waste decontamination system enclosure washroom requirements for contiguous personal and waste decontamination system enclosures.
- (ii) Removal. The washroom chamber shall be removed only after satisfactory clearance air sampling results have been achieved.

### **3.02 PERSONNEL PROTECTION AND DECONTAMINATION PROCEDURES:**

- A. General: The Contractor shall take all safety measures and precautions necessary to protect his/her employees and building occupants in accordance with OSHA Standard 29 CFR 1926, EPA Standard 40 CFR, Part 61, Subpart M, and applicable state and city regulations. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for enforcing personnel protection requirements.
1. After the installation of the personal decontamination system, full PPE in compliance with current OSHA regulations shall be worn in regulated abatement work areas during preparation activities, for all friable OSHA Class I or Class II asbestos projects. Asbestos abatement contractor's respirator selection, filter selection, medical surveillance and respiratory

training must be consistent with current OSHA regulations. Appropriate respiratory protection is also required of all authorized visitors.

2. Workers or authorized visitors shall not eat, smoke, drink, or chew gum or other substances while in the work area(s) or decontamination area(s).
3. Contaminated worker footwear, eye protection, and hard hats shall be stored in the equipment room when not in use in the work area and, upon completion of asbestos abatement, disposed of as asbestos-contaminated waste or decontaminated for reuse.
4. Entry to the personal and waste decontamination system enclosures shall be restricted to the asbestos contractors involved with the asbestos project, appropriately certified employees of the asbestos contractors, authorized visitors, police, fire and other public safety personnel.
5. Asbestos workers shall not wear any jewelry; e.g. watch, necklace, etc. while in the work area or decontamination area.

B. Worker Respiratory Protection: With approval from the EUFSD's Environmental Consultant, historical airborne fiber level data may serve as the basis for selection of the level of respiratory protection to be used for the time interval prior to the Contractor establishing the eight-hour time weighted average (TWA) for an abatement task. Historical data provided by the Contractor shall be based on OSHA personal air monitoring of the "breathing zone" of his/her employees for other asbestos abatement projects, and the data were obtained during work operations conducted under work place conditions closely resembling the processes, type of material, control methods, work practices, and environmental conditions used and prevailing in the Contractor's current operations. Documentation of aforementioned results shall be presented to the EUFSD's Environmental Consultant for review of applicability. (See "Submittal, Pre-Project Information." This will not relieve the Contractor in providing personal air monitoring to determine the TWA for the work under contract. The TWA shall be determined in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.1101. After the TWA is established, the Contractor may provide respirators as presented in the Specification. The minimum level of protection for TSI and/or Surfacing Materials abatements is full face-piece Powered Air Purifying Respirator (PAPR).

1. Review safety data sheets (SDS) for products to be used during the work. Follow recommendations as given by the product manufacturer for personnel protection required to be worn during product application.

2. **Personal Air Monitoring Requirements:** The Contractor's CIH shall be responsible for development and implementation of a personal air monitoring program in accordance with OSHA Standard 29 CFR 1926.1101, good industrial hygiene practices, and the requirements herein. Personal air monitoring shall be performed by an independent testing laboratory and supervised by the Contractor's CIH. Documentation of air sampling shall include as a minimum, calculations of minimum sample volume to achieve necessary detection limits; sampling time; sampling location (or subject); evidence of periodic inspection of sampling equipment; documentation of daily pre- and post-calibration of sampling equipment; detailed description of worker protective devices; description of any typical environmental conditions; and a description of work practices/procedures/controls in operation during the sampling period. Documentation of sample analysis shall include, as a minimum, sample identification; total sample duration, sample flow rate; the "Limit of Reliable Quantification"; total air volume; total fibers counted (with work sheets); total fields counted; blank filter analysis; and reticule field area. Airborne fiber concentrations in fibers per cubic centimeter (f/cc) shall be calculated and reported at the 95 percent confidence level.
3. Full-shift personal exposure air sampling of workers shall be performed to establish the 8-hour (TWA) exposure. Such sampling shall be conducted for each employee (or representative group of employees, at least one sample per eight man crew) expected to evidence the highest exposure in each work area for each type of activity on the first shift that site preparation, removal, or cleanup activities occur. Similarly, 30-minute personal exposure air sampling shall be conducted during activities anticipated to produce the highest airborne concentrations to determine the Excursion Limit. Personal exposure sampling shall be repeated everyday as per protocol requirements where removal and cleanup operations are conducted for the duration of the project, or at any time that conditions indicate to the Contractor or the Contractor's CIH that the most recent personal sampling results are no longer indicative of employee exposure. PCM personal samples shall be collected and analyzed according to the OSHA Reference Method in OSHA Standard 29 CFR 1926.1101, Appendix B.

C. **Personnel Entrance and Decontamination Procedures for Gross Removal Operations Utilizing NYSDOL ICR 56-11.7 for Non Friable Flooring and/or Mastic Removal at the Facility:** The following entry/exit procedures shall be used for gross removal:

1. All workers and authorized visitors shall enter the work area through the worker decontamination enclosure system.

- 2 All individuals who enter the work area shall sign the entry log, located in the clean room, upon each entry and exit. The log shall be permanently bound and shall identify fully the facility, agents, contractor(s), the project, each work area and worker respiratory protection employed. The site supervisor shall be responsible for the maintenance of the log during the abatement activity.
- 3 Each worker or authorized visitor shall, upon entering the job site, remove street clothes in the clean room and put on a clean respirator (with new filters, if appropriate) and clean protective clothing before entering the work area through the shower room and equipment room.
- 4 Each worker or authorized visitor shall, each time he/she leaves the work area: remove gross contamination from clothing before leaving the work area; proceed to the equipment room and remove all clothing except the respirator; still wearing the respirator, proceed to the shower room; clean the outside of the respirator with soap and water while showering; remove filters, wet them, and dispose of them in the container provided for that purpose; wash and rinse the inside of the respirator; and thoroughly shampoo and wash himself/herself.
- 5 Following showering and drying off, each worker or authorized visitor shall proceed directly to the clean room, dress in street clothes, and exit the decontamination enclosure system immediately. Disposable clothing of the type worn inside the work area is not permitted outside the work area.

**D. Personnel Entrance and Decontamination Procedures for Gross Removal Operations Utilizing Full Decontamination Facility:** The following entry/exit procedures shall be used for gross removal using full containment.

1. All workers and authorized visitors shall enter the work area through the worker decontamination enclosure system.
- 2 All individuals who enter the work area shall sign the entry log, located in the clean room, upon each entry and exit. The log shall be permanently bound and shall identify fully the facility, agents, contractor(s), the project, each work area and worker respiratory protection employed. The site supervisor shall be responsible for the maintenance of the log during the abatement activity.
- 3 Each worker or authorized visitor shall, upon entering the job site, remove street clothes in the clean room and put on a clean respirator (with new filters, if appropriate) and clean protective clothing before entering the work area through the shower room and equipment room.



- 4 Each worker or authorized visitor shall, each time he/she leaves the work area: remove gross contamination from clothing before leaving the work area; proceed to the equipment room and remove all clothing except the respirator; still wearing the respirator, proceed to the shower room; clean the outside of the respirator with soap and water while showering; remove filters, wet them, and dispose of them in the container provided for that purpose; wash and rinse the inside of the respirator; and thoroughly shampoo and wash himself/herself.
- 5 Following showering and drying off, each worker or authorized visitor shall proceed directly to the clean room, dress in street clothes, and exit the decontamination enclosure system immediately. Disposable clothing of the type worn inside the work area is not permitted outside the work area.

**3.03 PREPARATION OF WORK AREA:** The following Paragraph "General Preparations" outlines procedures applicable to all work areas. Work procedures specific for preparing each asbestos removal area is addressed in its respective Subparagraph. If a site specific variance is approved, procedures outlined in the variance will supercede this specification.

**A. General Preparations:** The following general preparations shall be used for all work areas being abated:

1. Erect barricades; post notices and warning signs.
2. Provide and install decontamination enclosure systems in accordance with Article 3.01, "Decontamination Enclosure Systems" of this Section.
3. Seal drains and other collection devices with 6-mil plastic and plywood, as necessary, and provide a system to collect all water used by the Contractor. Collected water shall be passed through a water filtration system prior to being discharged into the sanitary sewer.
4. Ensure that the Contractor's approved Fall Protection Equipment (if applicable) is in place, in operating condition, and in operation during work described in this section.
5. Maintain emergency and fire exits from the work areas or establish alternative exits satisfactory to the local fire officials. Emergency exits and routes shall be established and clearly marked with florescent paint or other effective designations to permit easy location from anywhere within the work area. Emergency exits shall be secured to prevent access from uncontaminated areas and yet permit emergency exiting. Exits shall be checked daily against exterior blockage or impediments to exiting.

6. Temporary lighting within the work area and decontamination system shall be provided as required to achieve minimum illumination levels.
7. Hand power tools used to drill, cut into, or otherwise disturb ACM shall be equipped by manufacture with HEPA filtered local exhaust ventilation.
8. Hot and cold water may not be available in all work areas. In such cases sufficient heating equipment shall be provided to maintain a necessary supply of hot water for showers.

**B. Friable Interior Asbestos-Containing Materials (Tent Enclosure):**

1. Tent enclosure work areas shall at a minimum have decontamination areas installed and utilized, as per the requirements of Section 56-11.3.
2. Tents with greater than twenty (20) square feet of floor space, that are scheduled for gross removal of friable ACM, PACM, or asbestos material, shall be constructed of two (2) layers of six (6) mil fire-retardant plastic sheeting and shall include walls, ceiling and a floor (except for portions of walls, floors and ceilings that are the removal surface) with double folded seams. Seams shall be duct taped airtight and then duct taped flush with the adjacent tent wall.
3. Tents with no gross removal of friable ACM, PACM or asbestos material, shall be constructed of one (1) layer six (6) mil fire-retardant plastic sheeting and shall include walls, ceiling and a floor (except for portions of walls, floors and ceilings that are the removal surface) with double –folded seams. Seams shall be duct taped airtight and then duct taped flush with the adjacent tent wall.
4. Tents or tent-like structures or enclosures shall be adequately supported and reinforced to withstand local environmental conditions and the negative pressures developed within them.
5. An airlock shall be constructed as per Section 56-7.5(b)(11), at the entrance to each tent that utilizes remote decontamination system facilities. Each tent and airlock shall be cordoned off twenty-five (25) feet from it perimeter, or the interior space/room where the tent and airlock is located shall be secured from non-certified personnel or public access, and signage shall be installed as per Section 56-7.4(c).

6. Manometers consistent with the requirements of Section 56-7.8(a)(4), are required for negative pressure tent enclosure regulated abatement work areas with OSHA Class I 12 NYCRR 56 Subpart 7, Page 69 abatement. Negative air shall be maintained at four (4) air changes per hour for non-friable and glovebag abatement tent enclosure work areas. Eight (8) air changes shall be maintained for friable gross removal tent enclosure work areas. If a HEPA-filtered vacuum is used for a Minor size abatement tent enclosure work area to maintain the required air changes, after final cleaning is completed twenty (20) minutes shall elapse, then ventilation may be stopped, clearance air samples collected if required, and the tent sealed until results are read. If air sample results are unacceptable, ventilation shall be re-established, the area recleaned and new samples taken.

**C. Full Containment preparation for Gross Removal:** The Contractor shall perform the following general and gross area preparations for each work area to undergo gross removal using full containment unless procedures outlined in an approved site specific variance are being followed.

1. Request that EUFSD's Environmental Consultant perform area monitoring and establish a background count prior to the preparatory operations for each removal area.
2. Erect barricades; post notices and warning signs.
3. Shut down, isolate, and lock out or tag heating, ventilating, and air conditioning (HVAC) systems which serve or which pass through the work area. Vents within the work area and seams in HVAC components shall be sealed with tape and two layers of plastic sheeting. Filters in HVAC systems shall be removed and treated as asbestos-contaminated waste.
4. Shut down, disconnect, and lock out or tag all electric power to the work area so that there is no possibility of its reactivation until after clearance testing of the work area.
5. Provide and install decontamination enclosure systems in accordance with Article 3.01 (B), "Decontamination Enclosure Systems". Prior to installation of decontamination enclosure system, the floor area shall be covered with one layer of 6-mil plastic sheeting and then 1/2 inch rigid flooring prior to normal decon construction. This procedure (to be implemented only when required) is necessary to protect the existing carpet from being contaminated.
6. Seal floor drains, sumps and other collection devices with two layers of 6-mil plastic and plywood, as necessary, and provide a system to collect all

water used by the Contractor. Collected water shall be passed through a water filtration system prior to being discharged into the sanitary sewer.

7. Ensure that the Contractor's communication equipment is in place, in operating condition, and in operation during work described in this Section.
8. Separate by means of airtight barriers (isolation barriers) parts of the building that are not included in the work area(s) from parts of the building that will undergo asbestos abatement.
9. Seal with isolation barriers: open doorways, cased openings, and corridors which will not be used for passage during work. Any opening equal to or more than 32 square feet shall be sealed with solid (plywood or oriented strand board sheathing material of at least 3/8-inch thickness fastened to the regulated abatement work area side of the barrier partition) isolation barriers, except that where any one dimension is one foot or less.
10. Isolation barriers shall extend from the floor to the drop ceiling and form an airtight seal. They shall be built using wood or metal framing at 24-inch on-center faced with plywood sheathing, and shall be braced as necessary. Both sides of the isolation barrier shall be covered with a double layer of 6-mil plastic sheeting, with joints staggered and sealed with tape. Edges of the temporary partition at the floor, walls, and ceiling shall be taped and caulked airtight. Isolation barriers larger than 32 square feet shall be sheathed on the work area side with 3/8 inch plywood or oriented strand board (OSB) sheathing.
11. Completely seal airtight and isolate the work area. All openings, including but not limited to doorways, windows, tunnels, ducts, grilles, cracks, diffusers, openings through which pipe conduit passes, and any other penetrations of the work area, shall be covered with plastic sheeting taped or caulked airtight. Refer to updated ICR 56 for the elevator shaft ports isolation details.
12. Maintain emergency and fire exits from the work areas or establish alternative exits satisfactory to the local fire officials. Emergency exits and routes shall be established and clearly marked with fluorescent paint or other effective designations to permit easy location from anywhere within the work area. Emergency exits shall be secured to prevent access from uncontaminated areas and yet permit emergency exiting. Exits shall be checked daily against exterior blockage or impediments to exiting.
13. Temporary lighting within the work area and decontamination system shall be provided as required to achieve minimum illumination levels.

14. After sealing and plasticizing the area install and initiate operation of at least two air filtration devices to provide a negative pressure of at least -0.02 inches of water and four (4) changes per hour within the work area relative to surrounding non-work areas. Do not shut down AFD's until the work area is released to the Owner following final clearance procedures. All air filtration device filters shall be new and shall be installed on-site under the supervision of EUFSD's Environmental Consultant. The contractor shall utilize Applicable Variance-A-2 (AV-A-2) at the locations with negative unit exhaust greater than 25 foot in length.
15. Hand power tools used to drill, cut into, or otherwise disturb ACM shall be manufacture equipped with HEPA-filtered local exhaust ventilation.
16. Scaffolds shall be provided for workers engaged in work that cannot safely be performed from the ground or other solid work area surface.
17. Work Area Precleaning Procedures: After establishing the decontamination enclosure system, prepare and pre-clean the work area as specified below and as indicated by the drawing notes:
  - a. Movable and loose items not removed by the facility from work areas shall be cleaned using HEPA vacuum equipment and/or wet cleaning methods as appropriate and shall be removed from the work area and stored at the Owner's direction.
  - b. Movable and loose items contaminated with asbestos shall be wrapped or placed in labeled ACM bags. Sealed ACM bags shall be removed from the work areas and properly discarded as asbestos-contaminated waste.
  - c. Fixed objects within the work area shall be pre-cleaned using HEPA vacuum equipment and/or wet cleaning methods as appropriate. Joints of covers or casings shall be sealed with tape and fixed objects enclosed with a minimum of two layers of 6-mil plastic sheeting sealed airtight with tape. Disassembly of these fixed objects is not required unless otherwise noted. Fixed objects shall include, but not be limited to, light fixtures, junction boxes, hangers and black carrying channels.
  - d. Prior to being plasticized, the work areas shall be cleaned using HEPA vacuum equipment and/or wet cleaning methods as appropriate. Methods that raise dust, such as dry sweeping or vacuuming with equipment not equipped with HEPA filters, shall not be used.

18. Plasticize the area after pre-cleaning, using the following procedure:
  - a. Cover floor with one layer of 6-mil plastic sheeting, turning layer a minimum of 12 inches up wall, and seal layer to wall.
  - b. Cover walls with one layer of 6-mil plastic sheet, lapping wall layer a minimum of 12 inches, and seal layer to floor layer.
  - c. Cover ceiling with one layer of 6-mil plastic sheet, lapping wall layer a minimum of 12 inches, and seal layer to wall layer
  - c. Repeat procedure for second layer. All joints in plastic sheets shall be glued and taped in such a manner as to prohibit air passage. All seams within a layer shall be separated by a distance of at least six (6) feet and sealed airtight with duct tape. All seams between layers shall be staggered at least two (2) feet.
19. Areas immediately adjacent to removal areas, such as corridors or hallways which are not in work areas but are necessary routes to and from work areas, shall be protected with two layers of 6-mil plastic sheet on floors and two layers of 6-mil plastic sheet on walls and ceilings.

**D. Non-Friable Asbestos-Containing Floor Tile & Mastic Materials:**

1. A remote personal decontamination system enclosure that complies with Subpart 56-7.5 for small projects shall be utilized. The decontamination system shall be installed or constructed before any preparatory work in the work area and before any disturbance of asbestos material. The decontamination enclosure system shall be located as close to the work area as possible. The decontamination unit may be mobile.
2. An airlock and attached washroom constructed of one (1) layer of 6 mil. polyethylene sheeting shall be attached to work area.
3. The work area, decontamination units, airlocks and dumpster shall be cordoned off with asbestos warning tape and signs at a distance of ten (10') feet where feasible and shall remain vacated except for certified workers until satisfactory clearance air monitoring results have been achieved.
4. All access areas between the work area and the decontamination enclosure system shall be restricted or cordoned off with caution tape and signage directing the traffic pattern of non-certified MTA/NYCT workers and the public while in use by certified asbestos workers.
5. All electric power in the work area shall be shut down and locked out. In the event this is not possible as per 56-7.7 (c), the live electric shall be maintained within those conduits, cables, panels and boxes as per following conditions:

- a) All live cables, electrical panels and boxes that run through the work areas shall be wrapped with three (3) layers of 6-mil plastic sheeting. Each layer shall be individually taped and sealed separately. All three (3) layers of polyethylene sheeting shall be left in place until satisfactory clearance air monitoring results have been obtained.
  - b) Any energized circuits remaining in the work areas shall be posted with a two (2) inch high lettering warning sign which reads: DANGER-LIVE ELECTRICAL-KEEP CLEAR. The sign shall be placed on all live covered barriers at maximum of (10) ten-foot intervals. These signs shall be posted in sufficient numbers to warn all persons authorized to enter the work areas of the existence of the energized circuits.
  - c) All electrical power for the removal project shall be brought into the work area through a separate GFI panel box located outside the work area.
6. Critical/isolation barriers shall be constructed in the Work Area using minimum of two layers of 6-mil polyethylene sheeting and plywood (where required). Alternatively, the contractor has the option to perform the work utilizing a Tent Enclosure. If a Tent enclosure is utilized, it shall be constructed in accordance with IRC 56 Subpart 7.11 (f) (1). The Work Area shall be exhausted utilizing negative air units to achieve six (6) air changes per hour for critical/isolation barrier work areas or four (4) air changes per hour for Tent Enclosure work areas. Sufficient negative air handling equipment shall be utilized on site in order to achieve required negative air pressure within the work area (See Appendix A).
7. Due to site restrictions, negative air units cannot be exhausted greater than fifteen (15) feet outside of the building receptor as per the requirements of ICR 56-7.8 (11). Therefore, negative air units shall be connected in series and exhausted outside the work area and into a plywood box. The box shall be cordoned off with proper caution tape and signage and shall be constructed of a minimum of 1' x 1' x 1' with a HEPA pre-filter covering the exhaust end. There shall be one box per negative air unit exhaust.
8. A four (4) hour pre-abatement settling period is required prior to commencement of ACM floor tiles removal activities.

**3.04 PRE-REMOVAL INSPECTIONS:**

- A. Prior to removal of any ACM the Contractor shall notify the EUFSD's Environmental Consultant and request a pre-removal inspection. Posting of warning signs, plasticizing of work area, building of decontamination enclosure systems, and all other preparatory steps have been taken prior to notification of EUFSD's Environmental Consultant. The Contractor shall not begin asbestos removal until the EUFSD's Environmental Consultant approves the work area preparations.

**3.05 MAINTENANCE OF CONTAINED WORK AREA AND DECONTAMINATION ENCLOSURE SYSTEMS:**

- A. Repair damaged barriers and remedy any defects immediately upon their discovery. Visually inspect barriers at the beginning and end of each work period.
- B. Visually inspect non-Work Areas and the decontamination enclosure system for water leakage. Check the floor below, ceiling and walls, and view beneath/or around the decontamination enclosure system, for signs of leakage. Perform the visual inspection a minimum of twice each 8- hour work shift.
- C. Ensure that both hot and cold water exist in sufficient supply for the decontamination enclosure system.

**3.06 REMOVAL OF ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIAL:** The Asbestos Contractor shall be responsible for the proper removal of ACM from the Work Area using standard abatement industry removal techniques. The Environmental Consultant or their representative shall observe the Work. Approval of the Asbestos Contractor's abatement techniques is required by the Environmental Consultant to allow for the continuance of work.

**1. Removal of Interior Friable Asbestos-Containing Materials (Tent Enclosure):**

- 1. All persons shall don appropriate personal protective equipment before entering the tent in compliance with current OSHA regulations. Authorized visitors entering the tent shall also don NIOSH-approved respiratory protection.
- 2. A HEPA-vacuum or other negative pressure HEPA-filtered ventilation equipment shall be used to continuously exhaust 12 NYCRR 56 Subpart 11, Page 100 the tent in accordance with Sections 56-7.8(a) and 56-7.11(f)(1).
- 3. All material to be removed shall be saturated with amended water as specified in this Part.



4. Asbestos material shall be removed and sealed in plastic bags prior to removal from tent. Edges of asbestos material remaining shall be encapsulated or sealed with wettable cloth.
5. The substrate from which asbestos was removed and any exposed edges shall be sealed with encapsulant.

**2. Thermal System Insulation and Surfacing Materials Removal:** The Contractor shall use work methods and equipment which will keep the fiber count during abatement operations inside the work area to less than 0.1 fibers/cc of air when tested by NIOSH Method 7400.

1. Removal of asbestos-containing material using full containment procedures (large projects).
  - a. Prepare the area as described in Subparagraph "Gross Removal Area Preparations" of this Section. Remove aluminum lagging from piping and equipment while providing a continual mist of amended water or removal encapsulant to the insulation, leaving it intact. Spray asbestos materials with a fine mist of amended water or removal encapsulant, saturating materials to substrate. Spray the asbestos material repeatedly during work process to maintain a wet condition and to minimize asbestos fiber dispersion.
  - b. Remove the saturated asbestos material in small sections. As it is removed, pack the material in sealable plastic bags which shall be placed in labeled drums for transport. Remove insulation materials carefully from equipment; do not permit them to fall to the floor.
  - c. After completion of all stripping work, surfaces from which ACM have been removed shall be wet brushed and sponged or cleaned by some equivalent method to remove all visible residue. (Do not use wire brushes.)
  - d. After the ACM removal and bagging, the bagged waste shall be HEPA-vacuumed then wet cleaned and transferred into the shower room for double bagging. The goose-neck and double-bagged waste shall be transferred outside the clean room for its final transfer for storage in an enclosed waste container.

- e. All accumulations of asbestos waste material shall be containerized and removed. Non-metal shovels and HEPA-vacuums may be used to pick up or move waste except in the vicinity of isolation barriers which might be breached. The areas around isolation barriers shall be cleaned utilizing rubber or plastic dustpans, squeegees or shovels. HEPA-vacuums shall be used to clean all surfaces after gross cleanup.
- f. First Cleaning, Lockdown Encapsulation and Top Layer Removal. All surfaces of the regulated abatement work area shall be first wet-cleaned using rags, mops and sponges. For collecting excess liquid and wet debris, a wet purpose HEPA filtered shop vacuum may be used and shall be emptied prior to removal from the regulated abatement work area. When the first cleaning has been completed, a thin coat of a lockdown encapsulant agent shall be applied to all surfaces within the regulated abatement work area which were not the subject of removal or abatement. In no event shall lockdown encapsulant be applied to any surface which was the subject of removal or other abatement response activity, prior to obtaining satisfactory clearance air results for the regulated abatement work area. Once the lockdown encapsulant has been applied, and the appropriate waiting/settling or drying time requirements of ICR 56 have been met, the cleaned, exposed top barrier layer of plastic sheeting shall then be removed from walls, ceilings and floors. Windows, doors, HVAC system vents and other openings shall remain sealed. Decontamination system enclosures shall remain in place and shall continue to be utilized.
- g. Second Cleaning and Bottom Layer Removal.. After the first cleaning, at least twelve (12) hours shall be allowed for asbestos to settle. After the top layer of plastic sheeting has been removed, all objects and surfaces in the regulated abatement work area shall be HEPA-vacuumed and then wet-cleaned. After the second cleaning and waiting/settling or drying time requirements of this Subpart, then the remaining bottom layer of plastic sheeting on walls, ceilings and floors shall be removed. All windows, doors, HVAC system vents and all other openings shall remain sealed.
- h. Third or Final Cleaning and Visual Inspection. After the bottom layer of plastic sheeting has been removed, all objects and surfaces in the regulated abatement work area shall be HEPA-vacuumed and then wet-cleaned. After the final cleaning is complete, clearance air sampling shall not commence until the appropriate waiting/settling or drying time requirements of ICR 56 have elapsed and a visual inspection has been completed by the project monitor to confirm that

the scope of abatement work for the asbestos project is complete, and no visible asbestos debris/residue, pools of liquid, or condensation remain. The asbestos abatement contractor supervisor must complete a satisfactory visual inspection for completeness of abatement and cleaning, prior to commencement of the project monitor visual inspection.

**3. Removal of Non-Friable Asbestos-Containing Floor Tile & Mastic Materials:**

1. Residual non-friable ACM shall be wet scraped by manual means and HEPA vacuumed. Materials removed shall be containerized or immediately wrapped in two (2) layers of six (6) mil fire retardant plastic sheeting and secured air tight prior to transport to the waste decontamination facility.
2. Asbestos containing materials will not be allowed to accumulate in the work area

**4. Additional Removal Requirements:**

- A. EUFSD's Environmental Consultant shall issue a stop work order if visible emissions are detected outside the work areas and/or should the fiber count in adjacent non-work areas exceed 0.01 f/cc of air or the background count (use the greater of these two values as the reference). Work shall not resume until the condition(s) causing the increase are corrected, surfaces outside of the work area are decontaminated using HEPA vacuums or wet cleaning techniques and the Contractor receives written notice from EUFSD's Environmental Consultant.

**3.07 ACM WASTE PACKAGING AND LOAD OUT PROCEDURES:**

- A. Packaging of ACM shall conform to OSHA Standard 29 CFR 1926.1101, DOT 49 CFR 171,172, and 173, EPA Standard 40 CFR Part 61, New York City Department of Sanitation (in relation to transport, storage, and disposal of ACM) and the requirement as heretofore specified. ACM waste shall be placed in a wet condition into properly labeled disposal bags or sealed in two layers of 6-mil plastic sheeting wrapped airtight and properly labeled. Materials to be transported through a non-Work Area building space shall be placed in hard wall shipping containers for handling. Specific requirements for decontamination of waste containers, and load out through the decontamination enclosure systems is outlined below:
- B. Frequency of Waste Removal: Properly packaged and labeled asbestos waste shall be removed from the site on a daily basis. Under no circumstance shall asbestos waste be stored on site. The waste hauler and landfill shall be as indicated on the notifications to regulatory agencies.
- C. Waste Load-out Through Waste Decontamination Unit: Place asbestos waste in

disposal bags. Large items not able to fit into disposal bags shall be wrapped in one layer of 6-mil thick plastic sheeting. Clean outer covering of asbestos waste package by wet cleaning and/or HEPA vacuuming in a designated part of the Work Area. Move wrapped asbestos waste to the washroom, wet clean each bag or object and place it inside a second disposal bag, or a second layer of 6-mil plastic sheeting, as the item's physical characteristics demand. Air volume shall be minimized, and the bags or sheeting shall be sealed airtight with tape.

- D. The clean containerized items shall be moved directly to the Waste Hauler's truck pending load-out to storage or disposal facilities.
- E. Workers who have entered the decontamination enclosure system from the uncontaminated non-work area shall perform load-out of containers from the decontamination enclosure holding area. Dress workers asbestos waste to storage or disposal facilities in clean overalls of a color different than from that of coveralls used in the Work Area. Ensure that workers do not enter from uncontaminated areas into the equipment washroom or the Work Area. Ensure that contaminated workers do not exit the Work Area through the equipment decontamination enclosure system.
- F. Thoroughly clean the decontamination enclosure system immediately upon completion of the waste load-out activities, and at the completion of each work shift.
- G. Labeled ACM waste containers or bags shall not be used for non-ACM debris or trash. Any materials placed in labeled containers or bags, whether turned inside out or not, shall be handled and disposed of as ACM waste.

**3.08 CLEANUP AND CLEARANCE TESTING OF WORK AREAS:** The following clean-up procedures shall be performed during abatement.

- A. Visible accumulations of loose asbestos containing waste material shall be cleaned up using rubber or plastic dustpans and rubber squeegees or HEPA filtered vacuums. Metal shovels may also be used, except in the vicinity of plastic sheeting, critical barriers and isolation barriers, which could be perforated by these tools. To pick up excess water and gross wet debris, a wet-dry HEPA filtered shop vacuum dedicated to asbestos abatement may be used. This cleaning shall be done whenever there is sufficient asbestos waste material to fill a single leak-tight bag/container, or this cleaning shall be done at the end of each work shift whichever shall occur first. Visible debris shall be maintained adequately wet.

- B. Work shall stop whenever excessive water accumulation or flooding is present in the area and shall not resume until the water is collected and disposed of properly.

**3.09 DISPOSAL AND TRANSPORTATION OF ASBESTOS-CONTAMINATED WASTE:**

- A. Storage of Containerized ACM: As the work progresses, remove sealed and labeled bags of ACM from the Work Area and place in a lockable trailer, dumpster, or other container approved for storage or transport of asbestos waste. The waste container shall be lined with two layers of 6-mil fire retardant plastic on all sides. Asbestos-containing waste shall remain under the positive control of the Asbestos Contractor and must never be left unattended in an area or on a vehicle where unauthorized persons could gain access. Containerized ACM shall be removed from the site on a daily basis. Unless specifically approved in writing by the Owner, ACM shall not be permitted to be stored on site during non-working hours.
- B. Sealed and labeled bags or waste wrapped in two layers of plastic sheeting sealed airtight shall be used to transport asbestos-contaminated waste to the landfill. Procedures for hauling and disposal shall comply with 40 CFR, Part 61, 49 CFR, Part 171 and 172, and other applicable state, regional, and local government regulations. Procedures for removal from the Work Area and disposal of waste are outlined below:
- C. A properly completed and original "Waste Shipment Record" form shall accompany asbestos waste, which is transported to a disposal site. This form shall be signed and dated by each party who has control over the asbestos waste, and a copy retained by each party as responsibility for the waste is transferred to the next party. All original manifest forms and waste receipts shall be provided to the Architect. The Environmental Consultant shall be provided with copies of all waste manifests.
- D. Trucks hauling asbestos waste shall be totally enclosed to prevent loss or damage to waste container en-route to approved landfill. The interior of the vehicles shall be lined with two layers of 6-mil plastic.
- E. Mark with a visible warning sign during the loading and unloading of asbestos-containing waste all vehicles used to transport the waste material. Danger sign legend, text size, style and arrangement shall conform to the requirements of EPA Standard 40 CFR Part 61.149 (d) (I).

- F. Only sealed plastic bags or completely sealed items shall be deposited in landfill. Damaged, broken sealed windows or leaking plastic bags shall be resealed prior to being deposited in the landfill. Workers shall place asbestos waste in the landfill. Throwing or dumping of containers shall not be allowed. Workers unloading and handling the sealed bags/drums at the disposal site shall wear appropriate personnel protective equipment including respirators and protective clothing.
- G. After the vehicle is unloaded at the landfill, the plastic sheeting that was taped to the floor, sides and top of the truck shall be carefully removed and placed in properly labeled bags for disposal with the rest of the waste.

**END OF SECTION**

**LIST OF SUBMITTALS**

**SUBMITTAL**  
**APPROVED**

**DATE SUBMITTED**

**DATE**

**Pre-Project Submittal:**

- |     |  |       |       |
|-----|--|-------|-------|
| 1.  | Insurance  | _____ | _____ |
| 2.  | All required bonds   | _____ | _____ |
| 3.  | List of Subcontractors   | _____ | _____ |
| 4.  | Health and Safety Plan   | _____ | _____ |
| 5.  | Proof that all required permits and variances have been obtained | _____ | _____ |
| 6.  | Documentation of Required Qualifications of Workers              | _____ | _____ |
| 7.  | Proof of a respiratory protection program.                       | _____ | _____ |
| 8.  | Proof of historic airborne fiber data.                           | _____ | _____ |
| 9.  | Proof that a landfill site has been located.                     | _____ | _____ |
| 10. | SDS of chemicals to be used on this project.                     | _____ | _____ |
| 11. | Asbestos Removal and Disposal Work Plan                          | _____ | _____ |

**During Work Submittal:**

- |    |  |       |       |
|----|--|-------|-------|
| 1. | Schedule of Work Changes   | _____ | _____ |
| 2. | Notarized copy of weekly payroll showing a prevailing wage rate has been paid. | _____ | _____ |
| 3. | A "Request For Services" form.   | _____ | _____ |
| 4. | Results of all air monitoring performed by the Contractor (OSHA)               | _____ | _____ |

EASTCHESTER UNION FREE SCHOOL DISTRICT  
2022 CAPITAL BOND PROJECT  
PHASE 2

5. A certified, signed, and completed copy of each "Waste Shipment Record" form (Section 1.07) \_\_\_\_\_

6. A copy of the bound log book \_\_\_\_\_

**Post Project Submittal:**

1. A notarized "Release of Liens" \_\_\_\_\_

2. Proof of payment of prevailing wage rate \_\_\_\_\_

3. Notarized copies of a daily log. \_\_\_\_\_

4. Compilation in chronological order of all air monitoring records pertaining to this project. \_\_\_\_\_

5. Compilation of all completed and signed Waste Shipment Record forms. \_\_\_\_\_

6. Copies of notifications to applicable agencies. \_\_\_\_\_

7. Paid invoice verifications for sub-contractor (for Time and Material job), service contract agreement, insurance certificates, copies of the workers licenses, and other required submittals. \_\_\_\_\_

\*\*\*\*\*



SECTION 024113 - SELECTIVE SITE DEMOLITION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Demolition of existing site improvements
- B. Disposal of demolition debris
- C. Backfilling and grading of demolished areas

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 01 50 00 – Temporary Facilities and Controls
- B. Section 31 20 00 – Earth Moving
- C. Section 31 25 00 – Erosion and Sediment Control
- D. Section 32 92 00 – Turf and Grasses

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with the requirements of Section 013300 – Submittal Procedures and as modified below.
- B. Quality Control Submittals
  - 1. Permits: Submit one copy of each permit required for the demolition work required to the Owner's Representative.
  - 2. Demolition Plan: For information only, submit one copy of the demolition plan to the Owner's Representative and the Project Designer as required under the "Quality Assurance" article below.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Permits: Prior to starting demolition work outlined as part of this section, obtain all permits required by Federal, State and/or local jurisdictions for all phases and operations of the work.
- B. Demolition Plan: Prior to starting demolition work outlined as part of this section, the contractor shall prepare a detailed demolition plan. The demolition plan shall include, but is not limited to, the detailed outline of intended demolition and disposal procedures. The demolition plan will not relieve the Contractor of complete responsibility for the successful performance of the work in accordance with all Federal, State and local codes and restrictions.

1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Recycling: The Contractor shall recycle demolition debris to the greatest extent possible.
- B. Burning: The Contractor is prohibited from burning demolition materials on the project site.
- C. Explosives: The Contractor is prohibited from using explosive materials on the project site.

- D. Utility Location: Verify the location and status of all utilities within the contract limit line prior to beginning demolition work.
- E. Utility Protection: Protect existing utilities scheduled to remain while work required as part of this section is being performed. Do not interrupt utility services to adjacent buildings or other site improvements.
- F. Utility Disconnection: Disconnect utilities as required. Coordinate and pay for all work with applicable utility companies.
- G. Site Maintenance: Keep streets, sidewalks and adjacent site areas clean and free from debris at all times.
- H. Storm Drainage: Maintain street and site drains open for free drainage. Install temporary measures as required to prevent silt and debris from entering storm runoff leaving the site.
- I. Objectionable Noises: Limit the use of air hammers, and other excessively noisy equipment as much as is practical. Conform to local governing requirements.
- J. Area Safety: Employ watchpersons to patrol the site 24 hours per day, 7 days per week from the time demolition has started until the site can be secured in a safe manner.

#### 1.06 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Proceed with and complete demolition operations as rapidly as portions of the site become available, working within seasonal limitations for the work required.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Plugs, Caps, Flanges: Approved cast iron materials unless specifically noted otherwise on the Contract Documents.
- B. Grout: Material complying with ASTM C 476.
- C. On-Site Backfill Material: Acceptable on-site fill material approved by the Owner's Testing Agency or the Project Designer for use as backfill in locations where backfill material is not otherwise specified, free of stones larger than 6", roots, organic matter, construction debris, trash or other deleterious matter.
- D. Selects Type 1 Granular Material: Where indicated supply stockpiled, sound, durable, sand, gravel, stone, or blends of these materials, free from organic and other deleterious materials. Comply with New York State Department of Transportation gradation and material requirements specified below:

Sieve		Percent Passing
Sieve Size	Size opening (mm)	
3 inch	76.2	100
2 inch	50.8	90-100
1/4 inch	6.35	30-65
No. 40	0.425	5-40
No. 200	0.075	0-10

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Demolition Contractor Verification of Conditions: Examine conditions under which site demolition work is to be accomplished with the materials and components specified in this section. Affected Prime Contractors, the Owner's Representative and the Architect shall be notified in writing of any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely installation of the work.
  - 1. When the Demolition Contractor confirms conditions as being acceptable to ensure proper and timely completion of the work and to ensure requirements of applicable warranties or guarantees can be satisfied, submit written confirmation to the Architect. Failure to submit written confirmation will be assumed to indicate conditions are acceptable to the installer.

#### 3.02 PREPARATION

#### 3.03 DEMOLITION

- A. Perform demolition in a systematic manner
- B. Do not place demolition equipment in structures where it will create excessive loads on supporting walls, floors and frames. Promptly remove accumulated debris and materials.
- C. Remove walks, roads, pavements, curbs, slabs on grade, fences and other site improvements with the contract limit line, unless specifically indicated or directed otherwise.

#### 3.04 DISPOSAL

- A. Remove demolition debris and any excess fill from the project site as soon as practical.
- B. Do not store, sell or burn materials on the project property.

#### 3.05 BACKFILLING AND GRADING

- A. Place fill in basements and other voids within the contract limit line. Broken concrete and masonry shall not be used as fill on the site unless specifically indicated as being acceptable on the Drawings.
- B. Rough grade backfill to the contour indicated on the drawings. If no contour information is provided, grade the area to provide positive drainage.

- C. Install a minimum of 6" of topsoil over backfilled areas. Finish grade the surface to be free of depressions that will trap water and seed the entire area.

END OF SECTION 024113

SECTION 024119 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION AND ALTERATION WORK

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. The Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary to complete the selective demolition and alteration work as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including but not limited to the following:
  - 1. Alterations, selective demolition and removals as noted on drawings and as required to accommodate new construction.
  - 2. Removal of debris.
  - 3. Protection of existing building and spaces to remain and shoring of the structure as required for structural integrity and personal safety.
  - 4. Protection of existing curbs and sidewalks.
  - 5. Temporary coverage passageways.
  - 6. Alterations, selective demolition and removals of exterior façade where noted.
  - 7. Patching and refinishing of existing surfaces damaged as a result of this work.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The Contractor shall comply with the requirements of all applicable Federal, State and local safety and health regulations regarding the demolition of structures including ANSI/NFPD 241-Building Construction and Demolition Operations.
- B. The Contractor shall be responsible for any damage to any adjacent structures or buildings to remain.
- C. Qualifications: Qualifications of Contractor for work of this Section shall not be less than ten (10) years of field experience in work of this nature.
- D. Professional Engineering: The Contractor shall retain the services of a Professional Engineer licensed in the State of New York, who shall design and supervise installation of all underpinning and shoring.

1.4 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Alteration and removal requirements for mechanical and electrical work - Mechanical and Electrical Sections.
- B. Demolition Notes on Civil drawings.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of Demolition Operations: Submit demolition procedures and operational sequence for Architect's review prior to start of work. Submit a written request to Architect well in advance of executing any cutting or alteration which affects:
  - 1. The work of tying in or connecting to operational systems of the building, including electrical, mechanical and security systems.
  - 2. The work of the Owner or any separate Contractor.
  - 3. The structural value or integrity of any element of the project or of adjacent structures.
  - 4. The integrity or effectiveness of weather-exposed and moisture-resistant elements or systems.
  - 5. The efficiency, operational life, maintenance, or safety of operational elements or systems.
- B. Notice of Differing Conditions: Submit a written notification if, during the work of demolition and cutting, conditions are discovered which significantly vary from those shown on the drawings. Do not commence work until approval of Architect.
- C. Shop Drawings: Submit the following prior to starting work:
  - 1. Submit for Architect's information shop drawings indicating location and typical construction details of temporary dustproof and weatherproof partitions.
  - 2. Submit drawings of temporary structural shoring, bracing, framing or support, for the information of the Architect. Such drawings will be reviewed by the Structural Engineer for the effects of such temporary members on the structural elements to remain. These drawings shall include the reason for such temporary members, the location, the direction and magnitude of design reaction forces on existing structure, and details showing how these reaction forces will be applied to the existing structure.
    - a. Shop drawings shall be submitted with the Seal of the Professional Engineer engaged by Contractor; Professional Engineer must be licensed in the State of New York.
    - b. The Architect will receive acknowledgment for concepts shown. Such acknowledgments shall be of the concept only and not of actual capacities or structural design and shall not in any way diminish or limit the Contractor's responsibility for the quality and performance of the work and for protecting existing structures and facilities.

#### 1.6 SPECIAL PRECAUTION

- A. Hazardous materials may be encountered during demolition operations including asbestos; comply with applicable regulations, laws, and ordinances concerning removal, handling, and protection against exposure or environmental pollution.

#### 1.7 JOB CONDITIONS

##### A. Condition of Structure

- 1. The Contractor for the work of this Section shall be held to have visited the site, examined the premises, determined for himself the existing conditions, character of equipment and facilities needed for the performance of the work, and all matters which may in any way affect the work before submitting a bid.
  - a. Information regarding existing construction or conditions is based on available record drawings which may or may not truly reflect existing conditions. Such information is included

on the assumption that it may be of interest to the Contractor, but the Architect, Owner and their consultants do not assume responsibility for its accuracy or completeness.

- b. Notify the Architect if, during the course of demolition, conditions are discovered which significantly vary from those shown on the drawings. Do not proceed until authorized by Architect.
2. The Contractor shall accept the condition of the site and structures as found. The Architect and Owner assume no responsibility for condition of site or structures nor the continuation of the condition existing at time of bidding or thereafter.
- B. Areas of building to be demolished or altered will be vacated and discontinued in use prior to the start of the work.
  1. Surrounding areas of the building shall remain operational by the Owner.
- C. Partial Removal
  1. Items of savable value to the Contractor may be removed from the structure as the work progresses. Salvaged items must be transported from the site as they are removed.
  2. Storage or sale of removed items on the site will not be permitted.
- D. Explosives: The use of explosives will not be permitted.
- E. Traffic
  1. Conduct demolition operations and the removal of debris to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks and other adjacent occupied or used facilities.
  2. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks or other occupied or used facilities without permission from authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by governing regulations.
- F. Utilities
  1. Refer to Division 22 and 26 of the specifications for special requirements concerning utilities and services.
  2. Refer to Civil contract drawings for requirements concerning utilities and services.
  3. Maintain any existing utilities required to remain; keep in service and protect against damage during demolition operations.
  4. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving occupied or used facilities, except when authorized in writing by authorities having jurisdiction. Provide temporary services during interruptions to existing utilities, as acceptable to the governing authorities.
  5. Disconnect and seal any abandoned utilities before starting demolition operations. Coordinate all work with local utility companies having jurisdiction.

#### 1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Before commencing any alteration or demolition work, submit for review by the Architect, and approval of the Owner, a schedule showing the commencement, the order, and the completion dates for the various parts of this work.

- B. Before starting any work relating to existing utilities (electrical, sewer, water, heat, gas, fire lines, etc.) that will temporarily discontinue or disrupt service to the structures to remain, notify the Architect and the Owner 7 days in advance and obtain the Owner's approval in writing before proceeding with this phase of the work.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

Refer to Part 3 - Execution, for Product Requirements

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 PROTECTION

- A. Take full precautions to protect workmen, passersby or any other persons from falling debris and other hazards of demolition operations.
- B. Execute demolition work to ensure protection of existing portions of building to remain against damages which might occur from falling debris or other cause. Do not interfere with use of adjacent occupied buildings and areas. Maintain free, safe passage to and from occupied adjacent buildings.
- C. Materials Placement: Do not load structure with weight that will endanger, overload, or cause excessive deflection of the existing structure, or that will damage finished surfaces adjacent to and/or supported by the existing structure, except portions being removed.
- D. Construction Operations: Do not employ any construction operation, equipment or vehicles that will endanger, overload, or cause excessive deflection of the existing structure, or that will damage finished surfaces adjacent to and/or supported by the existing structure, except portions being removed.
- E. Take precautions to guard against movement, settlement, damage, or collapse of any part of building, sidewalks, adjacent property, or street passages; be liable for any such movement, settlement or collapse. If such damage does accidentally occur, Contractor shall repair promptly at no cost to Owner.
- F. Provide the necessary safeguards to prevent accidents, to avoid all necessary hazards and protect the public, the work and property at all times, including Saturdays, Sundays, and holidays.
- G. Be responsible for any and all damages which may arise or occur to any party whatsoever by reason of the neglect in providing proper lights, guards, barriers, or any other safeguards to prevent damage to property, life and limb.
- H. Make such explorations and probes as are necessary to ascertain any required protective measures before proceeding with demolition and removal. Give particular attention to shoring and bracing requirements so as to prevent any damage to existing construction.
  - 1. Provide interior and exterior shoring, bracing, or support to prevent movement or settlement or collapse of structures to be demolished and adjacent facilities to remain. The Contractor's Professional Engineer shall advise on bracing, shoring, underpinning, or other structural requirements. The Contractor shall bear all responsibility for prevention of movement or other structural fault.
  - 2. The Contractor shall restore, by repair or otherwise, the portions of structure or their contents altered by the Contractor in furtherance of his underpinning and support operations. Restoration shall be completed to the conditions which existed prior to the start of the work. Any damage caused by inadequate support shall also be restored by the Contractor at no cost to the Owner.



- I. Provide, erect, and maintain catch platforms, lights, barriers, weather protection, warning signs, and other items as required for proper protection of the workmen engaged in demolition and alteration operations, occupants of the building, public and adjacent property. Any damage caused by the Contractor's operations shall be promptly repaired by the Contractor at no cost to the Owner.
- J. Provide and maintain temporary protection of the existing structure designated to remain where demolition, removal, and new work are being done, connections made, materials handled, or equipment moved.
- K. Take necessary precautions to prevent dust and dirt from rising. Protect unaltered portions of the existing building affected by the operations under this Section by dustproof partitions and other adequate means.
- L. Provide adequate fire protection in accordance with local Fire Department requirements.
- M. Do not close or obstruct walkways, passageways, or stairways. Do not store or place materials in passageways, stairs, or other means of egress. Conduct operations with minimum traffic interference.
- N. Be responsible for any damage to the existing structure or contents by reason of the insufficiency of protection provided.
- O. Erect temporary covered passageways at street level as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- P. Promptly repair damages caused to adjacent facilities by demolition operations at no cost to the Owner.
- Q. Provide and maintain weather protection at exterior openings so as to fully protect the interior premises against damage from the elements until such openings are closed by new construction.

### 3.2 INSPECTION

- A. Verify that areas of demolition work are protected and temporary dustproof partitions have been installed.
- B. Verify that construction to be removed is not load bearing or has been properly braced, framed, or supported.
- C. Inspect existing conditions of the project, including elements subject to damage or to movement during demolition and cutting.
- D. After uncovering work, inspect the conditions affecting the installation or performance of the work.
  - 1. Report differing or questionable conditions to the Architect in writing; do not proceed with the work until the Architect has provided further instructions.

### 3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Provide adequate temporary support as necessary to assure the structural value or integrity of the affected portion of the work.
- B. Provide devices and methods to protect other portions of the project from damage.
- C. Pollution Controls
  - 1. Use water sprinkling, temporary enclosures, and other suitable methods to limit the amount of dust and dirt rising and scattering in the air to the lowest practical level. Comply with governing regulations pertaining to environmental protection.

- a. Do not use water when it may create hazardous or objectionable conditions such as ice, flooding, and pollution.
2. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt and debris caused by demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing prior to the start of the work.
3. Provide drainage for temporary water use.

### 3.4 DEMOLITION AND CUTTING

#### A. Selectively demolish existing construction in conformance with the drawings and these specifications.

1. Execute cutting and demolition by methods which will prevent damage to other work and will provide proper surface to receive installation of work by others and patching of finish surfaces.
2. Do all cutting or removal so as to leave neat, true, plumb and square edges, at edges to remain. Use carborundum or diamond saw equipment for cutting masonry, concrete and stone work, where edges or surfaces are to remain.
3. Do not cut or remove construction which might weaken or impair the structural integrity or strength of the structural framing or support systems which are to remain.
4. Demolish and remove materials as shown on the drawings without damage to the remaining parts of the structure or mechanical/electrical/utility systems.
5. Remove materials so as to not impose excessive loads in supporting walls, floors or framing and so as not to damage remaining undemolished portions of the structure.
6. Where portions of structures are to be removed, remaining portions shall be protected from damage and prepared to fit new construction. Damage to portions of structures to remain shall be repaired.
7. Reinforcing steel in existing structures shall be left in place, cleaned, and aligned to provide tie with new work.
8. Existing waterproofing systems and flashings shall be carefully exposed and protected to maintain workable conditions of fitting new work with existing construction.
9. Proceed with demolition in a systematic manner.
10. Demolish concrete and masonry in small sections.
11. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by means of hoists, derricks, or other suitable methods.

#### B. Shoring

1. Design, provide, erect, and maintain necessary temporary shoring, bracing, framing, or support where load bearing structural or supporting members are removed or weakened by cuts or openings or are subject to damage from demolition operations, and otherwise as required for safety or to protect finish surfaces from damage.
2. Construction and adequacy of the shoring shall be the entire responsibility of the Contractor. Any damage caused by the inadequacy of the shoring or other support shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to remedy at no additional expense to the Owner.

3. Shoring and bracing shall remain until new structural framing and/or supports are installed. Coordinate operations fully with other trades.
4. Be ready at any time to promptly provide, add to, or strengthen temporary shoring, bracing, or support for existing work, in case existing construction begins to show signs of structural stress.

3.5 WORKMANSHIP STANDARDS FOR ALTERATION AND REMOVAL WORK

- A. Cut, remove, alter, temporarily remove, and replace, or relocate existing work as required for performance of the work. Perform such work required with due care, including shoring and bracing.
- B. Coordinate patching involving the various trades whether or not specifically mentioned in the respective specification Sections.
- C. Materials or items demolished and not designated to become the property of the Owner or to be reinstalled shall become the property of the Contractor and shall be removed from the Owner's property.
- D. Execute the work in a careful and orderly manner, with the least possible disturbance to the public and to the occupants of the adjacent buildings.
- E. In general, demolish masonry in small sections. Where necessary to prevent collapse of any construction, install temporary shores, struts, or bracing.
- F. Materials to be removed by existing elevators shall be put in enclosed containers.
- G. Where existing equipment and/or fixtures are indicated to be reused, repair such equipment and/or fixtures and refinish to put in perfect working order. Refinish as directed.
- H. Cut out embedded anchorage and attachment items as required to properly provide for patching and repair of the respective finishes.
- I. Confine cutting of existing roof areas designated to remain to the limits required for the proper installation of the new work. Cut and fold back existing roofing. Cut and remove insulation and related items. Provide temporary weathertight protection as required until new roofing and flashings are installed. Consult the Owner to ascertain if existing guarantee bonds are in force and execute the work so as not to invalidate such bonds.
- J. Where utilities are removed, relocated, or abandoned, cap, valve, plug, or by-pass to make complete and working installation.
- K. Restore existing pipe and duct coverings damaged by work under this Contract to original undamaged condition.
- L. Immediately restore to service and repair any damage caused by Contractor's workmen to existing pipe and conduits, wires, cables, etc., of utility services or of fire protection systems and communications systems which are not scheduled for discontinuance or abandonment.
- M. Upon completion of contract, deliver work complete. Damage that may be caused by Contractor or Contractor's workmen to existing structures designated to remain, grounds, and utilities shall be repaired by Contractor and left in as good condition as existed prior to damaging.
- N. Restore finish work of floors, walls, and ceilings remaining in place but damaged or defaced because of demolition or alteration work to condition equal that which existed at beginning of work under this Contract.
- O. Where alteration or removals expose damaged or unfinished surfaces or materials, refinish such surfaces or materials, or remove them and provide new or salvaged materials to make continuous surfaces uniform.

- P. Perform new work and restore and refinish existing work in conformance with applicable requirements of the specifications, except as follows:
  - 1. Materials for use in repair of existing surfaces, but not otherwise specified, shall conform to the highest standards of the trade involved, and be in accordance with approved industry standards, and shall be as required to match existing surfaces.
  - 2. Workmanship for repair of existing materials shall, unless otherwise specified, be equal to similar workmanship existing in or adjacent to the space where the work is being done.
  - 3. Installation of salvaged items where no similar items exist shall be done in accordance with the highest standards of the trade involved and in accordance with approved shop drawings.
- Q. Materials or items designated to become the property of the Owner shall be as shown on the drawings. Remove such items with care and store them in a location at the site to be designated by the Owner.
- R. Materials or items designated to be reinstalled shall be as shown on the drawings. Remove such items with care under the supervision of the trade responsible for reinstallation; protect and store until required. Replace materials or items damaged in their removal with similar new material.
- S. The existing building shall not be used as a workshop. Neither shall the furnishings or equipment in any room be used as work benches. Should any damage occur during the progress of the work to any furniture, fixtures, equipment, or appurtenances therein, such damage shall be repaired, replaced, or made good by the Contractor without extra cost to the Owner.
- T. Where removing existing floor finish and base, remove all adhesive and leave floors and walls smooth and flush, ready to receive new finish.
- U. Finish new and adjacent existing surfaces as specified for new work. Clean existing surfaces of dirt, grease, and loose paint before refinishing.

### 3.6 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS A.

#### General

- 1. Remove from the site debris, rubbish and other materials resulting from work of this Section.
- 2. Burning of removed materials from demolished structures will not be permitted on the site.

B. Removal: Transport materials removed from demolished structures and legally dispose of off site. Pay any and all fees associated with disposal work. Leave the site in an orderly condition to the approval of the Architect.

### 3.7 CLEANING UP

- A. Remove debris as the work progresses. Maintain existing premises in a neat and clean condition.

END OF SECTION 024119

SECTION 033000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE WORK  
PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

1.2 SCOPE/SUMMARY

- A. In general, the extent of concrete work is shown on the drawings. Provide all labor, materials, equipment, services, and perform all operations required to complete the installation of all work of this section and related work as indicated on the drawings and specified herein, including, but not necessarily limited to, the following:

1. Concrete footings, pile caps, grade beams, foundations, and walls.
2. Concrete steps, platforms, ramps, equipment pads.
3. Interior concrete slabs on grade or fill and elevated slabs.
4. Exterior concrete on grade: Curbs, walks, plazas, stairs, ramps and driveway aprons.
5. Expansion, control and isolation joints in concrete work.
6. Porous fill and vapor barrier for slabs on grade or fill.
7. Floor hardening treatment for interior exposed cement floors and base.
8. Grouting of bearing plates, leveling plates, miscellaneous lintels, and equipment supported on concrete.
9. All forms and reinforcing required for work of this section.
10. Cut, patch, finish, and point concrete and cement work.
11. Pre-molded filler at intersection of floor slabs and exterior wall, and where otherwise indicated (typical at all points abutting vertical surfaces).
12. Installation of water stop material where indicated or when necessary.

- B. Work not included: The following items of related work are specified in other sections or contracts.

1. Furnishing of hanger inserts, anchors, leveling plates, sleeves, conduits, etc.
2. Waterproofing and damp proofing.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Related Sections:

1. 01450 – Testing Laboratory
2. 01451 - Tests, Inspections, Special Inspections, Quality Assurance Plan
3. 01524 – Construction Waste Management
4. 02105 – Stake Out
5. 02200 – Earth Work
6. 03650 – Underlayment Concrete
7. 04200 – Unit Masonry
8. 05120 – Structural Steel
9. 06100 – Rough Carpentry
10. 07140 – Metal Oxide Waterproofing
11. 07160 – Bituminous Dampproofing
12. 07190 – Under Slab Vapor Barrier
13. 07200 – Building Insulation

1.4 SUBMISSION

- A. All submissions to be made in accordance with Section 01300 Submissions.
- B. A concrete mix design: Submit laboratory test reports of concrete materials and mix design for each strength of concrete required on the project. Design data shall clearly identify the testing laboratory and provide 28 day strength testing reports representing mix proposed inclusive of all admixtures.
  - 1. Mix design shall also include the following information.
    - a. Minimum design strength intended.
    - b. Cement content
    - c. Water content
    - d. Slag content
    - e. Water cement ratio
    - f. Maximum aggregate size
    - g. Coarse aggregate content
    - h. Fine aggregate content
    - i. Air entrainment by volume
    - j. Adjustment for aggregate moisture slump
    - k. Tested flexural strength
    - l. Tested compressive strength
  - 2. Additional inclusions if required on job:
    - a. Admixtures
    - b. Water reducers
    - c. Accelerators
    - d. Retarders
    - e. Fibers
    - f. Colorants
    - g. Special purpose admixtures
    - h. Corrosion inhibitor
    - i. Viscosity modifiers
- C. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data for all materials and items required for the proposed Scope of Work. Including, but not limited to: concrete mix components, reinforcement and forming accessories, wall sleeves, admixtures, patching compounds, waterstops, joint systems, curing compounds, dry-shake finish materials, hardener/sealers, vapor barriers, non-shrink grit, etc. Product data for materials and items not listed above will be submitted upon the request of the Architect.
- D. Shop Drawings-Reinforcement: Submit complete and accurate shop drawings for approval before any work is executed. The shop drawings submitted by the Contractor shall be independently prepared for him by a Professional Engineer licensed to practice in the State of New York or otherwise within the state where the project is to be constructed and shall completely show the following:
  - 1. Foundation plans and details, including but not limited to: pier plan details, stair sections, exterior wall elevation drawings which show all reinforcing, top of wall elevations, brick shelves & shelf elevations, tops of piers, bottom of footings, stepped footings and elevation changes, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, diagrams of bent bars, arrangement of concrete reinforcement. Include special reinforcement required for openings through concrete structures.

2. Floor slab plan indicating elevation variations, recesses, control joints, isolation joints, expansion joints and any proposed cold joints and details of each.
  3. Bending and tying diagrams, including typical corners,
  4. Sizes and spacing of members, relationship to contiguous work, fabrication, bending, and placement of concrete reinforcement.
  5. General notes and legends as required.
  6. Drawings shall comply with the latest version of ACI 315 Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement.
  7. Any and all other pertinent information.
  8. Shop drawings must be signed and sealed by licensed professional engineer.
- E. Samples: Submit samples of materials only if requested by the Architect, including names, sources, and descriptions.
- F. Material Certificates: Provide material certificates in lieu of laboratory test reports when permitted by Architect. Material certificates shall be signed by the NYS-licensed Professional Engineer who prepared the shop drawing submittal, certifying that each material item complies with, or exceeds, specified requirements.

#### 1.5 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS AND QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Codes and Standards: Comply with the provisions of the latest version of the following codes, specifications, and standards, except where more stringent requirements are shown or specified:
1. Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute (CRSI), "Manual of Standard Practice."
  2. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) Latest Versions:
    - a. ASTM C 33 "Specification for Concrete Aggregates."
    - b. ASTM C 39 "Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens."
    - c. ASTM C 42 "Methods of Obtaining and Testing Drilled Cores and Sawed Beams of Concrete."
    - d. ASTM C 94/C94 M-00 "Standard Specification for Ready-Mix Concrete."
    - e. ASTM C 150 "Specification for Portland Cement."
    - f. ASTM A 185 "Specification for Steel Welded Wire, Fabric, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement."
    - g. ASTM C 260 "Specification for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete."
    - h. ASTM C 309 "Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete."
    - i. ASTM A 615 "Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement."
  3. American Concrete Institute (ACI): Latest Versions
    - a. ACI 117 "Standard Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."
    - b. ACI 211 "Recommended Practice for Selecting Proportions Concrete."
    - c. ACI 301 "Specifications for Structural Concrete for Buildings."
    - d. ACI 302 "Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction."
    - e. ACI 304 "Recommended Practice for Measuring, Mixing and Placing Concrete."
    - f. ACI 305 "Hot Weather Concreting."
    - g. ACI 306 "Cold Weather Concreting."

- h. ACI 315 *"Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement."*
- i. ACI 318 *"Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete."*
- j. ACI 347 *"Recommended Practice for Concrete Formwork."*

B. Quality Control Testing During Construction:

1. The Owner will employ an independent testing laboratory to perform tests and to submit test reports. The contractor will be responsible for contacting the testing laboratory to arrange for all sampling, observation and testing. The Owner will pay for all passing tests; all failed tests and any additional testing required due to failed tests will be the responsibility of the contractor.
2. Sampling and testing for quality control during placement of concrete shall include the following as appropriate to scope, as directed by the Architect and in coordination with Section 01451.
3. Sampling Fresh Concrete: ASTM C 172, except modified for slump to comply with ASTM C 94.
  - a. Slump: ASTM C 143; one test at point of discharge per truckload or batch of each type of concrete; additional tests when concrete consistency seems to have changed. See 2.05G for slump limits.
  - b. Air Content: ASTM C 173, volumetric method for lightweight or normal weight concrete; ASTM C 231 pressure method for normal weight concrete; one for each days' placement of each type of air-entrained concrete.
  - c. Concrete Temperature: Test hourly when air temperature is 40°F (4°C) and below, and when 80°F (27°C) and above; and each time a set of compression test specimens are made.
  - d. Compression Test Specimen: ASTM C 31; one set of 4 standard cylinders for each compressive strength test, unless otherwise directed. Mold and store cylinders for laboratory cured test specimens except when field- cure test specimens are required.
  - e. Compressive Strength Tests: ASTM C 39; one set for each day's placement exceeding 5 cu. yds. plus additional sets for each 50 cu. yds. over and above the first 25 cu. yds. of each concrete class placed in any one day; one specimen tested at 7 days, two specimens tested at 28 days, and one specimen retained in reserve for later testing if required.
    1. When frequency of testing will provide less than 5 strength tests for a given class of concrete, conduct testing from at least 5 randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
  - f. When total quantity of a given class of concrete is less than 50 cubic yards, strength test may be waived by Architect if, in his judgement, adequate evidence of satisfactory strength is provided.
  - g. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, evaluate current operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing the in-place concrete.



- ## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- ## 1.7 CONTROLLED CONCRETE

- 033000-5

1. Additional materials may include: slag, admixtures, fibers, colorants, or special purpose admixtures.
  2. All new interior floor slabs shall incorporate Vapor Lock 20/20 concrete admixture or equal.
- B.** All concrete, unless otherwise specified or called for on the drawings, shall be controlled concrete as defined and regulated in the local building code and by the American Concrete Institute and **its ultimate compressive strength at the end of 28 days shall be not less than 4,000 pounds per square inch for foundations, walls and footings, 4,500 pounds per square inch for slabs-on-ground elevated slabs, and other building concrete, and 4,500 pounds per square inch for exterior concrete including, but not limited to, sidewalks, stairs, ramps, driveway aprons and curbing, unless otherwise indicated on structural drawings.**
- C.** Before the work is begun, the Contractor shall have preliminary trial tests made by a laboratory approved by the Architect to determine the mixture required to give the strength specified. Concrete shall be designed in accordance with the A.C.I. *Standard Recommended Practice for Selecting Proportions for Concrete* (ACI-513) to produce the strength required. Concrete shall be so designed that the concrete materials will not segregate, nor shall excessive bleeding occur. Tests shall be made in accordance with ASTM C-39. The laboratory trial mixture for each mix design shall develop a concrete of compressive strength at 28 days of 1,200 psi higher than the required minimum for each of the strengths indicated to be acceptable for use in the field, but in no case shall cement content be less than 6 bags per cubic yard for 4,000 psi and 6 1/2 bags for 4,500 psi concrete. The proposed mixture must be approved by the Architect before the Contractor proceeds with the work.
- D.** Upon approval by the Architect, the Contractor will be allowed to proceed with the work if the laboratory trial mixture develops a compressive strength of 70% of the required ultimate strength at the end of seven (7) days.
- E.** If, during the progress of the work, it is found that the required workability and strength cannot be attained with the materials furnished by the Contractor, the Architect may order such changes in proportions or materials, or both as may be necessary to secure the desired properties.
- F.** The proportions of aggregate to cement shall be such as to produce a mixture which will work readily into the corners and around reinforcement but without permitting the materials to segregate or excess free water to collect on the surfaces. The combined aggregates shall be of such composition of sizes that when separated on the No. 4 standard sieve, the weight passing the sieve (fine aggregate) shall be not less than 40% or greater than 50% of the total, unless otherwise directed. Maximum size of coarse aggregate in slab, beams, and columns shall be 3/4" and in walls and footings 1 1/2".
- G.** The source of supply of the aggregate shall not change during the course of the job without previous notice to the Architect, and the materials from any new source shall be subject to acceptance or rejection based upon tests to be made by the Testing Laboratory at the Contractor's expense.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Protect materials delivered from the elements and from otherwise being damaged on site.
- B. Any materials damaged on site due to improper delivery, storage or handling shall not be incorporated in the project and shall be replaced at no cost to the Owner.
- C. Deliver, store and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FORM MATERIALS

- A. Forms for Exposed Finish Concrete: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood faced, or other acceptable panel-type materials, to provide continuous, straight, smooth, exposed surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints and to conform to joint system shown on drawings.
- B. Forms for Unexposed Finish Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or other acceptable material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.
- C. Form Coatings: Provide commercial formulation form-coating compounds that will not bond with, stain, nor adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
- D. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, adjustable-length, removable or snap-off metal form ties, designed to prevent form deflection and to prevent spalling concrete upon removal. Provide units which will leave no metal closer than 1-1/2" to surface.
  - 1. Provide ties which, when removed, will leave holes not larger than 1" diameter in concrete surface.

### 2.2 REINFORCING MATERIALS

- A. Reinforcing Bars: All reinforcing steel shall conform to ASTM A615, Grade 60, deformed (60 KSI yield stress) and be rolled from intermediate grade new steel billets.
- B. Welded Wire Fabric: All reinforcement mesh shall be electric-welded wire fabric with an ultimate tensile strength of not less than 55,000 pounds per square inch. All reinforcement mesh shall conform to ASTM A-185.
- C. Supports for Reinforcement: Provide bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire fabric in place. Use wire bar type supports complying with CRSI specifications (brick is not acceptable other than for slabs on ground).
  - 1. For slabs-on-grade, use supports with sand plates or horizontal runners where base material will not support chair legs. Precast concrete bricks are acceptable for slab on ground construction.
  - 2. For exposed-to-view concrete surfaces, where legs of supports are in contact with forms, provide supports with legs which are plastic protected (CRSI, Class 1) or stainless steel protected (CRSI, Class 2).
  - 3. Certified copies of mill reports shall accompany all deliveries of reinforcing steel, identified to indicate the minimum yield strength of the furnished bars.
  - 4. Copies of the manufacturer's affidavit shall accompany all deliveries of welded wire fabric certifying its minimum tensile strength.

### 2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I.

1. Use one brand of cement throughout the project, unless otherwise acceptable to the Architect.
- B. Normal Weight Aggregates: ASTM C33, and as herein specified. Provide aggregates from a single source for exposed concrete.
1. For exterior exposed surfaces, do not use fine or coarse aggregates containing spalling-causing deleterious substances.
  2. Local aggregates not complying with ASTM C 33 but which have shown by special test or actual service to produce concrete of adequate strength and durability may be used when acceptable to the Architect.
  3. Coarse aggregates for all stone concrete and fine aggregate shall conform to ASTM Designation C33 - well graded from fine to coarse with the specified limits. The maximum size of the aggregate 3/4" in slabs, beams and columns and 1-1/2" in walls and footings and not larger than one-fifth (1/5) of the narrowest dimension between the sides of the forms of the member for which the concrete is to be used, not larger than three-fourths (3/4) of the minimum clear spacing between reinforcing bars.
  4. Coarse aggregate for stone concrete shall consist of crushed stone or natural or crushed gravel, having clean, hard, strong, uncoated particles free from injurious amounts of soft, thin, elongated, or laminated pieces, alkali, organic, or other deleterious matter.
  5. Fine aggregate for stone concrete - sand, stone screenings, or other inert material with similar characteristics having clean, strong, durable, uncoated grains, and free from lumps, salt, or flaky particles, clay, shale, alkali, organic matter, or other deleterious substance.
  6. Aggregates shall be graded as follows:

<u>Coarse Aggregate</u>	<u>Percent Retained</u>
1" sieve	0
3/4" sieve	0-10
3/8" sieve	45-80
No. 4 sieve	90-100
<u>Fine Aggregates</u>	<u>By Weight Passing</u>
Passing 1/4" square opening	100%
Passing No. 4 sieve	95 - 100%
Passing No. 16 sieve	50 - 85%
Passing No. 50 sieve	15 - 25%
Passing No. 100 sieve	2 - 8%
- C. Anti-shrinkage grout to be used for grouting in of bearing plates, anchors, and inserts shall be Master Builders "Embecco" premix or approved equal.
- D. Admixtures shall be used only with the prior written approval of the Architect. All mixtures specified herein or proposed for use by the Contractor shall be of a manufacturer as approved by the Architect and used strictly in accordance with the manufacturer's directions.
1. A set-controlling, water-reducing admixture: "Pozzolith" manufactured by Master Builders or approved equal.

2. Air-entraining Admixture: ASTM C-260, certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other required admixtures.
  - a. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products which may be incorporated in the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    1. "Air-Mix"; Euclid Chemical Company.
    2. "Sika Aer"; Sika Corporation.
    3. "MB-VR or MB-AE"; Master Builders.
    4. "Darex AEA" or "Daravair"; W.R. Grace.
    5. "Edoco 2001 or 2002"; Edoco Technical Products.
    6. "Air-Tite"; Gifford Hill/American Admixtures.
  - b. Air-entraining admixtures shall be used for all concrete exposed to weather.
- E. Water: Water used in mixing concrete shall be clean, potable (drinkable), and free from injurious amounts of oils, acids, alkalis, organic materials, or other deleterious materials. (complying with ASTM C94).

#### 2.4 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Reglets: Where resilient or elastomeric sheet flashing or bituminous membranes are terminated in reglets, provide reglets of not less than 26 gauge galvanized sheet steel. Fill reglet or cover face opening to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.
  1. Polyethylene sheet not less than 8 mils thick.
- B. Non-shrink Grout: CRD-C 621, factory pre-mixed grout.
  1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products which may be incorporated in the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Non-metallic:
      1. "Set Grout"; Master Builders.
      2. "SonogROUT"; Sonneborn-Rexnord.
      3. "Euco-NS"; Euclid Chemical Company.
      4. "Supreme"; Gifford-Hill/American Admixtures.
      5. "Crystex"; L & M Construction Chemical Company.
      6. "Sure-Grip Grout"; Dayton Superior Corporation.
      7. "Horngrout"; A.C. Horn, Inc.
      8. "Five Star Grout"; U.S. Grout Corporation.
- C. Absorptive Cover: Burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz. per square yard, complying with AASHTO M 182, Class 2.
- D. Moisture-Retaining Cover: One of the following, complying with ASTM C 171:
  1. Waterproof paper.
  2. Polyethylene film.
  3. Polyethylene-coated burlap.
- E. Liquid Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: Concrete slabs shall be cured by means of pigmented curing compound of a type not affecting adhesion of resilient flooring or other surface finish, of approved manufacture, conforming to ASTM C-309, and applied in strict accordance with manufacturer's directions. Liquid type membrane-forming curing compound complying with

ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class A. Moisture loss not more than 0.055 gr./sq. cm. when applied at 200 sq. ft./gal.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products, which may be incorporated in the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. *"Masterseal"*; Master Builders.
  - b. *"A-H 3 Way Sealer"*; Anti-Hydro Waterproofing Company.
  - c. *"Ecocure"*; Euclid Chemical Company.
  - d. *"Clear Seal"*; A.C. Horn, Inc.
  - e. *"Sealco 309"*; Gifford-Hill/American Admixtures.
  - f. *"J-20 Acrylic Cure"*; Dayton Superior.
  - g. *"Spartan-Cote"*; The Burke Company.
  - h. *"Sealkure"*; Toch Div. - Carboline.
  - i. *"Kure-N-Seal"*; Sonneborn-Rexnord.
  - j. *"Polyclear"*; Upco Chemical/USM Corp.
  - k. *"L & M Cure"*; L & M Construction Chemicals.
  - l. *"Klearseal"*; Setcon Industries.
  - m. *"LR-152"*; Protex Industries.
  - n. *"Hardtop"*; Gifford-Hill.
2. Liquid membrane curing compounds may only be used on slabs where there is no other finish flooring material to be installed.

F. Bonding Compound: Polyvinyl acetate or acrylic base.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products which may be incorporated in the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Polyvinyl Acetate (Interior Only):
    1. *"Euroweld"*; Euclid Chemical Company.
    2. *"Weldcrete"*; Larsen Products Corporation.
  - b. Acrylic or Styrene Butadiene:
    1. *"J-40 Adbond Bonding Agent"*; Dayton Superior Corp.
    2. *"Everbond"*; L & M Construction Chemicals.
    3. *"Hornweld"*; A.C. Horn, Inc.
    4. *"Sonocrete"*; Sonneborn-Rexnord.
    5. *"Acrylic Bondcrete"*; The Burke Company.
    6. *"SBR Latex"*; Euclid Chemical Company.
    7. *"Daraweld C"*; W.R. Grace.

G. Epoxy Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two component material suitable for use on dry or damp surfaces. Provide material "Type," "Grade," or "Class" to suit project requirements.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products which may be incorporated in the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. *"Thiopoxy"*; W.R. Grace.
  - b. *"Epoxite"*; A.C. Horn, Inc.
  - c. *"Edoco 2118 Epoxy Adhesive"*; Edoco Technical Products.
  - d. *"Sikadur Hi-Mod"*; Sika Chemical Corporation.
  - e. *"Euco Epoxy 452 or 620"*; Euclid Chemical Company.

- f. *"Patch and Bond Epoxy"*; The Burke Company.
  - g. *"Concresive 1001"*; Adhesive Engineering Company.
- H. Joint Fillers / Filler Strips: Joints for slabs on ground shall be formed with preformed, non-exuding bituminous fiber expansion filler, which shall extend full length and depth of slabs. Vertical expansion joints shall be constructed complete with water dams or waterstops and joint filler.
- I. Vapor Barriers: Under typical interior slabs where finished flooring does not involve wood, provide non-woven, polyester, reinforced, polyethylene coated sheet of 15 mil thickness.
  - 1. Vapor barrier membrane must have the following properties:
    - a. Permeance as tested after mandatory conditioning (ASTM E 1745 paragraphs 7.1.2-5): less than 0.01 perms (gran/ft<sup>2</sup>/hr/in-Hg).
    - b. Other performance criteria:
      - 1. Strength: Class A (ASTM E 1745).
      - 2. Minimum thickness of plastic retarder material: 15 mils.
    - c. Basis of Design: Stego Wrap 15-mil Vapor barrier by Stego Industries, LLC.
    - d. Or Architect approved equal.
- J. Vapor barrier under interior slabs where finished flooring involves wood assemblies such as gymnasium and stages provide bituminous vapor proofing / waterproofing membrane.
  - 1. Vapor barrier must have seven-ply, weather-coated, permanently bonded, semi-flexible bituminous core board composed of a 3-ply plasmatic matrix sealed between liners of asphalt-impregnated felt and a glass mat liner. Vapor barrier shall consist of an asphalt weather coat and covered with a polyethylene anti-stick sheet. Vapor barrier shall meet or exceed all requirements of ASTM E 1993-98 and shall have the following characteristics:
    - a. Minimum permeance ASTM F1429, calibrated to ASTM E96, Water Method: 0.0011 Perms.
    - b. Tensile Strength ASTM E154, Section 9: 156 LBS. force.
    - c. Puncture Resistance ASTM E154: 149 LBS. force/inch.
    - d. Pre-molded Membrane® Vapor Seal with Plasmatic Core by W.R. Meadows, W.R. Meadows, Inc., PO Box 338, Hampshire, Illinois 60140-0338. (800) 348-5976. (847) 683-4500. Fax (847) 683-4544. Website: [www.wremeadows.com](http://www.wremeadows.com).
- K. Water Stops: Provide all waterstops similar to or equal to those as produced by *Greenstreak, Inc.*, as required by the drawings, either embedded in concrete, or across and/or along the joint, to form a watertight diaphragm that prevents the passage of fluid through the joint.
- L. All other materials as hereinafter specified. All set-in-place concrete elements (i.e. – pre-fabricated water stops, cast aluminum nosings, exterior stair components, etc.) shall be installed in conformance with their associated specification sections, and/or manufacturer's installation instructions if no specification is provided and in complete coordination with the work of this Section.

## 2.5 PROPORTIONING AND DESIGN OF MIXES

- A. Design mix of all concrete shall provide the following properties, as indicated on the drawings and schedules:
1. 4,000 psi 28-day compressive strength; W/C ratio, 0.58 maximum (non-air-entrained), 0.46 maximum (air-entrained).
  2. 4,500 psi 28-day compressive strength; W/C ratio, 0.67 maximum (non-air-entrained), 0.54 maximum (air-entrained).
  3. Do not air entrain concrete for trowel finished interior floors and suspended slabs, including polished concrete floors. Do not allow entrapped air content to exceed 3 percent.
- B. Stone concrete shall weigh approximately 144 pounds per cubic foot. Exterior concrete, exposed to weather, shall have a water cement ratio not to exceed 6 1/2 gallons per sack of cement and an air entraining agent approved by the Architect to be added to obtain concrete with an air content not less than 4% nor more than 6% conforming to ASTM C-175, latest edition.
- C. Prepare design mixes for each type and strength of concrete laboratory trial batch methods as specified in ACI 301. Use an independent testing facility acceptable to Architect for preparing and reporting proposed mix designs. The testing facility shall not be the same as used for field quality control testing.
- D. Submit written reports to Architect and Structural Engineer of each proposed mix for each class of concrete at least 15 days prior to start of work. Do not begin concrete production until mixes have been reviewed and accepted by the Architect.
- E. Adjustment to Concrete Mixes: Mix design adjustments may be requested by Contractor when characteristics of materials, job conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant; at no additional cost to the Owner and as accepted by the Architect. Laboratory test data for revised mix design and strength results must be submitted to and accepted by the Architect before using in work.
- F. Admixtures: ONLY TO BE USED WITH PRIOR WRITTEN APPROVAL OF THE ARCHITECT!
1. Use water-reducing admixture or high range water-reducing admixture (super plasticizer) in concrete as required for placement and workability.
  2. Use non-chloride accelerating admixture in concrete slabs placed at ambient temperatures below 50°F (10°C).
  3. Use high-range water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for industrial slabs, architectural concrete, parking structure slabs, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with water/cement ratios below 0.50.
  4. Use air-entraining admixture in exterior exposed concrete, unless otherwise indicated. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in concrete at point of placement having total air content with a tolerance of plus or minus 1-1/2 percent within the following limits:
    - a. Concrete structures and slabs exposed to freezing and thawing, de-icer chemicals, or subjected to hydraulic pressure.
    - b. 4.5 percent (moderate exposure).  
5.5 percent (severe exposure) 1-1/2" maximum aggregate.
    - c. 4.5 percent (moderate exposure)  
6.0 percent (severe exposure) 1" maximum aggregate.



5. Use admixtures for water-reducing and set-control in strict compliance with manufacturer's directions.
- G. Slump Limits: Proportion and design mixes to result in concrete slump at point of placement as follows:
  1. Ramps, slabs, and sloping surfaces: Not more than 3".
  2. Reinforced foundation systems: Not less than 1" and not more than 3".
  3. Concrete containing HRWR admixture (super-plasticizer): Not more than 8" after addition of HRWR to site-verified 2"-3" slump concrete.
  4. Other concrete: Not less than 1" and not more than 4".

## 2.6 MIXING

- A. All concrete shall be machine mixed or transit mixed.
- B. Hand mixing will not be permitted unless approved by the Architect. Mixing shall conform to ASTM C-94 and ACI-304. On-site mixing will not be permitted unless approved by the Architect/Engineer.
- C. Machine mixing shall be done in an approved batch mixer. Sand and gravel shall be measured by weighing. Mixing shall be continued for at least one minute after all materials are in the mixing drum at a speed of not less than twelve nor more than eighteen revolutions per minute. The volume of the mixing materials per batch shall not exceed manufacturer's rated capacity of mixer. A water gauge shall be provided to deliver the exact predetermined amount of water for each batch. Mixing shall be continued for at least 1 minute for 1 cubic yard of concrete plus 1/4 minute for each additional cubic yard of concrete after all materials.
- D. Transit mix concrete shall conform to the specification and tests herein described and to ASTM C-94 and ACI-304, most current edition(s); and further provided that the central plant producing the concrete and equipment transporting it are, in the opinion of the Architect, suitable for production and transportation of controlled concrete. The maximum elapsed time between the time of the introduction of water and placing shall be one hour.
- E. Exterior concrete exposed to weather: Water cement ratio shall not exceed 6 1/2 gallons per sack of cement and an air-entraining agent approved by the Architect shall be added to obtain concrete with an air content not less than 4% nor more than 6% conforming to ASTM C- 175, latest edition.
- F. Ready-mix Concrete: Comply with the requirements of ASTM C 94, and as specified herein.
  1. During hot weather, or under conditions contributing to rapid setting of concrete, a shorter mixing time than specified in ASTM C 94 may be required.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 GENERAL

- A. The Contractor shall notify the Architect, Construction Manager (when applicable) and the approved testing laboratory at least 24 hours in advance of the time he intends to use ready mixed concrete so that an inspector may be assigned to the plant to supervise the mix, and be available at the site to witness pour and sampling.

- B. With each delivery of concrete, furnish to the superintendent at the building site a delivery slip (certified by laboratory representative) showing mix, quantity of cement, fine and coarse aggregates, and water, and time of departure from the plant.
- C. Under no circumstances shall transit-mixed concrete be delivered from the plant, unless mix design has been approved by the Architect and inspector of testing laboratory. The approved plant and its operating equipment shall be under the supervision of the testing laboratory appointed by and directly responsible to the Architect.
- D. Coordinate the installation of joint materials and vapor retarders with placement of forms and reinforcing steel.

### 3.2 FORMS

- A. Design, erect, support, brace, and maintain form work to support vertical and lateral, static, and dynamic loads that might be applied until such loads can be supported by concrete structure. Construct formwork so that concrete members and structures are of correct size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position. Maintain formwork construction tolerances complying with ACI 347.
- B. Design form work to be readily removable without impact, shock, or damage to cast-in-place concrete surfaces and adjacent materials.
- C. Construct forms to sizes, shapes, lines, and dimensions shown, and to obtain accurate alignment, location, grades, level and plumb work in finished structures. Provide for openings, offsets, sink-ages, keyways, recesses, moldings, rustications, reglets, chamfers, blocking, screeds, bulkheads, anchorages, inserts, and other features required in the work. Use selected materials to obtain required finishes. Solidly butt joints and provide back up at joints to prevent leakage of cement paste.
- D. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush plates or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces.
  - 1. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces where slope is too steep to place concrete with bottom forms only. Kerf wood inserts for forming keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, to prevent swelling and for easy removal.
- E. Provide temporary openings where interior area of formwork is inaccessible for cleanout, for inspection before concrete placement, and for placement of concrete. Securely brace temporary openings and set tightly to forms to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings on forms at inconspicuous locations.
- F. Chamfer exposed corners and edges as indicated, using wood, metal, PVC, or rubber chamfer strips fabricated to produce uniform smooth lines and tight edge joints.
- G. Provisions for Other Trades: Provide openings in concrete formwork to accommodate work of other trades. Determine size and location of openings, recesses, and chases from trades providing such items. Accurately place and securely support items built into forms.
- H. Cleaning and Tightening: Thoroughly clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, etc., or other debris just before concrete is placed. Retightening forms and bracing after concrete placement as required to eliminate mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.

### 3.3 PREPARATION OF FORM SURFACES

- A. Clean re-used forms of concrete matrix residue, repair and patch as required to return forms to acceptable surface condition.
- B. Coat contact surfaces of forms with a form-coating compound before reinforcement is placed.
- C. Thin form-coating compounds only with thinning agent of type, amount, and under conditions of form-coating compound manufacturer's directions. Do not allow excess form-coating material to accumulate in forms or to come into contact with in-place concrete surfaces against which fresh concrete will be placed. Apply in compliance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Coat steel forms with a non-staining, rust preventative form oil or otherwise protect against rusting. Rust-stained steel formwork is not acceptable.

### 3.4 VAPOR RETARDER INSTALLATION

- A. Following leveling and tamping of granular base for slabs on grade, place vapor retarder sheeting with longest dimension parallel with direction of pour. Lap joints and seal with appropriate tape.
- B. All concrete slabs on grade or fill shall receive membrane placed on porous fill prior to placing reinforcing. Membrane shall be placed with 6" laps at ends and sides, and without tears or ruptures at the time concrete is placed thereon.
- C. Both standard vapor barrier and pre-molded membrane when applicable shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturers requirements.

### 3.5 PLACING OF REINFORCEMENT

- A. Comply with *Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute's* recommended practice for "*Placing Reinforcing Bars*", for details and methods of reinforcement placement and supports, and as specified herein.
- B. All reinforcement shall be rigidly wired in place with adequate spacers and zinc coated tie chairs. Bar supports shall be not more than 4'-0" o.c. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other materials which reduce or destroy bond with concrete. Reinforcement for concrete slabs on ground or fill shall be supported on precast concrete bricks. On formwork, galvanized coated chairs or spacers shall be used.
- C. Reinforcement shall be placed so that where temperature shrinkage of bars occur, they shall be no closer to top of slab than 3/4". Coordinate with work under Electrical Contract so that conduits may be replaced to obtain this result.
- D. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement by formwork, construction, or concrete placement operations. Locate and support reinforcing by metal chairs, runners, bolsters, spacers, and hangers as required.
- E. All reinforcement shall be bent cold. The minimum radius of bend shall be 4 diameters for bars 5/8" round or less and 6 diameters for larger bars.
- F. Place reinforcement to obtain at least minimum coverage for concrete protection. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement operations. Set wire ties so ends are directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.

- G. Install welded wire fabric in as long lengths as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh and lace overlaps with wire. Offset end laps in adjacent widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
- H. Do not cut or puncture vapor barrier. Repair damage and reseal vapor barrier in accordance with manufacturer's requirements before placing concrete.
- I. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement: Repair cut and damaged epoxy coating with epoxy repair coating according to ASTM D 3963/D 3963M. Use epoxy-coated steel wire ties to fasten epoxy-coated steel reinforcement.
- J. Zinc-Coated Reinforcement: Repair, cut and damaged zinc coatings with zinc repair material according to ASTM A 780. Use galvanized steel wire ties to fasten zinc-coated steel reinforcement.

### 3.6 EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Joints for slabs on ground shall be formed with preformed, non- exuding bituminous fiber expansion filler, which shall extend full length and depth of slabs.
- B. Vertical expansion joints shall be constructed complete with water dams or waterstops and joint filler.
- C. Joint material in exterior concrete, sidewalks, plazas, stairs, ramps, curbs, etc. shall be held 1/4" from finished surface and finished with approved traffic grade sealant.

### 3.7 OTHER JOINTS

- A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
  - 1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
  - 2. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into concrete.
  - 3. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans. Offset joints to girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
  - 4. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
  - 5. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated per typical detail. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
  - 6. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construction contraction joints for a depth as follows:
  - 1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch (3.2 mm). Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.

2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- (3.2 mm-) wide joints 1" deep into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.
- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) or more than 1 inch (25 mm) below finished concrete surface where joint sealants, specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealant," are indicated.
  3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip section together.
- E. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

### 3.8 INSTALLATION OF EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. General: Set and build into work anchorage devices and other embedded items required for other work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, diagrams, instructions, and directions provided by suppliers of items to be attached thereto.
1. Install reglets to receive top edge of foundation sheet waterproofing, and to receive thru-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, relieving angles, and other conditions.
  2. Install anchor bolts, accurately located, to elevations required.
- B. Edge Forms and Screed Strips for Slabs: Set edge forms or bulkheads and intermediate screed strips for slabs to obtain required elevations and contours in finished slab surface. Provide and secure units sufficiently strong to support types of screed strips by use of strike-off templates or accepted compacting type screeds.

### 3.9 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. The Contractor shall notify the Owner, the Architect, the Construction Manager (when applicable) and the testing laboratory at least 48 hours in advance of the time he intends to place concrete in order to afford them the opportunity to observe placing operations. The Contractor shall obtain the Architect's and testing laboratory's permission prior to placing concrete.
- B. All forms must be absolutely clean and free from shavings and dirt prior to starting concrete operations.
- C. Under no circumstances shall concrete be deposited in or under water, nor on muddy or frozen ground.
- D. Pre-placement Inspection: Before placing concrete, the Contractor shall inspect and complete all formwork installation, reinforcing steel, and items to be embedded or cast-in. Notify other crafts to permit installation of their work; cooperate with other trades in setting such work. Moisten wood

forms immediately before placing concrete where form coatings are not used. Protect adjacent finish materials against spatter during concrete placement.

1. Apply temporary protective covering to lower 2' of finished walls adjacent to poured floor slabs and similar conditions, and guard against spattering during placement under any and all conditions of placement.
- E. General: Comply with ACI 304 *"Recommended Practice for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting, and Placing Concrete"* and as herein specified.
1. Deposit concrete continuously or in layers of such thickness that no concrete will be placed on concrete which has hardened sufficiently to cause the formation of seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as herein specified. Deposit concrete as nearly as practicable to its final location to avoid segregation.
  2. Before depositing new concrete against concrete which has set, the forms shall be re-tightened and the surface of the concrete placed earlier shall be thoroughly roughened, cleaned of all foreign matter and laitance, shall be slushed with water, slushed with a coat of neat cement grout, and the new concrete shall be placed before the grout has attained its initial set, or the work shall be performed in such other approved manner as will insure a thorough bonding to the work.
- F. All concrete must be placed as rapidly as possible after mixing and thoroughly spaded and rammed in place. Consolidate placed concrete by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand spading, rodding, or tamping. All possible care is to be exercised to prevent honeycombing. Concrete shall be placed in layers not over 12" thick and shall not be dumped from height over three feet. Concrete that must be placed more than 3 feet below placement level shall be chuted at a slope of not more than 1 in 2 or deposited through elephant trunks.
- G. Concrete shall be placed in one operation up to temporary bulkheads, which shall be located, in general, at points of minimum shear.
- H. Placing Concrete in Forms: Deposit concrete in forms in horizontal layers not deeper than 12" and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints. Where placement consists of several layers, place each layer while preceding layer is still plastic to avoid cold joints.
1. Use equipment and procedures for consolidation of concrete in accordance with ACI 309.
  2. All structural concrete shall be placed with the aid of mechanical vibrators. The vibrators shall be of a type and design approved by the Architect and shall be capable of transmitting to the concrete not less than 3,000 impulses per minute. The vibration shall be sufficiently intense to visibly affect the concrete over a radius of at least 2'-0" around the point of application but shall not be applied long enough to segregate the ingredients. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations not farther than visible effectiveness of machine. Place vibrators to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6" into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to set. Enough vibration shall be used to cause all the concrete to flow or settle readily into place. The vibration shall be of internal type, applied directly to the concrete and not through the forms, except in sections too thin to permit the insertion of the internal type, in which case form vibration may be employed at the discretion of the Architect. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms.
- I. Placing Concrete Slabs: Deposit and consolidate concrete slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until

the placing of a panel or section is completed.

1. Consolidate concrete during placing operations so that concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
  2. Bring slab surfaces to correct level with straightedge and strikeoff. Use bull floats or darbies to smooth surface, free of humps or hollows. Do not disturb slab surfaces prior to beginning finishing operations.
  3. Maintain reinforcing in proper position during concrete placement operations.
  4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
  5. For exterior placement such as sidewalks, plazas, driveway aprons, curbing and equipment pads where no vapor barrier is required, the subgrade shall be moist before placing concrete. Dry or dusty subgrades shall be moistened to a minimum depth of one inch (1") prior to placing concrete.
- J. Cold Weather Placing: Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength which could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures, in compliance with ACI 306 and as herein specified.
1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40°F (4°C), uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50°F (10°C), and not more than 80°F (27°C) at point of placement.
    - a. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
    - b. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, and other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators, unless otherwise accepted in mix designs.
    - c. Protection of Footings Against Freezing: Cover completed work at footing level with sufficient temporary or permanent cover as required to protect footings and adjacent subgrade against possibility of freezing; maintain cover for time period as necessary.
- K. Hot Weather Placing: When hot weather conditions exist that would seriously impair quality and strength of concrete, place concrete in compliance with ACI 305 and as herein specified. Concrete placed in warm weather shall be kept well sprinkled with water for at least one week after placing, unless other approved curing methods are used. No concrete shall be placed when the atmospheric temperature is above 90°F.
1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature at time of placement below 90°F (32°C). Mixing water may be chilled or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Use of liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
  2. Cover reinforcing steel with water-soaked burlap if it becomes too hot, so that steel temperature will not exceed the ambient air temperature immediately before embedment in concrete.
    - a. Fog spray forms, reinforcing steel, and subgrade just before concrete is placed.

3. Use water-reducing retarding admixture (Type D) when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placing conditions, only upon approval of the Architect.

### 3.10 FINISH OF FORMED SURFACES

- A. Rough Form Finish: For formed concrete surfaces not exposed to view in the finish work or by other construction, unless otherwise shown or indicated. This is the concrete surface having texture imparted by form facing material used, with tie holes and defective areas repaired and patched and fins and other projections exceeding 1/4" in height rubbed down or chipped off.
- B. Smooth Form Finish: For formed concrete surfaces exposed to view, or that are to be covered with a coating material applied directly to concrete, or a covering material applied directly to concrete, such as waterproofing, dampproofing, veneer plaster, painting, or other similar system. This is as-cast concrete surface obtained with selected form facing material, arranged orderly and symmetrically with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch defective areas with fins or other projections completely removed and smoothed.
- C. Smooth Rubbed Finish: Provide smooth rubbed finish to scheduled concrete surfaces, which have received smooth form finish treatment, immediately following form removal and not later than one day after form removal.
  1. Moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or other abrasive until a uniform color and texture is produced. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.
- D. Grout Cleaned Finish: Provide grout cleaned finish to scheduled concrete surfaces which have received smooth form finish treatment.
  1. Combine one part Portland cement to 1-1/2 parts fine sand by volume, and mix with water to consistency of thick paint. Proprietary additives may be used at Contractor's option. Blend standard Portland cement and white Portland cement, amounts determined by trial patches, so that final color of dry grout will match adjacent surfaces.
  2. Thoroughly wet concrete surfaces and apply grout to coat surfaces and fill small holes. Remove excess grout by scraping and rubbing with clean burlap. Keep damp by fog spray for at least 36 hours after rubbing.
- E. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces occurring adjacent to formed surfaces, strike-off, smooth, and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.11 MONOLITHIC SLAB FINISHES

- A. Scratch Finish: Apply scratch finish to monolithic slab surfaces that are to receive concrete floor topping or mortar setting beds for tile, Portland cement terrazzo, and other bonded applied cementitious finish flooring material, and as otherwise indicated.
  1. After placing slabs, plane surface to tolerances for floor flatness (FF) of 15 and floor levelness (FL) of 13. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required. After leveling, while still plastic, roughen surface before final set, with stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes to provide a profile amplitude of 1/4 inch (6 mm) in one direction.
- B. Float Finish: Apply float finish to monolithic slab surfaces to receive trowel finish and other finishes as hereinafter specified, and slab surfaces which are to be covered with membrane or elastic waterproofing, membrane or elastic roofing, or sand-bed terrazzo, and as otherwise indicated.



1. After screeding, consolidating, and leveling concrete slabs, do not work surface until ready for floating. Begin floating when surface water has disappeared or when concrete has stiffened sufficiently to permit operation of power-driven floats, or both. Consolidate surface with power-driven floats, or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Check and level surface plant to tolerances of FF 18 - FL 15. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Uniformly slope surfaces to drains. Immediately after leveling, refloat surface to a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
- C. Trowel Finish: Apply trowel finish to monolithic slab surfaces to be exposed to view and slab surfaces to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile, paint, or other thin film finish coating system and below wood flooring systems.
  1. After floating, begin first trowel finish operation using a hand or power-driven trowel. Begin final troweling when surface produces a ringing sound as trowel is moved over surface. Consolidate concrete surface by final hand- troweling operation, free of trowel marks, uniform in texture and appearance, and with surface leveled to tolerances according to ASTM E 1155 (ASTM E1155M) for a randomly trafficked floor surface. Grind smooth surface defects which would telegraph through applied floor covering system.
    - a. Specified overall values of flatness: (F(F)35, and levelness, F(L)25, with minimum local values of flatness F(F)24 and levelness F(L)17 for slabs on grade.
  2. Finish and measure surface so gap at any point between concrete surface and an un-leveled, freestanding, 10-ft.- (3.05-m-) long straightedge resting on two high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
- D. Trowel and Fine Broom Finish: Where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed with either thin-set or thick-set mortar, apply trowel finish as specified, then immediately follow with slightly scarifying surface by fine brooming. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel finished floor surfaces.
- E. Non-Slip Broom Finish: Apply non-slip broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, sidewalks, plazas, aprons, curbs and ramps, and elsewhere indicated.
  1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen concrete surface by brooming with fiber bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.
- F. Slip-Resistive Finish: Before final floating, apply slip-resistive aggregate finish where indicated and to concrete stair treads, platforms and ramps. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
  1. Uniformly spread 25/100 sq. ft. (12 kg/10 sq. m) of dampened slip-resistive aggregate over surface in one or two applications. Tamp aggregate flush with surface, but do not force below surface.
  2. After broadcasting and tamping, apply float finish.
  3. After curing, lightly work surface with a steel wire brush or an abrasive stone and water to expose slip-resistive aggregate.
- G. Dry-Shake Floor Hardener Finish: After initial floating, apply dry- shake floor hardener to surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions as follows:

1. Uniformly apply dry-shake floor hardener at a rate of 100 lb/100 sq. ft. (49 kg/10 sq. m) unless greater amount is recommended by manufacturer.
2. Uniformly distribute approximately two-thirds of dry-shake floor hardener over surface by hand or with mechanical spreader, and embed by power floating. Follow power floating with a second dry-shake floor hardener application, uniformly distributing remainder of material, and embed by power floating.
3. After final floating, apply a trowel finish. Cure concrete with curing compound recommended by dry-shake floor hardener manufacturer and apply immediately after final finishing.

### 3.12 CONCRETE CURING AND PROTECTION

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
  1. Start initial curing as soon as free water has disappeared from concrete surface after placing and finishing. Weather permitting; keep continuously moist for not less than 7 days.
  2. Begin final curing procedures immediately following initial curing and before concrete has dried. Continue final curing for at least 7 days in accordance with ACI 301 procedures. Avoid rapid drying at end of final curing period.
  3. The Contractor shall continuously protect cement finish floors from damage for the duration of the work by such means as approved by the Architect and shall leave same in perfect condition to receive other floor finishes or where exposed in the finished work, they shall be in perfect condition at completion and acceptance of the building.
- B. Curing Methods: Perform curing of concrete by curing and sealing compound, by moist curing, by moisture-retaining cover curing, and by combinations thereof, as herein specified as appropriate to finished condition of concrete surface.
  1. Provide moisture curing by following methods:
    - a. Keep concrete surface continuously wet by covering with water.
    - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
    - c. Covering concrete surface with specified absorptive cover, thoroughly saturating cover with water and continuously keeping wet. Place absorptive cover to provide coverage of concrete surfaces and edges, with 4" lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
  2. Provide moisture-cover curing as follows:
    - a. Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width with sides and ends lapped at least 3" and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
  3. Provide curing and sealing compound to exposed interior slabs (no other finish materials) and to exterior slabs, walks, and curbs as follows:

- a. Apply specified curing and sealing compound to concrete slabs as soon as final finishing operations are complete (within 2 hours). Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power-spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's directions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within 3 hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
  - b. Do not use membrane curing and sealing compounds on surfaces which are to be covered with coating material applied directly to concrete, liquid floor hardener, waterproofing, dampproofing, membrane roofing, flooring (such as ceramic or quarry tile, vinyl tile, linoleum, glue-down carpet, etc.), painting, and other coatings and finish materials unless otherwise acceptable to the Architect.
- C. Curing Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including undersides of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces by moist curing with forms in place for full curing period or until forms are removed. If forms are removed, continue curing by methods specified above, as applicable.
- D. Curing Unformed Surfaces: Cure unformed surfaces, such as slabs, floor topping, and other flat surfaces by application of appropriate curing method.
- 1. Final cure concrete surfaces to receive liquid floor hardener or finish flooring by use of moisture retaining cover, unless otherwise directed.

### 3.13 REMOVAL OF FORMS

- A. Form work not supporting weight of concrete, such as sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the work, may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50°F (10°C) for 24 hours after placing concrete, provided concrete is sufficiently hard not to be damaged by form removal operations and provided curing and protection operations are maintained.
- 1. Leave formwork for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements that supports weight of concrete-in-place unit concrete has achieved at least 70 percent of its 28-day design compressive strength.
  - 2. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit remove of forms without loosening or distributing shores.
- B. Form facing material may be removed 4 days after placement, only if shores and other vertical supports have been arranged to permit removal of form facing material without loosening or disturbing shores and supports.

### 3.14 RE-USE OF FORMS

- A. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be re-used in work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form coating compound as specified for new form work.
- B. When forms are extended for successive concrete placement, thoroughly clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten forms close to joints. Align and secure joint to avoid offsets. Do not use "patched" forms for exposed concrete surfaces, except as acceptable to the Architect.

### 3.15 SHORES AND RESHORES

- A. Comply with ACI 318 (ACI 318M) and ACI 301 for design, installation, and removal of shoring and re-shoring.

1. Do not remove shoring or re-shoring until measurement of slab tolerances is complete.
- B. In multi-story construction, extend shoring or re-shoring over a sufficient number of stories to distribute loads in such a manner that no floor or member will be excessively loaded or will induce tensile stress in concrete members without sufficient steel reinforcement.
- C. Plan sequence of removal of shores and re-shores to avoid damage to concrete. Locate and provide adequate re-shoring support construction without excessive stress or deflection.

### 3.16 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

- A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures for passage of work by other trades, unless otherwise shown or directed, after work of other trades is in place. Mix, place, and cure concrete as herein specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling shown or required to complete work.
- B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.
- C. Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations as shown on drawings. Set anchor bolts for machines and equipment to template at correct elevations, complying with certified diagrams or templates of manufacturer finishing machines and equipment.
  1. Grout base plates and foundations as indicated, using specified non-shrink grout. Use non-metallic grout for exposed conditions, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items. Cast-in safety inserts and accessories as shown on drawings. Screed, tamp, and finish concrete surfaces as scheduled.
- E. Pits, Trenches, etc.: Build all pits, pit cleanouts, trap pits, trenches, curbs, and pads as required by the drawings and by job conditions.
- F. Flexible Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other joints indicated to form a continuous watertight diaphragm. Install in longest lengths practicable. Support and protect exposed waterstops during progress of the Work. Field fabricate joints in waterstops according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Self-Expanding Strip Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions, adhesive bonding, mechanically fastening, and firmly pressing into place. Install in longest lengths practicable.

### 3.17 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Patching Defective Areas: Repair and patch defective areas with cement mortar immediately after removal of forms, when acceptable to Architect.
  1. Cut out honeycomb, rock pockets, voids over 1/4" in any dimension, and holes left by tie rods and bolts down to solid concrete but in no case to a depth of less than 1". Make edges of cuts perpendicular to the concrete surface. Before placing cement mortar, thoroughly clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat the area to be patched with specified bonding agent. Place patching mortar after bonding compound has dried.

- a. For exposed-to-view surfaces, blend white Portland cement and standard Portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar will match color surrounding. Provide test areas at inconspicuous location to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike-off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
- B. Repair of Formed Surfaces: Remove and replace concrete having defective surfaces if defects cannot be repaired to satisfaction of Architect. Surface defects, as such, include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycomb, rock pockets, fins and other projections on surface, and stains or other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning. Flush out form tie holes, fill with dry pack mortar or precast cement cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
  1. Repair concealed formed surfaces, where possible, that contain defects that affect the durability of concrete. If defects cannot be repaired, remove and replace concrete.
- C. Repair of Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as monolithic slabs, for smoothness and verify surface plane to tolerances specified for each surface and finish. Correct low and high areas as herein specified. Test unformed surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope, in addition to smoothness, using a template having required slope.
  1. Repair finished unformed surfaces that contain defects which affect durability of concrete. Surface defects, as such, include crazing, cracks in excess of 0.01" wide or which penetrate to reinforcement or completely through non-reinforced sections regardless of width, spalling, pop-outs, honeycomb, rock pockets, and other objectionable conditions.
  2. Correct high areas in unformed surfaces by grinding, after concrete has cured at least 14 days.
  3. Correct low areas in unformed surfaces during or immediately after completion of surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with fresh concrete. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete. Patching compounds may be used when acceptable to Architect.
  4. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes not exceeding 1" diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas to sound concrete with clean, square cuts and expose reinforcing steel with at least 3/4" clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding compound. Mix patching concrete of same materials to provide concrete of same type or class as original concrete. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
  5. Repair isolated random cracks and single holes not over 1" diameter by dry-pack method. Groove top of cracks and cutout holes to sound concrete and clean of dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding compound. Mix dry-pack, consisting of one part Portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 mesh sieve, using only enough water as required for handling and placing. Place dry pack after bonding compound has dried. Compact dry-pack mixture in place and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for not less than 72 hours.
  6. Perform structural repairs with prior approval of Architect or Structural Engineer for method and procedure, using specified epoxy adhesive and mortar.

7. Repair methods not specified above may be used, subject to acceptance of Architect.

3.18 CUTTING, PATCHING, AND REMOVAL

- A. The Contractor shall be responsible for all cutting and patching of his work as required to accommodate work of this section and of other sections and contracts.
- B. Materials which have become damaged or have been condemned shall be removed from the site.

END OF SECTION 033000

SECTION 034500 - ARCHITECTURAL PRECAST CONCRETE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary to complete the architectural precast concrete as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not necessarily limited to, the following:
  - 1. Precast concrete copings and sills.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Cast-in-Place Concrete - Section 033000.
- B. Unit Masonry - Section 042000.
- C. Joint Sealers - Section 079200.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Casting Tolerances: Maintain casting, bowing, warping and dimension tolerance within the following maximums:
  - 1. Overall Dimension for Height and Width of Units: Plus zero of unit dimension to minus 3/32".
  - 2. Twist, Bowing or Warping: Do not exceed length/360 or 1/8", whichever is less.
  - 3. Insert Locations: Place within plus or minus 1/8" in each direction.
  - 4. Length of units shall not deviate by more than +/- 1/8" from approved dimensions.
- B. Reference Standards: Comply with applicable provisions and recommendations of the following, except as otherwise shown or specified.
  - 1. ASTM C 150 Specification for Portland Cement.
  - 2. ASTM C 33 Specification for Concrete Aggregates
  - 3. ASTM C 979 Specification for Coloring Pigments for Integrally Pigmented Concrete.
  - 4. ASTM C 494 Specification for Concrete Admixtures
  - 5. ASTM A 615 Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet Steel Bars for Concrete Concrete Reinforcement.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit samples of precast concrete with documented independent testing laboratory reports to the Architect for approval.

- B. Samples: Before any precast concrete elements are delivered to the job site, submit twelve (12) inch long samples of each profile unit required.
  - 1. Submit 6" x 6" samples showing full range of colors and texture available; sample shall receive clear sealer as specified herein.
- C. Shop Drawings: Submit complete shop drawings of all precast concrete elements showing anchorage, type, location and profiles, sizes, connections, location, and adjacent construction.

#### 1.6 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Protection: Use all means necessary to protect precast concrete and related materials before, during and after installation and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.
- B. Replacements: In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary to the approval of the Architect and at no additional cost to the Owner.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 COLOR AND FINISH

- A. The precast concrete used in this work shall match color and texture of samples approved by the Architect.
- B. Exposed surfaces, unless otherwise specified, shall exhibit a smooth polished finish approved by the Architect. No bug holes will be permitted.
- C. The samples shall be approved by the Architect before the manufacturer shall be required to proceed with the work.

#### 2.2 MANUFACTURER

- A. Precast concrete used in this work shall conform to the following properties:
  - 1. Compressive Strength, ASTM C 1194: 6500 psi min. for products at 28 days.
  - 2. Absorption, ASTM C 1195 or ASTM C 642: 6% max. for products at 28 days.
  - 3. Linear Shrinkage - ASTM C 426: Shrinkage shall not exceed 0.065%.
  - 4. Color Variation
    - a. Must match color and finish of approved sample when viewed in direct daylight at a 5 foot distance.
    - b. ASTM color variation allowed - 2% hue; 6% lightness, chrome and hue combined.

#### 2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Cement shall be Portland Type I white, meeting ASTM C 150.
- B. Fine aggregate shall be carefully graded and washed natural sands, or manufactured granite, marble, quartz or limestone sands meeting ASTM C 33, except that gradation may vary to achieve desired finish.
- C. Coarse aggregate shall be carefully graded and washed natural gravel, or crushed graded stone such as granite, marble quartz, limestone or other durable stone meeting ASTM C 33, except that gradation may vary to achieve desired finish and texture.



- D. Coloring: All colors added shall be inorganic (natural or synthetic) iron oxide pigments meeting ASTM C 979 excluding the use of a cement grade of carbon black pigment, and shall be guaranteed by the manufacturer to be light fast and lime proof. The amount of pigment shall not exceed ten (10) percent by weight of the cement used.
- E. Precast concrete elements shall be reinforced with new billet steel reinforcing bars meeting ASTM A 615, grade 60, when necessary for safe handling, setting and structural stress, and the size of the reinforcing shall be as shown on approved shop drawings. The material covering in all cases shall be at least twice the diameter of the bars.
- F. All anchoring devices shall be fabricated of stainless steel Type 304 and shall be as noted on approved shop drawings.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Mortar for setting of precast sections shall conform to ASTM C 270, Type N, with not more than 1/2 part lime per part of white non-staining Portland cement.
- B. Joint Filler: Fill all joints with exposed tops with "Emseal" Greyflex Expanding Foam Sealant as manufactured by Emseal, Inc. or approved equal. Material shall be designed for compression in joint twenty-five (25) percent of its original width, depth of filler as per manufacturer's standard. Joint filler shall be recessed 3/4" from finished surface.
- C. Fabricate architectural trim units such as sills, lintels, coping, cornices, quoins, medallions, bollards, benches, planters, and pavers, with tolerances meeting PCI MNL 135.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where precast concrete elements are to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Carefully coordinate with all other trades to ensure proper and adequate interface of the work of other trades with the work of this Section.

### 3.3 SETTING

- A. All precast concrete elements shall be set accurately and in accordance with the approved shop and setting drawings.
- B. Setting Tolerances: Plus/minus 1/32" allowable out of plane with adjacent units.

### 3.4 PATCHING

- A. The repair of chipped or damaged precast elements shall be done only by mechanics skilled in this class of work, with materials furnished by the manufacturer and according to his direction.
- B. Patching will not be permitted on any piece which can be removed and replaced without undue difficulty. Replace such pieces which are chipped or damaged with identical new pieces.
- C. Precast elements shall show no obvious repairs or imperfections other than minimal color variations when viewed with the unaided eye under good typical lighting at a ten (10) foot distance.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. All precast elements shall be fully protected when installed against damage of any kind. Any piece damaged shall be replaced at no additional cost.

END OF SECTION 034500

SECTION 035416 - CEMENT LEVELING COMPOUND

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. The Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the cement leveling compound as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not necessarily limited to, the following:
  - 1. Self-leveling cement compound applied over existing concrete substrates, thickness shall be 1/4" minimum.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Concrete work - Section 033000.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Applicator: Company specializing in performing the work of this Section with a minimum of 3 years' experience and approved by the manufacturer of the product used.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit catalog information and product data for material to be used.
- B. Submit approval letter as required by Article 3.1, para. B. herein.

1.6 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Protection: Use all means necessary to protect the materials of this Section before, during and after installation and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.
- B. Replacements: In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary.

1.7 MOCK-UP

- A. Construct a mock-up of underlayment material, 8 feet long by 8 feet wide.
- B. Locate where directed by the Architect.
- C. Approved mock-up may remain as part of the Work.

1.8 JOB REQUIREMENTS

- A. Do not install underlayment until floor penetrations and peripheral work are complete.
- B. Maintain minimum ambient temperatures of 50 degrees F. 24 hours before, during, and 72 hours after installation of underlayment.
- C. During the curing process, ventilate spaces to remove excess moisture and until underlayment is dry, allow a minimum of seven (7) days.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURER

A. Subject to the requirements specified herein, provide one of the following products:

1. "Supercap SC500" by Laticrete.
2. "Sikallevel 325" by Sika.
3. "Level Set 200" by ProSpec.
4. "Super Flo-Top" made by Euclid Chemical Co.
5. "K-15" made by Ardex.
6. "Ultraplan 1 Plus" by the Mapei Corp. (rapid setting).
7. "Novoplan 2" by the Mapei Corp. (standard setting).
8. "Level Quick R/S" or "E/S" by Custom Buiding Products.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Underlayment: One of the above listed products.
- B. Water: Potable and not detrimental to underlayment mix materials.
- C. Primer: Manufacturer's recommended type.
- D. Joint and Crack Filler: Latex based.

### 2.3 MIXING

- A. Site mix materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Mix to achieve following characteristics:
1. Density: 115 lb./cu. ft. minimum dry density.
  2. Compressive Strength: 4,000 psi minimum in accordance with ASTM C 109.
  3. Fire Hazard Classification: Flame/Smoke rating of 0/0 in accordance with ASTM E 286.
- C. Mix to self-leveling consistency.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where cement leveling compounds are to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.
- B. Manufacturer's representative must inspect surfaces to receive cement leveling compound and approve those surfaces in writing to the Architect prior to start of application.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Vacuum clean surfaces; remove any material (curing compounds, film, dirt) that would be detrimental to bond of cement leveling compound.
- B. Prime substrate in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Allow to dry.
- C. Close floor openings.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Install underlayment in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Place to minimum 1/4" thickness.
- C. Transition to existing floor; use stiff mix to slope to align with existing adjacent floor.

3.4 CURING

- A. Air cure in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.5 APPLICATION TOLERANCE

- A. Top Surface: Level to 1/8 inch in 10 ft.

3.6 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

- A. Do not permit traffic over unprotected floor underlayment surfaces and until underlayment is completely dry.

END OF SECTION 035416

SECTION 040120 - MAINTENANCE OF BRICK MASONRY

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the masonry restoration and cleaning as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Cleaning existing face brick walls.
  - 2. Repointing existing face brick walls.
  - 3. Patching and repair of existing damaged face brick.
  - 4. Replacing existing damaged face brick.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Unit Masonry - Section 042000.
- B. Joint Sealers - Section 079200.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Brick Masonry Repair/Repointing Specialist Qualifications: Engage an experienced brick masonry repair and repointing firm to perform work of this Section. Firm shall have completed work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project with a record of successful in-service performance. Experience in only installing masonry is insufficient experience for masonry repointing work.
- B. Field Supervision: Brick masonry repair/repointing specialist firms shall maintain experienced full-time supervisors on Project site during times that brick masonry repointing work is in progress.
- C. Quality-Control Program: Prepare a written quality-control program for this Project to systematically demonstrate the ability of personnel to properly follow methods and use materials and tools without damaging masonry. Include provisions for supervising performance and preventing damage.
- D. Field-Constructed Mock-Ups: Prior to start of general masonry restoration, prepare the following sample panels on the building where directed by Architect. Obtain Architect's acceptance of visual qualities before proceeding with the work. Retain acceptable panels in undisturbed condition, suitably marked, during construction as a standard for judging completed work.
  - 1. Cleaning: Demonstrate materials and methods to be used for cleaning each type of masonry surface and condition on sample panels of approximately 25 sq. ft. in area.
    - a. Test adjacent non-masonry materials for possible reaction with cleaning materials.
    - b. Allow waiting period not less than seven (7) calendar days, after completion of sample cleaning to permit study of sample panels for negative reactions.
  - 2. Repointing: Prepare two (2) separate sample areas of approximately 3' high by 6' wide for each type of repointing required, one for demonstrating methods and quality of workmanship expected in removal of mortar from joints and the other for demonstrating quality of materials and workmanship expected in pointing mortar joints.

3. Patching: Prepare sample area approximately 3'-0" high by 6'-0" wide for demonstrating techniques and quality of terra cotta and masonry repair work.
4. Provide mock-ups for dutchmen, epoxy repair, cracking repair and pointing.
- E. Analysis for Historic Mortar: Engage a laboratory to analyze existing historic mortars using either the wet chemical method or instrumental method of analysis (as directed by the Architect), to determine their composition. Provide resulting information regarding original composition of mortar to the Architect.
  1. New mortar must match the historic mortar in color, texture, and tooling.
    - a. If possible, through laboratory analysis, match the binder components and their proportions with the historic mortar, if those materials are available.
  2. The sand must match the sand in the historic mortar.
  3. New mortar must have greater vapor permeability and be softer (measured in compressive strength) than the masonry units.
  4. The new mortar must be as vapor permeable and as soft or softer (measured in compressive strength) than the historic mortar.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturers' technical data for each product indicated including recommendations for their application and use and VOC compliance. Include test reports and certifications substantiating that products comply with requirements.
- B. Restoration Program: Submit written program for each phase of restoration process including protection of surrounding materials on building and site during operations. Describe in detail materials, methods and equipment to be used for each phase of restoration work.
- C. Samples: For each type, color, and texture of pointing mortar in the form of sample mortar strips, 6" long by 1/2" wide, set in aluminum or plastic channels.
  1. Include with each Sample a list of ingredients with proportions of each. Identify sources, both supplier and quarry, of each type of sand and brand names of cementitious materials and pigments if any.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Carefully pack, handle, and ship masonry units and accessories strapped together in suitable packs or pallets or in heavy cartons. Unload and handle to prevent chipping and breakage.
- B. Deliver other materials to site in manufacturer's original and unopened containers and packaging, bearing labels as to type and names of products and manufacturers.
- C. Protect masonry restoration materials during storage and construction from wetting by rain, snow or ground water, and from staining or intermixture with earth or other types of materials.
- D. Protect grout, mortar and other materials from deterioration by moisture and temperature. Store in a dry location or in waterproof containers. Keep containers tightly closed and away from open flames. Protect liquid components from freezing. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations for minimum and maximum temperature requirements for storage.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Clean masonry surfaces only when air temperatures are 40 deg. F. and above and will remain so until masonry has dried out, but for not less than seven (7) days after completion of cleaning.
- B. Do not repoint mortar joints or repair masonry unless air temperatures are between 40 deg. F. and 80 deg. F. and will remain so for at least forty-eight (48) hours after completion of work.
- C. Prevent grout or mortar used in repointing and repair work from staining face of surrounding masonry and other surfaces. Remove immediately grout and mortar in contact with exposed masonry and other surfaces.
- D. Protect sills, ledges and projections from mortar droppings.

1.7 SEQUENCING/SCHEDULING

- A. Perform masonry restoration work in the following sequence:
  - 1. Repair existing masonry including replacing existing masonry with new masonry materials.
  - 2. Rake-out existing mortar from joints indicated to be repointed.
  - 3. Repoint existing mortar joints of masonry indicated to be restored.
  - 4. Clean existing masonry surfaces.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MASONRY MATERIALS

- A. Brick: ASTM C 62 to match existing brick, final selection by the Architect.
- B. Salvaged Brick: Use salvaged brick from existing façade wherever possible. Clean off residual mortar. Match original bond.
- C. Mortar Materials
  - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type 1, standard color, one source.
  - 2. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
  - 3. Aggregate: Clean, washed, buff colored sand, graded per ASTM C 144.
  - 4. Water: Clean, fresh and suitable for drinking.

2.2 CLEANING MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

- A. Water for Cleaning: Clean, potable, free of oils, acids, alkalis, salts, and organic matter.
- B. Paint Remover: Manufacturer's standard water-rinsable, solvent-type gel formulation for removing paint coatings from masonry. Do not use acidic detergent.
- C. Alkaline Prewash Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard alkaline cleaner for prewash applications only which are followed by acidic cleaner of type indicated for afterwash.



1. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Sure Klean 766 Prewash," ProSoCo, Inc.
- D. Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard strength non-acidic masonry restoration cleaner by ProSoCo, or approved equal.
- E. Liquid Strippable Masking Agent: Manufacturer's standard liquid, film forming, strippable masking material for protecting glass, metal and polished stone surfaces from damaging effect of acidic and alkaline masonry cleaners.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements provide one of the following:
    - a. "Diedrich Acid Guard," Diedrich Chemicals.
    - b. "Sure Klean Acid Stop," ProSoCo, Inc.
- F. Spray Equipment: Provide equipment for controlled spray application of water and chemical cleaners, at rates required by the manufacturer, measured at spray tip, and for volume.
  1. For spray application of chemical cleaners provide low-pressure tank or chemical pump suitable for chemical cleaner indicated, equipped with cone-shaped spray-tip.
  2. For spray application of water provide fan-shaped spray-tip which disperses water at angle of not less than 15 degrees.

## 2.3 PATCHING MATERIALS

- A. Patching Mortar: Single-component, cementitious, mineral-based mortar equal to "M100 Jahn Restoration Mortars" made by Cathedral Stone Products Inc., or approved equal.
- B. Formulate patching compound for terra cotta in colors and textures to match each unit being patched.

## 2.4 MORTAR MIXES

- A. Measuring and Mixing: Measure cementitious and aggregate material in a dry condition by volume or equivalent weight. Do not measure by shovel, use known measure. Mix materials in a clean mechanical batch mixer.
  1. Mixing Pointing Mortar: Thoroughly mix cementitious and aggregate materials together before adding any water. Then mix again adding only enough water to produce a damp, unworkable mix which will retain its form when pressed into a ball. Maintain mortar in this dampened condition for 1-to-2 hours. Add remaining water in small portions until mortar of desired consistency is reached. Use mortar within thirty (30) minutes of final mixing; do not retemper or use partially hardened material.
- B. Colored Mortar: Produce mortar of color required by use of selected coloring agent. Mortar to match existing.
- C. Do not use admixtures of any kind in mortar, other than colorant.
- D. Mortar Proportions
  1. Pointing Mortar for Brick: One-part white Portland cement, 2 parts lime and 6 parts colored mortar aggregate. Add colored mortar pigment to product mortar colors required to match.
  2. Rebuilding Mortar: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification, Type O, with cementitious material content limited to Portland cement-lime and coloring agent.

- E. Exterior Face Brick Construction: Mortar mixes shall meet ASTM C 270, Type to match existing, cement/lime mortar. Colors of mortars shall use coloring agent made by Davis Colors, Lehigh Cement or approved equal. Match color by matching the sizes of aggregate, color to existing rather than with color agent to minimum uneven color fading.

- 1. Color of mortar must meet with Architect's approved sample and mock-up panel.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where masonry restoration and cleaning are to be performed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected by the Contractor in a manner acceptable to the Architect.

#### 3.2 PROTECTION

- A. General: Comply with recommendations of manufacturers of chemical cleaners for protecting building surfaces against damage from exposure to their products.
- B. Protect persons, motor vehicles, surrounding surfaces of building whose masonry surfaces are being restored, building site, and surrounding buildings from injury resulting from masonry restoration work.
  - 1. Prevent chemical cleaning solutions from coming into contact with pedestrians, motor vehicles, landscaping, buildings and other surfaces which could be injured by such contact.
  - 2. Do not clean masonry during winds of sufficient force to spread cleaning solutions to unprotected surfaces.
  - 3. Dispose of run-off from cleaning operations by legal means and in manner which prevents soil erosion, undermining of paving and foundations, damage to landscaping, and water penetration into building interiors.
  - 4. Erect temporary protection covers over pedestrian walkways and at points of entrance and exit for persons and vehicles which must remain in operation during course of masonry restoration work.
- C. Protect glass, unpainted metal trim and polished stone from contact with acidic chemical cleaners by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape. Apply masking agent to comply with manufacturer's recommendations. Do not apply liquid masking agent to painted or porous surfaces.

#### 3.3 CLEANING EXISTING MASONRY, GENERAL

- A. Proceed with cleaning in an orderly manner; work from top to bottom of each scaffold width and from one end of each elevation to the other.
- B. Use only those cleaning methods indicated for each masonry material and location.
- C. Perform each cleaning method indicated in a manner which results in uniform coverage of all surfaces, including corners, moldings, interstices and which produces an even effect without streaking or damage to masonry surfaces.
- D. Rinse off chemical residue and soil by working upwards from bottom to top of each treated area at each stage or scaffold setting.

- E. Water Application Methods: Prior to chemical cleaning, apply water application to mock-ups by spray at various pressures to determine if masonry surfaces can be cleaned adequately and to the Architect's satisfaction in this manner. If water applications prove ineffective, proceed with chemical cleaners.
- F. Chemical Cleaner Application Methods: Apply chemical cleaners to masonry surfaces to comply with chemical manufacturer's recommendations. Do not allow chemicals to remain on surface for periods longer than that indicated or recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. For hard to remove dirt or grime, apply pre-wash cleaner prior to application of chemical cleaner; follow manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.4 PAINT REMOVAL

- A. Apply thick coating of paint remover to painted masonry with natural-fiber cleaning brush, deep-nap roller, or large paint brush.
- B. Allow paint remover to remain on surface for period recommended by manufacturer. Agitate periodically with stiff-fiber brush.
- C. Rinse with heated water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove chemicals and paint residue.
  - 1. The best combination of rinsing pressure and water volume is provided by masonry washing equipment generating 50-200 psi with a water flow rate of 6-8 gallons per minute delivered through a 15-45 degree fan spray tip. Equipment shall be adjustable to reduce water flow rate and rinsing pressure as required for controlled cleaning of more sensitive surfaces.

### 3.5 BRICK REMOVAL AND REBUILDING

- A. Brick Removal
  - 1. Carefully remove by hand any brick which are damaged, spalled or deteriorated. Cut out full units from joint to joint and in manner to permit replacement with full size units.
  - 2. Support and protect masonry indicated to remain which surrounds removal area.
  - 3. Salvage as many whole, undamaged bricks as possible.
  - 4. Remove mortar, loose particles and soil from salvaged brick by cleaning with brushes and water. Store brick for reuse.
  - 5. Clean remaining brick at edges of removal areas by removing mortar, dust, and loose debris in preparation for rebuilding.
- B. Brick Rebuilding
  - 1. Install new or salvaged brick to replace removed brick. Fit replacement units into bonding and coursing pattern of existing brick. If cutting is required use motor driven saw designed to cut masonry with clean, sharp unchipped edges.
  - 2. Lay replacement brick with completely filled bed, head and collar joints. Butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Wet clay brick which have ASTM C 67 initial rates of absorption (suction) of more than 30 grams per 30 sq. in. per minute. Use wetting methods which ensure that units are nearly saturated but surface dry when laid. Maintain joint width for replacement units to match existing.
  - 3. Tool exposed mortar joints in repaired areas to match joints of surrounding existing brickwork.

3.6 REPOINTING EXISTING MASONRY

A. Joint Raking

1. Rake out mortar from joints to depths equal to 2-1/2 times their widths but not less than 1/2" nor less than that required to expose sound, unweathered mortar.
2. Remove mortar from masonry surfaces within raked-out joints to provide reveals with square backs and to expose masonry for contact with pointing mortar. Brush, vacuum or flush joints to remove dirt and loose debris.
3. Do not spall edges of masonry units or widen joints. Replace any masonry units which become damaged.
  - a. Cut out old mortar by hand with chisel and mallet.
  - b. Power operated rotary hand saws and grinders will be permitted but only on specific written approval of Architect based on submission by Contractor of a satisfactory quality control program and demonstrated ability of operators to use tools without damage to masonry. Quality control program shall include provisions for supervising performance and preventing damage due to worker fatigue.

B. Joint Pointing

1. Rinse masonry joint surfaces with water to remove any dust and mortar particles. Time application of rinsing so that, at time of pointing, excess water has evaporated or run off, and joint surfaces are damp but free of standing water.
2. Apply first layer of pointing mortar to areas where existing mortar was removed to depths greater than surrounding areas. Apply in layers not greater than 3/8" until a uniform depth is formed. Compact each layer thoroughly and allow to become thumbprint-hard before applying next layer.
3. After joints have been filled to a uniform depth, place remaining pointing mortar in three (3) layers with each of first and second layers filling approximately 2/5 of joint depth and third layer the remaining 1/5. Fully compact each layer and allow to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer. Where existing bricks have rounded edges recess final layer slightly from face. Take care not to spread mortar over edges onto exposed masonry surfaces, or to featheredge mortar.
4. When mortar is thumbprint hard, tool joints to match original appearance of joints, unless otherwise indicated. Remove excess mortar from edge of joint by brushing.
5. Cure mortar by maintaining in a damp condition for not less than seventy-two (72) hours.
6. Where repointing work precedes cleaning of existing masonry allow mortar to harden not less than thirty (30) days before beginning cleaning work.

END OF SECTION 040120

SECTION 042113 - UNIT MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK /SUMMARY:

- A. Extent of each type of masonry work is indicated on drawings and schedule.

- B. This Section includes unit masonry assemblies consisting of the following:

- 1. Concrete unit masonry.
- 2. Brick masonry.
- 3. Concrete brick.
- 4. Mortar and grout.
- 5. Reinforcing steel.
- 6. Masonry joint reinforcement.
- 7. Ties and anchors
- 8. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.

- C. Related Sections include the following:

- 1. 033000 – Cast-In-Place Concrete
- 2. 051200 – Structural Steel
- 3. 062000 – Rough Carpentry
- 4. 072100 – Thermal Insulation
- 5. 072700 – Vapor-Perm Air Barrier Liquid Membrane
- 6. 076200 – Sheet Metal Flashing
- 7. 078413 – Firestops and Smoke seals
- 8. 079200 – Joint Sealers
- 9. 081113 – Steel Doors and Frames
- 10. 081416 – Wood Doors
- 11. 081743 – FRP Aluminum Hybrid Doors
- 12. 083324 – Roll Up Fire Counter Shutters
- 13. 085113 – Aluminum Windows

1.3 DEFINITIONS:

- A. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing horizontal joint reinforcing and reinforcing steel in grouted cells.
- B. Multi-Wythe Masonry: Masonry wall construction containing adjacent wythes of masonry with the same unit type without a cavity.
- C. Composite Masonry: Masonry wall construction containing adjacent wythes of masonry with different unit type without a cavity.
- D. Cavity Wall Masonry: Masonry wall construction containing adjacent wythes of masonry with different unit types separated with a continuous air space cavity in-between connected by metal ties.

- E. Structural Masonry: Masonry wall construction constructed to be the main supporting structure of other building components such as a floor or roof.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS:

- A. Provide structural unit masonry that develops indicated net-area compressive strengths ( $f'_m$ ) at 28 days.
- B. Determine net-area compressive strength ( $f'_m$ ) of masonry from average net-area compressive strengths of masonry units and mortar types (unit-strength method) according to Tables 1 and 2 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

1.5 SUBMITTALS:

- A. All Submittals shall be made in accordance with General Conditions Section.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data for each type of masonry unit, accessory, and other manufactured products, including certifications that each type complies with specified requirements.
- C. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings for the following:
  - 1. Masonry Units: Show sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of special shapes.
  - 2. Stone Trim Units: Show sizes, profiles, and locations of each stone trim unit required.
  - 3. Reinforcing Steel: Detail bending and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315, "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement". Show elevations of reinforced walls.
  - 4. Fabricated Flashing: Detail corner units, end-dam units, and other special applications.
  - 5. Self-Adhering Sheet Flashing & Waterproofing Membranes: Detail all proposed application conditions, Submit manufacturer's data for membrane, primers, sealants, adhesives and associated auxiliary materials. Prior to commencing the Work, submit manufacturer's complete set of standard details for waterproofing systems.
- D. Samples: Submit samples of the following materials:
  - 1. Unit masonry samples in small scale form showing full extent of colors and textures available for each type of exposed masonry unit required.
  - 2. Face brick, in the form of straps of five or more bricks. Include size variation data verifying that actual range of sizes for brick falls within ASTM C 216 dimension tolerances for brick where modular dimensioning is indicated.
  - 3. Colored masonry mortar samples showing full extent of colors available.
  - 4. Decorative concrete masonry unit samples for each type of exposed masonry unit required; include in each set the full range of exposed color and texture to be expected in completed work.
  - 5. Include size variation data verifying that actual range of sizes for brick falls within ASTM C 216 dimension tolerances for brick where modular dimensioning is indicated.
  - 6. Pigmented mortar. Make Samples using same sand and mortar ingredients to be used on Project. Label Samples to indicate types and amounts of pigments used. Show full extent of colors available.
  - 7. Weep vents in color to match mortar color.
  - 8. Accessories embedded in masonry.
- E. List of Materials Used in Constructing Mockups: List generic product names together with manufacturers, manufacturers' product names, model numbers, lot numbers, batch numbers, source of supply, and other information as required to identify materials used. Include mix proportions for mortar and grout and source of aggregates.
  - 1. Submittal is for information only. Neither receipt of list nor approval of mockup constitutes approval of deviations from the Contract Documents unless such deviations are specifically brought

to the attention of Architect and submission of materials in accordance with this section have been provided for review by the Architect and approved in writing.

- F. Material Certificates: Include statements of material properties indicating compliance with requirements including compliance with standards and type designations within standards. Provide for each type and size of the following:
1. Masonry units. Include material test reports substantiating compliance with requirements.
  2. Cementitious materials. Include brand, type, and name of manufacturer.
  3. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
  4. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
  5. Reinforcing bars.
  6. Joint reinforcement.
  7. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.
- G. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
1. Include test reports, per ASTM C 780, for mortar mixes required to comply with properties specification.
  2. Include test reports, per ASTM C 1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.
- H. Statement of Compressive Strength of Masonry: For each combination of masonry unit type and mortar type, provide statement of average net-area compressive strength of masonry units, mortar type, and resulting net-area compressive strength of masonry determined according to Tables 1 and 2 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
- I. Cold-Weather Procedures: Submit a detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with cold-weather requirements.
- J. Cleaning Procedures: Submit proposed procedures and materials for cleaning masonry work; including certification that cleaner will not adversely affect stone, gaskets, sealants, etc.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM C 1093 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
- B. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, through one source from a single manufacturer for each product required.
- C. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from a single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from one source or producer for each aggregate.
- D. Fire Performance Characteristics: Where indicated, provide materials and construction which are identical to those of assemblies whose fire resistance ratings have been determined per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency, by equivalent concrete masonry thickness, or by other means, as acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Field Constructed Mock-ups: Prior to installation of masonry work, erect sample wall panels to further verify selections made under sample submittals to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution, as well as for color and textural characteristics of masonry units and mortar, and to represent completed masonry work for qualities of appearance, materials, and construction; build mock-ups to comply with the following requirements:

1. Locate mock-ups on site in locations indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by the Architect.
2. Build mock-ups for each type of exposed masonry in sizes of approximately 6' long by 4' high by full thickness, including face and back-up wythes as well as all accessories including but not limited to insulation and horizontal and vertical reinforcement.
3. Include a sealant-filled joint at least 16 inches long in exterior wall mockups.
4. Include through-wall flashing; with a 12-inch length of flashing left exposed to view (omit masonry above half of flashing).
5. Include metal/wood studs, sheathing, veneer anchors, flashing, and weep holes in exterior masonry-veneer wall mockup, when applicable.
6. Where masonry is to match existing, erect panels adjacent and parallel to existing surface.
7. Clean one-half of exposed faces of mockups with masonry cleaner as indicated.
8. Approval of mockups is for construction of full assembly, color, texture, and blending of masonry units; relationship of mortar and sealant colors to masonry unit colors; tooling of joints; and aesthetic qualities of workmanship.
9. Protect mock-ups from the elements with weather resistant membrane.
10. Retain mock-ups during construction as standard for judging completed masonry work. When directed, demolish mock-ups and remove from site.
11. Pre-installation Conference to be after construction of mock-up but before proceeding with masonry work. Conduct pre-installation conference at Project Site.
12. Obtain Architect's acceptance of visual qualities of the mock-up before of start of masonry work.

C. Factory Control

1. The Architect reserves the right to visit the brick manufacturer's facility and review pre-sorting so that all brick falls within a color range acceptable to the Architect.
2. 4' x 4' mock-ups shall be constructed at the factory using the face brick specified. This mock-up, after approval of the Architect, shall become the quality control panel for the selected brick.
3. Prior to any shipment of the face brick from the factory, the Architect reserves the right to inspect the brick for the thoroughness of the pre-sorting and to reject any brick that, in his opinion, does not fall within acceptable color range.

1.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL:

A. Inspectors: Owner will engage qualified independent inspectors to perform inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas, as needed to perform inspections.

1. Place grout only after inspectors have verified compliance of grout spaces and grades, sizes, and locations of reinforcement.

B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections indicated below and prepare test reports:

1. Payment for these services will be made by Owner.
2. Retesting of materials failing to comply with specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
3. Refer to Specification Sections 01450 & 01451 for additional Special Inspection requirements.

C. Testing Frequency: One set of tests for each 5000 sq. ft. of wall area or portion thereof.

D. Clay Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, per ASTM C 67.



- E. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, per ASTM C 140.
- F. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix provided, per ASTM C 780. Test mortar for mortar air content and compressive strength.
- G. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix provided, per ASTM C 1019.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING:

- A. Deliver masonry materials and accessories to project in undamaged condition.
- B. Store and handle masonry units to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, temperature changes, contaminants, corrosion, or other causes.
- C. Store masonry units and cementitious material off the ground, on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If masonry units become wet, do not install until they are dry. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- D. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained, and contamination avoided.
- E. Store masonry accessories including metal items to prevent deterioration by corrosion and accumulation of dirt.
- F. Cold-applied elastomeric membranes should be stored in closed containers outdoors. Store membrane at temperature of 40°F and above to facilitate handling. Membrane contains petroleum solvents and are flammable; do not use near open flame. Store roll materials horizontally; store adhesives and primers at temperatures of 40°F and above to facilitate handling. Keep all solvents away from open flame or excessive heat.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS:

Protection of Work: During construction, cover top of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed structures when work is not in progress.

- 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides and hold cover securely in place.
  - 2. Where 1 wythe of multiwythe masonry walls is completed in advance of other wythes, secure cover a minimum of 24 inches down face next to unconstructed wythe and hold cover in place.
  - 3. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loading for at least 12 hours after building masonry walls or columns.
  - 4. Do not apply concentrated loads for at least 3 days after building masonry walls or columns.
- B. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, or soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
  - 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and mortar splatter by means of coverings spread on ground and over wall surface.
  - 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
  - 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings and wash down detergent.
  - 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
- C. Cold Weather Requirements:
  - 1. Do not lay masonry units which are wet or frozen. Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry

- damaged by frost or by freezing conditions.
  - 2. Remove any ice or snow formed on masonry bed by carefully applying heat until top surface is dry to the touch.
  - 3. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
- D. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40°F and above and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than 7 days after completing cleaning.
- E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

Perform the following construction procedures while masonry work is progressing. Temperature ranges indicated below apply to air temperatures existing at the time of installation except for grout. For grout, temperature ranges apply to anticipated minimum night temperatures. In heating mortar and grout materials, maintain mixing temperature selected within 10°F (6°C).

- 1. 40°F (4°C) to 32°F (0°C):
    - a. Mortar: Heat mixing water to produce mortar temperature between 40°F (4°C) and 120°F (49°C).
    - b. Grout: Follow normal masonry procedures.
  - 2. Do not heat water for mortar and grout to above 160°F (71°C).
- F. Protect completed masonry and masonry not being worked on in the following manner. Temperature ranges indicated apply to mean daily air temperatures except for grouted masonry. For grouted masonry, temperature ranges apply to anticipated minimum night temperatures.
- 1. 40°F (4°C) to 32°F (0°C):
    - a. Protect masonry from rain or snow for at least 24 hours by covering with weather-resistive membrane.
  - 2. 32°F (0°C) to 25°F (-4°C):
    - a. Completely cover masonry with weather-resistive membrane for at least 24 hours.
  - 3. 25°F (-4°C) to 20°F (-7°C):
    - a. Completely cover masonry with weather-resistive insulating blankets or similar protection for at least 24 hours, 48 hours for grouted masonry.
  - 4. 20°F (-7°C) and below:
    - a. Except as otherwise indicated, maintain masonry temperature above 32°F (0°C) for 24 hours using enclosures and supplementary heat, electric heating blankets, infrared lamps, or other methods proven to be satisfactory. For grouted masonry maintain heated enclosure to 40°F (4°C) for 48 hours.
- G. Coordination: Ensure installation continuity of the waterproofing membranes scheduled for installation throughout the scope of this section. Work shall be so scheduled as to provide a watertight seal at the end of each working day on the areas worked upon during the day.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

- a. All specific products indicated within this section are to establish a level of quality. Equivalency is permitted in accordance with General Municipal Law.

2.2 MASONRY UNITS, GENERAL:

- A. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to exceed tolerances and to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated in the standard. Do not use units where such defects, including dimensions that vary from specified dimensions by more than stated tolerances, will be exposed in the completed Work or will impair the quality of completed masonry.

2.3 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS(CMU):

- A. General: Comply with referenced standards and other requirements indicated below applicable to each form of concrete masonry unit required.
- B. Concrete Block: Provide units complying with characteristics indicated below for grade, type, face size, exposed face, and, under each form of block included, for weight classification.
  1. Size: Manufacturer's standard units with nominal face dimensions and thicknesses indicated on drawings.
  2. Type II, non-moisture controlled units.
- C. Hollow Load-Bearing Block: ASTM C 90 and as follows:
  1. Weight Classification: Lightweight
  2. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net- area compressive strength of 1900 psi.
  3. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch less than nominal dimensions.
  4. All components (aggregate, cement, etc.) of CMU must be harvested within 500 miles of project site. (Required for LEED Projects only)
  5. CMU to contain 20% post-industrial recycled content, by weight. (Required for LEED Projects only)
- D. Concrete Building Brick: ASTM C 55.
  1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net- area compressive strength of 2500 psi.
  2. Weight Classification: Medium weight.
  3. Size (Actual Dimensions): 3-5/8 inches wide by 3-5/8 inches high by 7-5/8 inches long.
- E. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows: Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
  1. **All interior outside corners of CMUs shall have a 5/8" to 1" manufactured bullnosed edge. This requirement super cedes any details which may or may not be provided in the Contract Documents. All masonry bids shall include the cost of all necessary bullnose materials, at no additional costs to the Owner.**

2.4 VENEER BLOCK:

- A. General: Comply with referenced standards and other requirements indicated below applicable to each form of concrete masonry unit required.
  - 1. Provide special shapes where required for lintels, corners, jambs, sash, control joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
  - 2. Provide square-edged units for outside corners, except where indicated as bullnose.
  - 3. Provide corner units where applicable and available.
- B. Concrete Block: Provide units complying with characteristics indicated below for grade, type, face size, exposed face, and, under each form of block included, for weight classification.
  - 1. Types included but not limited to the following:
    - a. Split-face
    - b. Split-face center score
    - c. Smooth-cast
    - d. Split Rib
    - e. Or as indicated on the drawings.
- C. Size: Manufacturer's standard units with nominal face dimensions of 16" or 18" long x 8" high x 4" thick (15-5/8" or 17-5/8" x 7- 5/8" x 3-5/8" actual).
- D. Type I, moisture-controlled units.
- E. Exposed Faces: Manufacturer's standard color and texture as selected by Architect unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Where special finishes are indicated, provide units with exposed faces of the following general description matching color and texture of Architect's samples.
  - 2. Where special patterns are indicated, provide units with exposed faces matching color, texture, and pattern of Architect's samples.

2.5 BRICK MADE FROM CLAY OR SHALE:

- A. General: Comply with referenced standards and other requirements indicated below applicable to each form of brick required.
  - 1. Manufacturer: Hebron Brick Company, color "Slate Gray."
  - 2. Size: Unless otherwise indicated, provide 3-5/8" deep x 2-1/4" high x 11-5/8" long Norman bricks.
    - 1. Manufacturer: Hebron Brick Company, color "Slate Gray."
    - 2. Size: Provide bricks manufactured to the following actual dimensions:
      - a. Standard Modular: 2-1/4" x 3-5/8" x 7-5/8".
      - b. Or as indicated on the drawings. Size: Unless otherwise indicated, provide 3-5/8" deep x 2-1/4" high x 11-5/8" long Norman bricks.
    - 3. Provide special molded shapes where indicated and for application requiring brick of form, size, and finish on exposed surfaces which cannot be produced from standard brick sizes

bysawing.

4. For sills, caps, and similar applications resulting in exposure of brick surfaces which otherwise would be concealed from view, provide uncured or unfrogged units with all exposed surfaces finished.

B. Facing Brick: ASTM C 216, and as follows:

1. Grade SW.
2. Type FBS (normal size and color variations).
3. Compressive Strength: 4,500 psi, minimum, per ASTM C 67.
4. Application: Use where brick is exposed, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Texture and Color: As indicated on drawings or as selected by Architect.

C. Building (Common Brick): ASTM C 62, and as follows:

1. Grade MW except Grade SW where indicated by ASTM C 62 grade requirements for applicable weathering index and exposure.
2. Application: Use where brick is indicated for concealed locations.

2.6 FIRE BRICK MASONRY:

- A. General: Comply with referenced standards and other requirements indicated below applicable to each form.
- B. Fire Brick: Provide units complying with characteristics indicated below for classification, P.C.E. rating, chemical percentage analysis, modulus of rupture, cold crushing P.S.I., porosity % and bulk density.

1. Classification: ASTM C-27-98 (2013), medium duty. 2.

P.C.E.: Cone 29 3018 F.

3. Chemical Analysis:
  - a. Silica: 59.90
  - b. Alumina: 32.83
  - c. Iron Oxide: 1.97
  - d. Titanium Oxide: 1.48
  - e. Calcium Oxide: .57
  - f. Magnesium Oxide: .89
  - g. Sodium Oxide: .49
  - h. Potassium Oxide: 1.80
4. Modulus of Rupture: 1000–1200 PSI
5. Cold Crushing: 3500-4500 PSI
6. Apparent Porosity: 16-19%
7. Bulk Density: 130-134 lbs/ft

2.7 Method of Manufacturer: Dry Press MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS:

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including coloring pigments, air entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water repellent agents, anti-freeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated and approved by Architect.

1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
  2. Limit cementitious materials in mortar to Portland cement and lime.
  3. Limit cementitious materials in mortar for exterior and reinforced masonry to Portland cement and lime.
  4. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
  5. All new face brick mortars shall match existing face brick mortars where restoration work is required, samples of which shall be prepared and thoroughly tested for color, density, and uniformity before submitting samples for the approval of the Architect.
- B. Option 1 – Pre-blended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a pre-blended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to project site.
- C. Option 2 – Manual Blend: Combine and thoroughly mix cementitious materials, water, and aggregates in a mechanical batch mixer; comply with referenced ASTM standards for mixing time and water content.
- D. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, “Standard Specification for Mortar for Unit”, Masonry Proportion Specification, for types of mortar required unless otherwise indicated.
1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type M.
  2. For reinforced CMU masonry, use Type S.
  3. For brick masonry walls above grade, use Type N.
  4. For exterior, above-grade, load-bearing and non-load-bearing CMU walls and parapet walls; for interior load-bearing CMU walls; for interior non-load-bearing partitions; and for other applications where another type is not indicated, use Type S.
  5. Analysis of the existing mortar to remain is required within the contract if the type required is not clear.
- E. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, “Standard Specification for Portland Cement”, Type I, except Type III, may be used for cold weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce required mortar color.
1. For colored pigmented mortars, use premixed colored masonry cements of formulation required to produce color indicated, or, if not indicated, as selected from manufacturer's standard formulations by Architect.
  2. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, masonry cements which may be incorporated in the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. **"Atlas Custom Color Masonry Cement"**; Lehigh Portland Cement Company.
    - b. **"Glen-Gery Color Mortar Blend"**; Glen-Gery Corporation.
    - c. **"Flamingo Color Masonry Cement"**; The Riverton Corporation.
- F. For Manually Blended Colored Mortar Use Colored Mortar Pigments (for use with veneer brick and veneer block): Use pigments complying with ASTM C979, “Standard Specification for Pigments for Integrally Colored Concrete”. Select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not exceed pigment to cement ratio of 1 to 10 by weight. Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes. Use only pigments with record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortars.
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, colored mortar pigments which may be incorporated in the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. **"SGS Mortar Colors"**, Solomon Grind-Chem Services, Inc.

- b. **"True Tone Mortar Colors"**; Davis Colors, a subsidiary of Rockwood Industries, Inc.
  - c. **"Bayferrox Iron Oxide Pigments"**; Bayer Corporation, Industrial Chemical Division.
- G. Water: Clean and potable.
- H. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, "Standard Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes", Type S.
- I. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of Portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III, and hydrated lime complying with ASTM C 207, Type S.
- J. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144, "Standard Specification for Aggregates for Masonry Mortar".
- 1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
  - 2. For joints less than ¼ inch thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 sieve.
  - 3. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
- K. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404, "Standard Specification for Aggregates for Masonry Grout".
- L. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476, "Standard Specification for Grout for Masonry", for grout for use in construction of reinforced and non-reinforced unit masonry. (Refer to Table 1 Conventional Grout Proportions by Volume. Use grout of consistency indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of consistency (fine or coarse) at time of placement which will completely fill all spaces intended to receive grout. Comply with Table 1.15.1 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.

**TABLE 1 Conventional Grout Proportions by Volume**

Type	Parts by Volume of Aggregate, Portland Cement or Hydrated Lime or Lime Meas- ured in a Damp, Loose Condition Blended Cement Putty	Parts by Volume of Aggregate, Portland Cement or Hydrated Lime or Lime Meas- ured in a Damp, Loose Condition Blended Cement Putty	Fine	Coarse
Fine grout	1	0-1/10	2-1/4 -3 times the sum of the volumes of the cementi- tious materials	...
Coarse grout	1	0-1/10	2-1/4 -3 times the sum of the volumes of the cementitious materials	1-2 times the sum of the volumes of the cementitious materials

- 1. Use fine grout in grout spaces less than 2" in horizontal direction unless otherwise indicated.
- 2. Use coarse grout in grout spaces 2" or more in least horizontal dimension unless otherwise indicated.
- 3. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.

4. The compressive strength of the grout shall match the compressive strength of the masonry f'm, but not less than 2,000 psi. The compressive strength of grout so specified should be determined according to ASTM C1019 (UBC 21-18).
- A. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
5. Available Products:
  - a. Addiment Incorporated: **Mortar Kick**.
  - b. Euclid Chemical Compnay; **Accelguard 80**.
  - c. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W.R. Grace & Co., **Morset**.
  - d. Sonneborn, division of ChemRex; **Trimix-NCA**.

## 2.8 FIRE WALLS:

- A. General: Comply with the referenced standards and other requirements indicated below as applicable to each type of fire wall construction required. Provide masonry units and construction as required by Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc.; Design as indicated on the Contract Drawings.
  1. If no specific designs are represented on the drawings, the following designs shall be utilized:
    - a. 3-Hour Firewall – UL Design No. U904.
    - b. 2-Hour Firewall – UL Design No. U905 or UL Design No. U906.
- B. Provide complete fire wall assembly submittals independent of typical masonry submittals.
  1. Only eligible manufacturers with products bearing the UL mark will be accepted for use in the construction of fire walls.

## 2.9 JOINT REINFORCEMENT, TIES, AND ANCHORING DEVICES:

- A. Materials: Comply with requirements indicated below for basic materials and with requirements indicated under each form of joint reinforcement, tie, and anchor for size and other characteristics.
  1. Zinc-Coated (mill galvanized) Steel Wire: ASTM A 82 for uncoated wire and with ASTM A 641 for zinc coating of class indicated below:
    - a. Class 1: 0.40 oz. per square foot of wire surface.
    - b. Application: Use for masonry not exposed to exterior or earth.
  2. Hot-Dip Galvanized Steel Wire: ASTM A 82 for uncoated wire and with ASTM A 153 for zinc coating applied after prefabrication into units.
    - a. Class B-2: 1.5 oz. per square foot of wire surface.
    - b. Application: Use for all masonry back-up exposed to exterior.
  3. Uncoated Steel Reinforcing Bars: Of size and locations as indicated on drawings, ASTM A615, Grade 60, deformed.
  4. Stainless Steel Reinforcing Bars: AISI Type 304, ASTM A580, for historical masonry



reconstruction projects.

- B. Joint Reinforcement: Reinforcement to conform to Standard Specification ASTM A951 & ACI/ASCE 530 (Building Code Requirements for Masonry Structures). Provide welded-wire units prefabricated with deformed continuous side rods and plain cross rods into straight lengths of not less than 10 feet with prefabricated corner and tee units, and complying with requirements indicated below:
1. Width: Fabricate joint reinforcement in units with widths of approximately 2" less than nominal width of walls and partitions as required to provide mortar coverage of not less than 5/8" on joint faces exposed to exterior and 1/2" elsewhere.
  2. Wire (Carbon Steel): Pre-fabricated construction from cold-drawn steel wire conforming to ASTM A 82: Tensile Strength: 80,000 psi. Yield Point: 70,000 psi, minimum.
  3. Wire Diameter for Cross & Side Rods: Provide standard weight 9 gauge (.148"), typical.
- C. Single-Wythe Masonry: Provide type as follows with single pair of side rods:
- a. Provide Hohmann & Barnard, Inc. **#220 Ladder Mesh Reinforcement** - Ladder design with perpendicular cross rods spaced not more than 16" o.c.
  - b. Finish: Provide mill galvanized, per ASTM A 641.
- D. Multi-Wythe Masonry: Provide type as follows:
- a. Provide Hohmann & Barnard, Inc. **#120 Ladder Mesh Reinforcement** - Ladder design with perpendicular cross rods spaced not more than 16" o.c.
  - b. Finish: Provide mill galvanized, per ASTM A 641.
- E. Masonry Joint Reinforcement for Cavity-Wall Masonry:
- a. Provide Hohmann & Barnard, Inc. **# 270-ML Ladder Adjustable Eye- Wire Reinforcement** - Ladder design with perpendicular cross rods spaced not more than 16" o.c., Cross rods to be welded at 16" o.c; first cross rods to be welded 12" in from each end to allow for lap splices.
  - b. Finish: Provide hot-dip galvanized, after fabrication, per ASTM A 153.
- F. Steel Stud Masonry Anchor System: (Where required) Provide **X-Seal Anchor System with Byna-Lock Wire Ties**, as manufactured by Hohmann & Barnard, Inc., 30 Rasons Court, Hauppauge, New York, 11788; tel (800) 645-0616; fax (631) 234-0683. website: www.h-b.com.
- G. Reinforce each course of block cut back for fire extinguisher cabinets, electrical boxes and toilet accessory type recessed items. Mortar 9 gauge reinforcing wire in joints, that is 24-inches longer than recessed opening width on both sides.
- H. All steel reinforcement to contain minimum 90 percent combined post-consumer and post-industrial recycled content. (Required for LEED Projects only)

## 2.10 TIES AND ANCHORS

- A. Materials: Provide ties, reinforcing and anchors, specified in subsequent articles, made from materials that comply with this article, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Carbon Steel Wire: ASTM A 82.
  2. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82; with ASTM A 153, Class B-2 coating.

3. Products meeting specified products quantities by Hohmann & Barnard, Inc. or Heckmann Building Products Inc.
  4. Anchors and ties shall be 16 inches on center each way.
  5. Horizontal reinforcing shall be 16 inches on center.
- B. Joint Stabilizing Anchors: Provide Hohmann & Barnard, Inc., **Slip- Set™ Stabilizer** joint stabilizing anchors at veneer control joints and block interior wall, running wall, corner, "Tee", and "Ell" joints.
1. Provide joint stabilizing anchors at connection of new masonry to existing masonry or concrete walls.
  2. Refer to Structural Drawings for additional requirements.
- C. Rigid Anchors: Provide Hohmann & Barnard, Inc., **#344 - Rigid Partition Anchor**, Z-Type bent steel shape 1-1/2 inches wide by 1/4 inch thick by 24 inches long or length required, with ends turned up 2 inches or with cross pins. (Rigid anchors can be used to connect T-intersections of CMU shear walls in lieu of masonry bonding or bond beams. (Used at T-intersections of other CMU walls and piers where indicated on drawings, although masonry bonding and T-shaped masonry joint reinforcement may be used.)
1. Corrosion Protection: Hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M. (Rigid anchors may not be fully embedded in mortar or grout and, therefore, require a coating for corrosion protection.)
- D. Mesh Wall Ties: Provide Hohmann & Barnard, Inc., **MWT - Mesh Wall Tie**, 1/2" square x 16-gauge, by width & length required; hot dip galvanized to ASTM A153 B2 finish.
- E. Corrugated Wall Ties: Provide Hohmann & Barnard, Inc., **CWT - Corrugated Wall Tie**, 7" long x 16-gauge, or length as required; hot dip galvanized to ASTM A153 B2 finish.
- F. Beam Strap Anchors: Provide Hohmann & Barnard, Inc., **#364 Corrugated Gripstay Anchor** 1-1/4 inch x 14 gauge, by length required; hot dip galvanized to ASTM A153 B2 finish.
- G. Breakaway Fire Wall Anchors: Provide Heckmann Building Products, **#134 Channel Slot Corrugated Anchor** for masonry to structural steel beams and **#196 Corrugated Notch Column Anchor** for masonry to structural steel columns, 1-1/4 inch x 16 gauge, by length required; Zinc Alloy 710.
- H. Masonry Column Anchors: Provide Hohmann & Barnard, Inc., **#353L - Column Anchor**, 1-1/4 inch x 12 gauge, by length required; hot dip galvanized to ASTM A153 B2 finish or Hohmann & Barnard, Inc., **#354- Notched Column Anchor (Corrugated Type)**, 1-1/2 inch x 12 gauge, by length required; hot dip galvanized to ASTM A153 B2 finish.
- I. Partition Top Anchors: Provide Hohmann & Barnard, Inc., **PTA Series Anchors - PTA 422**, 12-gauge steel plate; hot dip galvanized to ASTM A153 B2 finish.
- J. Adjustable Masonry-Veneer Anchors:
1. General: Provide anchors that allow vertical adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall, for attachment over sheathing to wood or metal studs, and as follows:
  2. Screw-Attached, Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a wire tie and a metal anchor section.
    - a. Provide Hohmann & Barnard, Inc., **HB-200/DA-213 Adjustable Veneer Anchor**, with two stainless steel fasteners #12 diameter each.

## 2.11 MISCELLANEOUS ANCHORS

- A. Anchor Bolts: L-shaped steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A; with ASTM A 563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers; hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153, Class C; of dimensions indicated.
- B. Wedge Anchors: Anchors shall meet the physical requirements of Federal Specification A-A-1923A, Type 4. Anchors shall be non-bottom bearing type with a single piece steel expansion clip providing 360-degree contact with the base material and shall not require oversized holes for installation. Carbon steel anchors shall have an electroplated zinc finish or shall be mechanically galvanized in accordance with ASTM B695, Class 55, Type 1, as appropriate. Stainless steel anchors shall be type 303, 304 or 316. Anchors shall have an evaluation report issued by ICC-ES and have been tested in accordance with ICC-ES AC01 for all mandatory tests and including the following:
  - 1. Seismic tension & shear
  - 2. Combination of tension and shear loads
  - 3. Critical and minimum edge distance

Unless otherwise noted, wedge anchors shall be **"Wedge-All" Wedge Anchors** by Simpson Strong-Tie (ICC-ES ESR-1396).

- C. Sleeve Anchors: Anchors shall meet the physical requirements of Federal Specification A-A-1922A. Anchors shall be non-bottom bearing type with a single piece steel expansion sleeve providing 360-degree contact with the base material and shall not require oversized holes for installation. Carbon steel anchors shall have an electroplated zinc finish. Stainless steel anchors shall be type 304. Anchors shall have been tested in accordance with ICC-ES AC01 for the following:
- D.
  - 1. Static Loads
  - 2. Critical and minimum edge distance and spacing

Unless otherwise noted, sleeve anchors shall be **"Sleeve-All" Sleeve Anchors** by Simpson Strong-Tie.

- E. Post-installed Veneer Anchors For Reconstruction Work: Provide chemical anchors, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in solid or grouted unit masonry and equal to four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - 1. Corrosion Protection: Stainless-steel components complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 for bolts and nuts; ASTM A 666 or ASTM A 276, Type 304 or 316, for anchors.

## 2.12 CONCEALED FLASHING MATERIALS:

- A. Thru Wall Flashing Membrane (where so noted on the drawings):
  - 1. Through-wall Flashing Membrane (Self-Adhering) shall be **Blueskin TWF**, an SBS modified bitumen, self-adhering sheet membrane complete with a yellow engineered thermoplastic film; as manufactured by Henry Company, 909 North Sepulveda Blvd. Suite 650, El Segundo, CA, 90245; tel. (800) 598-7663; email: techservices@henry.com. Provide pre-fabricated inside & outside corners and end dams mitered and fully adhered, including **Stainless Steel 3" Drip Plate** and all required bonding accessories as standard to Base Bid. Provide pre-formed drip plate inside and outside corners with smooth uninterrupted hemmed drip edge.

Membrane shall have the following physical properties:

- a. Membrane Thickness: 0.0394 inches (40 mils),
- b. Film Thickness: 4.0 mils,
- c. Flow (ASTM D5147): Pass @ 212 degrees F,
- d. Puncture Resistance: 134 lbf to ASTM E 154,
- e. Tensile Strength (film): 5000 psi minimum ASTM D 882,
- f. Tear Resistance: 45lbs.-MD, 17lbs.-CD to ASTM D1004,
- g. Low temperature flexibility: -22 degrees F to CGSB37-GP-56M

- B. Sheet Metal Counter Flashing (where so noted on the drawings): Fabricated from the following metal complying with requirements specified in Division 7 Section "Flashing and Sheet Metal" and below:

1. Copper: 7 oz. weight copper fabric flashing as manufactured by York for fully concealed flashing, and 16 oz. weight copper for cap flashing. Provide copper flashing where sloped glazing occurs.
2. At parapet cap stones use 16 oz. copper dove-tail flashing manufactured by Cheney Flashing Company.
3. Fabricate through-wall metal flashings with deformation in both directions for integral mechanical mortar bond.
4. Solder and Sealants for Sheet Metal Flashings: As specified in Division 7 Section "Flashing and Sheet Metal".

#### 2.13 TRANSITION MEMBRANES: (where so noted on the drawings)

- A. Primary sheet air/vapor barrier membrane shall be **Blueskin** SA, an SBS modified bitumen, self-adhering sheet membrane complete with a blue engineered thermoplastic film; as manufactured by Henry Company, 909 North Sepulveda Blvd. Suite 650, El Segundo, CA, 90245; tel. (800) 598-7663; email: techservices@henry.com.
- B. Primer: Primer for self-adhering membranes at temperatures above 25°F shall be Aquatac Primer manufactured by Henry, a polymer emulsion based adhesive, quick setting, having the following physical properties:
1. Color: Aqua.
  2. Weight: 8.7 lbs/gal.
  3. Solids by weight: 53%.
  4. Water based, no solvent odors.
  5. Drying time (initial set): 30 minutes at 50% RH and 70°F.

#### 2.14 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES:

- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene, urethane or PVC.
- B. Preformed Control Joint Strips: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D 2000, Designation M2AA-805 or PVC, complying with ASTM D 2287, Type PVC-65406 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.
- C. Bond Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated, organic roofing felt complying with ASTM D 226, Type I

- (No. 15 asphalt felt).
- D. Control Joint Block Shear Connector: Provide sash block either side of control joint and insert Hohmann & Barnard, Inc. **RS Series - Rubber Control Joint** in joint fullheight.
- E. Control Joint Foam (Mortar Excluding) Filler: Provide Hohmann & Barnard, Inc., **NS - Closed Cell Neoprene Sponge** expansion joint in veneer control joints held back for bond breaker and sealant. Apply sealant at cavity face of block prior to applying vapor barrier to make building airtight.
1. Compressible Control Joint Foam Filler: Provide Hohmann & Barnard, Inc., **NS - Closed Cell Neoprene Sponge** with adhesive backing under shelf angles to allow for vertical veneer movement. Hold back for sealant and bond breaker.
- F. Weepholes: Provide the following for weepholes:
1. Full Head Joint Weep Holes: Provide a full height open cell weep hole at base of wall above flashing and above steel lintels provided with thru-wall flashing.
2. Weep Vents (Top of Wall): Available Products; subject to compliance with requirements, weephole/ventilators which shall be incorporated in the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- a. "Hohmann and Barnard" No. 343, No. 343W Louvered Weep Hole. For use with Standard white and grey mortar.
- b. "Hohmann and Barnard" No. QV-Quadrovent. For use with colored mortars. Color as selected by Architect.
- G. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from high density polyethylene strands (1" x 10" x 60") that will not degrade within the wall cavity; 90% open mesh weave.
1. Provide the following configuration:
- a. Strips, full-depth of cavity and 10 inches high, with dovetail- shaped notches 7 inches deep that prevent mesh from being clogged with mortar droppings.
2. Products:
- a. Mortar Net USA, Ltd.; "Mortar Net"
- b. Hohmann and Barnard; "Mortar Trap"
- H. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry unit cells with loops for holding reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from 0.142-inch steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Provide units with either two loops or four loops as needed for number of bars indicated.
1. Available Products:
- a. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; #RB or #RB-Twin Rebar Positioner.
- b. Heckmann Building Products Inc.; No. 376 Rebar Positioner.
- c. Wire-Bond; O-Ring or Double O-Ring Rebar Positioner.
- d.
- I. Within Expansion Joint at Face Brick: Manufacturer's standard preformed, pre-compressed, open-cell polyurethane foam sealant impregnated with a water based, non-drying polymer modified acrylic water repellent. Provide "Seismic Colorseal" installed to twenty-five percent compression, as manufactured by Emseal or approved equal.

1. Properties: Permanently elastic, mildew resistant, non-migratory, non-staining, and compatible with joint substrates and other joint sealants. Density: 8.4 to 9.1 lb./cu. ft.

2.15 INSULATION:

A. Cavity wall closed cell expanded polystyrene insulation as indicated on drawings and specified in related sections. Refer to Specification Section 07219. Thickness as indicated on drawings.

1. Cavity wall assembly will utilize continuous rigid board cavity insulation adhered to CMU with all joints and penetrations sealed with spray foam sealant.

2.16 MASONRY CLEANERS:

A. Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard strength general purpose cleaner designed for new masonry surfaces of type indicated; composed of blended organic and inorganic acids combined with special wetting systems and inhibitors; expressly approved for intended use by manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, a product which may be used to clean unit masonry surfaces includes, but is not limited to, the following:

a. "Sure Klean" No. 600 Detergent; ProSoCo, Inc

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION:

A. Contractor shall examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.

1. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing any conditions requiring correction prior to performance of work.

2. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.

3. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.

B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

D. Commencement of installation indicates acceptance of conditions provided.

E. Discrepancies: In the event of discrepancy, immediately notify the Architect in writing. Do not proceed with installation in areas of discrepancy until all such discrepancies have been fully resolved. Starting of work by the Contractor means acceptance by the Contractor of the substrate.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL:

A. Do not wet concrete masonry units.

B. Cleaning Reinforcing: Before placing, remove loose rust, ice, and other coatings from reinforcing.

- C. Thickness: Build cavity and composite walls, and other masonry construction to the full thickness shown. Build single-wythe walls (if any) to the actual thickness of the masonry units, using units of nominal thickness indicated.
  - 1. Build chases and recesses as shown or required for the work of other trades. Provide not less than 8" of masonry between chase or recess and jamb of openings and between adjacent chases and recesses.
  - 2. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completion of masonry work. After installation of equipment, complete masonry work to match work immediately adjacent to the opening.
  - 3. Cut masonry units using motor-driven saws to provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Cut units as required to provide continuous pattern and to fit adjoining work. Use full-size units without cutting where possible.
- D. Matching Existing Masonry Work: Match coursing, bonding, color, and texture of new masonry work with existing work unless otherwise indicated or if there is a unit size different or joint thickness variation. Tooth-in new masonry when tying into existing unless otherwise indicated on the drawings.
- E. Tuck Pointing: Mortar shall be pre-hydrated. The specified ingredients shall be mixed with only enough water to produce a damp mass of such consistency that it will retain its form when pressed
- F. Select and arrange units for exposed brick unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed unless otherwise specifically indicated on documents.

### 3.3 CONSTRUCTION TOLERANCES:

- A. Comply with construction tolerances in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 and with the following:
- B. Variation from Plumb: For vertical lines and surfaces of columns, walls, and arises, do not exceed 1/4" in 10", or 3/8" in a story height not to exceed 20', nor 1/2" in 40' or more. For external corners, expansion joints, control joints, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed 1/4" in any story or 20' maximum, or 1/2" in 40' or more. For vertical alignment of head joints, do not exceed plus or minus 1/4" in 10', 1/2" maximum.
- C. Variation from Level: For bed joints and lines of exposed lintels, sills, parapets, horizontal grooves, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed 1/4" in any bay or 20' maximum, nor 1/2" in 40' or more. For top surface of bearing walls, do not exceed 1/8" between adjacent floor elements in 10' or 1/16" within width of a single unit.
- D. Variation in Cross-Sectional Dimensions: For columns and thickness of walls, from dimensions shown, do not exceed minus 1/4" nor plus 1/2".
- E. Variation In Mortar Joint Thickness:
  - 1. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch. Do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch.
  - 2. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch. Do not vary from adjacent bed-joint and head-joint thicknesses by more than 1/8 inch.
- F. Variation In Face Dimensions: For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/16 inch except due to warpage of masonry units within tolerances specified for warpage of units.
- G. Variation In Alignment: For exposed bed joints and head joints of stacked bond, do not vary from a straight line by more than 1/16 inch from one masonry unit to the next.
- H.

### 3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS:

- A. Layout walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint widths and to accurately locate openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid the use of less-than-half size units at corners, jambs, and, wherever possible, at other locations.
- B. Lay-up walls to comply with specified construction tolerances, with courses accurately spaced and coordinated with other work.
- C. Pattern Bond: Lay exposed masonry in the bond pattern shown, or, if not shown, lay in running bond with vertical joint in each course centered on units in courses above and below. Lay concealed masonry with all units in a wythe in running bond or bonded by lapping not less than 2". Bond and interlock each course of each wythe at corners. Do not use units with less than nominal 4" horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- D. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by racking back ½-unit length in each course; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.
- E. Built-in Work: As the work progresses, build-in items specified under this and other sections of these specifications. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
  - 1. Fill space between hollow metal frames and masonry solidly with mortar unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath, wire mesh, or plastic mesh in the joint below and rod mortar or grout into core.
  - 3. Fill cores in hollow concrete masonry units with grout 3 courses (24") under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Build non-load-bearing interior partitions full height of story to within 1" of underside of solid floor or roof structure above, unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate this work with all required fire-stopping requirements.
  - 1. Install compressible filler in joint between top of partition and underside of structure above.
  - 2. Fasten partition top anchors to structure above and build into top of partition. Grout cells of CMUs solidly around plastic tubes of anchors and push tubes down into grout to provide 1/2-inch clearance between end of anchor rod and end of tube. Space anchors 48 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. At fire-rated partitions, treat joint between top of partition and underside of structure above to comply with Division 7 Section "Fire- Resistive Joint Systems."
- G. Intersecting and Abutting Walls: Unless vertical expansion or control joints are shown at juncture, provide same type of bonding specified for structural bonding between wythes
  - 1. Provide continuity with horizontal joint reinforcement using prefabricated "T" units.
  - 2. If construction sequence does not allow simultaneous construction of intersecting or abutting walls, provide mesh wall ties @ 16" o.c. vertical install in initial wall and leave hanging out for incorporation into secondary wall.
- H. Built-In Work
  - 1. As the work progresses, build in items specified under this and other Sections of these specifications. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
  - 2. Mortar in door frames, access doors, louvers and other metal items embedded or built into masonry work solidly with mortar as the masonry units are laid up.
  - 3. Grout under lintels, bearing plates, and steel bearing on masonry with solid bed grout.
  - 4. Sleeves, pipes, ducts and all other items which pass through masonry walls shall be caulked with interior grade sealant meeting requirements of Section 079200, so as to be airtight and prevent air leakage. Refer to Section 078413 for packing of voids in rated masonry walls.
  - 5. Fill vertical cells of masonry units solid with grout which have anchoring, reinforcing rods, supporting or hanging devices embedded in the cell including stone anchors and window or



curtain wall anchors.

6. Fill vertical cells of masonry units solid with mortar on each side of door frames to sixteen (16) inches beyond.
7. Unless otherwise noted, fill vertical cells of masonry units solid with grout which are below steel bearing plates, steel beams, and ends of lintels, to eight (8) inches beyond bearing and from floor to bearing.
8. Place wire mesh in horizontal joint below masonry unit cells to be filled with mortar, to prevent mortar from dropping into unfilled cells below.
9. Masonry indicated as being reinforced shall have all voids filled solid with grout. Grout shall be consolidated in place by vibration or other methods which insure complete filling of cells. When the least clear dimension of the grouted cell is less than two (2) inches, the maximum height of grout pour shall not exceed twelve (12) inches. When the least clear dimension is two (2) inches or more, maximum height of grout pour shall not exceed forty-eight (48) inches. When grouting is stopped for one (1) hour or longer, the grout pour shall be stopped 1-1/2" below the top of a masonry unit. Vertical bar reinforcing shall be accurately placed and held in position while being grouted and shall be in place before grouting starts. All such reinforcing shall have a minimum clear cover of 5/8". Lap all bars a minimum of forty (40) bar diameters and provide steel spacer ties (not to exceed 192 bar diameter) to secure and position all vertical steel and prevent displacement during grouting. Provide continuous horizontal reinforcement embedded in mortar joints every second course.

I. Cutting and Patching

1. All exposed masonry which requires cutting or fitting shall be cut accurately to size with motorized carborundum or diamond saw, producing cut edges.
2. Do not saw cut any masonry openings in face brick construction without Architect's approval and after a procedure has been reviewed and approved.
3. Holes made in exposed masonry units for attachment of handrail brackets and similar items shall be neatly drilled to proper size.
4. All masonry which requires patching in exposed work, if approved by Architect, shall be patched neatly with mortar to match appearance of masonry as closely as possible and to the Architect's satisfaction. Rake back joints and use pointing mortar to match as required.

3.5 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING:

- A. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joint; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and place units. Do not slush head joints.
- B. Lay hollow concrete masonry units with full mortar coverage on horizontal and vertical face shells. Bed webs in mortar in starting course on footings and in all courses of piers, columns and pilasters, and where adjacent to cells or cavities to be reinforced or filled with concrete or grout. For starting course on footings where cells are not grouted, spread out full mortar bed including areas under cells.
- C. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Maintain joint widths shown, except for minor variations required to maintain bond alignment. If not shown, lay walls with 3/8" joints.
- E. Cut joints flush for masonry walls which are to be concealed or to be covered by other materials, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Interior Exposure Joints: Provide concave joints horizontal and vertical.
- G. Remove masonry units disturbed after laying; clean and reset in fresh mortar. Do not pound corners or jambs to shift adjacent stretcher units which have been set in position. If adjustments are required, remove units, clean off mortar and reset in fresh mortar.

3.6 STRUCTURAL BONDING OF MULTI-WYTHE MASONRY:

- A. Use continuous horizontal joint reinforcement installed in horizontal mortar joints for bond tie between wythes. Install at not more than 16" o.c. vertically.
- B. Corners: Provide interlocking masonry unit bond in each course at corners, unless otherwise shown.
  - 1. For horizontally reinforced masonry, provide continuity at corners with prefabricated "L" units, in addition to masonry bonding.
- C. Intersecting and Abutting Walls: Unless vertical expansion or control joints are shown at juncture, provide same type of bonding specified for structural bonding between wythes.
  - 1. Provide continuity with horizontal joint reinforcement using prefabricated "T" units.
  - 2. If construction sequence does not allow simultaneous construction of intersecting or abutting walls, provide mesh wall ties @ 16" o.c. vertical install in initial wall and leave hanging out for incorporation into secondary wall.

3.7 COMPOSITE MASONRY:

- A. Bond wythes of composite masonry together using one of the following methods:
  - 1. Individual Metal Ties: Provide ties as shown installed in horizontal joints, but not less than one metal tie for 2.67 sq. ft. of wall area spaced not to exceed 24 inches o.c. horizontally and 16 inches o.c. vertically. Stagger ties in alternate courses. Provide additional ties within 12 inches of openings and space not more than 36 inches apart around perimeter of openings. At intersecting and abutting walls, provide ties at no more than 24 inches o.c. vertically.
    - a. Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable (two- piece) type ties.
  - 2. Masonry Joint Reinforcement: Installed in horizontal joints.
    - a. Where bed joints of both wythes align, use ladder-type reinforcement extending across both wythes.
    - b. Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable (two- piece) type reinforcement with continuous horizontal wire in facing wythe attached to ties.
- B. Bond adjacent wythes of composite masonry together using full collar joints.
- C. Collar Joints: Solidly fill collar joints by parging face of first wythe that is laid and shoving units of other wythe into place.
- D. Corners: Provide interlocking masonry unit bond in each wythe and course at corners, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Provide continuity with masonry joint reinforcement at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units as well as masonry bonding.
- E. Intersecting and Abutting Walls: Unless vertical expansion or control joints are shown at juncture, bond walls together as follows:

1. Provide individual metal ties not more than 16 inches o.c.
2. Provide continuity with masonry joint reinforcement by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
3. Provide rigid metal anchors not more than 24 inches o.c. If used with hollow masonry units, embed ends in mortar-filled cores.
4. If construction sequence does not allow simultaneous construction of intersecting or abutting walls, provide mesh wall ties @ 16" o.c. vertical install in initial wall and leave hanging out for incorporation into secondary wall.

3.8 CAVITY WALLS:

A. Tie wythes of cavity walls together using one of the following methods:

1. Ladder Type Pintel & Eye Joint Reinforcement: Installed in horizontal mortar joints where bed joints of both wythes align, use adjustable (two piece) ladder-type reinforcement on back-up masonry with pintel & eye extending across cavity securing veneer.
2. Individual Metal Ties: Provide ties as shown installed in horizontal joints, but not less than one metal tie for 2.67 sq. ft. of wall area spaced not to exceed 24 inches o.c. horizontally and 16 inches o.c. vertically. Stagger ties in alternate courses. Provide additional ties within 12 inches of openings and space not more than 36 inches apart around perimeter of openings. At intersecting and abutting walls, provide ties at no more than 24 inches o.c. vertically.
  - a. Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable (two- piece) type ties.
3. Masonry Veneer Anchors: Comply with requirements for anchoring masonry veneers.

- B. Attempting to remove mortar fins from cavity or to trowel them flat against brick usually results in increased mortar droppings at base of cavity; keep cavities clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Strike joints facing cavity flush. Bevel beds away from cavity, to minimize mortar protrusions into cavity.
- C. Provide weepholes (full head open cell joints) in exterior wythe of cavity wall located immediately above ledges and flashing, spaced 24" o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Provide weep vents in exterior wythe of cavity wall located at top of cavity walls at 24" o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

3.9 CAVITY WALL INSULATION:

- A. Cavity insulation shall be installed continuously between lines of horizontal joint reinforcement butting edges flush. Adhere to back-up block and seal all joints with adhesive/sealer compatible with insulation, product as recommended by the insulation manufacturer.
- B. Refer to Division 7 Section 07219 "Building Insulation" & Section 07231 "Air/Vapor Barrier System" for installation requirements applicable to continuous rigid insulation.
- C. Provide insulation thickness as indicated on drawings.

3.10 HORIZONTAL JOINT REINFORCEMENT:

- A. General: Provide continuous horizontal joint reinforcements as indicated. Install longitudinal side rods in mortar for their entire length with a minimum cover of 5/8" on exterior side of walls, 1/2" elsewhere. Lap reinforcing a minimum of 6".
- B. Cut or interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Reinforce walls with continuous horizontal joint reinforcing unless specifically noted to be omitted.
- D. Provide continuity at corners and wall intersections by use of prefabricated "L" and "T" sections.
- E. Cut and bend reinforcement units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at returns, offsets, column fireproofing, pipe enclosures, and other special conditions.

1. Space continuous horizontal reinforcement as follows:
  - a. For multi-wythe walls (solid or cavity) where continuous horizontal reinforcement acts as structural bond or tie between wythes, space reinforcement as required by code but not more than 16" o.c. vertically.
  - b. For foundation and parapet walls, space reinforcement at 8" o.c. vertically unless otherwise indicated.
2. Reinforce masonry openings greater than 1'-0" wide, with horizontal joint reinforcement placed in 2 horizontal joints approximately 8" apart, immediately above the lintel and immediately below the sill. Extend reinforcement a minimum of 2'-0" beyond jambs of the opening except at control joints.
  - a. In addition to wall reinforcement, provide additional reinforcement at openings as required to comply with the above.

### 3.11 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS:

- A. General: Provide vertical and horizontal expansion, control, and isolation joints in masonry where shown. Build-in related items as the masonry work progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.

1. Build-in horizontal pressure relieving joints where indicated; construct joints by either leaving an air space or inserting non-metallic compressible joint filler of width required to permit installation of sealant and backer rod.
  - a. Locate horizontal pressure relieving joints beneath shelf angles supporting masonry veneer and attached to structure behind masonry veneer.
2. Build in vertical pressure relieving joints. Expansion joints shall be located in sizes and locations as shown on drawings.
3. Vertical control joints: unless otherwise noted, control joints shall be located as shown on drawings and/or in accordance with the ACI guidelines and specified herein. Location of all control joints shall be reviewed by Architect prior to proceeding with work.
  - a. Vertical interior and exterior masonry control joints shall be ½" wide and filled with appropriate caulk.
  - b. Control joint spacing for exterior and interior walls: Wall Height (FT) Horizontal Joint reinforcing 16" O.C.

Up to 8 feet	25 ft O.C.
8ft to 12 ft	30 ft. O.C.
Over 12 ft.	35 ft. O.C.

- c. Control joints for interior and exterior masonry shall be located at the following points of weakness or high stress concentrations:
  1. At all abrupt changes in wall height.
  2. At all changes in wall thickness, such as those at pipe or duct chases and those adjacent to columns or pilasters.
  3. Above joints in foundations and floors.

4. Below joints in roof and floors that bear on the wall.
  5. At a distance of not over one-half the allowable joint spacing from bonded intersections or corners.
  6. At one or both sides of all door and window opening unless other crack control measures as used, such as joint reinforcement or bond beams.
4. Control joints in 2 hour fire rated CMU walls shall be as follows: Joint size maximum ½" with nominal ¾" diameter polyethylene backer rod compressed and installed into joint with minimum of ¼" thick fill materials applied within the joint flush with both surfaces of the wall as manufactured by "3M Company" - model # FD-150+. Note: All installations shall be in accordance with UL guidelines for joint systems.

3.12 ANCHORING MASONRY TO STRUCTURAL MEMBERS:

- A. Anchor masonry to structural members as detailed and indicated within the Construction Documents or where masonry abuts or faces structural members to comply with the following:
1. Provide an open space not less than 1/2 inch in width between masonry and structural member, unless otherwise indicated. Keep open space free of mortar and other rigid materials.
  2. Anchor masonry to structural members with anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.
  3. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 24 inches o.c. vertically and 36 inches o.c. horizontally.
  4. Coordinate anchors with flashing and air/vapor barrier requirements. Seal any penetrations necessary in flashing and air/vapor barriers.
- B. Firewalls: Provide melt-away anchors at all firewalls to anchor masonry to structural members as detailed and indicated within the Construction Documents when required for structural bracing.

3.13 LINTELS:

- A. Install steel lintels of size and configuration shown where indicated in Construction Documents. Provide galvanized steel lintels at all exterior conditions where exposure to moisture is possible.
- B. Provide minimum bearing of 6" at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.

3.14 FLASHING OF MASONRYWORK:

- A. Refer to Division 7 Section 07231 "Air/Vapor Barrier System" for installation requirements applicable to through wall flashing.
- B. General: Provide concealed self-adhering through wall flashing in masonry work continuous at base of wall at or above shelf angles, lintels, ledges, and other obstructions to the downward flow of water in the wall so as to divert such water to the exterior.
1. Prepare masonry surfaces smooth and free from projections which could puncture flashing. Seal penetrations in flashing with mastic before covering with mortar.
  2. Place horizontal leg of through wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Set stainless steel drip plate into minimum of ¼" bead of water block sealant, apply spray primer and allow to dry 4 to 5 minutes; within 30 minutes of setting primer set self-adhering through wall flashing onto drip plate set back from face of exterior face of masonry.

3. Extend flashing the full length of lintels and shelf angles and minimum of 4" into masonry each end then provide end dams at lintels and sills. Extend flashing from exterior face of outer wythe of masonry, through the outer wythe, turned up typically two full cmu back-up courses (16") but a minimum of 4" where restricted, and through the inner wythe to within 1/2" of the interior face of the wall in exposed work. Where interior surface of inner wythe is concealed by furring, carry flashing completely through the inner wythe and turn up approximately 2". At heads and sills turn up ends not less than 2" to form a pan.
4. Install flashing to comply with manufacturer's instructions.
5. Provide fully open cell weep hole head joints of the first course of masonry immediately above concealed flashings. Space 24" o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
6. Install reglets and nailers for flashing and other related work where shown to be built into masonry work.
7. Place cavity drainage material in cavities to comply with configuration requirements for cavity drainage material in Part 2 "Cavity Drainage Material" Article.
8. Install vents in head joints at top course of just below or where indicated in exterior wythes at spacing indicated or 24" o.c. Use specified weep/vent products to form vents.
  - a. Close cavities off vertically and horizontally with treated wood blocking in manner indicated. Install through-wall flashing and weep holes above horizontal blocking.

3.15 INSTALLATION OF REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY:

- A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
  1. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
  2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and other temporary loads that may be placed on them during construction.
- B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602. Place reinforcement of size and type and spacing as indicated in structural drawings.
- C. Grouting: Grout reinforced cores full height in coordination with and as indicated on structural drawings. Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.
  1. Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
  2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 60 inches.
  3. The use of mortar to fill the cells is not permissible.

3.16 INSTALLATION OF SELF-ADHERING TRANSITION MEMBRANES:

- A. Refer to Division 7 Section 07231 "Air/Vapor Barrier System" for installation requirements applicable to self-adhering transition membranes.
- B. General: Provide self-adhering transition membranes locations including window & door openings, top of wall covering wood blocking tied into roofing, changes in materials, across expansion joints, around penetrations, structural steel exposed within the cavity and wherever indicated on the construction documents.

1. Coordinate installation of transition membranes with other materials utilized as part of the air/vapor barrier system utilizing compatible products.
2. Install transition membranes to comply with manufacturer's instructions.

3.17 REPAIR, POINTING, AND CLEANING:

- A. Remove and replace masonry units which are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged, or if units do not match adjoining units as intended. Provide new units to match adjoining units and install in fresh mortar or grout, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge any voids or holes, except weepholes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up all joints including corners, openings, and adjacent work to provide a neat, uniform appearance, prepared for application of sealants.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly sets and cured, clean masonry as follows:
  1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and non-metallic scrape hoes or chisels.
  2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave 1/2 panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of installed masonry.
  3. Fully clean installation of exterior masonry with specified cleaner; apply and rinse, remove in accordance with manufacturer instructions.
  4. Protect adjacent stone and non-masonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent, polyethylene film, or waterproof masking tape.
  5. Saturate wall surfaces with water prior to application of cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing thoroughly with clearwater.
  6. Use bucket and brush hand cleaning method described in BIA "Technical Note No. 20 Revised" to clean brick masonry made from clay or shale, except use masonry cleaner as indicated in Part 2 "Masonry Cleaners" Article.
  7. Clean exterior finished concrete unit masonry to comply with masonry manufacturer's directions and applicable NCMA "Tek" bulletins.
- E. Protection: Provide final protection and maintain conditions in a manner acceptable to Installer, which ensures unit masonry work being without damage and deterioration at time of substantial completion. Protect waterproofing membrane and drain board work from other trades during construction. Backfill with specified materials, protect membrane from damage.

3.18 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, recycle or remove all surplus materials from the Project site(s).

END OF SECTION 042113

SECTION 051200

STRUCTURAL STEEL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division-1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Extent of structural steel work is shown on drawings, including schedules, notes, and details to show size and location of members, typical connections, and type of steel required.
- B. Structural steel is that work defined in American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC) "Code of Standard Practice" and as otherwise shown on drawings.
- C. Miscellaneous metal fabrications are specified elsewhere in Division 5. Refer to Division 3 for anchor bolt installation in concrete; Division 4 for masonry.
- D. Source Quality Control: Materials and fabrication procedures are subject to inspection and tests in mill, shop, and field, conducted by a qualified inspection agency. Such inspections and test will not relieve Contractor of responsibility for providing materials and fabrication procedures in compliance with specified requirements.

1. Promptly remove and replace materials or fabricated components which do not comply.

- E. Design of Members and Connections: Details shown are typical; similar details apply to similar conditions, unless otherwise indicated. Verify dimensions at site whenever possible without causing delay in the work. Contractor shall retain the services of a licensed professional engineer for the design of any connections not shown on the drawings.

1. Promptly notify Architect whenever design of members and connections for any portion of structure are not clearly indicated.

1.3 SUBMISSIONS

- A. Product Data: Submit producer's or manufacturer's specifications and installation instructions for the following products. Include laboratory test reports and other data to show compliance with specifications (including specified standards).
1. Structural steel (each type), including certified copies of mill reports covering chemical and physical properties.
  2. High-strength bolts (each type), including nuts and washers.
  3. Structural steel primer paint.
  4. Shrink-resistant grout.
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings prepared under the supervision of a registered professional engineer, including complete details and schedules for fabrication and assembly of structural steel members, procedures, and diagrams.



1. Include details of cuts, connections, camber, holes, and other pertinent data. Indicate welds by standard AWS A2.1 and A2.4 symbols, and show size, length, and type of each weld.
  2. Provide setting drawings, templates, and directions, for installation of anchor bolts and other anchorages to be installed as work of other sections.
- C. Test Reports: Submit copies of reports of tests conducted on shop and field bolted and welded connections. Include data on type(s) of tests conducted and test results.
- D. Surveys: Submit certified copies of each survey conducted by a registered professional engineer or land surveyor, showing elevations and locations of base plates and anchor bolts to receive structural steel, and final elevations and locations for major members. Indicate discrepancies between actual installation and contract documents.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Codes and Standards: Comply with provisions of following, except as otherwise indicated:
1. AISC 'Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges.'
  2. Paragraph 4.2.1 of the above code is hereby modified by deletion of the following sentence:  
"This  
approval constitutes the owner's acceptance of all responsibility for the design adequacy of any connections designed by the fabricator as a part of his preparation of these shop drawings."  
3. AISC "Specifications for the Design, Fabrications, and Erection of Structural Steel for Buildings," including "Commentary" and Supplements thereto as issued.
  4. AISC "Specifications for Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel."
  5. AISC "Specifications for Structural Joints using ASTM A325 or A490 Bolts" approved by the Research Council on Riveted and Bolted Structural Joints of the Engineering Foundation.
  6. American Welding Society (AWS) D1.1 "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  7. ASTM A6 "General Requirements for Delivery of Rolled Steel Plates, Shapes, Sheet Piling, and Bars for Structural Use."
- B. Qualifications for Welding Work: Qualify welding processes and welding operators in accordance with AWS "Standard Qualification Procedure."
1. Provide certification that welders to be employed in work have satisfactorily passed AWS qualification tests.
  2. If recertification of welders is required, retesting will be Contractor's responsibility.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to site at such intervals to insure uninterrupted progress of work.
- B. Deliver anchor bolts and anchorage devices, which are to be embedded in cast-in-place concrete or masonry, in ample time to not delay work.
- C. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground, using pallets, platforms, or other supports. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion or deterioration.

1. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion or damage to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: For fabrications of work which will be exposed to view, use only materials which are smooth and free of surface blemishes including pitting, rust and scale, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, and roughness. Remove such blemishes by grinding, or by welding and grinding, prior to cleaning, treating, and application of surface finishes.
- B. Structural Steel Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A992/A572-50.
- C. Cold-Formed Steel Tubing: ASTM A500, Grade B.
- D. Hot-Formed Steel Tubing: ASTM A501.
- E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53, Type E or S, Grade B; or ASTM A501.
1. Finish: Black, except where indicated to be galvanized.
- F. Steel Castings: ASTM A27, Grade 65-35, medium-strength carbon steel.
- G. Headed Stud-Type Shear Connectors: ASTM A108, Grade 1015 or 1020, cold finished carbon steel; with dimensions complying with AISC Specifications.
- H. Anchor Bolts: ASTM A307, non-headed type unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Unfinished Threaded Fasteners: ASTM A307, Grade A, regular low-carbon steel bolts and nuts.
1. Provide either hexagonal or square, head and nuts, except use only hexagonal units for exposed connections.
- J. High-Strength Threaded Fasteners: Heavy hexagon structural bolts, heavy hexagon nuts, and hardened washers, as follows:
1. Quenched and tempered medium-carbon steel bolts, nuts, and washers, complying with ASTM A325.
  2. Quenched and tempered alloy steel bolts, nuts, and washers, complying with ASTM A490.
- a. Direct tension indicator washers may be used at Contractor's option.
- K. Electrodes for Welding: Comply with AWS Code.
- L. Structural Steel Primer Paint: 10-1009 Gray Metal Primer by Tnemec Co., Inc.
- M. Loose and Hung Lintel Steel Primer Paint: 50-330 Poly-Ura-Prime by Tnemec Co., Inc.
1. Lintel angles for exterior veneer, either loose or hung, shall be hot dip galvanized. Final painting shall be after installation, but prior to installation of items in masonry openings.
- N. Non-metallic Shrinkage-resistant Grout: Pre-mixed, non-metallic, non-corrosive, non-staining product containing selected silica sands, Portland cement, shrinkage compensating agents, plasticizing and water reducing agents, complying with CE-CRD-C621.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products which may be incorporated in the work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Euco N.S.; Euclid Chemical Company.
- b. Crystex; L & M Construction Chemicals.
- c. Masterflow 713; Master Builders.
- d. Five Star Grout; U.S. Grout Corporation.
- e. Upcon; Upco Chemical Division, USM Corporation.
- f. Propak; Protex Industries, Inc.
- g. Set Non-Shrink; Set Products, Inc.

## 2.2 FABRICATION

- A. Shop Fabrication and Assembly: Fabricate and assemble structural assemblies in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate items of structural steel in accordance with AISC Specifications and as indicated on final shop drawings. Provide camber in structural members where indicated.
  1. Properly mark and match-mark materials for field assembly. Fabricate for delivery sequence which will expedite erection and minimize field handling of materials.
  2. Where finishing is required, complete assembly, including welding of units, before start of finishing operations. Provide finish surfaces of members exposed in final structure free of markings, burrs, and other defects.
- B. Connections: Weld or bolt shop connections, as indicated. Bolt field connections, except where welded connections or other connections are indicated.
  1. Provide high-strength threaded fasteners for principal bolted connections, except where unfinished bolts are indicated.
  2. Provide unfinished threaded fasteners for only bolted connections of secondary framing members to primary members (including purlins, girts, and other framing members taking only nominal stresses) and for temporary bracing to facilitate erection.
- C. High-Strength Bolted Construction: Install high-strength threaded fasteners in accordance with AISC "Specifications for Structural Joints using ASTM A325 or A490 Bolts".
- D. Welded Construction: Comply with AWS Code for procedures, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  1. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods which will produce true alignment of axes without warp.
- E. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Shop weld shear connectors, spaced as shown, to beams and girders in composite construction. Use automatic end welding of headed stud shear connectors in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.
- F. Holes for Other Work: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel framing, and for passage of other work through steel framing members, as shown on final shop drawings.

1. Provide threaded nuts welded to framing, and other specialty items as indicated to receive other work.
  2. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to metal surfaces. Do not flame cut holes or enlarge holes by burning. Drill holes in bearing plates.
- G. Expansion Joints: Provide expansion joints in steel shelf angles when part of structural steel frame; locate at vertical brick expansion joints as indicated on drawings.

### 2.3 SHOP PAINTING

- A. General: Shop paint structural steel, except those members or portions of members to be embedded in concrete or mortar. Paint embedded steel which is partially exposed on exposed portions and initial 2" of embedded areas only.
1. Do not paint surfaces which are to be welded or high-strength bolted with friction-type connections.
  2. Do not paint surfaces which are scheduled to receive sprayed-on fireproofing.
  3. Apply 2 coats of paint to surfaces which are inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.
- B. Surface Preparation: After inspection and before shipping, clean steel work to be painted. Remove loose rust, loose mill scale, and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Clean steel in accordance with one of the approved Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC) methods as follows:
1. SP-1 "Solvent Cleaning."
  2. SP-2 "Hand Tool Cleaning."
  3. SP-3 "Power Tool Cleaning."
  4. SP-5 "White Metal Blast Cleaning."
  5. SP-6 "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  6. SP-7 "Brush-Off Blast Cleaning."
  7. SP-10 "Near-White Blast Cleaning."
- C. Painting: Immediately after surface preparation, apply structural steel primer paint in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and at a rate to provide dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils. Use painting Paint System Guide No. 7.00.
- D. Painting: Provide a one-coat shop applied paint system complying with Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC), methods which result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 ERECTION

- A. Surveys: Employ a registered professional engineer or land surveyor for accurate erection of structural steel. Check elevations of concrete and masonry bearing surfaces, and locations of anchor bolts and similar devices, before erection work proceeds, and report discrepancies to Architect. Do not proceed with erection until

corrections have been made, or until compensating adjustments to structural steel work have been agreed upon with Architect.

- B. Temporary Shoring and Bracing: Provide temporary shoring and bracing members with connections of sufficient strength to bear imposed loads. Remove temporary members and connections when permanent members are in place and final connections are made. Provide temporary guy lines to achieve proper alignment of structures as erection proceeds
- C. Temporary Planking: Provide temporary planking and working platforms as necessary to effectively complete work.
- D. Setting Bases and Bearing Plates: Clean concrete and masonry surfaces of bond-reducing materials and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of base and bearing plates.
  - 1. Set loose and attached base plates and bearing plates for structural members on wedges or other adjusting devices.
    - a. Tighten anchor bolts after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims, but if protruding, cut off flush with edge of base or bearing plate prior to packing with grout
    - b. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and base or bearing plates to ensure that no voids remain. Finish exposed surfaces, protect installed materials, and allow to cure.
    - c. For proprietary grout materials, comply with manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Field Assembly: Set structural frames accurately to lines and elevations indicated. Align and adjust various members forming part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces which will be in permanent contact before assembly. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
  - 1. Level and plumb individual members of structure within specified AISC tolerances.
  - 2. Establish required leveling and plumbing measurements on mean operating temperature of structure. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature at time of erection and mean temperature at which structure will be when completed and in service.
  - 3. Splice members only where indicated and accepted on shop drawings.
- F. Erection Bolts: On exposed welded construction, remove erection bolts, fill holes with plug welds, and grind smooth at exposed surfaces.
  - 1. Comply with AISC Specifications for bearing, adequacy of temporary connections, alignment, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
    - a. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or by use of drift pins, except in secondary bracing members. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.
- G. Gas Cutting: Do not use gas cutting torches in field for correcting fabrication errors in primary structural framing. Cutting will be permitted only on secondary members which are not under stress, as acceptable to Architect. Finish gas-cut sections equal to a sheared appearance when permitted.

- H. Touch-up Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint. Apply paint to exposed areas using same material as used for shop painting.

1. Apply by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils.

- I. Touch-up Painting: Cleaning and touch-up painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on structural steel is included in Division 9 under painting work.

### 3.2 QUALITY CONTROL:

- A. The Contractor shall make arrangement for and the Owner shall pay for an independent testing and inspection agency to inspect high-strength bolted connections and welded connections, to perform tests and prepare test reports. The Contractor will be responsible for all costs associated with failed tests.

1. Testing agency shall conduct and interpret tests, and state in each report whether test specimens comply with requirements, and specifically state any deviations therefrom.
2. Provide access for testing agency to places where structural steel work is being fabricated or produced so that required inspection and testing can be accomplished.
3. Testing agency may inspect structural steel at plant before shipment; however, Architect reserves right, at any time before final acceptance, to reject material not complying with specified requirements.
4. Correct deficiencies in structural steel work which inspections and laboratory test reports have indicated to be not in compliance with requirements. Perform additional tests, at Contractor's expense, as may be necessary to reconfirm any non-compliance of original work, and as may be necessary to show compliance of corrected work.

- B. Shop Bolted Connections: Inspect or test in accordance with AISC specifications.

- C. Shop Welding: Inspect and test during fabrication of structural steel assemblies, as follows:

1. Certify welders and conduct inspections and tests as required. Record types and locations of defects found in work. Record work required and performed to correct deficiencies.
2. Perform visual inspection of all welds.
3. Perform tests of welds as follows. Inspection procedures listed are to be used at Contractor's option:
  - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E165.
  - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration not acceptable.
  - c. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E94 and ASTM E142; minimum quality level "2-2T."
  - d. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E164.

- D. Field Bolted Connections: Inspect in accordance with AISC specifications.

- E. Field Welding: Inspect and test during erection of structural steel as follows:

1. Verify certification of welders and conduct inspections and tests as required. Record types and locations of defects found in work. Record work required and performed to correct deficiencies.
2. Perform visual inspection of all welds.

3. Perform tests of welds as follows:
  - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E165.
  - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E709; performed on root pass and on finished weld.  
Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration not acceptable.
  - c. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E94 and ASTM E142; minimum quality level "2-2T."
  - d. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E164.

END OF SECTION 051200

## SECTION 052100

### STEEL JOISTS AND JOIST GIRDERS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Extent of steel joists and joist girders is shown on drawings, including basic layout and type of joists required.

##### 1.3 SUBMISSIONS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's specifications and installation instructions for each type of joist and accessories. Include manufacturer's certification that joists comply with SJI "Specifications."
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit detailed drawings showing layout of joist units, special connections, joining, and accessories. Include mark, number, type, location, and spacing of joists and bridging.
  - 1. Provide templates or location drawings for installation of anchor bolts and metal bearing plates.

##### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Provide joists fabricated in compliance with the following, and as herein specified.
  - 1. Steel Joist Institute (SJI) "Standard Specifications, Load Tables, and Weight Tables" for:
    - a. K-Series Open Web Steel Joists.
- B. Qualification of Field Welding: Qualify welding processes and welding operators in accordance with American Welding Society "Structural Welding Code," AWS D1.1.
- C. Inspection: Inspect joists and girders in accordance with SJI specifications.
- D. Performance Test: If required, conduct performance tests in accordance with procedures described in SJI "Recommended Code of Standard Practice."

##### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle steel joists as recommended in SJI "Specifications." Handle and store joists in a manner to avoid deforming members and to avoid excessive stresses.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Steel: Comply with SJI "Specifications."
- B. Field Welding in accordance with AWS and SJI.



- C. High-Strength Threaded Fasteners: ASTM A 325 heavy hexagon structural bolts with nuts and hardened washers.
- D. Steel Prime Paint: Comply with SJI "Specifications" and see Section 05120, "Structural Steel".
- E. Bedding Mortar: For joist ends bearing on concrete or masonry, provide bedding mortar as follows:
  - 1. Non-metallic shrinkage-resistant mortar; premixed, non-corrosive, non-staining product containing selected silica sand, Portland cement, shrinkage compensating agents, plasticizing and water reducing agents, complying with CRD-C621.
  - 2. Products: Provide non-metallic, shrinkage resistant mortar as manufactured by one of the following:
    - a. Euco N.S.; Euclid Chemical Co.
    - b. Crystex; L & M Construction Chemicals.
    - c. Masterflow 713; Master Builders.
    - d. Five Star Grout; U.S. Grout Corp.
    - e. Upcon; Upco Chem. Div., USM Corp.
    - f. Propak; Protex Industries, Inc.

## 2.2 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate steel joists in accordance with SJI "Specification."
- B. Holes in Chord Members: Provide holes in chord members where shown for securing other work to steel joists; however, deduct area of holes from the area of chord when calculating strength of member.
- C. Extended Ends: Provide extended ends on joists where shown, complying with manufacturer's standards and requirements of applicable SJI "Specifications" and load tables.
- D. Ceiling Extensions: Provide ceiling extensions in areas having ceilings attached directly to joist bottom chord. Provide either an extended bottom chord element or a separate unit, to suit manufacturer's standards, of sufficient strength to support ceiling construction. Extend ends to within 1/2" of finished wall surface unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Bridging: Provide horizontal or diagonal type bridging for joists and joist girders, complying with SJI "Specifications."
  - 1. Provide bridging anchors for ends of bridging lines terminating at walls or beams.
- F. End Anchorage: Provide end anchorages including bearing plates, to secure joists to adjacent construction, complying with SJI "Specifications," unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Header Units: Provide header units to support tail joists at openings in floor or roof system not framed with steel shapes.
- H. Shop Painting: Remove loose scale, heavy rust, and other foreign materials from fabricated joists and accessories before application of shop paint.
  - 1. Apply one shop coat of steel prime paint to joists and accessories, by spray, dipping, or other method to provide a continuous dry paint film thickness of not less than 0.50 mil.
  - 2. Do not paint surfaces which are scheduled to receive sprayed-on fireproofing.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 ERECTION

A. Place and secure steel joists in accordance with SJI "Specifications," final shop drawings, and as herein specified.

1. Anchors: Furnish anchor bolts, bearing plates, and other devices to be built into concrete and masonry construction.
  - a. Provide unfinished threaded fasteners for anchor bolts, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Refer to Division 3 sections for installation of anchors set in concrete.
  - c. Refer to Division 4 sections for installation of anchors set in masonry.
2. Placing Joists: Do not start placement of steel joists until supporting work is in place and secured. Place joists on supporting work, adjust and align in accurate locations and spacing before permanently fastening.
  - a. Provide temporary bridging, connections, and anchors to ensure lateral stability during construction.
  - b. Where "open web" joist lengths are 40 feet and longer, install a center row of bolted bridging to provide lateral stability before slackening of hoisting lines.
3. Bridging: Install bridging simultaneously with joist erection, before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of bridging lines at top and bottom chords where terminating at walls or beams.
4. Fastening Joists:
  - a. Field weld joists to supporting steel framework in accordance with SJI "Specifications" for type of joists used. Coordinate welding sequence and procedure with placing of joists.
  - b. Secure joists resting on masonry or concrete bearing surfaces by bedding in mortar and anchoring to masonry or concrete construction as specified in SJI "Specifications" for type of steel joist used.
  - c. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework in accordance with SJI "Specifications" for type of joists used.
    1. Provide high-strength threaded fasteners for bolted connections of steel joists to steel columns, and at other locations where shown. Install in accordance with AISC "Specifications for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A490 Bolts."
    2. Touch-Up Painting: After joist installation, paint field bolt heads and nuts, welded areas, and abraded or rusty surfaces on joists and steel supporting members. Wire brush surfaces and clean with solvent before painting. Use same type of paint as used for shop painting.

END OF SECTION 052100

SECTION 053100 - STEEL DECKING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Roof deck.
  - 2. Non-composite form deck.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 05-50-00 "Metal Fabrications" for framing deck openings with miscellaneous steel shapes.
  - 2. Section 09-91-13 "Exterior Painting" for repair painting of primed deck and finish painting of deck.
  - 3. Section 09-91-23 "Interior Painting" for repair painting of primed deck and finish painting of deck.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of steel deck.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements:
  - 1. Power-actuated mechanical fasteners.
- D. Evaluation Reports: For steel deck.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

- C. FM Global Listing: Provide steel roof deck evaluated by FM Global and listed in its "Approval Guide, Building Materials" for Class 1 fire rating and Class 1-90 windstorm ratings.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
- B. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck according to AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."
- B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.
- C. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.
- D. Low-Emitting Materials: Paints and coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

#### 2.2 ROOF DECK

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Canam Steel Corporation; Canam Group, Inc.
  - 2. Nucor Corp.
  - 3. Roof Deck, Inc.
- B. Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, and with the following:
  - 1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230), G60 (Z180) zinc coating.
  - 2. Deck Profile: Type B (Vulcraft), wide rib.
  - 3. Profile Depth: 1-1/2 inches
  - 4. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: 0.032 inch (20 gage).
  - 5. Span Condition: Triple span or more.
  - 6. Side Laps: Overlapped.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.
- B. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.
- C. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, No. 10 (4.8-mm) minimum diameter.
- D. Flexible Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.
- E. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi (230 MPa), not less than 0.0359-inch (0.91-mm) design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.
- F. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Weld Washers: Uncoated steel sheet, shaped to fit deck rib, 0.0747 inch (1.90 mm) thick, with factory-punched hole of 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) minimum diameter.
- H. Flat Sump Plates: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch (1.90 mm) thick, of same material and finish as deck. For drains, cut holes in the field.
- I. Recessed Sump Pans: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch (1.90 mm) thick, of same material and finish as deck, with 3-inch- (76-mm-) wide flanges and [level] [sloped] recessed pans of 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) minimum depth. For drains, cut holes in the field.
- J. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or MIL-P-21035B, with dry film containing a minimum of 94 percent zinc dust by weight.
- K. Repair Paint: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer of same color as primer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 31, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
- B. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels if required to meet deflection limitations.
- C. Locate deck bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.

- D. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.
- E. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.
- F. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.
- G. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.
- H. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.
- I. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to deck manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 ROOF-DECK INSTALLATION

- A. Fasten roof-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated or arc seam welds with an equal perimeter that is not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) long, and as follows:
  - 1. Weld Diameter: 5/8 inch (16 mm), nominal.
  - 2. Weld Spacing: Weld edge and interior ribs of deck units with a minimum of two welds per deck unit at each support. Space welds 12 inches (305 mm) apart in the field of roof and 6 inches (150 mm) apart in roof corners and perimeter, based on roof-area definitions in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-28.
  - 3. Weld Washers: Install weld washers at each weld location.
- B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of 1/2 of the span or 36 inches (914 mm), and as follows:
  - 1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 (4.8-mm-) diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
- C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), with end joints as follows:
  - 1. End Joints: Lapped 2 inches (51 mm) minimum.
- D. Roof Sump Pans and Sump Plates: Install over openings provided in roof deck and mechanically fasten flanges to top of deck. Space mechanical fasteners not more than 6 inches (305 mm) apart with at least one weld fastener at each corner.
  - 1. Install reinforcing channels or zees in ribs to span between supports and mechanically fasten.
- E. Miscellaneous Roof-Deck Accessories: Install ridge and valley plates, finish strips, end closures, and reinforcing channels according to deck manufacturer's written instructions. mechanically fasten to substrate to provide a complete deck installation.
  - 1. Weld cover plates at changes in direction of roof-deck panels unless otherwise indicated.

- F. Flexible Closure Strips: Install flexible closure strips over partitions, walls, and where indicated. Install with adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure complete closure.
- G. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- H. Field welds will be subject to inspection.
- I. Testing agency will report inspection results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
- J. Remove and replace work that does not comply with specified requirements.
- K. Additional inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected work with specified requirements.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of deck with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Repair Painting: Wire brushing, cleaning, and repair painting of rust spots, welds, and abraded areas of both deck surfaces are included in Section 09-91-13 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09-91-23 "Interior Painting."
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions to ensure that steel deck is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 053100

SECTION 054000 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the cold-formed metal framing as indicated on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. "C" shaped steel studs for exterior non-load bearing wall frame construction.
  - 2. "C" shaped steel joists.
  - 3. Anchors and accessories.
  - 4. Gypsum sheathing.
  - 5. Field inspection.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Unit Masonry - Section 042000.
- B. Structural Steel Framing - Section 051200.
- C. Thermal Insulation - Section 072100.
- D. Exterior Insulation and Finish System - Section 072419.
- E. Fiber-Cement Siding - Section 074646.
- F. Vapor permeable air barrier - Section 072700.
- G. Interior steel stud construction - Section 092116.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Component Design: Compute structural properties of studs in accordance with AISI "North American Specification for the Design of Cold Formed Steel Structural Members."
- B. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Where framing units are indicated to be components of fire-resistance rated assemblies, provide cold formed metal framing identical to that of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Products used in the assembly shall carry a classification label from an approved testing and inspection agency.
- C. Qualifications
  - 1. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Minimum five years' experience in producing products of the type specified.



2. Installer's Qualifications: Minimum three years' experience in installation of the type of product specified.
3. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M "Structural Welding Code - Steel" and AWS DL3 "Structural Welding Code – Sheet Steel."

D. Pre-Installation Meeting

1. Convene meeting at project site within one week of scheduled start of installation with representatives of the following in attendance: Owner, Architect, General Contractor, and metal framing subcontractor.
2. Review substrate conditions, requirements of related work, installation instructions, storage and handling procedures, and protection measures.
3. Keep minutes of meeting, including responsibilities of various parties and deviations from specifications and installation instructions. Distribute minutes to attendees within 72 hours.

E. Comply with the following standards:

1. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI):
  - a. "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members," latest edition.
  - b. "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing General Provisions."
2. American Welding Society (AWS):
  - a. Structural Welding Code (D1.1).
  - b. Specifications for Welding Sheet Steel in Structures (E1.3).
3. ASTM:
  - a. ASTM A 653 - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process.
  - b. ASTM A 780 - Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings.
  - c. ASTM A 924 - Standard Requirements for Sheet Steel, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dipped Process.
  - d. ASTM C 955 – Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Structural Framing Members.
  - e. ASTM A 1003 - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Carbon, Metallic- and Non-Metallic-Coated for Cold-Formed Framing Members.
  - f. ASTM C 1007 - Standard Specification for Installation of Load Bearing (Transverse and Axial) Steel Studs and Related Accessories.
  - g. ASTM C 1513 - Standard Specification for Steel Tapping Screws for Cold-Formed Steel Framing Connections.

- F. Vertical and Lateral Fire Propagation Test Characteristics: The exterior wall assembly is required to comply with NFPA 285 "Standard Method of Test for the Evaluation of Flammability Characteristics of Exterior Nonload-bearing Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Components." The base wall, stud cavity insulation, wall sheathing, air barrier, continuous wall rigid insulation and exterior cladding are components that are required to be evaluated as part of this specific assembly test. The basis of design product listed herein is a component of the design test assembly selected by the Architect.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For information only, submit copies of manufacturer's product information and installation instructions for each item of cold-formed framing and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings

1. Submit shop drawings for special components and installations not fully dimensioned or detailed in manufacturer's product data. Include placing drawings for framing members showing size and gauge designations, number, type, location and spacing. Indicate supplemental bracing, splices, window and door headers accessories and details as may be required for proper installation.
2. If the Contractor elects to prefabricate framing members into panels for erection, he shall submit shop drawings of such panels at suitable scale showing all dimensions, components, and methods of fastening and support.

C. For fasteners, submit product data sheet and samples.

D. Engineering Data

1. Submit Engineering Data drawings to the Architect for review. The Contractor is responsible for the structural design and supports for the cold-formed metal frame and must show his proposed system and how the Performance Criteria noted below is accommodated on these drawings.
2. These drawings must show all load conditions and design calculations relative to connections, fastening devices and anchorage, as well as size and gauge of members. Calculations and drawings must be prepared by a Structural Engineer licensed in the State of New York and shall be signed and sealed by this Engineer.

E. Quality Assurance Submittals: Submit the following:

1. Qualifications: Proof of manufacturer and installer qualifications.
  - a. Member in good standing of the Steel Framing Industry Association (SFIA) or be a part of a similar organization that provides verifiable code compliance.
  - b. Products to be certified under an independent third-party inspection program administered by an agency accredited by IAS to ICC-ES AC98 IAS Accreditation Criteria for Inspection Agencies.
2. Structural design calculations.
3. Certificates
  - a. Submit mill certificates by framing member/accessory manufacturer certifying compliance with material requirements.
  - b. Welder certificates.
4. Manufacturer's installation instructions for framing members and framing accessories.

1.6 PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

- A. Cold-formed metal framing system shall be designed, fabricated, and installed to withstand a 30 psf suction and pressure load (or greater if required by Code) with a maximum deflection of L/720 with brick and L/360 with EIFS and fiber-cement siding.
- B. Cold Formed Steel Framing Standards: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, framing shall comply with AISI S100 and AISI S200 and ASTM C955, Section 8.
  1. NOTE: For New York State Building Code 2020 (IBC 2020), AISI S200 and ASTM C955, Section 8, apply, except that ASTM C955, Section 8 (screw penetration test) applies only to studs and tracks. Otherwise, only AISI S200 applies.

- C. Design system to accommodate vertical deflection of structural building frame, live loading, seasonal and day/night temperature ranges and construction tolerances.
- D. Comply with New York State Building Code requirements for seismic connections and loads.

#### 1.7 PRODUCT DELIVERY AND STORAGE

- A. Protect metal framing units from rusting and damage. Deliver to one project site in manufacturer's unopened containers or bundles, fully identified with name, brand, type and grade. Store off the ground in a dry ventilated space or protect with suitable waterproof coverings. Conform to storage and handling requirements of AISI "Code of Standard Practice."

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Provide cold-formed steel framing manufactured by Marino/Ware, Superior Steel Studs, Clark Dietrich Building Systems, Super Stud Building Products, or approved equal.

#### 2.2 METAL FRAMING: GENERAL

- A. System Components: With each type of metal framing required, provide manufacturer's standard steel runners, (tracks), blocking, lintels, clip angles, shoes, reinforcements, fasteners and accessories, as recommended by manufacturer for the applications indicated, as needed to provide a complete metal framing system.

#### 2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Sheet for Studs and Tracks: ASTM A 1003 Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:
  - 1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
  - 2. Coating: G90 galvanized coating.
- B. Steel Sheet for Clips: ASTM A 653, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:
  - 1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
  - 2. Coating G90 galvanized coating.

#### 2.4 FRAMING MEMBERS

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges; thickness and grade as required by structural performance.
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths compatible with studs, unpunched, with un-stiffened flanges; thickness and grade as required by structural performance.

#### 2.5 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

- A. Stamp manufacturer's name on each accessory item.
- B. Provide screws with accessories designated for screw attachment.
- C. Connector Devices

1. Vertical Deflection Clips: "VertiClip," including step bushings, as manufactured by The Steel Network Inc. (919) 845-1025 or approved equal. Rigid attachments to structure and screw attachment to stud web using step-bushings to permit frictionless vertical movement. 68 mils minimum thickness, size as required by structural design calculations.
2. Rigid Clip Angles: "StiffClip" as manufactured by The Steel Network Inc., or approved equal, size as required by structural design calculations. Rigid attachment to structure and stud web.

D. Bridging

1. Cold Rolled Channel: 1-1/2" by 1/2" by 56 mil thick.
  - a. Bridging Clip: "BridgeClip" as manufactured by The Steel Network Inc. or approved equal. Provide attachment through stud punch-out clamping onto stud web and wrapping around bridging channel. Provide holes for screw attachment to stud web and channel.
2. Flat Strap: Width and thickness as required by structural design calculations. Rigid attachment to stud flange.
3. Solid Bridging: Channel shaped bridging with lipped flanges and integral formed clips. Screw attachment to stud. 33 mils minimum thickness, size as required by structural design calculations.
4. Bridging and accessories shall be hot dip zinc coated per ASTM A 153.

- E. Header for Window and Door Openings: Provide "ProX Header" system made by Brady Innovations LLC, or approved equal complete with all accessories including clips and accessories; finish and gauge to match studs.

2.6 FASTENERS

- A. Screws: Corrosion resistant coated, self-drilling, pan or hex washer head. Provide screw type and size as required by structural design calculations.
- B. Anchor Bolts and Studs: ASTM A 307, Grade A, carbon steel, with hex-head carbon steel nuts and flat steel washers. Hot-dip zinc coated in accordance with ASTM A 153. Provide bolt or stud type and size as required by structural design calculations.
- C. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 5 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- D. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

2.7 GALVANIZING TOUCH-UP

- A. For touching up damaged galvanized surfaces after erection, provide "Silver Galv" made by Z.R.C. Worldwide. Apply to a dry film thickness of 1.5 to 3.0 mils.

2.8 GYPSUM SHEATHING AND RELATED ACCESSORIES

- A. Gypsum Sheathing: 5/8" thick "Dens-Glass Fireguard," Type X, made by Georgia Pacific, "Securock Glass-Mat Sheathing" made by U.S. Gypsum Co., "Gold Bond EXP Extended Exposure Sheathing" made by National Gypsum Co., "Weather Defense" made by Lafarge/Continental, or approved equal, meeting ASTM C 1177, Type X.
- B. Fasteners: 1-1/4" Type S-12 screws "Climaseal" finish.

- C. Joint Treatment: Provide a one-part high performance sealant conforming to ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25 meeting with the approval of the air/vapor barrier manufacturer for compatibility; see Section 072700 for description. Apply a 3/8" bead of sealant to the joint and trowel flat. Apply enough of the same material to each fastener to cover completely when trowelled flat.

## 2.9 FABRICATION

- A. Framing components may be prefabricated into panels prior to erection. Fabricate panels plumb, square, true to line and braced against racking with joints welded. Perform lifting of prefabricated panels in a manner to prevent damage or distortion in any members in the assembly.
- B. Fastenings: Attach similar components by welding. Attach dissimilar components by welding, bolting or screw fasteners, as standard with manufacturer.
- C. Wire tying of framing components is not permitted.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where cold-formed metal framing is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Methods of construction shall be piece by piece.
- B. Connections shall be accomplished with self-drilling screws or welding so that the connection meets or exceeds the design loads required at that connection.
- C. Studs shall be installed seated squarely (within 1/16") against the web portion of the top and bottom tracks. Tracks shall rest on a continuous, uniform bearing surface.
- D. Cutting of steel framing members may be accomplished with a saw or shear. Torch cutting of loaded members is not permitted. Cutting of loaded members is not permitted unless under supervision of the project architect or engineer.
- E. Temporary bracing shall be provided and left in place until work is permanently stabilized.
- F. Bridging shall be of size and type shown on the approved shop drawings and as called for in the engineering calculations.
- G. Install headers in all openings that are larger than the stud spacing in that wall. Form headers as shown on the drawings.
- H. Insulation meeting the requirements of Section 072100 shall be placed in all jamb and header type conditions that will be inaccessible after their installation into the wall.
- I. Provide jack studs to support each end of headers. These studs shall be securely connected to the header and must seat squarely in the lower track of the wall, and be properly attached to it.
- J. If, by design, a header is low in the wall, the less than full-height studs (cripples) that occur over the header shall be designed to carry all imposed loads.
- K. Wall track shall not be used support any load unless specifically designed for that purpose.

- L. All axially loaded members shall be aligned vertically, to allow for full transfer of the loads down to the foundation. Vertical alignment shall be maintained at floor/wall intersections or alternate provisions for load transfer may be made.
- M. Holes that are field cut into steel framing members shall be within the limitation of the product and its design. Provide reinforcement where holes are cut through load bearing members in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and as approved by the Architect or Engineer.
- N. Touch up all steel bared by welding using touch-up coating specified herein.
- O. Studs shall be spaced to suit the design requirements and limitations of collateral facing materials.
- P. Care should be taken to allow for additional studs at intersections, corners, doors, windows, control joints, etc., and as called for in the shop drawings or design calculations.
- Q. Install supplementary framing, blocking, and bracing in metal framing system wherever walls or partitions are indicated to support fixtures, equipment, services, casework, heavy trim and furnishings, and similar work requiring attachment to the wall or partition. Where type of supplementary support is not otherwise indicated, comply with stud manufacturer's recommendations and industry standards in each case, considering weight or loading resulting from item supported.
- R. Provide for structure movement, expansion shall be allowed where indicated and necessary by design or code requirements.
- S. Frame both sides of expansion and control joints with separate studs; do not bridge the joint with components of stud system.
- T. Install horizontal bridging in stud system, spaced (vertical distance) at not more than 48 inches on center. Fasten at each intersection.
- U. Splicing of axially loaded members or floor joists shall not be permitted.
- V. Wire tying of members is not permitted.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF GYPSUM SHEATHING

- A. Fasten sheathing to exterior of each stud with specified fasteners spaced 3/8" from ends and edges and approx. 8" o.c. at each stud. Install fasteners in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations using 2500-RPM maximum screw gun. Sheathing board shall be installed horizontally. Apply sealant between joints and trowel flush; and apply sealant around sheathing perimeter and at interface with other materials. Cover fastener heads with sealant and trowel flush.
- B. Refer to Section 072700 for vapor permeable air barrier description.

END OF SECTION 054000

SECTION 055000

MISCELLANEOUS METALS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the miscellaneous metal work as indicated on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Rough hardware.
  - 2. Vertical steel ladders.
  - 3. Steel pipe handrails and railings not part of steel pan stair assemblies.
  - 4. Loose steel lintels.
  - 5. Wire mesh ceiling.
  - 6. Light steel framing and supports not included as part of work of other trades.
  - 7. Miscellaneous steel trim, corner guards, angle guards and channels.
  - 8. Countertop supports.
  - 9. Masonry support steel.
  - 10. Sleeves in concrete walls and slabs.
  - 11. Steel framing, bracing, supports, anchors, bolts, shims, fastenings, and all other supplementary parts indicated on drawings or as required to complete each item of work of this Section.
  - 12. Prime painting, touch-up painting, galvanizing and separation of dissimilar metals for work of this Section.
  - 13. Cutting, fitting, drilling and tapping work of this Section to accommodate work of other Sections and of concrete, masonry or other materials as required for attaching and installing work of this Section.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Structural Steel Framing - Section 051200.
- B. Steel Joists and Girders - Section 052100.
- C. Steel Pan Stairs - Section 055113.
- D. Painting and Finishing - Section 099000.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Field Measurements: Take field measurements prior to preparation of shop drawings and fabrication, where possible. Do not delay job progress; allow for trimming and fitting where taking field measurements before fabrication might delay work.
- B. Shop Assembly: Pre-assemble items in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for re-assembly and coordinated installation.
- C. Reference Standards: The work is subject to requirements of applicable portions of the following standards:
  - 1. "Manual of Steel Construction," American Institute of Steel Construction.
  - 2. AWS D1-1 "Structural Welding Code," American Welding Society.
  - 3. SSPC SP-3 "Surface Preparation Specification No. 3, Power Tool Cleaning," Steel Structures Painting Council.
  - 4. SSPC PA-1 "Painting Application Specification," Steel Structures Painting Council.
  - 5. "Handbook on Bolt, Nut and Rivet Standards," Industrial Fasteners Institute.
- D. Steel Materials: For steel to be hot dip-galvanized, provide steel chemically suitable for metal coatings complying with the following requirements: carbon below 0.25 percent, silicon below 0.24 percent, phosphorous below 0.05 percent, and manganese below 1.35 percent. Notify galvanizer if steel does not comply with these requirements to determine suitability for processing.
- E. Engage the services of a galvanizer who has demonstrated a minimum of five (5) years' experience in the successful performance of the processes outlined in this specification in the facility where the work is to be done and who will apply the galvanizing and coatings within the same facility as outlined herein. The Architect has the right to inspect and approve or reject the galvanizer/galvanizing facility.
- F. The galvanizer/galvanizing facility must have an ongoing Quality Control/Quality Assurance program which has been in effect for a minimum of five years and shall provide the Architect with process and final inspection documentation. The galvanizer/galvanizing facility must have an on-premise testing facility capable of measuring the chemical and metallurgical composition of the galvanizing bath and pickling tanks.
- G. Inspection and testing of hot-dip galvanized coating shall be done under the guidelines provided in the American Hot-Dip Galvanizers Association (AGA) publication "Inspection of Products Hot-Dip Galvanized After Fabrication."

1.5 PERFORMANCE STANDARDS

- A. Railings shall be designed to resist loads per 2020 Building Code of New York State.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturer's Literature: Submit manufacturer's specifications, load tables, dimension diagrams, anchor details and installation instructions for products to be used in the fabrication of miscellaneous metal work, including paint products.
- B. Shop Drawings: Shop drawings for the fabrication and erection of all assemblies of miscellaneous iron work which are not completely shown by manufacturer's data sheets. Include plans and elevations at



not less than 1" to 1'-0" scale and include details of sections and connections at not less than 3" to 1'-0" scale. Show anchorage and accessory items.

C. Engineering Data

1. Before any ladders or railings or wire mesh ceilings are fabricated, submit engineering data drawings to the Architect for review indicating how performance standards specified here shall be met. The Contractor is responsible for the structural design and supports for these systems and must show his proposed systems on these drawings.
2. These drawings must show all load conditions and design calculations relative to connections, fastening devices and anchorage, as well as size and gauge of members. Calculations and drawings must be prepared by a Structural Engineer licensed in the State of New York and shall be signed and sealed by this Engineer.

D. Welding shall be indicated on shop drawings using AWS symbols and showing length, size and spacing (if not continuous). Auxiliary views shall be shown to clarify all welding. Notes such as 1/4" weld, weld and tack weld are not acceptable.

E. Certification: For items to be hot-dip galvanized, identify each item galvanized and to show compliance of application. The Certificate shall be signed by the galvanizer and shall contain a detailed description of the material processed and the ASTM standard used for the coating and, the weight of the coating. In addition, and as attachment to Certification, submit reports of testing and inspections indicating compliance with the provisions of this Section.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Metals

1. Metal Surfaces, General: For fabrication of miscellaneous metal work which will be exposed to view, use only materials which are smooth and free of surface blemishes including pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names and roughness.
2. Steel Plates, Shapes and Bars: ASTM A 36.
3. Steel Bar Grating: ASTM A 1011 or ASTM A 36.
4. Steel Tubing: Cold formed, ASTM A 500; or hot rolled, ASTM A 501.
5. Structural Steel Sheet: Hot rolled, ASTM A 1011; or cold rolled, ASTM A 1008, Class 1; of grade required for design loading.
6. Galvanized Structural Steel Sheet: ASTM A 924, of grade required for design loading. Coating designation G90.
7. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, type and grade as selected by fabricator and as required for design loading; black finish unless galvanizing is indicated; standard weight (Schedule 40), unless otherwise indicated.
8. Gray Iron Castings: ASTM A 48, Class 30, unless another class is indicated or required by structural loads.
9. Malleable Iron Castings: ASTM A 47, grade as selected by fabricator.

10. Brackets, Flanges and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of the same type material and finish as supported rails, unless otherwise indicated.
  11. Concrete Inserts: Threaded or wedge type; galvanized ferrous castings, either malleable iron, ASTM A 47, or cast steel, ASTM A 27. Provide bolts, washers and shims as required, hot-dip galvanized, ASTM A 153.
- B. Grout: Non-shrink, non-metallic grout conforming to the requirements of Section 033000.
- C. Fasteners
1. General: Provide zinc-coated fasteners for exterior use or where built into exterior walls. Select fasteners for the type, grade and class required.
  2. Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon head type, ASTM A 307, Grade A.
  3. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36.
  4. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1.
  5. Machine Screws: ASME B18.6.3.
  6. Plain Washers: Round, carbon steel, ASME B18.22.1.
  7. Masonry Anchorage Devices: Expansion shields, FS FF-S-325.
  8. Toggle Bolts: Tumble-wing type, FS FF-B-588, type, class and style as required.
  9. Lock Washers: Helical spring type carbon steel, ASME B18.21.1.
- D. Shop Paint: Shop prime all non-galvanized miscellaneous metal items using Series 88 Azaron Primer made by Tnemec, ICI Devoe "Rust Guard" quick dry alkyd shop coat No. 41403, or "Interlac 393" by International Protection Coatings.
1. If steel is to receive high performance coating as noted in Section 099000, shop prime using primer noted in Section 099000.
- E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
- F. Galvanizing Repair Coating: For touching up galvanized surfaces after erection, provide repair coating that is V.O.C. compliant, equal to "Silver Galv" made by Z.R.C. Worldwide or approved equal. Apply to a dry film thickness of 1.5 to 3.0 mils.

## 2.2 PRIME PAINTING

- A. Scope: All ferrous metal (except galvanized steel) shall be cleaned and shop painted with one coat of specified ferrous metal primer. No shop prime paint required on galvanized steel or aluminum work.
- B. Cleaning: Conform to Steel Structures Painting Council Surface Preparation Specification SP 3 (latest edition) "Power Tool Cleaning" for cleaning of ferrous metals which are to receive shop prime coat.
1. Steel to get high performance coating as noted in Section 099000 shall be cleaned as per SSPC SP.6 "Commercial Blast Cleaning."

C. Application

1. Apply shop prime coat immediately after cleaning metal. Apply paint in dry weather or under cover. Metal surfaces shall be free from frost or moisture when painted. Paint all metal surfaces including edges, joints, holes, corners, etc.
2. Paint surfaces which will be concealed after shop assembly prior to such assembly. Apply paint in accordance with approved paint manufacturer's printed instructions, and the use of any thinners, adulterants or admixtures shall be only as stated in said instructions.
3. Paint shall uniformly and completely cover the metal surfaces, 2.0 mils minimum dry film thickness. No work shall be shipped until the shop prime coat thereon has dried.

D. Touch-Up: In the shop, after assembly and in the field, after installation of work of this Section, touch-up damaged or abraded portions of shop prime paint with specified ferrous metal primer.

E. Apply one shop coat to fabricated metal items, except apply two (2) coats of paint to surfaces inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from the first.

2.3 GALVANIZING

A. Scope: All ferrous metal exposed to the weather, and all ferrous metals indicated on drawings or in specifications to be galvanized, shall be cleaned and then hot-dipped galvanized after fabrication as provided by Duncan Galvanizing or approved equal.

B. Avoid fabrication techniques that could cause distortion or embrittlement of steel items to be hot-dip galvanized. Fabricator shall consult with hot-dip galvanizer regarding potential warpage problems or handling problems during the galvanizing process that may require adjustment of fabrication techniques or design before finalizing shop drawings and beginning of fabrication.

C. Cleaning: Thoroughly clean metal surfaces of all mill scale, rust, dirt, grease, oil, moisture and other contaminants prior to galvanizing.

D. Application: Hot-dip galvanizing shall conform to the following:

1. ASTM A 143: Safeguarding Against Embrittlement of Hot-Dip Galvanized Structural Steel.
2. ASTM A 123: Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products.
3. ASTM A 153: Galvanized Coating on Iron and Steel Hardware - Table 1.
4. ASTM A 384: Practice for Safeguarding Against Warpage and Distortion During Hot-Dip Galvanizing of Steel Assemblies.
5. ASTM A 385: Practice for Providing High Quality Zinc Coatings.
6. ASTM A 924: Galvanized Coating on Steel Sheets.
7. Minimum weight of galvanized coating shall be two (2) oz. per square foot of surface.

E. Fabricate joints which will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water or provide weep holes where water may accumulate.

F. All galvanized materials must be inspected for compliance with these specifications and marked with a stamp indicating the name of the galvanizer, the weight of the coating, and the appropriate ASTM number.

- G. To minimize surface imperfection (e.g.: flux inclusions), material to be galvanized shall be dipped into a solution of Zinc Ammonium Chloride (pre-flux) immediately prior to galvanizing. The type of galvanizing process utilizing a flux blanket overlaying the molten zinc will not be permitted.
- H. After galvanizing all materials not exposed to view must be chromated by dipping material in a 0.2% chromic acid solution.
- I. Galvanized surfaces, where exposed to view, must have a smooth, level surface finish. Where this does not occur, piece shall be rejected and replaced to the acceptance of the Architect.

#### 2.4 PROTECTIVE COATINGS

- A. Whenever dissimilar metals will be in contact, separate contact surfaces by coating each contact surface prior to assembly or installation with one coat of specified bituminous paint, which shall be in addition to the specified shop prime paint. Mask off those surfaces not required to receive protective coating.

#### 2.5 WORKMANSHIP

##### A. General

- 1. Miscellaneous metal work shall be fabricated by an experienced fabricator or manufacturer and installed by an experienced tradesman.
- 2. Materials, methods of fabrication, fitting, assembly, bracing, supporting, fastening, operating devices, and erection shall be in accordance with drawings and specifications, approved shop drawings, and best practices of the industry, using new and clean materials as specified, having structural properties sufficient to safely sustain or withstand stresses and strains to which materials and assembled work will be subjected.
- 3. All work shall be accurately and neatly fabricated, assembled and erected.

- B. Shop Assembly: Insofar as practicable, fitting and assembly of work shall be done in shop. Shop assemble work in largest practical sizes to minimize field work. It is the responsibility of the miscellaneous metal subcontractor to assure himself that the shop-fabricated miscellaneous metal items will properly fit the field condition. In the event that shop-fabricated miscellaneous metal items do not fit the field condition, the item shall be returned to the shop for correction.

- C. Cutting: Cut metal by sawing, shearing, or blanking. Flame cutting will be permitted only if cut edges are ground back to clean, smooth edges. Make cuts accurate, clean, sharp and free of burrs, without deforming adjacent surfaces or metals.

- D. Holes: Drill or cleanly punch holes; do not burn.

- E. Connections: Make connections with tight joints, capable of developing full strength of member, flush unless indicated otherwise, formed to exclude water where exposed to weather. Locate joints where least conspicuous. Unless indicated otherwise, weld or bolt shop connections; bolt or screw field connections. Provide expansion and contraction joints to allow for thermal movement of metal at locations and by methods approved by Architect.

##### 1. Welding

- a. Shall be in accordance with AWS D1.1 Structural Welding Code of the American Welding Society and shall be done with electrodes and/or methods recommended by the manufacturer of the metals being welded.

- b. Welds shall be continuous, except where spot welding is specifically permitted. Welds exposed to view shall be ground flush and dressed smooth with and to match finish of adjoining surfaces; undercut metal edges where welds are required to be flush.
  - c. All welds on or behind surfaces which will be exposed to view shall be done so as to prevent distortion of finished surface. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from all welded surfaces.
- 2. Bolts and Screws: Make threaded connections tight with threads entirely concealed. Use lock nuts. Bolts and screw heads exposed to view shall be flat and countersunk. Cut off projecting ends of exposed bolts and screws flush with nuts or adjacent metal.
- F. Operating Mechanism: Operating devices (i.e. pivots, hinges, etc.) mechanism and hardware used in connection with this work shall be fabricated, assembled, installed and adjusted after installation so that they will operate smoothly, freely, noiselessly and without excessive friction.
- G. Built-In Work: Furnish anchor bolts, inserts, plates and any other anchorage devices, and all other items specified under this Section of the Specifications to be built into concrete, masonry or work of other trades, with necessary templates and instructions, and in ample time to facilitate proper placing and installation.
- H. Supplementary Parts: Provide as necessary to complete each item of work, even though such supplementary parts are not shown or specified.
- I. Coordination: Accurately cut, fit, drill and tap work of this Section to accommodate and fit work of other trades. Furnish or obtain, as applicable, templates and drawings to or from applicable trades for proper coordination of this work.
- J. Exposed Work
  - 1. In addition to requirements specified herein and shown on drawings, all surfaces exposed to view shall be clean and free from dirt, stains, grease, scratches, distortions, waves, dents, buckles, tool marks, burrs, and other defects which mar appearance of finished work.
  - 2. Metal work exposed to view shall be straight and true to line or curve, smooth arrises and angles as sharp as practicable, miters formed in true alignment, profiles accurately intersecting, and with joints carefully matched to produce continuity of line and design.
  - 3. Exposed fastenings, where permitted, shall be of the same material, color and finish as the metal to which applied, unless otherwise indicated, and shall be of the smallest practicable size.
- K. Preparation for Hot-Dip Galvanizing: Fabricator shall correctly prepare assemblies for galvanizing in consultation with galvanizer and in accordance with applicable Reference Standards and applicable AGA publications for the "Design of Products to be Hot-Dip galvanized After Fabrication." Preparation shall include but not be limited to the following:
  - 1. Remove welding flux.
  - 2. Drill appropriate vent holes and provide for drainage in inconspicuous locations of hollow sections and semi-enclosed elements. After galvanizing, plug vent holes with shaped lead and grind smooth.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS METALS ITEMS

### A. Rough Hardware

- 1. Furnish bent or otherwise custom fabricated bolts, plates, anchors, hangers, dowels and other miscellaneous steel and iron shapes as required for framing and supporting woodwork, and for

- anchoring or securing woodwork to concrete or other structures. Straight bolts and other stock rough hardware items are specified in Division 6 Sections.
2. Fabricate items to sizes, shapes and dimensions required. Furnish malleable iron washers for heads and nuts which bear on wood connections; elsewhere, furnish steel washers.
- B. Ladders: Vertical steel ladders shall be eighteen (18) inches wide with 3/4" diameter non-slip steel rungs spaced twelve (12) inches o.c. Stringers shall be 3/8" thick by 2-1/2" wide steel bars; rungs welded to bars. Attach ladders to walls six (6) inches from top and bottom and maximum thirty-six (36) inches o.c. from these points. At the roof, gooseneck the rails back to the structure to provide secure ladder access.
1. Ladders shall be fabricated to support a live load of one hundred (100) lbs. per square foot and a concentrated load of three hundred (300) lbs. per rung; loads not to act simultaneously.
- C. Steel Pipe Handrails: Provide Schedule 40 steel pipe of size shown on Drawings. Fittings shall be flush type, malleable or cast iron. Brackets shall be malleable iron, design as selected by the Architect.
1. Construction: Form direction changes in rails using solid bar stock or elbows. Connections shall be shop welded and ground smooth and flush, except where field connections and expansion joints are required. Field connections may be welded, internal sleeve and plug weld, or internal sleeve and set screw.
  2. Secure handrails to walls with wall brackets. Provide brackets of malleable iron castings, with not more than three (3) inches clearance from inside face of handrail to wall surface. Neatly drill wall plate portion of the bracket into concrete or masonry to receive bolts for concealed anchorage. For installation at drywall, Drywall trades shall provide plate to receive wall plate portion of bracket and anchor or bolt wall plate through drywall to supporting steel plate. Locate brackets at not more than 5'-0" o.c. unless otherwise shown.
  3. Provide wall return fittings of cast iron, flush type, with the same projection as that specified for wall brackets.
  4. Longitudinal members shall be parallel with each other and with floor surface or shape of stair to a tolerance of 1/8" in 10'-0" linear feet. Center line of members within each run of railing shall be in the plane.
  5. For steel pipe posts where indicated, anchor posts in concrete by means of pipe sleeves set and anchored into concrete. Provide sleeves of galvanized steel pipe, not less than six (6) inches long and having an inside diameter not less than 1/2" greater than outside diameter of the inserted pipe. Provide steel plate closure secure to bottom of sleeve and of width and length not less than one (1) inch greater than outside diameter of sleeve. After posts have been inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve solid with non-shrink, non-ferrous grout. Cover anchorage joint with a round steel flange welded to post. Posts shall be set plumb within 1/8" vertical tolerance.
  6. Steel pipe handrails shall be capable of resisting a two hundred (200) lb. force applied to rail from any direction and a uniformly distributed load of fifty (50) lbs. per linear foot applied downward or horizontally, loads not to act simultaneously.
- D. Loose Steel Lintels: Provide loose structural steel lintels for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions as shown. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated. Provide not less than eight (8) inches bearing at each side of openings, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Loose lintels shall conform to the following Schedule:

Opening Width (Maximum)	WALL THICKNESS		
	4 inches	6 inches	8 inches*
2'-0"	3-1/2" x 3-1/2" x 1/4"	6" x 4" x 5/16"	3-1/2" x 3-1/2" x 1/4"
3'-0"	3-1/2" x 3-1/2" x 5/16"	6" x 4" x 5/16"	3-1/2" x 3-1/2" x 5/16"
4'-0"	3-1/2" x 3-1/2" x 5/16"	6" x 4" x 5/16"	3-1/2" x 3-1/2" x 5/16"
5'-0"	4" x 3-1/2" x 3/8"	6" x 4" x 3/8"	4" x 3-1/2" x 5/16"
6'-0"	5" x 3-1/2" x 3/8"	6" x 4" x 3/8"	5" x 3-1/2" x 5/16"
7'-0"	5" x 3-1/2" x 3/8"	5" x 5" x 1/2"	5" x 3-1/2" x 3/8"
8'-0"	5" x 3-1/2" x 3/8"	5" x 5" x 5/8"	5" x 3-1/2" x 3/8"

\* Two angles at all openings in eight (8) inch walls.

- At columns or vertical surfaces where lintels cannot bear on masonry, provide clip angles sized for structural capacity of lintel.

E. Wire Mesh Ceiling

- Welded Wire Mesh: As indicated on drawings.
- Provide ceiling assembly designed, fabricated and installed to have a deflection not to exceed L/360.

F. Miscellaneous Light Steel Framing

- Light steel framing, bracing, supports, framing, clip angles, shelf angles, plates, etc., shall be of such shapes and sizes as indicated on the drawings and details or as required to suit the condition and shall be provided with all necessary supports and reinforcing such as hangers, braces, struts, clip angles, anchors, bolts, nuts, welds, etc., as required to properly support and rigidly fasten and anchor same in place and to steel, concrete, masonry and all other connecting and adjoining work.
- All light steel framing steel shall be furnished and erected in accordance with the applicable requirements of the "Specifications for the Design, Fabrication and Erection of Structural Steel for Buildings" by the American Institute of Steel Construction and as specified herein.

- G. Miscellaneous Steel Trim: Provide shapes and sizes for profiles shown. Except as otherwise indicated, fabricate units from structural steel shapes and plates and steel bars, with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Use concealed field splices wherever possible. Provide cutouts, fittings and anchorages as required for coordination of assembly and installation with other work.

- H. Corner Guards: Provide steel corner guards where shown. Unless otherwise indicated, use 4" x 4" x 1/4" steel angles to a height of four (4) feet above finished floor with 1-1/4" x 8 1/4" bent steel strap anchors welded to backs of angles at each end and approximately sixteen (16) inches o.c. Set and adjust guards to finish flush with adjacent surfaces.

- I. Countertop Supports: Steel framing as indicated or required to support countertops. Conceal framing under countertops and within wall behind countertops. Provide supports to withstand a concentrated load of not less than three hundred (300) lbs. applied at any point with a deflection not to exceed L/240 for the length of the countertop.

J. Masonry Support Steel

1. Provide galvanized steel, relieving angles, plates, accessories and other steel shapes for masonry support steel; for lintels refer to Para. D. herein.
2. Fabricate masonry support steel to allow final adjustment with the closest tolerances possible. Relieving angles which require cutting to fit masonry flashing shall be straightened without deflections.
3. Coordinate masonry support system with concrete work for locations of wedge inserts.
4. Install to meet requirements of building masonry work, face brick coursing and stone placement. Coordinate final adjustments with masonry work as work progresses.

K. Sleeves in Concrete Walls and Slabs

1. Sleeves through concrete walls shall be of Schedule 40 steel pipe with i.d. two (2) inches larger than o.d. of pipe or conduit (including insulation, if any) to be accommodated. Sleeves shall project one-half (1/2) inch on each side of finished wall. Provide rectangular one-quarter (1/4) inch steel plate collar at center, continuously welded to the perimeter of the sleeve, and six (6) inches wider than the o.d.
2. Slots in slabs shall be 12 gauge steel sheet, galvanized, of dimensions indicated, with strap anchors welded in place not more than twelve (12) inches on centers.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where miscellaneous metal is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

3.2 ERECTION

- A. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing miscellaneous metal fabrications to in-place construction; including threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through-bolts, lag bolts, wood screws, and other connectors as required.
- B. Cutting, Fitting and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling and fitting required for installation of miscellaneous metal fabrications. Set work accurately in location, alignment and elevation, plumb, level, true and free of rack, measured from established lines and levels. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items which are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- C. Fitting Connections: Fit exposed connections accurately together to form tight hairline joints. Weld connections which are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Grind exposed joints smooth and touch up shop paint coat. Do not weld, cut or abrade the surfaces of exterior units which have been hot dip galvanized after fabrication, and are intended for bolted or screwed field connections.
- D. Field Welding: Comply with AWS Code for procedures of manual shielded metal-arc welding, appearance, and quality of welds made, and methods used in correcting welding work.



- E. Touch-Up Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- F. Field Touch-Up of Galvanized Surfaces: Touch-up shop applied galvanized coatings damaged during handling and installation. Use galvanizing repair coating specified herein for galvanized surfaces.

END OF SECTION 055000

SECTION 055813 - COLUMN COVERS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the column covers as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications of Installers
  - 1. The subcontractor shall have a record of successful installations of similar products acceptable to the Architect and shall be currently approved by the manufacturer of the column covers.
  - 2. For the actual fabrication and installation of all components of the system, use only personnel who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the skills required and completely familiar with the requirements established for this work.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
  - 1. Build mockups of typical column covers.
  - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Submit completely dimensioned layouts for all areas where metal column covers are required, showing:
  - 1. Dimensions, sizes and types of units.
  - 2. Trim and accessories.
  - 3. Details of construction and installation at all conditions.
  - 4. Materials, gauges, thicknesses and finishes.
- B. Samples: Prepare and submit samples in the following sizes:
  - 1. Column cover, full cross section by 12'-0" high, including a horizontal joint.
  - 2. Each type of trim and accessories, full size.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver column covers wrapped in protective coverings and strapped together in suitable packs or in heavy-duty cartons. Remove protective coverings before they stain or bond to finished surfaces.

- B. Handle products carefully to avoid damaging units in any way.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SHEET METAL

- A. General: Provide sheet metal without pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, or other imperfections where exposed to view on finished units.

### 2.2 COLUMN COVERS

- A. Manufacturers: Provide "MAW999" reveal-joint column covers as manufactured by ATAS International, Inc., or comparable product by PAC-Clad (Petersen Aluminum Company), Centria or approved equal.
  - 1. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, with not less than strength and durability properties of Alloy 5005-H32, 0.125" thick, with 70% PDVF finish.
  - 2. Snap-Together Type: Form column covers to shapes indicated. Return vertical edges and bend to form hook that will engage continuous mounting clips.
    - a. Increase metal thickness or reinforce with concealed stiffeners, backing materials, or both, as needed to provide flat surfaces where indicated.
    - b. Support joints with concealed stiffeners as needed to hold exposed faces of adjoining sheets in flush alignment.
    - c. Form returns at vertical joints to provide 5/8" wide reveal at joints. Provide snap-in metal filler strips at reveals that leave reveals flush.
    - d. Fabricate column covers without horizontal joints.
    - e. Fabricate base and ceiling rings to match column cover.
    - f. Apply manufacturer's recommended sound-deadening insulation to backs of column covers.
- B. Fasteners: Fabricated from same basic metal and alloy as fastened metal unless otherwise indicated. Do not use metals that are incompatible with materials joined.
- C. Sound Deadening Insulation: Unfaced, mineral-fiber blanket insulation complying with ASTM C 665, Type I, and passing ASTM E 136 test.

### 2.3 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Coordinate dimensions and attachment methods of column covers with those of adjoining construction to produce integrated assemblies with closely fitting joints and with edges and surfaces aligned unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Form metal to profiles indicated, in maximum lengths to minimize joints. Produce flat, flush surfaces without cracking or grain separation at bends.

### 2.4 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Complete mechanical finishes of flat sheet metal surfaces before fabrication where possible. After fabrication, finish all joints, bends, abrasions, and other surface blemishes to match sheet finish.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Apply organic and anodic finishes to formed metal after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are

not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.5 ALUMINUM FINISH

- A. High-Performance Organic Finish: Three-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

- 1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard finishes.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas where column covers are to be installed and notify the Architect of conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate and place column covers plumb and in alignment with adjacent construction. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required to install column covers.
- B. Do not cut or abrade finishes that cannot be completely restored in the field. Return items with such finishes to the shop for required alterations, followed by complete refinishing, or provide new units as required.
- C. Use concealed anchorages where possible.
- D. Form tight joints with exposed connections accurately fitted together. Provide reveals and openings for sealants and joint fillers as indicated.
- E. Corrosion Protection: Apply bituminous paint or other permanent separation materials on concealed surfaces where metals would otherwise be in direct contact with substrate materials that are incompatible or could result in corrosion or deterioration of either material or finish.

### 3.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of metal units and of trim; comply with manufacturer's instructions for cleaning and touch-up of minor finish damage. Remove and replace work that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage, including dented and bent units.
- B. Protect finishes from damage during construction period. Remove temporary protective coverings at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 055813

SECTION 062000 - CARPENTRY

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the carpentry work as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Blocking and miscellaneous wood.
  - 2. Plywood backing panels for telephone and electrical closets.
  - 3. Rough hardware.
  - 4. Installation only of finish hardware.
  - 5. Installation only of doors and hollow metal frames.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Architectural Woodwork - Section 064023.
- B. Roofing - Section 075216.
- C. Steel Doors and Frames - Section 081113.
- D. Wood Doors - Section 081416.
- E. Door Hardware - Section 087100.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Lumber Standard: Comply with PS 20.
- B. Plywood Standard: Comply with PS 1 and American Plywood Assoc. (APA).
- C. Shop fabricate carpentry work to the extent feasible and where shop fabrication will result in better workmanship than feasible for on-site fabrication.
- D. Grade Marks: Identify lumber and plywood by official grade mark.
  - 1. Lumber: Grade stamp to contain symbol of grading agency certified by Board of Review, American Lumber Standards Committee, mill number or name, grade of lumber, species grouping or combination designation, rules under which graded where applicable, and condition of seasoning at time of manufacture.
    - a. S-Dry: Maximum nineteen (19) percent moisture content as per ASTM D 2016.

- E. Installation of doors, frames and hardware shall conform to the minimum standards of "Installation Guides for Doors and Hardware" of the Door and Hardware Institute.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Pressure Treatment: Include certification by treating plant stating chemicals and process used, net amount of salts retained and conformance with applicable standards.
- B. Fire-Retardant Treatment: Include certification by treating plant that treatment material complies with governing ordinances and that treatment will not bleed through finished surfaces.

#### 1.6 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Deliver carpentry materials to the site ready to use with each piece of lumber clearly marked as to grade, type and mill, and place in an area protected from the elements.
- B. Deliver rough hardware in sealed kegs and/or other containers which shall bear labels as to type and kind.
- C. Pile lumber for rough usage, when delivered to the site in stacks to insure drainage and with a minimum clearance of six (6) inches above grade. Cover stacks with tarpaulins or other watertight coverings. Store grounds and similar small sized lumber inside the building as soon as possible after delivery.
- D. Do not store seasoned lumber in wet or damp portions of the building.
- E. Protect fire-retardant treated materials against high humidity and moisture during storage and erection.
- F. Remove delivered materials which do not conform to specified grading rules or are otherwise not suitable for installation from the job site and replace with acceptable materials.
- G. All items specified in Section 087100 of this specification entitled "Door Hardware" shall be received, accounted for, stored and applied under this Section.
- H. Hardware shall be sorted and stored in space assigned by Contractor and shall be kept at all times under lock and key. The safety and preservation of all items delivered will be the responsibility of the Contractor.

#### 1.7 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Installer must examine the substrates and supporting structure and the conditions under which the carpentry work is to be installed and notify the Contractor in writing of conditions detrimental to the work. Do not proceed with the installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to the Installer and the Architect.
- B. Coordination: Fit carpentry work to other work; scribe and cope as required for accurate fit. Correlate location of furring, nailers, blocking, grounds and similar supports to allow proper attachment of other work.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 WOOD MATERIAL

- A. General
  - 1. All wood shall be sound, flat, straight, well-seasoned, thoroughly dry and free from all defects. Warped or twisted wood shall not be used.

2. For miscellaneous wood blocking, grounds, furring as required, use Utility Grade Coastal Douglas Fir or Southern Pine, free from knots, shakes, rot or other defects, straight, square edges and straight grain, air seasoned with maximum moisture content of nineteen (19) percent. Wood shall be S4S, S-Dry, complying with PS-20.
3. Plywood and rough carpentry for telephone and electrical closets, provide 3/4" thick C-D EXT-APA plywood, fire retardant treated as specified herein.

B. Wood Treatment

1. All interior wood material specified herein shall be fire-retardant treated to comply with the AWP standard U1 to achieve a flame spread rating of not more than 25 (UL Class "FR-S") when tested in accordance with UL Test 723 or ASTM E 84. The fire-retardant chemicals used to treat the lumber must comply with FR-1 of AWP Standard P49 and be free of halogens, sulfates and ammonium phosphate.
  - a. After treatment, kiln dry to a moisture content of fifteen (15) percent; if wood is to be painted or finished, kiln dry to a moisture content of twelve (12) percent. Treatment shall be equal to "Dricon" made by Arch Wood Protection Inc. or approved equal. Provide UL approved identification on treated materials.
2. For exterior blocking, roofing and sheet metal, pressure treat wood with copper azole, Type B (CA-B); ammoniacal copper quat (ACQ) or similar preservative product that contains no arsenic or chromium. Preservative shall comply with AWP Standard U1, (.25 lbs./cubic foot of chemical in wood).
  - a. After treatment, kiln dry to a maximum moisture content of fifteen (15) percent. Treatment shall be equal to "Wolmanized Natural Select" made by Arch Wood Protection Inc. or approved equal.
3. Treated wood which is cut or otherwise damaged shall be further treated in accordance with the AWP Standard M-4.

2.2 HARDWARE

- A. Rough Hardware for Treated Woods and Exterior Use: Hot-dipped galvanized or Type 304 stainless steel.
- B. Nails: Common steel wire, untreated for interior work as per ASTM F 1667.
- C. Bolts: Standard mild steel, square head machine bolts with square nuts and malleable iron or steel plate washers or carriage bolts with square nuts and cut washers conforming to the following:
  1. Bolts: ASTM A 307, Grade A.
  2. Nuts: ASTM A 563.
  3. Lag Screws and Bolts: ASME B 18.2.1.
- D. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
  1. Material for Treated Woods and Exterior Use: Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2.

2. Material for Other Uses: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
- E. Wood Screws: ASME B 18.6.1.
- F. Concrete and Masonry Anchors: Standard expansion-shield self-drilling type concrete anchors where so shown or noted on the drawings, or where approved by the Architect.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where carpentry is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF FINISH HARDWARE

- A. Hardware shall be carefully fitted and securely attached, in accordance with these specifications and the instructions of the various manufacturers.
- B. Unless otherwise noted, mount hardware units at heights established in Section 081113.
- C. Install each hardware item in compliance with the manufacturer's instructions and recommendations. Wherever cutting and fitting is required to install hardware onto or into surfaces which are later to be painted or finished in another way, install each item completely and then remove and store in a secure place during the finish application. After completion of the finishes, re-install each item. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on the substrate.
- D. Set units level, plumb and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce the attachment substrate as necessary for proper installation and operation.
- E. Drill and countersink units which are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors in accordance with industry standards.
- F. Cut and fit threshold and floor covers to profile of door frames, with mitered corners and hair-line joints. Join units with concealed welds or concealed mechanical joints. Cut smooth openings for spindles, bolts and similar items, if any.
- G. All keys used shall be construction keys which are to be tagged with fiber discs as approved, clearly labeled with identifying inscriptions and then neatly arranged in a temporary cabinet. All construction keys shall be returned to the Owner.
- H. Adjusting and Cleaning
  1. Adjust and check each operating item of hardware and each door, to ensure proper operation and function of every unit. Lubricate moving parts with type lubrication recommended by manufacturer (graphite type if no other recommended). Replace units which cannot be adjusted and lubricated to operate freely and smoothly as intended for the application made.
  2. Final Adjustment: Wherever hardware installation is made more than one month prior to acceptance or occupancy of a space or area, return to the work during the week prior to acceptance or occupancy, and make a final check and adjustment of all hardware items in such space or area. Clean and re-lubricate operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish of hardware and doors. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment.



3.3 INSTALLATION OF DOORS AND FRAMES

A. Preparation

1. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory.
2. Prior to installation and with installation spreaders in place, adjust and securely brace standard steel door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the following tolerances:
  - a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
  - b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
  - c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
  - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a perpendicular line from head to floor.
3. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive non-templated mortised and surface-mounted door hardware.

B. Installation

1. General: Provide doors and frames of sizes, thicknesses, and designs indicated. Install steel doors and frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place; comply with Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.
  - a. Install frames in accordance with ANSI/SDI A250.11, Recommended Erection Instructions for Steel Frames, unless more stringent requirements are specified herein.
  - b. At fire-protection-rated openings, install frames according to NFPA 80.
  - c. Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
  - d. Install frames with removable glazing stops located on secure side of opening.
  - e. Frames set in masonry walls shall have door silencers installed in frames before grouting.
  - f. Remove temporary braces necessary for installation only after frames have been properly set and secured.
  - g. Check plumb, squareness, and twist of frames as walls are constructed. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.
3. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor and secure with post-installed expansion anchors.
  - a. Floor anchors may be set with powder-actuated fasteners instead of post-installed expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
4. Metal-Stud Partitions: Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation behind frames conforming to the requirements of Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation."
5. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with mortar; refer to Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for installation of frames in masonry walls.

6. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with post-installed expansion anchors. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
7. In-Place Gypsum Board Partitions: Secure frames in place with post-installed expansion anchors through floor anchors at each jamb. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
8. Ceiling Struts: Extend struts vertically from top of frame at each jamb to supporting construction above, unless frame is anchored to masonry or to other structural support at each jamb. Bend top of struts to provide flush contact for securing to supporting construction above. Provide adjustable wedged or bolted anchorage to frame jamb members.
9. Installation Tolerances: Adjust steel door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the tolerance given in HMMA 841 of ANSI/NAAMM, current edition.
10. Steel Doors: Fit hollow metal doors accurately in frames to the tolerances given in HMMA 841 of ANSI/NAAMM, current edition.
  - a. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances according to NFPA 80.
11. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Section 088000 "Glass and Glazing" and with standard steel door and frame manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Secure stops with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches o.c., and not more than 2 inches o.c. from each corner.

C. Wood Doors

1. Condition doors to average prevailing humidity in installation area prior to hanging.
  2. Install doors in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  3. Fit door to frames and machine for hardware to whatever extent not previously worked at factory as required for proper fit and uniform clearance at each edge.
  4. Clearances: Install doors to meet clearance requirements specified in Section 081416.
  5. Fire-Rated Doors: Install in corresponding fire-rated frames in accordance with the requirements of NFPA No. 80. Provide clearances complying with the limitations of the authority having jurisdiction.
- D. Adjustments: Check and readjust operating finish hardware items just prior to final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work, including doors or frames which are warped, bowed or otherwise unacceptable.

3.4 BLOCKING AND MISCELLANEOUS WOOD

A. General

1. Erect rough carpentry true to line, levels and dimensions required; squared, aligned, plumbed, and securely fastened in place.
2. Shim where required to true up furring, blocking and the like. Use wood or metal shims only.
3. Do all cutting, fitting, drilling, and tapping of other work as required to secure work in place and to perform the work included herein. Do all the cutting and fitting of carpentry work, for the work of other trades as required.

B. Blocking and Miscellaneous Wood

1. Furnish and install all wood grounds, furring, blocking, curbs, bucks, nailers, etc., that may be necessary and required in connection with the carpentry and with the work described for any other trades and including required carpentry for electrical fixtures. All blocking and nailers shall be continuous wherever required, whether or not so indicated.
2. Blocking shall be as required for the proper installation of the finished work and for items in mechanical sections as required. Blocking, edgings, stops, nailing strips, etc., shall be continuous, unless distinctly noted otherwise. Provide blocking as required to install all equipment. Provide blocking and nailers where shown or required to fasten interior sheet metal work.
3. Fastening for wood grounds, furring and blocking shall be of metal and of type and spacing as best suited to conditions. Hardened steel nails, expansion screws, toggle bolts, self-clinching nails, metal plugs, inserts or similar fastenings shall be used, of suitable type and size to draw the members into place and securely hold same.

C. Rough Lumber for Roofing and Sheet Metal

1. Furnish and install all wood nailing strips and wood blocking required in connection with respective types of roofing, fans, flashings, and sheet metal work, using preservative treated wood as herein before specified.
2. Wood blocking shall be of sizes and shapes as indicated on the drawings and/or designed for the reception of curb flashings for roof ventilators and similar items.
3. All nailing strips and blocking shall be carried out in accordance with the printed installation instructions, and/or recommendations of the accepted manufacturer of the roofing materials, and in coordination and cooperation with the sheet metal work trades.
4. All blocking and nailing strips shall be firmly secured in place using counter bored bolt and nut fastenings, or secured by any other proposed flush surfaced fastenings.
5. Wood nailing strips or blocking required to be embedded in concrete work shall be furnished in time due for placing, prior to start of concrete operations. Locations and spacings of nailing strips or blocking shall be performed in coordination with the concrete trades, as required for respective installations.

3.5 TELEPHONE AND ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MOUNTING BOARDS

- A. Furnish and install 3/4" thick plywood panels to the walls of the telephone and electrical equipment rooms in accordance with the requirements of the local utility company.
- B. Secure to wall using proper devices for substrates encountered, spaced twelve (12) inches o.c., maximum around the edges, 1-1/2" from corners, and in three (3) rows of three (3) each in the field. Recess fastening devices flush with the plywood surface. Adjacent panels shall be butted with 1/16" space between without lapping.

3.6 ROUGH HARDWARE

- A. Securely fasten rough carpentry together. Nail, spike, lag screw or bolt as required by conditions encountered in the field and the Contract Documents.
- B. Provide rough or framing hardware, such as nails, screws, bolts, anchors, hangers, clips, inserts, miscellaneous fastenings, and similar items of the best quality and of the proper size and kind to adequately secure the work together and in place, in a rigid and substantial manner.

- C. Secure rough carpentry to masonry with countersunk bolts in expansion sleeves or other acceptable manner, with fastenings not more than sixteen (16) inches apart. Secure woodwork to hollow masonry with toggle bolts spaced not more than sixteen (16) inches apart.
- D. Countersink bolts in nailers and other rough woodwork and include washers and nuts. Cut bolts off flush with surfaces and peen as may be required to receive finished work.
- E. Inserts to secure wood nailers to concrete shall be malleable iron threaded inserts with 3/8" diameter bolts of length to allow for countersinking. Locate at end of each nailer and at intervals not exceeding thirty (30) inches o.c.
- F. Furnish to the mason for building into the work, or attaching the work, which is to be built in, anchors, bolts, wall plates bolted to masonry, corrugated wall plugs, nailing blocks, etc., which are required for the proper fastening and installation for the work or other items as called for in this Section.
- G. Detailed instructions with sketches of necessary requirements, shall be given to the masonry trade showing the location and other details of such nailing devices.

3.7 CLEANING UP

- A. General: Keep the premises in a neat, safe and orderly condition at all times during execution of this portion of the work, free from accumulation of sawdust, cut-ends and debris.
- B. Sweeping: At the end of each working day, or more often if necessary, thoroughly sweep all surfaces where refuse from this portion of the work has settled.
  - 1. Remove the refuse to the area of the job site set aside for its storage.
  - 2. Upon completion of this portion of the work, thoroughly broom clean all surfaces.

END OF SECTION 062000

SECTION 064023 - ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the architectural woodwork as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Wood wall and stair cladding.
  - 2. Wood trim and door frames.
  - 3. Wood millwork and counters with plastic laminate finish.
  - 4. Hardware for architectural woodwork.
  - 5. Wood for cast-in-place concrete tiered seating area and adjacent wall.
  - 6. Solid surfacing material countertops.
  - 7. Remodeling of existing architectural woodwork.
  - 8. Wood framing and rough lumber as required for work of this Section.
  - 9. Wood grounds, blocking, nailers, furring as required for work of this Section.
  - 10. All rough hardware and fastenings for work of this Section.
  - 11. Drilling concrete and masonry, drilling and/or tapping metal work, as required, for the installation of work of this Section.
  - 12. Back painting as specified herein.
  - 13. Shop finish of work of this Section, except items indicated herein to be shop primed only.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Carpentry - Section 062000.
- B. Caulking between architectural woodwork and any wall, floor, or ceiling joints - Section 079200.
- C. Wood Doors - Section 081416.
- D. Field finishing of architectural woodwork - Section 099000.
- E. Prefabricated Kitchen Casework - Section 123530.

1.4 QUALITY STANDARDS

- A. The quality standards of the Architectural Woodwork Institute, "Architectural Woodwork Standards" (AWS), 2nd Edition, dated July 1, 2016, shall apply to all workmanship, including materials and installation, for architectural woodwork, and by reference are made a part of this specification. All work shall conform to "Premium" grade requirements of the AWS unless otherwise modified herein.
- B. In the event of a dispute as to the quality grade (or grades), the Contractor shall call upon the Architectural Woodwork Institute for an inspection under AWI's Quality Certification Program which shall include a QCP Inspection and Report. The Contractor agrees to abide by the decision of this Report. The cost of said inspection and report shall be borne by the Contractor.
- C. Employ only tradesmen experienced in the fabrication and installation of architectural woodwork.
- D. Woodworking firm must be accredited by the AWI Quality Certification Program (QCP).

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings
  - 1. Submit shop drawings of all woodwork specified and indicated on the drawings. Shop drawings shall indicate room plans and elevations at 3/4" equals 1'-0" scale and typical construction details at 3" equals 1'-0" scale. Shop drawings shall indicate all materials, thicknesses and finishes.
  - 2. Shop drawings shall show all finish hardware, anchors, fastenings and accessories.
  - 3. Shop drawings shall show all jointing, joint treatment and butt jointing in veneers and plastic laminate.
  - 4. Shop drawings for cabinet work must show centerline height and horizontal location of all required internal wall blocking.
  - 5. Where architectural woodwork deviates from AWI standards noted herein, shop drawings must identify these deviations.
- B. Samples: Submit samples of each of the following items:
  - 1. Plastic laminate, twelve (12) inches square, including a section of outside corner.
  - 2. Transparent finish for each species of wood veneer laminated to particleboard, twelve (12) inches square, for each finish specified or shown.
  - 3. Opaque finish wood veneer laminated to particleboard, twelve (12) inches square for each color, gloss and finish specified or shown.
  - 4. Each type and finish of each type of wood trim, door frame, etc., eight (8) inches long, finish as specified.
  - 5. Cabinet hardware.

1.6 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. The work of this Section shall be provided by a firm having a minimum of five (5) years' experience on projects of similar size and quality to that specified and shown.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate the work of this Section with other appropriate Sections of the specifications to insure proper scheduling for fabrication and installation of the work specified herein.
- B. Coordinate with partition and finish trades to insure that proper provisions are made for the installation of the work specified herein.
- C. Verify all dimensions in the field prior to fabrication of all Architectural Woodwork to assure proper fit.

1.8 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. All materials and work of this Section shall be protected from damage from time of shipment from shop to final acceptance of work. Cover, ventilate, and protect work of this Section from damage caused by weather, moisture, heat, staining, dirt, abrasions, any other causes which may adversely affect appearance or use, or which may cause deterioration of finish, warping, distortion, twisting, opening of joints and seams, delamination, loosening, etc., of work of this Section.
- B. Keep all finish carpentry, millwork, and cabinet work under cover both in transit and at the premises. Do not deliver any finish carpentry, millwork or cabinet work before it is required for installation. Protect such work to avoid damage in transit, during erection and after erection until acceptance of the building; use all such methods to provide the proper protection. Remove such protection when directed by the Architect.
- C. Deliver finish carpentry, millwork, and cabinet work in a dry stable condition; protect same against injury and dampness. Do not store or install finish carpentry, millwork or cabinet work until after the concrete, masonry and plaster work are thoroughly dry.
- D. Damaged or defective items of work of this Section are subject to rejection and replacement with new by Contractor, at no cost to Owner.

1.9 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Humidity Controls: The ambient relative humidity at the site, including both the storage and the installation areas, shall be maintained between 25% and 55% prior to delivery and through the life of the installation.
- B. Determine equilibrium moisture content and maintain required temperature and relative humidity as required for a tolerance of plus or minus one (1) percent of the specified optimum moisture content until woodwork receives specified finishes. Refer to "Guide to Wood Species Selection," AWI, for method of determining equilibrium moisture content values.
- C. Examination of Substrate and Conditions: The installer must examine the substrate and the conditions under which the work of this Section is to be performed and notify the Contractor in writing of unsatisfactory conditions. Do not proceed with work under this Section until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to the Installer.
- D. Areas to receive architectural woodwork must be fully enclosed with windows and/or curtain wall installed and glazed, exterior doors in place, HVAC systems operational, and temporary openings closed. Any plaster, wet grinding and concrete work shall be fully dry.
- E. Architectural woodwork shall be allowed to come to equilibrium on site for 7 days prior to installation.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 BASIC REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wood Moisture Content: Provide kiln-dried (KD) lumber with an average moisture content range of nine (9) to twelve (12) percent for exterior work and six (6) to eleven (11) percent for interior work.
- B. Measurements: Before proceeding with woodwork required to be fitted to other construction, obtain field measurements and verify all dimensions of shop drawing details as required for accurate fit.
- C. Compatibility of Grain and Color: Architect reserves the right to select materials for best compatibility between visually related members and veneers.
- D. Machine and sand woodwork to comply with requirements of Standards for specified grade.
- E. Fabricate woodwork to dimensions, profiles and details shown. Rout or groove back of flat trim members, kerf backs of other wide flat members except plywood or veneered members.
- F. Miter joints by joining, splining and gluing to comply with requirements for the specified grade.
- G. Inspect each piece of lumber and plywood or each unit of woodwork after drying; do not use twisted, warped, bowed or otherwise damaged or defective wood.

### 2.2 GENERAL - MATERIALS

- A. Softwood lumber shall conform to the requirements of the latest edition of American Lumber Standards Simplified Practice Recommendation R-16. Grades shall conform to the grading rules of the Association having jurisdiction and shall bear the official grade and trademark of the Inspection Bureau of the Association and a mark of mill identification.
- B. Framing and Rough Lumber: No. 1 KD grade Southern Pine or Dense Construction grade Douglas Fir, having extreme fiber in bending stress of at least 1700 psi, surfaced four sides (S4S). Provide fire retardant treatment meeting requirements of Section 062000.
- C. Grounds, Blocking, Nailers, Furring: Southern Pine, Douglas Fir or Sitka Spruce, grade to suit particular purpose and to be straight, square edged, straight grained, surfaced four sides (S4S), and which will retain nails and screws without splitting. Provide fire retardant treatment.
- D. Wood Veneers and Lumber: Provide AWI Premium Grade materials and workmanship. For species not listed in the AWS comply with the following:
  - 1. Provide AWS Lumber Grade Premium and AWS Grade AA Veneer, book-matched, minimum 6 inch face veneer width. Kiln dry to 6-8 percent moisture content. Components shall be free of defects and sapwood. Match adjacent pieces for color and grain pattern.
  - 2. Single-Source Requirement for Wood Veneers and Solids: Intent is to provide wood which matches as closely as possible throughout the project. Provide wood veneers and solids from the same distributor, and from the same flitches and solids sources to the greatest extent possible.
- E. Lumber: AWS Section 3 with the following requirements:
  - 1. Hardwood for Transparent Finish: Premium Grade, select species and cut to match adjoining veneers, unless otherwise shown or specified, and free from cat's eyes, bird's eyes, burls, curls or cross grains.
  - 2. Hardwood for Opaque Finish: Any hardwood which, when finished, will not show any grain, imperfection or other surface defects when used with the opaque finish specified.



- F. Plywood: AWS Section 4; veneer core, particleboard or plywood core unless otherwise specified, and with the following requirements:
  - 1. Hardwood: Premium Grade, face veneers as shown or specified.
  - 2. Particleboard: Premium Grade, fire retardant for wall paneling only equal to Duraflake FR and Duraflake for cabinets. Particleboard shall be certified to meet EPP CPA 3-08 formaldehyde emission limit of 0.18 ppm and contain no added formaldehyde resins.
  - 3. Medium-Density Fiberboard (MDF): Conforming to ANSI A208.2, Grade 130 and ANSI MR10 moisture-resistant properties on 5/8" or thicker board. MDF shall be certified to meet EPP CPA 3-08 formaldehyde emission limit of 0.21 ppm and contain no added formaldehyde resins.
  - 4. Edges: Banded with hardwood in accordance with Premium Grade Standards.
- G. Wood Species and Cut for Transparent Finish: Quarter sliced/sawn, species as selected by the Architect.
  - 1. Architect's control samples for transparent finish, veneer grain and figure characteristics are available for review at the office of the Architect.
- H. Veneer Matching Requirements:
  - 1. Matching Between Adjacent Veneer Leaves: Book match and architectural end match.
  - 2. Matching Within Individual Panel Faces: Balance and Center Match.
  - 3. Method of Matching Panels: Blueprint-matched panels and components.
- I. Finishing (Wood)
  - 1. Transparent Finish
    - a. AWI Factory Finish System "Conversion Varnish, System 5, Transparent."
    - b. AWI Premium Grade.
    - c. Stain: As selected by the Architect.
    - d. Degree of Sheen: Dull satin.
  - 2. Opaque Finish
    - a. AWI Factory Finish System "Conversion Varnish, System 5, Opaque."
    - b. AWI Premium Grade.
    - c. Degree of Sheen: Satin.
    - d. No grain to show.

## 2.3 PLASTIC LAMINATE

- A. Face Sheets: NEMA Publication LD3, Grade GP50, Type I, 0.05" thick, as manufactured by Formica, or comparable product by Nevamar, WilsonArt or approved equal. Color, pattern and finish as selected by the Architect.
- B. Backing Sheets: Non-decorative, high-pressure plastic laminate, NEMA LD3, Grade BK20, 0.02" thick.
- C. Edges: Finish with plastic laminate to match face and applied before face sheets are applied, unless otherwise shown or specified.

2.4 METAL

A. Steel

1. Structural Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36.
2. Hot-Rolled Carbon Steel Sheets: Commercial quality, ASTM A 569, may be used for concealed parts only. Galvanize sheets for planters.

B. Primer for Unexposed Metal: Zinc chromate primer.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS PRODUCTS

A. Fasteners

1. Wood Screws: FS FF-S-111, type, size, material and finish as required for the condition of use.
2. Nails: FS FF-N-105, type, size, material and finish as required for the condition of use.
3. Anchors: Type, size, material and finish as required for the condition of use.
4. Staples: Upholstery type staples of sufficient strength to hold fabric taut in place without sagging.

B. Adhesives

1. For Laminating Plastic Laminate Surfaces: Urea resin, Type II, as recommended by fabricator.
2. For All Other Uses: Polyvinyl acetate resin emulsion or other type as recommended by the fabricator.

2.6 CABINETS WITH PLASTIC LAMINATE FINISH

A. General

1. Fabricate all cabinetry and millwork to the "Premium Grade" standards of the AWS, Section 10.
2. Face construction of cabinets shall be "Flush Overlay."
3. Provide 3/4" thick doors, drawer fronts and fixed panels (including thickness of plastic) except where required to be thicker by Standards; and provide flush units.
4. Provide dust panels of 1/4" thick plywood or tempered hardboard above compartments and drawers, except where located directly below countertops.
5. Exposed Edges: Plastic laminate matching exposed panel surfaces. Ease exposed edge of overlap sheet.

B. Plastic Laminate

1. Plastic Laminate for Horizontal Surfaces: 0.050" thick, general purpose type (high pressure).
2. Plastic Laminate for External Vertical Surfaces: 0.028" thick, general purpose type (high pressure).
3. Plastic Laminate for Post Forming: 0.042" thick, post forming (high pressure).
4. Plastic Laminate for Cabinet Linings: 0.020" thick, cabinet liner (high pressure).
5. Plastic Laminate for Concealed Panel Backing: 0.020" thick, backer type (high pressure).

- 6. Plastic Laminate Colors and Patterns: As selected by the Architect from manufacturer's standard satin finish products.
- C. Shop Assembly: All work shall be shop assembled. Work that is too large for entrance into the use area shall be fabricated in attachable sections with provisions for reconnection in the using space.
- D. Material Thicknesses: See drawings for general material thicknesses. Minimum thickness of solid lumber for web frames, trim, bases, etc., shall be 3/4". Minimum thickness of plywood and particleboard shall be 3/4".
- E. Sizes: See drawings for woodwork sizes required. The manufacturer shall check field dimensions and verify all openings and actual field conditions prior to fabrication of work.
- F. Manufacturer is responsible for rigidity and structural stability.

## 2.7 PLASTIC LAMINATE COUNTERTOPS

- A. Grade: Same as AWI grade required for cabinet work; plastic laminate finish.
- B. Construction
  - 1. Provide back-splash and end-splash, where detailed; top-mounted square butt joint, fully covered with matching plastic laminate, eased edges.
  - 2. Exposed Counter Edges: Plastic laminate matching surface, except as otherwise indicated. Ease exposed edges of overlap sheet.
  - 3. Cut openings for equipment to be installed. Comply with equipment manufacturer's requirements, but provide internal corners of 1/8" minimum radius. Smooth saw cut and ease edges.
  - 4. Seal cut edges of counter at openings for sinks and other "wet" equipment, using waterproofing compound recommended by plastic manufacturer and compatible with laminating adhesive.

## 2.8 HARDWARE

- A. Architectural Woodwork Hardware: Provide the following items, or their approved equal, as required:
  - 1. Hinges: Hafele concealed hinges.
  - 2. Catches: Magnetic; top and bottom.
  - 3. Pulls: Selected by the Architect.
  - 4. Locks: Directed by the Architect.
  - 5. Drawer Slides
    - a. 24" Maximum Width: Accuride, Model 7434, full extension, 100 lb. capacity.
    - b. 16" Maximum Width, Easy Close: Accuride Model 3832C, full extension, 100 lb. capacity.
  - 6. Shelf Supports: Pin and grommet system equal to No. 282.01.701 pin and 282.50.704 grommet made by Hafele.
  - 7. Finish: Satin stainless steel.
- B. Closet Hardware: Oval wardrobe rails, chrome-plated steel with center bracket and wall-support brackets made by Hafele or approved equal.

2.9 WOOD FOR TIER SEATING AREA

- A. Provide wood for seating areas and walls; install vertically on walls as indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Clad portions of cast-in-place concrete seating element treads and risers, where detailed, in solid hardwood to match wood flooring specified in Section 096429. Use same wood for cladding the adjacent wall in wood planks (matching wood plank flooring). Wood planks at wall shall be attached to furring, as detailed on the drawings.
  - 2. Wood Species: Oak, 3/4" thick planks.

2.10 WOOD FOR TRIM AND FRAMES

- A. Quality Standard: For the following types of interior architectural woodwork, comply with indicated standards as applicable.
  - 1. Standing and Running Trim: AWS Section 6.
  - 2. Miscellaneous Millwork: AWS Section 6.
- B. Woodwork for Transparent Finish: Except as otherwise indicated, comply with the following:
  - 1. Grade: Premium.
  - 2. Species of Solid Wood: Quarter Sawn Species as noted on drawings.
- C. Woodwork for Paint Finish: Except as otherwise indicated, comply with the following:
  - 1. Grade: Premium.
  - 2. Species of Solid Wood: Solid, paint grade, sound clear Poplar or Birch.

2.11 SOLID SURFACING MATERIAL COUNTERTOPS

- A. Provide 1/2" thick "Corian" countertops, with integral bowls where indicated, as manufactured by E.I. Du Pont or approved equal made by Avonite, WilsonArt, or Gibraltar meeting standards specified herein. Countertops shall be of color as selected by the Architect.
- B. Material: Cast, filled, acrylic; not coated, laminated or of composite construction, meeting ANSI Z124-1980, Type Six, and ISS FA-2.01 "Classification and Standards Publication of Solid Surfacing Material" as published by the International Solid Surface Fabricators Association (ISSFA).
- C. Countertops shall be adhesively joined with no exposed seams, having edge details shown on drawings.
- D. Material shall conform to the published performance characteristics of ISSFA-2-01.
- E. Joint Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard two-part adhesive kit to create inconspicuous, non-porous joints.
- F. Sealant: Manufacturer's standard mildew-resistant, FDA/UL recognized silicone sealant in colors matching components.
- G. Fabrication
  - 1. Fabricator must be approved by the solid surface manufacturer.

2. Factory fabricate components to custom sizes and shapes indicated, in accordance with approved shop drawings.
  3. Form joints between components using manufacturer's standard joint adhesive; without conspicuous joints.
  4. Provide factory cutouts for plumbing fittings and accessories as indicated on the drawings.
  5. Cut and finish component edges with clean, sharp returns. Route radii and contours to template. Repair or reject defective and inaccurate work.
- H. Warranty: The manufacturer shall warrant to the Owner that the manufacturer will repair or replace (at his/her option), without charge, such product that fails because of a manufacturing defect during the first 10 years after initial installation. This includes all labor charges needed to repair or replace the product covered hereunder.

#### 2.12 FABRICATION - GENERAL

- A. Provide lumber framing for architectural woodwork, complete with all bracing and fastening devices as required for a rigid installation, and as required to sustain the imposed loads.
- B. Do all fabrication from field measurement with provision for scribing as required to meet built-in conditions.
- C. Coordinate the work of this Section with the work of other trades.
- D. Fabricate units in largest practicable sections. Assemble in the shop for trial fit, disassemble for shipment and reassemble with concealed fasteners.
- E. Maintain relative humidity and temperature during fabrication, storage and finishing operations matching that of the areas of installation.
- F. Details indicate the required type and quality of construction. Modifications to conform to manufacturer's standards will be considered provided that they comply with the Contract Documents and maintain the profiles shown, subject to acceptance by the Architect.
- G. Reinforcing shown is minimum. Provide additional reinforcing as required to ensure a rigid assembly. Exposed surfaces shall be free from dents, tool marks, warpage, buckle, glue and open joints, or other defects affecting serviceability or appearance. Accurately fit all joints, corners and miters. Conceal all fasteners. Make threaded connections up tight so that threads are entirely concealed.
- H. Factory finish all items where possible. Defer final touch-up, cleaning and polishing until after delivery and installation.
- I. Comply with AWI, Premium Grade, for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, back priming and similar preparations for the finishing of architectural woodwork, as applicable to each unit of work.
- J. Prepare all countersunk wood screw attachments for wood plugs. Wood plugs shall match surrounding species and grain direction; putty filling is not acceptable.

#### 2.13 FABRICATION - SPECIFIC ITEMS

- A. Millwork
  1. Include all preparations for mechanical, electrical, telephone and plumbing work required.
  2. Provide cabinet hardware for millwork as shown.

3. Provide dust panels in body webs and between drawer units.
  4. Provide wood veneers for exposed surfaces as specified herein before.
  5. Hollow core doors will not be permitted.
  6. Provide matching veneers for edge treatments of case body members where transparent finishes are indicated or specified.
  7. Provide drawers with slides as specified. Drawers shall not rest on web body frames.
  8. Provide wood veneers for transparent finish, of matching and continuing grain, for drawer and door edges.
- B. Closet and Storage Shelving
1. Provide closet and storage shelving in accordance with AWI, Custom Grade, unless otherwise shown or specified.
  2. Exposed edges shall have hardwood edge bands.
- C. Standing and Running Trim: Provide standing and running trim of the sizes, profiles, species and finish as specified or shown and complying with AWI Section 6, Premium Grade.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where architectural woodwork is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

#### 3.2 FRAMING

- A. Use specified framing lumber, sizes and spacing as indicated on drawings and as required to support loads.
- B. Framing shall be cut square on bearings, closely fitted, accurately set to required lines and levels, rigidly secured in place at bearings and connection with nails, lag screws and/or bolts as required by conditions.

#### 3.3 GROUNDS, BLOCKING, NAILERS AND FURRING

- A. Provide all wood grounds, blocking, nailers, furring, and the like for work of this Section, where shown and where required, dressed to size indicated or required to suit the condition. Install grounds, blocking, nailers, furring, etc., rigidly, in proper alignment, trued with a long straight edge.

#### 3.4 ROUGH HARDWARE

- A. Provide all rough hardware, such as nails, screws, bolts, anchors, hangers, clips and similar items. Hardware shall be of the proper size and kind to adequately secure the work together and in place, in a rigid and substantial manner. Use galvanized hardware at exterior walls, and at other locations where subject to moisture or where water will be present.
- B. Secure wood to concrete and to solid masonry with countersunk bolts in expansion sleeves or other approved manner, to steel with countersunk bolts, to hollow masonry and to drywall with heavy duty

countersunk toggle bolts. Space fastenings not more than sixteen (16) inches apart. Hardened cut nails, power-driven fastenings, or other suitable devices may be used where approved by the Architect.

- C. Connections and fastenings shall be made in such manner as will compensate for swelling and shrinkage and shall permit the work to remain permanently in place without any splitting or opening of joints.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF CABINET FINISH HARDWARE

- A. All items of finish hardware furnished under this Section shall be carefully fitted and secured in place as part of the work of this Section. Locations and positioning of hardware shall be subject to the Architect's approval. Care shall be taken not to mar or damage hardware, or other work. Install doors plumb and true. Hardware shall be fitted to assure operation without forcing.
- B. After preliminary fitting of hardware, the Contractor shall remove trim for painting and finishing work; after which he shall reinstall the hardware in a permanent manner.
- C. Upon completion of the work, before final acceptance of the building by the Owner, the Contractor shall, in the presence of the Architect, show that all hardware is in satisfactory working order; fit all keys in their respective locks and, upon acceptance of the work, shall tag and deliver all keys to the Architect and Owner.
- D. When directed by the Owner, at any time during the first year after the completion of the Contract, the Contractor shall return to the building and adjust and refit the work and hardware and leave such items in satisfactory working order.

### 3.6 GENERAL INSTALLATION

- A. Wall anchorage and general installation procedures for cabinetry work shall conform to AWS Section 10, Article entitled "EXECUTION," Sub-Article 6.1, with all related sub-paragraphs.
- B. Install the work plumb, level, true and straight with no distortions. Shim as required using concealed shims. Install to a tolerance of 1/8" in 8'-0" for plumb and level (including countertops), and with 1/16" maximum offset in flush adjoining surfaces, 1/8" maximum offset in revealed adjoining surfaces.
- C. Scribe and cut work to fit adjoining work and refinish cut surfaces or repair damaged finish at cuts.
- D. Anchor woodwork to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure to grounds, stripping and blocking with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing as required for a complete installation.

### 3.7 WOOD TRIM

- A. Install with minimum number of joints possible, using full-length pieces for each run. Stagger joints in adjacent and related members. Cope at returns, miter corner.
- B. Joints of all trim and/or moldings shall be set tight, miter exterior angles and cope interior angles. Joints, except end joints less than twelve (12) feet apart, will not be permitted in straight runs of trim and/or moldings and rails.
- C. Secure all trim and/or moldings with glue and blind nail with finishing nails. Set exposed nail heads in finished work and putty. Sand all work to remove any tool marks and irregularities.
- D. Wood shall receive finish as specified in Section 099000, "Painting and Finishing."

3.8 CLOSET AND STORAGE SHELVING

- A. Provide closet and storage shelving at the locations shown. Provide hang rods where shown. Set adjustable center hangers.

3.9 CABINET WORK AND MILLWORK

A. General

1. Materials and workmanship shall conform to the Quality Standards of the Architectural Woodwork Institute specified herein and to the drawings.
2. Cabinet work and millwork shall be performed by an experienced cabinet work and millwork company, having craftsmen skilled in their trade.
3. Fabricate all cabinet work and millwork completely in the shop, in complete and/or as large units as practical, leaving only fitting, assembly, installation and a minimum of fabrication and finishing to be done at the building. Assembled work shall be rigidly secured and permanently fastened together with concealed fasteners.
4. Afford Architect every facility for inspection of work at shop or mill at such times as the Architect may select.
5. As far as practicable, use concealed fastenings for joining and assembling the work. Where this is impossible, the means of securing shall be placed in inconspicuous places and methods of joining and assembling submitted for Architect's approval prior to fabrication.
6. Mill all finish wood accurately to detail, with clean cut moldings, profiles and lines, machined, sanded smooth, housed, jointed, blocked, put together in the best manner, with provision for swelling and shrinkage, and to assure the work remaining in place without warping, splitting or opening of joints.
7. Cut trim to dimensions and profiles shown, from solid stock.
8. Make all trim and the like in single lengths wherever possible; joints mitered, glued and splined. Continuous members shall have tight flush joints, doweled or splined and glued.
9. Make all joints hairline tight, fitted accurately and joined with hardwood splines or dowels, glued together, or by other method approved by Architect. Use screws, not nails, for fastenings.
10. Gluing shall, where practicable, be by the hot plate press method and glued surfaces shall be in close contact throughout. Glue stains on finished work will not be permitted.
11. Cover surface fastenings, where permitted, with matching wood plugs or wood putty. Finish exposed edges of plywood with matching solid stock. Lock miter external corners; tongue and groove internal corners to allow for contraction and expansion.
12. Machine sand with grain, finish with hand sanding, leave exposed surfaces free from machine or tool marks that will show through the finish.
13. Work which adjoins drywall, concrete, or other finish shall be fitted and scribed in a careful manner and ample allowance shall be given for cutting and scribing.
14. Erect work true to lines, levels and dimensions, square, aligned and plumb, securely and rigidly fastened in place.

- B. Cabinet Work: Provide all items of cabinet work indicated on drawings and as herein specified.



1. Tops, sides, backs, bottoms, dividers, shelves, fronts, doors and drawer fronts shall be of plywood or flakeboard core, with the specified wood veneer or plastic laminate as indicated on drawings.
  2. Drawer sides and backs shall be 1/2" thick solid clear selected white birch, suitable for clear finish. Drawer bottom shall be 3/8" thick plywood with clear selected white birch veneers, suitable for clear finish.
  3. Cabinet doors and drawers shall be flush mounted.
  4. Adjustable shelves in cabinets shall have grommets spaced 2" o.c.
  5. Fixed shelves shall be dadoed into side supports and glued.
  6. Shelves shall be 3/4" thick for spans up to 30"; for spans in excess of 30" to 48" shelves shall be 1" thick.
  7. All cabinets shall have closed top, sides, bottom, and back with veneers to match face work. Cabinets to fit accurately into indicated locations; scribe moldings permitted only where indicated.
  8. Countertops, counters, counter fronts, shelves, etc., indicated on drawings to have plastic laminate, shall have plastic laminate shop applied to 3/4" thick core, with plastic laminate backing sheet on underside or back of countertops, counters and shelves. Plastic laminate shall be pressure laminated to core with laminate at external corners. Provide concealed wood framing to support plastic laminate counters, securely fastened to wall and to underside of counters.
- C. Countertops shall be installed to support a minimum concentrated live load of 150 lbs. acting downward at mid span at outer edge of counter without causing deformation and damage.

### 3.10 WOOD BASES

- A. Provide plywood backing, toggle bolted to substrate, if substrate not suitable for securing wood base.
- B. Machine wood bases from specified wood, to profiles indicated on drawings.
- C. Set base level and plumb. Where indicated on drawings, face of wood base shall be flush with wall above. Glue wood base to substrate or to plywood backing, and screw or nail wood base to substrate or to plywood backing with countersunk wood screws or with finishing nails, recess wood screw heads, and spackle with wood putty, set and spackle nails with wood putty. Do not nail or fasten wood base to floor. Ends of wood base shall be either splined or shiplapped.
- D. Where no wood backing occurs, screw apply base at each stud with screw countersunk and wood putty applied and sanded smooth and flush with base.

### 3.11 WOOD DOOR FRAMES

- A. Where indicated on drawings, provide wood frames and bucks for wood doors. Bucks shall be braced, set straight and plumb and have anchors for building into adjoining construction; space anchors not over two (2) feet apart (one foot from corners). Machine wood frames from specified solid wood to profiles indicated on drawings. Set frames plumb, level, square; securely attached to adjoining construction. Wood frames, bucks and trim shall conform to details.

### 3.12 PAINTING AND FINISHING

- A. General: All painting and finishing work of this Section shall be shop applied, unless otherwise noted, as specified below. All painting and finishing shall match approved samples. Field finish painting, where specified below, shall be by painting Subcontractor, as specified for in Painting Section.

- B. Back-Painting: All work of this Section in contact with concrete or masonry or other moisture areas and all concealed surfaces of cabinet and millwork, shall be back-painted with one (1) coat of oil-based paint prior to installation, shop applied where practicable.
- C. Field Touch-Up: Field touch-up shall be the responsibility of the installing Subcontractor and shall include the filling and touch-up of exposed job made nail or screw holes, refinishing of raw surfaces resulting from job fitting, repair of job inflicted scratches and mars, and final cleaning up of the finished surfaces.

3.13 CLEAN UP AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean Up: At regular intervals during the course of the work, all debris and excess material shall be cleaned up and removed from the site. Upon completion of installation, clean all spaces of debris caused by woodwork installation.
- B. Protection: Protect all woodwork from marring, defacement or other damage until final completion and acceptance of the project by the Owner. Repair or replace all defective units prior to final inspection as directed by the Architect. Any units that cannot be satisfactorily repaired in the opinion of the Architect shall be replaced with new units of same original design, at no additional cost to the Owner.

END OF SECTION 064023

SECTION 071326 - SHEET MEMBRANE WATERPROOFING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. The Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary to complete the sheet membrane waterproofing work as shown on the drawings and specified herein, including, but not necessarily limited to, the following:
  - 1. Sheet membrane waterproofing for foundation wall surfaces.
  - 2. Sheet membrane waterproofing at paving and plazas.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Cast-in-Place Concrete - Section 033000.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Approximately 2 weeks prior to scheduled commencement of waterproofing installation, meet at Project site with Waterproofing Installer; preparer of substrate to receive waterproofing; installers of other work in and around waterproofing that must precede, follow, or penetrate waterproofing (including Mechanical and Electrical Installers as applicable); Architect; Owner; and waterproofing manufacturer's representative to review materials, procedures, schedules, and other requirements and conditions related to installing waterproofing.
- B. Qualifications of Subcontractors
  - 1. Subcontractors: All work of this Section shall be performed by a subcontractor who is approved by the manufacturer of the waterproofing material.
  - 2. Qualifications of Subcontractors: Subcontractors shall submit evidence of being bona fide waterproofing subcontractors, for a period of not less than five (5) years, and that they are approved by the manufacturer of the waterproofing material for the installation of the manufacturer's material in accordance with the requirements of this Section.
    - a. Subcontractor shall submit a letter from manufacturer of waterproofing material stating that subcontractor is approved by the manufacturer for the application of the waterproofing systems specified and accepted for use on the Project.
    - b. Letter shall certify that the subcontractor has previously and satisfactorily applied the waterproofing systems specified herein on jobs of similar size and scope, under manufacturer's supervision.
    - c. Letter shall be on manufacturer's letterhead and shall be signed by an officer of the company, not by a local sales representative.

C. Manufacturer's Representative/Contractor's Certification

1. Representative of the waterproofing material manufacturer shall be required to provide field instructions and supervision for the installation of the waterproofing systems at the start of the work of this Section.
2. The manufacturer's representative shall be required to make sure that the workmen for waterproofing systems on the site of the Project are fully instructed and trained in the handling and application of all the materials and shall see that all the materials are correctly installed.
3. Upon completion of the Installation, submit to the Architect written certification that the representative of the manufacturer of the waterproofing material has supervised the work of this Section and that all materials were correctly installed.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Typical installation details, showing details at flashings, at terminations, at joints, at intersection of horizontal and vertical surfaces, and at penetrations in membrane system.
- B. Samples - Submit
  1. Membrane, 6" x 6" samples of each membrane.
  2. 6" x 6" sample of flashing.
  3. 6" x 6" sample of drainage board.
- C. Manufacturer's Literature: Submit manufacturer's technical, safety data sheets, and installation literature for all materials of this Section. Submit Independent Test data indicating that membrane meets properties specified herein.
- D. General Contractor's Certification: Submit per Article 1.4.

1.6 STORAGE OF MATERIALS

- A. All materials shall be stored in their original tightly sealed containers or unopened packages; shall be clearly labeled with the manufacturer's name, brand name and number, and batch number of the material with expiration date where appropriate.
- B. Materials shall be stored in a neat and safe manner so as not to exceed the allowable live load of the storage area.
- C. Material shall be stored out of the weather in a clean, dry area.
- D. Liquid materials, such as adhesives, thinners and primers, shall be stored in areas away from sparks, open flames and excessive heat.

1.7 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. No application of waterproofing shall commence or proceed during inclement weather, or the threat of imminent precipitation.
- B. All surfaces to receive the system shall be thoroughly dry and free of dew or frost.
- C. Materials shall be stored until time of mixing at temperatures above 60 deg. F. to maintain a consistency suitable for mixing. Do no work below 40 deg. F.

- D. Prior to and during application, all dirt and dust shall be removed from surfaces either by vacuuming, sweeping, blowing with compressed air, or similar methods.
- E. Surfaces not designated to receive the system shall be properly masked or otherwise protected against accidental spillage or application of the material to those areas.

#### 1.8 PROTECTION

- A. Against Loads: Protect work of this Section against concentrated loads and any other loads or equipment that would damage the materials or work.
- B. Against Traffic: Do not permit traffic on horizontally installed work of this Section, except for workmen doing the work, during the installation, and after the installation until membrane systems are covered with protective boards or with the specified finishing materials.
- C. Against Damage: Protect vertically installed work of this section from damage by reinforcing and placement.
  - 1. Take and maintain necessary preventive measures to protect work of this Section from damage until Project is accepted.
  - 2. Rejection of Damaged Work
    - a. Damaged materials or work will be rejected.
    - b. Rejected materials or work must be immediately removed and replaced with new materials.

#### 1.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Construction Traffic:
  - 1. Limit construction traffic over completed membrane.
  - 2. General Contractor shall provide 1/2 in. plywood protection layer, where construction traffic is unavoidable.
- B. Inform Architect in writing on a daily basis of any of the following events. State specific location of each occurrence.
  - 1. Buckling to the Waterproofing and other deformations as a result of ground water events.
  - 2. Leakage through the finished waterproofing installation.
  - 3. Damage by other trades.
- C. Provide Manufacturer's Representative's report (prior to backfill) stating that the waterproofing has been inspected and is acceptable and eligible for manufacturer's warranty.

#### 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. The manufacturer of the waterproofing system executed under this Section warrants the waterproofing system to be watertight and free from defects in materials and workmanship for a period of ten (10) years from date of acceptance of this Contract, and that he, agrees to promptly make repairs or replace defective waterproofing materials during the warranty period.
- B. Contractor's Two-Year Workmanship Warranty: Provide a written guarantee for all work of this Section, stating that if, within two years after the Date of Substantial Completion of the Work, any of the work is found to be defective or not in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall correct it

promptly after receipt of a written notice from the Owner to do so. The guarantee shall state that the Contractor shall bear all costs incurred by the Owner, including reasonable attorney's fees, to enforce compliance with the obligations of this Guarantee, and will replace any material or system that requires repeated maintenance or repair to function effectively. The obligation of this Guarantee shall run directly to the Owner and may be enforced by the Owner against the Contractor, shall survive the termination of the Contract and shall not be limited by Conditions other than this Contract.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 WATERPROOFING MEMBRANE

- A. Trade names used herein for membrane waterproofing are those of GCP Applied Technologies. Other acceptable manufacturers will be Carlisle Coatings and Waterproofing (CCW), Henry Company or approved equal.
- B. For accessible foundation walls and plaza waterproofing, provide "Bituthene 4000" sheet waterproofing membrane, 60 mils thick and "Liquid Membrane," 60 mils thick, for flashing, as manufactured by GCP Applied Technologies or approved equal.
- C. Primer/Conditioner: "Bituthene 4000" latex/water-based primer specifically formulated to provide adhesion of Bituthene Waterproofing Membranes.
  - 1. If water-based primer does not provide sufficient adhesion to substrate, substitute Bituthane Primer B-2 solvent-based primer.
- D. Bituthene Elastomeric Mastic: Rubberized asphalt base mastic.
- E. Tape: Double sided synthetic adhesive tape equal to "Preprufe LT" and "HC."
- F. Protection Board: 1/4" thick semi-rigid protection board, "Bituthene Asphaltic Hardboard."
- G. Bituthene Liquid Membrane: Two-component 100% solids trowel grade asphalt modified urethane.
- H. Drainage Board/Composite
  - 1. For vertical application, use "Hydroduct 220" prefabricated dimpled polystyrene drainage core with a non-woven filter fabric on one side and a polymer film on the reverse side, by GCP Applied Technologies.
  - 2. At horizontal applications, use "Hydroduct 660" by GCP Applied Technologies.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where membrane waterproofing is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work. Starting of work implies acceptance of substrate.
- B. Verify that concrete has cured for a minimum time period recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.

### 3.2 PREPARATION OF SURFACES TO RECEIVE WATERPROOFING

- A. Conform to the requirements of specified manufacturer.

- B. Earth or crushed stone substrates shall be compacted to produce an even, sound substrate. Loose aggregate, sharp protrusions and standing water shall be removed.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF FOUNDATION WALL WATERPROOFING

- A. General: Conform to recommendations and published specifications of the manufacturer' including environmental requirements and preparation requirements to receive waterproofing.
- B. Accessible Foundation Walls
  - 1. General: The membrane, when in place must withstand a minimum static ground water pressure of 150 feet.
  - 2. Priming: Application of primer shall be limited to what can be covered with Bituthene Waterproofing Membrane in a given work day. Primed areas not covered by membrane during the work day will be reprimed. Apply primer by spray, roller or brush at a rate of 250 - 350 sq. ft. per gallon. Roller shall be natural material such as lamb's wool, having a nap of approximately one inch. Primer shall be applied to a clean, dry, frost-free and dust-free surface. Sufficient primer must be used on the day surface to condition it to a dust-free state suitable for the application of Bituthene Waterproofing Membranes.
    - a. Bituthene 4000 Surface Conditioner should not be applied below 25 deg. F. on vertical surfaces. Allow primer to dry 30 minutes. Conditioner is considered dry when the substrate returns to its original color.
    - b. Re-prime areas that become dusty or dirty prior to membrane installation.
  - 3. Membrane Installation: Apply Bituthene Waterproofing Membrane vertically in sections of 8' in length or less. On higher walls apply two or more sections with the upper overlapping the lower by a least 2-1/2". Press all membrane in place with heavy hand pressure or rollers during application.
  - 4. Sealing Edges: Bituthene Waterproofing Membrane shall be applied over the edge of the slab or over the top of the foundation or parapet wall. If the membranes are terminated on the vertical surface, a reglet or counter flashing may be used or the membrane may be terminated directly on the vertical surface by pressing very firmly to the wall. Press edges with a metal or hardwood tool such as a hammer or knife handle. Apply a troweled bead of Bituthene Mastic to all vertical and horizontal terminations. Bituthene Liquid Membrane can be used as an alternative method at the General Contractor's option.
  - 5. Sealing Seams: All edges and end seams must be overlapped at least 2-1/2". Apply succeeding sheets with a minimum 2-1/2" overlap and stagger end laps. Roll or press the entire membrane firmly and completely as soon as possible. Patch misaligned or inadequately lapped seams with Bituthene Membrane. Slit any fish mouths, overlap the flaps, and repair with a patch of Bituthene and press or roll in place. The edges of the patch shall be sealed with a troweling of mastic. Laps within 12" of all corners shall be sealed with a troweling of mastic.
  - 6. Corner Forming: Outside corners must be free of sharp edges. Inside corners shall receive a fillet formed with Liquid Membrane, latex modified cement mortar equal to Daraweld C made by Grace mixed with cement mortar or epoxy mortar. Do not use fiber or wood cants. One of two methods may be used for treating corners at the General Contractor's option:
    - a. Apply Bituthene Liquid Membrane 6" in each direction from the corner and form a fillet with a minimum 3/4" face.
    - b. Install an 11" minimum strip of Bituthene Membrane centered on the corner. Install Bituthene Membrane over the treated inside and outside corners.

7. Over waterproofing, apply drainage composite board by adhering board to cured membrane using tape or adhesive per manufacturer's recommendations; lap all edges 4" and conform to the following:
  - a. Install drainage layer directly over the membrane. Start at the low points on the wall and shingle all laps to the flow of water.
  - b. Splice drainage panels together by butting longitudinal edges of adjacent sheets and peeling back fabric to expose the cores of the panels. Install precut "lock strips" consisting of 4 dimple x 5 dimple sections of the drainage panel centered on the joint between the panels and spaced every 10 dimples along the length of the joint. Snap dimples of "lock strip" to dimples of each panel and reattach fabric over the panel joint.
  - c. Cut the core of the drainage panels around penetrations and cut an 'X' in the filter fabric and tape the fabric to the sides of the penetration.
  - d. Cover all terminal edges of the drainage composite with an integral fabric flap by tucking the fabric around the edge of the core and adhering the fabric to the bottom of the core.

#### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF PAVING AND PLAZA WATERPROOFING

- A. Apply membrane from the low point to the high point so that laps shed water. Overlap all seams per manufacturer's minimum requirements. Stagger all end laps. Roll the entire membrane firmly and completely as soon as possible. Use a linoleum roller or standard water-filled garden roller less than 30" wide, weighing a minimum of 75 lbs. when filled. Cover the face of the roller with a resilient material such as a plastic foam or two wraps of indoor-outdoor carpet to allow the membrane to fully contact the primed substrate. Seal all T-joints and membrane terminations with Mastic or Liquid Membrane at the end of the day.
- B. Patch tears and inadequately lapped seams with membrane. Slit fishmouths, repair with a patch extending 6" in all directions from the slit and seal edges of the patch with Mastic. Do not apply Mastic where it will be covered with membrane, except when used as a temporary cut-off.
- C. Flood test application of waterproofing in accordance with Article 3.5 herein.
- D. After flood testing and repairs is complete, cover membrane with drainage composite board using tape and/or adhesive per manufacturer's recommendations.

#### 3.5 WATER TEST

- A. Water tests shall be conducted for horizontal applications at Plazas and Terraces and must be judged to be successful by the Owner, before the installation of any subsequent components of the waterproofing system. Do not conduct water test during rain, other inclement weather, or if sections of exposed structural deck adjacent to the test area contain standing water or are wet.
- B. Water test areas of membrane that are penetrated by dowels, electrical conduit, etc. after the penetrations are installed through the membrane and flashed. Testing the penetrations may be done as part of a test of a larger area or as separate test of individual or grouped penetrations after the membrane has been successfully tested.
- C. Before beginning test, check area below membrane, and note any existing active leaking from other sources.
- D. Test for leaks by plugging drains, damming the area and filling area with min. 2 in. of water, and let stand for 24 hours.
- E. Check area below membrane for active leakage before releasing water.
- F. Drain water and mark all area where water stands (flat areas).



- G. Examine spaces below deck for signs of ~~leakage, and~~leakage and walk all membrane seams watching for signs of "bubbling" or expulsion of water. Critically examine all seams in flat areas of standing water.
- H. If leakage occurs, inspect the membrane and repair or replace defective areas.
- I. Continue to water test until area being tested passes test.

3.6 CLEAN-UP

- A. Upon completion of the waterproofing system, the General Contractor shall remove all equipment, material and debris from the work and storage area, and leave those areas in an undamaged and acceptable condition.

END OF SECTION 071326

SECTION 071700 - BENTONITE WATERPROOFING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary to complete the bentonite waterproofing as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including but not necessarily limited to the following:
  - 1. Bentonite waterproofing at under-slab applications.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Cast-in-Place Concrete - Section 033000.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Approximately 2 weeks prior to scheduled commencement of waterproofing installation, meet at Project site with Waterproofing Installer; preparer of substrate to receive waterproofing; installers of other work in and around waterproofing that must precede, follow, or penetrate waterproofing (including Mechanical and Electrical Installers as applicable); Architect; Owner; and waterproofing manufacturer's representative to review materials, procedures, schedules, and other requirements and conditions related to installing waterproofing.
- B. Qualifications of Subcontractors
  - 1. Subcontractors: All work of this Section shall be performed by a subcontractor who is approved by the manufacturer of the waterproofing material.
  - 2. Qualifications of Subcontractors: Subcontractors shall submit evidence of being bona fide waterproofing subcontractors, for a period of not less than five (5) years, and that they are approved by the manufacturer of the waterproofing material for the installation of the manufacturer's material in accordance with the requirements of this Section.
    - a. Subcontractor shall submit a letter from manufacturer of waterproofing material stating that subcontractor is approved by the manufacturer for the application of the waterproofing systems specified and accepted for use on the Project.
    - b. Letter shall certify that the subcontractor has previously and satisfactorily applied the waterproofing systems specified herein on jobs of similar size and scope, under manufacturer's supervision.
    - c. Letter shall be on manufacturer's letterhead and shall be signed by an officer of the company, not by a local sales representative.
- C. Manufacturer's Representative/Contractor's Certification
  - 1. Representative of the waterproofing material manufacturer shall be required to provide field instructions and supervision for the installation of the waterproofing systems at the start of the work of this Section.

2. The manufacturer's representative shall be required to make sure that the workmen for waterproofing systems on the site of the Project are fully instructed and trained in the handling and application of all the materials and shall see that all the materials are correctly installed.
3. Upon completion of the Installation, submit to the Architect written certification that the representative of the manufacturer of the waterproofing material has supervised the work of this Section and that all materials were correctly installed.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Typical installation details, showing details at flashings, at terminations, at joints, at intersection of horizontal and vertical surfaces, and at penetrations in membrane system.
- B. Samples - Submit
  1. Membrane, 6" x 6" samples of each membrane.
  2. 6" x 6" sample of flashing.
  3. 6" x 6" sample of drainage board.
- C. Manufacturer's Literature: Submit manufacturer's technical, safety data sheets, and installation literature for all materials of this Section. Submit Independent Test data indicating that membrane meets properties specified herein.
- D. General Contractor's Certification: Submit per Article 1.4.

#### 1.6 STORAGE OF MATERIALS

- A. All materials shall be stored in their original tightly sealed containers or unopened packages; shall be clearly labeled with the manufacturer's name, brand name and number, and batch number of the material with expiration date where appropriate.
- B. Materials shall be stored in a neat and safe manner so as not to exceed the allowable live load of the storage area.
- C. Material shall be stored out of the weather in a clean, dry area.
- D. Liquid materials, such as adhesives, thinners and primers, shall be stored in areas away from sparks, open flames and excessive heat.

#### 1.7 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. No application of waterproofing shall commence or proceed during inclement weather, or the threat of imminent precipitation.
- B. All surfaces to receive the system shall be thoroughly dry and free of dew or frost.
- C. Application temperatures are not limited.

#### 1.8 MANUFACTURER'S REPRESENTATIVE

- A. Contractor shall require representative of manufacturer of the waterproofing material to provide field instructions and supervision of the installation of the complete waterproofing system and that all materials are correctly installed.

1.9 QUALIFICATIONS OF CONTRACTOR

- A. Contractor: All work of this Section shall be performed by a subcontractor who is approved by the manufacturer of the waterproofing material.
- B. Qualifications of Contractor: Subcontractor shall submit evidence of being bona fide waterproofing Contractor, and that he is approved by the manufacturers of the waterproofing materials for the installation of their material in accordance with the requirements of this Section. Subcontractor shall submit letter from manufacturer of waterproofing material stating that the subcontractor is approved by the manufacturer for the application of the waterproofing system specified for the Project. Letter shall certify that the Contractor has satisfactorily applied the waterproofing system specified herein under manufacturer's supervision. Letter shall be on manufacturer's letterhead and shall be signed by an officer of the company.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. The Contractor shall warrant the waterproofing system executed under this Section to be watertight and free from defects in materials and workmanship for a period of ten (10) year from date of acceptance of this Contract, and that he, at his own expense, repair and/or replace all other work which may be damaged as a result of such defective work, and which becomes defective during the warranty period.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 COMPOSITE GEOTEXTILE-HDPE/ BENTONITE MEMBRANE

- A. Manufacturer: Provide "Voltex DS" bentonite geotextile waterproofing, consisting of bentonite clay granules bonded to nonwoven geotextile polypropylene fabric, with HDPE bonded to surface of nonwoven fabric; as manufactured by Colloid Environmental Technologies Company (CETCO), or approved equal.
  - 1. Grab Tensile Strength: 120 lbf (534 N) according to ASTM D 4632.
  - 2. Puncture Resistance: 140 lbf (620 N) according to ASTM D 4833.
  - 3. Vapor Permeance: 0.03 perms according to ASTM E 96.
- B. Sodium Bentonite: Specially selected Wyoming granular bentonite containing approximately 90% montmorillonite with 10% maximum unaltered volcanic ash and other native sediments.
  - 1. Free Swell Rating: 2 grams sifted into deionized water swells to occupy a minimum volume of 16 cc.
  - 2. Grading: Granular bentonite passes 90% through a 20 mesh sieve and less than 10% through a 200 mesh sieve.
- C. Accessory Waterproofing Products: All accessory waterproofing materials shall be provided by the bentonite waterproofing manufacturer or shall have manufacturer's written approval for substitution.
  - 1. Volclay Bentoseal: Trowel grade sodium bentonite compound used as a detailing mastic around penetrations, corner transitions and grade terminations.
  - 2. Volclay Hydrobar Tubes: 2" diameter x 2'-0" long, water soluble tube container filled with granular sodium bentonite; 3 lbs. Per tube total weight.
  - 3. Volclay Water Stoppage: 50 lbs. bag of specially processed dry granular sodium bentonite.

4. Volclay Waterstop-RX 101T: Rolls of flexible bentonite/butyl rubber strip water stop for use in concrete construction joints. Secured with Volclay WB-Adhesive.
  - a. Furnish water stops to Section 033000 for installation with concrete pour.
5. Envirosheet: Self-adhered membrane waterproofing where indicated and required to tie-in to bentonite waterproofing where the bentonite cannot be installed at or near grade due to lack of confinement.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where Bentonite membrane waterproofing is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. All sharp protrusions over 1/4", debris, standing water, ice and other materials which could harmfully affect the performance of the waterproofing system shall be removed.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

##### A. General

1. Comply with manufacturer's product data, including application and installation instructions.
2. Install Voltex Waterproofing System with the woven side (dark gray) of the geotextile liner facing the concrete to be waterproofed in both horizontal and vertical applications.
3. Prevent bentonite waterproofing products from hydrating before material is contained with overburden or backfill. When threat of rain is imminent, installed bentonite products not already contained by overburden or backfill should be covered with polyethylene sheeting to decrease the chance of hydration. Remove polyethylene prior to overburden or backfill operations.
4. To use Voltex as an expansion joint cover, trowel 1/8" thick, 6" wide layer of Bentoseal centered over expansion joint. Install a 24" wide strip of Voltex centered over the expansion joint. Then place the main course of Voltex.

##### B. Underslab Installation

1. Reinforced structural foundation slabs should be a minimum of 8" thick when placed on a working mud slab. Reinforced concrete slab(s) on compacted grade shall be a minimum of 4" thick. When hydrostatic conditions exist, install Voltex under all footings and grade beams.
2. Detail all penetrations and pile caps with a 1/2" layer of Waterstoppage (granular bentonite) extending around each a minimum radius of 6".
3. Place Voltex directly on properly prepared substrate (dark gray woven geotextile side up facing installer) with adjoining edges overlapped a minimum of 4". Stagger sheet end seams a minimum of 24". Mechanically fasten or staple Voltex as required to prevent movement from construction operations or concrete placement. When the slab is poured in sections, extend Voltex a minimum 12" beyond the slab edge to enable proper overlapping.
4. Cut Voltex to fit snugly around penetrations and pile caps. (Do not extend Voltex over pile cap.) Around base of penetrations trowel 3/4" thick fillet of Bentoseal and extend the Bentoseal onto

Voltex. Around base of pile caps trowel 2" thick fillet of Bentoseal and extend the Bentoseal onto Voltex.

5. Provide a minimum of 12" overlap between underslab and vertical wall waterproofing by either extending the Voltex beyond the form or turning it up in the form and securing.
6. Inspect finished Voltex installation and repair any damaged material prior to concrete placement. Assure that Voltex is not moved during concrete placement.

#### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Cover Sheet: If horizontal membrane is exposed to weather before concrete work slab is poured, protect membrane from moisture by covering completely with polyethylene sheet overlap and tape seams so as to provide watertight seal.

#### 3.5 CLEAN-UP

- A. Upon completion of the waterproofing system, the Contractor shall remove all equipment, material and debris from the work and storage area, and leave those areas in an undamaged and acceptable condition.

END OF SECTION 071700

SECTION 072100 - THERMAL INSULATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. The Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the thermal insulation as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Insulation under slabs-on-grade.
  - 2. Foundation wall insulation.
  - 3. Cavity-wall insulation.
  - 4. Batt insulation.
  - 5. Spray-foam insulation at gaps around glazing frames, door frames, penetrations, and similar items in exterior wall assemblies for tie-in of air/vapor barrier to frames.
  - 6. Attachment devices.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Unit Masonry - Section 042000.
- B. Roof insulation - Division 7.
- C. Firestops and Smoke seals - Section 078413.
- D. Gypsum Board Assemblies - Section 092116, for acoustical insulation.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- B. Vertical and Lateral Fire Propagation Test Characteristics: The exterior wall assembly is required to comply with NFPA 285 "Standard Method of Test for the Evaluation of Flammability Characteristics of Exterior Nonload-bearing Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Components." The base wall, stud cavity insulation, wall sheathing, air barrier, continuous wall rigid insulation and exterior cladding are components that are required to be evaluated as part of this specific assembly test. The basis of design product listed herein is a component of the design test assembly selected by the Architect.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit product data for each type of product indicated, including re-cycled content.

- B. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for insulation products.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- B. Deliver materials to the site ready for use in the manufacturer's original and unopened containers and packaging, bearing labels as to type and brand. Delivered materials shall be identical to approved samples.
- C. Store materials under cover in a dry and clean location, off the ground. Remove materials which are damaged or otherwise not suitable for installation and replace with acceptable materials.
- D. Take every precaution to prevent the insulation from becoming wet, cover with tarps or other weather/watertight sheet goods.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 FOUNDATION WALL AND UNDERSLAB INSULATION

- A. Provide extruded polystyrene board insulation equal to "Styrofoam" manufactured by Dow Chemical Co., or approved equal made by Owens Corning or PACTIV Building Products, conforming to ASTM C 578, Type IV, with a maximum flame spread and smoke developed indices of 75 and 450 respectively.
- B. Insulation shall have an aged R value of not less than 5/inch; shall be 2" thick unless otherwise noted on the drawings.

#### 2.2 CAVITY WALL INSULATION

- A. Provide "RainBarrier HD" by Thermafiber, "CavityRock DD" by Rockwool or approved equal, with black mat facer finish for open-joint cladding, conforming to ASTM C 612, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 15 and 0, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics. Insulation shall comply with NFPA 285.
  - 1. Thickness: 4", unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Nominal density of 6 lb./cu. ft., thermal resistivity of 4.2 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F.

#### 2.3 BATT INSULATION

- A. Unfaced, Mineral-Wool Batt Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (batts without membrane facing); consisting of fibers; 2.5 pcf density, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
- B. Reinforced-Foil-Faced, Glass-Fiber Batt Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type III (reflective faced), Class A (faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil scrim, foil-scrim Kraft, or foil-scrim polyethylene.
  - 1. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.



2.4 SPRAY FOAM INSULATION

- A. Spray Insulation at Perimeter of Frames and Penetrations: Provide closed-cell polyurethane foam insulation product to fill gaps, joints, etc. that both seals and insulates, equal to "Great Stuff Professional Foam" as manufactured by the Dow Chemical Co., or approved equal.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesively Attached, Spindle-Type Anchors: Plate welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of specified thickness securely in position indicated with self-locking washer in place. Provide "Series T TACTOO Insul-Hangers" by AGM Industries, Inc., "Spindle Type" by Gemco, or approved equal.
  - 1. Plate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030" thick by 2" square.
  - 2. Spindle: Copper-coated, low-carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105" in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  - 3. Affix plate with stainless steel staple or screw.
- B. Insulation Fastening System at CMU and Concrete: Provide "Ramset Insulfast" system, or approved equal, mechanical fastening system.
- C. Clips for Securing Insulation to Encountered Surfaces: Spindle anchor and washer type consisting of perforated metal plates with spindle welded to center and snap on washers. Spindle and washers shall receive a corrosion-resistant electro-zinc plating. Adhesives for securing clips in place shall be recommended by the approved clip manufacturer.
  - 1. Acceptable Manufacturers
    - a. Miracle Adhesives Corp.
    - b. Stic-Klip Mfg. Co., Inc.
    - c. Midwest Fasteners
- D. Insulation Flashing Tape: Provide insulation manufacturer's recommended board joint tape for sealing joints, seams and veneer tie penetrations through the insulation layer; Dow Chemical Co. "Weathermate" straight flashing, 4-inch width with butyl rubber adhesive, or equal.
- E. Wall Opening Flashing: Provide insulated sheathing manufacturer's recommended flashing sealing window and door wall openings; Dow Chemical Co. "Weathermate" straight flashing, 6-inch and 9-inch width with butyl rubber adhesive at straight opening heads, jambs and sills, or equal.
- F. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: The type recommended by the insulation manufacturer and complying with fire-resistance requirements.
  - 1. For bonding rigid polystyrene insulation to masonry or concrete, provide adhesive equal to "Foamgrab PS" made by Dacor Products Co. or equal made by ChemRex Inc. or Miracle Adhesives.
- G. Protection Board: Premolded, semi-rigid asphalt/fiber composition board, 1/4" thick, formed under heat and pressure, standard sizes.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where thermal insulation is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation including removing projections capable of puncturing vapor retarders, or that interfere with insulation attachment.
- B. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications indicated.
- C. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- D. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- E. Provide sizes to fit applications indicated and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units to produce thickness indicated unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF BELOW-GRADE INSULATION

- A. On vertical surfaces, set insulation units using manufacturer's recommended adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Extend insulation below exterior grade line to top of footing.
- B. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.
  - 1. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation a minimum of 36" in from exterior walls.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF CAVITY-WALL INSULATION

- A. Install pads of adhesive spaced approximately 24 inches o.c. both ways on inside face, and as recommended by manufacturer. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other obstructions, with edges butted tightly in both directions. Press units firmly against inside substrates.
  - 1. Supplement adhesive attachment of insulation by securing boards with two-piece wall ties designed for this purpose and specified in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF BATT INSULATION FOR FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Apply insulation units to substrates by method indicated, complying with manufacturer's written instructions. If no specific method is indicated, bond units to substrate with adhesive or use mechanical anchorage to provide permanent placement and support of units.
- B. Glass-Fiber or Mineral-Wool Batt Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:

1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
3. Maintain 3-inch clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
4. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced batts mechanically and support faced batts by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.
5. Vapor-Retarder-Faced Batts: Tape joints and ruptures in vapor-retarder facings and seal each continuous area of insulation to ensure airtight installation.
  - a. Exterior Walls: Set units with facing placed toward interior of construction as indicated on Drawings.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF BOARD INSULATION FOR CONCRETE SUBSTRATES

- A. Install board insulation on concrete substrates by adhesively attached, spindle-type insulation anchors as follows:
  1. Fasten insulation anchors to concrete substrates with insulation anchor adhesive according to anchor manufacturer's written instructions. Space anchors according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions for insulation type, thickness, and application indicated.
  2. Apply insulation standoffs to each spindle to create cavity width indicated between concrete substrate and insulation.
  3. After adhesive has dried, install board insulation by pressing insulation into position over spindles and securing it tightly in place with insulation-retaining washers, taking care not to compress insulation below indicated thickness.
  4. Where insulation will not be covered by other building materials, apply capped washers to tips of spindles.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF SPRAY FOAM INSULATION

- A. Apply self-supported, spray-applied insulation according to manufacturer's written instructions. Do not apply insulation until installation of pipes, ducts, conduits, wiring, and electrical outlets in walls is completed and windows, electrical boxes, and other items not indicated to receive insulation are masked. After insulation is applied, make it flush with face of studs by using method recommended by insulation manufacturer.

### 3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Polyisocyanurate rigid foam board insulation from excess moisture, mechanical damage, and exposure to open flame.
- B. Promptly repair damage caused to insulation in a manner that retains integrity and continuity of insulation and facer materials.
- C. Keep polyisocyanurate boards dry and above job site water – keep tarped until ready to install.
- D. Cover insulation with cladding promptly, but no later than 180 days after installation of insulation.

EASTCHESTER UNION FREE SCHOOL DISTRICT  
2022 CAPITAL PROJECT  
PHASE 2

SECTION 072100 – THERMAL INSULATION

END OF SECTION 072100

SECTION 072700 - VAPOR-PERMEABLE AIR BARRIER LIQUID MEMBRANE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. The Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the vapor permeable air barrier liquid membrane as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not necessarily limited to, the following:
  - 1. Vapor permeable/air barrier applied over sheathing board and exterior.
  - 2. Materials and installation to bridge and seal the following air leakage pathways and gaps:
    - a. Connections of the walls to the roof.
    - b. Connections of the walls to the foundations.
    - c. Seismic and expansion joints.
    - d. Openings and penetrations of window frames, storefront, curtain wall.
    - e. Door frames.
    - f. Piping, conduit, duct and similar penetrations.
    - g. Masonry ties, screws, bolts and similar penetrations.
    - h. All other air leakage pathways in the building envelope.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Cold-Formed Metal Framing, including gypsum board sheathing - Section 054000.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Provide evidence to the Architect of licensing and certification under the Air Barrier Association of America's (ABAA's) Quality Assurance Program.
- B. Submit shop drawings showing locations and extent of air/vapor barrier and details of all typical conditions, intersections with other envelope systems and materials, membrane counter-flashings, and details showing how gaps in the construction will be bridged, how inside and outside corners are negotiated and how miscellaneous penetrations such as conduits, pipes electric boxes and the like are sealed.
- C. Submit manufacturer's product data sheets for each type of membrane, including manufacturer's printed instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate, temperature and other limitations of installation conditions, technical data, and tested physical and performance properties.
- D. Submit manufacturer's data showing solids content of fluid applied membranes and coverage rates and wet film thickness upon application in order to achieve minimum dry film thickness required by this specification.
- E. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions.
- F. Submit certification by air/vapor barrier manufacturer that products supplied comply with local regulations controlling use of volatile organic compounds (VOCs).

- G. Submit certification of compatibility by air/vapor barrier manufacturer, listing all materials on the project that it connects to or that come in contact with it, including sealant as specified in Section 062000 for caulking joints between sheathing panels.
- H. Submit samples, 3 by 4 inch minimum size, of each air/vapor barrier material required for Project.
- I. Test results of air permeability testing of primary air barrier material (ASTM E 2178).
- J. Test results of assembly in accordance with ASTM E 2357.

#### 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide air/vapor barrier constructed to perform as a continuous air/vapor barrier, and as a liquid water drainage plane flashed to discharge to the exterior any incidental condensation or water penetration. Membrane shall accommodate movements of building materials by providing expansion and control joints as required, with accessory air seal materials at such locations, changes in substrate and perimeter conditions.
- B. Provide an air barrier assembly that has been tested in accordance with the Air Barrier Association of America's (ABAA's) approved testing protocol to provide air leakage results not to exceed 0.01 cfm/sf @ 1.57 psf.
- C. NFPA 285 Compliance.
- D. Connections to Adjacent Materials: Provide connections to adjacent materials at the following locations and show same on shop drawings:
  - 1. Foundation and walls, including penetrations, ties and anchors.
  - 2. Walls, windows, curtain walls, storefronts, louvers or doors.
  - 3. Different wall assemblies, and fixed openings within those assemblies.
  - 4. Wall and roof connections.
  - 5. Floors over unconditioned space.
  - 6. Walls, floor and roof across construction, control and expansion joints.
  - 7. Walls, floors and roof to utility, pipe and duct penetrations.
  - 8. Seismic and expansion joints.
  - 9. All other leakage pathways in the building envelope.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
  - 1. The air barrier contractor shall be, during the bidding period as well as for the duration of the installation, officially recognized as a Licensed Contractor by the Air Barrier Association of America (ABAA). The contractor shall carry liability insurance and bonding.
  - 2. Each worker who is installing air barriers must be either a Certified Applicator or an installer who is registered with ABAA.
  - 3. Each Lead Certified Applicator can supervise a maximum of five registered installers. The Certified Applicator shall be thoroughly trained and experienced in the installation of air barriers of the types

being applied. Lead Certified Applicators shall perform or directly supervise all air/vapor barrier work on the project.

- B. Single-Source Responsibility: Obtain air/vapor barrier materials from a single manufacturer regularly engaged in manufacturing the product.
- C. Provide products which comply with all state and local regulations controlling use of volatile organic compounds (VOCs).
- D. Field-Constructed Mock-Ups: Prior to installation of air/vapor barrier, apply air/vapor barrier as follows to verify details under shop drawing submittals and to demonstrate tie-ins with adjoining construction, and other termination conditions, as well as qualities of materials and execution:
  - 1. Construct typical exterior wall panel, 8 feet long by 8 feet wide (one of CMU and one of sheathed areas, incorporating back-up wall, cladding, window and doorframe and sill, insulation, flashing, building corner condition, and typical penetrations and gaps; illustrating materials interface and seals.
  - 2. Mock-ups shall be part of the overall exterior mock-up required for the project.
- E. Test mock-up in accordance with ASTM E 783 and ASTM E 1105 for air and water infiltration.
- F. Manufacturer shall be on-site periodically, as directed by the Architect, to observe installation and provide written report within 3 days.
- G. Manufacturer shall confirm all termination details and compatibility with materials being terminated to.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to Project site in original packages with seals unbroken, labeled with manufacturer's name, product, date of manufacture, and directions for storage.
- B. Store materials in their original undamaged packages in a clean, dry, protected location and within temperature range required by air/vapor barrier manufacturer. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.
- C. Avoid spillage. Immediately notify Owner, Architect if spillage occurs and start clean-up procedures.
- D. Clean spills and leave area as it was prior to spill.

#### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. System Warranty: Provide the manufacturer's five (5) year system warranty, including the primary air/vapor barrier and installed accessory sealant and membrane materials which fail to achieve airtight and watertight seal, exhibit loss of adhesion or cohesion, or do not cure.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Liquid Membrane: "Air-Bloc 31MR" or "Air-Bloc 17MR Vapor Permeable Liquid Membrane" by Henry Company, "Perm-A-Barrier VP" by GCP Applied Technologies or approved equal. Trade names used herein are those of Henry Company.
- B. Sheet Transition Membrane: Blueskin SA or VP 160.

- C. Window and Door Opening Flashing: Blueskin SA or Metal Clad.
- D. Alternative Liquid Applied Flashing: Henry Air-Bloc LF.
- E. Through-Wall Flashing: Blueskin TWF.
- F. Primer for Blueskin: Blueskin LVC Adhesive.
- G. Air Barrier Sealant: HE 925 BES Sealant.
- H. Substrate Cleaner: Mineral spirits or Xylol.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where the above grade waterproof membrane is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

#### 3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. All surfaces must be sound, dry, clean and free of oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar or other contaminants.
- B. Joints in Sheathing up to 1/2" can be treated with HE 925 BES Sealant or Air-Bloc LF.
- C. Surfaces should be tied in with beams, columns, etc. using strips of Blueskin SA or VP 160 lapped a minimum of 3" on both substrates. Mechanical attachment should be made to all window and door frames, or a properly designed sealant joint provided.

#### 3.3 TRANSITION MEMBRANE

- A. Align and position self-adhering transition membrane, remove protective film and press firmly into place. Ensure minimum 3" overlap at all ends and side laps.
- B. Tie-in to window frames, metal door frames, etc., and at the interface of dissimilar materials as indicated on the Drawings.
- C. Promptly roll all laps and membrane with a countertop roller to effect seal.
- D. Ensure all preparatory work is complete prior to applying Air-Bloc 31MR.

#### 3.4 THROUGH-WALL FLASHING MEMBRANE

- A. Align and position the leading edge of Blueskin TWF self-adhering through-wall flashing membrane with the front horizontal edge of the foundation walls or shelf angles, partially remove protective film and roll membrane over surface and up vertically.
- B. Press firmly into place. Ensure minimum 50mm overlap at all end and side laps.
- C. Promptly roll all laps and membrane to effect the seal.
- D. Ensure all preparatory work is complete prior to applying Blueskin TWF.
- E. Ensure through-wall flashing membrane extends fully to the exterior face of the exterior masonry veneer. Trim off excess as directed by the consultant.



- F. Apply through-wall flashing membrane along the base of masonry veneer walls, over windows, doors and all other wall openings. Membrane shall form continuous flashing and shall extend up a minimum of 4-1/2" up the back-up wall.
- G. When flashing at window openings, wrap the entire window opening with air barrier flashing membrane.

### 3.5 LIQUID MEMBRANE APPLICATION

- A. Apply Air-Bloc 31MR to wall substrates in a continuous coat at manufacturer's recommended rate by spray or trowel to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 0.093".
  - 1. Minimum dry film thickness shall be 0.078".
- B. Overlap liquid membrane on to transition membrane at connections a minimum of 1".
- C. Trowel Air-Bloc 31MR around ties and other projections to ensure a complete seal.
- D. Do not leave membrane exposed for any longer than 6 weeks.
- E. Penetrations: Seal all penetrations with termination mastic liquid membrane, sealant, flashing or other procedures in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.6 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect air/vapor barrier system from damage during application and remainder of construction period, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.
- C. Protect air/vapor barrier from exposure to the elements as required by the manufacturer.
- D. Remove any masking materials after installation. Clean any stains on materials that would be exposed in the completed work using procedures as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Schedule work to ensure that the air and vapor barrier system is covered as soon as possible after installation. Protect air and vapor barrier system from damage during subsequent operations. If the air and vapor barrier system cannot be permanently covered within 90 days after installation, apply temporary UV protection.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Air Barrier Association of America Installer Audits: Cooperate with ABAA's testing agency. Allow access to work areas and staging. Notify ABAA in writing of schedule for Work of this Section to allow sufficient time for testing and inspection. Do not cover Work of this Section until testing and inspection is accepted. Arrange and pay for site inspections by ABAA to verify conformance with the material Manufacturer's instructions, the site Quality Assurance Program used by ABAA, and this section of the project specification.
  - 1. Audits and subsequent testing shall be carried out at the following rate:
    - a. Up to 10,000 ft<sup>2</sup> of air barrier contract requires one (1) audit.
    - b. 10,001 – 35,000 ft<sup>2</sup> of air barrier contract requires two (2) audits.
    - c. 35,001 – 75,000 ft<sup>2</sup> of air barrier contract requires three (3) audits.
    - d. 75,001 - 125,000 ft<sup>2</sup> of air barrier contract requires four (4) audits.
    - e. 125,001 – 200,000 ft<sup>2</sup> of air barrier contract requires five (5) audits.
    - f. 200,001 ft<sup>2</sup> and over of air barrier contract requires six (6) audits.

2. Forward written audit reports to the Architect within 10 working days of the inspection and test being performed.
  3. If the inspections reveal any defects, promptly remove and replace defective work at no additional cost to the Owner.
- B. Air barriers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
1. Apply additional air-barrier material, according to manufacturer's written instructions, where inspection results indicate insufficient thickness.
  2. Remove and replace deficient air-barrier components for retesting as specified above.
- C. Repair damage to air barriers caused by testing; follow manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 072700

SECTION 074113 - METAL ROOF PANEL, STANDING SEAM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Standing seam metal roof panel system.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Division 05 Section "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for cold-formed metal framing supporting metal roof panel.
- B. Division 05 Section "Steel Decking" for steel roof deck supporting standing seam metal roof panel.
- C. Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation" for field installed thermal insulation.
- D. Division 07 Section "Roof Specialties" for manufactured copings, reglets, and roof drainage items.
- E. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for field-applied joint sealants.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. Aluminum Association (AA):
  - 1. Specification for Aluminum Structures.
- B. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):
  - 1. AAMA 621 - Voluntary Specifications for High Performance Organic Coatings on Coil Coated Architectural Hot Dipped Galvanized (HDG) & Zinc-Aluminum Coated Steel Substrates.
- C. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI):
  - 1. Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members.
- D. American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE):
  - 1. ASCE 7 - Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures.
- E. ASTM International (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM A 653 - Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process.
  - 2. ASTM A 755 - Specification for Steel Sheet, Metallic Coated by the Hot-Dip Process and Prepainted by the Coil-Coating Process for Exterior Exposed Building Products.
  - 3. ASTM A 792 – Specification for Steel Sheet, 55 percent Aluminum-Zinc Alloy Coated by the Hot Dip Process.
  - 4. ASTM B 209 - Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Sheet and Plate.
  - 5. ASTM C 920 - Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants.

6. ASTM D 2244 - Test Method for Calculation of Color Differences from Instrumentally Measured Color Coordinates.
  7. ASTM D 4214 - Test Methods for Evaluating Degree of Chalking of Exterior Paint Films.
  8. ASTM E 1514 - Specification for Structural Standing Seam Steel Roof Panel.
  9. ASTM E 1592 - Standard Test Method for Structural Performance of Sheet Metal Roof and Siding Systems by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.
  10. ASTM E 1637 - Specification for Structural Standing Seam Aluminum Roof Panel Systems.
  11. ASTM E 1646 - Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Metal Roof Panel Systems by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.
  12. ASTM E 1680 - Standard Test Method for Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Metal Roof Panel Systems.
  13. ASTM E 1980 - Practice for Calculating Solar Reflectance Index of Horizontal and Low-Sloped Opaque Surfaces.
- F. Factory Mutual Global (FMG):
1. ANSI/FMG 4471 Class 1 Panel Roofs.
- G. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association, Inc. (SMACNA):
1. Architectural Sheet Metal Manual.
- H. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
1. UL 580 – Tests for Uplift Resistance of Roof Assemblies.
  2. UL Fire Resistance Directory.
  3. UL Roofing Materials Directory

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Provide metal roof panel system meeting performance requirements as determined by application of specified tests by a qualified testing agency on manufacturer's standard assemblies.
- B. Air Infiltration: Maximum 0.04 cfm/sq. ft. (0.3 L/s per sq. m) per ASTM E 1680 at a static-air-pressure difference of 4 lb. /sq. ft. (191.5 Pa).
- C. Water Penetration Static Pressure: No uncontrolled water penetration at a static pressure of 6.4 lb. /sq. ft. (306.4 Pa) when tested per ASTM E 1646.
- D. Structural Performance: Provide metal roof panel system capable of withstanding the effects of indicated loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated, per ASTM based on testing according to ASTM E 1592:
1. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on uniform pressure, building category, exposure category, and basic wind speed indicated on drawings.
  2. Snow Loads: As indicated on Drawings
  3. Deflection Limits: Metal roof panel system shall withstand wind and snow loads with vertical deflections no greater than 1/180 of the span
  4. Concentrated Load Performance: Provide metal roof panel system that withstand a concentrated load of 250 lbs (113 kg) applied to a 4 sq. in. (2580 sq. mm) at mid-span and center of the panel halfway between supports without causing deformation, buckling or side lap separation.
  5. Seismic Performance: Comply with ASCE 7 Sections 11 – 23, seismic.
- E. FMG Listing: Comply with FMG 4471. Provide metal roof panel assembly listed in FMG's "Approval Guide."

1. Fire and Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-90.
2. Hail Resistance: SH.
- F. Wind Uplift Resistance: UL 580 wind uplift rating UL 90.
- G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from variations in both ambient and internal temperatures. Accommodate movement of support structure caused by thermal expansion and contraction.
  1. Thermal Cycle test: Provide metal roof panel system that shows no wear when subject to 100,000 cycles of 1 inch (25 mm) movement in the plane of the panel face relative to the clip anchor.
- H. Energy Performance:
  1. Solar Reflectance Index: Minimum 78 for roof slopes of 2:12 or less and 29 for roof slopes greater than 2:12 per ASTM E 1980.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer/Source: Provide metal roof panel system from a single manufacturer.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Approved manufacturer listed in this Section with minimum 5 years experience in manufacture of similar products in successful use in similar applications.
  1. Approval of Comparable Products: Submit the following in accordance with project substitution requirements, within time allowed for substitution review:
    - a. Product data, including certified independent test data indicating compliance with requirements.
    - b. Samples of each component.
    - c. Sample submittal from similar project.
    - d. Project references: Minimum of 5 installations not less than 5 years old, with Owner and Architect contact information.
    - e. Sample warranty.
  2. Substitutions following award of contract are not allowed except as stipulated in Division 01 "General Requirements."
  3. Approved manufacturers must meet separate requirements of Submittals Article.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Experienced Installer with minimum of 5 years experience with successfully completed projects of a similar nature and scope.

#### 1.6 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Preinstallation Meeting: Prior to erection of metal roof panel system , conduct preinstallation meeting at site attended by Owner, Architect, manufacturer's technical representative, inspection agency and related trade contractors.
  1. Coordinate building framing in relation to metal roof panel system.
  2. Coordinate openings and penetrations of metal roof panel system.
  3. Coordinate work of Division 07 Sections "Roof Specialties" and "Roof Accessories" and roof openings and penetrations and manufacturer's accessories with installation of metal roof panels.

## 1.7 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets for specified products.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layouts of metal roof panels. Include details of each condition of installation, panel profiles, and attachment to building. Provide details at a minimum scale 1-1/2-inch per foot of edge conditions, joints, fastener and sealant placement, flashings, penetrations, and special details. Make distinctions between factory and field assembled work.
  - 1. Include data indicating compliance with performance requirements.
  - 2. Indicate points of supporting structure that must coordinate with metal roof panel system installation.
  - 3. Include structural data indicating compliance with performance requirements and requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each product specified including sealants and gaskets. Provide representative color charts of manufacturer's full range of colors.
- D. Samples for Verification: Provide 12-inch- (305 mm-) long section of metal roof panel showing finishes, vertical joint return, and anchoring details. Provide 12-inch- (305 mm-) long pieces of trim.

## 1.8 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: Indicating compliance of products with requirements, from a qualified independent testing agency, when requested by architect.
- B. Coordination Drawings: Provide drawings of metal roof panel system coordinating the installation with structural framing, secondary framing, roof deck, penetrations, openings, and mechanical attachments.

## 1.9 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance data.

## 1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect products of metal roof panel system during shipping, handling, and storage to prevent staining, denting, deterioration of components or other damage. Protect panels and trim bundles during shipping with water resistant paper. Protect painted surfaces with a strippable protective covering before shipping.
  - 1. Deliver, unload, store, and erect metal roof panel system and accessory items without misshaping panels or exposing panels to surface damage from weather or construction operations.
  - 2. Store in accordance with Manufacturer's written instruction. Provide wood collars for stacking and handling in the field.

## 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: On Manufacturer's standard form, in which Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal roof panel system that fail in materials and workmanship within two years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.12 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Metal Roof Panel System: Metal roof panels with concealed attachment, and supplemental framing members required for complete metal framing attachment system, thermal insulation, and accessories necessary for a complete watertight installation.

1.13 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis of Design: **CENTRIA, SRS3 Structural Standing Seam Metal Roof Panel System.** Provide basis of design product, or comparable product approved by Architect prior to bid.

1.14 PANEL MATERIALS

- A. **Metallic-Coated Steel Face Sheet:** Coil-coated, ASTM A 755/A 755M.

1. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, SS Grade 37, G90 (Z275), structural quality.
2. Face Sheet: Minimum 0.036 inch/20 gage (0.91 mm) nominal uncoated thickness.
3. Surface: Smooth.

- B. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish System:

1. Fluoropolymer Two-Coat System: 0.2-mil primer with 0.8-mil 70 percent PVDF fluoropolymer color coat, AAMA [620] [621].

- a. Basis of Design: **CENTRIA Fluorofinish.**

2. Fluoropolymer Two-Coat System: 0.8 mil primer with 0.8 mil 70 percent PVDF fluoropolymer color coat, AAMA [620] [621].

- a. Basis of Design: **CENTRIA Duragard.**

3. Fluoropolymer Three-Coat System: 0.8 mil primer with 0.8 mil 70 percent PVDF fluoropolymer color coat, and a 0.8 mil 70 percent PVDF fluoropolymer clear coat, AAMA [620] [621].

- a. Basis of Design: **CENTRIA Duragard Plus.**

- a. Interior Surface: Manufacturer's Standard.

4. Fluoropolymer Two-Coat Corrosion and Abrasion Resistant System: 2.0 mil barrier coat primer with 0.8 mil 70 percent PVDF fluoropolymer color coat that includes mica flakes that provides a pearlescent appearance.

- a. Basis of Design: **CENTRIA Versacor Elite MX.**

- b. Interior Surface: Manufacturer's Standard.

5. Exterior Surface: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.

- a. Energy Performance: Comply with Solar Reflectance Index Requirement.

6. Interior Surface: Manufacturer's standard primer color.

1.15 STANDING SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

- A. Structural Standing Seam Metal Roof Panels: Formed with 3 inch (76 mm) high vertical ribs at panel edges and evenly spaced raised longitudinal planks, manufactured for sequential installation by attaching panels to supports using concealed clips and engaging edges of adjacent panels and mechanically seaming panel ribs together, sealed with factory-applied sealant.
  - 1. Panel Coverage: 16 inch (406 mm).
  - 2. Anchor Clips:
    - a. Galvanized steel G90, 1-piece, 16 ga., movement allowance 2 inch (51 mm).

1.16 METAL ROOF PANEL ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide complete metal roof panel assembly incorporating trim, copings, fasciae, soffits, downspouts, insulation spacers and miscellaneous flashings. Provide required fasteners, gaskets, closure strips, and sealants. Fabricate and install accessories in accordance with SMACNA Manual.
  - 1. **Steel Roof Panel Systems:** Comply with ASTM E 1514.
  - 2. Flashing and Trim: Match material, thickness, and finish of metal roof panels.
- B. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws, bolts, nuts, and other acceptable fasteners recommended by roof panel manufacturer. Where exposed fasteners cannot be avoided, supply corrosion-resistant fasteners with heads matching color of metal panels by means of factory-applied coating.
  - 1. Exposed Screws: Manufacturer's recommended stainless steel screws with bonded neoprene and stainless steel washers, coated to match panel color.
  - 2. Concealed Screws: Manufacturer's recommended corrosion resistant carbon steel with corrosion resistant coating.
- C. Panel Sealants:
  - 1. Side Lap Sealant: One part, non-skinning, non-drying, synthetic butyl elastomer sealant.
  - 2. Field Applied Unexposed Sealant: Side Laps, end laps, and flashing details: Gun grade, nonskinning, butyl elastomer or polymeric non-skinning butyl tape.
  - 3. Exposed Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane, polysulfide, or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal roof panels and remain weathertight; as recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer colored to match panel color.
- D. Thermal Spacers at Purlins: Manufacturer's standard spacer.
- E. Pipe Flashings: Molded EPDM, with metal collar.
- F. Snow Guards: ColorGard snow retention system furnished by design components inc.

1.17 SECONDARY METAL FRAMING

- A. Miscellaneous Framing Components, General: Cold-formed metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z180).
  - 1. Hat Channels: 0.0598 inch/16 ga. (1.52 mm) minimum.



## PART 2 - EXECUTION

### 2.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine metal roof panel substrate with Installer present. Inspect for erection tolerances and other conditions that would adversely affect installation of metal roof panels.
- B. Roof Substrate: Confirm that wall substrate is within tolerances acceptable to metal roof panel system manufacturer.
  - 1. Maximum deviations acceptable:
    - a. 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6.1 m) out of plane
    - b. 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) over entire roof.
- C. Framing: Inspect framing that will support metal roof panels to determine if support components are installed as indicated on approved shop drawings. Confirm presence of acceptable framing members at recommended spacing to match installation requirements of metal roof panels.
- D. Advise G.C., in writing, of out-of-tolerance work and other deficient conditions prior to proceeding with metal wall panel system installation.
- E. Correct out of tolerance work and other deficient conditions prior to proceeding with roof panel installation.

### 2.2 METAL ROOF PANEL SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal roof panel system in accordance with approved shop drawings and manufacturer's recommendations. Install metal roof panels in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install metal roof panels in one piece lengths from the ridge to eave unless otherwise indicated on approved shop drawings. Anchor panels and other components securely in place. Provide for thermal and structural movement.
- B. Attach panels to metal framing using recommended clips, screws, fasteners, sealants, and adhesives indicated on approved shop drawings.
  - 1. Fasten metal roof panels to supports with concealed clips at each joint at location, spacing, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners approved by manufacturer.
  - 2. Provide weatherproof escutcheons for pipe and conduit penetrating roof.
  - 3. Dissimilar Materials: Where elements of metal roof panel system will come into contact with dissimilar materials, treat faces and edges in contact with dissimilar materials as recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Joint Sealers: Install joint sealers where indicated and where required for weatherproof performance of metal roof panel assemblies.
  - 1. Prepare joints and apply sealants per requirements of Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

### 2.3 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal roof panel accessories with positive anchorage to building and weather tight mounting and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.

1. Install related flashings and sheet metal trim per requirements of Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
2. Install components required for a complete metal roof panel assembly, including trim, copings, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.
3. Comply with performance requirements, requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and manufacturer's written installation instructions.
4. Provide concealed fasteners except where noted on approved shop drawings.
5. Set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.

#### 2.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a service representative authorized by metal roof panel manufacturer to inspect completed installation. Submit written report. Correct deficiencies noted in report.

#### 2.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective films when directed by Architect. Clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.
- B. Replace damaged panels and accessories that cannot be repaired to the satisfaction of the Architect.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 074213.23 - METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL WALL PANELS.

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes MCM wall panels.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. DBVR: Drained and back-ventilated rainscreen system; rainscreen system designed to drain and dry cavity entering water through drainage channels, weeps, and air ventilation.
- B. MCM: MCM; cladding material formed by joining two thin metal skins to polyethylene or fire-retardant core and bonded under precise temperature, pressure, and tension.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, MCM panel Fabricator and Installer, MCM sheet manufacturer's representative, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects MCM panels, including installers of doors, windows, and louvers.
  - 2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 3. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
  - 4. Review flashings, special siding details, wall penetrations, openings, and condition of other construction that affect MCM panels.
  - 5. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and tests and inspections if applicable.
  - 6. Review temporary protection requirements for MCM panel assembly during and after installation.
  - 7. Review procedures for repair of panels damaged after installation.
  - 8. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of MCM panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment assembly, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
  - 2. Accessories: Include details of the flashing, trim and anchorage, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of MCM panel indicated with factory-applied color finishes.
  - 1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
  - 1. MCM Panels: 12 inches (305 mm) long by actual panel width. Include fasteners, closures, and other MCM panel accessories. Submit custom color samples in paint manufacturer's standard size.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each product, tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
  - 1. MCM Manufacturer's Material Test Reports: Certified test reports showing compliance with specific performance or third-party listing documenting compliance to comparable code sections IBC 1407.14 and IBC 1703.5.
  - 2. MCM System Fabricator's Certified System Tests Reports: Certified system test reports showing system compliance with specific performance or third-party listing documenting compliance code section. Base performance requirements on MCM system type provided.
    - a. Wet System: Tested to AAMA 501.
    - b. DBVR System: Tested to AAMA 509.
    - c. PER System: Tested to AAMA 508.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For MCM panels to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by MCM Fabricator.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for MCM fabrication and installation.
  - 1. Build mockup of typical MCM panel assembly, including corner, soffits, supports, attachments, and accessories.
  - 2. Water-Spray Test: Conduct water-spray test of mockup of MCM panel assembly, testing for water penetration in accordance with AAMA 501.2.
  - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, MCM panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package MCM panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect MCM panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack MCM panels on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store MCM panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store MCM panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Retain strippable protective covering on MCM panels during installation.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of MCM panels to be performed in accordance with manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.11 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate MCM panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.12 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty on Panel Material: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace MCM that fails within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace MCM panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Finish Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide MCM panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing in accordance with ASTM E330:
  - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Panel Deflection Limit: For wind loads, no greater than 1/60 of the span
  - 4. Framing Member Deflection Limits: For wind loads, no greater than 1/240 of the span.
- B. Air Infiltration: Air leakage of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. (0.3 L/s per sq. m) of wall area when tested in accordance with ASTM E283 at the following test-pressure difference:
  - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).
- C. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration to room side of assembly when tested for 15 minutes in accordance with ASTM E331 at the following test-pressure difference:
  - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).
- D. Thermal Movements: Locate expansion and contraction points to allow for free and noiseless thermal movements from surface temperature changes.
  - 1. Temperature Change (Range): minus 20 deg F to 180 deg F (minus 29 to 82.2 deg C), material surfaces.
- E. Fire Propagation Characteristics: MCM wall assembly passes NFPA 285 testing.

2.2 MCM WALL PANELS

- A. MCM Wall Panel Systems: Provide factory-formed and -assembled, MCM wall panels fabricated from two metal facings that are bonded to a solid, extruded thermoplastic core; formed into profile for installation method indicated. Include attachment assembly components, and accessories required for weathertight system.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ALUCOBOND®; 3A Composites USA Inc.; ALUCOBOND® PLUS.
- B. Aluminum-Faced Composite Wall Panels: Formed with 0.020-inch- (0.50-mm-) thick, coil-coated] aluminum sheet facings.
  1. Panel Thickness: 0.157 inch (4 mm).
  2. Core: Fire retardant.
  3. Exterior Finish: PVDF fluoropolymer
    - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  4. Peel Strength: 22.5 in-lb/in. (100 N x mm/mm) when tested for bond integrity in accordance with ASTM D1781.
  5. Fire Performance: Flame spread less than 25 and smoke developed less than 450, in accordance with ASTM E84.
- C. Attachment Assembly Components: Formed from extruded aluminum.

## 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C645, cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet ASTM A653/A653M, G90 (Z275 hot-dip galvanized) coating designation or ASTM A792/A792M, Class AZ50 (Class AZM150) aluminum-zinc-alloy coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide Fabricator's standard sections as required for support and alignment of MCM panel system.
- B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of MCM panels unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as MCM panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, bases, drips, sills, jambs, corners, endwalls, framed openings, rakes, fasciae, parapet caps, soffits, reveals, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent MCM panels.
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ALUCOBOND®; 3A Composites USA Inc.; ALUCOBOND® Axcent™ Trim or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Arconic Architectural Products (USA).
    - b. Mitsubishi Chemical Composites.
  2. Aluminum Trim: Formed with 0.040-inch (1.00-mm-) thick, coil-coated aluminum sheet facings.
  3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

- D. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of MCM panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM or PVC sealing washers for exposed fasteners.
- E. Panel Sealants: ASTM C920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in MCM panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by MCM panel manufacturer.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate and finish MCM panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. Fabricate MCM panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.
- C. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations or recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
  - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  - 2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
  - 3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
  - 4. Sealed Joints: Form non-expansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
  - 5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
  - 6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
    - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal wall panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

## 2.5 FINISHES

- A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.



- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Aluminum Panels and Accessories:
  - 1. PVDF Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - 2. FEVE Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. One-coat **[clear]** **[tinted]** fluoropolymer finish containing 100 percent fluorinated ethylene vinyl ether resin in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - 3. Siliconized Polyester: Epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 0.8 mil (0.02 mm) for topcoat.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, MCM panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Examine wall framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by MCM wall panel manufacturer.
  - 2. Examine wall sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by MCM wall panel manufacturer.
    - a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and assemblies penetrating MCM panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of MCM panels before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages in accordance with ASTM C754 and MCM panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.3 MCM PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install MCM panels in accordance with Fabricator's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated on Drawings. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor MCM panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
  - 1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving MCM panels.
  - 2. Flash and seal MCM panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by MCM panels are installed.
  - 3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
  - 4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
  - 5. Install flashing and trim as MCM panel work proceeds.
  - 6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
  - 7. Align bottoms of MCM panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
  - 8. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.
- B. Fasteners:
  - 1. Aluminum Panels: Use aluminum or stainless steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use aluminum or galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by MCM panel manufacturer.
- D. Attachment Assembly, General: Install attachment assembly required to support MCM wall panels and to provide a complete weathertight wall system, including subgirts, perimeter extrusions, tracks, drainage channels, panel clips, and anchor channels.
  - 1. Include attachment to supports, panel-to-panel joinery, panel-to-dissimilar-material joinery, and panel-system joint seals.
- E. Panel Installation: Attach MCM wall panels to supports at locations, spacings, and with fasteners recommended by Fabricator to achieve performance requirements specified.
  - 1. Wet Seal Systems: Seal horizontal and vertical joints between adjacent MCM wall panels with sealant backing and sealant. Install sealant backing and sealant in accordance with requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
    - a. Clip Installation: Attach panel clips to supports at locations, spacings, and with fasteners recommended in writing by Fabricator. Attach routed-and-turned flanges of wall panels to panel clips with Fabricator's standard fasteners.
    - b. Panel Installation:
      - 1) Seal horizontal and vertical joints between adjacent panels with sealant backing and sealant. Install sealant backing and sealant in accordance with requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

- 2) Seal horizontal and vertical joints between adjacent MCM wall panels with Fabricator's standard gaskets.
    - 3) Joint Sealing: Seal all joints in accordance with AAMA 501.
  2. PER Installation: Install using Fabricator's standard assembly with vertical channel that provides support and secondary drainage assembly, draining at base of wall. Notch vertical channel to receive support pins. Install vertical channels supported by channel brackets or adjuster angles and at locations, spacings, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Attach MCM wall panels by inserting horizontal support pins into notches in vertical channels and into flanges of panels. Leave horizontal and vertical joints with open reveal.
    - a. Track-Support Installation: Install support assembly at locations, spacings, and with fasteners recommended by Fabricator. Use Fabricator's standard horizontal tracks and vertical drain channels that provide support and secondary drainage assembly, draining to the exterior at horizontal joints through drain tube. Attach MCM wall panels to tracks by interlocking panel edges with Fabricator's standard "T" clips.
    - b. Panel Installation:
      - 1) Attach routed-and-turned flanges of wall panels to perimeter extrusions with Fabricator's standard fasteners.
      - 2) Install wall panels to allow individual panels to "free float" and be installed and removed without disturbing adjacent panels.
    - c. Joint Sealing: Seal all joints in accordance with AAMA 508. Do not apply sealants to joints unless indicated.
  3. DBVR System: Install using Fabricator's standard assembly with vertical channel that provides support and secondary drainage assembly, draining at base of wall. Notch vertical channel to receive support pins. Install vertical channels supported by channel brackets or adjuster angles and at locations, spacings, and with fasteners recommended by Fabricator. Attach MCM wall panels by inserting horizontal support pins into notches in vertical channels and into flanges of panels. Leave horizontal and vertical joints with open reveal.
    - a. Track-Support Installation: Install support assembly at locations, spacings, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Use Fabricator's standard horizontal tracks and vertical drain channels that provide support and secondary drainage assembly, draining to the exterior at horizontal joints through drain tube. Attach MCM wall panels to tracks by interlocking panel edges with Fabricator's standard "T" clips.
    - b. Panel Installation:
      - 1) Attach routed-and-turned flanges of wall panels to perimeter extrusions with manufacturer's standard fasteners.
      - 2) Install wall panels to allow individual panels to "free float" and be installed and removed without disturbing adjacent panels.
    - c. Joint Sealing: Seal all joints in accordance with AAMA 509. Do not apply sealants to joints unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
  1. Install components required for a complete MCM panel assembly including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by MCM panel Fabricator; or, if not indicated, provide types recommended in writing by MCM system Fabricator.

- G. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, or SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight.
1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof performance.
  2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints allowed within 24 inches (605 mm) of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

### 3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Site Verifications of Conditions:
1. Verify conditions of substrate previously installed under other Sections are acceptable for the MCM system installation. Provide documentation indicating detrimental conditions to the MCM system performance.
  2. Once conditions are verified, MCM system installation tolerances are as follows:
    - a. Shim and align MCM wall panel units within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), non-accumulative, on level, plumb, and location lines as indicated, and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Water-Spray Test: After installation, test area of assembly as directed by Architect for water penetration in accordance with AAMA 501.2.
- B. Fabricator's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect completed MCM wall panel installation, including accessories.
- C. MCM wall panels will be considered defective if they do not pass test and inspections.
- D. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, are performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as MCM panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of

MCM panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by MCM panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.

- B. After MCM panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- C. Replace MCM panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 074213

SECTION 075216 - SBS-MODIFIED BITUMINOUS MEMBRANE ROOFING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the SBS-modified bituminous membrane roofing as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Styrene-butadiene-styrene (SBS) modified bituminous membrane roofing, heat welded.
  - 2. Vapor retarder.
  - 3. Roof insulation.
  - 4. Cover board.
  - 5. Flexible walkways.
  - 6. Accessories.
  - 7. Maintenance of existing roof warranties.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Cast-in-Place Concrete - Section 033000.
- B. Carpentry - Section 062000.
- C. Sheet Metal Flashing - Section 076200.
- D. Roof drains - Division 22.

1.4 WIND UPLIFT STANDARD

- A. Wind Resistance and Stability of Insulation Board: Insulation board producer/manufacturer is responsible for determining thickness of ballast adequately to counter floating action and withstand wind uplift at the project site. Thickness and/or weight of ballast indicated on drawings or in specifications are minimum values.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Obtain primary roofing products, including roofing sheets (felts), bitumen, composition flashings, and vapor barrier from a single manufacturer. Provide secondary materials as recommended by manufacturer of primary materials.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A firm with not less than ten (10) years of successful experience in installation of roofing systems similar to those required for this project and which is acceptable to or licensed by manufacturer of primary roofing materials.

1. Obtain written certification from manufacturer of roofing stating that installer is an approved applicator of roofing system.
- C. Pre-Roofing Conference: Prior to installation of roofing and associated work, meet at project site, or other mutually agreed location, with Installer, roofing manufacturer, installers of related work, Contractor and other entities concerned with roofing performance, including the Architect and Owner. Record discussions and agreements and furnish copy to each participant. Provide at least seventy-two (72) hours advance notice to participants prior to convening pre-roofing conference. Review methods and procedures related to roofing work, including but not limited to the following:
1. Tour representative areas of roofing substrates (decks), inspect and discuss condition of substrate, roof drains, curbs, penetrations and other preparatory work performed by other trades.
  2. Review roofing system requirements (drawings, specifications and other Contract Documents.
  3. Review required submittals, both completed and yet to be completed.
  4. Review and finalize construction schedule related to roofing work and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  5. Review required inspection, testing, certifying and material usage accounting procedures.
  6. Review weather and forecasted weather conditions, and procedures for coping with unfavorable conditions, including possibility of temporary roofing (if not a mandatory requirement).
- D. UL Listing: Provide labeled materials which have been tested and listed by UL in "Building Materials Directory" for application indicated, with "Class A" rated materials/system for roof slopes shown.
1. Provide roof covering materials bearing Classification Marking (UL) on bundle, package or container indicating that materials have been produced under UL's Classification and follow-up Service.
- E. Roofing System Design: Provide membrane roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist uplift pressure calculated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
- F. Provide roofing system and component materials which have been evaluated by Factory Mutual System for fire spread, wind-uplift Class 90, and hail damage and are listed in "Factory Mutual Approval Guide" for Class I construction.
1. System shall also meet ASCE-7 for wind uplift standards.  
Component and Cladding Unfactored Loads (per ASCE-7):  
Zone 1: +10.6/-28.6psf  
Zone 2: +10.6/-38.4psf  
Zone 3: +10.6/-46.2psf  
Zone 4: +27.2/-29.8psf  
Zone 5: +27.2/-34.3psf  
Roof Overhang Uplift Zone 2: -43psf  
Roof Overhang Uplift Zone 3: -56.5psf
  2. Provide roof covering materials bearing FM approval marking on bundle, package or container, indicating that material has been subjected to FM's examination and follow-up inspection service.

- G. Roof system shall have a minimum initial solar reflectance of 0.7 in accordance with ASTM C1549 or ASTM E1918 and minimum thermal emittance of 0.75 as determined in accordance with ASTM C1371 or ASTM E408 or a minimum SRI of 78 as determined in accordance with ASTM E1980.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product information, including published specifications, which completely describe the preparation of surfaces and application of roofing systems.
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit complete shop drawings showing details, dimensions, fabrication and fastening elements for each condition encountered, layout of each sheet noting seam locations, perimeter and penetration flashing and other details where roofing abuts other materials and/or conditions.
- C. Samples: Submit the following for review:
  - 1. Membrane w/splice, 6" x 6".
  - 2. Rigid insulation, 6" x 6".
  - 3. Flashing materials, 6" x 6".
  - 4. Notarized Certificates of Compliance.
  - 5. Submit a letter from membrane manufacturer issuing sample guarantee and approving the applicator, prior to pre-application conference.
- D. Submit copies of pre-roofing conference records.
- E. Submit a letter signed by the manufacturer and Contractor acknowledging that the submitted roofing system complies with ASCE-7 and FM 1-165A, for wind speed code requirements based on height and geographic location of project, unless greater required by Code.

#### 1.7 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Condition Limitations: Proceed with roofing work only when existing and forecasted weather conditions will permit work to be performed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and warranty requirements.

#### 1.8 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Store and handle roofing sheets in a manner which will ensure that there is no possibility of significant moisture pick-up.
- B. Store in a dry, well ventilated, weather-tight place. Unless protected from weather or other moisture sources, do not leave unused felts on the roof overnight or when roofing work is not in progress. Store rolls of felt and other sheet materials on end on pallets or other raised surface. Handle and store materials or equipment in a manner to avoid significant or permanent deflection of deck.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Project Warranty: Provide written warranty, signed by Manufacturer of primary roofing materials and his authorized Installer, agreeing to replace/repair defective materials and workmanship as required to maintain roofing system in watertight condition.
- B. Roofing Membrane Warranty: Upon successful completion of the project, provide manufacturer's twenty (20) year no dollar limit (NDL) warranty for workmanship and material watertight conditions. The warranty term shall be a term type, without deductibles or limitations on coverage amount and will warrant that the membrane will remain adhered to substrates and will include the cost of removal of



overburden. The insulation will retain 80% of its insulation value and remain in place against wind uplift and float.

- C. Contractor's Warranty: Applicator shall supply Owner with a separate workmanship warranty. In the event any work related to water is found within the three (3) years of acceptance to be defective or otherwise not in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Applicator shall repair the defect at no cost to the Owner.
- D. NOTE: Work shall be performed in such a manner as to maintain warranties that are in effect for existing roof membrane.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### ROOFING SYSTEM

- A. Roofing system to be two-layer, SBS-modified bitumen (polyester reinforced), granule surfaced, as manufactured by Johns Manville, or approved equal.
- B. Primer: Asphalt cut-back primer, complying with ASTM D 41.
- C. Mastics: An asphalt cutback mastic, reinforced with non-asbestos fibers, used as a base for setting metal flanges conforming to ASTM D 4586 Type I, Class II requirements.
- D. Bitumen: Roofing asphalt complying with ASTM D 312, type as recommended by roofing manufacturer.
- E. Vapor Retarder: Polyethylene film conforming to ASTM D 4397, 6 mils thick, minimum, with maximum permeance rating of 0.13 perm.
- F. SBS Modified Base-Ply Sheet: ASTM D 6163, Grade S, Type I, glass-fiber-reinforced, SBS-modified asphalt sheet; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified. Basis of Design: "DynaWeld Base" by Johns Manville, or approved equal.
- G. Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6163, Grade G, Type I, glass-fiber-reinforced, SBS-modified asphalt sheet; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified. Basis of Design: "DynaWeld Cap FR CR" by Johns Manville, or approved equal.

### 2.2 BASE SHEET FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Backer Sheet: ASTM D 6163, Grade S, Type I, glass-fiber-reinforced, SBS-modified asphalt sheet; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified. Basis of Design: "DynaWeld Base" by Johns Manville, .
- B. Flashing Sheet: ASTM D 6298, embossed aluminum foil surfaced, glass-fiber-reinforced, SBS-modified asphalt sheet; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified. Basis of Design: "DynaClad" by Johns Manville, or approved equal.
- C. Liquid Applied Flashing: A liquid and fabric reinforced flashing system created with a stitchbonded polyester scrim and a two-component, moisture cured, elastomeric, liquid applied flashing material, consisting of an asphalt extended urethane base material and an activator. Basis of Design: "PermaFlash System" Johns Manville, or approved equal.

### 2.3 ROOF INSULATION

- A. Polyisocyanurate Board Roof Insulation: Rigid, sloped (1/4" per foot) and flat, cellular thermal insulation with polyisocyanurate closed-cell foam core and manufacturer's standard facing laminated to both sides; complying with

ASTM C 1289, average LTTR value as designated at mean temperatures indicated, after testing per ASTM C 1303 as follows:

1. Surface Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame spread of 25.
  2. LTTR R-Value: 6.0/inch at 75 deg. F.
- B. Acceptable Product/Manufacturer: "Enrgy 3" as manufactured by Johns Manville, or equal made by Apache or GAF
1. Roof membrane manufacturer must approve insulation in writing.
- C. Cover insulation with 3/4" thick Perlite board equal to "Fesco" made by Johns Manville or approved equal.

#### 2.4 CANT STRIPS

- A. Provide cant strips formed of rigid insulation matching roof insulation or molded asphalt or coal tar impregnated organic fiber insulation material, 45° cant, unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Lead flashing sheet of 4 lb. flashing lead for pipe flashing of common desilverized pig lead.
- B. FM approved mechanical fasteners for attaching insulation to substrate.
- C. Roof Walk: Preformed, skid-resistant boards consisting of modified asphalt, reinforcements and fillers with a ceramic granule surface on both sides. Dimension shall be 32" x 32" x 5/16". Johns Manville "DynaTred Roof Walkway."
- D. Pitch Pockets: J.M. Chem-Curb system, consisting of a preformed structural urethane outer shell filled with a two-part sealant J.M. Flashing Cement. A two-part sealant adhesive equal to J.M. Flashing Cement shall be used to bond the shell to the roof finished surface as well as seal the edges.
- E. Cover insulation with 3/4" thick Perlite board equal to "Fesco HD" made by Johns Manville or approved equal.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where modified bituminous roofing is to be installed for compliance with requirements. Report conditions detrimental to built-up roofing work. Proceed after unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.
- B. Clean substrate of dust, debris, and other substances detrimental to built-up roofing work. Remove sharp projections.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install built-up roofing in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Substrate shall be clean, smooth and dry, free of projections which might puncture the felts.
- C. Insure that all drains, curbs, blocking and roof penetrating components are in place before any roofing work starts. See that all roof drains are set 1" below the normal finish roof level to insure that additional flashing around the drains will not be built-up above the normal roof level and prevent proper drainage.

- D. Start roofing application at far points of the deck and work toward area where base materials are fastened to the roof deck (to minimize traffic over newly applied roofing).
- E. Inspect roof drains for obstructions and debris after the roofing work is completed.
- F. Prime deck as recommended by roof membrane manufacturer.

### 3.3 PRIMER APPLICATION

- A. Apply the appropriate specified primer to dry, compatible substrates as required to enhance adhesion of new specified roofing materials.
- B. Fully prime substrates using brush, spray or roller at the application rate published in the product data sheet.
- C. Asphalt Primer: Apply primer to dry compatible masonry, metal, wood and other required substrates before applying asphalt and heat-welded membrane plies. Primer is optional for most solvent based solvent-based SBS adhesives and cements; refer to product data sheets.
- D. Do not proceed applying self-adhered membrane if primer is wet. If self-adhered membrane primer becomes fully dry and loses all tack, re-prime the substrate as necessary to achieve membrane adhesion.
- E. Project conditions vary throughout the day. Monitor changing conditions, monitor the drying time of primers, and monitor the adhesion of the membrane plies. Adjust primer and membrane application methods as necessary to achieve the desired results.

### 3.4 VAPOR RETARDER INSTALLATION

- A. Loosely lay polyethylene-film vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2" and 6", respectively. Continuously seal side and end laps with adhesive.
- B. Completely seal vapor retarder at terminations, obstructions, and penetrations to prevent air movement into roofing system.

### 3.5 HEAT WELDING

- A. Single or multi-nozzle, hand-held propane roof torches shall be used to install heat-welded membrane and flashing plies. Multi-nozzle carts (dragon wagons) may also be utilized to install membrane plies. Seven (7) nozzle carts are recommended for more uniform heat application in lieu of five (5) nozzle carts.

### 3.6 INSULATION

- A. Extend insulation and protection board full thickness over entire surface to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions, and fill voids with insulation and mastic.
- B. Apply a double layer of insulation of the required thickness, to make up the total thickness. Stagger joints between layers as recommended by the manufacturer.
- C. Set first layer of insulation using mechanical fasteners spaced in accordance with FM requirements to meet Miami Dade Requirements wind uplift. Apply second layer of insulation and protection board in steep asphalt.
- D. Do not advance the laying of insulation ahead of roofing more than necessary for sequence of operations. Cover insulation exposed at end of each day's work (and when rain threatens) with

waterproofing materials. Do not permit insulation to become wet. Remove and dispose of insulation which has become wet; replace before proceeding with roofing work.

- E. Lay with edges in moderate contact but do not force into place.
- F. Stagger end joints; or tape joints where recommended by the manufacturer.
- G. Install temporary water cut-offs at completion of each day's work and remove upon resumption of work.

### 3.7 HEAT-WELDED, FULLY-ADHERED MEMBRANE APPLICATION

- A. Follow material product data sheets and published general requirements for installation instructions.
- B. Ensure environmental conditions are satisfactory, and will remain satisfactory, during the application of the heat-welded membrane.
- C. Ensure all primers are fully dry before beginning heat-welding operations.
- D. Unroll membrane onto the roof surface and allow to relax prior to installing the membrane.
- E. Starting at the low point of the roof, lay out the membrane to ensure the plies are installed perpendicular to the roof slope, shingled to prevent back-water laps.
- F. Ensure all roofing and flashing substrates are prepared and acceptable to receive the heat-welded membrane.
- G. Cut rolls to working lengths to conform to roof conditions, and lay out to always work to a selvage edge.
- H. Ensure specified side-laps and end-laps are maintained. End-laps should be staggered 3 feet apart.
- I. As the membrane is un-rolled, apply heat to the underside of the membrane until the plastic burn-off film melts away. Continuously move the torch back-and-forth across the underside of the roll to melt the bitumen on the underside of the sheet, while continuously unrolling sheet.
- J. While unrolling and heating the sheet, ensure a constant flow hot bitumen approximately ¼" to ½" flows ahead of the roll as it is unrolled, and there is 1/8" to ¼" bleed out at all laps.
- K. Adjust the application of heat to the underside of the membrane and to substrate as required for varying substrates and environmental conditions.
- L. At the 6 in end-laps, melt the plastic burn-off film from the top surface or embed granules, where present, using a torch or hot-air welder.
- M. At end-laps, cut a 45 degree dog-ear away from the selvage edge, or otherwise ensure the membrane is fully heat-welded watertight at all T-joints.
- N. Each day, physically inspect all side and end-laps, and ensure the membrane is sealed watertight. Where necessary, use a torch or hot-air welder and a clean trowel to ensure all laps are sealed.
- O. Inspect the installation each day to ensure the plies are fully adhered. Repair all voids, wrinkles, open laps and all other deficiencies.
- P. Offset cap sheet side and end-laps away from the base ply laps so that cap sheet laps are not located within 18 in of base ply laps.

### 3.8 FLASHING APPLICATION, HEAT WELDED

- A. Refer to SBS manufacturer's membrane application instructions, flashing detail drawings, and follow product data sheets and other published requirements for installation instructions. Refer to manufacturer's membrane flashing detail drawings.
- B. Where required to seal substrates for fire safety, install specified adhered, self-adhered or fastened backer ply to the substrate. Ensure backer-ply covers and seals all substrates requiring protection from exposure to torch operations.
- C. Ensure all flashing substrates that require primer are primed, and the primer is fully dry.
- D. Unroll the flashing base ply and flashing cap sheet onto the roof surface to their complete length. Once relaxed, cut the membrane to the required working lengths to accommodate the flashing height, cants and the required over-lap onto the horizontal roof surface.
- E. Cut the flashing membrane from the end of the roll in order to always install flashings to the side-lap line or selvage edge line.
- F. Lay out the flashing base ply and flashing cap sheet to offset all side-laps a minimum of 12 inches so that side-laps are never aligned on top of the ply beneath. Shingle the flashing ply laps to prevent back-water laps.
- G. Install non-combustible cant strips at transitions where required.
- H. Ensure correct membrane and flashing sequencing to achieve redundant, multi-ply, watertight flashings.
- I. Roof Membrane Base Ply: Before installing flashings, install the roof membrane base ply in the horizontal field of the roof, and extend the base ply up to the top of the cant, where present, at roof terminations, transitions and penetrations.
- J. Flashing Base Ply: Install the flashing base ply starting at the top leading edge of the vertical flashing substrate, down over the cant and onto the horizontal surface of the roof a minimum of 3 inches beyond the of base of the cant. Cut the base ply at corners to form 3 inch side-laps. Install gussets to seal corner transitions.
  - 1. Install one or more flashing base ply(s) at all roof terminations, transitions and penetrations.
- K. Roof Membrane Cap Sheet
  - 1. Install the roof membrane cap sheet in the horizontal field of the roof over the flashing base ply up to the roof termination, transition or penetration, and up to the top of cants where present.
  - 2. Using a chalk line, mark a line on the membrane cap sheet a minimum of 4 inches from the base of the cant onto the roof. Where granules are present, embed the cap sheet granules using a torch and trowel or granule embedder to prepare the surface to receive the flashing cap sheet.
- L. Flashing Cap Sheet
  - 1. Install the flashing cap sheet starting at the top leading edge on the vertical substrate, over the cant and onto the roof surface 4 inches from the base of the cant.
  - 2. Install the flashing cap sheet to ensure a minimum two (2) ply flashing system is present at all roof terminations, transitions and penetrations.
  - 3. During the membrane and flashing installation, ensure all plies are completely adhered into place, with no bridging, voids or openings. Ensure bitumen or flashing cement bleed-out is present at all flashing side and end-laps.

4. Use a damp sponge float or damp rag to press-in the heat-welded flashing plies during installation.
5. Where sufficient bitumen bleed-out is not present, and for all self-adhered plies, apply specified gun-grade sealant or mastic to seal the membrane termination along all roof terminations, transitions and penetrations. These include gravel stop edge metal, pipe penetrations, along the top edge of curb and wall flashing, and all other flashing terminations where necessary to seal flashings watertight.
6. Fasten the top leading edge of the flashing 8 in on-centers with appropriate 1 in cap nails or other specified fasteners. Seal fastener penetrations watertight using specified sealant or mastic.
7. Manufacturer's liquid-applied, reinforced flashing systems shall be installed where conditions are not favorable to install SBS modified bitumen flashings. Such conditions include irregular shapes penetrating roof surfaces (I-beams), confined areas and low flashing heights. Manufacturer's liquid-applied, reinforced flashing systems are recommended in lieu of pitch pans and lead pipe flashings. Refer to manufacturer's installation guidelines.

### 3.9 ROOF DRAINS

- A. Install 1-1/2" x 18" Tapered Edge Strips to form a gradually tapered sump transition from top of insulation to roof drain flange. Minimum sump size to be 4 ft. by 4 ft.
- B. Install roofing plies, starting at the low point (roof drain) in a shingle fashion so that four plies are provided, trimming felt plies at edge of drain flange.
- C. Install a 4# lead flashing (minimum size 30" x 30"), set in bed of flashing cement, on top of roofing plies. Form lead to shape of sump and into drain bowl, trimming neatly approx. 1" beyond ring. Install clamping ring immediately.
- D. Prime top surface of lead with asphalt primer. Allow to dry completely.
- E. Strip in lead with one ply of SBS Modified Bitumen membrane, extending from clamping ring out a minimum of 6" beyond lead; using modified bitumen trowel grade flashing cement.

### 3.10 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction does not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to the Architect and Owner.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.

END OF SECTION 075216

SECTION 076200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the sheet metal flashing as indicated on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Aluminum flashing.
  - 2. Field fabricating (including bending, cutting, soldering, etc.), if required, of flashing.
  - 3. Separation of contacting surfaces of dissimilar metals.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Unit Masonry - Section 042000.
- B. Roofing - Division 7.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Submit, showing all materials, finishes, fastenings, joint details, fabrication, construction and relation to adjoining construction.
- B. Samples: Submit 12" x 12" samples of flashing materials and finishes.

1.5 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Protection: Use all means necessary to protect the materials of this Section before, during, and after installation, and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.
- B. Replacements: In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary at no additional cost to the Owner.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. The Contractor shall warrant that all Metal Flashing Work executed under this Section will be free from defects in materials and workmanship for a period of ten (10) years from date of acceptance of the Project, and he shall remedy any defects in the Metal Flashing Work.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Flashing: ASTM B 209, alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper as required to suit forming operations and performance required; mill finish for concealed flashing; 0.040" thick.
  - 1. Accessories and Fastenings: AISI, Types 302 and 304 stainless steel, or aluminum.
  - 2. High-Performance Organic Finish: AA-C12C42R1x (Chemical Finish: Cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: Acid-chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating; Organic Coating: As specified below). Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Fluoropolymer Two-Coat System: Manufacturer's standard two-coat, thermocured system consisting of specially formulated inhibitive primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight; complying with AAMA 2605.
    - b. Color: As selected by the Architect.
- B. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, SSPC-Paint 12, compounded for 15-mil dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type non-corrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where sheet metal flashing is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

### 3.2 METAL FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Reference Standard: Conform to the requirements of 7<sup>th</sup> Edition of the Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors Association (SMACNA) Architectural Sheet Metal Manual.
- B. General: Fabricate and install metal flashing work in accordance with details and specifications of above Reference Standard, with manufacturer's instructions, and as herein specified, to provide a watertight installation. Apply metal flashing to smooth, even, sound, clean, dry surfaces free from defects. Make provisions to allow for expansion and contraction of metal flashing work. Wherever practicable, shop form all metal flashing work and deliver ready for installation. Form metal flashing work accurately to required profiles, with flat surfaces, straight edges and corners, free from defects. Fold exposed metal edges back not less than 1/2" and form drip.
- C. Nailing: Confine to sheets twelve (12) inches or less in width. Confine nailing to one edge only, locate nails where concealed. Use No. 12 x 1" long flat headed, annular threaded, Type 302 stainless steel nails for nailing to wood blocking; use one (1) inch long masonry nails for nailing to concrete. Space nails four (4) inches o.c. maximum.
- D. Cleating: Use cleats where sheets are more than twelve (12) inches in width. Space cleats approximately twelve (12) inches o.c. Cleats two (2) inches wide by three (3) inches long, of the same material and weight as the metal flashing being installed. Secure one end of the cleat with two (2) nails and fold edge back over the nail heads. Lock other end into seam or into folded edge of metal flashing sheets. Pre-tin cleats for soldered seams.



- E. Joining: Join metal flashings with one (1) inch locked and soldered seams except at slip joints. Mallet seams flat and solder full length of seam as specified below.
- F. Soldering: Clean and pre-tin edges of metal flashing to be soldered before soldering is begun with solder on both sides for a width of not less than 1-1/2". Solder slowly with well heated metal surfaces. Use ample solder. Show not less than one full inch of evenly flowed solder on seam. Seams shall have a liberal amount of flux brushed in before soldering is commenced. Where soldering paste or killed acid is employed as a flux, soldering shall follow immediately after application of the flux. Upon completion of soldering, clean surfaces of all flux.
- G. Slip Joints: Locate slip joints not more than twenty-four (24) feet apart and not more than eight (8) feet from corners. Form slip joints as three (3) inch wide joints with cover piece behind flashing and fill locked ends neatly with sealant.
- H. Cap Flashing: Install over base flashings, in eight (8) to ten (10) foot lengths, lapped six (6) inches at ends. Cap flashing shall be increased longitudinally to produce spring action to hold bottom edge of cap flashing firmly against base flashing. Cap flashing shall lap base flashing at least four (4) inches, with exposed bottom edge at a forty-five (45) degree angle downward and folded back on underside at least 1/2" to form drip. Make cap flashing continuous at corners and angles.
- I. Miscellaneous Flashing: Provide all other miscellaneous metal flashing not specifically mentioned herein but indicated on drawings and/or required to provide a watertight installation.
- J. Separation of Dissimilar Materials: Back paint surfaces of metal flashing in contact with dissimilar metals or with concrete or masonry with bituminous paint.
- K. Reglets
  - 1. Provide watertight reglets in masonry and concrete work to receive cap flashing. Form reglets of stainless steel using same thickness as stainless steel sheet metal specified.
  - 2. In masonry work use open or closed slot reglets with slot at least one (1) inch deep and 3/16" wide. Provide hook dams or turn-ups for anchoring securely into mortar joints. Insert cap flashing into slot full depth using button punch or lead wedges to lock in place.
  - 3. In concrete work, use open or closed slot reglets with slot sloped upward at forty-five (45) degrees, at least one (1) inch deep and 3/16" wide. For fastening reglets to concrete forms use double-head stainless steel nails spaced twelve (12) inches apart maximum.
  - 4. Insert cap flashing full depth into reglet slot, and wedge in place using lead strips spaced on twelve (12) inch centers maximum or lead caulking rope. When lead strips are used for continuous caulked reglets, use approved weather-resistant fibrous compounds.

END OF SECTION 076200

## SECTION 077100 - ROOF SPECIALTIES AND ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 GENERAL

#### 1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

#### 1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. The Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary to complete the roof specialties and accessories as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including but not necessarily limited to the following:
  - 1. Roof expansion joints.
  - 2. Aluminum copings.
  - 3. Prefabricated roof curbs.

#### 1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Roofing - Section 075216.
- B. Sheet Metal Flashing - Section 076200.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Before any roof specialties and accessories are delivered to the job site, submit shop drawings showing profiles and anchoring devices.

#### 1.5 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Protection: Use all means necessary to protect the materials of this Section before, during and after installation and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.
- B. Replacements: In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ROOF EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Provide neoprene and metal insulated expansion joint assemblies made of 1/16" stainless steel flanges and insulated with 1/2" thick foam insulation. Provide prefabricated units for corners and intersections and provide manufacturer's standard splicing strips and adhesives for installation and splicing of units.
- B. Provide "Expand-O-Flash" units made by Manville or equal made by Construction Specialties, Grefco, E-Z Flash, or approved equal.

#### 2.2 ALUMINUM COPINGS

- A. Fabricate of 0.063" thick aluminum alloy 5005-H154, smooth, no pattern.

- B. Provide concealed splice plates 12'-0" o.c. fabricated of 0.050" thick aluminum to match exposed aluminum; finished to match exposed aluminum.
- C. Provide pre-fabricated mitered and welded corner units.
- D. Provide galvanized steel anchor plates, anchors spaced 6'-0" o.c. and snap-lock coping design; all anchors concealed.
- E. High-Performance Organic Finish: AA-C12C42R1x (Chemical Finish: Cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: Acid-chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating; Organic Coating: As specified below). Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Fluoropolymer Two-Coat System: Manufacturer's standard two-coat, thermocured system consisting of specially formulated inhibitive primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight; complying with AAMA 2605.
  - 2. Custom color and gloss as selected by the Architect.
- F. Provide units manufactured by Hickman, or equal made by Cheney, Johns Manville or approved equal.

## 2.3 PRE-FABRICATED ROOF CURBS

- A. Provide manufacturer's standard shop fabricated units made of 14 ga. zinc coated steel factory primed with rust inhibitive primer, and insulated with 1-1/2" thick fiberglass board. Provide units manufactured by Pate, Louvers & Dampers, Inc., Industrial Louvers, Inc., or approved equal.
- B. Reinforce units over 8'-0" long and units requiring reinforcement due to heavy loads by forming units of double-walled box-type construction with stiffeners of heavy gauge with flanges as required to provide sufficient rigidity and strength to withstand max. lateral forces in addition to super imposed vertical loads.
- C. Sloping Roof Decks: For deck slopes of 1" per ft. and more, fabricate curb units (except expansion joint curbs) to form a level top edge. Where slope is less than 1" per ft., and curb is used to support equipment with moving parts, or supports vertical elements such as gravity ventilators which are intended to be plumb, provide tapered wood nailers (treated wood) at top of curb units to form a level top edge.
- D. Provide treated wood nailer, not less than 1-5/8" thick and of the width shown, but not less than the width of the curb wall assembly. Anchor nailer securely to the top of the metal frame unit. Refer to Section 062000 of these specifications for pressure-treatment required for wood nailers.
- E. Provide 22 ga. galvanized steel curb liners; where required extend curb liners through deck construction to coordinate with work below.
- F. Provide 18 ga. galvanized steel cap flashing to cover a min. of 3" over roof flashing.
- G. Where curb units are shown to support shop fabricated items of equipment, do not proceed with fabrication of curb units until size or dimensions have been checked for coordination with equipment.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where roof specialties and accessories are to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations. Coordinate with installation of roof deck and other substrates to receive accessory units, and with roof insulation, roofing and flashing; as required to ensure that each element of the work performs properly, and that combined elements are waterproof and weathertight. Anchor units securely to supporting structural substrates, adequate to withstand lateral and thermal stresses as well as inward and outward loading pressures.
- B. Isolation: Where metal surfaces of units are to be installed in contact with non-compatible metal or corrosive substrates, including wood, apply bituminous coating on concealed metal surfaces, or provide other permanent separation.
- C. Cap Flashing: Where cap flashing is required as component of accessory, install to provide adequate waterproof overlap with roofing or roof flashing (as counter flashing). Seal with thick bead of mastic sealant, except where overlap is indicated to be left open for ventilation.
- D. Roof Expansion Joint:
  - 1. Provide uniform profile throughout the length of the installation, and do not stretch the elastic sheet.
  - 2. Nail metal flanges to curbs and cant strips securely as recommended by the manufacturer for waterproof construction.
  - 3. Anchor edges of expansion joint units in the manner indicated, complying with manufacturer's instructions. Provide not less than 4" embedment in bituminous membranes, with hot bitumen or with roofing cement. Cover with composition stripping as specified for the membrane work.

### 3.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Touch up damaged metal coatings.

END OF SECTION 077100

SECTION 078413 - FIRESTOPS AND SMOKESEALS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the firestops and smoke seals as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Penetrations through fire-resistance-rated floor and roof construction including both empty openings and openings containing cables, pipes, ducts, conduits, and other penetrating items.
  - 2. Penetrations through fire-resistance-rated walls and partitions including both empty openings and openings containing cables, pipes, ducts, conduits, and other penetrating items.
  - 3. Penetrations through smoke barriers and construction enclosing compartmentalized areas involving both empty openings and openings containing penetrating items.
  - 4. Sealant joints in fire-resistance-rated construction.
  - 5. Penetrations at each floor level in shafts and/or stairwells.
  - 6. Construction joints, including those between top of fire rated walls and underside of floors above.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Cast-in-Place Concrete - Section 033000.
- B. Unit Masonry - Section 042000.
- C. Joint Sealers - Section 079200.
- D. Gypsum Board Assemblies - Section 092116.
- E. Piping penetrations - Division 22.
- F. Duct penetrations - Division 23.
- G. Cable and conduit penetrations - Division 26.

1.4 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM E 814 "Standard Method of Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Firestops."
- B. UL 1479, UBC 7-5 (Both are same as A. above).
- C. ASTM E 119 "Standard Method of Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials."
- D. UL 263, UBC 7-1 (Both are same as C. above).
- E. UL 2079 "Tests For Fire Resistance of Building Joint Systems."

- F. ASTM E 1399 "Test For Dynamic Movement Conditions."
- G. ASTM E 1966 (Same as E. above).
- H. ASTM G 21 "Standard Practice for Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials to Fungi."
- I. Test Requirements: ASTM E 2307, "Standard Test Method for Determining Fire Resistance of Perimeter Fire Barrier Systems Using Intermediate-Scale, Multi-story Test Apparatus."
- J. Inspection Requirements: ASTM E 2174, "Standard Practice for On-site Inspection of Installed Firestops."
- K. Published Through-Penetration Systems by recognized independent testing agencies.
  - 1. UL Fire Resistance Directory, Volume II of current year.
  - 2. Warnock Hersey Certification Listings, current year.
  - 3. Omega Point Laboratories, current year.
- L. International Firestop Council Guidelines for Evaluating Firestop Systems Engineering Judgments.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit manufacturer's product literature for each type of firestop material to be installed. Literature shall indicate product characteristics, typical uses, performance, limitation criteria, test data and indication that products comply with specified requirements.
- B. Submit shop drawings detailing materials, installation methods, and relationships to adjoining construction for each firestop system, and each kind of construction condition penetrated and kind of penetrating item. Include firestop design designation of qualified testing and inspection agency evidencing compliance with requirements for each condition indicated.
  - 1. Submit documentation, including illustrations, for proposed UL listed (or equal) firestop and smoke seal assembly required for the Project.
- C. Material Safety Data Sheets: Submit MSDS for each firestop product.
- D. Submit qualifications of firestop installer, including letter from firestop manufacturer of products proposed to be installed, wherein manufacturer approves or recognizes as trained/ or certifies installer for installation of that manufacturer's products.
- E. Engineering Judgment: For those firestop applications that exist for which no qualified tested system is available through a manufacturer, an engineering judgment derived from similar qualified tested system designs or other tests will be submitted to local authorities having jurisdiction for their review and approval prior to installation. Engineering judgment documents must follow requirements set forth by the International Firestop Council.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General: Provide firestopping systems that are produced and installed to resist the spread of fire and the passage of smoke and other gases.
- B. Installation Responsibility: Assign installation of through-penetration firestop systems and fire-resistive joint systems in Project to a single sole source firestop specialty contractor.
- C. Firestopping materials shall conform to Flame (F) and Temperature (T) ratings as required by local building code and as tested by nationally accepted test agencies per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479. The

F-rating must be a minimum of one (1) hour, but not less than the fire resistance rating of the assembly being penetrated. T-rating, when required by code authority, shall be based on measurement of the temperature rise on the penetrating item(s). The fire test shall be conducted with a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inches of water column.

1. Penetrations in Horizontal Assemblies: Provide firestopping with ratings determined in accordance with UL 1479 or ASTM E 814.
  - a. F-Rating: Minimum of 1-hour rating, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of the floor construction being penetrated.
  - b. T-Rating: When penetrant is located outside of a wall cavity, minimum of 1-hour rating, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of the floor construction being penetrated.
  - c. W-Rating: Class 1 rating in accordance with water leakage test per UL 1479.
2. Penetrations in Smoke Barriers: Provide firestopping with ratings determined in accordance with UL 1479 or ASTM E 814.
  - a. L-Rating: Not exceeding 5.0 cfm/sq. ft. of penetration opening at both ambient and elevated temperatures.
- D. Firestopping products shall be asbestos free and free of any PCBs.
- E. Do not use any product containing solvents or that requires hazardous waste disposal.
- F. Do not use firestop products which after curing, dissolve in water.
- G. Do not use firestop products that contain ceramic fibers.
- H. Firestopping Installer Qualifications: Firestop application shall be performed by a single firestopping contractor who specializes in the installation of firestop systems, whose personnel to be utilized have received specific training and certification or approval from the proposed respective firestop manufacturer, and firestop installer shall have a minimum of three years' experience (under present company name) installing firestop systems of the type herein specified.
- I. Mock-Up: Prepare job site mock-ups of each typical Firestop System proposed for use in the project. Approved mock-ups will be left in place as part of the finished project and will constitute the quality standard for the remaining work.
- J. For firestopping exposed to view, traffic, moisture, and physical damage, provide products that do not deteriorate when exposed to these conditions.
  1. For piping penetrations for plumbing and wet-pipe sprinkler systems, provide moisture-resistant through-penetration firestop systems.
  2. For floor penetrations with annular spaces exceeding 4 inches or more in width and exposed to possible loading and traffic, provide firestop systems capable of supporting the floor loads involved either by installing floor plates or by other means.
  3. For penetrations involving insulated piping, provide through-penetration firestop systems not requiring removal of insulation.
- K. Mold Resistance: Provide penetration firestopping with mold and mildew resistance rating of less than or equal to 1 as determined by ASTM G 21.
- L. Firestopping Materials are either "cast-in-place" (integral with concrete placement) or "post-installed." Provide cast-in-place firestop devices prior to concrete placement.

- M. Firestop systems do not reestablish the structural integrity of load bearing partitions or assemblies, or support live loads and traffic. Installer shall consult the Structural Engineer prior to penetrating any load bearing assembly.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in manufacturer's original unopened containers with manufacturer's name, product identification, lot numbers, UL or Warnock Hersey labels, and mixing and installation instructions, as applicable.
- B. Store materials in the original, unopened containers or packages, and under conditions recommended by manufacturer.
- C. All firestop materials shall be installed prior to expiration of shelf life.

#### 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Verify existing conditions and substrates before starting work
- B. Do not use materials that contain solvents, show sign of damage or are beyond their shelf life.
- C. During installation, provide masking and drop cloths as needed to prevent firestopping products from contaminating any adjacent surfaces.
- D. Conform to ventilation requirements if required by manufacturer's installation instructions or Material Safety Data Sheet.
- E. Weather Conditions: Do not proceed with installation of firestop products when temperatures are in excess or below the manufacturer's recommendations.
- F. Schedule installation of firestop products after completion of penetrating item installation but prior to covering or concealing of openings.
- G. Coordinate this work as required with work of other trades.

#### 1.9 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Pre-Installation Conference: Convene a pre-installation conference to establish procedures to maintain optimum working conditions and to coordinate this work with related and adjacent work.
- B. Sequence: Perform work of this and other sections in proper sequence to prevent damage to the firestop systems and to ensure that their installation will occur prior to enclosing or concealing work.
- C. Install all firestop systems after voids and joints are prepared sufficiently to accept the applicable firestop system.
- D. Do not cover firestop systems until they have been properly inspected and accepted by the authority having jurisdiction.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products of one of the following manufacturers:
  - 1. Hilti, Inc.
  - 2. Metacaulk.



3. Nelson.
4. Specified Technologies Inc.
5. 3M.
6. Tremco.
7. U.S. Gypsum Co.

## 2.2 FIRESTOPPING, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide firestopping composed of components that are compatible with each other, the substrates forming openings, and the items, if any, penetrating the firestopping under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by firestopping manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- B. Accessories: Provide components for each firestopping system that are needed to install fill materials. Use only components specified by the firestopping manufacturer and approved by the qualified testing and inspecting agency for the designated fire-resistance-rated systems. Accessories include but are not limited to the following items:
  1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials including the following:
    - a. Semi-refractory fiber (mineral wool) insulation.
    - b. Sealants used in combination with other forming/damming materials to prevent leakage of fill materials in liquid state.
    - c. Fire-rated form board.
    - d. Joint fillers for joint sealants.
  2. Temporary forming materials.
  3. Substrate primers.
  4. Collars.
  5. Steel sleeves.
- C. Applications: Provide firestopping systems composed of materials specified in this Section that comply with system performance and other requirements.
- D. Smoke seals at top of partitions shall be flexible to allow for partition deflection.
- E. Polypropylene Sleeves (PP): (For cast-in device options.)

## 2.3 FILL MATERIALS FOR THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEMS

- A. Endothermic, Latex Compound Sealant: Single-component, endothermic, latex formulation.
- B. Intumescent, Latex Sealant: Single-component, Intumescent, latex formulation.
- C. Intumescent Putty: Non-hardening, dielectric, water-resistant putty containing no solvents, inorganic fibers, or silicone compounds.
- D. Intumescent Wrap Strips: Single-component, elastomeric sheet with aluminum or polyethylene foil on one side.

- E. Job-Mixed Vinyl Compound: Prepackaged vinyl-based powder product for mixing with water at Project site to produce a paintable compound, passing ASTM E 136, with flame-spread and smoke-developed ratings of zero per ASTM E 84.
- F. Mortar: Prepackaged dry mix composed of a blend of inorganic binders, fillers, and lightweight aggregate formulated for mixing with water at Project site to form a non-shrinking, homogeneous mortar.
- G. Pillows/Bags: Re-usable, heat-expanding pillows/bags composed of glass-fiber cloth cases filled with a combination of mineral-fiber, water-insoluble expansion agents and fire-retardant additives.
- H. Silicone Foam: Two-component, silicone-based liquid elastomer that, when mixed, expands and cures in place to produce a flexible, non-shrinking foam.
- I. Silicone Sealant: Moisture-curing, single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealant of grade indicated below:
  - 1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces and non-sag formulation for openings in vertical and other surfaces requiring a non-slumping/gunnable sealant, unless firestop system limits use to non-sag grade for both opening conditions.
- J. Cast-in-Place Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled devices for use in cast-in-place concrete floors and consisting of an outer metallic or polypropylene sleeve lined with an intumescent strip, an extended rectangular flange attached to one end of the sleeve for fastening to concrete formwork, and a neoprene gasket.
- K. Fire Rated Cable Management Devices: Factory-assembled round metallic sleeve device for use with cable penetrations, containing an integrated smoke seal fabric membrane that can be opened and closed for re-penetration.
- L. Drop-In Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled devices for use with combustible or noncombustible penetrants in cored holes within concrete floors. Device shall consist of galvanized steel sleeve lined with an intumescent strip, an extended rectangular flange attached to one end of the sleeve for fastening to concrete floor, and neoprene gasket.
- M. Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled collars formed from galvanized steel and lined with intumescent material sized to fit specific diameter of penetrant.
- N. Intumescent Composite Sheets: Rigid panels consisting of aluminum-foil-faced elastomeric sheet bonded to galvanized-steel sheet.
- O. Blocks/Plugs: Intumescent flexible block/plug suitable for reuse in re-penetration of openings. Blocks shall allow up to 12" of unreinforced annular space.
- P. Tub Box Kit: Cast-in place pre-formed plastic tub box kit with three support legs for use with drain piping assembly associated with bathtub installations.

#### 2.4 FIRE-RESISTIVE ELASTOMERIC JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Elastomeric Sealant Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard chemically curing, elastomeric sealant of base polymer indicated that complies with ASTM C 920 requirements, including those referenced for Type, Grade, Class, and Uses, and requirements specified in this Section applicable to fire-resistive joint sealants.
  - 1. Sealant Colors: Color of exposed joint sealants as selected by the Architect.
- B. Single-Component, Neutral-Curing Silicone Sealant: Type S; Grade NS; Class 25; exposure-related Use NT, and joint-substrate-related Uses M, G, A, and (as applicable to joint substrates indicated) O.

1. Additional Movement Capability: Provide sealant with the capability to withstand 33 percent movement in both extension and compression for a total of 66 percent movement.
- C. Multi-Component, Non-Sag, Urethane Sealant: Type M; Grade NS; Class 25; exposure-related Use NT, and joint-substrate-related Uses M, A, and (as applicable to joint substrates indicated) O.
  1. Additional Movement Capability: Provide sealant with the capability to withstand 40 percent movement in extension and 25 percent in compression for a total of 65 percent movement in joint width existing at time of installation, when tested for adhesion and cohesion under maximum cyclic movement per ASTM C 719, and remain in compliance with other requirements of ASTM C 920 for uses indicated.
- D. Single-Component, Non-Sag, Urethane Sealant: Type S; Grade NS; Class 25; and Uses NT, M, A, and (as applicable to joint substrates indicated) O.

## 2.5 MINERAL FIBER/CERAMIC WOOL NON-COMBUSTIBLE INSULATION (FIRE SAFING)

- A. Provide min. 4 pcf Thermafiber as manufactured by Thermafiber Co., min. 4 pcf FBX Safing Insulation as manufactured by Fibrex, or approved equal to suit conditions and to comply with fire resistance and firestop manufacturer's requirements.
- B. Material shall be classified non-combustible per ASTM E 119.

## 2.6 MIXING

- A. For those products requiring mixing prior to application, comply with firestopping manufacturer's directions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures needed to produce firestopping products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

# PART 3 EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configuration, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of firestopping. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Clean out openings and joints immediately prior to installing firestopping to comply with recommendations of firestopping manufacturer and the following requirements:
  1. Remove all foreign materials from surfaces of opening and joint substrates and from penetrating items that could interfere with adhesion of firestopping.
  2. Clean opening and joint substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with firestopping. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
  3. Remove laitance and form release agents from concrete.
- B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended by firestopping manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape to prevent firestopping from contacting adjoining surfaces that will remain exposed upon completion of work and that would otherwise be permanently stained or damaged

by such contact or by cleaning methods used to remove smears from firestopping materials. Remove tape as soon as it is possible to do so without disturbing seal of firestopping with substrates.

### 3.3 CONDITIONS REQUIRING FIRESTOPPING

#### A. Building Exterior Perimeters

1. Where exterior facing construction is continuous past a structural floor, and a space (i.e. construction joint) would otherwise remain open between the inner face of the wall construction and the outer perimeter edge of the structural floor, provide firestopping to equal the fire resistance of the floor assembly.
  - a. If mineral wool is part of firestop system, the mineral wool must be completely covered by appropriate thickness of UL or Warnock Hersey listed firestop sealant or spray.
  - b. Refer to Article 3.6 herein for description of fire safing insulation.
2. Firestopping shall be provided whether or not there are any clips, angles, plates, or other members bridging or interconnecting the facing and floor systems, and whether or not such items are continuous.
3. Where an exterior wall passes a perimeter structural member, such as a girder, beam, or spandrel, and the finish on the interior wall face does not continue up to close with the underside of the structural floor above, thus interrupting the fire-resistive integrity of the wall system, and a space would otherwise remain open between the interior face of the wall and the structural member, provide firestopping to continuously fill such open space.

#### B. Interior Walls and Partitions

1. Construction joints between top of fire rated walls and underside of floors above, shall be firestopped.
2. Firestop system installed shall have been tested by either UL or Omega Point, including exposure to hose stream test and including for use with steel fluted deck floor assemblies.
3. Firestop system used shall allow for deflection of floor above.

#### C. Penetrations

1. Penetrations include conduit, cable, wire, pipe, duct, or other elements which pass through one or both outer surfaces of a fire rated floor, wall, or partition.
2. Except for floors on grade, where a penetration occurs through a structural floor or roof and a space would otherwise remain open between the surfaces of the penetration and the edge of the adjoining structural floor or roof, provide firestopping to fill such spaces in accordance with ASTM E 814.
3. These requirements for penetrations shall apply whether or not sleeves have been provided, and whether or not penetrations are to be equipped with escutcheons or other trim. If penetrations are sleeved, firestop annular space, if any, between sleeve and wall of opening.

- D. Provide firestopping to fill miscellaneous voids and openings in fire rated construction in a manner essentially the same as specified herein before.

### 3.4 INSTALLING THROUGH PENETRATION FIRESTOPS

- A. General: Comply with the through penetrations firestop manufacturer's installation instructions and drawings pertaining to products and applications indicated.

- B. Install forming/damming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce the cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings of designated through-penetration firestop systems. After installing fill materials, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of firestop systems.
- C. Install fill materials for through penetration firestop systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:
  - 1. Completely fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories, and penetrating items.
  - 2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
  - 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

### 3.5 INSTALLING FIRE RESISTIVE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 1193, and with the sealant manufacturer's installation instructions and drawings pertaining to products and applications indicated.
- B. Install joint fillers to provide support of sealants during application and at position required to produce the cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability and develop fire resistance rating required.
- C. Install sealants by proven techniques that result in sealants directly contacting and fully wetting joint substrates, completely filling recesses provided for each joint configuration, and providing uniform, cross sectional shapes and depths relative to joint width that optimum sealant movement capability. Install sealants at the same time joint fillers are installed.
- D. Tool no sag sealants immediately after sealant application and prior to the time skinning or curing begins. Form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated or required to produce fire resistance rating, as well as to eliminate air pockets, and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealants with sides of joint. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joint. Do not use tooling agents that discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces or are not approved by sealant manufacturer.

### 3.6 INSTALLING FIRESAFING INSULATION

- A. Install fire safing insulation utilizing welded or screw applied galvanized steel impaling pins and retaining clips; space clips or pins 24" o.c. maximum.
- B. Completely fill voids in areas where safing insulation is required. At spandrel conditions/floor edges, depth of insulation top to bottom shall be at least four (4) inches.
- C. Cover top of all safing insulation with firestop sealant or spray.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspecting agency employed and paid by the Owner will examine completed firestopping to determine, in general, if it is being installed in compliance with requirements.
- B. Inspecting agency will report observations promptly and in writing to Contractor, Owner and Architect.
- C. Do not proceed to enclose firestopping with other construction until reports of examinations are issued.

- D. Where deficiencies are found, Contractor must repair or replace firestopping so that it complies with requirements.

3.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess fill materials and sealants adjacent to openings and joints as work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved by manufacturers of firestopping products and of products in which openings and joints occur.
- B. Protect firestopping during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances or from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so that they are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated firestopping immediately and install new materials to product firestopping complying with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 078413

SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALERS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. The Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary to complete the joint sealers work as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including but not necessarily limited to the following:
  - 1. Flashing reglets and retainers.
  - 2. Coping joints.
  - 3. Exterior wall joints not specified to be sealed in other Sections of work.
  - 4. Interior wall joints not specified to be sealed in other Sections of work, including caulking to fill between architectural woodwork and any wall, floor and/or ceiling imperfections.
  - 5. Control and expansion joints in walls.
  - 6. Joints at wall penetrations.
  - 7. Joints between items of equipment and other construction.
  - 8. All other joints required to be sealed to provide a positive barrier against penetration of air and moisture.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Roofing - Division 7.
- B. Firestop sealants – Section 078413.
- C. Glazing sealants - Section 088000.
- D. Sealant within drywall construction - Section 092116.
- E. Sealant at tile work - Section 093013.
- F. Sealant at paving - Division 32.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualification of Installers: Use only personnel who are thoroughly familiar, skilled and specially trained in the techniques of sealant work, and who are completely familiar with the published recommendations of the sealant manufacturer.
- B. Pre-Construction Field Adhesion Testing: Before installing elastomeric sealants, field test their adhesion to project joint substrates according to the method in ASTM C 794 and C 1521 that is appropriate for the types of Project joints.

- C. Perform testing per ASTM C 1248 on interior and exterior sealants to determine if sealants or primers will stain adjacent surfaces. No sealant work shall start until results of these tests have been submitted to the Architect and he has given his written approval to proceed with the work.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings showing all joint conditions, indicating relation of adjacent materials, all sealant materials (sealant, bond breakers, backing, primers, etc.), and method of installation.
  - 1. Submit joint sizing calculations certifying that movement capability of sealant is not being exceeded.
- B. Samples: Submit the following:
  - 1. Color samples of sealants, submit physical samples (not color chart).
  - 2. Sealant bond breaker and joint backing.
- C. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical information and installation instructions for:
  - 1. Sealant materials, indicating that material meets standards specified herein.
  - 2. Backing rods.
- D. Submit manufacturer's certification as required by Article 1.6 herein.
- E. Submit results of testing required in Article 1.4 herein.

#### 1.6 MANUFACTURER'S RESPONSIBILITY AND CERTIFICATION

- A. Contractor shall require sealant manufacturer to review the Project joint conditions and details for this Section of the work. Contractor shall submit to the Architect written certification from the sealant manufacturer that joints are of the proper size and design, that the materials supplied are compatible with adjacent materials and backing, that the materials will properly perform to provide permanent watertight, airtight or vaportight seals (as applicable), and that materials supplied meet specified performance requirements.

#### 1.7 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

- A. Temperature: Install all work of this Section when air temperature is above forty (40) degrees F. and below eighty (80) degrees F., unless manufacturer submits written instructions permitting sealant use outside of this temperature range.
- B. Moisture: Do not apply work of this Section on surfaces which are wet, damp, or have frost.

#### 1.8 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Protection: Use all means necessary to protect the materials of this Section, before, during and after installation and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.
- B. Replacements: In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary.
- C. Storage
  - 1. Store sealant materials and equipment under conditions recommended by their manufacturer.



2. Do not use materials stored for a period of time exceeding the maximum recommended shelf life of the material.
3. Material shall be stored in unopened containers with manufacturers' name, batch number and date when shelf life expires.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Provide a written, notarized warranty from the manufacturer stating that the applied sealants shall show no material failure for a period of ten (10) years.
- B. Contractor to provide a written, notarized warranty stating that the applied sealants shall show no failure due to improper installation for a period of five (5) years.
- C. Warranty shall be in a form acceptable to the Owner and executed by an authorized individual.
- D. Include in warranty a provision agreeing to repair and/or replace, at Contractor's expense, sealant defects that develop during the warranty period as a result of faulty labor and/or materials.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SEALANT MATERIALS

- A. Exterior Wall Sealant: Provide one (1) part non-sag sealant equal to No. 790 or 795 made by DowSil, "Silpruf SCS 2000" or "LM SCS 2700" made by G.E., "Spectrem 1" or "Spectrem 3" made by Tremco or "Sonolastic 150" by Sonneborn conforming to the minimum standards of ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50.
- B. Interior Sealant: Provide a one (1) part acrylic based sealant conforming to ASTM C 834, equal to "AC-20+ Silicone" made by Pecora, Masterseal NP 520 by BASF or equal made by Tremco.
- C. Colors: Colors selected from manufacturer's standard selection.

#### 2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Back-Up Materials: Provide back-up materials and preformed joint fillers, non-staining, non-absorbent, compatible with sealant and primer, and of a resilient nature, equal to "HBR" made by Nomaco Inc. or approved equal, twenty-five (25) percent wider than joint width. Materials impregnated with oil, bitumen or similar materials shall not be used. Provide back-up materials only as recommended by sealant manufacturer in writing.
- B. Provide bond breakers, where required, of polyethylene tape as recommended by manufacturer of sealant.
- C. Provide primers recommended by the sealant manufacturer for each material to receive sealant. Note that each exterior joint must be primed prior to sealing.
- D. Provide solvent, cleaning agents and other accessory materials as recommended by the sealant manufacturer.
- E. Materials shall be delivered to the job in sealed containers with manufacturer's original labels attached. Materials shall be used per manufacturer's printed instructions.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where joint sealers are to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with instructions and recommendations of the manufacturer and in accordance with ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications and conditions required by this Project where more stringent installation requirements are specified herein, such requirements shall apply.
- B. Sample Section of Sealant
  - 1. During sealant installation work in exterior wall, the manufacturer of sealant shall send his representative to the site, under whose supervision a section of the wall (used as "control section") shall be completed for purposes of determining performance characteristics of sealant in joints. Architect shall be informed of time and place of such installation of control section.
  - 2. Control section shall be installed according to specification given herein and shall not be considered as acceptable until written acceptance is provided by the Architect.
  - 3. Accepted control section shall be standard to which all other sealant work must conform.
- C. Supervision: The Contractor shall submit to the Architect written certification from the sealant manufacturer that the applicators have been instructed in the proper application of their materials. The Contractor shall use only skilled and experienced workmen for installation of sealant.
- D. Apply sealant under pressure with a hand or power actuated gun or other appropriate means. Gun shall have nozzle of proper size and provide sufficient pressure to completely fill joints as detailed. Neatly point or tool joint to provide the contour as indicated on the drawings.
- E. Preparation and Application
  - 1. Thoroughly clean all joints, removing all foreign matter such as dust, oil, grease, water, surface dirt and frost. Sealant must be applied to the base surface. Previously applied film must be entirely removed.
  - 2. Stone, masonry and concrete surfaces to receive sealant shall be cleaned where necessary by grinding, water blast cleaning, mechanical abrading, or combination of these methods as required to provide a clean, sound base surface for sealant adhesion.
    - a. Do not use any acid or other material which might stain surfaces.
    - b. Remove laitance by grinding or mechanical abrading.
    - c. Remove loose particles present or resulting from grinding, abrading, or blast cleaning by blowing out joints with compressed air, oil and water free, or vacuuming joints prior to application of primer or sealant.
  - 3. Clean non-porous surfaces such as metal and glass chemically. Remove protective coatings on metallic surfaces by solvent that leaves no residue and is compatible with sealant. Use solvent and wipe dry with clean, dry lint free paper towels. Do not allow solvent to air dry without wiping. Clean joint areas protected with masking tape or strippable films as above after removal of tape film.

4. Do not seal joints until they are in compliance with drawings, or meet with the control section standard.
5. Joint Size and Sealant Size: Joints to receive sealant shall be at least 1/4" wide. In joint 1/4" to 3/8" wide, sealant shall be 1/4" deep. In joints wider than 3/8" and up to 1" wide, sealant depth shall be one half the joint width. For joints wider than 1", sealant depth shall be as recommended by the sealant manufacturer. Depth of joint is defined as distance from outside face of joint to closest point of the filler.
6. Primer: Thoroughly clean joints and apply primer to all surfaces that will receive sealant. Apply primer on clean, dry surfaces, and prior to installation of joint backing. Completely wet both inner faces of the joint with primer. Mask adjacent surfaces of joint with non-staining masking tape prior to priming. Apply primer with clean brush and only when temperature is above 45 deg. F.
7. Joint Backing: In joints where depth of joint exceeds required depth of sealant, install joint backing (after primer is dry) in joints to provide backing and proper joint shape for sealant. Proper shape for sealant is a very slight "hourglass" shape, with back and front face having slight concave curvature. Use special blunt T-shaped tool or roller to install joint backing to the proper and uniform depth required for the sealant. Joint backing shall be installed with approximately twenty-five (25) percent compressions. Do not stretch, twist, braid, puncture, or tear joint backing. Butt joint backing at intersections.
8. Bond Breaker: Install bond breaker smoothly over joint backing so that sealant adheres only to the sides of the joint and not backing.
9. Sealant Application: Apply sealant in accordance with the manufacturer's application manual and manufacturer's instructions, using hand guns or pressure equipment, on clean, dry, properly prepared substrates, completely filling joints to eliminate air pockets and voids. Mask adjacent surfaces of joint with non-staining masking tape. Force sealant into joint in front of the tip of the "caulking gun" (not pulled after it) and force sealant against sides to make uniform contact with sides of joint and to prevent entrapped air or pulling of sealant off of sides. Fill sealant space solid with sealant.
10. Tooling: Tool exposed joints to form smooth and uniform beds, with slightly concave surface conforming to joint configuration per Figure 5A in ASTM C 1193. Finished joints shall be straight, uniform, smooth and neatly finished. Remove masking tape immediately after tooling of sealant and before sealant face starts to "skin" over. Neatly remove any excess sealant from adjacent surfaces of joint, leaving the work in a neat, clean condition.
11. Replace sealant which is damaged during construction process.

END OF SECTION 079200

SECTION 079500 - EXPANSION CONTROL

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the expansion joint covers as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not necessarily limited to, the following:
  - 1. Floor expansion joint cover assemblies.
  - 2. Wall expansion joint cover assemblies.
  - 3. Ceiling expansion joint cover assemblies.
  - 4. Roof expansion joint cover assemblies.
  - 5. Expansion joint covers between new and existing construction for walls, floors, ceilings.
- B. Fire rated expansion joint cover assemblies where required.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Selective Demolition and Alteration Work - Section 024119.
- B. Cast-in-Place Concrete - Section 033000.
- C. Unit Masonry - Section 042000.
- D. Roofing - Division 7.
- E. Painting and Finishing - Section 099000.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit product data for each type of expansion joint cover assembly specified, including manufacturer's product specifications, installation instructions, details of construction relative to materials, dimensions of individual components, profiles, and finishes.
- B. Submit shop drawings showing fabrication and installation of expansion joint cover assemblies, including plans, elevations, sections, details of components, joints, splices, and attachments to other units of work.
- C. Submit samples for verification purposes in full size units of each type of expansion joint cover assembly indicated; within sets for each finish, color, texture, and pattern specified, showing full range of variations expected in these characteristics. Install elastomeric material for joints, samples to verify color selected.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire Test Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide expansion joint cover assemblies identical to those assemblies whose fire resistance has been determined per ANSI/UL 263, NFPA 251, U.B.C. 43-1, or ASTM E 119, including hose stream test of vertical wall assemblies, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Fire Resistance Ratings: Rating as shown on drawings and Specifications.
- B. Joint covers shall permit unrestrained movement of joint without disengagement of cover.
- C. Provide a single source manufacture for all expansion joints in order to maintain manufacturer's warrantee for factory fabricated transitions for both cover and fire barrier.
- D. Floor joint cover plate assemblies shall be capable of supporting a 200 psf uniform load and a 300 lb. concentrated load with a deflection not to exceed 1/16".

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Provide temporary protective cover on finished surfaces.
- B. Deliver joint covers to jobsite in new, clean, unopened crates of sufficient size and strength to protect materials during transit.
- C. Store components in original containers in a clean, dry location.
- D. Handle components with equipment of sufficient size to preclude hazard to personnel or components.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Provide profiles and details as shown on the drawings as manufactured by Balco/Metalines, Construction Specialties, MM Systems Corporation, Watson Bowman Acme or approved equal.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B 221, alloy 6063-T5 for extrusions; ASTM B 209, alloy 6061-T6, sheet and plate; aluminum to have the following finishes:
  - 1. Interior and exterior walking surfaces shall have clear anodized (A41) finish.
  - 2. Exterior surfaces not subject to pedestrian traffic shall have a "Kynar 500" finish conforming to NAAMM 605.2; two (2) colors shall be required, one (1) color to match metal siding and the other color to match adjacent concrete surfaces.
  - 3. Interior surfaces not subject to pedestrian traffic shall be shop primed with rust inhibitive primer, minimum 2 mils thick, ready to receive field painted finish.
- B. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304, No. 4 finish.
- C. Protect metal surfaces to be placed in contact with cementitious materials with a protective coating.
- D. Extruded Preformed Seals: Single or multi-cellular elastomeric profiles as classified under ASTM D 2000, designed with or without continuous, longitudinal, internal baffles. Formed to fit compatible frames, in color, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.

- E. Fire Barriers: Designed for indicated or required dynamic structural movement without material degradation or fatigue when tested according to ASTM E 1399. Tested in maximum joint width condition with a field splice as a component of an expansion joint cover per ANSI/UL 263, NFPA 251, U.B.C. 43-1, or ASTM E 119, including hose stream test of vertical wall assemblies by a nationally recognized testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Supply PyroFlex Fire Barrier Sealing System PF Series for Architectural Joints fire-resistive barrier systems that have ratings equal to or greater than the rating of adjacent construction when tested in accordance with the aforementioned standards. Provide specified rated fire barrier expansion joint assembly for floors and/or specified rated fire barrier expansion joint assembly for walls.
- F. Accessories: Manufacturer's standard anchors, fasteners, set screws, spacers, flexible moisture barrier and filler materials, drain tubes, lubricants, adhesive, and other accessories compatible with material in contact, as indicated or required for complete installations.

### 2.3 EXPANSION JOINT COVER ASSEMBLIES

- A. General: Provide expansion joint cover assemblies of design, basic profile, materials, and operation indicated on drawings. Provide units comparable to those indicated or required to accommodate joint size, variations in adjacent surfaces, and dynamic structural movement without material degradation or fatigue when tested according to ASTM E 1399. Furnish units in longest practical lengths to minimize number of end joints. Provide hairline mitered corners where joint changes direction or abuts other materials. Include closure materials and transition pieces, tee-joints, corners, transition pieces, curbs, cross-connections, and other accessories as required to provide continuous joint cover assemblies.
  - 1. Special conditions shall be shop fabricated.
  - 2. Fabricate components in largest practical lengths to minimize field splicing.
- B. Moisture Barrier: Provide manufacturer's continuous, standard, flexible vinyl moisture barrier under covers at locations indicated.
- C. All shop drawings shall be signed and sealed by a third party engineering firm.
- D. Fire Rated Joint Covers: Provide expansion joint cover assemblies with manufacturer's continuous, standard, flexible fire barrier seals under covers at locations indicated to provide fire-resistive rating not less than the rating of adjacent construction.
- E. All transitions between vertical and horizontal joints shall be factory fabricated.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Manufacturer's Instructions: In addition to requirements of these specifications, comply with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations for phases of Work, including preparing substrate, applying materials, and protecting installed units.
- B. Coordinate and furnish anchorages, setting drawings, templates, and instructions for installation of expansion joint cover assemblies to be embedded in or anchored to concrete or to have recesses formed into edges of concrete slab for later placement and grouting-in of frames.
- C. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary to secure expansion joint cover assemblies to in-place construction, including threaded fasteners with drilled-in expansion shields for masonry and concrete where anchoring members are not embedded in concrete. Provide fasteners of metal, type, and size to suit type of construction indicated and provide for secure attachment of expansion joint cover assemblies.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting into new and existing construction as required to install expansion joint covers. Install joint cover assemblies in true alignment and proper relationship to expansion joints and adjoining finished surfaces measured from established lines and levels. Allow adequate free movement of thermal expansion and contraction of metal to avoid buckling. Set floor covers at elevations to be flush. Locate wall, ceiling, roof, and soffit covers in continuous contact with adjacent surfaces. Securely attach in place with required accessories. Locate anchors at interval recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 3" from each end and not more than 24" o.c.
  - 1. Where cutting into existing construction, conform to the requirements of Section 024119.
- B. Continuity: Maintain continuity of expansion joint cover assemblies with a minimum number of end joints and align metal members mechanically using splice joints. Cut and fit ends to produce joints that will accommodate thermal expansion and contraction of metal to avoid buckling of frames. Adhere flexible filler materials (if any) to frames with adhesive or pressure sensitive tape as recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Extruded Preformed Seals: Install seals complying with manufacturer's instructions and with minimum number of end joints. For straight sections provide preformed seals in continual lengths. Vulcanize or heat-weld field splice joints in preformed seal material to provide watertight joints using procedures recommended by manufacturer. Apply adhesive, epoxy, or lubricant adhesive approved by manufacturer to both frame interfaces before installing preformed seal. Seal transitions according to manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Elastomeric Sealant Joint Assemblies: Seal end joints within continuous runs and joints at transitions according to manufacturer's directions to provide a watertight installation.
- E. Fire Barriers: Install fire barriers, including transitions and end joints, according to manufacturer's instructions so that fire-rated construction is continuous.

3.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Do not remove protective covering until finish work in adjacent areas is complete. When protective covering is removed, clean exposed metal surfaces to comply with manufacturer's instructions.

END OF SECTION 079500

SECTION 081113 - STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the steel door and framework as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Interior and exterior hollow metal doors and frames for fire-rated and unrated door openings.
  - 2. Interior hollow metal vision panels.
  - 3. Preparation of metal doors and frames to receive finish hardware, including reinforcements, drilling and tapping, as necessary.
  - 4. Preparation of hollow metal doors to receive glazing where required.
  - 5. Steel louvers for hollow metal doors.
  - 6. Furnishing anchors for building into masonry and drywall.
  - 7. Factory prime painting of work of this Section.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Unit Masonry - Section 042000.
- B. Carpentry - Section 062000, for installation of doors and frames.
- C. Wood Doors - Section 081416.
- D. Finish Hardware - Section 087100.
- E. Glass and Glazing - Section 088000.
- F. Gypsum Board Assemblies - Section 092116.
- G. Painting and Finishing - Section 099000.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing custom steel doors and frames similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.



- C. Source Limitations: Obtain custom steel doors and frames through one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. Fire-Rated Door and Frame Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated.
  - 1. Test Pressure: Test according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C. After 5 minutes into the test, the neutral pressure level in furnace shall be established at 40" or less above the sill.
  - 2. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-protection-rated door assemblies except for size.
  - 3. Temperature-Rise Rating: At exit enclosures, provide doors that have a temperature-rise rating as required by prevailing Building Code in 30 minutes of fire exposure.
  - 4. Fire rated assemblies must have UL approved label.
- E. Fire-Rated, Borrowed-Light Frame Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 257 or UL 9. Label each individual glazed lite.
- F. Smoke-Control Door Assemblies: Comply with NFPA 105 or UL 1784.
- G. Work of this Section must meet the minimum standards of ANSI 250.4 and SDI-100; where more stringent requirements are specified herein, such requirements shall apply.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, label compliance, compliance with standards referenced herein, sound and fire-resistance ratings, and finishes for each type of door and frame specified.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation of doors and frames. Include details of each frame type, elevations of door design types, conditions at openings, details of construction, reinforcement for surface applied hardware, dimensions of profiles and hardware preparation, location and installation requirements of door and frame hardware and reinforcements, and details of joints and connections. Show anchorage and accessories.
- C. Door Schedule: Submit schedule of doors and frames using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings.
  - 1. Coordinate glazing frames and stops with glass and glazing requirements.
- D. Oversize Construction Certification: For door assemblies required to be fire rated and exceeding limitations of labeled assemblies, submit certification of a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that each door and frame assembly has been constructed to comply with design, materials, and construction equivalent to requirements for labeled construction.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver doors and frames palletted, wrapped, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.

- B. Inspect doors and frames, on delivery, for damage. Minor damage may be repaired provided refinished items match new work and are approved by Architect; otherwise, remove and replace damaged items as directed.
- C. Store doors and frames under cover at building site. Conform to the requirements of ANSI A 250-11-2001 for site storage unless more stringent requirements are noted herein. Place units on minimum 4-inch high wood blocking. Avoid using nonvented plastic or canvas shelters that could create a humidity chamber. If wrappers on doors become wet, remove cartons immediately. Provide minimum 1/4-inch spaces between stacked doors to permit air circulation.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FABRICATION - GENERAL

- A. Fabricate hollow metal units to be rigid, neat in appearance and free from defects, warp or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles. Weld exposed joints continuously, grind, dress, and make smooth, flush and invisible. Metallic filler to conceal manufacturing defects is not acceptable.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, provide countersunk flat Phillips or Jackson heads for exposed screws and bolts.
- C. Prepare hollow metal units to receive finish hardware, including cutouts, reinforcing, drilling and tapping in accordance with Finish Hardware Schedule and templates provided by hardware suppliers. Comply with applicable requirements of ANSI A115 "Specifications for Door and Frame Preparation for Hardware."
- D. Locate finish hardware as shown on final shop drawings in accordance with locations noted herein.

### 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Provide products manufactured by Steelcraft, Curries, Ceco Door Products, or approved equal meeting these specifications.
- B. Exterior Doors and Frames
  - 1. Basis of Design: Energy Efficient - 797 Mercury Series by Curries or approved equal.
  - 2. Basis of Design: Curries Company (CU) - Thermal Break TQ Series.

### 2.3 FRAMES

- A. Materials
  - 1. Frames for exterior openings shall be made of commercial grade cold-rolled steel conforming to ASTM A 1008, Type B not less than 14 ga., and shall have a hot dipped galvanized coating conforming to ASTM A 924 and A 653 with A60 coating. The zinc-alloy coating shall be a dull matte surface treated for paint adhesion.
  - 2. Frames for interior openings shall be either commercial grade cold-rolled steel conforming to ASTM A 1008, Type B or commercial grade hot-rolled steel conforming to ASTM A 1011, Commercial Steel, Type B. Metal thickness shall be not less than sixteen (16) ga. for frames in openings 4'-0" or less in width; not less than fourteen (14) ga. for frames in openings over 4'-0" in width.
- B. Design and Construction

1. All frames shall be welded units with integral trim, of the sizes and shapes shown on approved shop drawings. Knock-down frames are not permitted.
2. Thermal-Break Frames: Frames shall be subject to the same compliance standards and requirements as standard hollow metal frames. Frames shall be tested for thermal performance in accordance with NFRC 102 and resistance to air infiltration in accordance with NFRC 400. Where indicated, provide thermally broken frame profiles available for use in both masonry and drywall construction. Fabricate with 1/16" positive thermal break and integral vinyl weather stripping.
3. All finished work shall be strong and rigid, neat in appearance, square, true and free of defects, warp or buckle. Molded members shall be clean cut, straight and of uniform profile throughout their lengths.
4. Jamb depths, trim, profile and backbends shall be as shown on drawings.
  - a. Frames at drywall partitions shall be formed with double return backbends to prevent cutting into drywall surface.
5. Welded frames shall have corners mitered and reinforced and faces of welded frames shall be continuously back welded full depth and width of frame conforming to NAAMM Standard HMMA-820; face joints shall be hairline.
6. Minimum depth of stops shall be 5/8".
7. Frames for multiple or special openings shall have mullion and/or rail members which are closed tubular shapes having no visible seams or joints. All joints between faces of abutting members shall be securely welded and finished smooth.
  - a. Mullions shall have 16 ga. internal steel stiffeners welded not less than 4" o.c.
8. Hardware Reinforcements
  - a. Frames shall be mortised, reinforced, drilled and tapped at the factory for fully-templated, mortised hardware only, in accordance with approved hardware schedule and templates provided by the hardware supplier. Where surface-mounted hardware is to be applied, frames shall have reinforcing plates.
  - b. Minimum thickness of hardware reinforcing plates shall be as follows (Contractor shall provide larger and thicker plates as required to accommodate weight of door):
    - 1). Hinge and pivot reinforcements - seven (7) ga., 1-1/4" x 10" minimum size.
    - 2). Strike reinforcements - twelve (12) gauge.
    - 3). Flush bolt reinforcements - twelve (12) gauge.
    - 4). Closer reinforcements - twelve (12) gauge.
    - 5). Reinforcements for surface mounted hardware - twelve (12) gauge.
9. Floor Anchors
  - a. Provide adjustable floor anchors, providing not less than two (2) inch height adjustment.
  - b. Minimum thickness of floor anchors shall be fourteen (14) gauge.
10. Jamb Anchors
  - a. Frames for installation in masonry walls shall be provided with adjustable jamb anchors of the wire type. Anchors shall be not less than 0.156" diameter steel wire. The number of anchors provided on each jamb shall be as follows:
    - 1). Frames up to 7'-6" height - three (3) anchors.
    - 2). Frames 7'-6" to 8'-0" height - four (4) anchors.

- 3). Frames over 8'-0" height - one (1) anchor for each 2'-0" or fraction thereof in height.
  - b. Frames for installation in stud partitions shall be provided with steel anchors of suitable design, not less than eighteen (18) gauge thickness, securely welded inside each jamb as follows:
    - 1). Frames up to 7'-6" height - four (4) anchors.
    - 2). Frames 7'-6" to 8'-0" height - five (5) anchors.
    - 3). Frames over 8'-0" height - five (5) anchors plus one additional for each 2'-0" or fraction thereof over 8'-0".
  - c. Frames to be anchored to previously placed concrete or masonry shall be provided with minimum 3/8" concealed bolts set into expansion shields or inserts at six (6) inches from top and bottom and twenty-four (24) inches o.c. Reinforce frames at anchor locations with sixteen (16) gauge sheet steel stiffeners welded to frame at each anchor.
11. Anchors in exterior frames and in masonry walls shall be hot dip galvanized per ASTM A 153.
12. Frames for installation in masonry wall openings more than 4'-0" in width shall have an angle or channel stiffener factory welded into the head. Such stiffeners shall be not less than twelve (12) gauge steel and not longer than the opening width. Stiffeners shall not be used as lintels or load bearing members.
13. Dust cover boxes (or mortar guards) of not thinner than twenty-six (26) gauge steel shall be provided at all hardware mortises on frames to be set in masonry or plaster partitions.
14. Ceiling Struts: Minimum 3/8" thick x 2" wide steel.
15. All frames shall be provided with a steel spreader temporarily attached to the feet of both jambs to serve as a brace during shipping and handling.
16. Loose glazing stops shall be of cold rolled steel, not less than twenty (20) gauge thickness, butted at corner joints and secured to the frame with countersunk cadmium-or zinc-plated screws. Interior frames may be provided with snap-on glazing stops.
17. Except on weatherstripped frames, drill stops to receive three (3) silencers on strike jambs of single door frames and two (2) silencers on heads of double-door frames.
- C. Finish: After fabrication, all tool marks and surface imperfections shall be removed, and exposed faces of all welded joints shall be dressed smooth. Frames shall then be chemically treated to insure maximum paint adhesion and shall be coated on all surfaces with one coat of rust-inhibitive baked-on alkyd primer standard with the manufacturer which is fully cured before shipment to a dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
  1. Frames set in masonry walls shall be grouted in as described in Section 042000, "Unit Masonry." These frames shall have surfaces in contact with grout shop coated with epoxy coating equal to Series 27 FC Typoxy made by Tnemec or approved equal spray applied at 4 to 6 mils, passing NFPA 101, Class A for smoke and flame spread, tested per ASTM E 84.

## 2.4 HOLLOW METAL DOORS

- A. Materials: Doors shall be made of commercial quality, level, cold rolled steel conforming to ASTM A 1008, Commercial Steel, Type B and free of scale, pitting or other surface defects. Face sheets for interior doors shall be not less than eighteen (18) gauge. Face sheets for exterior doors shall be not less than sixteen (16) gauge and shall have a hot dipped galvanized coating conforming to ASTM A 924 and A 653, A60 coating. The zinc alloy coating shall be a dull matte surface treated for paint adhesion.

- B. Exterior Doors (Energy Efficient): Face sheets fabricated of commercial quality hot-dipped zinc coated steel that complies with ASTM A924 A60. Provide doors complying with requirements indicated below by referencing ANSI/SDI A250.8 for level and model and ANSI/SDI A250.4 for physical performance level.
1. Design: Flush panel.
  2. Core Construction: Foamed-in-place polyurethane and steel-reinforced core with no stiffener face welds.
    - a. Provide 18 gauge steel vertical reinforcements 6 inches apart and welded in place. Foamed-in-place polyurethane core is chemically bonded to all interior surfaces. No face welding is permitted.
    - b. Thermal properties to rate at a fully operable minimum U-Factor 0.374 and R-Value 2.53, including insulated door, Mercury thermal-break frame and threshold.
    - c. Kerf Type Frames: Thermal properties to rate at a fully operable minimum U-Factor 0.378 and R-Value 2.5, including insulated door, kerf type frame, and threshold.
- C. Design and Construction
1. All doors shall be of the types and sizes shown on the approved shop drawings and shall be fully-welded, seamless construction with no visible seams or joints on their faces or vertical edges. Minimum door thickness shall be 1-3/4".
  2. All doors shall be strong, rigid and neat in appearance, free from warpage or buckles. Corner bends shall be true and straight and of minimum radius for the gauge of metal used.
  3. Face sheets shall be stiffened by continuous vertical formed steel sections spanning the full thickness of the interior space between door faces. These stiffeners shall be not less than twenty-two (22) gauge spaced not more than six (6) inches apart and securely attached to face sheets by spot welds not more than five (5) inches o.c. Spaces between stiffeners shall be sound deadened and thermal insulated the full height of the door with an inorganic non-combustible batt type material.
  4. Door faces shall be joined at their vertical edges by a continuous weld extending the full height of the door. All such welds shall be ground, filled and dressed smooth to make them invisible and provide a smooth flush surface.
  5. Top and bottom edges of all doors shall be closed with a continuous recessed steel channel not less than fourteen (14) gauge, extending the full width of the door and spot welded to both faces. Exterior doors shall have an additional flush closing channel at their top edges and, where required for attachment of weatherstripping, a flush closure also at their bottom edges. Openings shall be provided in the bottom closure of exterior doors to permit the escape of entrapped moisture.
  6. Edge profiles shall be provided on both vertical edges of doors as follows:
    - a. Single-Acting Swing Doors: Beveled 1/8" in two (2) inches.
    - b. Double-Acting Swing Doors: Rounded on 2-1/8" radius.
    - c. No square edge doors permitted.
  7. Hardware Reinforcements
    - a. Doors shall be mortised, reinforced, drilled and tapped at the factory for fully templated hardware only in accord with the approved hardware schedule and templates provided by the hardware supplier. Where surface-mounted hardware (or hardware, the interrelation of which is to be adjusted upon installation - such as top and bottom pivots, floor closers, etc.) is to be applied, doors shall have reinforcing plates.
    - b. Minimum gauges for hardware reinforcing plates shall be as follows:

- 1). Hinge and pivot reinforcement - seven (7) gauge.
- 2). Reinforcement for lock face, flush bolts, concealed holders, concealed or surface mounted closers - twelve (12) gauge.
- 3). Reinforcements for all other surface mounted hardware - sixteen (16) gauge.

8. Glass Moldings and Stops

- a. Where specified or scheduled, doors shall be provided with hollow metal moldings to secure glazing by others in accordance with glass opening sizes shown on drawings.
  - b. Fixed moldings shall be securely welded to the door on the security side.
  - c. Loose stops shall be not less than twenty (20) gauge steel, with mitered corner joints, secured to the framed opening by cadmium or zinc-coated countersunk screws spaced eight (8) inches o.c. Snap-on attachments will not be permitted. Stops shall be flush with face of door.
9. Louvers shall be sixteen (16) gauge sheet steel, stationary type, closely spaced inverted "V" blade design, flush with face sheets of door, integral with and welded to door. Fifty (50) percent free area, unless indicated otherwise on drawings.
- D. Finish: After fabrication, all tool marks and surface imperfections shall be dressed, filled and sanded as required to make all faces and vertical edges smooth, level and free of all irregularities. Doors shall then be chemically treated to insure maximum paint adhesion and shall be coated, on all exposed surfaces, with manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive alkyd primer as specified for frames which shall be fully cured before shipment.
- E. Flatness: Doors shall maintain a flatness tolerance of 1/16" maximum, in any direction, including in a diagonal direction.

2.5 LABELED DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Labeled doors and frames shall be provided for those openings requiring fire protection ratings as scheduled on drawings. Such doors and frames shall be labeled by Underwriters' Laboratories or other nationally recognized agency having a factory inspection service.
- B. If any door or frame specified by the Architect to be fire-rated cannot qualify for appropriate labeling because of its design, size, hardware or any other reason, the Architect shall be so advised before fabricating work on that item is started.

2.6 HARDWARE LOCATIONS

- A. The location of hardware on doors and frames shall be as noted in "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames" of the Door Hardware Institute unless otherwise required by prevailing Handicapped Codes.

2.7 CLEARANCES

- A. Fabricate doors and frames to meet edge clearances as follows:
  1. Jambs and Head: 1/8" plus or minus 1/16".
  2. Meeting Edges, Pairs of Doors: 1/8" plus or minus 1/16".
  3. Bottom: 3/8" at threshold; 3/4" if no threshold.
- B. Fire-rated doors shall have clearances as required by NFPA 80.

2.8 MANUFACTURING TOLERANCES

- A. Manufacturing tolerance shall be maintained within the limits given in HMMA 841 of ANSI/NAAMM, current edition.

2.9 PREPARATION FOR FINISH HARDWARE

- A. Prepare door and frames to receive hardware:
  - 1. Hardware supplier shall furnish hollow metal manufacturer approved hardware schedule, hardware templates, and samples of physical hardware where necessary to insure correct fitting and installation.
  - 2. Preparation includes sinkages and cut-outs for mortise and concealed hardware.
- B. Provide reinforcements for both concealed and surface applied hardware:
  - 1. Drill and tap mortise reinforcements at factory, using templates.
  - 2. Install reinforcements with concealed connections designed to develop full strength of reinforcements.

2.10 REJECTION

- A. Hollow metal frames or doors which are defective, have hardware cutouts of improper size or location, or which prevent proper installation of doors, hardware or work of other trades, shall be removed and replaced with new at no cost.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where steel doors and frames are to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Section 062000 for installation procedures for all work of this Section.

END OF SECTION 081113

SECTION 081416 - WOOD DOORS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the wood doors as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Solid core flush wood doors.
  - 2. Fire-rated flush wood doors.
  - 3. Stile and rail wood doors.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Carpentry - Section 062000, for installation of wood doors.
- B. Steel Doors and Frames - Section 081113, for hollow metal frames.
- C. Finish Hardware - Section 087100.
- D. Glass and Glazing - Section 088000.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit door manufacturer's product data, specifications and installation instructions for each type of wood door.
  - 1. Include details of core and edge construction and trim for openings.
  - 2. Include factory finish specifications.
  - 3. Include certifications to show compliance with specifications.
  - 4. Include certification to show compliance with AWI and WDMA requirements specified herein.
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings indicating location and size of each door, elevation of each kind of door, details of construction, location and extent of hardware blocking, fire ratings, requirements for finishing and other pertinent data.
  - 1. Include requirements for veneer matching.
- C. Submit samples of factory finishes applied to actual door face materials, approximately 8 by 10 inches for each material and finish. For each wood species and transparent finish, provide set of three samples showing typical range of color and grain to be expected in the finished work.



1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Quality Standard: Comply with AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards Illustrated"; latest edition "Premium" grade and WDMA "Extra Heavy Duty" Performance Level.
  - 1. Only manufacturers that are certified and listed by AWI to be QCP qualified are acceptable for this project.
  - 2. Provide letter of licensing for Project indicating that doors comply with requirements of grade specified.
- C. Fire-Rated Wood Doors: Doors complying with Category A, Positive Pressure or Neutral Pressure testing standards per UBC 7-2-1997 and UL 10C (UBC 7-2-1994 and UL 10B) that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated on Door Schedule, based on testing according to NFPA 252.
  - 1. Conform to prevailing Code requirements to determine which pressure standard (Positive or Neutral) is required.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Package doors individually in plastic bags or cardboard cartons.
- C. Mark each door on top and bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and will maintain temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by manufacturer, Installer, and Contractor, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that are defective in materials or workmanship, have warped (bow, cup, or twist) in excess of permitted standard noted in Article 2.2 herein, or show telegraphing of core construction in face veneers.
  - 1. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
  - 2. Warranty shall be in effect during the following period of time from date of Substantial Completion:
    - a. Solid Core Flush Wood Doors: Life of installation.
    - b. Stile and Rail Wood Doors: Five years.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SOLID CORE FLUSH WOOD DOORS

- A. Provide AWI PC-5 Premium Grade hot pressed 5-ply solid core particleboard doors, 1-3/4" thick, conforming to standards specified herein. Subject to meeting standards specified herein, the following

manufacturers are acceptable: Marshfield Door Systems, Inc., Algoma Hardwoods Inc., or Eggers Industries.

1. Core shall consist of a formed flat panel consisting of wood particles bonded together with synthetic resins or other added binder, with an average density of 30 to 32 lbs. per cubic foot. The material shall meet or exceed the requirements of ANSI A208.1, Grade 1-LD-2 covering mat formed particleboard with face screw holding of 124 lbs., modulus of rupture of minimum 700 psi and modulus of elasticity of not less than 148,000 psi.
  2. Core shall be capable of satisfying this WDMA TM-7 cycle slam test for 1 million slams for surface mounted hardware. Where the manufacturer's core does not meet this criterion, stiles and rails must measure a minimum of 5-1/2" and must be fabricated of hardwood.
    - a. Surface mounted hardware must be installed with minimum 1-1/4" screw penetrations using threaded to the head screws; coordinate with Section 087100.
- B. Cross Bands: Shall be 1/16" thick hardwood extending full width of door and laid with grain at right angles to face veneers. Cross bands and faces shall be laminated to the core with Type I MF or PVA glue.
- C. Stiles, Rails: Stile and rail shall be a minimum of 1-3/8" solid hardwood or structural composite lumber (after trimming) laminated to the core. Stiles and rails must be securely glued to the core with no voids allowed. Stiles and rails must be capable of screw holding of 550 lbs. per WDMA TM-10.
- D. Transparent Finish: Finish in the shop with clear satin catalyzed polyurethane finish conforming to AWI System "Catalyzed Polyurethane Transparent."
1. Doors with transparent finish to have center balanced, slip matched, quarter sliced, Wood veneer shall; be Red Oak. Veneer to conform to AWI, "AA" grade veneer with 3" wide leaf. Minimum veneer thickness shall be not less than 1/50" after sanding.
  2. Veneers shall be continuous or end matched at transoms.
- E. Where glass lites are noted, factory cut openings. Trim openings with solid hardwood moldings of same type of wood as face veneer. Lite openings in 20 minute rated doors shall have manufacturer's 20-minute approved hardwood system.
- F. Doors shall have hinge-loading capacity of 500 lbs. per WDMA TM-8.
- G. Vertical door edge must be capable of screw holding of 550 lbs. per WDMA TM-10; horizontal door edge must be capable of screw holding of 400 lbs. per WDMA TM-10.
- H. Fire-Rated Wood Doors: Provide mineral core 1-3/4" thick solid core wood doors conforming to standards specified herein, manufactured by one of the manufacturers noted above. Stile construction on both stiles shall conform to the following:
1. Stile edge screw withdrawals when tested in accordance with ASTM D 1037-12 shall exceed 650 lbs. This applies to both stiles.
  2. Stile edge split resistance when tested in accordance with ASTM D 143-14 Modified must exceed 950 lbs. This applies to both stiles.
  3. Door to have face finish as specified above.
    - a. Where the core is free of urea formaldehyde, provide a layer of veneer over the substrate prior to application of finish veneer to prevent telegraphing of patterns from the adhesive.

4. Blocking: For surface mounted hardware only, provide composite blocking designed to maintain fire resistance of door but with improved screw-holding capability of same thickness as core and with minimum dimensions as follows:
  - a. 5-inch top rail blocking.
  - b. 5-inch bottom rail blocking.
  - c. 1 – 5" x 18" lock block at cylinder or mortise locksets.
  - d. 2 – 5" x 18" lock blocks at exit devices.
5. Pairs: Provide fire-rated pairs with fire-retardant stiles that are labeled and listed for kinds of applications indicated without formed-steel edges and astragals.

## 2.2 STILE AND RAIL WOOD DOORS

- A. Provide stile and rail wood doors conforming to AWI "Premium" grade standards as manufactured by The Maiman Co., Algoma Hardwoods Inc. or Marshfield Door Systems Inc.
- B. Construction shall conform to the following:
  1. Compatibility of grain and color between red oak veneer and lumber.
  2. Type 1 Glue (PVA-waterproof).
  3. Joints: Doweled and glued under pressure.
  4. Stiles, rails and mullions shall be veneered construction using edge glued core material of particleboard or lumber with face veneer of 1/8" minimum thickness before sanding. Exposed edges shall be same species as face.
  5. Solid Panels: Mitered rim, tongue and grooved into edge of flush panel. Miters shall be reinforced with splines. Panel face slip matched veneers. Panel edge concealed by solid sticking bead or applied molding. Panel thickness 1/2" within a 1-3/4" thick door.
    - a. Panel core shall be particleboard or staved lumber core per fabricator's standard.
  6. Sanding: Machine sanded with not less than 120 grit, no cross grain scratches permitted. Each door hand sanded with orbital sander.
- C. Wood: Red Oak, veneer and solid stock.
  1. Veneer on panels shall be running, book matched and quarter sliced.

## 2.3 FACTORY FINISH

- A. Transparent Finish: Finish in the shop with clear satin catalyzed polyurethane finish conforming to AWI System "Catalyzed Polyurethane Transparent".
- B. Stain colors as selected by the Architect from manufacturer's full range. Factory finish - TR-6.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Prefit and premachine wood doors at the factory.
- B. Comply with the tolerance requirements specified herein. Machine doors for hardware requiring cutting of doors. Comply with final hardware scheduled and door frame shop drawings, and with hardware templates and other essential information required to ensure proper fit of doors and hardware.

- C. Take accurate field measurements of hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before proceeding with machining in the factory.
- D. Doors shall be factory sized to door opening so that trimming and fitting are not required in the field.
- E. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated, with the following uniform clearances unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Three-degree bevel or bevel to suit frame sizes indicated, with 3/16" prefit in width, +0/-1/32" tolerances. Prefit top of door 1/8" + 1/16"/-0" and undercut as required by floor condition. Undercut shall not exceed 1/8" from bottom of door to top of finished floor; where threshold occurs undercut shall not exceed 1/8" from bottom of door to top of threshold.
  - 2. Comply with requirements in NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
- F. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3 unless otherwise noted. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, DHI A115-W series standards, and hardware templates.
  - 1. Coordinate measurements of hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
  - 2. Provide concealed intumescent seals at fire-rated pairs of doors meeting the requirements of U.L. 10 C.
- G. Openings: Cut and trim openings through doors to comply with applicable requirements of referenced standards for kinds of doors required.
- H. Once wood doors are installed, maximum allowable warp, bow, cut or twist in doors shall be 1/16" as measured by the 1/16-inch feeler gauge and a straight-edge extending from corner to corner of the door face at stiles, top and bottom rails and along both diagonals.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Section 062000 for installation of wood doors.

END OF SECTION 081416

SECTION 081743 - FRP/ALUMINUM HYBRID DOORS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Applicable provisions of the Conditions of the Contract and Division #1, General Requirements, govern work in this Section.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. The contractor shall furnish all labor, tools, equipment, and services required to remove existing frames, doors and hardware as required to install new frames, doors, hardware, glazing, etc. In general, the work under this section includes the following:
  - 1. The removal of all necessary portions of existing frames, doors, hardware and related entrance material to permit the installation of new material as specified hereafter. Material removed shall be disposed of by contractor or salvaged as directed by the architect and/or owner.
  - 2. New masonry opening construction will not require removal of existing doors and frames
  - 3. The furnishing and installation of frames, doors, hardware, glazing and caulking as required for a complete installation including all necessary cleaning and adjustments.
- B. The following types of doors, frames and accessories are required:
  - 1. Fiberglass Reinforced Polyester/Aluminum Hybrid (FRP) Doors.
  - 2. Fiberglass Reinforced Polyester (FRP) Panels
  - 3. Heavy Wall Tube Aluminum-Framed Systems
  - 4. Monumental Aluminum Stile and Rail Doors
  - 5. Glazing
  - 6. Hardware
  - 7. Caulking

1.3 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

- A. Entire Project Specification with specific reference to those sections noted above and as follows:
  - 1. 087100 - Door Hardware.
  - 2. 07900 – Joint Sealers
  - 3. 08800 - Glazing

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Provide door assemblies that have been designed and fabricated to comply with specified performance requirements, as demonstrated by testing manufacturer's corresponding standard systems.
  - 1. Exterior doors shall meet 2020 New York State Energy Conservation Code and 2020 New York State Building Code.
- B. Air Infiltration: For a single door 3'-0" x 7'-0", test specimen shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E 283 at pressure differential of 6.24 psf. Door shall not exceed 0.90 cfm per linear foot of perimeter crack.
- C. Water Resistance: For a single door 3'-0" x 7'-0", test specimen shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E 331 at pressure differential of 7.50 psf. Door shall not have water leakage.
- D. Swinging Door Cycle Test, Doors and Frames, ANSI A250.4: Minimum of 12,000,000 cycles.
- E. Swinging Security Door Assembly, Doors and Frames, ASTM F 476: Grade 40.
- F. Salt Spray, Exterior Doors and Frames, ASTM B 117: Minimum of 500 hours.
- G. Sound Transmission, Exterior Doors, STC, ASTM E 90: Minimum of 25.
- H. Thermal Transmission, Exterior Doors, U-Value, AAMA 1503.1: Maximum of 0.09 BTU/hr x sf x degrees F.
- I. Surface Burning Characteristics, FRP Doors and Panels, ASTM E 84:
  - 1. Flame Spread: Maximum of 200, Class C.
  - 2. Smoke Developed: Maximum of 450, Class C.
- J. Surface Burning Characteristics, Class A Option On Interior Faces of FRP Exterior Panels and Both Faces of FRP Interior Panels, ASTM E 84:
  - 1. Flame Spread: Maximum of 25.
  - 2. Smoke Developed: Maximum of 450.
- K. Impact Strength, FRP Doors and Panels, Nominal Value, ASTM D 256: 15.0 foot-pounds per inch of notch.
- L. Tensile Strength, FRP Doors and Panels, Nominal Value, ASTM D 638: 14,000 psi.
- M. Flexural Strength, FRP Doors and Panels, Nominal Value, ASTM D 790: 21,000 psi.
- N. Water Absorption, FRP Doors and Panels, Nominal Value, ASTM D 570: 0.20 percent after 24 hours.
- O. Indentation Hardness, FRP Doors and Panels, Nominal Value, ASTM D 2583: 55.
- P. Abrasion Resistance, Face Sheet, Taber Abrasion Test, 25 Cycles at 1,000 Gram Weight with CS-17 Wheel: Maximum of 0.029 average weight loss percentage.
- Q. Stain Resistance, ASTM D 1308: Face sheet unaffected after exposure to red cabbage, tea, and tomato acid. Stain removed easily with mild abrasive or FRP cleaner when exposed to Sharpie ink pen and white spray paint.
- R. Chemical Resistance: ASTM D 543. Excellent rating.

1. Acetic acid, 5 percent solution.
2. Chlorine bleach, 10 percent solution.
3. Sodium hypochlorite, 4 to 6 percent solution.
4. Citric acid, 10 percent solution.
5. Sodium carbonate, 20 percent solution.
6. Turpentine.

S. Compressive Strength, Foam Core, Nominal Value, ASTM D 1621: 84.2 psi.

T. Compressive Modulus, Foam Core, Nominal Value, ASTM D 1621: 448 psi.

U. Tensile Adhesion, Foam Core, Nominal Value, ASTM D 1623: 48 psi.

V. Thermal and Humid Aging, Nominal Value @ 158°F and 100% Humidity for 14 Days, ASTM D 2126: - 4.89 Volume Change.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit door manufacturer's product data, specifications and installation instructions for each type of door.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Plans: Indicate location of each door and frame opening assembly in project.
2. Elevations: Dimensioned elevation of each type door opening assembly in project; indicate sizes and locations of door hardware, and lites and louvers, if specified.
3. Details: Installation details of each type installation condition in project; indicate installation details of glazing, if specified.
4. Schedule: Indicate each door opening assembly in project; cross reference to plans, elevations and details.

C. Selection Samples: Manufacturer's standard color chips.

D. Verification Samples: Two (2) samples to verify color match.

E. Manufacturer's Instructions: Printed installation instructions for door opening assemblies.

F. Warranty Documents: Manufacturer's standard warranty documents, executed by manufacturer's representative, countersigned by Contractor.

#### 1.6 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's ten (10) year warranty against failure due to corrosion from specified environment.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Packing, Shipping, Handling and Unloading: Package door opening assemblies in manufacturer's standard containers.

- B. Store door assemblies in manufacturer's standard containers, on end, to prevent damage to face corners and edges.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

#### A. Acceptable Products and Manufacturers:

1. For custom paneled doors, provide "SL-18 Colonial Wood Grain" FRP/aluminum hybrid door as manufactured by Special-Lite, Inc., or approved equal; or "SL-19-1 Wood Grain FRP Colonial Doors" by Special-Lite, Inc., as scheduled. Interior face sheet to be Class A (as per model SL-19-1) conforming to ESR 1669.
2. For non-paneled doors, provide "SL-17" FRP/aluminum hybrid door as manufactured by Special-Lite, Inc., or approved equal.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. FRP Sheet: 0.120-inch thickness, colonial wood grain, stained FRP sheet. Color as selected by Architect.
- B. Aluminum Members
  1. Extrusions: ASTM B 221, 6061 or 6063 aluminum alloys.
  2. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209.
  3. Alloy and Temper: As required by manufacturer for strength, corrosion resistance, application of required finish, and control of color.
- C. Anchors: Manufacturer's standard stainless steel expansion anchors for existing openings, and stainless steel masonry tee anchors for new construction.
- D. Fasteners: Stainless steel.

### 2.3 MANUFACTURED UNITS

#### A. FRP/ Aluminum Hybrid Doors:

1. Thickness: 1-3/4.
2. Thermal Insulating Value: 'R' factor 11.
3. Construction:
  - a. Core: Poured-in-place polyurethane foam, min. 5 lb./cf density.
  - b. Stiles and Rails: Aluminum Alloy 6063-T5, minimum of 2-5/16-inch depth.
  - c. Corners: Mitered.
  - d. Provide joinery of 3/8-inch diameter full-width tie rods through extruded splines top and bottom as standard tubular shaped stiles and rails reinforced to accept hardware as specified.
  - e. Securing Internal Door Extrusions: 3/16-inch angle blocks and locking hex nuts for joinery. Welds, glue, or other methods are not acceptable.
  - f. Furnish extruded stiles and rails with integral reglets to accept face sheets. Lock face sheets into place to permit flush appearance.
  - g. Rail caps or other face sheet capture methods are not acceptable.



- h. Extrude top and bottom rail legs for interlocking continuous weather bar.
- i. Meeting Stiles: Pile brush weatherseals. Extrude meeting stile to include integral pocket to accept pile brush weatherseals.
- j. Bottom of Door: Install bottom weather bar with nylon brush weatherstripping into extruded interlocking edge of bottom rail.

4. Sizes: Indicated on drawings.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

### A. FRP/ Aluminum Hybrid Doors

- 1. Fabricate to size and profiles of doors and frames indicated on Drawings.
- 2. Welding of doors and frames is not acceptable.
- 3. Maintain continuity of line and accurate relation of panels and angles. Secure attachments and support at mechanical joints with hairline fit at contacting members.

## 2.5 DOOR FRAMING SYSTEMS

### A. Aluminum tube framing.

## 2.6 VISION LITES

- A. Factory Glazing: 1-1/4-inch glass.
- B. Lites in Exterior Doors: Allow for thermal expansion.
- C. Rectangular Lites
  - 1. Size: As indicated on the Drawings
  - 2. Factory glazed with screw-applied aluminum stops anodized to match perimeter door rails.

## 2.1 HARDWARE

- A. Premachine doors in accordance with templates from specified hardware manufacturers and hardware schedule.
- B. Factory installed hardware.
- C. Hardware schedule: As indicated on the drawings.

- 1. Hinges: geared continuous hinges.
- 2. Door Pulls: SL-82.
- 3. Concealed Prox Reader Prep
- 4. Concealed Adjustable Bottom Brush: Install door manufacturer's SL-301 multidirectional adjustable bottom with double nylon brush weather-stripping. Door bottom must be concealed and adjust to accommodate irregular tapered floor conditions.
- 5. Concealed adjustable meeting stile astragal: Install door manufacturer's AS-4A adjustable astragal with double pile and weather seal weather-stripping.

D. Finish: As selected by the Architect.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION AND ACCEPTANCE

- A. Examine all surfaces and contiguous elements to receive work of this section and correct, as part of the Work of this Contract, any defects affecting installation. Commencement of work will be construed as complete acceptability of surfaces and contiguous elements.

#### 3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification of Conditions:

- 1. Openings are correctly prepared to receive doors.
  - 2. Openings are correct size and depth in accordance with shop drawings.

- B. Installer's Examination

- 1. Have installer examine conditions under which construction activities of this section are to be performed and submit written report if conditions are unacceptable.
  - 2. Transmit two copies of installer's report to Architect within 24 hours of receipt.
  - 3. Beginning construction activities of this section before unacceptable conditions have been corrected is prohibited.
  - 4. Beginning construction activities of this section indicated installer's acceptance of conditions.

- C. Verify that glazing has been factory installed.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install door opening assemblies in accordance with shop drawings, SDI 100, and manufacturer's printed installation instructions, using installation methods and materials specified in installation instructions.
- B. Installation of door hardware is specified in Section 08700.
- C. Install door hardware in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions, using through bolts to secure surface applied hardware.
- D. Site Tolerances: Maintain plumb and level tolerances specified in manufacturer's printed installation instructions.

#### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust doors in accordance with door manufacturer's maintenance instructions to swing open and shut without binding, and to remain in place at any angle without being moved by gravitational influence.
- B. Adjust door hardware to operate correctly in accordance with hardware manufacturer's maintenance instructions.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean surfaces of door opening assemblies and sight exposed door hardware in accordance with manufacturer's maintenance instructions.

3.6 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED PRODUCTS

- A. Protect door opening assemblies and door hardware from damage by subsequent construction activities until final inspection.

3.7 WASTE MANAGEMENT

- A. Separate and recycle materials and material packaging in accordance with Waste Management Plan and to the maximum extent economically feasible and place in designated areas for recycling.
- B. Set aside and protect materials suitable for reuse and/or remanufacturing.
- C. Separate and fold up metal banding; flatten and place along with other metal scrap for recycling in designated area.

END OF SECTION 081743

SECTION 083113 - ACCESS DOORS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the access doors as indicated on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Frameless recessed panel access doors at drywall ceilings and walls.
2. Framed flush panel access doors at masonry and tile walls, architectural grade.
3. Provide access doors and frames for access from occupied spaces to the following, where indicated or required, and as directed by the trades of Divisions 23 and 26.
  - a. All shutoff or balancing valves.
  - b. Fire dampers, as required.
  - c. Points of duct access.
  - d. Pull boxes.
  - e. Controls of mechanical and electrical items.
  - f. Masonry shafts for pipes and conduits, as required.
  - g. Pipe spaces, if required.
  - h. Inlets of fans.
  - i. Fusible link and splitter damper at filter bank.
  - j. Automatic damper and motor.
  - k. Equipment not otherwise accessible.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Unit Masonry - Section 042000.
- B. Gypsum Board Assemblies - Section 092116.
- C. Ceramic tile - Section 093100.
- D. Valves and connections - Division 23.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. For actual installation of the work of this Section, use only personnel who are thoroughly familiar with the manufacturer's recommended methods of installation and who are completely trained in the skills required.
- B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Wherever a fire-resistance classification is shown, or for construction where access doors are installed, provide required access door assembly with panel door, frame, hinge and latch from manufacturers listed in Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. "Classified Building Materials Index" for the rating shown.

1. Provide UL label on each access panel.
2. Provide flush, key operated cylinder lock.

- C. Size Variations: Obtain Architect's acceptance of manufacturer's standard size units which may vary slightly from sizes shown or scheduled.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Before any materials of this Section are delivered to the job site, submit complete manufacturer's literature to the Architect. Submit plans and schedules showing size and location of each and every access door for Architect's acceptance prior to installation.

#### 1.6 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Protection: Use all means necessary to protect the materials of this Section before, during and after installation and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.
- B. Replacements: In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS AND FABRICATION

- A. Provide access door assembly manufactured by Milcor Inc., Nystrom Inc., Karp Associates, Inc. or approved equal. Assembly shall be an integral unit complete with all parts and ready for installation.
1. Color: As selected by the Architect.
- B. Fabricate units of continuous welded steel construction. Grind welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Provide attachment devices and fasteners of the type required to secure access panels to the types of supports shown.
- C. Frames for Masonry and Tile Wall Only (Flush Panel Units): Fabricate frame from sixteen (16) gauge steel. Provide frame with exposed flange not less than one (1) inch wide around perimeter of frame for exposed masonry and tile finishes.
1. For installation in masonry construction, provide frames with adjustable metal masonry anchors.
- D. Frameless Units for Drywall Surfaces (Recessed Panel Units): Provide access doors without exposed frames for drywall adhered to recessed panel.
- E. Panels: Fabricate from fourteen (14) gauge steel, with concealed spring hinges set to open to 175 degrees. Provide removable pin type hinges of the quantity required to support the access panel sizes used in the work. Finish with manufacturer's factory applied baked enamel prime coat applied over phosphate protective coating on steel.
- F. Locking Devices
1. For non-rated access doors, provide flush, screwdriver operated cam locks of number required to hold door in flush, smooth plane when closed.
  2. For fire rated doors, provide locks as described in paragraph 1.4, B. herein.
- G. Inserts and Anchorage: Furnish inserts and anchoring devices which must be built into masonry for the installation of access panels. Provide setting drawings, templates, instructions, and directions for installation of anchorage devices. Coordinate delivery with other work to avoid delay.

3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where access doors are to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

3.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate all work with the mechanical trades to insure proper locations and in a timely manner to permit orderly progress of the total work.
- B. Set frames accurately in position and securely attach to supports with face panels plumb or level in relation to adjacent finish surfaces.
- C. Adjust hardware and panels after installation for proper operation.
- D. Remove and replace panels or frames which are warped, bowed, or otherwise damaged.

END OF SECTION 083113

## SECTION 083324 - ROLL UP FIRE COUNTER SHUTTERS

### PART 1 GENERAL

#### 1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

#### 1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary to complete the roll up fire counter shutters as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein.

#### 1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Painting - Section 099000.

#### 1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Performance Requirements:

1. Provide doors with Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. label for the fire rating classification, 3/4 hr.
2. Provide doors with Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. label for "Leakage Rated Assembly" or "S" label demonstrating product tested to UL 1784.
  - a. Comply with NFPA 105 air leakage requirements.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Furnish each roll up shutter as a complete unit produced by one manufacturer, including hardware, accessories, mounting and installation components.
- B. Furnish roll up fire shutter assemblies which comply with NFPA No. 80 and have been fire tested, rated and labeled in accordance with ANSI/ASTM E152. Furnish each shutter with a metal UL label as evidence of rating, with label indicating rating in hours of duration of exposure to fire and letter designation of location for which assembly is designed.
  1. Provide automatic closing device and governor, electrically activate door system automatic closure by notification from local detectors or power outage exceeding 6 hours with battery backup system. Design release mechanism for easy resetting.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data, roughing-in diagrams, and installation instructions for each type and size of overhead coiling shutter. Include operating instructions and maintenance information.
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings for all components and installations. Provide fully dimensioned and detailed drawings, indicating all door components, support and surrounding construction. Coordinate with existing conditions and drawing details including miscellaneous metal support members.
- C. Label Certification: Submit UL certification for fire-rated shutters and frames.

## 1.7 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Protection: Use all means necessary to protect the materials of this Section before, during and after installation and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.
- B. Replacements: In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Provide roll up fire shutters Mode ERC 11 (Smokeshield) manufactured by Cornell Iron Works Inc., Raynor, Overhead Door Corp., or approved equal.

### 2.2 DOOR CURTAIN MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION

- A. Shutter Curtain: Stainless Steel, No. 1F, interlocked flat-faced slats, 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) high by 1/2 inch (13 mm) deep, minimum 22 gauge AISI type 304 #4 finish stainless steel with stainless steel bottom bar and vinyl astragal
- B. Endlocks: Malleable iron castings galvanized after fabrication, secured to curtain slats with galvanized rivets. Provide locks on alternate curtain slats for curtain alignment and resistance against lateral movement.
- C. Bottom Bar: Consisting of one (1) stainless steel angle, not less than 1-1/2" x 1-1/2" x 1/8" thick, to suit type of curtain slats.
- D. Curtain Jamb Guides: Fabricate curtain jamb guides of stainless steel formed shapes with sufficient depth and strength to retain curtain loading. Build up units with minimum 12 gauge stainless steel sections.
  - 1. Secure inner guide shape to wall framing with manufacturers UL approved fasteners at not more than twenty-four (24) inches o.c. Inner guide shape extends above roll up door opening head to support coil brackets, unless otherwise shown. Place anchor bolts on exterior wall guides so they are concealed when roll up door is in closed position. Provide removable stops on guides to prevent over-travel of curtain.

### 2.3 COUNTERBALANCING MECHANISM

- A. Counterbalance shutters by means of adjustable steel helical torsion spring, mounted around a steel shaft and mounted in a spring barrel and connected to door curtain with required barrel rings. Use grease sealed bearings or self-lubricating graphite bearings for rotating members.
- B. Counterbalance Barrel: Fabricate spring barrel of hot-formed structural quality carbon steel, welded or seamless pipe, of sufficient diameter and wall thickness to support curtain without distortion of slats and limit barrel deflection to not more than 0.03" per foot of span under full load.
- C. Provide spring balance of one or more oil-tempered, heat-treated steel helical torsion springs. Size springs to counterbalance weight of curtain, with uniform adjustment accessible from outside barrel. Provide cast steel barrel plugs to secure ends of springs to barrel and shaft.
- D. Fabricate torsion rod for counterbalance shaft of cast-hardened steel, of required size to hold fixed springs ends and carry torsion load.
- E. Brackets: Provide mounting brackets of manufacturer's standards design, either cast iron or cold-rolled steel plate. Fabricate from reinforced steel plate with permanently lubricated ball or roller bearings at rotating support points to support counterbalance shaft assembly and form end closures. Finish: Powder coat stock color as selected by Architect.



F. Hood: Form to entirely enclose coiled curtain and operating mechanism at opening head, and act as weather seal. Contour to suit end brackets to which hood is attached. Roll and reinforce top and bottom edges for stiffness. Provide closed ends for surface-mounted hoods, and any portion of between-jamb mounting projecting beyond wall face. Provide intermediate support brackets as required to prevent sag.

1. Fabricate stainless steel hoods for shutters of not less than twenty-four (24) gauge stainless steel sheet, with reinforced top and bottom edges. Provide minimum 1/4 inch (6.35 mm) steel intermediate support brackets as required to prevent excessive sag.

## 2.4 OPERATION

A. AlarmGard™ Advanced Fire Shutter Motor Operation: UL, cUL listed NEMA 1 enclosure, horsepower as recommended by manufacturer, 115V AC single phase service. Provide a totally enclosed non ventilated motor, removable without affecting the setting of limit switches; thermal overload protection, planetary gear reduction, adjustable rotary limit switch mechanism and a transformer with 24v secondary output. All internal electrical components are to be prewired to terminal blocks.

1. Provide a failsafe motor operated door assembly requiring no ancillary or externally mounted release devices, cables, chains, pulleys, reset handles or mechanisms
2. Provide an internal electrical failsafe release device that requires no additional wiring, external cables or mounting locations
3. Provide internal battery backup to provide a minimum of six hours door hold-open time in the event of a power failure
4. Electrically activate door system automatic closure by notification from local smoke detector(s) or power outage exceeding 6 hours with battery backup system
5. Provide an internal solenoid brake mechanism to hold the door at any position during normal door operation
6. Provide logic for 3 fully monitored safety reversing devices such that the failure of any single monitored device will cause the motor operator to automatically revert to constant pressure to close
7. Provide an automatic alarm closure selectable time delay of zero or ten seconds
8. Control automatic closure speed with an internal, totally enclosed, variable rate centrifugal governor without the use of electrical pulsation, constant rate viscosity, oscillation type or other exposed governing devices
9. Maintain automatic closure speed at not more than 9" (229 mm) per second
10. Enable safety edge function during alarm closing while power is present for 1 cycle. Enable door to rest upon obstruction following this sequence
11. Electrically reset internal failsafe release device and door operating system upon restoration of electrical power and upon clearing of the alarm signal without requiring human supervision
12. Provide selectable ability for the door system to automatically self-cycle to the fully open position following automatic reset without requiring human supervision
13. Provide an integral, non-resettable cycle counter
14. Ensure that manual resetting of spring tension, release devices, linkages or mechanical dropouts will not be required
15. Provide minimum #50 roller chain for drive connection from motor drive assembly to the door drive shaft

16. Install system only with manufacturer supplied or specified fasteners.
17. Notify electrical contractor to mount control station(s) and supply the appropriate disconnect switch, all conduit and wiring per the door system wiring instructions
18. Drop test and reset door system twice by all means of activation and comply fully with NFPA 80 Section 5

B. Control Station:

1. Flush mounted: "open/close" key switch with best 7 pin cylinder and "stop" push button; nema 1b
2. Wall-mounted key switch for ease of drop testing
3. Control Operation:
  - a. Momentary contact to close: Fail-safe, UL325-2010 Compliant Entrapment Protection for Motor Operation.
  - b. Continuously monitored, wireless sensing seal extending full width of door bottom bar. Contact before door fully closes shall cause door to immediately stop downward travel and reverse direction to the fully opened position

2.5 ACCESSORIES

A. UL Labeled and Listed Countertop to Meet NFPA 80 Requirements:

1. Stainless steel min. 14 gauge type 304 #4 finish: 1 ½ Hour UL Labeled, 2" (51 mm) thick, 14 gauge type 304 #4 finish stainless steel. "T" shaped design for face of wall mounted unit of size and configuration for opening size and wall construction

2.6 INSERTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Furnish inserts and anchoring devices which must be anchored to miscellaneous steel supports, set in concrete or built into masonry or drywall assemblies for installation of units. Provide setting drawings, templates, instructions and directions for installation of anchorage devices. Coordinate delivery with other work to avoid delay.
- B. Refer to concrete and masonry Sections of these specifications for installation of inserts and anchorage devices.
- C. Refer to Section 055000 - Miscellaneous Metals for miscellaneous steel supports.

2.7 SEALS AND GASKETS

- A. Provide all necessary seals and gaskets to prevent passage of smoke and fire per UL standards.
- B. Bottom Bar: Combination smoke seal/sensing edge
- C. Guides and Head: Replaceable, UL Listed, brush seals sealing against fascia side of curtain

2.8 PAINTING

- A. Shop clean and prime ferrous metal and galvanized surfaces, exposed and unexposed, except faying and lubricated surfaces, with door manufacturer's standard rust inhibitive primer.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where roll up fire shutters are to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install roll up fire shutters and operating equipment complete with necessary hardware, jamb and head mold strips, anchors, inserts, hangers, and equipment supports in accordance with final shop drawings, manufacturer's instructions, and as specified herein.
  - 1. Install fire-rated shutters to comply with NFPA 80 and NFPA 105.
- B. Upon completion of installation, including work by other trades, lubricate, test and adjust roll up shutters to operate easily, free from warp, twist or distortion.

END OF SECTION 083324

## SECTION 083473 - SOUND CONTROL DOOR ASSEMBLIES

### PART 1 GENERAL

#### 1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

#### 1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the sound control door assemblies as indicated on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Acoustical metal door systems, including doors, frames, perimeter seals, cam-lift hinges, metal thresholds and accessories to maintain door operation and the required STC ratings indicated on the Drawings.
    - a. Acoustical doors with minimum STC of 50.
    - b. Perimeter seals and all other required hardware for acoustical doors are specified in Section 087100.

#### 1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Joint Sealers - Section 079200.
- B. Finish Hardware - Section 087100.
- C. Glass and Glazing - Section 088000.

#### 1.4 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM A 366: Standard Specification for Steel, Carbon, Cold-Rolled Sheet, Commercial Quality.
- B. ASTM A 653: Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron alloy Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot Dipped Process.
- C. ASTM A 1011: Standard Specification for Steel, Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip, Commercial.
- D. ASTM E 90: Standard Test Method for Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions.
- E. ASTM E 336: Standard Test Method for Measurement of Airborne Sound Insulation in Buildings.
- F. ASTM E 413: Classification for Determination of Sound Transmission Class.
- G. UL10B: Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
- H. UL10C: Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
- I. UBC7-2: Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
- J. NFPA 80: Standard for Fire Doors and Fire Windows

- K. HMMA 840: Installation and Storage of Hollow Metal Doors and Frames

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Single Source Responsibility: Assign undivided responsibility of the sound retardant door work to a single firm specializing in this type of work. The firm and their personnel engaged in the work shall be able to demonstrate successful experience with work of comparable extent, complexity and quality to that shown and specified. Do not engage a firm unacceptable to the manufacturers of the primary materials to be used. The firm shall engage other specialist firms to perform any part of the work which he is not equipped or qualified to perform properly with his own personnel. Include the following major items of work in the scope of work for undivided responsibility:
1. Doors and frames.
  2. Gasketing and sills.
  3. Door hardware.
  4. Glass and glazing.
- B. Qualifications:
1. Provide doors and frames manufactured by a firm specializing in the production of sound control doors.
  2. Provide sound control doors for fire rated openings manufactured by a firm whose units are inspected, tested and listed by UL for single point hardware for sizes and profiles shown.
- C. Requirements of Regulatory Agencies: Comply with the label requirements of NFPA and applicable local codes. Fabricate doors and frames which comply with the requirements of NFPA Standard Number 80 for the class of door opening shown and scheduled and which have been tested and rated by a Testing Laboratory accepted by the local building authority.
1. Provide Testing Laboratory's label on each door scheduled or required to be labeled. Include all information required by the local building authority.
  2. Provide anchors for labeled frames as required by the local building authority.
- D. Field Measurements: Take field measurements prior to preparation of shop drawings, and prior to fabrication, where possible, to ensure proper fitting of work. However, allow for trimming and fitting wherever taking of field measurements before fabrication might delay work.
- E. Inserts and Anchorages: Furnish inserts and anchoring devices which must be built into other work. Coordinate delivery with other work to avoid delay.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturer's Data: Submit two copies of the manufacturer's detailed technical data for materials, fabrication, and installation. Include catalog cuts of hardware, anchors, fastenings, and accessories.
- B. Provide illustrations and descriptions of all seals and hardware items which will be exposed on doors and frames.
- C. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings for the fabrication and erection of assemblies which are not fully described by manufacturer's data. Show all anchorage and accessory items and finishes.

1. Submit setting drawings, templates, and instructions for installation of anchorage devices built into other work.
  2. Provide installation details applicable to the construction in which the sound control doors and frames will be installed.
  3. Indicate construction, sizes, thicknesses, reinforcing, anchoring, and finishes of all materials.
- D. Samples: Submit three (3) samples of each color and finish required. Samples will be reviewed for color, texture and surface reflectivity only. Compliance with all other requirements is the exclusive responsibility of the Contractor.
- E. Submit certified test reports indicating that the acoustical performance of the door meets the Sound Transmission Class (STC) performance as indicated in the door schedule. Test data shall be produced from an accredited independent acoustical laboratory which is a member of NVLAP (National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program). Reports shall indicate that the test was performed on the doors and frames of the type to be supplied, in conformance with the requirements of test method ASTM E 90 and ASTM E 413. Earlier test reports will not be acceptable. The test results shall be representative of the performance of the proposed Sound Control Door assembly.
- F. Test reports by an independent Acoustical Engineer certifying a Apparent Sound Transmission Class (ASTC) or Noise Isolation Class (NIC) in conformance with the requirements of test method ASTM E 336, performance of no more than five dB points below the laboratory STC performance on similar installations.
- G. Written guarantee that door is constructed in accordance with the laboratory tested door and free of defects in material and workmanship for a period of 3 years after installation.
- H. Fire label as specified in the door schedule.

#### 1.7 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Rated doors shall have a minimum Sound Transmission Class (STC) rating of 50.
- B. Installed door assemblies shall meet Apparent Sound Transmission Class (ASTC) or Noise Isolation Class (NIC) values no less than 5 dB points below the specified STC ratings.
- C. Test shall be for proposed door, frame, threshold, seals and hardware. Doors shall be fully operational at the time of the test.

#### 1.8 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Upon award of contract, and before commencement of building construction, submit to the Architect any special requirements (scheduling, flatness of floor, etc.) which are necessary to assure successful installation.
- B. Protect door systems during transit, handling, and storage to prevent damage, soiling, and deterioration.
- C. Deliver frames to General Contractor with complete installation drawings and instructions for installation by the General Contractor.
- D. Deliver doors to project site only after the building has been closed in. Store doors in the building in a dry location and stack in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Protect door assemblies, especially sound gaskets, from damage before, during and after their installation.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 DOOR ASSEMBLIES

- A. Manufacturers: The following firms are approved manufacturers, subject to compliance with requirements:
1. Noise Barriers, LLC, Schaumburg, IL 847-843-0500 [www.noisebarriers.com/doors/](http://www.noisebarriers.com/doors/)
  2. Wenger Corporation, Owatonna, MN 507-455-4100 <http://www.wengercorp.com/sound-isolation/acoustical-doors.php>
  3. Clark Door, Carlisle, United Kingdom +44 (0)1228 522321 <http://www.clarkdoor.com/>
  4. IAC Acoustics, North Aurora, IL 630-270-1790 <http://www.iacacoustics.com/acoustic-doors.shtml>

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Sound-rated doors and frames shall be constructed from formed sheet steel or structural shapes and bars.
- B. Sheet steel shall be commercial quality, level, cold rolled steel conforming to ASTM A 366 or hot rolled, pickled and oiled steel conforming to ASTM A 1011. Exterior units shall be fabricated from galvanized sheet steel conforming to ASTM A 653 commercial quality, minimum G60 zinc coating.
- C. Steel shapes shall comply with ASTM A 36 and steel bars with ASTM A 108, Grade 1018.

### 2.3 COMPONENTS

#### A. Steel Doors

1. Sound rated door thickness shall be as scheduled or as required to achieve the specified STC rating. Doors shall be minimum 2-1/2" thick for STC ratings 49 and greater.
2. Face gauges, internal sound retardant core, stiffening, and perimeter door edge construction shall be as required to achieve specified acoustical performance. Visible seams on door faces are not permitted.
3. Face sheets shall be joined at vertical edges by continuous welding extending full door height. Grind, fill, and dress welds to provide smooth surface. Visible seams on vertical edges are not permitted.

#### B. Frames

1. Frames shall be 14 gauge minimum welded units furnished split in two (2) pieces, inside and outside, that are mitered and welded together allowing for easy installation into either existing or new construction openings. Knock-down frames are not acceptable.
2. Corner joints shall have all contact edges closed tight, with trim faces mitered and continuously welded. The use of gussets will not be permitted.
3. Provide suitable anchors to properly install frames in partition types as shown on architect's drawings.

#### C. Door Hardware

1. The door manufacturer is responsible for supplying and installing all hardware.

2. Hinges shall be cam-lift type provided in conjunction with fixed adjustable door bottom seals. Surface strap or butt hinges, as well as automatic door bottoms, are not acceptable.
3. Hinge, lock, and head of the door shall close against positive neoprene compression and/or magnetic seals mounted in the door frame and/or leaf, as required to meet specified acoustical performance.
4. Where a double leaf door is specified, an overlapping astragal seal shall be provided for the full height of the door, as required to meet the specified acoustical performance. Provide door coordinator as necessary.
5. All hardware shall meet ADA and security requirements as required.

D. Vision Lights

1. Factory install double-glazed windows in dimensions as scheduled. All glazing shall be installed by skilled workmen at the manufacturer's facility.
2. Vision lights shall be designed and installed without degrading acoustic rating of door.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions in which the work of this section is to be installed, including condition of substrate to which the item is to be attached. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Comply with the recommendations of the manufacturer for secure and proper installation in accordance with final shop drawings. Install the work in locations on the drawings, with proper clearances, elevation and anchorage. Provide accessories indicated and anchors, inserts, and other items required for installation of items and attachment to adjoining construction.
- B. Install seals so they are in intimate contact with the entire length of the jambs and head.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FRAMES

- A. Comply with provisions of SDO-105 "Recommended Erection Instructions for Steel Frames," unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Place all frames for acoustical doors after all walls are set and in place. Set frames accurately in position, plumbed, aligned and braced securely until permanent anchors are set.
- C. In masonry construction, locate 3 wall anchors per jamb at hinge and strike levels.
- D. At in-place concrete, masonry or steel construction, set frames and secure to adjacent construction with machine screws and masonry anchorage devices in accordance with all approved shop drawings.
- E. Fill vertical cells of masonry units solid with grout where anchors are to be built-in to masonry construction.
- F. Grouting of frames complete with any rebar reinforcement and installation of insulation in the frame, shall be performed by the installing contractor as part of his work to insure the acoustical and structural integrity of the assembly.



- G. Install fire-rated frames in accordance with NFPA Std. No. 80.
- H. Remove spread bars only after frames have been properly set and secured.

#### 3.4 DOOR INSTALLATION

- A. Fit acoustical doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified in SDI-100 and as herein specified.
- B. Doors must be installed plumb and aligned.
- C. Place fire-rated doors with clearances as specified in NFPA Std. No. 80.
- D. Adjust all automatic or adjustable acoustical perimeter and drop seals to insure a tight fit per manufacturer's recommendation.

#### 3.5 ADJUST AND CLEAN

- A. Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating finish hardware items and acoustical seals, leaving steel doors and frames undamaged and in complete and proper operation condition. Check for any air, light (and sound) gaps at door jambs, heads and sills, and adjust seals as necessary.
- B. Upon completion of the installation, put each operating component through at least 10 operating cycles. Adjust to achieve optimum operation.

#### 3.6 FIELD SUPERVISION

- A. The door manufacturer shall provide factory trained supervision personnel during installation and final adjustment of sound seals. The manufacturer shall issue a letter of compliance certifying the completion of a successful installation.

#### 3.7 FIELD TESTING

- A. If required, the Owner will retain the services of an independent acoustical consultant to conduct an acoustical test at any designated door locations where noise transmission is suspected of being below the set criteria. The test shall consist of a Apparent Sound Transmission Class (ASTC) or Noise Isolation Class (NIC) test per ASTM E 336. If such results indicate non-conformance with the established ASTC or NIC requirements, it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor and manufacturer to correct, at their expense, such deficiencies by methods that shall be approved by the Acoustical Consultant and Owner prior to incorporation. Acoustical tests shall be repeated and corrective measures devised and incorporated until the set criteria and performance standards are met. If the Acoustical Consultant or Architect determines that the materials are not as specified herein, all costs for the initial acoustical test as well as the cost of all retesting shall be borne by the Contractor and the Manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 083473

## SECTION 084113 - ALUMINUM ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

### PART 1 GENERAL

#### 1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

#### 1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the aluminum entrances and storefronts as indicated on the drawings and/or specified herein, including the following:
  - 1. Exterior entrance systems.
  - 2. Interior entrance systems.
  - 3. Exterior storefront systems.
  - 4. Interior storefront systems.

#### 1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Joint Sealers - Section 079200.
- B. Aluminum Windows - Section 085113.
- C. Finish Hardware - Section 087100.
- D. Glass and Glazing - Section 088000.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's printed product data, specifications, standard details, installation instructions, use limitations and recommendations for each material used. Provide certifications that materials and systems comply with specified requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings: Provide large scale shop drawings for fabrication, installation and erection of all parts of work. Provide plans, elevations, and details of anchorages, connections and accessory items. Provide installation templates for work installed by others. Show interfaces and relationships to work of other trades.
- C. Field Measurements: Take necessary field measurements before preparation of shop drawings and fabrication. Do not delay progress of job. If field measurements are not possible prior to fabrication, allow for field cutting and fitting.
- D. Initial Selection Samples: Submit samples showing complete range of colors, textures, and finishes available for each material used.
- E. Verification Samples: Submit representative samples of each material that is to be exposed in completed work. Show full color ranges and finish variations expected. Provide samples having minimum size of 144 sq. in.

- F. Calculations: Provide professionally prepared calculations and certification of performance of this work. Indicate how design requirements for loading and other performance criteria have been satisfied; refer to Article 1.5, para. D for further description.
- G. Delegated-Design Submittal: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation. Provide professionally prepared calculations and certification of performance of this work. Indicate how design requirements for loading and other performance criteria have been satisfied; refer to Article 1.5, para. D for further description.
- H. Test Reports: Provide certified test reports for specified tests.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source: For each material type required for work of this Section, provide primary materials which are products of one manufacturer. Provide secondary or accessory materials which are acceptable to manufacturers of primary materials.
- B. Installer: A firm with a minimum of three years' experience in type of work required by this Section and which is acceptable to manufacturers of primary materials.
- C. Design Criteria: Provide drawings indicating sizes, member spacings, profiles, and dimensional requirements of work of this Section. Minor deviations will be accepted in order to utilize manufacturer's standard products when, in the Architect's sole judgment, such deviations do not materially detract from the design concept or intended performances.
- D. Engineering: Provide services of a Professional Engineer registered in the State of New York to design and certify that work of this Section meets or exceeds performance requirements specified, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.6 TESTS AND PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Manufacturer's Standard Tests: Provide manufacturer's standard test data showing compliance with specified requirements.
- B. Testing and performance data apply to exterior assemblies.
- C. Test Sequence: Test sequence is optional, except that air infiltration tests shall precede water resistance tests.
- D. Air Infiltration Test: Test unit in accordance with ASTM E 283, as follows:
  - 1. Static Air Pressure Difference: 6.24 psf for fixed storefront units, and 1.567 psf for doors.
  - 2. Performance: Maximum air leakage shall not exceed the following:
    - a. Fixed Storefront Units: 0.06 cfm per sq. ft. of window area.
    - b. Door Units: 0.50 cfm per sq. ft. of single doors, 1.00 cfm per sq. ft. for doors hinged in pairs.
- E. Water Leakage Test: Test fixed framing system in accordance with ASTM E 331.
  - 1. Test Pressure: 6.24 psf.
  - 2. Performance: No leakage as defined in test method at specified test pressure.

- F. Uniform Load Deflection Test: Test units in accordance with ASTM E 330, at following static air pressure difference (Design Wind Pressure), or loads prescribed by code for this project site, whichever is greater. Apply pressure first to exterior side (positive) and then interior side (negative).
  - 1. Design Wind Pressure: 30 pounds per square foot minimum.
  - 2. Test Procedure: Procedure A as specified in ASTM E 330.
  - 3. Performance: Deflection in each member measured at locations of greatest deflection shall not exceed  $L/175$  at specified Design Wind Pressure.
- G. Uniform Load Structural Test: Test units in accordance with ASTM E 330 at following static air pressure difference. Apply high pressure load first on one side and then on other side. At conclusion of test there shall be no glass breakage, permanent damage to fasteners, hardware parts, support arms or activating mechanisms.
  - 1. Static Air Pressure: Minimum 1.5 times the Design Wind Pressure.
  - 2. Permanent Deformation in Any Member: Not to exceed 0.2% of member span.
- H. Condensation Resistance Factor: Not less than 45 for fixed storefront units, and not less than 48 for doors; per AAMA 1502.7.
- I. Thermal Movement: Provide storefront systems that allow for expansion and contraction of members throughout an ambient temperature range of 120 degrees F.
- J. Seismic Loads: Provide entrance and storefront systems, including anchorage, capable of withstanding the effects of earthquake motions calculated according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction or ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures," Section 9, "Earthquake Loads," whichever are more stringent.
- K. Exterior entrances and storefronts shall meet 2020 New York State Energy Conservation Code. Maximum U-Factor for fixed fenestration shall be 0.38 and 0.77 for entrance doors.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials and products in unopened, factory labeled packages. Store and handle in strict compliance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations. Store under cover and protect from weather damage.
- B. Sequence deliveries to avoid delays, but minimize on-site storage.

#### 1.8 WARRANTIES

- A. Provide written warranty, signed by manufacturer, agreeing to repair or replace work that exhibits defects in materials or workmanship. "Defects" is defined to include, but not be limited to, leakage of water, abnormal aging or deterioration, abnormal deterioration or fading of finishes, and failure to perform as required. Include requirement for removal and replacement of covering and connected adjacent work.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Three (3) years from date of Substantial Completion; except finish shall be warranted for a period of fifteen (15) years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS/PRODUCTS

- A. Provide storefronts and entrance systems of one of the following manufacturers that meet or exceed requirements of these specifications:
  - 1. Basis of Design: Kawneer North America: 1600 Series.
  - 2. EFCO Corporation.
  - 3. Oldcastle Building Envelope.
  - 4. YKK AP America, Inc.

### 2.2 MATERIALS AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Aluminum Members: Provide 6063-T5 alloy and temper as recommended by manufacturer for strength, corrosion resistance, and application of required finish. Comply with ASTM B 221 for extrusions, and ASTM B 209 for sheet/plate. Provide 0.125" thick extrusions for door stiles and storefront framing. Provide 0.050" thick aluminum for glazing moldings.
- B. Fasteners: Provide non-magnetic stainless steel fasteners, warranted by manufacturer to be non-corrosive and compatible with aluminum components.
- C. Concealed Flashing: Dead-soft stainless steel, 26 gauge minimum, or extruded aluminum 0.062" minimum, of an alloy and type selected by manufacturer for compatibility with other components.
- D. Brackets and Reinforcements: Non-magnetic stainless steel or hot-dip galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 123.
- E. Concrete/Masonry Inserts: Cast-iron, malleable iron, or hot-dip galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 123.
- F. Bituminous Coatings: Cold-applied asphalt mastic compounded for 30-mil thickness per coat.
- G. Compression Weatherstripping: Manufacturer's standard replaceable stripping of molded neoprene or PVC gaskets complying with ASTM D 2287.
- H. Sliding Weatherstripping: Manufacturer's standard replaceable stripping of wool, polypropylene, or nylon woven pile, with nylon fabric or aluminum strip backing.

### 2.3 HARDWARE

- A. Provide hardware units as indicated, scheduled, or required for operation of each door. Refer to Section 087100, Finish Hardware for hardware description.

### 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Sizes and Profiles: Required sizes for door and frame units, including profile requirements, are indicated on Drawings. Any variable dimensions are indicated, together with maximum and minimum dimensions required to achieve design requirements and coordination with other work.
- B. Prefabrication: To greatest extent possible, complete fabrication, assembly, finishing, hardware application, and other work before shipment to project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation.

1. Preglaze door and frame units to greatest extent possible, in coordination with installation and hardware requirements.
2. Do not drill and tap for surface-mounted hardware items until time of installation at project site.
3. Perform fabrication operations, including cutting, fitting, forming, drilling and grinding of metal work in manner which prevents damage to exposed finish surfaces. For hardware, perform these operations prior to application of finishes.
- C. Welding: Comply with recommendations of American Welding Society to avoid discoloration; grind exposed welds smooth and restore mechanical finish.
- D. Reinforcing: Install reinforcing as necessary for performance requirements; separate dissimilar metals with bituminous paint or other separator to prevent corrosion.
- E. Continuity: Maintain accurate relation of planes and angles, with hairline fit of contacting members.
- F. Fasteners: Conceal fasteners.
- G. Provide EPDM/vinyl blade gasket weatherstripping in bottom exterior door rail, adjustable for contact with threshold.
- H. At interior doors and other locations without weatherstripping, provide neoprene silencers on stops to prevent metal-to-metal contact.
- I. Provisions shall be made in the framing for minimum edge clearance, nominal edge cover, and nominal pocket width for the thickness and type of glazing installed, and shall be in accordance with the FGMA Glazing Manual.
- J. Pocket glazed framing shall provide:

	Single Glass	Insulating Glass
1. Nominal edge cover (or bite) framing only	5/16"	1/2"
2. Min. nominal edge clearance	1/8"	1/4"
3. Min. face clearance	1/8"	5/32"

## 2.5 STOREFRONT FRAMING

- A. General: Provide inside-outside matched resilient flush glazed system with provisions for glass replacement. Shop fabricate and preassemble frame components where possible.
- B. Thermal-Break Construction: Fabricate exterior aluminum storefront framing system with integrally concealed, low conductance thermal barrier, located between exterior materials and exposed interior members, in manner which eliminates direct metal-to-metal contact. Provide manufacturer's standard construction which has been in use for similar projects for at least three years.
- C. For glass and glazing, refer to Section 088000.

## 2.6 ALUMINUM DOORS

- A. Aluminum entrance doors shall be narrow-stile, factory-glazed aluminum doors manufactured by same manufacturer as storefront framing.
- B. Aluminum entrance doors shall be stile and rail type swing doors. Aluminum shall be extruded aluminum conforming to ASTM B 221, 0.125" thick for door stiles and 0.050" thick for glazing molding.

1. Sections shall be of sizes and profiles indicated; shall present straight, sharply defined lines and arrises; and shall be free from defects impairing strength, durability, and appearance.
2. Fasteners where exposed shall be aluminum, stainless steel, or plated steel conforming to ASTM B 633.
- C. Each door shall be factory glazed set in neoprene glazing gasket, refer to Section 088000 for glass.
- D. Doors shall meet the following resistance to corner racking when tested by the Dual Moment Load Test.
  1. Test section shall consist of a standard top door corner assembly. Side rail section shall be 24" long and top rail section shall be 12" long.
  2. Anchor top rail positively to test bench so that corner protrudes 3" beyond bench edge.
  3. Anchor a lever arm positively to side rail at a point 19" from inside edge of top rail. Attach weight support pad at a point 19" from inner edge of side rail.
  4. Test section shall withstand a load of 235 lbs. on the lever arm before reaching the point of failure, which shall be considered a rotation of the lever arm in excess of 45 deg.
- E. Air Infiltration (applies only to single acting offset pivot or butt hung entrances): Air infiltration shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E 283, at a pressure differential of 1.567 psf. A single 3'-0" x 7'-0" entrance door and frame shall not exceed 0.50 cfm per linear foot of perimeter crack. A pair of 6'-0" x 7'-0" entrance doors and frame shall not exceed 1.0 cfm per linear foot of perimeter crack.
- F. For door hardware, refer to Section 087100.
- G. Door bottom rail of exterior doors shall have an EPDM blade gasket sweep strip applied with concealed fasteners.
- H. Corner construction shall consist of mechanical clip fastening, SIGMA deep penetration and fillet welds. Glazing stops shall be hook-in type with EPDM glazing gaskets.
- I. The door weatherstripping on a single acting offset pivot or butt hung exterior door and frame (single or pairs) shall be thermoplastic elastomer weatherstripping on a tubular shape with a semi-rigid polymeric backing.
- J. The door weatherstripping on a double acting, center pivoted door and frame (single or pairs) shall be pile cloth. The door bottom rail shall be weatherstripped with an EPDM blade gasket sweep strip applied with concealed fasteners.
- K. The meeting stiles on pairs of doors shall be equipped with an adjustable astragal.

## 2.7 FINISH

- A. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where aluminum entrances and storefronts are to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install aluminum entrance doors and storefront framing in openings prepared under other Sections plumb, square, level, in exact alignment with surrounding work, with proper clearances, and securely and positively anchored to building structure, to meet performance requirements specified herein, in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions and approved submittals.
- B. Use only skilled mechanics for erection, under supervision of manufacturer's representative.
- C. Provide protection against galvanic action. Isolate dissimilar materials with bituminous coating or non-absorptive dielectric tape.
- D. Install aluminum entrance doors, storefront frame, and finish hardware. Carefully fit and adjust doors and hardware to frames and weatherstripping. After erection check and adjust operating hardware for smooth and proper operation.
- E. Set continuous sill members and flashing in a full sealant bed to provide weathertight construction, unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements of Section 079200.
- F. Erection Tolerances: Install entrance and storefront systems to comply with the following maximum tolerances.
  - 1. Variation from Plane: Limit variation from plane or location shown to 1/8" in 12 feet; 1/4" over total length.
  - 2. Alignment: Where surfaces abut in line, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16". Where surfaces meet at corners, limit offset from true alignment to 1/32".
  - 3. Diagonal Measurements: Limit difference between diagonal measurements to 1/8".

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Contractor shall engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform testing indicated for storefronts.
- B. Test fixed frames for water infiltration per AAMA 501.2 "Hose Nozzle Water Spray Testing," latest edition. Test within the first 10% of work complete, area to be a minimum of 100 SF of wall and including a perimeter where frames adjoin adjacent construction. Interior finishes must not interfere with observation of test area or be removed from test area. Not appropriate for operable doors.
  - 1. This test (AAMA 501.2) shall be performed infield on new construction.
- C. Repair or remove Work that does not meet requirements or that is damaged by testing; replace to conform to specified requirements.

### 3.4 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

- A. Protect finished metal surfaces from damage during fabrication, shipping, storage, and erection, and from then until acceptance by Owner.
- B. Clean metal surfaces promptly after installation, exercising care to avoid damage. Remove excess sealant, dirt, and other substances. Lubricate hardware and other moving parts.
- C. Replace glass that is broken, cracked or chipped prior to time of final acceptance of Project by Owner.
- D. Clean glass surfaces promptly after installation, exercising care to avoid damage to same.



EASTCHESTER UNION FREE SCHOOL DISTRICT  
2022 CAPITAL PROJECT  
PHASE 2

SECTION 084113 – ALUMINUM ENTRANCES AND  
STOREFRONTS

END OF SECTION 084113

SECTION 084900 - FIRE RATED GLASS AND FRAMING SYSTEMS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the fire rated glass and framing systems in interior openings as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Firestops and smoke seals - Section 078413.

1.4 REFERENCES

- A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM E119: Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
- B. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
  - 1. NFPA 251: Fire Tests of Building Construction & Materials
- C. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
  - 1. UL 263: Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials
- D. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
  - 1. ANSI Z97.1: Standard for Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings
- E. Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC):
  - 1. CPSC 16 CFR 1201: Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations and details of product showing component dimensions; framing opening requirements, dimensions, tolerances, and attachment to structure
- B. Samples: Submit in the form of 12-inch square samples for glass and of 12-inch long samples for framing and sealants. Install sealant samples between two strips of material representative in color of the adjoining framing system.
- C. Glazing Schedule: Use same designations indicated on drawings for glazed openings in preparing a schedule listing glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location.
- D. Technical Information: Submit latest edition of manufacturer's product data providing product descriptions, technical data and installation instructions.
- E. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.

- F. Certificates of compliance from glass and glazing materials manufacturers attesting that glass and glazing materials furnished for project comply with requirements.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in installations with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Fire-Rated Wall Assemblies: Assemblies complying with ASTM E119 that are classified and labeled by UL, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing in accordance with UL 263, ASTM E119.
- C. Listings and Labels - Fire Rated Assemblies: Under current follow-up service by Underwriter Laboratory maintaining a current listing or certification. Label assemblies accordance with limits of manufacturer's listing.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store and handle under provisions specified by manufacturer. For details on storage and product handling, please contact Technical Glass Products and request information on storage and product handling.
- B. Deliver materials to specified destination in manufacturer or distributor's packaging undamaged, complete with installation instructions.
- C. Store off ground, under cover, protected from weather and construction activities.

#### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Provide system supplier's limited five-year warranty.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Fire-Rated Glazing Material: "Pilkington Pyrostop" as manufactured by the Pilkington Group and distributed by Technical Glass Products or approved equal.
- B. Aluminum Interior Framing System: "Fireframes Aluminum Series" fire-rated frame system as manufactured and supplied by Technical Glass Products or approved equal.
- C. Aluminum Interior Door Framing System: "Fireframes Designer Series" fire-rated frame system as manufactured and supplied by Technical Glass Products or approved equal.
- D. Aluminum Interior Framing System with Level 1 Bullet Resistance: "Fireframes Heat Barrier Series" fire-rated frame system as manufactured and supplied by Technical Glass Products or approved equal.

#### 2.2 MATERIALS - GLASS

- A. Fire Rated Glazing: Pilkington Pyrostop 45-minute, 60-minute and 120-minute glazing (as scheduled).
  - 1. Thickness: As required for fire resistance rating indicated.
  - 2. Impact Safety Resistance: ANSI Z97.1 and CPSC 16CFR1201 (Cat. I and II).
  - 3. Level 1 Bullet resistance where indicated on drawings.

- B. Fire Rating – 60 Minutes and Greater: Fire rating classified and labeled by UL for fire rating scheduled at opening locations on drawings, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 119 and UL 263.

## 2.3 MATERIALS - ALUMINUM FRAMING

- A. Aluminum Framing System: Manufacturer's 45-minute, 60-minute and 120-minute interior framing system specified.
  - 1. Steel Frame: Steel framing members made of two halves, nom. 1.9" wide with a nom. minimum depth of 1.38" with lengths cut according to glazing size.
  - 2. Aluminum Trim: Supplied with the steel framing members. Nom. 2" wide with a nom. depth of 1.54" with lengths cut according to glazing size.
  - 3. Stainless Steel Standoffs: Supplied with the steel framing members. Nom 5/16" diameter with a nom. minimum depth of 1-1/8" with depth adjusted to match Pilkington Pyrostop panel thickness.
  - 4. Stainless Steel Moment and Connecting Braces: Supplied with the steel framing members. Nom. 3/8" thick with a nom. minimum depth of 1-1/8" with depth adjusted to match Pilkington Pyrostop panel thickness.
  - 5. Framing Member Fasteners: Supplied with the steel framing members. Screws are M6 x16mm Button Head Socket Cap Screws for frame assembly and #6 x 1" Pan Head Sheet Metal Screws for door installation.
  - 6. Cover Cap: Box Cap
  - 7. Glazing Gasket: Supplied with the steel framing members. Nom. 3/4" by 3/16" black applied to the steel framing members to cushion and seal the glazing material when installed.

## 2.4 GLAZING COMPOUND FOR FIRE RATED GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. Glazing Tape: Closed cell polyvinyl chloride foam, coiled on release paper over adhesive on two sides, maximum water absorption by volume of 2 percent, designed for compression of 25 percent to effect an air and vapor seal.
- B. Silicone Sealant: One-part neutral curing silicone, medium modulus sealant, Type S; Grade NS; Class 25 with additional movement capability of 50 percent in both extension and compression (total 100 percent); Use (Exposure) NT; Uses (Substrates) G, A, and O as applicable. Available Products:
  - 1. Dow Corning 795 - Dow Corning Corp.
  - 2. Silglaze-II 2800 - General Electric Co.
  - 3. Spectrem 2 - Tremco Inc.
- C. Setting Blocks: Hardwood or calcium silicate; glass width by 4 inches by 3/16 inch thick.
- D. Spacers: Neoprene or other resilient blocks of 40 to 50 Shore A durometer hardness, adhesive-backed on one face only, tested for compatibility with specified glazing compound.
- E. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Type recommended by manufacturer of glass and gaskets.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES FOR FRAMING SYSTEM

- A. Fasteners: Use fasteners fabricated from Type 304 or Type 316 stainless steel.

- B. Glazing Gaskets: Glazing gaskets for interior applications: ASTM C 864 (extruded EPDM rubber that provides for silicone adhesion) or ASTM C1115 Standard Specification for Dense Elastomeric Silicone Rubber Gaskets and Accessories (extruded silicone).
- C. Intumescent Tape: As supplied by frame manufacturer.
- D. Setting Blocks: 1/4" Calcium silicate.
- E. Perimeter Anchors: Steel.
- F. Silicone Sealant: One-Part Low Modulus, neutral cure High Movement-Capable Sealant: Type S; Grade NS; Class 25 with additional movement capability of 100 percent in extension and 50 percent in compression (total 150 percent); Use (Exposure) NT; Uses (Substrates) M, G, A, and O as applicable.

1. Available Products:

- a. Dow Corning 790, 795 - Dow Corning Corp.
- b. Momentive
- c. Tremco

- G. Intumescent Caulk: Single component, latex-based, intumescent caulk designed to stop passage of fire, smoke, and fumes through fire-rated separations; permanently flexible after cure; will not support mold growth; flame spread/smoke developed 10/10.

1. Available Products: 3M CP-25 WP+

- H. Slag-Wool-Fiber/Rock-Wool-Fiber Insulation

1. Available Manufacturers:

- a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.
- b. Owens Corning
- c. Thermafiber.
- d. Rockwool

2. Unfaced, Slag-Wool-Fiber/Rock-Wool-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 612, maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 15 and 0, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics; and of the following nominal density and thermal resistivity:

- a. Nominal density of 4 lb/cu. ft., Types IA and IB, thermal resistivity of 4 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F.
- b. Fiber Color: Regular color, unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Obtain approved shop drawings prior to fabrication.
- B. Fabricate glass and other glazing products in sizes required to glaze openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with recommendations of product manufacturer and referenced glazing standard as required to comply with system performance requirements.
- C. Fabrication Dimensions: Fabricate fire rated assembly to field dimensions.
- D. Field glaze frame assemblies.

## 2.7 FINISHES

### A. Steel or Aluminum Finishes

1. Powder-Coat Finish: Polyester Super Durable powder coating which meets AAMA 2604 for chalking and fading. Apply manufacturer's standard powder coating finish system applied to factory-assembled frames before shipping, complying with manufacturer's recommended instructions for surface preparation including pretreatment, application, and minimum dry film thickness.
2. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
3. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Tiger Drylac
  - b. Additional manufacturers as approved by TGP

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and members to which the work of this Section attaches or adjoins prior to frame installation.
- B. Provide openings plumb, square and within allowable tolerances.
- C. Notify Architect of any conditions which jeopardize the integrity of the proposed fire rated system. Do not proceed until such conditions are corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install systems by a specialty subcontractor with appropriate experience qualifications; and in strict accordance with the approved shop drawings. Employ experienced mechanics familiar with this type of specialized work.
- B. Install fire safing/firestopping at edges of system.
- C. Install glazing in strict accordance with respective glazing material manufacturer's specifications. Field cutting or tampering is not permissible.

### 3.3 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

- A. Protect glass from damage immediately after installation by attaching crossed streamers to framing held away from glass. Do not apply markers to glass surface. Remove nonpermanent labels, and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations, including weld splatter. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove them immediately as recommended by glass manufacturer.
- C. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged in any way, including natural causes, accidents, and vandalism, during construction period.
- D. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces in each area of Project not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended by glass manufacturer.

EASTCHESTER UNION FREE SCHOOL DISTRICT  
2022 CAPITAL PROJECT  
PHASE 2

SECTION 084900 – FIRE RATED GLASS  
AND FRAMING SYSTEMS

END OF SECTION 084900

SECTION 085113 – ALUMINUM WINDOWS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Divisions 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Provide all plant, labor, materials, accessories, equipment, incidentals, scaffolds and supervision necessary to complete window replacement with hardware, exterior trim, components and related work shown and/or specified including but not necessarily limited to the following:
  - 1. Remove existing window assemblies, modify, repair and recondition existing opening and damaged conditions as required for installation of new windows.
  - 2. Single Hung.
  - 3. Removal and reinstallation of window air conditioners exhaust vents, louvers, etc., in insulated aluminum panels.
  - 4. Miscellaneous trim, closures, brake metals, receptors, panning, sills, mullions, mullion covers, and flashing.
- B. Related Work Specified Elsewhere:
  - 1. Joint Sealants: Division 7
  - 2. Aluminum Entrances and Storefronts: Division 8
  - 3. Glazing for additional requirements: Division 8

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AW: Architectural Performance Classification as defined by AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440-8 standards.
- B. Performance grade number, included as part of the AAMA/NWDA product designation code, is actual design pressure in pounds force per square foot used to determine structural test pressure and water test pressure.
- C. Structural test pressure, for uniform load structural test, is equivalent to 150 percent of design pressure.
- D. Minimum test size is smallest size permitted for performance class (gateway test size) or as specified elsewhere in this section, whichever is more stringent. Products must be tested at minimum test size or at a size larger than minimum test size to comply with requirements for performance class. Downsized test reports will not be considered acceptable.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Provide aluminum windows capable of complying with performance requirements indicated, based on testing manufacturer's windows that are representative of those specified and that are of test size indicated below:
  - 1. Single Hung Windows: 48" x 96"
  - 2. Single Hung Window: 24" x 48"
- B. AAMA/NWDA Performance Requirements: Provide aluminum windows of the performance class and grade indicated that comply with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440-8



1. Performance Class: PG-AW
- C. Structural Performance: Provide aluminum windows capable of withstanding the following, including wind loads based on passing , Uniform Load Structural Test, at AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440-05 basic wind speed indicated:
  1. Deflection: Based on passing , Uniform Load Deflection Test. AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440-8
  2. Basic Wind Speed: As indicated in miles per hour at 33 feet above grade. Determine wind loads (30 lbf/sq. ft. minimum) and resulting design pressures applicable to Project according to the following, based on mean roof heights above grade as indicated on Drawings:
    - a. ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures," Section 6.4.2, "Analytic Procedure."
    - b. Appendix B in AAMA/WDMA/CSA101/I.S.2/A440-8.
  3. Uniform Load Structural Test: 150 psf (positive and negative) - Double Hung Windows (60" x 99" test size)
  4. Design Pressure: 150 lbf/sq. ft. - Fixed and Transoms.
    - a. 70 lbf/sq. ft. - Horizontal Sliding windows.
  5. Uniform Load Structural Test: 225 psf (positive and negative) - Fixed
    - a. 105 psf (positive and negative) Sliding
- D. Windborne-Debris Resistance: Provide glazed windows capable of resisting large missile impact from windborne debris, based on the pass/fail criteria as determined from testing glazed windows identical to those specified, according to ASTM E 1886 and testing information in ASTM E 1996 and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Air Infiltration: Maximum rate not more than indicated when tested according to AAMA/WDMA/CSA101/I.S.2/A440-08, Air Infiltration Test.
  1. Maximum Rate 0.1 cfm/sq. ft. of area for and Fixed windows; 0.15 cfm/sq. ft. of area for Sliding windows, at an inward test pressure of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft
- F. Water Resistance: No water leakage as defined in AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440-8 referenced test methods at a water test pressure equaling that indicated, when tested according to, Water Resistance Test.
  1. Test Pressure: 20 percent of positive design pressure, but not less than 12lbf/sq. ft.
- G. Forced-Entry Resistance: Comply with Performance Level 10 requirements when tested according to ASTM F 588.
- H. Condensation-Resistance Factor: Provide aluminum windows tested for thermal performance according to AAMA 1503, showing a minimum CRF of 54.
- I. Thermal Transmittance: Provide aluminum windows with a whole-window U-value maximum indicated at 15-mph exterior wind velocity and winter condition temperatures when tested in a dual glazed version (reports based on windows glazed with insulating glass will not be acceptable) according to AAMA 1503.
  1. U-Value (Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F): Maximum 0.37 for Fixed Windows; Maximum 0.45 for Operable Windows
- J. Thermal Movements: Provide aluminum windows, including anchorage, that accommodate thermal movements of units without buckling, distortion, opening of joints, failure of joint sealants, damaging loads and stresses on glazing and connections.

- K. Projected Windows: Must be flush vent type (overlapping vents will not be acceptable) and must comply with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440-8 for the following tests, in addition to Gateway Performance Requirements:
1. Hardware Load Test.
  2. Sash Torsion Test.
  3. Torsion Test.
  4. Horizontal Concentrated Load Test on Latch Rail.
  5. Vertical Concentrated Load Test on Latch Rail.
  6. Torsion Load Test on Intermediate Frame Rails.
  7. Vertical Concentrated Load Test on Intermediate Frame Rails.
  8. Balance Arm Load Test.
  9. Life Cycle Testing: When tested in accordance with AAMA 910.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's complete specifications, construction details, material descriptions, fabrication methods, dimensions of individual components and profiles, subframes, trims, closures, etc., hardware, finishes, and operating instructions for each type of aluminum window indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Before proceeding with the manufacture of windows, Contractor shall prepare and submit verified and complete dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, large-scale details including interface and method of anchoring to adjacent construction, trims, metal thickness, hardware, attachments to other work, operational clearances, and including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Mullion details, including reinforcement and stiffeners.
  2. Joinery details.
  3. Weather-stripping details.
  4. Thermal-break details.
  5. Glazing details.
  6. Insulated Panel construction.
  7. For products indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the licensed professional engineer registered in the state having jurisdiction responsible for their preparation and used to determine the structural test pressures and design pressures from basic wind speeds indicated.
  8. Submit any other components as required for Architect's approval. No fabrication shall be started until such approval is received. Contractor will verify all opening dimensions in the field and be responsible to provide proper size window units to fit all existing openings and note same on Shop Drawings.
- C. Submit Certified Test Reports from an AAMA accredited laboratory certifying the performance of each type of window specified. Test reports shall be no more than 4 years old and accompanied by AAMA Notice of Certification stating that the tested window meets or exceeds the specified performance criteria for the current appropriate window types. AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440-8. Manufacturer shall also certify that Certified Test Reports are for window sample submitted, and for windows to be used on this Project.
- D. Pre-Installation Conference: Submit copies of pre-installation conference records.
- E. Maintenance Data: For operable window sash, operating hardware, and finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Qualifications: In order to confirm that the proposed product(s) conform to the material and performance requirements contained in these specifications, bidders shall include the following with their bid. Failure to comply with these requirements shall cause the bid to automatically be rejected.
  - 1. Product Test Reports: Bidders submitting bids based on products other than the Basis of Design product listed in Paragraph 2.01.A must also include with their bid comprehensive test reports not more than four years old prepared by a qualified testing agency for each window type being used on the project. Test reports based on the use of downsized test units will not be accepted. Thermal Tests must reflect the u-values as specified.
  - 2. Product Details: Bidders submitting bids based on products other than the Basis of Design product listed in Paragraph 2.01.A must also include with their bid full size product details showing all frame and sash details, dimensions, thermal break construction, wall thicknesses and joinery. Details must accurately reflect all glazing and hardware options specified herein.
- B. Product Requirements: For maximum performance, windows for this project must meet both the testing requirements as contained herein and the minimum material requirements specified. Windows that carry the applicable AAMA rating but do not meet the material thicknesses, depths, etc. shall not be acceptable for use on this project.
- C. Installer Qualifications: An installer acceptable to aluminum window manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
- D. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
- E. Single Source Responsibility: Provide all window types listed by a single manufacturer. All components of windows including sub-frames, trims, framing, etc. shall be by the same manufacturer. Splitting of types of windows such as sliding, fixed windows by different manufacturers is not acceptable.
- F. Product Criteria: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establish requirements for aluminum window design and performance characteristics. Design characteristics are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction. Performance characteristics are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods including pre-construction testing, field testing, and in-service performance.
- G. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass manufacturers and GANA's "Glazing Manual" unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- H. Pre-Installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with project management and coordination requirements of the project. Review methods and procedures related to aluminum windows including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Inspect and discuss condition of substrate and other preparatory work performed by other trades.
  - 2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 3. Review required testing and inspecting procedures.
- I. Windborne-Debris Resistance: Capable of resisting impact from windborne debris based on testing glazed windows identical to those specified, according to ASTM E 1886 and testing information in ASTM E1996 and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify all window openings and conditions by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on shop drawings.
- B. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the work, establish opening dimensions and proceed with fabricating windows without field measurements. General Contractor shall coordinate wall construction to ensure that actual opening dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Submit a written warranty signed by aluminum window manufacturer agreeing to repair or replace window that fail in materials or workmanship within the specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Failure to meet performance requirements.
    - b. Structural failures including excessive deflection.
    - c. Water leakage, air infiltration, or condensation.
    - d. Faulty operation of movable sash and hardware.
    - e. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
  - 2. Warranty Period:
    - a. Windows: Five years after date of Substantial Completion for the total window system.
    - b. Insulated Glazing: Ten years after date of Substantial Completion.
    - c. Painted Metal Finishes:
      - 1) Twenty years from date of Substantial Completion for an AAMA 2605 High-Performance Finish
      - 2) Five years from date of Substantial Completion for an AAMA 2603 Baked Enamel Finish
- B. Deficiencies due to such elements not meeting the specifications shall be corrected at no expense to the Owner during the warranty period.

### 1.9 WORK SCHEDULE

- A. Two weeks before actually starting window replacement work at the site Contractor will meet with the Architect and Owner to establish a work schedule acceptable the Owner. Contractor will not change approved schedule without prior approval.
- B. No windows will be removed unless Contractor can replace them with new units prior to end of day's work.

### 1.10 SAMPLE WINDOW INSTALLATION

- A. Prior to the actual starting of the project, Contractor will install a sample replacement unit in the opening selected by the Owner for the architect's and Owner's approval. The Sample will be typical of completed window installations showing all elements including but not limited to: frames, sash, mullions, trim, casings, weeps, sills, caulking, etc. for a complete installation.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 AVAILABLE MANUFACTURERS:

- A. Basis-of-Design Products: The Basis of Design for these specifications are the Series 7250i Single Hung – Tilt-in as manufactured by Architectural Window Manufacturing Corporation, Rutherford, New Jersey.
- B. Equivalents: Subject to compliance with all material and performance requirements outlined in these specifications, “or equal” products by other manufacturers proposed with all required supporting information no less than ten days prior to the bid opening will be considered for use subject to review by the Architect. The Architect’s decision regarding equivalency is final. Products considered approved equivalents must be issued in writing via addendum to all bidders.

### 2.2 MATERIALS:

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum window manufacturer for strength, corrosion resistance, and application of required finish, but not less than 22,000-psi ultimate tensile strength, not less than 16,000-psi minimum yield strength, and not less than:
  - 1. 0.080-inch thickness at any location for the main frame and sash members, except the frame sill which shall be a minimum of 0.125-inch. (Double Hung and Sliding Windows).
  - 2. 0.080-inch thickness at any location for the main frame (Fixed windows).
- B. Frame/Sash Depth:
  - 1. 4-1/4" minimum frame depth: 1-3/4" minimum sash depth. (Double Hung and Sliding Windows).
  - 2. 4-1/4" minimum frame depth: (Fixed and Transom windows).
- C. Brake Formed Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum window manufacturer for strength, corrosion resistance, and application of required finish, and not less than 0.062 inch thickness.
- D. Fasteners: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel, epoxy adhesive, or other materials warranted by manufacturer to be noncorrosive and compatible with aluminum window members, trim, hardware, anchors, and other components.
  - 1. All fasteners must be concealed except where unavoidable for application of hardware.
  - 2. For application of hardware, where required, use non-magnetic stainless steel phillips flat head machine screws.
- E. Anchors, Clips, and Accessories: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel, or zinc-coated steel or iron complying with ASTM B633 for SC 3 severe service conditions; provide sufficient strength to withstand design pressure indicated.
- F. Compression-Type Weather Stripping: Provide compressible weather stripping designed for permanently resilient sealing between adjoining window frames and/or perimeter subframe conditions. Weather stripping will be completely concealed when aluminum window is closed and installation is complete.
  - 1. Weather-Stripping Material: Manufacturer's standard system and materials complying with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440.

- G. Sliding-Type Weather Stripping: Provide woven-pile weather stripping of wool, polypropylene, or nylon pile and resin-impregnated backing fabric. Comply with AAMA 701/702.
  - 1. Polypropylene sheet or polypropylene-coated material. Weather Seals: Provide weather stripping with integral barrier fin or fins of semirigid, polypropylene sheet or polypropylene-coated material.
- H. Replaceable Weather Seals: Comply with AAMA 701/702.
- I. Sealant: For sealants required within fabricated windows, provide window manufacturer's standard, permanently elastic, non-shrinking, and nonmigrating type recommended by sealant manufacturer for joint size and movement.

## 2.3 WINDOW

- A. Window Type: Single Hung, Tilt-int.
- B. AAMA/WDMA Performance Requirements: Provide aluminum windows of performance indicated that comply with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440.
  - 1. Performance Class and Grade: AW100.
- C. Condensation-Resistance Factor (CRF): Provide aluminum windows tested for thermal performance according to AAMA 1503, showing a minimum CRF of 47.
- D. Thermal Transmittance: Provide aluminum windows with a whole-window, U-factor maximum indicated at 15-mph (24-km/h) exterior wind velocity and winter condition temperatures when tested using pyrolytic Low-E glass according to AAMA 1503.
  - 1. U-Factor: 0.55 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F or less.
- E. Air Infiltration: Maximum rate not more than indicated when tested according to AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440, Air Infiltration Test.
  - 1. Maximum Rate: 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. (5 cu. m/h x sq. m) of area at an inward test pressure of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).
- F. Water Resistance: No water leakage as defined in AAMA/WDMA referenced test methods at a water test pressure equaling that indicated, when tested according to AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS, Water Resistance Test.
  - 1. Test Pressure: 20 percent of positive design pressure, but not less than [12] [10] [15] lbf/sq. ft..
- G. Forced-Entry Resistance: Comply with Performance Grade 10 requirements when tested according to ASTM F 588.
- H. Life-Cycle Testing: Test according to AAMA 910 and comply with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440.
- I. Operating Force and Auxiliary (Durability) Tests: Comply with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 for operating window types indicated.

## 2.4 INSULATED GLAZING:

- A. Insulated Glazed Construction: All windows in the referenced areas (except those receiving insulated panels) shall be factory glazed with hermetically sealed 1" insulating glass units with a dual seal of polyisobutylene and silicone and a dessicant filled aluminum spacer. Insulated glass must be set into a continuous bed of silicone sealant and held in place with removable extruded aluminum snap-in

beads. Wrap around (marine) glazing which requires the removal and disassembling of the sash for re-glazing will not be acceptable. Units must be IGCC certified for a CBA rating level.

1. Exterior Glazing:
  - a. Thickness: 1/4 inch
  - b. Tint: Clear
  - c. Type: Tempered Glass
2. Interior Glazing:
  - a. Thickness: 1/4 inch
  - b. Tint: Clear (with the exception of lavatories, bathrooms and locker rooms which shall be obscure).
  - c. Type: Tempered Glass
  - d. Coating: PPG Solarban 60 Low-E or equal (#3 surface)

## 2.5 INSULATED PANELS:

- A. Areas designated to receive insulated panels shall be constructed as follows:
  1. Overall Thickness: 1 inch
  2. Exterior Face: Kynar paint on smooth .032" aluminum factory finished in color (PAC CLAD Zinc).
  3. Interior Face: Kynar paint on smooth 0.032 inch aluminum. Color shall be selected from manufacturer's standard color selection.
  4. Exterior Substrate: 3/16 inch Water resistant Hardboard.
  5. Interior Substrate: 3/16 inch Water resistant Hardboard.
  6. Core: Polyisocyanurate.

## 2.6 HARDWARE:

- A. Hardware in General: Provide manufacturer's standard hardware fabricate from aluminum, stainless steel, carbon steel complying with AAMA 907, or other corrosion resistant material compatible with aluminum; designed to smoothly operate, tightly close, and securely lock aluminum windows and of size and strength to accommodate sash or ventilator weight, dimensions and operation. Do not use aluminum in friction contact with other metals.
- B. Locks and Latches in General: Designed to allow unobstructed movement of the sash across adjacent sash in direction indicated and operated from the inside only.
- C. Pole Operators: Tubular-shaped anodized aluminum; with rubber-capped lower end and standard push-pull hook at top to match hardware design; of sufficient length to operate window without reaching more than 60 inches above floor; 1 pole operator and pole hanger per room that has operable windows with a pole operated locking mechanism more than 72 inches above floor.
- D. Single-Hung Windows: Provide the following operating hardware:
  - a. Counterbalancing Mechanism: Comply with AAMA 902.
  - b. Sash Balance: Class 6, concealed Ultralift Extreme spring type capable of lifting 80% of sash weight, of size and capacity to hold sash stationary at any open position.
  - c. Tilt Lock: Design window and provide with concealed zinc die cast tilt latches (plastic will not be acceptable) and pivot bar hardware to permit tilting of sash inward for cleaning both sides of sash from interior.
  - d. Handle: Continuous, integral lift rail on bottom rail of lower sash and pull-down rail on top rail of upper sash.
  - e. Lower Sash Lock: Spring-loaded, snap-type white bronze lock on bottom rail of lower sash (two if window is greater than 48" wide).

- f. Meeting Rail Lock: white bronze cam-action lock on meeting rail of windows (two if window is greater than 48" wide).
- g. Pole Socket: One surface applied pole socket on inside face of top rail of lower sash on windows with meeting rails more than 72 inches (1800 mm) above floor.
- h. Limit Device: Continuous [NYCDOH approved] extruded aluminum sash stop limit device with rubber bumper; for operable sash located at jamb; two per sash.

## 2.7 INSECT SCREENS:

- A. General: Design windows and hardware to accommodate screens in a tight-fitting, removable arrangement, with a minimum of exposed fasteners and latches. Provide insect screens on all operable sash. Locate insect screens on outside of window except mount insect screens on the inside of the window for project-out units and include hinged wickets at each operating latch.
- B. Aluminum Insect Screen Frames: Manufacturer's standard aluminum alloy complying with SMA 1004. Fabricate frames with mitered or coped joints, concealed fasteners, and removable PVC spline/anchor concealing edge of frame.
- C. Extruded-Aluminum Tubular Framing Sections and Cross Braces: Not less than 0.062-inch wall thickness.
  - 1. Finish: Match aluminum window members.
- D. Glass-Fiber Mesh Fabric: 18-by-16 (1.0-by-1.1-mm) mesh of PVC-coated, glass-fiber threads; woven and fused to form a fabric mesh resistant to corrosion, shrinkage, stretch, impact damage, and weather deterioration; in the following color. Comply with ASTM D 3656.  
Mesh Color: Charcoal gray.
- E. Aluminum Wire Fabric: 18-by-16 mesh of 0.011-inch diameter, coated aluminum wire.
  - 1. Wire-Fabric Finish: Charcoal Gray
- F. Stainless-Steel Wire Fabric: 18-by-18 mesh of 0.009-inch diameter, nonmagnetic stainless-steel wire, Type 304 or 316, complying with FS RR-W-365, Type VI.

## 2.8 ACCESSORIES

- A. Rescue Labels: Windows designated on drawings as "Rescue" or "Egress" windows shall meet all applicable codes and shall include a conforming label.

## 2.9 FABRICATION:

- A. General: Fabricate aluminum windows, in sizes indicated, that comply with requirements and that meet or exceed AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 performance requirements for the following window type and performance class. Include a complete system for assembling components and anchoring windows.
  - 1. Double Hung Windows: AW
  - 2. Projected Windows: AW
  - 3. Fixed/Transom Windows: AW
- B. Fabricate aluminum windows that are reglazable without dismantling sash or ventilator framing.
- C. Thermally Improved Construction: Fabricate aluminum windows with an integral, concealed (products with exposed thermal barriers will not be acceptable), low-conductance thermal barrier; located between exterior materials and window members exposed on interior side; in a manner that eliminates direct metal-to-metal contact.



1. All exterior aluminum shall be separated from interior aluminum by a rigid, structural thermal barrier. For purposes of this specification, a structural thermal barrier is defined as a system that shall transfer shear during bending and, therefore, promote composite action between the exterior and interior extrusions.
2. No thermal short circuits shall occur between the exterior and interior.
3. The thermal barrier shall consist of a thermal strut design and consist of two glass reinforced polyamide nylon 6/6 struts mechanically crimped in raceways extruded in the exterior and interior extrusions.
4. Poured and debridged urethane thermal barriers shall not be permitted.

- D. Weather Stripping: Provide full-perimeter weather stripping for each operable sash and ventilator.
- E. Weep Holes: Provide weep holes with hinged covers and internal passages to conduct infiltrating water to exterior.
- F. Mullions: Provide mullions and cover plates as shown, matching window units, complete with anchors for support to structure and installation of window units. Allow for erection tolerances and provide for movement of window units due to thermal expansion and building deflections, as indicated. Provide mullions and cover plates capable of withstanding design loads of window units.
- G. Subframes: Provide drainable subframes with anchors for window units as shown, of profile and dimensions indicated but not less than 0.093-inch thick extruded aluminum. Finish to match window units. Provide subframes capable of withstanding design loads of window units. .
- H. Factory-Glazed Fabrication: Glaze aluminum windows in the factory where practical and possible for applications indicated. Comply with requirements in Division 8 Section "Glazing" and with AAMA/WDMA/CSA101/I.S.2/A440.
- I. Glazing Stops: Provide snap-on glazing stops coordinated with Division 8 Section "Glazing" and glazing system as indicated. Provide glazing stops to match sash and ventilator frames.
- J. Insulated Panels: Panels must be set into a continuous bed of silicone sealant and held in place with removable extruded aluminum snap-inbeads.
- K. Muntins: Where shown on drawings, muntins shall be 3/8" deep profiled extruded aluminum between the lites of dual glazing. Roll formed muntins shall not be acceptable.

## 2.10 FINISHES

- A. General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
- C. Exterior of window:
1. Superior-Performance Organic Finish: AA-C12C42R1x Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: acid-chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating; Organic Coating: (as specified below). Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - a. Fluoropolymer Three-Coat XL System: Manufacturer's standard Three-Coat, thermocured system consisting of specially formulated inhibitive primer and

fluoropolymer color and clear topcoat containing Mica Flakes not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight; complying with AAMA 2605

- b. Color: Zinc UC102268FLMetallic.

D. Interior of window:

- 1. Baked-Enamel Finish: AA-C12C42R1x Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: acid-chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating; Organic Coating: (as specified below). Apply baked enamel complying with paint manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and painting.
  - a. Organic Coating: Thermosetting, modified-acrylic enamel primer/topcoat system complying with AAMA2603.
  - b. Color: Zinc - UC114721Metallic.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine openings, substrates, structural support, anchorage, and conditions, with installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances; rough opening dimensions; levelness of sill plate; coordination with wall flashings, vapor retarders, and other built-in components; operational clearances and other conditions affecting performance of work.
  - 1. Masonry Surfaces: Visibly dry and free of excess mortar, sand, and other construction debris.
  - 2. Wood Frame Walls: Dry, clean, sound, well nailed, free of voids, and without offsets at joints. Ensure that nail heads are driven flush with surfaces in opening and within 3 inches (76 mm) of opening.
  - 3. Metal Surfaces: Dry; clean; free of grease, oil, dirt, rust, corrosion, and welding slag; without sharp edges or offsets at joints.
  - 4. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. Field measure all openings and verify all conditions. Note locations of existing mechanical equipment, guards, wires, etc. are required to be removed or removed, salvaged and reinstalled and incorporate such information into the shop drawings.
- C. Unacceptable conditions shall be reported in writing to the Architect prior to the start of work. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Starting of work will be construed as Contractor's acceptance of existing conditions and the Contractor will be responsible to correct and repair defects not reported to the Architect in writing at no additional cost.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove existing window assemblies and other associated work as indicated and required for the proper installation of new windows.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Do not remove existing windows that are to be replaced until new replacement windows are available for installation. Do not leave any openings uncovered at end of working day.
- B. Remove all necessary portions of frame, sash members, or other existing materials that are required to be removed to permit the proper erection of new windows, trim, etc. Remove and replace deteriorated or damaged sills, blocking, etc. prior to covering or installing new windows, etc.
- C. Remove hardware, window shades, blinds, drapes, window air conditioners, exhaust vents,

louvers, etc. as may be required to allow window replacement. Salvage or dispose of window treatments as directed by Owner.

- D. Install and/or reinstall window air conditioners, exhaust vents and louvers in insulated aluminum panels where indicated.
- E. Windows shall be installed and adjusted by experienced and qualified window erectors, and using only skilled window mechanics. Install windows in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions for installing windows, complete with all hardware, accessories, and other components Contract Drawings and approved shop drawings, at the proper elevation and location, plumb, level, and in alignment, rigidly secure and properly brace frames to prevent distortion and misalignment. Protect windows and operating parts against accumulation of cement, lime, and other building materials. Keep windows tightly closed.
- F. Anchor component parts securely in place to comply with performance requirements and permit movement where intended or necessary. Install slip-joint linings wherever possible to ensure movement as intended or necessary. In no case, shall any attachments to existing structure or to components of the window system be through or affect the thermal barriers of the windows.
- G. Provide all anchors, brackets, bolts, fasteners, treated wood blocking, furring, fillers, nailers, shims and inserts as required for a plumb and secure installation.
- H. Install windows level, plumb, square, true to line, without distortion or impeding thermal movement, anchored securely in place to structural support, and in proper relation to wall flashing and other adjacent construction.
- I. Set sill members in bed of sealant or with gaskets, as indicated, for weathertight construction.
- J. Install windows and components to drain condensation, water penetrating joints, and moisture migrating within windows to the exterior.
- K. Set all metal to metal joints between members of windows, frames, in a mastic sealant of type in conformance with AAMA/NWWDA 101/I.S.2. requirements. Remove excess mastic before it hardens.
- L. Metal Protection: Separate aluminum and other corrodible surfaces from sources of corrosion or electrolytic action at points of contact with other materials by complying with requirements specified in "Dissimilar Materials" Paragraph in Appendix B in AAMA/NWWDA 101/I.S.2.
- M. Apply bituminous coating of approximately 30 mil dry film thickness, or other suitable permanent separator, on concealed contact surfaces of dissimilar metals or cementitious materials, before assembly or installation, wherever there is the possibility of corrosive or electrolytic action.
- N. Wedge fiberglass insulation between frames of new windows and construction to remain or between frames and new blocking as applicable.

- O. Seal entire perimeter of window frames in wall openings to accomplish a watertight seal. Include both exterior and interior caulking.
- P. Seal joints between metal and all masonry surfaces, in addition to other areas as shown. Caulking to be tooled properly without ripples or omissions.
- Q. Color as selected by Architect.

#### 3.4 ADJUST

- A. Adjust operating sashes and ventilators, screens, hardware, and accessories for a tight fit at contact points and weather stripping for smooth operation and weathertight closure. Lubricate hardware and moving parts.
- B. Manufacturer shall clean all glass and aluminum prior to shipment.
- C. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain window operating system.

#### 3.5 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

- A. Clean aluminum surfaces promptly after installation of windows, exercising care to avoid damage to protective coatings and finishes. Remove excess glazing and sealant compounds, labels, dirt and other substances. Lubricate hardware and moving parts.
- B. Clean glass of pre-glazed units promptly after installation of windows. Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for final cleaning and maintenance.
- C. Screens shall be properly cleaned and free of any dirt, caulking, or other substances, etc.
- D. Contractor will clean premises of all refuse, debris, removed materials, etc., as soon as windows have been installed. Working areas to be left broom clean to Architect's satisfaction.
- E. Debris and/or removed materials shall not be allowed to accumulate.
- F. Initiate and maintain all protection and other precautions required to ensure that window units will be without damage or deterioration (other than normal weathering at time of acceptance).

END OF SECTION 085113

SECTION 085619 - SLIDING AND FIXED TRANSACTION WINDOWS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the sliding and fixed transaction windows, as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Joint Sealers - Section 079200.
- B. Glass and Glazing - Section 088000.
- C. Roll Up Fire Counter Shutters - Section 083324

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Use adequate numbers of skilled workmen who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary crafts and who are completely familiar with the specified requirements and the methods needed for proper performance of the work of this Section.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data
  - 1. Materials list of items proposed to be provided under this Section.
  - 2. Manufacturer's specifications and other data needed to prove compliance with the specified requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings: Provide in sufficient detail to show fabrication, installation, anchorage, and interface of the work of this Section with the work of adjacent trades.
- C. Manufacturer's recommended installation procedures.

1.6 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Protection: Use all means necessary to protect the materials of this Section before, during, and after installation, and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.
- B. Replacements: In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Sliding Transaction Window: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by C. R. Laurence, Inc., Sliding Service Window, Catalog Number SBTWA1 or approved equal, bullet resistant level 1, with optional speak through, keyed lock.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Frames: 4" Aluminum bullet resistant frame modules shall be to the standards established by U.L. 752 Protection Level level 1. Frames are to be constructed of 6063-T5 extruded aluminum. Shapes and sizes are to be in accordance with the contract drawings..
- B. Finish: All aluminum to be clear anodized
- C. Glazing: The glazing must be in accordance with U.L. 752 testing standards
  - 1. 1-1/4" acrylic with abrasion resistant coating.
- D. At Sliding Window, provide keyed lock, burglar bar, counter mounted security clip, full bottom track (unless otherwise noted), and voice transmission.
  - 1. Voice Transmission: Clear polished 10" disc of same glazing material, held in place in sliding panel over 6" hole with stainless steel standoffs.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine areas and conditions where sliding transaction windows are to be installed and notify the Architect of conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing doors, hardware, accessories, and other components.
- B. Set doors level, plumb, and true to line, without warp or rack of frames and panels. Provide proper support and anchor securely in place.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING, CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Adjust operating panels and hardware to provide a tight fit at contact points. Lubricate hardware and moving parts.
- B. Clean aluminum surfaces immediately after installing sliding service windows. Avoid damaging protective coatings and finishes. Remove excess glazing and sealants, dirt, and other substances.
- C. Clean glass of factory-glazed doors and windows immediately after installation of sliding service windows. Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for final cleaning and maintenance. Remove nonpermanent labels from glass surfaces.
- D. Remove and replace glass that has been broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged during construction.

- E. Protect sliding transaction windows from damage or deterioration until time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 085619

# Eastchester UFSD Multiple Schools

## SECTION 08 71 00 DOOR HARDWARE - DORMAKABA GROUP

### PART 1 GENERAL

#### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Hardware for wood, aluminum, hollow metal, and FRP doors.
- B. Hardware for fire-rated doors.
- C. Electrically operated and controlled hardware.
- D. Thresholds.
- E. Smoke and draft control seals.
- F. Weatherstripping and gasketing.

#### 1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 06 20 00 - Finish Carpentry: Wood door frames.
- B. Section 08 11 13 - Hollow Metal Doors and Frames.
- C. Section 08 11 16 - Aluminum Doors and Frames.
- D. Section 08 12 13 - Hollow Metal Frames.
- E. Section 08 14 16 - Flush Wood Doors.
- F. Section 08 14 23 - Clad Wood Doors.
- G. Section 08 14 33 - Stile and Rail Wood Doors.
- H. Section 08 16 13 - Fiberglass Doors.
- I. Section 08 33 23 - Overhead Coiling Doors: Door hardware, except cylinders.
- J. Section 08 36 13 - Sectional Doors: Door hardware, except cylinders.
- K. Section 08 43 13 - Aluminum-Framed Storefronts: Door hardware, except as noted in section.
- L. Section 28 10 00 - Access Control: Electronic access control devices.

#### 1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ADA Standards - Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Standards for Accessible Design 2010.
- B. ASTM E283/E283M - Standard Test Method for Determining Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Skylights, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen 2019.
- C. DHI (H&S) - Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule 2019.
- D. DHI (KSN) - Keying Systems and Nomenclature 2019.
- E. DHI (LOCS) - Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames 2004.
- F. DHI WDHS.3 - Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Flush Wood Doors 1993; also in WDHS-1/WDHS-5 Series, 1996.
- G. ICC (IBC) - International Building Code Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- H. ICC A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities 2017.
- I. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- J. NFPA 80 - Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives 2022.
- K. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- L. NFPA 105 - Standard for Smoke Door Assemblies and Other Opening Protectives 2022.
- M. NFPA 252 - Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies 2022.
- N. UL 10C - Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies Current Edition, Including All Revisions.



# Eastchester UFSD Multiple Schools

## 1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate the manufacture, fabrication, and installation of products that door hardware is installed on.
- B. Sequence installation to ensure facility services connections are achieved in an orderly and expeditious manner.
- C. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene a preinstallation meeting one week prior to commencing work of this section; require attendance by affected installers and the following:
  - 1. Architect.
  - 2. Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC).
  - 3. Hardware Installer.
  - 4. Owner's Security Consultant.
- D. Furnish templates for door and frame preparation to manufacturers and fabricators of products requiring internal reinforcement for door hardware.
- E. Keying Requirements Meeting:
  - 1. Schedule meeting at project site prior to Contractor occupancy.
  - 2. Attendance Required:
    - a. Contractor.
    - b. Owner.
    - c. Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC).
    - d. Door Hardware Installer.
    - e. Owner's Security Consultant.
  - 3. Agenda:
    - a. Establish keying requirements.
    - b. Verify locksets and locking hardware are functionally correct for project requirements.
    - c. Verify that keying and programming complies with project requirements.
    - d. Establish keying submittal schedule and update requirements.
  - 4. Incorporate "Keying Requirements Meeting" decisions into keying submittal upon review of door hardware keying system including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Access control requirements.
    - b. Key control system requirements.
  - 5. Record minutes and distribute copies within two days after meeting to participants, with two copies to Architect, Owner, participants, and those affected by decisions made.
  - 6. Deliver established keying requirements to manufacturers.

## 1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's catalog literature for each type of hardware, marked to clearly show products to be furnished for this project, and includes construction details, material descriptions, finishes, and dimensions and profiles of individual components.
- C. Shop Drawings - Door Hardware Schedule: A detailed listing that includes each item of hardware to be installed on each door.
  - 1. Prepared by or under supervision of Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC).
  - 2. Comply with DHI (H&S) using door numbering scheme and hardware set numbers as indicated in Contract Documents.
    - a. Submit in vertical format.
  - 3. List groups and suffixes in proper sequence.
  - 4. Include complete description for each door listed.
  - 5. Include manufacturer's and product names, and catalog numbers; include functions, types, styles, sizes and finishes of each item.
  - 6. Include account of abbreviations and symbols used in schedule.
- D. Shop Drawings - Electrified Door Hardware: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring for electrified door hardware that include details of interface with building safety and security systems. Provide elevations and diagrams for each electrified door opening as follows:
  - 1. Prepared by or under supervision of Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) and Electrified Hardware Consultant (EHC).

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple Schools

2. Elevations: Include front and back elevations of each door opening showing electrified devices with connections installed and an operations narrative describing how opening operates from either side at any given time.
3. Diagrams: Include point-to-point wiring diagrams that show each device in door opening system with related colored wire connections to each device.
- E. Samples for Verification:
  1. Submit one (1) sample of hinge, latchset, lockset, closer, illustrating style, color, and finish.
  2. Architect will return full-size samples to Contractor.
  3. Include product description with samples.
- F. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures and perimeter conditions requiring special attention.
- G. Maintenance Data: Include data on operating hardware, lubrication requirements, and inspection procedures related to preventative maintenance.
  1. Bitting List: List of combinations as furnished.
- H. Keying Schedule:
  1. Submit three (3) copies of Keying Schedule in compliance with requirements established during Keying Requirements Meeting unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Warranty: Submit manufacturer's warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
- J. Maintenance Materials and Tools: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  1. See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
  2. Tools: One set of each special wrench or tool applicable for each different or special hardware component, whether supplied by hardware component manufacturer or not.

### 1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Standards for Fire-Rated Doors: Maintain one copy of each referenced standard on site, for use by Architect and Contractor.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified for commercial door hardware with at least three years of documented experience.
- C. Supplier Qualifications: Company with certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) and Electrified Hardware Consultant (EHC) to assist in work of this section.

### 1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Package hardware items individually; label and identify each package with door opening code to match door hardware schedule.

### 1.08 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer Warranty: Provide manufacturer warranty against defects in material and workmanship for period indicated, from Date of Substantial Completion. Complete forms in Owner's name and register with manufacturer.
  1. Closers: Five years, minimum.
  2. Exit Devices: Three years, minimum.
  3. Locksets and Cylinders: Three years, minimum.
  4. Other Hardware: Two years, minimum.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide specified door hardware as required to make doors fully functional, compliant with applicable codes, and secure to extent indicated.
- B. Door Pulls and Push Plates:
  1. Provide door pulls and push plates on doors without a lockset, latchset, exit device, or auxiliary lock unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Closers:
  1. Provide door closer on each exterior door, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Provide door closer on each fire-rated and smoke-rated door.
- D. Thresholds:

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple Schools

1. Exterior Applications: Provide at each exterior door, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Smoke and Draft Control Seals:
  1. Provide gasketing for smoke and draft control doors (Indicated as "S" on Drawings) that complies with local codes, requirements of assemblies tested in accordance with UL 1784.
- F. Weatherstripping and Gasketing:
  1. Provide weatherstripping on each exterior door at head, jambs, and meeting stiles of door pairs, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Provide door bottom sweep on each exterior door, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Fabricate as continuous gasketing, do not cut or notch gasketing material.
- G. Electrically Operated and/or Controlled Hardware: Provide necessary power supplies, power transfer hinges, relays, and interfaces as required for proper operation; provide wiring between hardware and control components and to building power connection in compliance with NFPA 70.
- H. Fasteners:
  1. Provide fasteners of proper type, size, quantity, and finish that comply with commercially recognized standards for proposed applications.
  2. Provide machine screws for attachment to reinforced hollow metal and aluminum frames.
  3. Provide stainless steel machine screws and lead expansion shields for concrete and masonry substrates.
  4. Provide wall grip inserts for hollow wall construction.
  5. Fire-Resistance-Rated Applications: Comply with NFPA 80.
  6. Concealed Fasteners: Do not use through or sex bolt type fasteners on door panel sides indicated as concealed fastener locations, unless otherwise indicated or required per manufacturer's testing requirements.

### 2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide door hardware products that comply with the following requirements:
  1. Applicable provisions of federal, state, and local codes.
    - a. ICC (IBC).
    - b. NFPA 101.
  2. Accessibility: ADA Standards and ICC A117.1.
  3. Fire-Resistance-Rated Doors: NFPA 80, listed and labeled by qualified testing agency for fire protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
  4. Hardware Preparation for Steel Doors and Steel Frames: BHMA A156.115.
  5. Hardware Preparation for Wood Doors with Wood or Steel Frames: BHMA A156.115W.
  6. Products Requiring Electrical Connection: Listed and classified by UL (DIR) as suitable for the purpose specified.

### 2.03 HINGES

- A. Manufacturers: Conventional butt hinges.
  1. BEST; dormakaba Group: [www.bestaccess.com/#sle](http://www.bestaccess.com/#sle).
  2. Hager.
  3. McKinney.
- B. Properties:
  1. Butt Hinges: As applicable to each item specified.
    - a. Standard Weight Hinges: Minimum of two (2) permanently lubricated non-detachable bearings.
    - b. Heavy Weight Hinges: Minimum of four (4) permanently lubricated bearings on heavy weight hinges.
    - c. Template screw hole locations.
    - d. Pins: Easily seated, non-rising pins.
    - e. UL 10C listed for fire-resistance-rated doors.
  2. Continuous Hinges: As applicable to each item specified.
    - a. Geared Continuous Hinges: As applicable to each item specified.
      - 1) Non-handed.
      - 2) UL 10C listed for fire-resistance-rated doors.
      - 3) Sufficient size to permit door to swing 180 degrees
- C. Finishes: See Door Hardware Schedule.

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple Schools

- D. Grades:
  - 1. Butt Hinges: Comply with BHMA A156.1 and BHMA A156.7 for templated hinges.
  - 2. Continuous Hinges: Comply with BHMA A156.26, Grade 1.
- E. Types:
  - 1. Butt Hinges: Include full mortise hinges.
  - 2. Continuous Hinges: Include geared hinges.
- F. Options: As applicable to each item specified.
- G. Quantities:
  - 1. Butt Hinges: Three (3) hinges per leaves up to 90 inches in height. Add one (1) for each additional 30 inches in height or fraction thereof.
    - a. Hinge weight and size unless otherwise indicated in hardware sets:
      - 1) For doors up to 36 inches wide and up to 1-3/4 inches thick provide hinges with a minimum thickness of 0.134 inch and a minimum of 4-1/2 inches in height.
      - 2) For doors from 36 inches wide up to 42 inches wide and up to 1-3/4 inches thick provide hinges with a minimum thickness of 0.145 inch and a minimum of 4-1/2 inches in height.
      - 3) For doors from 42 inches wide up to 48 inches wide and up to 1-3/4 inches thick provide hinges with a minimum thickness of 0.180 inch and a minimum of 5 inches in height.
      - 4) For doors greater than 1-3/4 inches thick provide hinges with a minimum thickness of 0.180 inch and a minimum of 5 inches in height.
  - 2. Continuous Hinges: One per door leaf.
- H. Applications: At swinging doors.
  - 1. Provide non-removable pins at out-swinging doors with locking hardware and all exterior doors.
- I. Products:
  - 1. Butt Hinges:
    - a. Concealed bearing, five (5) knuckle.
    - b. Plain Bearing, Five (5) Knuckle.
  - 2. Continuous Hinges:
    - a. Aluminum geared hinges.

### 2.04 BOLTS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Trimco: [www.trimcohardware.com/#sle](http://www.trimcohardware.com/#sle).
- B. Properties:
  - 1. Flush Bolts:
    - a. Pairs of Swing Doors: At inactive leaves, provide flush bolts of type as required to comply with code.
    - b. Manual Flush Bolts: Manually latching upon closing of door leaf.
      - 1) Bolt Throw: 3/4 inch, minimum.
- C. Options:
  - 1. Extension Bolts: In leading edge of door, one bolt into floor, one bolt into top of frame.
- D. Products:
  - 1. Manual flush bolts.

### 2.05 EXIT DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. BEST, dormakaba Group: [www.bestaccess.com/#sle](http://www.bestaccess.com/#sle).
  - 2. dormakaba commercial, dormakaba Group: [www.dormakaba.com/us-en/#sle](http://www.dormakaba.com/us-en/#sle).
- B. Properties:
  - 1. Touchpads: "T" style metal touchpads and rail assemblies with matching chassis covers end caps.
  - 2. Latch Bolts: Stainless steel deadlocking with 3/4 inch projection using latch bolt.
  - 3. Cylinder: Include where cylinder dogging or locking trim is indicated.
  - 4. Strike as recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.
  - 5. Sound dampening on touch bar.
  - 6. Dogging:
    - a. Non-Fire-Resistance-Rated Devices: Cylinder \_\_\_\_ dogging.
    - b. Fire-Resistance-Rated Devices: Manual dogging not permitted.

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple Schools

7. Touch bar assembly on wide style exit devices to have a 1/4 inch clearance to allow for vision frames.
  8. All exposed exit device components to be of architectural metals and "true" architectural finishes.
  9. Handing: Field-reversible.
  10. Fasteners on Back Side of Device Channel: Concealed - exposed fasteners not allowed.
  11. Vertical Latch Assemblies' Operation: Gravity, without use of springs.
- C. Grades: Complying with BHMA A156.3, Grade 1.
- D. Standards Compliance:
1. Provide UL (DIR) listed exit device assemblies for fire-resistance-rated doors.
  2. Comply with UL 10C.
- E. Code Compliance: As required by authorities having jurisdiction in the State in which the Project is located.
- F. Options:
1. MLR: Motorized latch retraction.
- G. Products:
1. 2000.

### 2.06 REMOVABLE MULLIONS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. BEST, dormakaba Group: [www.bestaccess.com/#sle](http://www.bestaccess.com/#sle).
- B. Properties:
1. Rectangular shape 3 inches by 2 inches tubes with minimum 1/8 inch wall thickness.
  2. Furnished by the same manufacturer as exit devices.
  3. Spacers: Provide as required for proper installation, based on frame profile and dimensions.
- C. Grades: Complying with BHMA A156.3.
- D. Materials: Manufacturer's standard for items specified.
1. Top and Bottom Brackets: Investment-cast steel.
- E. Options:
1. Furnish Keyed Removable "KR" feature and corresponding cylinders as specified.
    - a. Mullions capable of being installed without physical key present.
    - b. Physical key required to operate.
- F. Applications: As indicated on drawings and in Door Hardware Schedule.
- G. Products:
1. 822 Series.

### 2.07 LOCK CYLINDERS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. BEST, dormakaba Group: [www.bestaccess.com/#sle](http://www.bestaccess.com/#sle).
  2. dormakaba; dormakaba Group: [www.dormakaba.com/us-en/#sle](http://www.dormakaba.com/us-en/#sle).
- B. Properties:
1. Lock Cylinders: Provide key access on outside of each lock, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Provide cylinders from same manufacturer as locking device.
    - b. Provide cams and/or tailpieces as required for locking devices.
    - c. Provide cylinders with appropriate format interchangeable cores where indicated.
- C. Material:
1. Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant brass alloy.
- D. Products:
1. Rim/mortise.

### 2.08 MORTISE LOCKS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. BEST, dormakaba Group: [www.bestaccess.com/#sle](http://www.bestaccess.com/#sle).
  2. dormakaba; dormakaba Group: [www.dormakaba.com/us-en/#sle](http://www.dormakaba.com/us-en/#sle).
- B. Properties:

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple Schools

1. Mechanical Locks: Manufacturer's standard.
  - a. Fitting modified ANSI A115.1 door preparation.
  - b. Door Thickness Coordination Fitting 1-3/4 inch to 2-1/4 inch thick doors.
  - c. Latch: Solid, one-piece, anti-friction, self-lubricating stainless steel.
    - 1) Latchbolt Throw: 3/4 inch, minimum.
  - d. Auxiliary Deadlatch: One piece stainless steel, permanently lubricated.
  - e. Backset: 2-3/4 inch.
  - f. Lever Trim:
    - 1) Functionality: Allow the lever handle to move up to 45 degrees from horizontal position prior to engaging the latch bolt assembly.
    - 2) Strength: Locksets outside locked lever designed to withstand minimum 1,400 inch-lbs of torque. In excess of that, a replaceable part will shear. Key from outside and/or inside lever will still operate lockset.
    - 3) Spindle: Designed to prevent forced entry from attacking of lever.
    - 4) Independent spring mechanism for each lever.
      - (a) Trim to be self-aligning and thru bolted.
2. Electrified Locks: Same properties as standard locks, and as follows:
  - a. Voltage: 24 VDC.
  - b. Function: Electrically locked (Fail Safe) or unlocked (Fail Secure), as indicated for each lock in Door Hardware Schedule.
- C. Finishes: See Door Hardware Schedule.
  1. Core Faces: Match finish of lockset.
- D. Grades:
- E. Options:
- F. Products: Mortise locks, including standard and electrified types.
  1. 40H.

### 2.09 LOCKDOWN SYSTEM AND LOCKS

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. BEST, dormakaba Group: [www.bestaccess.com/#sle](http://www.bestaccess.com/#sle).
- B. Properties:
  1. Locking Devices: Modified to be operable in lockdown mode upon actuation by lockdown system.
    - a. Fire-Resistance-Rated Doors Compatibility: Approved for use on doors with fire-resistance rating up to 3 hours.
    - b. Locking Device Electronics: Housed on inside of room/egress side of door and powered by 4 AA batteries.
      - 1) Connections: Automatically made when enclosure is installed on bracket.
      - 2) Electronics Enclosure: Secured with two security torx screws.
  2. Classroom Lockdown System:
    - a. Software: Proprietary software, designed to be accessed securely by Owner's authorized personnel.
      - 1) Locking Device Activation:
        - (a) Key fob.
        - (b) Switch tied into system repeater.
        - (c) Remote, using system software.
      - 2) Locking Device Operation:
        - (a) Normal Mode: Traditional 'Classroom' function.
        - (b) Lockdown Mode: Outside lever made rigid; key retracts latchbolt. Free egress to be provided at all times.(Storeroom function).
    - b. Hardware Components: Lockdown activation fob(s), repeater(s), gateway(s), and power supplies.
      - 1) Wireless Communication Protocol: 900 MHz.
      - 2) Gateway: Manufacturer's standard, powered using 12 VDC by included wall power supply unit.
        - (a) Regulatory Compliance: UL 60950-1 and FCC Part 15.
        - (b) Typical Connection Range: 400 feet indoors.
        - (c) Connection: Standard ethernet wiring.
        - (d) Functionality: To be functional without internet connection.

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple Schools

- (e) Expandability: Pairing with up to 7 repeaters.
  - 3) Repeaters: Manufacturer's standard, powered using 12 VDC by included wall power supply unit.
    - (a) Complying with UL 60950-1.
    - (b) Typical Connection Range: 400 feet indoors.
    - (c) Expandability: Up to 7 repeaters.
      - (1) Repeaters configurable as relays.
    - (d) Inputs: Two (2) dry contact switches configurable to initiate or cancel lockdown.
    - (e) Outputs: Two (2) form C relays; 24V/1A.
  - 4) Fobs: Polycarbonate battery powered device with removable cover.
    - (a) Regulatory compliance: FCC Part 15 B and C.
    - (b) Typical Connection Range: [CHOICE TEXT] indoors.
    - (c) Activation Buttons: One button for lockdown and a second smaller button for testing.
    - (d) Scalability: Functionality for a single door, a set of doors, or the entire system.
    - (e) Power: Standard 3VCR2450 battery.
  - 5) Power supplies: Manufacturer's standard.
- C. Products:
  - 1. 40HX.
  - 2. SHELTER software and system hardware.

### 2.10 DOOR PULLS AND PUSH PLATES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Trimco: [www.trimcohardware.com/#sle](http://www.trimcohardware.com/#sle).
- B. Properties:
  - 1. Pull Type: Straight, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Push Plate Type: Flat, with square corners, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Grades: Comply with BHMA A156.6.
- D. Material: Stainless steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Products:
  - 1. Push-Pull Plates.

### 2.11 CLOSERS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. BEST, dormakaba Group [www.bestaccess.com/#sle](http://www.bestaccess.com/#sle).
  - 2. dormakaba; dormakaba Group: [www.dormakaba.com/us-en/#sle](http://www.dormakaba.com/us-en/#sle).
  - 3. dormakaba commercial, dormakaba Group: [www.dormakaba.com/us-en/#sle](http://www.dormakaba.com/us-en/#sle).
- B. Properties:
  - 1. Surface Mounted Closers: Manufacturer's standard.
    - a. Construction: Cast iron.
    - b. Covers:
      - 1) Type: Standard for product selected.
        - (a) Full.
      - 2) Material: Plastic.
      - 3) Finish: Painted.
- C. Grades:
  - 1. Closers: Comply with BHMA A156.4, Grade 1.
    - a. Underwriters Laboratories Compliance:
    - b. Testing Standards Compliance: Meeting requirements of UL 10C for positive pressure.
- D. Code Compliance: As required by authorities having jurisdiction in the State in which the Project is located.
- E. Types:
  - 1. Rack-and-pinion, surface-mounted. 1-1/2 inches minimum bore.
- F. Installation:
  - 1. Mounting: Includes surface mounted installations.

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple Schools

2. Mount closers on non-public side of door and stair side of stair doors unless otherwise noted in hardware sets.
  3. At outswinging exterior doors, mount closer on interior side of door.
  4. Provide adapter plates, shim spacers, and blade stop spacers as required by frame and door conditions.
  5. Where an overlapping astragal is included on pairs of swinging doors, provide coordinator to ensure door leaves close in proper order.
- G. Products:
1. Surface Mounted:
    - a. QDC100.

### 2.12 SWINGING DOOR OPERATORS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. dormakaba; dormakaba Group: [www.dormakaba.com/us-en/#sle](http://www.dormakaba.com/us-en/#sle).
- B. Properties:
1. Where automatic operators are scheduled, provide complete assemblies of controls, switches, power supplies, relays, and parts/material recommended and approved by the manufacturer of the automatic operator for each individual leaf. Control both doors with actuators simultaneously at pairs. Locate actuators, key switches, and other controls as directed by Architect.
  2. Power-Assist Low Energy Operators:
    - a. Construction: Manufacturer's standard units with full covers.
    - b. Door Operation Limits:
      - 1) Weight: 220 lbs.
      - 2) Width: 48 inches.
      - 3) Temperature Range: 5 to 122 degrees F.
    - c. Function Adjustability: Selectable low-energy or power-assist applications. Low-energy function to cycle the door open as programmed. Power-assist function for decreased opening force when manually operated. Operator to have a programmable push-and-go functionality.
    - d. Auxiliary Power Supply: 24VDC, 1.5A and form C relay contact for controlling fail safe/secure locking devices 50VAC or DC at 1A max.
    - e. Programmable Operation: Include sweep speed, latch speed, and backcheck cushioning.
    - f. Power-Open Functions: Include delay time, opening time, opening force, and opening angle.
      - 1) Angle and door width selector.
      - 2) Power boost feature.
    - g. On-board cycle counter.
    - h. Selectable jumper to accommodate push or pull side applications.
    - i. On/off strike delay when the operator must delay while a locking device releases.
    - j. Selectable on/off obstacle detection on closing.
  3. Actuators:
    - a. Hard-Wired Units: Wall-mounted and tamper-resistant.
      - 1) Normally open switch.
      - 2) Construction: Stainless-steel face plates, with heavy duty injection molded black ABS mounting boxes.
      - 3) Face Plate: Include manufacturer's standard international accessibility symbol and text "Press to Open".
- C. Grades:
1. Comply with BHMA A156.19.
  2. Underwriters Laboratories Compliance:
    - a. Product Listing: UL (DIR) and ULC for use on fire-resistance-rated doors.
    - b. United States: UL 325.
- D. Types:
1. Power-Assist Low-Energy Operators:
- E. Options: As applicable to each item specified.
1. Delayed action, adjustable with an independent valve.
  2. Advanced backcheck.
  3. Heavy-duty arms and knuckles/elbows.
  4. Adjustable, for force or angle of opening hold open.
  5. Cushion limit stay.



## Eastchester UFSD Multiple Schools

- F. Installation:
  - 1. Where automatic operators are scheduled, provide complete assemblies of controls, switches, power supplies, relays, and parts/material recommended and approved by the manufacturer of the automatic operator for each individual leaf. Configure actuators to control both doors simultaneously at pairs. Locate the actuators, key switches, and other controls as directed by Architect.
  - 2. Operator Actuators: Include required back boxes, mounting rings, accessories as needed for fixed unit installation.
- G. Products:
  - 1. ED100

### 2.13 OVERHEAD STOPS AND HOLDERS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. dormakaba; dormakaba Group: [www.dormakaba.com/us-en/#sle](http://www.dormakaba.com/us-en/#sle).
- B. Properties:
- C. Sizes: Manufacturer's standard for the application.
- D. Finishes:
  - 1. Arms and Brackets: Zinc-plated.
- E. Grades: As applicable to item specified.
  - 1. Comply with BHMA A156.8, Grade 1.
- F. Material: Base metal as indicated for each item by BHMA material and finish designation.
  - 1. Track Channel: Extruded aluminum alloy.
  - 2. Slide Block: Machined from solid brass alloy.
- G. Types:
  - 1. Surface-applied.
- H. Products:
  - 1. Surface Overhead Stops and Holders:
    - a. 700 Standard Duty.

### 2.14 PROTECTION PLATES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Trimco: [www.trimcohardware.com/#sle](http://www.trimcohardware.com/#sle).
  - 2. Rockwood.
- B. Properties:
  - 1. Plates:
    - a. Kick Plates: Provide along bottom edge of push side of every wood door with closer, except aluminum storefront and glass entry doors, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Edges: Beveled, on four (4) unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Grades: Comply with BHMA A156.6.
- D. Material: As indicated for each item by BHMA material and finish designation.
  - 1. Metal Properties: Stainless steel.
- E. Installation:
  - 1. Fasteners: Countersunk screw fasteners

### 2.15 STOPS AND HOLDERS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Trimco: [www.trimcohardware.com/#sle](http://www.trimcohardware.com/#sle).
- B. General: Provide overhead stop/holder when wall or floor stop is not feasible.
- C. Grades:
  - 1. Door Holders, Wall Bumpers, and Floor Stops: Comply with BHMA A156.16 and Resilient Material Retention Test as described in this standard.
- D. Material: Base metal as indicated for each item by BHMA material and finish designation.
- E. Types:
  - 1. Wall Bumpers: Bumper, concave, wall stop.
  - 2. Floor Stops: Provide with bumper floor stop.

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple Schools

- F. Installation:
  - 1. Non-Masonry Walls: Confirm adequate wall reinforcement has been installed to allow lasting installation of wall bumpers.

### 2.16 ELECTROMAGNETIC DOOR HOLDERS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. dormakaba; dormakaba Group: [www.dormakaba.com/us-en/#sle](http://www.dormakaba.com/us-en/#sle).
- B. Properties:
  - 1. Holding Force, Standard Duty: 40 lbs-force, minimum.
  - 2. Power Loss Status: Fail safe; door released to close.
  - 3. Life Safety Interface: With fire detectors, fire-alarm system, and smoke detectors for fire-resistance-rated door assemblies.
- C. Grades: Comply with BHMA A156.15.
- D. Types: Wall mounted, single unit, standard duty, with strike plate attached to door.
- E. Options: As applicable to each item specified.
  - 1. Voltage: 24 VDC.
- F. Products:
  - 1. EM Series.

### 2.17 THRESHOLDS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. National Guard Products, Inc: [www.ngpinc.com/#sle](http://www.ngpinc.com/#sle).
- B. Properties:
  - 1. Threshold Surface: Fluted horizontal grooves across full width.
- C. Grades: Thresholds: Comply with BHMA A156.21.
- D. Types: As applicable to project conditions. Provide barrier-free type at every location where specified.

### 2.18 WEATHERSTRIPPING AND GASKETING

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. National Guard Products, Inc: [www.ngpinc.com/#sle](http://www.ngpinc.com/#sle).
- B. Grades: Comply with BHMA A156.22.
- C. Products:
  - 1. Weatherstripping: See Door Hardware Schedule.
  - 2. Door Bottom Seals:
    - a. Door Sweeps: See Door Hardware Schedule.
    - b. Door Shoes: See Door Hardware Schedule.

### 2.19 MISCELLANEOUS ITEMS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Trimco: [www.trimcohardware.com/#sle](http://www.trimcohardware.com/#sle).
- B. Properties:
  - 1. Silencers: Provide at equal locations on door frame to mute sound of door's impact upon closing.
    - a. Single Door: Provide three on strike jamb of frame.
    - b. Pair of Doors: Provide two on head of frame, one for each door at latch side.
    - c. Material: Rubber, gray color.
  - 2. Viewers: Provide at inside of door at eye level to see who is on outside of door, with integral door knocker.
    - a. Material: Brass.

### 2.20 ELECTRIFIED HARDWARE

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. dormakaba; dormakaba Group: [www.dormakaba.com/us-en/#sle](http://www.dormakaba.com/us-en/#sle).
- B. Properties:
  - 1. Wire Harnesses: Of sufficient length, with quick connectors.
    - a. Wire Harness End Connection to Power Supply or Junction Box: One end with bare leads.
- C. Products:

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple Schools

1. Power Supplies:
  - a. RPSMLR2.
  - b. DKPS Series.
2. Wire Harnesses:
  - a. BEST wire harnesses.

### 2.21 KEYS AND CORES

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. BEST, dormakaba Group: [www.bestaccess.com/#sle](http://www.bestaccess.com/#sle).
  2. dormakaba; dormakaba Group: [www.dormakaba.com/us-en/#sle](http://www.dormakaba.com/us-en/#sle).
- B. Properties: Complying with guidelines of BHMA A156.28.
  1. Provide small format interchangeable core.
  2. Provide keying information in compliance with DHI (KSN) standards.
  3. Keying Schedule: Arrange for a keying meeting, with Architect, Owner and hardware supplier, and other involved parties to ensure locksets and locking hardware, are functionally correct and keying complies with project requirements.
  4. Keying: Master keyed.
  5. Include construction keying and control keying with removable core cylinders.
  6. Do not make brass construction cores and construction control and operating keys a part of Owner's permanent keying system, nor furnish in the same keyway (or key section) as Owner, permanent keying system.
  7. Key to new keying system.
  8. Supply keys in following quantities:
    - a. Grand Master Keys: 1 each.
    - b. Master Keys: 4 each.
    - c. Construction Master Keys: 6 each.
    - d. Construction Keys: 15 each.
    - e. Construction Control Keys: 2 each.
    - f. Control Keys if New System: 2 each.
    - g. Extra Cylinder Cores: 10 each.
    - h. Change Keys: 2 each for each keyed core.
  9. Provide key collection envelopes, receipt cards, and index cards in quantity suitable to manage number of keys.
  10. Deliver keys with identifying tags to Owner by security shipment direct from manufacturer.
  11. Permanent Keys and Cores: Stamped with applicable key marking for identification. Do not include actual key cuts within visual key control marks or codes. Stamp permanent keys "Do Not Duplicate."
  12. Include installation of permanent cores and return construction cores to hardware supplier. Construction cores and keys to remain property of hardware supplier.

### 2.22 KEY CABINETS

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Lund Equipment Company, Inc: [www.lundkey.com/#sle](http://www.lundkey.com/#sle).
  2. Telkee: [www.telkee.com/#sle](http://www.telkee.com/#sle).
- B. Properties:
  1. Key Management System: For each keyed lock on project, provide one set of consecutively numbered duplicate key tags with hanging hole and snap catch.
  2. Security Key Tags: For each keyed lock on project, provide one set of matching key tags for permanent attachment to one key of each set.
  3. Mounting: Wall surface mounted.
  4. Capacity: Actual quantity of keys, plus 25 percent additional capacity.
- C. Finishes: Baked enamel, manufacturer's standard color.

### 2.23 FIRE DEPARTMENT LOCK-BOXES

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Knox Company; Knox-Box Rapid Entry System, [www.knoxbox.com/#sle](http://www.knoxbox.com/#sle).
- B. Properties:
  1. Heavy-duty, surface mounted, solid steel box with hinged door and interior gasket seal; single drill-resistant lock with dust covers.

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple Schools

- C. Finishes: Manufacturer's standard coating.
  - 1. Color: Manufacturer's standard black.
- D. Material: Steel.

### 2.24 FINISHES

- A. Finishes: Provide door hardware of same finish, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Finish: 630; satin stainless steel, with stainless steel 3000 series base material (former US equivalent 32D), 652; satin chromium plated over nickel, with steel base material (former US equivalent 26D), and 689; aluminum painted, with any base material (former US equivalent US28); BHMA A156.18.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that doors and frames are ready to receive this work; labeled, fire-rated doors and frames are properly installed, and dimensions are as indicated on shop drawings.
- B. Correct all defects prior to proceeding with installation.
- C. Verify that electric power is available to power operated devices and of correct characteristics.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install hardware in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and applicable codes.
- B. Install hardware using the manufacturer's fasteners provided. Drill and tap all screw holes located in metallic materials. Do not use "Riv-Nuts" or similar products.
- C. Install hardware on fire-rated doors and frames in accordance with applicable codes and NFPA 80.
- D. Install hardware for smoke and draft control doors in accordance with NFPA 105.
- E. Use templates provided by hardware item manufacturer.
- F. Do not install surface mounted items until application of finishes to substrate are fully completed.
- G. Wash down masonry walls and complete painting or staining of doors and frames.
- H. Complete finish flooring prior to installation of thresholds.
- I. Door Hardware Mounting Heights: Distance from finished floor to center line of hardware item. As indicated in following list, unless noted otherwise in Door Hardware Schedule or on drawings.
  - 1. For Steel Doors and Frames: Install in compliance with DHI (LOCS) recommendations.
  - 2. For Wood Doors: Install in compliance with DHI WDHS.3 recommendations.
  - 3. Mounting heights in compliance with operational and ADA Standards:
- J. Set exterior door thresholds with full-width bead of elastomeric sealant at each point of contact with floor providing a continuous weather seal, anchor thresholds with stainless steel countersunk screws.
- K. Include in installation for existing doors and frames any necessary field modification and field preparation of doors and frames for new hardware. Provide necessary fillers, reinforcements, and fasteners for mounting new hardware and to cover existing door and frame preparations.

### 3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform field inspection and testing under provisions of Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements.
- B. Provide an Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) to inspect installation and certify that hardware and installation has been furnished and installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and as specified.

### 3.04 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust work under provisions of Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements.

### 3.05 CLEANING

- A. Clean finished hardware in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions after final adjustments have been made.
- B. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by hardware installation activities.
- C. Replace items that cannot be cleaned to manufacturer's level of finish quality at no additional cost.
- D. See Section 01 74 19 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal, for additional requirements.

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple Schools

### 3.06 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finished Work under provisions of Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements.
- B. Do not permit adjacent work to damage hardware or finish.

## Manufacturer List

Code	Name
BE	Best Access Systems
BY	By Related Section
DM	Dorma Door Controls
ENER	EnerSys
NA	National Guard
PR	BEST Precision Exit Devices
RC	RCI
SDCC	Security Door Controls
SH	dormakaba Commercial Hardware
ST	BEST Hinges and Sliding
TR	Trimco

## Option List

Code	Description
B4E-HEAVY-KP	BEVELED 4 EDGES - KICK PLATES
BF	BARRIER FREE
BYP	CONCEALED SWITCH TO BYPASS HO FUNCTION
C	QUICK CONNECT WIRING OPTION
CA-03	CYLINDER ATTACHMENT KIT (RIM/SVR DEVICE)
CD	CYLINDER DOGGING
CORMAX	
PATENTED KEYING	CORMAX PATENTED KEYING
CSK	COUNTER SINKING OF KICK AND MOP PLATES
ER 2	2" EXTENSION ROD - 689 ONLY
FL	FIRE EXIT HARDWARE
FSE	FAIL SECURE
LBR	LESS BOTTOM ROD
MCS	MULLION CAP SPACER (OTHER FINISHES)
MLR	MOTORIZED LATCH RETRACTION
P	FULL SIZE PLASTIC COVER
S1	ANSI - DEADBOLT STRIKE
TS	TOUCHBAR MONITORING SWITCH
VIB	DOUBLE VISUAL INDICATOR OPTION

## Finish List

<b>Code</b>	<b>Description</b>
626	Satin Chromium Plated
630	Satin Stainless Steel
689	Aluminum Painted
AL	Aluminum
GREY	Grey
PC	Prime Coat
Silver	Silver

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

### Hardware Sets

#### Set #01 - EXIT DEVICE PASSAGE

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Rim Exit Device			
	Passage FR	FL 2114 X 4914A	630	PR
1	Magnetic Hold Open	EM 509 x ER EXTENSION TO SUIT	689	DM
1	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

#### NOTE:

1. FIRE RATED EXIT DEVICE TO BE HELD OPEN BY MAGNETIC HOLD OPEN.
2. MAGNETIC HOLD OPEN TO BE WIRED DIRECTLY THE FIRE ALARM SYSTEM'
3. IN A FIRE ALARM THE MAGNETIC HOLD OPEN WILL RELEASE AND THE DOORS WILL CLOSE AND LATCH. (NON LOCKING)

-----

#### NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.

#### Set #01.1 - EXIT DEVICE PASSAGE

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Rim Exit Device			
	Passage FR	FL 2114 X 4914A	630	PR
1	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

#### NOTE:

#### NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.

#### Set #01.1.NEW - EXIT DEVICE PASSAGE

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED (EPT PREP WHERE NEEDED)	AL	ST
1	Rim Exit Device Passage	FL 2114 X 4914A	630	PR

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

1	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

NOTE:

NEW DOOR / NEW FRAME

GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING

### Set #01.2 - EXIT DEVICE PASSAGE

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Rim Exit Device			
	Passage FR	FL 2114 X 4914A	630	PR
1	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

NOTE:

NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.

### Set #01.2.NEW - EXIT DEVICE PASSAGE

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Rim Exit Device			
	Passage FR	FL 2114 X 4914A	630	PR
1	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

NOTE:

NEW DOOR X NEW FRAME

### Set #01.3 - EXIT DEVICE PASSAGE

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED (EPT PREP WHERE NEEDED)	AL	ST
1	Rim Exit Device Passage	FL 2114 X 4914A	630	PR



## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

1	Magnetic Hold Open	EM 509 x ER EXTENSION TO SUIT	689	DM
1	Door Closer	QDC115 BFP PUSH SIDE	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Power Supply	POWER SUPPLY BY OTHERS		BY
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY
	NOTE:			

### NOTE:

1. FIRE RATED EXIT DEVICE TO BE HELD OPEN BY MAGNETIC HOLD OPEN.
2. MAGNETIC HOLD OPEN TO BE WIRED DIRECTLY THE FIRE ALARM SYSTEM'
3. IN A FIRE ALARM THE MAGNETIC HOLD OPEN WILL RELEASE AND THE DOORS WILL CLOSE AND LATCH. (NON LOCKING)

-----

### NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.

## Set #01.3.NEW - EXIT DEVICE PASSAGE

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Rim Exit Device Passage	FL 2114 X 4914A	630	PR
1	Magnetic Hold Open	EM 509 x ER EXTENSION TO SUIT	689	DM
1	Door Closer	QDC115 BFP PUSH SIDE	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Power Supply	POWER SUPPLY BY OTHERS		BY
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

### NOTE:

NEW DOOR X NEW FRAME

### NOTE:

1. FIRE RATED EXIT DEVICE TO BE HELD OPEN BY MAGNETIC HOLD OPEN.
2. MAGNETIC HOLD OPEN TO BE WIRED DIRECTLY THE FIRE ALARM SYSTEM'
3. IN A FIRE ALARM THE MAGNETIC HOLD OPEN WILL RELEASE AND THE DOORS WILL CLOSE AND LATCH. (NON LOCKING)

## Set #01.NEW - EXIT DEVICE PASSAGE

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Rim Exit Device			
	Passage FR	FL 2114 X 4914A	630	PR
1	Magnetic Hold Open	EM 509 x ER EXTENSION TO SUIT	689	DM

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

1	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

### 1. NEW DOOR X NEW FRAME

#### NOTE:

1. FIRE RATED EXIT DEVICE TO BE HELD OPEN BY MAGNETIC HOLD OPEN.
2. MAGNETIC HOLD OPEN TO BE WIRED DIRECTLY THE FIRE ALARM SYSTEM'
3. IN A FIRE ALARM THE MAGNETIC HOLD OPEN WILL RELEASE AND THE DOORS WILL CLOSE AND LATCH. (NON LOCKING)

### Set #02 - OFFICE

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Office Lockset	45H-7A15H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC115 BFP PUSH SIDE	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY
3	Silencer	1229A	GREY	TR

#### NOTE:

#### NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.

### Set #02.1 - OFFICE

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Office Function Lockset	45H-7A15H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH
1	Drop Plate Kit	QDC100 DROP PLATE KIT 'TO SUIT'	689	SH
1	Overhead Stop	701 S	626	DM
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Mounting Bracket	3095/3096 AS REQUIRED	Silver	TR
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY
3	Silencer	1229A	GREY	TR

### Set #02.2 - OFFICE

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED		
---	------------------	----------------------------	--	--

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

		(EPT PREP WHERE NEEDED)	AL	ST
1	Office Function Lockset	45H-7A15H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY
3	Silencer	1229A	GREY	TR

### NOTE:

NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.

### Set #03 - STOREROOM

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Storeroom Lockset	45H-7D15H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH
1	Drop Plate Kit	QDC100 DROP PLATE KIT 'TO SUIT'	689	SH
1	Overhead Stop	701 S	626	DM
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY
3	Silencer	1229A	GREY	TR

### NOTE:

1. PROVIDE MOUNTING PLATE, TEMPLATE AND ALL NEEDED HARDWARE TO AVOID MOUNTING CONFLICTS WITH CLOSER AND OVERHEAD STOP.

NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.

### Set #03.1 - STOREROOM

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Storeroom Lockset	45H-7D15H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY
3	Silencer	1229A	GREY	TR

NOTE:

NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.

### Set #03.2 - STOREROOM

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Storeroom Lockset	45H-7D15H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH
1	Drop Plate Kit	QDC100 DROP PLATE KIT 'TO SUIT'	689	SH
1	Overhead Stop	701 S	626	DM
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY
3	Silencer	1229A	GREY	TR

NOTE:

1. GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.

### Set #03.2.NEW - STOREROOM

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED (EPT PREP WHERE NEEDED)	AL	ST
1	Storeroom Function Lockset	45H-7D15H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY
3	Silencer	1229A	GREY	TR

### Set #03.3 - STOREROOM

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Storeroom Lockset	45H-7D15H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC115 BFP PUSH SIDE	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY
3	Silencer	1229A	GREY	TR

### Set #03.3.NEW - STOREROOM

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED (EPT PREP WHERE NEEDED)	AL	ST
1	Storeroom Function			
	Lockset	45H-7D15H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC115 BFP PUSH SIDE	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY
3	Silencer	1229A	GREY	TR

NOTE:

NEW DOOR X NEW FRAME

### Set #03.NEW - STOREROOM

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED (EPT PREP WHERE NEEDED)	AL	ST
1	Storeroom Function			
2	Lockset	45H-7D15H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH
1	Drop Plate Kit	QDC100 DROP PLATE KIT 'TO SUIT'	689	SH
1	Overhead Stop	701 S	626	DM
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY
3	Silencer	1229A	GREY	TR

### Set #04 - MULTI USE RESTROOM PASSAGE

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Passage Set	45H-0N15H S1	626	BE
1	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Dome Stop	1211	626	TR

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

3	Silencer	1229A	GREY	TR
---	----------	-------	------	----

NOTE:

NOTE:

1. MULTI USE FIRE RATED BATHROOM - PASSAGE FUNCTION

NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.

### Set #04.1 - MULTI USE RESTROOM PASSAGE

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Passage Set	45H-0N15H S1	626	BE
1	Door Closer	QDC115 BFP PUSH SIDE	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
3	Silencer	1229A	GREY	TR

NOTE:

NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.

### Set #04.2 - MULTI USE RESTROOM PASSAGE

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Passage Set	45H-0N15H S1	626	BE
1	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
3	Silencer	1229A	GREY	TR

NOTE:

1. MULTI USE FIRE RATED BATHROOM - PASSAGE FUNCTION

NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.

### Set #04.3 - MULTI USE RESTROOM PASSAGE

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED (EPT PREP WHERE NEEDED)	AL	ST
1	Passage Set	45H-0N15H S1	626	BE
1	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

1	Drop Plate Kit	QDC100 DROP PLATE KIT 'TO SUIT'	689	SH
1	Overhead Stop	701 S	626	DM
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Dome Stop	1211	626	TR
3	Silencer	1229A	GREY	TR

### NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.

### Set #04.3.NEW - MULTI USE RESTROOM PASSAGE

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED (EPT PREP WHERE NEEDED)	AL	ST
1	Passage Set	45H-0N15H S1	626	BE
1	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH
1	Drop Plate Kit	QDC100 DROP PLATE KIT 'TO SUIT'	689	SH
1	Overhead Stop	701 S	626	DM
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Dome Stop	1211	626	TR
3	Silencer	1229A	GREY	TR

### NOTE:

NEW DOOR X NEW FRAME

### Set #05 - SINGLE USE BATHROOM

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Privacy Lockset			
	Visual Ind	45H-7T15H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1 VIB	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY
3	Silencer	1229A	GREY	TR

### NOTE:

### NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

### Set #05.1 - SINGLE USE BATHROOM

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Privacy Lockset			
	Visual Ind	45H-7T15H PATD CORMAX		
		PATENTED KEYING S1 VIB	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC115 BFP PUSH SIDE	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY
3	Silencer	1229A	GREY	TR

NOTE:

NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.

### Set #05.2 - SINGLE USE BATHROOM

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Privacy Lockset			
	Visual Ind	45H-7T15H PATD CORMAX		
		PATENTED KEYING S1 VIB	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC115 BFP PUSH SIDE	689	SH
1	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY
3	Silencer	1229A	GREY	TR

### Set #05.2.NEW - SINGLE USE BATHROOM

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED (EPT PREP WHERE NEEDED)	AL	
	ST			
1	Lockset	45H-7T15H PATD S1 VIB	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY
3	Silencer	1229A	GREY	TR



## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

NOTE:  
NEW DOOR X NEW FRAME

### Set #05.3 - SINGLE USE BATHROOM

1	Continuous Hinge ST	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED (EPT PREP WHERE NEEDED)		AL
1	Lockset	45H-7T15H PATD S1 VIB	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH
1	Drop Plate Kit	QDC100 DROP PLATE KIT 'TO SUIT'	689	SH
1	Overhead Stop	701 S	626	DM
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY
3	Silencer	1229A	GREY	TR

### Set #05.3.NEW - SINGLE USE BATHROOM

1	Continuous Hinge ST	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED (EPT PREP WHERE NEEDED)		AL
1	Lockset	45H-7T15H PATD S1 VIB	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH
1	Drop Plate Kit	QDC100 DROP PLATE KIT 'TO SUIT'	689	SH
1	Overhead Stop	701 S	626	DM
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY
3	Silencer	1229A	GREY	TR

### Set #05.NEW - SINGLE USE BATHROOM

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED (EPT PREP WHERE NEEDED)	AL	ST
1	Lockset	45H-7T15H PATD S1 VIB	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY
3	Silencer	1229A	GREY	TR

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

### Set #06 - PAIR, STOREROOM LOCK

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Dust Proof Strike	3911	626	TR
1	Automatic Flush Bolt	3815L X 3815L X 3850	626	TR
1	Storeroom Lockset	45H-7D15H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Coordinator	3094B SERIES x LENGTH AS REQUIRED	PC	TR
2	Door Closer	QDC115 BFP PUSH SIDE	689	SH
2	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
2	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mounting Bracket	3095/3096 AS REQUIRED	Silver	TR
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

**NOTE:**

NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.

### Set #06.1 - PAIR, STOREROOM LOCK

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Dust Proof Strike	3911	626	TR
1	Automatic Flush Bolt	3815L X 3815L X 3850	626	TR
1	Storeroom Lockset	45H-7D15H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Coordinator	3094B SERIES x LENGTH AS REQUIRED	PC	TR
2	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH
2	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
2	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mounting Bracket	3095/3096 AS REQUIRED	Silver	TR
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

**NOTE:**

NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.

### Set #06.1.NEW - PAIR, STOREROOM LOCK

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Dust Proof Strike	3911	626	TR
1	Automatic Flush Bolt	3815L X 3815L X 3850	626	TR
1	Storeroom Lockset	45H-7D15H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1	626	BE

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Coordinator	3094B SERIES x LENGTH AS REQUIRED	PC	TR
2	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH
2	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
2	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mounting Bracket	3095/3096 AS REQUIRED	Silver	TR
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

NOTE:

NEW DOOR / NEW FRAME

### Set #07 - EXIT DEVICE PASSAGE

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
2	SVR, FR, Exit Passage, LBR		FL 2214 X 4914A	
LBR	630	PR		
2	Magnetic Hold Open	EM 509 x ER EXTENSION TO SUIT	689	DM
2	Door Closer	QDC115 BFP PUSH SIDE	689	SH
2	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
2	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Power Supply	POWER SUPPLY BY OTHERS		BY
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
2	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

NOTE:

NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.

1. DOOR TO BE ON MAGNETIC HOLD OPENS
2. TIED DIRECTLY TO THE FIRE ALARM SYSTEM
3. IN A FIRE ALARM DOORS TO CLOSE AND LATCH

### Set #07.1 - EXIT DEVICE PASSAGE

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED (EPT PREP WHERE NEEDED)	AL	ST
2	SVR, FR, Exit Passage	FL 2214 X 4914A	630	PR
2	Door Closer	QDC115 BFP PUSH SIDE	689	SH
2	Electromagnetic Closer	8916 EMR/PT BYP (VERIFY VOLTAGE REQ) PUSH SIDE	689	DM
2	Electromagnetic Closer	8916 EMF/PT BYP (VERIFY VOLTAGE REQ) PUSH SIDE	689	DM

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

2	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
2	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Power Supply	POWER SUPPLY BY OTHERS		BY
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
2	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

NOTE:

NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.

1.DOORS TO BE ON ELECTROMAGNETIC HOLD OPEN CLOSERS (PUSH SIDE MOUNTED)

2.TIED DIRECTLY TO THE FIRE ALARM SYSTEM

3.IN A FIRE ALARM DOORS TO CLOSE AND LATCH

### Set #07.1.NEW - EXIT DEVICE PASSAGE

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED (EPT PREP WHERE NEEDED)		AL
	ST			
2	SVR, FR, Exit Passage	FL 2214 X 4914A	630	PR
2	Magnetic Hold Open	EM 509 x ER EXTENSION TO SUIT	689	DM
2	Door Closer	QDC115 BFP PUSH SIDE	689	SH
2	Electromagnetic Closer	8916 EMR/PT BYP (VERIFY VOLTAGE REQ) PUSH SIDE		689
	DM			
2	Electromagnetic Closer	8916 EMF/PT BYP (VERIFY VOLTAGE REQ) PUSH SIDE		689
	DM			
2	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
2	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Power Supply	POWER SUPPLY BY OTHERS		BY
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
2	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

NOTE:

NEW DOOR X NEW FRAME

SURFACE VERTICAL ROD EXIT DEVICES PASSAGE FUNCTION

1. DOOR TO BE ON MAGNETIC HOLD OPENS

2. TIED DIRECTLY TO THE FIRE ALARM SYSTEM

3. IN A FIRE ALARM DOORS TO CLOSE AND LATCH

### Set #07.NEW - EXIT DEVICE PASSAGE

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
2	SVR, FR, Exit			
	Passage, LBR	FL 2214 X 4914A LBR	630	PR
2	Magnetic Hold Open	EM 509 x ER EXTENSION TO SUIT	689	DM

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

2	Door Closer	QDC115 BFP PUSH SIDE	689	SH
2	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
2	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Power Supply	POWER SUPPLY BY OTHERS		BY
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
2	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

NOTE:

NEW DOOR X NEW FRAME

1. DOOR TO BE ON MAGNETIC HOLD OPENS
2. TIED DIRECTLY TO THE FIRE ALARM SYSTEM
3. IN A FIRE ALARM DOORS TO CLOSE AND LATCH

### Set #08 - EXIT DEVICE STOREROOM

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
2	SVR EXIT DEVICE FR	FL 2203 X 4903A LBR	630	PR
4	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
4	Construction Core	7190224		BE
2	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
2	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
2	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
2	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
2	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
2	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

NOTE:

NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

1. GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.
- 2.EXIT DEVICES EQUIPPED WITH CYLINDER DOGGING
3. WHEN LATCHES ARE RETRACTED DOORS ARE PUSH PULL
4. WHEN LATCHES ARE ENGAGED NEED KEY TO ENTER
5. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS

### Set #08.NEW - EXIT DEVICE STOREROOM

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED (EPT PREP WHERE NEEDED)	AL	ST
2	EXIT, FR, SVR	FL 2203 X 4903D LBR	630	PR
4	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
4	Construction Core	7190224		BE
2	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
2	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
2	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
2	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

2	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
2	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

### Set #09.NEW - EXIT DEVICE PASSAGE

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Rim Exit Device Classroom		FL 2108 X 4908A	
	630	PR		
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
1	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

NOTE:

NEW DOOR X NEW FRAME

1. EXIT DEVICE CLASSROOM FUNCTION LEVER

### Set #10.NEW - EXIT DEVICE PR CR,OP EXTERIOR

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PR
1	Removable Mullion	KR822 MCS	689	PR
1	MLR Exit Device Rim EO	C MLR TS 2103	630	PR
1	MLR Exit Device Rim	C MLR TS 2103 CA-03	630	PR
2	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
2	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
1	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
2	Flush Door Pull	FLUSH DOOR PULLS BY FRP DOOR MFG	630	BY
2	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
2	Operator	ED100LE PUSH ARM	CL	DM
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1	Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PR
2	Actuator	910TC	32D	RC
2	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA
2	Door Sweep	200 NA SIZE TO SUIT		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY
2	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA

NOTE:

NEW DOOR / NEW FRAME

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

1. EXIT DEVICES EQUIPPED WITH MOTORIZED LATCH RETRACTION
2. CARD READER TO ALLOW AUTHORIZED ENTRY
3. ACTUATOR TO ENGAGE AUTO OPERATOR FOR ADA ACCESSIBILITY
4. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS
5. DOOR POSITION SWITCHES
6. IF NEW FRAME IS SPECIFIED PROVIDE EPT12C POWER TRANSFER (FACTORY PREP DOOR AND FRAME)
7. ARMOURED ONE SHOOTER ATTACK GLASS - MUST CONFIRM HARDWARE IS TESTED AND APPROVED BY GLASS MANUFACTURER

### Set #11.NEW - PAIR, STOREROOM LOCK

2	Continuous Hinge ST	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED (EPT PREP WHERE NEEDED)	AL	
1	Dust Proof Strike	3911	626	TR
1	Automatic Flush Bolt	3815L X 3815L X 3850	626	TR
1	Storeroom Function Lockset	45H-7D15H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Coordinator	3094B SERIES x LENGTH AS REQUIRED	PC	TR
2	Door Closer	QDC115 BFP PUSH SIDE	689	SH
2	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
2	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
2	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Mounting Bracket	3095/3096 AS REQUIRED	BLACK	TR
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

### Set #12 - EXIT DEVICE CLASSROOM

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED (EPT PREP WHERE NEEDED)	AL	ST
1	Rim Exit Device Classroom	FL 2108 X 4908A	630	PR
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
1	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

### Set #12.NEW - EXIT DEVICE CLASSROOM

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED (EPT PREP WHERE NEEDED)	AL	ST
1	Rim Exit Device			
	Classroom	FL 2108 X 4908A	630	PR
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
1	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

NOTE:

NEW DOOR X NEW FRAME

### Set #14 - CLASSROOM

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED (EPT PREP WHERE NEEDED)	AL	
	ST			
1	Classroom Function	45H-7R12H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY
3	Silencer	1229A	GREY	TR

NOTE:

NOTE:

NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.

### Set #14.1 - CLASSROOM

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED (EPT PREP WHERE NEEDED)	AL	ST
1	Classroom Function	45H-7R12H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC115 BFP PUSH SIDE	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR



## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY
3	Silencer	1229A	GREY	TR

### NOTE:

NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.

### Set #COR.01 - NEW CORE

1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Existing Hardware	ALL OTHER EXISTING HARDWARE TO REMAIN		BY

### Set #COR.02 - NEW CORE, NEW CARD

1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Card Reader	CARD READER BY OWNER'S SECURITY VENDOR		BY

### Set #COR.03 - NEW CORE, NEW DOOR CONTACTS

1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DM

### Set #CR01 - CARD READER ELECTRIC LOCK

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PR
1	Electromechanical Lock	45HW-7DEU15H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING RQE S1	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY
3	Silencer	1229A	GREY	TR

### NOTE:

### NOTE:

NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.

1. CARD READER TO UNLOCK ELECTRIC LOCK
2. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

### Set #EX01 - EXIT DEVICE PR CD

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Removable Mullion	KR822 MCS	689	PR
1	Rim Exit Device Keyed	2103 CA-03 CD	630	PR
1	Rim Exit Device EO	2103 CD	630	PR
4	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
4	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
3	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
2	Flush Door Pull	FLUSH DOOR PULLS BY FRP DOOR MFG	630	BY
2	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
2	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
2	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA
2	Weatherstripping	700 EN HEAD x JAMB		NA
2	Door Sweep	200 NA SIZE TO SUIT		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

#### NOTE:

##### NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

1. GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.
2. EXIT DEVICES EQUIPPED WITH CYLINDER DOGGING
3. WHEN LATCHES ARE RETRACTED DOORS ARE PUSH PULL
4. WHEN LATCHES ARE ENGAGED NEED KEY TO ENTER
5. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS
6. (2) DOOR POSITION SWITCHES

### Set #EX01.1.NEW - EXIT DEVICE PR CD

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Removable Mullion	KR822 MCS	689	PR
1	Rim Exit Device Keyed	2103 CA-03 CD	630	PR
1	Rim Exit Device EO	2103 CD	630	PR
4	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
4	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
3	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
2	Flush Door Pull	FLUSH DOOR PULLS BY FRP DOOR MFG	630	BY
2	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
2	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
2	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA
2	Weatherstripping	700 EN HEAD x JAMB		NA
2	Door Sweep	200 NA SIZE TO SUIT		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

#### NOTE:

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

### NEW DOOR / NEW FRAME

1. EXIT DEVICES EQUIPPED WITH CYLINDER DOGGING
2. WHEN LATCHES ARE RETRACTED DOORS ARE PUSH PULL
3. WHEN LATCHES ARE ENGAGED NEED KEY TO ENTER
4. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS
5. (2) DOOR POSITION SWITCHES
6. ARMOURED ONE SHOOTER ATTACK GLASS - MUST CONFIRM HARDWARE IS TESTED AND APPROVED BY GLASS MANUFACTURER

### Set #EX01.A.NEW - EXIT DEVICE PR CD

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Removable Mullion	KR822 MCS	689	PR
1	Exit Device	2103 CA-03 CD	630	PR
1	Exit Device	2103 CD	630	PR
2	FEMA Exit Device	DOOR MFG	630	SECU
4	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
4	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
3	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
2	Flush Door Pull	FLUSH DOOR PULLS BY FRP DOOR MFG	630	BY
2	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
2	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Door Position Switch	RE-USE EXISTING DOOR POSITION SWITCH		BY
2	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA
2	Weatherstripping	700 EN HEAD x JAMB		NA
2	Door Sweep	200 NA SIZE TO SUIT		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY
NOTE:				

### NOTE:

#### NEW DOOR / NEW FRAME

1. EXIT DEVICES EQUIPPED WITH CYLINDER DOGGING
2. WHEN LATCHES ARE RETRACTED DOORS ARE PUSH PULL
3. WHEN LATCHES ARE ENGAGED NEED KEY TO ENTER
4. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS
5. RE-USE (2) DOOR POSITION SWITCHES

### Set #EX01.NEW - EXIT DEVICE PR CD

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Removable Mullion	KR822 MCS	689	PR
1	Rim Exit Device Keyed	2103 CA-03 CD	630	PR
1	Rim Exit Device EO	2103 CD	630	PR
4	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
4	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

3	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
2	Flush Door Pull	FLUSH DOOR PULLS BY FRP DOOR MFG	630	BY
2	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
2	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
2	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA
2	Weatherstripping	700 EN HEAD x JAMB		NA
2	Door Sweep	200 NA SIZE TO SUIT		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

### NOTE:

#### NEW DOOR / NEW FRAME

1. EXIT DEVICES EQUIPPED WITH CYLINDER DOGGING
2. WHEN LATCHES ARE RETRACTED DOORS ARE PUSH PULL
3. WHEN LATCHES ARE ENGAGED NEED KEY TO ENTER
4. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS
5. (2) DOOR POSITION SWITCHES

## Set #EX02 - EXTERIOR CARD READER

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	MLR Exit Device Rim	C MLR TS 2103 CA-03	630	PR
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
1	Flush Door Pull	FLUSH DOOR PULLS BY FRP DOOR MFG	630	BY
1	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
1	Card Reader	CARD READER BY OWNER'S SECURITY VENDOR		BY
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1	Door Loop	9509 LENGTH TO SUIT	Silver	RC
1	Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PR
1	Weatherstripping	700 EN HEAD x JAMB		NA
1	Door Sweep	200 NA SIZE TO SUIT		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

### NOTE:

#### NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

1. GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.
2. EXIT DEVICES EQUIPPED WITH MOTORIZED LATCH RETRACTION
3. CARD READER TO ALLOW AUTHORIZED ENTRY
5. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS
6. DOOR POSITION SWITCHES
7. IF NEW FRAME IS SPECIFIED PROVIDE EPT12C POWER TRANSFER (FACTORY PREP DOOR AND FRAME)

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

### Set #EX02.NEW - EXTERIOR CARD READER

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PR
1	MLR Exit Device Rim	C MLR TS 2103 CA-03	630	PR
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
1	Flush Door Pull	FLUSH DOOR PULLS BY FRP DOOR MFG	630	BY
1	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
1	Card Reader	CARD READER BY OWNER'S SECURITY VENDOR		BY
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1	Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PR
1	Weatherstripping	700 EN HEAD x JAMB		NA
1	Door Sweep	200 NA SIZE TO SUIT		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

#### NOTE:

1. NEW DOOR / NEW FRAME
2. EXIT DEVICES EQUIPPED WITH MOTORIZED LATCH RETRACTION
3. CARD READER TO ALLOW AUTHORIZED ENTRY
5. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS
6. DOOR POSITION SWITCHES
7. ARMoured ONE SHOOTER ATTACK GLASS - MUST CONFIRM HARDWARE IS TESTED AND APPROVED BY GLASS MANUFACTURER

### Set #EX02.A NEW - EXTERIOR CARD READER

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED (EPT PREP WHERE NEEDED)	AL	ST
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PR
1	Exit Device	C MLR 2103 CA-03	630	PR
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
1	Flush Door Pull	FLUSH DOOR PULLS BY FRP DOOR MFG	630	BY
1	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1	Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PR
1	Weatherstripping	700 EN HEAD x JAMB		NA
1	Door Sweep	200 NA SIZE TO SUIT		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY
1	Card Reader	RE-USE EXISTING CARD READER		BY
1	Door Position Switch	RE-USE EXISTING DOOR POSITION SWITCH		BY

#### NOTE:

1. NEW DOOR / NEW FRAME
2. EXIT DEVICES EQUIPPED WITH MOTORIZED LATCH RETRACTION
3. CARD READER TO ALLOW AUTHORIZED ENTRY

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

4. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS
5. RE USE DOOR POSITION SWITCHES
6. RE-USE EXISTING CARD READER

### Set #EX03 - EXTERIOR KEYED ENTRY

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Rim Exit Device Keyed	2103 CA-03	630	PR
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
1	Flush Door Pull	FLUSH DOOR PULLS BY FRP DOOR MFG	630	BY
1	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1	Weatherstripping	700 EN HEAD x JAMB		NA
1	Door Sweep	200 NA SIZE TO SUIT		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

#### NOTE:

##### NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

1. GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.
2. EXIT DEVICES WITH KEY CYLINDER TO ENTER
3. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS
4. DOOR POSITION SWITCHES

### Set #EX03.NEW - EXTERIOR KEYED ENTRY

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Rim Exit Device Keyed	2103 CA-03	630	PR
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
1	Flush Door Pull	FLUSH DOOR PULLS BY FRP DOOR MFG	630	BY
1	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1	Weatherstripping	700 EN HEAD x JAMB		NA
1	Door Sweep	200 NA SIZE TO SUIT		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

#### NOTE:

##### NEW DOOR / NEW FRAME

1. EXIT DEVICES WITH KEY CYLINDER TO ENTER
2. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS
3. DOOR POSITION SWITCHES

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

### Set #EX03.1 NEW - EXTERIOR KEYED ENTRY

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Exit Device	2103 CA-03 CD	630	PR
2	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
2	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
1	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
1	Flush Door Pull	FLUSH DOOR PULLS BY FRP DOOR MFG	630	BY
1	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
1	Door Position Switch	RE-USE EXISTING DOOR POSITION SWITCH		BY
1	Weatherstripping	700 EN HEAD x JAMB		NA
1	Door Sweep	200 NA SIZE TO SUIT		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

NOTE:

NOTE:

#### NEW DOOR / NEW FRAME

1. EXIT DEVICES EQUIPPED WITH MOTORIZED LATCH RETRACTION
2. CARD READER TO ALLOW AUTHORIZED ENTRY
3. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS
4. RE-USE EXISTING DOOR POSITION SWITCHES

### Set #EX04 - EXIT DEVICE PR CARD READER

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Removable Mullion	KR822 MCS	689	PR
1	MLR Exit Device Rim	C MLR TS 2103 CA-03	630	PR
1	MLR Exit Device Rim EO	C MLR TS 2103	630	PR
2	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
2	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
1	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
2	Flush Door Pull	FLUSH DOOR PULLS BY FRP DOOR MFG	630	BY
2	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1	Door Loop	9509 LENGTH TO SUIT	Silver	RC
1	Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PR
2	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA
2	Weatherstripping	700 EN HEAD x JAMB		NA
2	Door Sweep	200 NA SIZE TO SUIT		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

NOTE:

#### NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

1. GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.
2. EXIT DEVICES EQUIPPED WITH MOTORIZED LATCH RETRACTION
3. CARD READER TO ALLOW AUTHORIZED ENTRY

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

5. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS
6. DOOR POSITION SWITCHES
7. IF NEW FRAME IS SPECIFIED PROVIDE EPT12C POWER TRANSFER (FACTORY PREP DOOR AND FRAME)

### Set #EX04.NEW - EXIT DEVICE PR CARD READER

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Removable Mullion	KR822 MCS	689	PR
1	MLR Exit Device Rim	C MLR TS 2103 CA-03	630	PR
1	MLR Exit Device Rim EO	C MLR TS 2103	630	PR
2	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
2	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
1	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
2	Flush Door Pull	FLUSH DOOR PULLS BY FRP DOOR MFG	630	BY
2	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1	Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PR
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PR
2	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA
2	Weatherstripping	700 EN HEAD x JAMB		NA
2	Door Sweep	200 NA SIZE TO SUIT		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

NOTE:

NEW DOOR / NEW FRAME

1. EXIT DEVICES EQUIPPED WITH MOTORIZED LATCH RETRACTION
2. CARD READER TO ALLOW AUTHORIZED ENTRY
3. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS
4. DOOR POSITION SWITCHES
5. DOORS TO HAVE ARMoured ONE SHOOTER ATTACK GLASS

### Set #EX04.A NEW - EXIT DEVICE PR CARD READER

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Removable Mullion	KR822 MCS	689	PR
1	Exit Device	C MLR 2103 CA-03	630	PR
1	Exit Device	C MLR 2103	630	PR
2	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
2	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
1	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
2	Card Reader	RE-USE EXISTING CARD READER		BY
2	Flush Door Pull	FLUSH DOOR PULLS BY FRP DOOR MFG	630	BY
2	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1	Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PR



## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PR
2	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA
2	Weatherstripping	700 EN HEAD x JAMB		NA
2	Door Sweep	200 NA SIZE TO SUIT		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

NOTE:

NOTE:

NEW DOOR / NEW FRAME

1. EXIT DEVICES EQUIPPED WITH MOTORIZED LATCH RETRACTION
2. CARD READER TO ALLOW AUTHORIZED ENTRY
3. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS
4. DOOR POSITION SWITCHES
5. RE-USE EXISTING CARD READER

### Set #EX04.B NEW - EXIT DEVICE PR CARD READER

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Removable Mullion	KR822 MCS	689	PR
1	Exit Device	C MLR 2103 CA-03	630	PR
1	Exit Device	C MLR 2103	630	PR
2	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
2	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
1	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
2	Card Reader	RE-USE EXISTING CARD READER		BY
2	Flush Door Pull	FLUSH DOOR PULLS BY FRP DOOR MFG	630	BY
2	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
1	Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PR
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PR
2	Door Position Switch	RE-USE EXISTING DOOR POSITION SWITCH		BY
2	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA
2	Weatherstripping	700 EN HEAD x JAMB		NA
2	Door Sweep	200 NA SIZE TO SUIT		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

NOTE:

NEW DOOR / NEW FRAME

1. EXIT DEVICES EQUIPPED WITH MOTORIZED LATCH RETRACTION
2. CARD READER TO ALLOW AUTHORIZED ENTRY
3. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS
4. RE-USE DOOR POSITION SWITCHES
5. RE-USE EXISTING CARD READER

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

### Set #EX05 - EXIT DEVICE PR CR EXTERIOR

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Removable Mullion	KR822 MCS	689	PR
1	MLR Exit Device Rim	C MLR TS 2103 CA-03	630	PR
1	MLR Exit Device Rim EO	C MLR TS 2103	630	PR
2	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
2	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
1	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
2	Flush Door Pull	FLUSH DOOR PULLS BY FRP DOOR MFG	630	BY
2	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
2	Operator	ED100LE PUSH ARM	CL	DM
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1	Door Loop	9509 LENGTH TO SUIT	Silver	RC
1	Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PR
2	Actuator	910TC	32D	RC
2	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA
2	Weatherstripping	700 EN HEAD x JAMB		NA
2	Door Sweep	200 NA SIZE TO SUIT		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

#### NOTE:

#### NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

1. GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.
2. EXIT DEVICES EQUIPPED WITH MOTORIZED LATCH RETRACTION
3. CARD READER TO ALLOW AUTHORIZED ENTRY
4. ACTUATOR TO ENGAGE AUTO OPERATOR FOR ADA ACCESSIBILITY
5. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS
6. DOOR POSITION SWITCHES
7. IF NEW FRAME IS SPECIFIED PROVIDE EPT12C POWER TRANSFER (FACTORY PREP DOOR AND FRAME)

### Set #EX05.NEW - EXIT DEVICE PR CR,OP EXTERIOR

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PR
1	Removable Mullion	KR822 MCS	689	PR
1	MLR Exit Device Rim	C MLR TS 2103 CA-03	630	PR
1	MLR Exit Device Rim EO	C MLR TS 2103	630	PR
2	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
2	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
1	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
2	Flush Door Pull	FLUSH DOOR PULLS BY FRP DOOR MFG	630	BY
2	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
2	Operator	ED100LE PUSH ARM	CL	DM
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1	Power Supply	RPSMLR2BB		PR

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

2	Actuator	910TC	32D	RC
2	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA
2	Weatherstripping	700 EN HEAD x JAMB		NA
2	Door Sweep	200 NA SIZE TO SUIT		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

### NOTE:

NEW DOOR / NEW FRAME

1. EXIT DEVICES EQUIPPED WITH MOTORIZED LATCH RETRACTION
2. CARD READER TO ALLOW AUTHORIZED ENTRY
3. ACTUATOR TO ENGAGE AUTO OPERATOR FOR ADA ACCESSIBILITY
4. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS
5. DOOR POSITION SWITCHES
6. IF NEW FRAME IS SPECIFIED PROVIDE EPT12C POWER TRANSFER (FACTORY PREP DOOR AND FRAME)
7. ARMoured ONE SHOOTER ATTACK GLASS - MUST CONFIRM HARDWARE IS TESTED AND APPROVED BY GLASS MANUFACTURER

### Set #EX06 - EXTERIOR KEYED ENTRY

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Rim Exit Device Keyed	2103 CA-03	630	PR
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
1	Flush Door Pull	FLUSH DOOR PULLS BY FRP DOOR MFG	630	BY
1	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
1	Door Position Switch	MC4		DM
1	Weatherstripping	700 EN HEAD x JAMB		NA
1	Door Sweep	200 NA SIZE TO SUIT		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

### NOTE:

NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

1. GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.
2. EXIT DEVICES EQUIPPED WITH MOTORIZED LATCH RETRACTION
3. CARD READER TO ALLOW AUTHORIZED ENTRY
4. ACTUATOR TO ENGAGE AUTO OPERATOR FOR ADA ACCESSIBILITY
5. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS
6. DOOR POSITION SWITCHES
7. IF NEW FRAME IS SPECIFIED PROVIDE EPT12C POWER TRANSFER (FACTORY PREP DOOR AND FRAME)

### Set #NIC - NOT IN CONTRACT

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

### Set #S-01 - SHELTER LOCK

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Shelter Electromechanical			
	Lock	45HX-7R15H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Dome Stop	1211	626	TR
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

#### NOTE:

#### NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

1. GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.
2. KEY FOB TO INITIATE LOCK DOWN
3. LOCK DOWN CAN ALSO BE INITIATED FROM REMOTE ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM

### Set #S-01.1 - SHELTER LOCK

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Shelter Electromechanical			
	Lock	45HX-7R15H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH
1	Drop Plate Kit	QDC100 DROP PLATE KIT 'TO SUIT'	689	SH
1	Overhead Stop	701 S	626	DM
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Dome Stop	1211	626	TR
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

#### NOTE:

#### NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

1. GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.
2. KEY FOB TO INITIATE LOCK DOWN
3. LOCK DOWN CAN ALSO BE INITIATED FROM REMOTE ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM

### Set #S-01.1.NEW - SHELTER LOCK

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Shelter Electromechanical			
	Lock	45HX-7R15H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1	626	BE

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH
1	Drop Plate Kit	QDC100 DROP PLATE KIT 'TO SUIT'	689	SH
1	Overhead Stop	701 S	626	DM
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Dome Stop	1211	626	TR
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

### Set #S-01.2 - SHELTER LOCK

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Shelter Electromechanical			
	Lock	45HX-7R15H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC115 BFP PUSH SIDE	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

#### NOTE:

#### NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

1. GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.
2. KEY FOB TO INITIATE LOCK DOWN
3. LOCK DOWN CAN ALSO BE INITIATED FROM REMOTE ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM

### Set #S-01.2.NEW - SHELTER LOCK

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Shelter Electromechanical			
	Lock	45HX-7R15H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC115 BFP PUSH SIDE	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Wall Bumper	1270CV	626	TR
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

#### NOTE:

#### NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

1. GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.
2. KEY FOB TO INITIATE LOCK DOWN

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

### 3. LOCK DOWN CAN ALSO BE INITIATED FROM REMOTE ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM

#### Set #S-01.3 - SHELTER LOCK

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Shelter Electromechanical			
	Lock	45HX-7R15H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

#### Set #S-01.NEW - SHELTER LOCK

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Shelter Electromechanical			
	Lock	45HX-7R15H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Dome Stop	1211	626	TR
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

#### Set #S-02 - PAIR, SHELTER LOCK

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Dust Proof Strike	3911	626	TR
2	Manual Flushbolt	3913 MANUAL FB FOR WOOD DOOR TOP AND BOTTOM	626	TR
1	Shelter Electromechanical			
	Lock	45HX-7R15H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Coordinator	3094B SERIES x LENGTH AS REQUIRED	PC	TR
2	Door Closer	QDC 111 BF P PULL SIDE	689	SH
2	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
2	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mounting Bracket	3095/3096 AS REQUIRED	Silver	TR
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

### NOTE:

#### NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

1. GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.
2. KEY FOB TO INITIATE LOCK DOWN
3. LOCK DOWN CAN ALSO BE INITIATED FROM REMOTE ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM

### Set #S-03 - SINGLE, GYM/AUD EXIT DEVICE

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Switch Lock	1W-7C2 PATD	626	BE
1	Rim Exit Electrified Trim	C TS E2103 X 4908A FSE	630	PR
2	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
2	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
1	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
1	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Door Loop	9509 LENGTH TO SUIT	Silver	RC
1	Power Supply	AL30OULX		BE
1	Battery Back-up	NP7AH-12V		ENER
1	Key Switch	801AL L2	630	SDCC
1	Power Supply	DKPS-2A		DM
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

### NOTE:

#### NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME/FIRE RATED

- 1.GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.
- 2.CORD LOOP TO BRING ELECTRIC WIRES FROM EXISTING FRAME TO EXIT DEVICE.
- 3.WALL MTD KEYSWITCH TO MANUALLY UNLOCK AND RELOCK ELECTRIFIED TRIM
- 4 LOCK DOWN CAN ALSO BE INITIATED FROM REMOTE ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM
5. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS
- 6.IF NEW FRAME IS SPECIFIED PROVIDE EPT12C POWER TRANSFER (FACTORY PREPPED)

### Set #S-03.NEW - SINGLE, GYM/AUD EXIT DEVICE

1	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED (EPT PREP WHERE NEEDED)	AL	ST
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PR
1	Switch Lock	1W-7C2 PATD	626	BE
1	Exit Device	E FL2103 x 4903 FSE	630	PR
2	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
2	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
1	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
1	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
1	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

1	Kick Plate	KO050 8" x 2" LDW B4E C-SUNK HOLES	630	TR
1	Power Supply	AL30OULX		BE
1	Battery Back-up	NP7AH-12V		ENER
1	Key Switch	801AL L2	630	SDCC
1	Power Supply	DKPS-2A		DM
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

NOTE:

NEW DOOR X NEW FRAME

- 1.WALL MTD KEYSWITCH TO MANUALLY UNLOCK AND RELOCK ELECTRIFIED TRIM
- 2 LOCK DOWN CAN ALSO BE INITIATED FROM REMOTE ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM
3. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS
- 4.PROVIDE EPT12C POWER TRANSFER (FACTORY PREPPED)

### Set #S-04 - GYM/AUD PAIR -EXITS SHELTER

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED	AL	ST
1	Switch Lock	1W-7C2 PATD	626	BE
2	SVR Device FSE Elec Trim	C FL E2203 X 4908A FSE LBR	630	PR
3	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
3	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
2	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
2	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
2	Kick Plate	KO050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
2	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
2	Door Loop	9509 LENGTH TO SUIT	Silver	RC
1	Power Supply	AL30OULX		BE
1	Battery Back-up	NP7AH-12V		ENER
1	Key Switch	801AL L2	630	SDCC
1	Power Supply	DKPS-2A		DM
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

NOTE:

NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME/FIRE RATED

- 1.GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.
- 2.CORD LOOP TO BRING ELECTRIC WIRES FROM EXISTING FRAME TO EXIT DEVICE.
- 3.WALL MTD KEYSWITCH TO MANUALLY UNLOCK AND RELOCK ELECTRIFIED TRIM
- 4 LOCK DOWN CAN ALSO BE INITIATED FROM REMOTE ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM
5. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS
- 6.IF NEW FRAME IS SPECIFIED PROVIDE EPT12C POWER TRANSFER (FACTORY PREPPED)



## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

### Set #S-04.NEW - GYM/AUD PAIR -EXITS SHELTER

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED (EPT PREP WHERE NEEDED)	AL	ST
1	Removable Mullion	KR822 MCS	689	PR
1	Switch Lock	1W-7C2 PATD	626	BE
2	Rim Exit E Trim FSE	C FL TS E2103 X 4908A FSE	630	PR
3	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
3	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
2	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
2	Electromagnetic Closer	8916 EMF/PT BYP (VERIFY VOLTAGE REQ) PUSH SIDE	689	DM
2	Electromagnetic Closer	8916 EMR/PT BYP (VERIFY VOLTAGE REQ) PUSH SIDE	689	DM
2	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
2	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
1	Power Supply	AL300ULX		BE
1	Battery Back-up	NP7AH-12V		ENER
1	Key Switch	801AL L2	630	SDCC
1	Power Supply	DKPS-2A		DM
1	Power Transfer	EPT-12C		PR
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

#### NOTE:

NEW DOOR X NEW FRAME

UPDATED GYM/AUD PAIR EXITS-SHELTER

RIM DEVICES WITH KR MULLION & ELECTROMAGNETIC HOLD OPEN CLOSERS

- 1.WALL MTD KEYSWITCH TO MANUALLY UNLOCK AND RELOCK ELECTRIFIED TRIM
2. LOCK DOWN CAN ALSO BE INITIATED FROM REMOTE ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM
3. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS
4. EPT12C POWER TRANSFER (FACTORY PREPPED)

---

- 1.DOORS TO BE ON ELECTROMAGNETIC HOLD OPEN CLOSERS (PUSH SIDE MOUNTED)
- 2.TIED DIRECTLY TO THE FIRE ALARM SYSTEM
- 3.IN A FIRE ALARM DOORS TO CLOSE AND LATCH

### Set #S-05 - GYM/AUD PAIR -EXITS SHELTER

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED (EPT PREP WHERE NEEDED)	AL	ST
1	Switch Lock	1W-7C2 PATD	626	BE
2	Exit Device SVR	C FL E2203 X 4908D FSE LBR	630	PR
3	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
3	Construction Core	7190224		BE

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

1	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
2	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
2	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
2	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
2	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
2	Door Loop	9509 LENGTH TO SUIT	Silver	RC
1	Power Supply	AL30OULX		BE
1	Battery Back-up	NP7AH-12V		ENER
1	Key Switch	801AL L2	630	SDCC
1	Power Supply	DKPS-2A		DM
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA
1	Threshold	AS DETAILED		BY

### NOTE:

#### NEW DOOR / EXISTING FRAME/FIRE RATED

- 1.GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.
- 2.CORD LOOP TO BRING ELECTRIC WIRES FROM EXISTING FRAME TO EXIT DEVICE.
- 3.WALL MTD KEYSWITCH TO MANUALLY UNLOCK AND RELOCK ELECTRIFIED TRIM
- 4 LOCK DOWN CAN ALSO BE INITIATED FROM REMOTE ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM
5. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS
- 6.IF NEW FRAME IS SPECIFIED PROVIDE EPT12C POWER TRANSFER (FACTORY PREPPED)

## Set #S-05.NEW - GYM/AUD PAIR -EXITS SHELTER

2	Continuous Hinge	662HD UL x HEIGHT REQUIRED (EPT PREP WHERE NEEDED)	AL	ST
1	Switch Lock	1W-7C2 PATD	626	BE
2	Exit Device SVR	C FL E2203 X 4908D FSE LBR	630	PR
3	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
3	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Mortise Cylinder	1E-74 PATD	626	BE
2	Rim Cylinder	12E-72 PATD	626	BE
2	Door Closer	QDC119 BF P PUSH SIDE SPRING STOP	689	SH
2	Kick Plate	K0050 8" x 2" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
2	Mop Plate	KM050 4" x 1" LDW, B4E-HEAVY-KP CSK	630	TR
2	Door Loop	9509 LENGTH TO SUIT	Silver	RC
1	Power Supply	AL30OULX		BE
1	Battery Back-up	NP7AH-12V		ENER
1	Key Switch	801AL L2	630	SDCC
1	Power Supply	DKPS-2A		DM
1	Gasketing	5050 B @ HEAD AND JAMBS		NA
1	Astragal Set	2 pcs. 140 PA x LENGTH AS REQUIRED		NA

## Eastchester UFSD Multiple School Hardware Sets

1	Threshold	AS DETAILED	BY
---	-----------	-------------	----

### NOTE:

NEW DOOR X NEW FRAME

BOTH DOORS MUST SWING SAME DIRECTION

### Set #SHL.01 - SHELTER LOCK ONLY/ WITH CORE

1	Electromechanical Lock	45HX-7R15H PATD CORMAX PATENTED KEYING S1	626	BE
1	Perm Core	1CX-7 "TO MATCH OWNERS EXISTING"	626	BE
1	Construction Core	7190224		BE
1	Wrap-Around DJ	504-CW (IF NEEDED TO COVER EXISTING DOOR PREPS)		S
1	Existing Hardware	ALL OTHER EXISTING HARDWARE TO REMAIN		BY

NOTE: EXISTING DOOR / EXISTING FRAME

1. GC TO PATCH, FILL AND REPAIR EXISTING PREPS IN DOOR FRAME THAT WILL NO LONGER BE USED WITH NEW HARDWARE AS PER NFP80 TO MAINTAIN FIRE RATING.

2. KEY FOB TO INITIATE LOCK DOWN

3. LOCK DOWN CAN ALSO BE INITIATED FROM REMOTE ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM

4. IF LOCK WRAP AROUND IS NEEDED USE DON-JO 504-CW

### Set #S-MISC - ACCESSORIES FOR SHELTER SYSTEM

*	SHELTER FOB	SHX-FOB		BE
*	SHELTER Power Supply	SHX-PTL		BE
*	SHELTER Gateway	SHX-GTW		BE
*	SHELTER Antenna	SHX-OMNI		BE
*	SHELTER Repeater	SHX-RPT		BE

### NOTE:

MISC ACCESSORIES FOR SHELTER SYSTEM - QTY TO SUIT SECURITY DRAWINGS LAYOUT

SECTION 088000 - GLASS AND GLAZING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the glass and glazing as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, glazing of the following:
  - 1. Windows.
  - 2. Doors.
  - 3. Entrances.
  - 4. Storefront framing.
  - 5. Interior borrowed lites.
  - 6. Security glass.
  - 7. Privacy film.
  - 8. Security film on existing storefronts.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Steel Doors and Frames - Section 081113.
- B. Aluminum Entrances and Storefronts - Section 084113.
- C. Aluminum Windows - Section 085113.
- D. Framed bathroom mirrors - Section 102813.

1.4 REFERENCES

- A. Comply with the recommendations of the following references unless more stringent requirements are indicated herein.
  - 1. FGMA Publications: FGMA Glazing Manual.
  - 2. LSGA Publications: LSGA Design Guide.
  - 3. IGMA Publications: TM-3000 Vertical Glazing Guidelines.
  - 4. Safety Glass: Products complying with ANSI Z97.1 and testing requirements of 16 CFR Part 1201, Safety Standards for Architectural Glazing, Sealed Insulating Glass Manufacturing Association.

5. Fire-Resistive Glazing Products for Door Assemblies: Products identical to those tested per ASTM E 152, labeled and listed by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
6. ASTM C 920, Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants.
7. Insulating Glass Criteria: IGCC International Glass Certification Council.

#### 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Provide glazing systems capable of withstanding normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, and installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
- B. Exterior glazing shall meet 2020 New York State Energy Conservation Code.
- C. Glass Design: Glass thicknesses indicated on drawings and/or specified herein are minimums and are for detailing only. Confirm glass thicknesses by analyzing Project loads and in-service conditions. Provide glass lites for various size openings in nominal thicknesses indicated, but not less than thicknesses and in strengths (annealed or heat treated) required to meet or exceed the following criteria:
  1. Glass Thicknesses: Select minimum glass thicknesses to comply with ASTM E 1300, according to the following requirements:
    - a. Specified Design Wind Loads: Per ASCE-7.
  2. Probability of Breakage for Vertical Glazing
    - a. 8 lites per 1000 for lites set vertically or not more than 15 degrees off vertical and under wind action.
    - b. 1 lite per 1000 for lites installed 15 degrees from the vertical and under wind action.
    - c. Load Duration: 60 seconds or less.
  3. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For glass supported on all four edges, provide thickness required that limits center deflection at design wind pressure to 1/100 times the short side length or 1/2", whichever is less.
  4. Thermal Movements: Provide glazing that allows for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures acting on glass framing members and glazing components. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
    - a. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg. F ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
  5. Thermal Solar Performance: See Article 2.2 herein.
- D. Glass units shall be annealed, heat-strengthened, fully tempered or laminated where required to meet wind and/or snow loads and safety glazing requirements as shown, specified or recommended by the glass fabricator and as required by the New York State Building Code.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's printed product data, specifications, standard details, installation instructions, use limitations and recommendations for each material used. Provide certifications that materials and systems comply with specified requirements, including performance requirements.

- B. Submit compatibility and adhesion test reports from sealant manufacturer indicating materials were tested for compatibility and adhesion with glazing sealant, as well as other glazing materials including insulation units.
- C. Initial Selection Samples: Submit samples of each glass and glazing material showing complete range of colors, textures, and finishes available for each material used.
  - 1. Submit complete range of samples of standard colors and patterns for ceramic frits at insulating glass.
- D. Verification Samples: Submit representative samples of each glass and glazing material that is to be exposed in completed work. Show full color ranges and finish variations expected. Provide glass samples having minimum size of 144 sq. in. and 6 in. long samples of sealants and glazing materials; all samples shall bear the name of the manufacturer, brand name, thickness, and quality.
- E. Calculations: Provide wind load charts, calculations, thermal stress analysis, and certification of performance of this work. Indicate how design requirements for loading and other performance criteria have been satisfied. Document shall be signed and sealed by a Professional Engineer licensed in the State of New York.
- F. Test Reports: Provide certified reports for specified tests.
- G. Warranties: Provide written warranties as specified herein.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source: For each glass and glazing type required for work of this Section, provide primary materials which are products of one manufacturer. Provide secondary or accessory materials which are acceptable to manufacturers of primary materials.
- B. Installer: A firm with a minimum of five years' experience in type of work required by this Section and which is acceptable to manufacturers of primary materials; and with a successful record of in-service installations similar in size and scope to this Project.
- C. Glass Thickness: Glass thicknesses shown on drawings and/or specified herein are minimum thicknesses. Determine and provide size and thickness of glass products that are certified to meet or exceed performance requirements specified in this Section.
- D. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below, unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
  - 1. GANA Publications: GANA's "Glazing Manual" and "Laminated Glass Design Guide."
  - 2. IGMA Publications: IGMA TM-3000, "Vertical Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units."
- E. Glazing for Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Glazing for assemblies that comply with NFPA 80 and that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 252.
- F. Safety Glazing Products: Comply with the applicable requirements of the laws, codes, ordinances and regulations of Federal and Municipal authorities having jurisdiction. Wherever requirements conflict, the more stringent shall be required. Obtain approvals from all such authorities. As a minimum provide Category II materials complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR Part 12 and ANSI Z97.1.
  - 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, obtain safety glazing products permanently marked with certification label of the Safety Glazing Certification Council.

- a. For glazing types with multiple lites of glass, laminated or assembled into an insulating unit, where safety labeling is required, provide labels that align in position and orientation from lite to lite.
2. Where glazing units, including Kind FT glass and laminated glass, are specified in Part 2 articles for glazing lites more than 9 sq. ft. in exposed surface area of one side, provide glazing products that comply with Category II materials, for lites 9 sq. ft. or less in exposed surface area of one side, provide glazing products that comply with Category I or II materials, except for hazardous locations where Category II materials are required by 16 CFR 1201 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.
- G. Insulating Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked on spacers with appropriate certification label of the following testing and inspecting agency:
  1. Insulating Glass Certification Council.
  2. Associated Laboratories, Inc.
  3. Insulating Glass Manufacturers Alliance.
- H. Manufacturer shall be ISO 9001-2000 Certified.

#### 1.8 TESTS

- A. Preconstruction Sealant Test: Submit samples of materials to be used to glazing sealant manufacturer to determine sealant compatibility. Include samples of glass, gaskets, glazing materials, framing members, and other components and accessories of glazing work. Test in accordance with ASTM C 794 to verify what type of primers (if any) are required to ensure sealant adhesion to substrates.
  1. Submit minimum of nine pieces of each type and finish of framing member, and nine pieces of each type, class, kind, condition, and form of glass, including monolithic, laminated, and insulating glass for adhesion tests.
  2. Provide manufacturer's written report and recommendations regarding proper installation.

#### 1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Weather: Perform work of this Section only when existing or forecasted weather conditions are within limits established by manufacturers of materials and products used.
- B. Temperature Limits: Install sealants only when temperatures are within limits recommended by sealant manufacturer, except, never install sealants when temperatures are below 40 deg. F.
- C. Do not install sealants when substrates are wet or where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion are present.

#### 1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials and products in unopened, factory labeled packages. Store and handle in strict compliance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations and GANA Manual.
  1. Protect materials from moisture, sunlight, excess heat, sparks and flame.

2. Sequence deliveries to avoid delays, but minimize on-site storage.
3. Glass shall be delivered to the site bearing the manufacturer's label, complete with glazing instructions where applicable.
4. Comply with insulating glass manufacturer's written recommendations for venting and sealing units to avoid hermetic seal ruptures due to altitude change.

#### 1.11 WARRANTIES

- A. General: Warranties shall be in addition to, and not a limitation of, other rights the Owner may have under the Contract Documents.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Project Warranty on Coated Glass Products: Provide written warranty signed by manufacturer of coated glass agreeing to furnish f.o.b. point of manufacture, within specified warranty period indicated below, replacements for those coated glass units which develop manufacturing defects. Manufacturing defects are defined as peeling, cracking or deterioration in metallic coating due to normal conditions and not due to handling or installation or cleaning practices contrary to glass manufacturer's published instructions.
  1. Warranty Period: Manufacturer's standard but not less than five (5) years after date of substantial completion.
- C. Manufacturer's Special Project Warranty on Insulating Glass: Provide written warranty signed by manufacturer of insulating glass agreeing to furnish f.o.b. point of manufacture, freight allowed project site, within specified warranty period indicated below, replacements for those insulating glass units developing manufacturing defects. Manufacturing defects are defined as failure of the hermetic seal of air space (beyond that due to glass breakage) as evidenced by intrusion of dirt or moisture, internal condensation or fogging, deterioration of protected internal glass coatings, if any, and other visual indications of seal failure or performance; provided the manufacturer's instructions for handling, installing, protecting and maintaining units have been complied with during the warranty period.
  1. Warranty Period: Manufacturer's standard but not less than ten (10) years after date of substantial completion.
- D. Manufacturer's Special Project Warranty on Laminated Glass: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to Owner and signed by laminated glass manufacturer agreeing to replace laminated glass units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.
  1. Warranty period five (5) years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS/FABRICATORS

- A. All glass and glazing used at the exterior of the Project shall be manufactured by the same manufacturer. The same manufacturer and the same furnace shall be used for all tempered and heat strengthened glass used throughout the project. Acceptable manufacturers include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Vitro Architectural Glass.
  2. Guardian Industries.
  3. Pilkington.



4. AFG.
5. JE Berkowitz, LP.
6. Viracon.

## 2.2 GLASS MATERIALS AND PRODUCTS

- A. Ultra Clear (Low Iron) Clear Tempered Safety Glass: ASTM C 1048, Condition A (uncoated), Type I (transparent, flat), Class 1 (clear), Quality q3, Kind FT, minimum 1/4" thick, "Starphire" by Vitro Architectural Glass. Tempered glass must be certified by SGCC to meet applicable standards.

### 1. Performance Requirements for Tempered Glass

- a. Length and Width: For 2.9 mm to 6.0 mm; +/-1.6 mm.
- b. Diagonal: +/- 3.0 mm.
- c. Edgework: Belt seaming or diamond wheels. 1.5 mm seam of upper and lower glass edges. No sharp edges.
- d. Corners: No more than 3.0 mm from square.
- e. Float Glass Defects: Must meet the requirements of ASTM C 1036. The most common defects are scratches, stones gaseous bubbles and edge chips. Tables in the glass standards have limits for size/quantity of defects.
- f. Tempered glass shall have a minimum surface compression of 10,000 psi.
- g. Tempered glass to be heat-treated by horizontal (roller hearth) process with inherent roller-wave distortion parallel to the bottom edge of the glass when installed.
- h. Flatness Tolerances
  - 1). Roller-Wave or Ripple: The deviation from flatness at any peak shall be targeted not exceed 0.003" as measured per peak to valley for 1/4" (6mm) thick glass.
  - 2). Bow and Warp: The bow and warp tolerances shall not exceed 1/32" per linear foot.
  - 3). Fully tempered glass shall be heat soaked to EN 14179-1:2005-European Heat Soaking Standard.
- i. Safety Glass Labeling per 1.7.F.3

- B. Laminated Safety Glass: Provide two glass panes of equal thickness, laminated together with a polyvinyl butyl interlayer, conforming to ASTM C 1172 and as follows:

1. Interlayer Color: Clear.
2. Interlayer Material: Provide Eastman Chemical "Saflex" or "Vanceva," or DuPont "Butacite," 0.030" thick at vertical applications, and 0.060" thick at sloped or horizontal applications.
3. Minimum thickness of 1/4".
4. Safety Glass Labeling per 1.7.F.3

- C. Insulating Glass: Insulating glass unit shall consist of 1/4" clear exterior lite of tempered glass with low-E coating on No. 2 face, 1/2" interspace and 1/4" clear interior lite of tempered glass. Provide factory assembled units of organically sealed panes of glass enclosing a hermetically sealed dehydrated air space, complying with ASTM E 2190, and as follows:

1. Sealing System: Dual Seal.
2. Primary Sealant: Polyisobutylene.
3. Secondary Sealant: Silicone, General Electric IGS 3204 or IGS 3100, or Dow Corning 982.

- a. For structurally glazed IG units, secondary seal shall conform to ASTM C 1249.
  - b. Primary and secondary seals shall not contain voids and must be continuously bonded to the glass structure.
4. Spacer: Clear finish aluminum with welded, soldered, or bent corners, hollow tube types, filled with low nitrogen absorption desiccant.
5. Desiccant: Molecular sieve, silica gel, or blend of both.
6. Interspace Content: Argon.
7. Air Space Thickness: 1/2".
8. Glass Thickness: 1/4" minimum.
9. Low-E Coating: Provide high-performance, clear, metallic coating, VE1-2M as manufactured by Viracon or approved equal. Provide low-E coating having the following performance characteristics when applied to the No. 2 surface of 1" insulating units, both lites 1/4" clear:
  - a. Visible Light Transmittance: 70%.
  - b. Solar Energy Transmittance: 33%.
  - c. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC): 0.38.
  - d. U-Value: 0.29 winter, 0.26 summer.
10. Units shall be certified for compliance with seal classification "CBA" by the Insulating Glass Certification Council (IGCC) or by IGMA, and tested in accordance with the above ASTM Test Methods.
11. Insulating glass shall conform to the following tolerances:
  - a. Length and Width: + 3.0 mm/ -2.0 mm.
  - b. Diagonal: +/- 3.0 mm.
  - c. Thickness: As agreed +/- 1.0 mm.
  - d. Edge-Deletion of Coating: Minimum 8 mm wide. Width of deletion must be more than the width of the secondary seal. Silver layer(s) must be completely removed. Appearance must be uniform.
  - e. Primary PIB Seal: Must be complete with no breaks. Appearance must be uniform. PIB bead must overlap coating. No visible bright line when glass is viewed in transmission. The width of the PIB bead shall be 4.0 mm + 3.0/ - 1.5 mm.
  - f. Secondary Seal: Nominal 6 mm + 3.0/ - 1.5 mm. The minimum width of the secondary silicone seal for IG units that are glazed structurally must be determined according to ASTM C 1249. The secondary seal must be uniformly applied without bubbles, cavities or gaps. Avoid excess sealant that will need to be trimmed off later.
12. Additional requirements and properties for primary and secondary insulating glass seals and spacers:
  - a. All glass units shall comply with IGMA Guidelines which limits the dimension of the visible edge seal encroachment into the vision area to be no greater than the sightline infringement of 3mm (0.12").
  - b. Insulating glass unit hermetic seal to consist of butyl primary and silicone secondary seals with bent, welded, or soldered interpane spacer corners; keyed corners are not acceptable unless also soldered or welded. Spacers shall be aluminum or stainless steel. Locate spacer joint at the top or sides of the units, but in no instances at the sill. Design units to minimize the number of spacer joints. Provide solid keys, embedded in butyl sealant on all four sides, at spacer joints.

- c. Hermetic seals must be continuous and intimately bonded to both lites of glass. Provide primary seal of uniform depth with a nominal width of 1/8" to 3/16". Hermetic seals shall not be contaminated with debris, fingerprints, or other foreign matter and shall not contain voids or air pockets that decrease the width of the seal below the minimum widths listed in these Specifications, or that breach the seal. The width of the primary seal shall not be less than 1/16", and the total cumulative length of the primary seal between 1/16" and 1/8" shall be less than 12" in any one insulating glass unit. The primary seal shall not have a reduced thickness at the corners. An increased thickness of the primary seal at the corners is acceptable.
  - d. Provide secondary seal of uniform depth with a nominal width of 1/4". Provide a total width of the primary and secondary seal of 1/2". Units shall meet IGMA 65-7-2, latest edition. Units shall not contain breather or capillary tubes or similar penetrations.
- D. Ceramic Frit Spandrel Glass
  - 1. Heat-treated glass with ceramic coating complying with ASTM C 1048, Condition B (spandrel glass, one surface ceramic-coated), Type 1 (transparent, flat), Quality Q3 (Glazing Select), with other requirements as specified.
  - 2. GANA/GTA 66-9-20, Specification for Heat-Strengthened or Fully Tempered Ceramic Enamel Spandrel Glass Used for Building Window/Curtain Walls as inside pane of insulated glass unit.
  - 3. Custom color selected by the Architect.
- E. 1 hour rated Fire-Protected Glazing Material at Hollow Metal Doors and Frames: Proprietary product in the form of clear flat sheets of 3/16" nominal thickness weighing 2.5 lb./sq. ft., and as follows:
  - 1. Fire Protection Rating: As required by Code for the fire rated opening in which glazing material is installed, and permanently labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Product: "Premium FireLite" by Nippon Electric Glass Co., Ltd., and distributed by Technical Glass Products.
- F. Security Glass (Shooter Attack Glass): Provide "School Security Glass" as manufactured by Armoured One, or approved equal, consisting of two glass panes of equal thickness, laminated together with manufacturer's proprietary interlayer and with security film on exterior face of glass.
  - 1. Provide manufacturer's insulating and/or fire-rated shooter attack glass options where required.
  - 2. Minimum Performance Requirements
    - a. Comply with ASTM F1233 Class 1.3.
    - b. Forced Entry Sequentially Testing: Time to Failure: Minimum 6 minutes.
  - 3. Glass Thickness: 5/16"
- G. Privacy Film: Architectural glass film to be Designtex Casper Cloaking Glass Film, clear, PF001-801.
  - 1. Install where indicated on drawings.
- H. Security Film: Armoured One, 23mil thick film or approved equal.
  - 1. Install where indicated on drawings.

## 2.3 EXTERIOR GLAZING SCHEDULE

- A. Vision Glass [X-1]
  - 1. Exterior Lite: Tempered Low E on No. 2 Surface
  - 2. Air Space: 1/2"
  - 3. Interior Lite: Tempered Glass
- B. Spandrel Glass [X-2]
  - 1. Exterior Lite: Tempered Low E on No. 2 Surface
  - 2. Air Space: 1/2"
  - 3. Interior Lite: Tempered Ceramic Frit Glass
- C. Security Glass [X-3]
  - 1. Exterior Lite: Security Glass (Shooter Attack Glass) with Low E on No. 2 Surface
  - 2. Air Space: 1/2"
  - 3. Interior Lite: Tempered Glass

## 2.4 INTERIOR GLAZING SCHEDULE

- A. 1-hour rated fire protected glass [I-1]
- B. Ultra Clear (Low Iron) Tempered Safety Glass [I-2]
- C. Security Glass (Shooter Attack Glass) [I-3]
- D. 1- hour rated fire-resistive glass in rated framing system [I-4] – see Spec Section 084900
- E. 2- hour rated fire-resistive glass in rated framing system [I-5] – see Spec Section 084900
- F. 2-hour rated fire resistive glass with shooter attack glass in rated framing system [I-6] – see spec section 084900

## 2.5 GLAZING MATERIALS AND PRODUCTS

- A. General: Provide sealants and gaskets with performance characteristics suitable for applications indicated. Ensure compatibility of glazing sealants with insulating glass sealants, with laminated glass interlayers, and with any other surfaces in contact.
- B. General Glazing and Cap Bead Sealant: Provide sealant with maximum Shore A hardness of 50. Provide one of the following:
  - 1. Dow Corning 795.
  - 2. General Electric Silglaze N 2500 or Contractors SCS-1000.
  - 3. Tremco Spectrem 2.
- C. Weather Seal Sealant: Provide non-acid curing sealant with movement range + 50%, ASTM C 719. Provide one of the following:

1. Dow Corning 795.
  2. General Electric Silpruf.
  3. Tremco Spectrem 2.
- D. Backer Rod: Closed cell non-gassing polyethylene rod with rod diameter 25% wider than joint width.
- E. Dense Elastomeric Compression Seal Gaskets: Provide molded or extruded neoprene or EPDM gaskets, Shore A hardness of 75+5 for hollow profile, and 60+5 for solid profiles, ASTM C 864.
- F. Cellular, Elastomeric Preformed Gaskets: Provide extruded or molded closed cell, integral-skinned neoprene, Shore A 40+5, and 20% to 35% compression, ASTM C 509; Type II.
- G. Preformed Glazing Tape: Provide solvent-free butyl-polyisobutylene rubber with 100% solids content complying with ASTM C 1281 AAMA A 800 with integral continuous EPDM shim. Provide preformed glazing tape in extruded tape form. Provide Tremco "Polyshim II" or approved equal.
- H. Setting Blocks: Provide 100% silicone blocks with Shore A hardness of 80-90. Provide products certified by manufacturer to be compatible with silicone sealants. Length to be not less than 4". Width for setting blocks to be 1/16" more than glass thickness and high enough to provide the lite recommended by glass manufacturer. When thickness of setting block exceeds 3/4" the glass manufacturer must be consulted for sizes and configuration. In a vented system, setting block shall be designed so as to not restrict the flow of water within the glazing rabbet to the weep holes.
1. Shims: For shims used with setting blocks, provide same materials, hardness, length and width as setting blocks.
  2. Structural Silicone Glazing: Provide silicone setting blocks where structural silicone occurs at sills and at insulating units with silicone edge seals.
- I. Edge Blocks: Provide neoprene or silicone as required for compatibility with glazing sealants. Provide blocks with Shore A hardness of 55+5.
- J. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions with a Shore A durometer hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place.
- K. Miscellaneous Glazing Materials: Provide sealant backer rods, primers, cleaners, and sealers of type recommended by glass and sealant manufacturers.

## 2.6 FABRICATION OF GLASS AND OTHER GLAZING PRODUCTS

- A. Fabricate glass and other glazing products in sizes required to glaze openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing standard, to comply with system performance requirements.
- B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites in a manner that produces square edges with slight kerfs at junctions with indoor and outdoor faces.
- C. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine glazing framing, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:

1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
2. Presence and functioning of weep system.
3. Minimum required face or edge clearances.
4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.

### 3.3 GENERAL GLAZING STANDARDS

- A. Install products using the recommendations from the manufacturer of glass, sealants, gaskets and other glazing materials, except where more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in the GANA "Glazing Manual."
- B. Verify that Insulating Glass Unit (IGU) secondary seal is compatible with glazing sealants.
- C. Install glass in prepared glazing channels and other framing members.
- D. Install setting blocks in rabbets as recommended by referenced glazing standards in GANA's "Glazing Manual" and IGMA's "Glazing Guidelines."
- E. Provide bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances and glazing material tolerances recommended by GANA's "Glazing Manual."
- F. Provide weep system as recommended by GANA's "Glazing Manual."
- G. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow and similar characteristics.
- H. Distribute the weight of glass unit along the edge rather than the corner.
- I. Comply with manufacturers and referenced industry standards on expansion joint and anchors; accommodating thermal movement; glass openings; use of setting blocks, edge, face, and bite clearances; use of glass spacers; edge blocks and installation of weep systems.
- J. Protect glass edge damage during handling and installation.
- K. Prevent glass from contact with contaminating substances that result from construction operations, such as weld spatter, fireproofing or plaster.
- L. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped cracked or damaged in any way.

### 3.4 GLAZING

- A. Glazing channel dimensions, as indicated on Shop Drawings, provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances. Adjust as required by Project conditions during installation.
- B. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass is glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass and impair performance and appearance.

- C. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction sealant-substrate testing.
- D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead. Install setting blocks at the one greater points of each lite along the horizontal mullion.
- E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- F. Provide spacers for glass lites where the length plus width is larger than 50 inches as follows:
  - 1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
  - 2. Provide 1/8" minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
- G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- H. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- I. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.
- J. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- K. Flush Glazing
  - 1. If the butt joint in the metal framing is in the vertical direction, the glazier shall run the tape initially on the head and sill members going directly over this joint. Should the butt joint in the metal framing run horizontally, tapes must first be applied to the jambs so that it crosses over the joint.
  - 2. Each tape section shall butt the adjoining tape and be united with a tool to eliminate any opening.
  - 3. Do not overlap the adjoining length of tape or rubber shim as this will prevent full contact around the perimeter of glass.
- L. Off-Set Glazing
  - 1. Where the glazing legs are off-set, the difference in the rabbet width shall be compensated by employing different glazing tapes with different diameter shims. The difference in shim shall be equal to the size of the off-set. The thinner tape shall be positioned first on the glazing leg closest to the interior. The thicker tape shall be cut to the exact length of the dimension between the applied tapes, and installed on the outermost glazing leg.
  - 2. Immediately prior to setting glass, paper backing shall be removed. Apply a toe bead of sealant 6" in each direction, from each corner.

3. Locate setting blocks in the sill member at quarter points, or if necessary to within 6" of each corner. Setting blocks must be set equal distance from center line of the glass and high enough to provide the recommended bite and edge clearances.
4. Set edge block according to glass manufacturer's recommendations.
5. Set Glass: The glass shall be pressed firmly against the tape to achieve full contact.
6. In a vented system, apply a heel bead (air seal) of sealant around the perimeter of glass, between the sole of the I.G. unit and the base of the rabbet of the metal framing developing a positive bond to the unit and to the metal framing. The bead of the sealant shall be deep enough so that it will partially fill the channel to a depth of 1/4" between the glass edge and the base of the metal framing rabbet.
7. Interior stops shall be set, and glazing tape spline for the appropriate face clearance shall be rolled into place, compressing the glass to the shim within the glazing tape.

### 3.5 TAPE GLAZING

- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- C. Where framing joints are vertical, cover these joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first and then to jambs. Where framing joints are horizontal, cover these joints by applying tapes to jambs and then to heads and sills.
- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Do not remove release paper from tape until just before each glazing unit is installed.
- F. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant as recommended by glass manufacturer or glass frame manufacturer.
- G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
- H. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape where noted on approved shop drawings.

### 3.6 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

- A. Fabricate compression gaskets in lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with stretch allowance during installation.
- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.



- D. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

### 3.7 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)

- A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.
  - 1. Exterior glazing gasket shall be set a minimum of 1/8" below exterior glazing stop to create a channel for sealant installation.
- B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.
- C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

### 3.8 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

- A. Protect exterior glass from damage immediately after installation by attaching crossed streamers to framing held away from glass. Do not apply markers to glass surface. Remove nonpermanent labels, and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations, including weld splatter. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove them immediately as recommended by glass manufacturer.
- C. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for build-up of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains; remove as recommended by glass manufacturer.
- D. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged in any way, including natural causes, accidents, and vandalism, during construction period.
- E. Clean excess sealant or compound from glass and framing members immediately after application, using solvents or cleaners recommended by manufacturers.
- F. Glass shall be cleaned according to:
  - 1. GANA Glass Information Bulletin GANA 01-0300 – "Proper Procedure for Cleaning Architectural Glass Products."
  - 2. GANA Glass Informational Bulletin GANA TD-02-0402 – Heat Treated Glass Surfaces are Different."
- G. Do not use razor blades, scrapers or metal tools to clean glass.

END OF SECTION 088000

SECTION 089000 - LOUVERS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. The Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary to complete the louvers as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including but not necessarily limited to the following:
  - 1. Aluminum louvers.
  - 2. Blank-off panels.
  - 3. Bird screens.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Unit Masonry - Section 042000.
- B. Joint Sealers - Section 079200.
- C. Louvers in metal doors - Section 081113.
- D. Louvers connected to ductwork - Division 23.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Performance: Provide exterior metal louvers capable of withstanding the effects of loads and stresses from wind and normal thermal movement without evidencing permanent deformation of louver components including blades, frames, and supports; noise or metal fatigue caused by louver blade rattle or flutter or permanent damage to fasteners and anchors.
  - 1. Wind Load: Uniform pressure (velocity pressure) of not less than 30 lbf/sq. ft., acting inward or outward or greater if required by applicable Building Code.
- B. Thermal Movements: Provide louvers that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, and other detrimental effects.
  - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg. F., ambient; 180 deg. F, material surfaces.
- C. Comply with SMACNA "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" recommendations for fabrication, construction details and installation procedures, except as otherwise indicated.
- D. Field Measurements: Verify size, location and placement of louver units prior to fabrication.
- E. Shop Assembly: Coordinate field measurements and shop drawings with fabrication and shop assembly to minimize field adjustments, splicing, mechanical joints and field assembly of units. Preassemble units

in shop to greatest extent possible and disassemble as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

- F. Louvers shall be tested and certified AMCA 500-L and AMCA 550 compliant.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's specifications, certified test data, where applicable, and installation instructions for required products, including finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings for fabrication and erection of louver units and accessories. Include plans, elevations and details of sections and connections to adjoining work. Indicate materials, finishes, fasteners, joinery and other information to determine compliance with specified requirements.
- C. Samples: Submit six (6) inch square samples of each required finish. Prepare samples on metal of same gauge and alloy to be used in work. Where normal color and texture variations are to be expected, include two (2) or more units in each sample showing limits of such variations.
- D. Test Reports: Submit certified reports for performance.
- E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For louvers indicated to comply with structural and seismic performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the professional engineer licensed in the State of New York responsible for their preparation

## 1.6 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Protection: Use all means necessary to protect the materials of this Section before, during and after installation and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.
- B. Replacements: In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Finish shall be warranted for a period of 20 years, starting from date of Substantial Completion of the Project.

# PART 2 PRODUCTS

## 2.1 LOUVER MATERIAL

- A. Provide fixed, horizontal, storm-resistant, extruded aluminum louvers of profiles shown on drawings, manufactured by Construction Specialties, Inc., or equal made by Airolite, Greenheck, Ruskin, or approved equal meeting these specifications. Aluminum extrusions shall conform to ASTM B 221.
- B. Heads, sills, jambs and mullions to be one-piece structural members of 6063-T52, alloy, 0.080" thick, with integral caulking slot and retaining beads. Blades to be minimum 0.080" thick. Closed cell PVC compression gaskets to be provided between bottom of mullion or jamb and top of sill to insure lead tight connections. Concealed structural supports to be designed by the louver manufacturer to carry a wind load of not less than forty (40) lbs. per square foot. All fasteners to be stainless steel.
- C. High-Performance Organic Finish: AA-C12C42R1x (Chemical Finish: Cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: Acid-chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating; Organic Coating: As specified below). Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Fluoropolymer Three-Coat System: Manufacturer's standard three-coat, thermocured system consisting of specially formulated inhibitive primer and fluoropolymer color coat and clear topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight; complying with AAMA 2605-98.
2. Custom color and gloss as selected by the Architect; refer to paint schedule on the elevations.

D. Bird Screens

1. All louvers to be furnished with bird screens, finish to match louvers.
2. Screens to be 3/4" by 0.050" thick expanded and flattened aluminum mesh secured with 0.055" thick extruded aluminum frames. Frames to have mitered corners and corner locks.

E. Blank-Off Panels: Provide aluminum blank-off panels behind louvers where shown on mechanical drawings, and wherever louver is not connected to a mechanical dust, fabricated from 1/8" thick aluminum face sheets, finish to match louvers; reinforce as required to form rigid assembly. Blank-off panels shall be insulated with Thermafiber insulation of thickness needed to insure an R value of eleven (11).

F. Fastenings: Fasteners for exterior application shall be stainless steel. Provide types, gauges and lengths to suit unit installation conditions. Use Phillips flat head machine screws for exposed fasteners, unless otherwise indicated.

G. Anchors and Inserts: Use non-ferrous metal or hot dip galvanized anchors and inserts for exterior installations and elsewhere as required for corrosion resistance. Use steel or lead expansion bolt devices for drilled in place anchors. Furnish inserts, as required, to be set into concrete or masonry work.

H. Bituminous Paint: SSPC-Paint 12 (cold applied asphalt mastic).

2.2 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Fabricate frames including integral sills to suit adjacent construction with tolerances for installation, including application of sealants in joints between louvers and adjoining work.
- B. Include supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.
- C. Provide sill extensions made of same material as louvers, where indicated, or required for drainage to exterior and to prevent water penetrating to interior.
- D. Join frame members to one another and to stationary louver blades by welding, except where indicated otherwise or where field bolted connections between frame members are necessary by size of louvers. Maintain equal blade spacing, including separation between blades and frames at head and sill, to produce uniform appearance.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where louvers are to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate setting drawings, diagrams, templates, instructions and directions for the installation of anchorages which are to be embedded in masonry construction. Coordinate the delivery of such items to the project site.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations for installation of the work.
- B. Verify dimensions of supporting structure at the site by accurate field measurements so that the work will be accurately designated, fabricated and fitted to the structure.
- C. Anchor louvers to the building substructure.
- D. Erection Tolerances:
  - 1. Maximum variation from plane or location shown on the approved shop drawings: 1/8" per 12 feet of length, but not exceeding 1/2" in any total building length or portion thereof (non-cumulative).
  - 2. Maximum offset from true alignment between two members abutting end to end, edge to edge in line or separated by less than 3": 1/16" (shop or field joints). This limiting condition shall prevail under both load and no-load conditions.
- E. Cut and trim component parts during erection only with the approval of the manufacturer or fabricator, and in accordance with his recommendations. Restore finish completely. Remove and replace members where cutting and trimming has impaired the strength or appearance of the assembly.
- F. Do not erect warped, bowed, deformed or otherwise damaged or defaced members. Remove and replace any members damaged in the erection process as directed.
- G. Set units level, plumb and true to line, with uniform joints.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed materials to prevent damage by other trades. Use materials that may be easily removed without leaving residue or permanent stains.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Immediately clean exposed surfaces of the louvers to remove fingerprints and dirt accumulation during the installation process. Do not let soiling remain until the final cleaning.
- B. Before final inspection, clean exposed surfaces with water and a mild soap or detergent not harmful to the material finishes. Thoroughly rinse surfaces and dry.
- C. Restore louvers and accessory components damaged during installation and construction so no evidence remains of corrective work. If results of restoration are unsuccessful, as determined by the Architect, remove damaged materials and replace with new materials.
  - 1. Touch up minor abrasions in finishes with a compatible air-dried coating that matches the color and gloss of the factory applied coating.

END OF SECTION 089000

SECTION 089516 - WALL VENTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. The Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the wall vents as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not necessarily limited to, the following:
  - 1. Brick vents.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Unit Masonry - Section 042000.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain vents from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Use adequate numbers of skilled workmen who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary crafts and who are completely familiar with the specified requirements and the methods needed for proper performance of the work of this Section.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each type of metal finish required.

1.6 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Protection: Use all means necessary to protect the materials of this Section before, during and after installation and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.
- B. Replacements: In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 BRICK VENTS

- A. Extruded Aluminum Vents: Provide extruded aluminum vents as shown on the drawings, "BVE" (new construction) 4-inch deep extruded aluminum and 1 inch deep extruded aluminum "BVF" (renovation) brick vents as manufactured by Greenheck, or equivalent of The Airolite Company, Construction Specialties, Inc., Ruskin, or approved equal. Aluminum extrusions shall conform to ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T5, T-52, or T-6.
  - 1. Extruded-aluminum louvers and frames, not less than 0.125" nominal thickness, assembled by welding; with 18-by-14 mesh, aluminum insect screening on inside face; incorporating weep holes,

continuous drip at sill, and integral waterstop on inside edge of sill; of load-bearing design and construction.

2. Dampers: Aluminum blades and frames mounted on inside of wall vents; operated from exterior with Allen wrench in socket-head cap screw. Fabricate operating mechanism from Type 304 stainless-steel components.

B. Metal Finish: Color anodic finish, AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

1. Color: As selected by the Architect.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where wall vents are to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate and place vents plumb, level and in proper alignment with adjacent work.
- B. Protect unpainted surfaces that are in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals from corrosion and galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint or by separating surfaces with waterproof gaskets or nonmetallic flashing.
- C. Build vents into masonry work as construction progresses; comply with requirements in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."

END OF SECTION 089516

SECTION 092116 - GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the gypsum drywall as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Gypsum board work for partitions, ceilings, column enclosures, furring, and elsewhere where gypsum drywall work is shown on drawings.
  - 2. Metal supports for gypsum drywall construction.
  - 3. Acoustical insulation for gypsum drywall work.
  - 4. Sealant for gypsum drywall work.
  - 5. Concealed metal reinforcing for attachment of railings, toilet partitions and other items supported on drywall partitions and walls.
  - 6. Taping and finishing of drywall joints.
  - 7. Installing rings and frames in drywall surfaces for grilles, registers and lighting fixtures.
  - 8. Gypsum shaft wall construction.
  - 9. Bracing and connections.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Thermal Insulation - Section 072100.
- B. Hollow metal door frames - Section 081113.
- C. Access Doors - Section 083113.
- D. Painting and Finishing - Section 099000.
- E. Rings for grilles, registers and light fixtures - Division 23 and 26.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The following standards, as well as other standards which may be referred to in this Section, shall apply to the work of this Section:
  - 1. The Gypsum Construction Handbook, latest edition, USG.
  - 2. Construction Guide, latest edition, National Gypsum.



3. ASTM A 568 "Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Carbon, and High-Strength, Low-Alloy, Hot-Rolled and Cold-Rolled, General Requirements For"
  4. ASTM C 475 "Standard Specification for Joint Treatment Materials for Gypsum Wallboard Construction"
  5. ASTM C 645 "Standard Specification for Non-Structural Steel Framing Members"
  6. ASTM C 754 "Standard Specification for Installation of Steel Framing Members to Receive Screw Attached Gypsum Panel Products"
  7. ASTM C 840 "Standard Specification for Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board"
  8. ASTM C 919 "Standard Specification for Use of Sealants in Acoustical Applications"
  9. ASTM C 954 "Standard Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Board or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs From 0.033 in. to 0.112 in. in Thickness"
  10. ASTM C 1002 "Standard Specification for Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for the Application of Gypsum Board"
  11. ASTM C 1177 "Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing"
  12. ASTM C 1178 "Standard Specification for Glass Mat Water Resistant Gypsum Backing Board"
  13. ASTM C 1278 "Standard Specification for Fiber-Reinforced Gypsum Panel"
  14. ASTM C 1396 "Standard Specification for Gypsum Board"
  15. ASTM D 3273 "Standard Test Method for Resistance to Growth of Mold on the Surface of Interior Coatings in an Environmental Chamber"
- B. Allowable Tolerances: 1/32" offsets between planes of board faces, and 1/16" in 8'-0" for plumb, level, warp and bow.
- C. System Design Load
1. Provide standard drywall wall assemblies designed and tested by manufacturer to withstand a lateral load of 5 lbs. per sq. ft. for the maximum wall height required, and with deflection limited to L/240 of partition height.
    - a. Drywall assemblies with tile finish shall have a deflection limit of L/360.
  2. Provide drywall ceiling assemblies designed, fabricated and installed to have a deflection not to exceed L/360.
- D. Fire-Resistance Rating: Where gypsum drywall with fire resistance ratings are indicated, provide materials and installations which are identical with those of applicable assemblies tested per ASTM E 119 by fire testing laboratories, or to design designations in UL "Fire Resistance Directory" or in listing of other testing agencies acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and compliant with UL Test #2079; criteria for cycle movement for all field height wall sections requiring allowance for vertical deflection within framing details.
- E. Installer: Firm with not less than 5 years of successful experience in the installation of specified materials.

- F. Code-Compliance Certification of Studs and Tracks: Provide documentation that framing members are certified according to the product-certification program of the Steel Framing Industry Association (SFIA) or be a part of a similar organization that provides verifiable code compliance program.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit shop drawing for each drywall partition, furring and ceiling system showing size and gauges of framing members, hanger and anchorage devices, wallboard types, insulation, sealant, methods of assembly and fastening, control joints indicating column lines, corner details, joint finishing and relationship of drywall work to adjacent work.
- B. Samples: Each material specified herein, 12" x 12", or 12" long, or in manufacturer's container, as applicable for type of material submitted.
- C. Manufacturer's Literature: Submit technical and installation instructions for each drywall partition, furring and ceiling system specified herein, and for each fire-rated and sound-rated gypsum board assembly. Submit other data as required to show compliance with these specifications, including data for mold resistant joint compound.
- D. Test Reports: This Contractor shall submit test report, obtained by drywall manufacturer, indicating conformance of drywall assemblies to required fire ratings and sound ratings.
- E. Evaluation Reports: Submit evaluation reports certified under an independent third-party inspection program administered by an agency accredited by IAS to ICC-ES AC98, IAS Accreditation Criteria for Inspection Agencies.

#### 1.6 PRODUCT HANDLING AND PROTECTION

- A. Deliver, store and handle drywall work materials to prevent damage. Deliver materials in their original, unopened containers or bundles, and store where protected from moisture, damage and from exposure to the elements. Store wallboard in flat stacks.
- B. Protect wallboard from becoming wet.
- C. Protect metal framing from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling as required by AISI's "Code of Standard Practice."

#### 1.7 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

- A. Provide and maintain minimum temperature of fifty-five (55) degrees F. and adequate ventilation to eliminate excessive moisture within the building in the area of the drywall work for at least twenty-four (24) hours, prior to, during and after installation of drywall work. Installation shall not start until windows are glazed and doors are installed, unless openings are temporarily closed. Space above suspended ceilings shall be vented sufficiently to prevent temperature and pressure build up.

#### 1.8 JOB MOCK-UP

- A. At a suitable location, where directed by the Architect, lay up a portion of a finished wall and ceiling demonstrating the quality of work, including finishing, to be obtained under this Section. Omit drywall boards in locations as directed by the Architect to show stud spacing and attachments; after acceptance, complete assembly.
- B. Adjust the finishing techniques as required to achieve the finish required by the Architect as described in this Section of these specifications.

- C. Upon approval of the mock-up, the mock-up may be left in place as a portion of the finished work of this Section.
- D. All drywall work shall be equal in quality to approved mock-up.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers for Gypsum Drywall Panels and Accessories: U.S. Gypsum Co., Georgia Pacific, CertainTeed Corporation, Continental Building Products, or National Gypsum Co. meeting specification requirements are acceptable.
  - 1. All drywall products must be manufactured in North America.
- B. Acceptable Manufacturers for Metal Supports of Drywall Assemblies: Unless otherwise noted, provide products manufactured by ClarkDietrich, Super Stud Building Products, Marino/Ware, or approved equal.

### 2.2 METAL SUPPORTS

#### A. Metal Floor and Ceiling Runners

- 1. Drywall Track: Formed from 0.0312 inch (20 U.S. Std. gauge) (minimum unless otherwise noted or required by performance requirements) cold formed steel, width to suit shaped metal studs. Use 20 ga. top runners with 1-1/4" minimum flanges.
- 2. Deflection track or head of wall connections at rated partitions shall conform to UL #2079 for cycle movement. Provide positive mechanical connection of framing to structure, allowing for vertical movement within connections. Minimum of 0.0312 (20 ga.) cold formed steel for clips, 25 ga. cold formed steel for deflection track.
  - a. Product: "BlazeFrame DSL" or "MaxTrak Slotted Deflection Track" as manufactured by ClarkDietrich, "VertiClip" or "VertiTrack" as manufactured by the Steel Network or equal made by Metal-Lite Inc.
  - b. FireTrak (including stud clips) by FireTrak Corp. or equal made by Metal-Lite Inc.
- 3. Shaft Wall "J" Type Runner: Formed from 0.0329" (20 U.S. Std. gauge) galvanized steel, 1" x 2-1/2" or 4" wide (to suit detail) x 2-1/4" (for shaft wall).

#### B. Metal Studs, Framing and Furring

- 1. C-Shaped Studs: Channel type with holes for passage of conduit formed from minimum 0.0312" (20 U.S. Std. gauge) (unless heavier gauge is required to meet deflection limits) cold formed steel, width as shown on drawings.
- 2. Furring Channels: Hat shaped, formed from galvanized steel, 25 U.S. Std. gauge.
  - a. Product: ClarkDietrich; Furring Channel, or a comparable product.
- 3. "C-H," "CT," or "I" Type Stud: 1-1/2" x 2-1/2", 4" or 6" wide (to suit detail) galvanized steel. Use for shaft wall construction; gauge and size as required to meet deflection limits given herein.
  - a. Product: ClarkDietrich; CT Stud, or a comparable product.

4. Double "E" Type Stud or "J" Track with Holding Tabs: 1" x 2-1/2", 4" or 6" wide (to suit detail) galvanized steel. Use for shaft wall construction; gauge and size as required to meet deflection limits given herein.
  - a. Product: ClarkDietrich; J-Ribbed Track, or a comparable product.
5. Continuous 16 gauge x 8" wide steel wall plate screwed to studs as required for support of railings, toilet partitions and other items supported on drywall partitions and walls.
- C. Resilient Clips: "IsoMax" sound-isolation clips as manufactured by Kinetics Noise Control, Dublin, OH, or approved equal.
  1. Vertical Load Capacity: Clips shall have sufficient capacity to support wall or ceiling weights as constructed. In a vertical load test comparable to a ceiling installation, the clip shall have a minimum design load capacity of 36 lbs. using 25 gauge furring channel. The minimum design load capacity when using 22 gauge furring channel shall be 48 lbs. Design Load capacity shall be based on a safety factor where the load to failure, defined as pullout of the channel from the clip, is a minimum 2.5 times the allowable maximum Design Load. Anchors for attachment of the clips to the substructure shall be selected to support wall and/or ceiling weights at each clip.
  2. The isolation clips shall consist of a rubber element into which a standard galvanized steel furring channel, 7/8 in. x minimum 25 gauge, is captured. The channel legs snap fit into the rubber element without any metal-to-metal or other rigid contact with building elements.
  3. The isolation clip is attached to the wall/ceiling framing or other structural substrate through galvanized steel brackets on each side of the rubber isolation element. The brackets shall be of sufficient strength to carry the wall or ceiling weight without bending or failure.
- D. Isolated Wall Braces: Provide IsoMax Mainstay System with Unibrace-L Bracket by Kinetics Noise Control.
- E. Acoustic Mitigation Resilient Fasteners: For metal stud base and top plates, provide Kinetics Noise Control "Wallmat Resilient Partition Isolation Pad" and "KAI Anchor Isolator Rubber Bushing Assembly" or approved equal.
- F. Suspended Ceiling and Fascia Supports
  1. Main Runners: 1-1/2" steel channels, cold rolled at 0.475 lbs. per ft., rust-inhibitive paint finish.
  2. Furring Members: Screw-type hat-shaped furring channels of 25 ga. zinc-coated steel; comply with ASTM C 645.
  3. Hangers: Galvanized, 1" x 3/16" flat steel slats capable of supporting 5x calculated load supported.
  4. Hanger Anchorages: Provide inserts, clips, bolts, screws and other devices applicable to the required method of structural anchorage for ceiling hangers. Size devices for 5x calculated load supported.
  5. Furring Anchorages: 16 ga. galvanized wire ties, manufacturer's standard clips, bolts or screws as recommended by furring manufacturer.
- G. Protective Coating: All cold-formed steel members shall have coating conforming to AISI S220; ASTM A 653, G60 or coating with equivalent corrosion resistance of ASTM A653/A653M, G60. Galvannealed products are not acceptable.

## 2.3 GYPSUM WALLBOARD TYPES

- A. Gypsum Wallboard: 5/8" thick "Sheetrock" by USG, "Gold Bond" by National Gypsum, or "Regular Gypsum" by CertainTeed Corp., 48" wide, in maximum lengths available to minimize end-to-end butt joints.
- B. Gypsum Ceiling Board: 5/8" thick, sag-resistant, long edges tapered.
- C. Fire-Rated Gypsum Wallboard: 5/8" thick "Sheetrock Firecode C" by USG, "Firecheck Type C" by Lafarge/Continental, "Gold Bond Fireshield" by National Gypsum, or "Type C" and "Type X" by CertainTeed Corp., 48" wide, in maximum lengths available to minimize end-to-end butt joints.
- D. Water-Resistant Backing Board for Tile Finish: 1/2" thick, "DUROCK Glass Mat Tile Backerboard" by USG, "Dens-Shield Tile Backer Board" by Georgia Pacific or "DiamondBack Tile Backer" by CertainTeed Corp. Cover joints with a pressure sensitive woven glass fiber tape equal to Imperial Type P Tape.
- E. Cement Board Backing for Tile Finish at Showers: 1/2" thick "Durock Tile Backer Board" by USG, "Wonder Board Lite" by Custom Building Products or approved equal.
- F. Mold-Resistant Paperless Gypsum Wallboard: 5/8" thick, 48" wide "DensArmor Plus" and "DensArmor Plus Fireguard C" by Georgia Pacific, or equal by National Gypsum, USG or approved equal that has a rating of 10 per ASTM D 3273 with core that meets ASTM C 1396, Section 6 or ASTM C 1658.
- G. Moisture/Mold-Resistant Gypsum Wallboard (at all exterior walls and wet areas): 5/8" thick "Mold Tough," "Mold Tough FR," by U.S. Gypsum, "DensArmor Plus" by Georgia Pacific, "Mold Defense" and/or "Mold Defense Type X" by Lafarge/Continental, or "Gold Bond EXP Interior Extreme Gypsum Board" by National Gypsum, 48" wide, in maximum lengths available to minimize end-to-end butt joints.
  - 1. Board must have a rating of 10 per ASTM D 3273 with a core that meets ASTM C 1396, Section 6 or ASTM C 1658.
- H. Mold-Resistant Shaft Wall Liner: Solid gypsum board liner for shaft wall construction, 1" thick, 24" wide, as required to suit condition, by standard lengths as required, beveled edges. Provide "Mold Tough Liner Panel" by USG, "DensGlass Ultra Shaft Guard" by Georgia Pacific, "Mold Defense Shaftliner Type X" and/or "Weather Defense Shaftliner Type X" by Lafarge/Continental, "Gold Bond Brand Fireshield Shaft Liner XP" or "Gold Bond Brand EXP Extended Exposure Shaft Liner" by National Gypsum, or "M2Tech Shaftliner" by CertainTeed Corp.
  - 1. Liner board must have a rating 10 per ASTM D 3273 with a core that meets ASTM C 1396 Section 6.
- I. Abuse-Resistant Wallboard: 5/8" thick "Sheetrock Brand Mold Tough AR" by USG, "Dens Armor Plus Abuse Resistant Panels" by Georgia-Pacific, "EXP Interior Extreme AR" or "Gold Bond Brand Hi-Abuse XP" by National Gypsum, "Protecta AR100" or "Protecta HIR 300" by Lafarge/Continental, or "AirRenew Extreme Abuse" by CertainTeed Corp., 48" wide, in maximum lengths available to minimize end-to-end butt joints.
  - 1. Board must achieve a Level 1 rating per ASTM C 1629.
- J. Acoustically-Enhanced Gypsum Board: Provide 5/8" thick "QuietRock 530" by PABCO Gypsum, with STC of 52-74 per ASTM E 90, and conforming to ASTM C 1396. Multilayer product constructed of two layers of gypsum board sandwiching a Type X core.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Acoustical Insulation: Paper-less, non-combustible, semi-rigid mineral fiber mat, 2" thick, in walls (unless otherwise indicated), 3 lb./cu. ft. maximum density; Thermafiber "Thermafiber SAFB," Rockwool "Rockwool AFB" or approved equal.
- B. Fasteners for Wallboard: USG Brand Screws; Type S Bugle Head for fastening wallboard to lighter gauge interior metal framing (up to 20 ga.). Type S-12 Bugle Head for fastening wallboard to heavier gauge interior metal framing (20 ga. to 12 ga.); Type S and Type S-12 Pan Head for attaching metal studs to door frames and runners; and Type G Bugle Head for fastening wallboard to wallboard. Lengths specified below under "Part 3 - Execution" Articles and as recommended by drywall manufacturer.
- C. Laminating Adhesive: "Sheetrock Brand Joint Compound."
- D. Metal Trim - Corner Beads: For 90 degree external corners, provide ClarkDietrich "103 Deluxe Corner Bead (CBU)" or "103 Dur-A-Bead" by USG, 26 U.S. Std. ga. galvanized steel, 1-1/4" x 1-1/4".
- E. Metal Trim - Edge Beads: "Sheetrock Brand Paper Faced Metal Bead and Trim."
- F. Partition/Concrete Ceiling Trim: Trim-Tex Super Seal Tear Away or approved equal.
- G. Metal Trim Treatment Materials and Joint Treatment Materials for Gypsum Drywall Boards: Paper tape for joint reinforcing; Setting Type (Durabond 90) or Lightweight Setting Type Joint Compound for taping and topping; and Ready Mix Compound for finishing.
  - 1. For mold-resistant drywall, water-resistant drywall, and tile backer board, use glass mesh tape with setting joint compound that is rated 10 when tested in accordance with ASTM D 3273 and evaluated in accordance with ASTM D 3274. Acceptable joint compound is "Rapid Set One Pass" made by CTS Cement Manufacturing Corp. or "Rapid Joint" manufactured by Lafarge North America or approved equal meeting standards noted herein.
- H. Control Joints: ClarkDietrich; #093 Control Joint or No. 0.093 by USG.
- I. Acoustical Sealant: USG "Acoustical Sealant," "Tremco Acoustical Caulking" of Tremco Mfg. Co., "MasterSeal NP520" by BASF, "QuietSeal" by PABCO Gypsum, or approved equal.
- J. Neoprene Gaskets: Conform to ASTM D 1056.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where gypsum drywall is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

### 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

#### A. General

- 1. Install drywall work in accordance with drywall manufacturer's printed instructions and as indicated on drawings and specified herein.

2. All metal framing for drywall partitions shall extend from floor to underside of structural deck above. Provide for vertical deflection with positive mechanical connections of framing members to structure.
  3. Provide concealed reinforcement, 16 ga. thick by eight (8) inches wide or as detailed or as recommended by manufacturer, for attachment of railings, toilet partitions, and other items to be supported on the partitions which cannot be attached to the metal framing members. Concealed reinforcement shall span between metal studs and be attached thereto using two (2) self-tapping pan head screws at each stud.
    - a. Back of drywall shall be scored or notched to prevent bulging out where reinforcement plate occurs.
- B. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install fire-rated assemblies in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, Underwriters' Laboratories and test results obtained and published by the drywall manufacturer, for the fire-rated drywall assembly types indicated on the drawings.
- C. Acoustical Assemblies: Install acoustically-rated assemblies to achieve a minimum STC as noted on drawings, in accordance with test results obtained and published by the drywall manufacturer, for the drywall assembly type indicated on the drawings.
- D. Sealant
1. Install continuous acoustical sealant bead at top and bottom edges of wallboard where indicated or required for sound rating as wallboard is installed, and between metal trim edge beads and abutting construction.
  2. Install acoustical sealant in 1/8" wide vertical control joints within the length of the wall or partitions, and in all other joints, specified below under "Control Joints." Install bead of acoustical sealant around electric switch and outlet boxes, piping, ducts, and around any other penetration in the wallboard; place sealant bead between penetrations and edge of wallboard.
  3. Where sealant is exposed to view, protect adjacent surfaces from damage and from sealant material, and tool sealant flush with and in same plane as wallboard surface. Sealant beads shall be 1/4" to 3/8" diameter.
- E. Wallboard Application
1. Do not install wallboard panels until steel door frames are in place; coordinate work with Section 081113, "Steel Doors and Frames."
  2. See drawings for all board types. Use fire-rated wallboard for fire-rated assemblies. Use sag-resistant board for ceilings. Use water-resistant wallboard where indicated on drawings and where wallboard would be subject to moisture. Install water-resistant wallboard in full, large sheets (no scraps) to limit number of butt joints.
  3. Apply wallboard with long dimension parallel to stud framing members, and with abutting edges occurring over stud flanges.
  4. Install wallboard for partitions from floor to underside of structure above and secure rigidly in place by screw attachment, unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Provide "Thermafiber" safig insulation meeting standards of Section 078413 at flutes of metal deck where partitions carry up to bottom of metal deck.
  6. Neatly cut wallboard to fit around outlets, switch boxes, framed openings, piping, ducts, and other items which penetrate wallboard; fill gaps with acoustic sealant.

7. Where wallboard is to be applied to curved surfaces, dampen wallboard on back side as required to obtain required curve. Finish surface shall present smooth, even curve without fluting or other imperfections.
8. Screw fasten wallboard with power-driven electric screw driver, screw heads to slightly depress surface of wallboard without cutting paper, screws not closer than 3/8" from ends and edges of wallboard.
9. Where studs are doubled-up, screw fasten wallboard to both studs in a staggered pattern.

F. Cementitious Backer Board

1. General: Furnish cementitious backer board in maximum available lengths. Install horizontally, with end joints over framing members.
2. Fastening: Secure cementitious backer board to each framing member with screws spaced not more than 12 inches on center and not closer than 1/2" from the edge. Install screws with a conventional screw gun so that the screw heads are flush with the surface of the board.
3. Joint Treatment: Fill space between edge of backer and receptor with dry-set Portland cement or latex-Portland cement mortar. Fill all horizontal and vertical joints and corners with dry-set Portland cement or latex-Portland cement mortar. Apply fiberglass tape over joints and corners and embed with same mortar.

G. Metal Trim: Install and mechanically secure in accordance with manufacturer's instructions; and finish with three (3) coats of joint compound, feathered and finish sanded smooth with adjacent wallboard surface, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

1. Corner Beads: Install specified corner beads in single lengths at all external corners, unless corner lengths exceed standard stock lengths.
2. Edge Beads: Install specified edge beads in single lengths at all terminating edges of wallboard exposed to view, where edges abut dissimilar materials, where edges would be exposed to view, and elsewhere where shown on drawings. Where indicated on drawings, seal joint between metal edge bead and adjoining surface with specified gasket, 1/8" wide minimum and set back 1/8" from face of wallboard, unless other size and profile indicated on drawings.
3. Casing beads shall be set in long lengths, neatly butted at joints. Provide casing beads at juncture of board and vertical surfaces and at exposed perimeters.

H. Control Joint Locations: Gypsum board surfaces shall be isolated with control joints where:

1. Ceiling abuts a structural element, dissimilar wall or other vertical penetration.
2. Construction changes within the plane of the partition or ceiling.
3. Shown on approved shop drawings.
4. Ceiling dimensions exceed thirty (30) feet in either direction.
5. Wings of "L," "U," and "T" shaped ceiling areas are joined.
6. Expansion or control joints occur in the structural elements of the building.
7. Shaft wall runs exceed 30' without interruption.
8. Partition or furring abuts a structural element or dissimilar wall or ceiling.
9. Partition or furring runs exceed 30' without interruption.



10. Where control joints are required, ceiling height door frames may be used as control joints. Less than ceiling height frames shall have control joints extending to the ceiling from both corners.

I. Joint Treatment and Spackling

1. Joints between face wallboards in the same plane, joints at internal corners of intersecting partitions and joints at internal corners of intersections between ceilings and walls or partitions shall be filled with joint compound.
2. Screw heads and other depressions shall be filled with joint compound. Joint compound shall be applied in three (3) coats, feathered and finish surface sanded smooth with adjacent wallboard surface, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Treatment of joints and screw heads with joint compound is also required where wallboard will be covered by finish materials which require a smooth surface, such as vinyl wall coverings.

3.3 FURRED WALLS AND PARTITIONS

- A. Use specified metal furring channels. Run metal furring channel framing members vertically, space sixteen (16) inches o.c. maximum. Fasten furring channels to concrete or masonry surfaces with power-driven fasteners or concrete stub nails spaced sixteen (16) inches o.c. maximum through alternate wing flanges (staggered) of furring channel. Furring channels shall be shimmed as necessary to provide a plumb and level backing for wallboard. At inside of exterior walls, an asphalt felt protection strip shall be installed between each furring channel and the wall. Furring channel and splices shall be provided by nesting channels at least eight (8) inches and securely anchoring to concrete or masonry with two (2) fasteners in each wing.
- B. Wallboard Installation: Same as specified under Article 3.4 - "Metal Stud Partitions."

3.4 METAL STUD PARTITIONS

- A. Unless otherwise noted, steel framing members shall be installed in accordance with ASTM C 754.
- B. Runner Installation: Use channel type. Align accurately at floor according to partition layout. Anchor runners securely sixteen (16) inches o.c. maximum with power-driven anchors to floor slab, with power-driven anchors to structural slab above. See "Stud Installation" below for runners over heads of metal door frames. Where required, carefully remove sprayed-on fireproofing to allow partition to be properly installed.
- C. Stud Installation
  1. Use channel type, positioned vertically in runners, spaced as noted on drawings, but not more than sixteen (16) inches o.c.
  2. Anchor studs to floor runners with screw fasteners. Provide snap-in or slotted hole slip joint bolt connections of studs to ceiling runners leaving space for movement. Anchor studs at partition intersections, partition corners and where partition abuts other construction to floor and ceiling runners with sheet metal screws through each stud flange and runner flange.
  3. Connection at ceiling runner for non-rated partitions shall be snap-in or slotted hole slip joint bolt connection that shall allow for movement. Seal studs abutting other construction with 1/8" thick neoprene gasket continuously between stud and abutting construction.
  4. Connections for fire rated partitions at ceiling runners shall conform to UL Design #2079.
  5. Install metal stud horizontal bracing wherever vertical studs are cut or wallboard is cut for passage of pipes, ducts or other penetrations, and anchor horizontal bracing to vertical studs with sheet metal screws.

6. At jambs of door frames and borrowed light frames, install doubled-up studs (not back to back) from floor to underside of structural deck, and securely anchor studs to jamb anchors of frames and to runners with screws. Provide cross braces from hollow metal frames to underside of slab.
  7. Over heads of door frames, install cut-to-length section of runner with flanges slit and web bent to allow flanges to overlap adjacent vertical studs, and securely anchor runner to adjacent vertical studs with sheet metal screws. Install cut-to-length vertical studs from runner (over heads of door frame) to ceiling runner sixteen (16) inches maximum o.c. and at vertical joints of wallboard, and securely anchor studs to runners with sheet metal screws.
  8. At control joints, in field of partition, install double-up studs (back to back) from floor to ceiling runner, with 1/4" thick continuous compressible gasket between studs. When necessary, splice studs with eight (8) inches minimum nested laps and attach flanges together with two (2) sheet metal screws in each flange. All screws shall be self-tapping sheet metal screws.
- D. Runners and Studs at Chase Wall: As specified above for "Runners" and "Studs" and as specified herein. Chase walls shall have either a single or double row of floor and ceiling runners with metal studs sixteen (16) inches o.c. maximum and positioned vertically in the runners so that the studs are opposite each other in pairs with the flanges pointing in the same direction. Anchor all studs to runner flanges with sheet metal screws through each stud flange and runner flange following requirements of paragraph 3.4, B. Provide cross bracing between the rows of studs by attaching runner channels or studs set full width of chase attached to vertical studs with one self-tapping screw at each end. Space cross bracing not over thirty-six (36) inches o.c. vertically.

E. Wallboard Installation - Single Layer Application (Screw Attached)

1. Install wallboard with long dimension parallel to framing member and with abutting edge joints over web of framing member. Install wallboard with long dimension perpendicular to framing members above and below openings in drywall extending to second stud at each side of opening. Joints on opposite sides of wall shall be arranged so as to occur on different studs.
2. Boards shall be fastened securely to metal studs with screws as specified. Where a free end occurs between studs, back blocking shall be required. Center abutting ends over studs. Correct work as necessary so that faces of boards are flush, smooth, true.
3. Wallboard screws shall be applied with an electric screw gun. Screws shall be driven not less than 3/8" from ends or edges of board to provide uniform dimple not over 1/32" deep. Screws shall be spaced twelve (12) inches o.c. in the field of the board and 8" o.c. staggered along the abutting edges.
4. All ends and edges of wallboard shall occur over screwing members (studs or furring channels). Boards shall be brought into contact but shall not be forced into place. Where ends or edges abut, they shall be staggered. Joints on opposite sides of a partition shall be so arranged as to occur on different studs.
5. At locations where piping receptacles, conduit, switches, etc., penetrate drywall partitions, provide non-drying sealant and an approved sealant stop at cut board locations inside partition.

F. Wallboard Installation - Double-Layer Application

1. General: See drawings for wallboard partition types required.
2. First Layer (Screw Attached): Install as described above for single layer application.
3. Second Layer (Screw Attached): Screw attach second layer, unless laminating method of attachment indicated on drawings or necessary to obtain required sound rating or fire rating. Install wallboard vertically with vertical joints offset thirty-two (32) inches from first layer joints and

staggered on opposite sides of wall. Attach wallboard with 1-5/8" screws sixteen (16) inches o.c. along vertical joints and sixteen (16) inches o.c. in the field of the wallboard. Screw through first layer into metal framing members.

4. Second Layer (Laminated): Install wallboard vertically. Stagger joints of second layer from first layer joints. Laminate second layer with specified laminating adhesive in beads or strips running continuously from floor to ceiling in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. After laminating, screw wallboard to framing members with 1-5/8" screws, spaced twelve (12) inches o.c. around perimeter of wallboard.

G. Wallboard Installation - Laminated Application: Where laminated wallboard is indicated, use specified laminating adhesive, install wallboard vertically and maintain tolerances as specified for screw attached wallboard.

H. Insulation Installation: Install where indicated on drawings. Place blanket tightly between studs.

I. Deflection of Structure Above: To allow for possible deflection of structure above partitions, provide top runners for non-rated partitions with 1-1/4" minimum flanges and do not screw studs or drywall to top runner. Where positive anchorage of studs to top runner is required, anchorage device shall be by means of slotted hole (in clip connection with screw attachment to web of steel through bushings located in slots of clips), or other anchorage device approved by Architect.

#### J. Control Joints

1. Leave a 1/2" continuous opening between gypsum boards for insertion of surface mounted joint.
2. Back by double framing members.
3. Attach control joint to face layer with 9/16" galvanized staples six (6) inches o.c. at both flanges along entire length of joint.
4. Provide two (2) inch wide gypsum panel strip or other adequate seal behind control joint in fire rated partitions and partitions with safing insulation.

### 3.5 DRYWALL FASCIAS AND CEILINGS

- A. Furnish and install inserts, hanger clips and similar devices in coordination with other work.
- B. Secure hangers to inserts and clips. Clamp or bolt hangers to main runners.
- C. Space main runners 4'-0" o.c. and space hangers 4'-0" o.c. along runners, except as otherwise shown.
- D. Level main runners to a tolerance of 1/4" in 12'-0", measured both lengthwise on each runner and transversely between parallel runners.
- E. Metal Furring Channels: Space sixteen (16) inches o.c. maximum. Attach to 1-1/2" main runner channels with furring channel clips (on alternate sides of main runner channels). Furring channels shall not be let into or come in contact with abutting masonry walls. End splices shall be provided by nesting furring channels no less than eight (8) inches and securely wire tying. At any openings that interrupt the furring channels, install additional cross reinforcing to restore lateral stability.
- F. Mechanical accessories, hangers, splices, runner channels and other members used in suspension system shall be of metal, zinc coated, or coated with rust inhibitive paint, of suitable design and of adequate strength to support units securely without sagging, and such as to bring unit faces to finished indicated lines and levels.
  1. Provide special furring where ducts are over two (2) feet wide.

- G. Apply board with its long dimension at right angles to channels. Locate board butt joints over center of furring channels. Attach board with one (1) inch self-drilling drywall screws twelve (12) inches o.c. in field of board at each furring channel; eight (8) inches o.c. at butt joints located not less than 3/8" from edges.

### 3.6 SHAFT WALLS

- A. Runner Installation: Use "J" metal runners at floor and ceiling, with the short leg toward finish side of wall. Securely attach runners to structural supports with power-driven fasteners at both ends and twenty-four (24) inches o.c.
- B. Shaft Wall Liner: Cut shaft wall liner panels one (1) inch less from floor to ceiling height and erect vertically between J-runners.
- C. C-H Studs: Cut metal studs 3/8" to not more than 1/2" less than floor to ceiling height and install between shaft wall liner panels so that panels are fitted snugly into the one (1) inch wide "H," "T," or "I" portion of the stud. Space studs twenty-four (24) inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated on drawings. Install full-length steel E-Studs or J-runners vertically at T-intersections, corners, door jambs, and columns. Install full length E-Studs or J-runners over shaft wall liner both sides of closure panels. Frame openings cut within a liner panel with J-Runner around perimeter. For openings, frame with vertical E-Stud or J-runner at edges, horizontal runner at head and sill, and reinforcing as shown on the drawings. Suitably frame all openings to maintain structural support for wall. Over metal doors, install a cut to length section of runner and attach to strut-studs with clip angles and 3/8" Type S Screws space twelve (12) inches o.c.
- D. Wallboard Installation - Double Layer Installation: Erect gypsum wallboard base layer vertically or horizontally to meet fire rating on one side of studs with end joints staggered. Fasten base layer panels to studs with one (1) inch Type S screws twenty-four (24) inches o.c. Caulk perimeter of base layer panels. Apply gypsum wallboard face layer vertically over base layer with joints staggered and attached with 1-5/8" Type S screws staggered from those in base, spaced eight (8) inches o.c. and driven into studs.
- E. Wallboard Installation (Where Both Sides of Shaft Wall are Finished): Apply gypsum wallboard face layers vertically both sides of studs. Stagger joints on opposite partition sides. Fasten panels with one (1) inch or two (2) inches Type S screws spaced eight (8) inches o.c. in field and along edges into studs.
- F. Where handrails are indicated for direct attachment to drywall shaft system, provide not less than a sixteen (16) ga. x eight (8) inches wide galvanized steel reinforcement strip, accurately positioned and secured to studs and concealed behind not less than one 1/2" thick course of gypsum board in the system.
- G. Integrate stair hanger rods with drywall shaft system by locating cavity of system as required to enclose rods.

### 3.7 ERECTION AT COLUMN ENCLOSURES

- A. Metal furring supports shall be provided under work of this Section, and shall be cut to lengths as necessary for tight fit such that spacing is not more than sixteen (16) inches o.c.
- B. Board shall be fastened securely to supports with screws as specified. Place boards in position with minimum number of joints. Where free ends occur between supports, back-blocking or furring shall be required. Center abutting ends over supports. Correct work as necessary so that faces of boards are flush, smooth and true. Provide clips or cross furring for attachment as required.
- C. All layers shall be screw attached to furring.

- D. When column finish called for on drawings to be in the same plane as drywall finish layer, maintain even, level plane.

### 3.8 FINISHING

- A. Taping: A thin, uniform layer of compound shall be applied to all joints and angles to be reinforced. Reinforcing tape shall be applied immediately, centered over the joint, seated into the compound. A skim coat shall follow immediately but shall not function as a fill or second coat. Tape shall be properly folded and embedded in all angles to provide a true angle.
- B. Filling: After initial coat of compound has hardened, additional compound shall be applied, filling the board taper flush with the surface. The fill coat shall cover the tape and feather out slightly beyond the tape. On joints with no taper, the fill coat shall cover the tape and feather out at least four (4) inches on either side of the tape. No fill coat is necessary on interior angles.
- C. After compound has hardened, a finishing coat of compound shall be spread evenly over and extending slightly beyond the fill coat on all joints and feathered to a smooth, uniform finish. Over tapered edges, the finished joint shall not protrude beyond the plane of the surface. All taped angles shall receive a finish coat to cover the tape and taping compound and provide a true angle. Where necessary, sanding shall be done between coats and following the final application of compound to provide a smooth surface, ready for painting.
- D. Fastener Depressions: Compound shall be applied to all fastener depressions followed, when hardened by at least two (2) coats of compound, leaving all depressions level with the plane of the surface.
- E. Finishing Beads and Trim: Compound shall be applied to all bead and trim and shall be feathered out from the ground to the plane of the surface. When hardened, this shall be followed by two (2) coats of compound each extending slightly beyond the previous coat. The finish coat shall be feathered from the ground to the plane of the surface and sanded as necessary to provide a flat, smooth surface ready for decoration.
- F. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C 840 and GA-214 of the Gypsum Association.
  - 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
  - 2. Level 2: Panels that are a substrate for tile, and where indicated.
  - 3. Level 4: Level of finish for surfaces exposed to view shall conform to Level 4.
- G. Drywall construction with defects of such character which will mar appearance of finished work, or which is otherwise defective, will be rejected and shall be removed and replaced at no expense to the Owner.

### 3.9 CLEANING AND ADJUSTMENT

- A. At the completion of installation of the work, all rubbish shall be removed from the building leaving floors broom clean. Excess material, scaffolding, tools and other equipment shall be removed from the building.
- B. Work shall be left in clean condition ready for painting or wall covering. All work shall be as approved by Architect.
- C. Cutting and Repairing: Include all cutting, fitting and repairing of the work included herein in connection with all mechanical trades and all other trades which come in conjunction with any part of the work and leave all work complete and perfect after all trades have completed their work.

3.10 PROTECTION OF WORK

- A. Installer shall advise Contractor of required procedures for protecting drywall work from damage and deterioration during remainder of construction period.

END OF SECTION 092116

SECTION 093013 - CERAMIC TILING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the ceramic tiling work as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Ceramic and porcelain floor and wall tile.
  - 2. Setting beds, grout and sealant.
  - 3. Waterproofing membrane.
  - 4. Stainless steel trims and reveals.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Cast-in-Place Concrete - Section 033000.
- B. Unit Masonry - Section 042000.
- C. Gypsum Board Assemblies - Section 092116.

1.4 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI A108 Series/A118 Series - American National Standards for Installation of Ceramic Tile.
- B. ANSI A136.1 - American National Standards for Organic Adhesives for Installation of Ceramic Tile.
- C. ASTM C 144 - Standard Specification for Aggregate for Masonry Mortar.
- D. ASTM C 150 - Standard Specification for Portland Cement.
- E. TCNA - Handbook for Ceramic, Glass and Stone Tile Installation; Tile Council of North America.
- F. ISO 13007 - International Standards Organization; Classification for Grout and Adhesives.
- G. Large Format Tile (LFT): Tile 15" or larger in any direction and/or 144 sq. in. in size.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications of Installers: For cutting, installing and grouting of ceramic tile, use only thoroughly trained and experienced journeyman tile setters who are completely familiar with the requirements of this work, and the recommendations contained in the referenced standards, and the installers are Certified Ceramic Tile Installer (CTI) through the Ceramic Tile Education Foundation (CTEF) or Tile Installer Thin Set Standards (ITS) verification through the University of Ceramic Tile and Stone.
- B. Codes and Standards: In addition to complying with all pertinent codes and regulations, comply with the following:

1. Manufacture all ceramic tile in accordance with Standard Grade Requirements of ANSI A-137.1.
  2. Install all ceramic tile in accordance with the recommendations contained in "Tile Council of North America Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation (TCNA)," latest edition.
- C. Flooring surfaces shall have a minimum wet DCOF AcuTest value of 0.42 and tested per ANSI A326.3 Dynamic Coefficient of Friction of Hard Surface Flooring Materials.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Samples

1. Before any ceramic tile is delivered to the job site, submit to the Architect sample panels, approx. 12" x 12", mounted on hardboard back-up with selected grout color for each color and pattern of ceramic tile and grout specified.
2. Submit 12" x 12" samples of waterproofing membrane.

B. Master Grade Certificates: Prior to opening ceramic tile containers, submit to the Architect a Master Grade Certificate, signed by an officer of the firm manufacturing the ceramic tile used, and issued when the shipment is made, stating the grade, kind of tile, identification marks for tile containers, and the name and location of the project.

C. Mock-Ups

1. At an area on the site where approved by the Architect, provide a mock-up ceramic tile installation.
  - a. Make the mock-up approximately 48" x 48" in dimension.
  - b. Provide one mock-up for each type, class, and color of installation required under this Section.
  - c. The mock-ups may be used as part of the Work and may be included in the finished Work when so approved by the Architect.
  - d. Revise as necessary to secure the Architect's approval.
2. The mock-ups, when approved by the Architect, will be used as datum for comparison with the remainder of the work of this Section for the purposes of acceptance or rejection.
3. If the mock-up panels are not permitted to be part of the finished Work, completely demolish and remove them from the job site upon completion and acceptance of the work of this Section.

D. Shop Drawings: Submit completely dimensioned tile layouts for all areas where a tile pattern is expressed on drawings.

1. Details of construction and installation at all conditions.
2. Details of tile color used throughout pattern.

1.7 PRODUCT HANDLING

A. Delivery and Storage

1. Deliver all materials of this Section to the job site in their original unopened containers with all labels intact and legible at time of use.
2. Store all materials under cover in a manner to prevent damage and contamination; store only the specified materials at the job site.



- B. Protection: Use all means necessary to protect the materials of this Section before, during, and after installation, and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.
- C. Replacements: In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary.

## 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions and protect work during and after installation to comply with referenced standards and manufacturer's printed recommendations.
- B. Vent temporary heaters to exterior to prevent damage to tile work from carbon dioxide buildup.
- C. Maintain temperatures at not less than 50 deg. F. in tiled areas during installation and for 7 days after completion.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS OF TILE

- A. Provide tile as indicated below or approved equal meeting these specifications. The Architect reserves the right to pick tile from any price group.
  - 1. See Material Schedule on the contract drawings for Manufacturer, Style / Type, Colors, and Sizes of Ceramic and Porcelain Tile.

### 2.2 TRIM AND SPECIAL SHAPES

- A. Provide external and internal corners, trim shapes at openings, and all other trim and special shapes to match the tile specified herein, as required by field conditions and drawing details.
- B. Anodized Aluminum Trims and Reveals: As detailed on the drawings, manufactured by Fry Reglet.

### 2.3 SETTING BEDS AND GROUT

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type 1.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Sand: ASTM C 144, clean and graded natural sand.
- D. Latex Admixture for Mortar Bed
  - 1. MAPEI, Planicrete AC, blended with a 3:1 site mix.
  - 2. Laticrete 333.
  - 3. Pro Spec; Acrylic Additive.
  - 4. Custom Building Products; Custom Crete Thin Set Additive.
- E. Latex-Portland Cement Bond Coat, complying with ANSI A118.4 and ISO 13007, C2ES2P1 with minimum compressive strength of 400 psi.
  - 1. MAPEI, Keraflex Super.
  - 2. Laticrete; 211 dry-set mortar and 4237 latex admixture.

3. Pro Spec; Permalastic System consisting of Permalastic Dryset Mortar and Permalastic Admixture.
  4. Custom Building Products; Pro-Lite.
- F. Improved Modified Cement Mortars: For use with large format tile (LFT), complying with ANSI 118.15 and ISO 13007, CSES2PS.
1. Custom Building Products; Mega-Lite Crack Prevention Mortar (650-725 psi).
  2. Laticrete; 220 Marble Granite Mortar (500-540 psi).
  3. Mapei; Keraflex Super (400-600 psi).
  4. Pro Spec; StayFlex 590 (460 psi).
- G. For Applications Over Polished CMU (at locker rooms): "Planitop 330 Fast" (wall preparation), "Ultraflex 2" (bond coat), "Ultracolor Plus FA" (grout) and "Mapesil T" (sealant for movement joints).
- H. Wall and Base Tile
1. Over masonry and concrete, use a mortar bed leveling coat conforming to ANSI A108.1A followed by a Latex Portland Cement Bond Coat: MAPEI "Keraflex Super," Custom Building Products "Mega Flex" or equal by Laticrete or Pro Spec, conforming to ANSI A118.4, ISO 13007-C2ES2P1, and TCA Detail W-211.
  2. Over cement board, use a Latex Portland cement mortar bond coat: MAPEI, "Keraflex Super," Custom Building Products "Mega Flex" or equal by Laticrete or Pro Spec, conforming to ANSI A118.4, ISO 13007-C2ES2P1, and TCA Detail W-244; coat back of board with waterproof membrane as specified below.
  3. Over glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum backer board, use a Latex Portland cement mortar bond coat: MAPEI "Keraflex Super" conforming to ANSI A118.4, ISO 13007-C2ES2P2, and TCA Detail W-245.
- I. Floor Tile - Thin Set over Waterproof Setting Bed: Set floor tile and stone saddle using thin set latex Portland cement bond coat. Basis of Design: MAPEI "Keraflex Super" conforming to ANSI A118.4, ISO 13007-C2ES2P1, and waterproofing membrane conforming to TCA Detail F-122/122A.
1. For installation of LFT, Improved Modified Cement Mortars and medium bed. Basis of Design: MAPEI "Ultraflex LFT" conforming to ANSI 118.15, ISO 13007-C2ES2P1.
- J. Waterproofing Membrane: Complying with ANSI A118.10 and ANSI A118.12; and having IAPMO certification as a shower pan liner; provide "Mapelastic AquaDefense" by MAPEI with factory blended "Bio-Block Antimicrobial," "Laticrete 9235 with Mircoban" made by Laticrete International, ProSpec "B6000," Custom Building Products' "9240," or approved equal.
1. Reinforce membrane with polyester fabric.
  2. Showers: B-415; run waterproofing up full height of walls.
- K. Water: Clean, fresh and suitable for drinking.
- L. Grout: Complying with A118.7; and ISO 13007, CG2WAF; for grouting ceramic tile, provide a commercial Portland cement grout "Ultracolor Plus FA" (additive not required) made by MAPEI, or comparable product by Laticrete, Custom Building Products or approved equal; color as selected by the Architect. Add latex additive to grout made by same manufacturer as grout.
- M. Physical Properties: The setting beds and grouts must meet the following physical requirements:

1. Compressive Strength: 3000 psi min.
  2. Shear Bond Strength: 500 psi min.
  3. Water Absorption: 4.0% max.
  4. Service Rating (ASTM C 627): Extra Heavy Duty.
- N. Sealer: Seal all grout joints and all unglazed tile using "Sealer's Choice 15 Gold" by Aqua Mix Inc. or "Ultracare Penetrating Plus Stone, Tile, and Grout Sealer" by MAPEI.
- O. Temporary Protective Coating: Either product indicated below that is applied in the tile manufacturer's factory and formulated to protect exposed surfaces of tile against adherence of mortar and grout; compatible with tile, mortar, and grout products; and easily removable after grouting is completed without damaging grout or tile.
1. Petroleum paraffin wax, applied hot, fully refined and odorless, containing at least 0.5 percent oil with a melting point of 120 to 140 deg. F. per ASTM D 87.
  2. Grout release in form of manufacturer's standard proprietary liquid coating that is specially formulated and recommended for use as temporary protective coating for tile.
- P. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.

#### 2.4 SEALANT

- A. Joint Backing: Preformed, compressible, resilient, non-extruding, non-staining strips of foam neoprene, foam polyethylene, or other material recommended by sealant manufacturer.
- B. Bond Breaker: Polyethylene tape, 3 mils thick, or other material recommended by sealant manufacturer.
- C. Sealant Primer: Colorless, non-staining, or type to suit substrate surface, as recommended by sealant manufacturer.
- D. Sealant: One-part silicone based sanitary sealant, conforming to ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25. Sealant hardness upon full cure shall be between 20-30 Shore "A" Durometer. Color of sealant to blend with or match adjacent materials, and as selected by the Architect. Sealant shall be equivalent to 1700 Sanitary Sealant made by General Electric or approved equal.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where ceramic tile is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

#### 3.2 CONDITION OF SURFACES

- A. Allowable Variations in Substrate Levels in Floors: + 1/8" in 10'-0" distance and 1/4" total max. variation from levels shown.
- B. Grind or fill concrete and masonry substrates as required to comply with allowable variations.
- C. Concrete substrates must meet ANSI A108.01 tolerances and surface textures in preparation for tile work. Coordinate with concrete trades.

### 3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate the following with Section 033000:
  - 1. Steel trowel and fine broom finish concrete slabs that are to receive ceramic tile. Cure concrete slabs that are to receive tile before tile application. Do not use liquid curing compounds or other coatings that may prevent bonding of tile setting materials to slabs. Slab shall be dry at time of tile installation.
  - 2. Tile floors with floor drains must have a slope to direction of 1/4" per foot; coordinate this with concrete trades.
- B. Etch concrete substrate as may be required to remove curing compounds or other substances that would interfere with proper bond of setting bed. Rinse with water to remove all traces of treatment.
- C. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at project site before installing.
- D. Field Applied Temporary Protective Coating: Pre-coat tile with continuous film of temporary protective coating, taking care not to coat unexposed tile surfaces.

### 3.4 JOINTS IN TILE WORK

- A. Joint Widths: 1/16" wide in ceramic tile.
- B. Alignment: Wall, base and floor joints shall align through the field and trim. Direction and location of all joints as directed by Architect.
- C. Movement Joints: Conform to TCA Detail EJ171. Locate where movement joints are in back-up material. Provide movement joint at joints between mop receptors and ceramic tile. Provide movement joint at all vertical internal joints of wall tile. Movement joints 1/8" wide in ceramic tile. Fill all movement joints with specified backing and sealant. Use bond breaker where sufficient space for joint backing does not exist.
  - 1. Provide sealant between ceramic tile and plumbing fixtures, mirrors, pipes, countertops and other dissimilar materials penetrating or adjacent to ceramic tile.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the following installation standards:
  - 1. Wall tile over cement board or glass mat backer board using dry set mortar with latex additive - ANSI A118.4 and ISO 13007, C2ES1P1.
  - 2. Wall tile over masonry or concrete using dry set mortar with latex additive - ANSI A118.4 and ISO 13007, C2ES1P1.
  - 3. Floor tile over waterproofing membrane - ANSI A118.4, 118.5, and ISO 13007, C2ES1P1.
- B. Backs of tile must be cleaned before installation.
- C. All setting beds and/or adhesives shall provide for an average contact area of not less than 95% coverage.

- D. Allowable Variations in Finished Work: Do not exceed the following deviations from level and plumb, and from elevations, locations, slopes and alignment shown.
  - 1. Floors: 1/8" in 10'-0" run, any direction; +/- 1/8" at any location; 1/32" offset at any location.
  - 2. Walls: 1/8" in 8'-0" run, any direction; 1/8" at any location; offset at any location, 1/32".
  - 3. Joints: +/- 1/32" joint width variation of any location; 1/16" in 3'-0" run deviation from plumb and true.
- E. Waterproofing Membrane
  - 1. Install the membrane in strict accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations.
  - 2. Upon completion of work, test horizontal membrane for leaks by flood testing per ASTM D 5957. Inspect for leakage. Make necessary adjustments to stop all leakage and retest until watertight. If membrane is not immediately covered by another surface, provide protection until membrane is covered.
- F. Handle, store, mix and apply setting and grouting materials in compliance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- G. Extend tile work into recesses and under equipment and fixtures, to form a complete covering without interruptions. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges and corners without disruption of pattern or joint alignment.
- H. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight, aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping and fixtures so that plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
- I. Lay tile in grid pattern. Align joints when adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls and trim are the same size. Lay out tile work and center tile fields both directions in each space or on each wall area. Adjust to minimize tile cutting. Provide uniform joint widths.

### 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION OF CERAMIC TILE

- A. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
  - 1. Remove grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
  - 2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use cleaners only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning to insure removal of all cleaning material.
  - 3. Remove temporary protective coating by method recommended by coating manufacturer and that is acceptable to tile and grout manufacturer. Trap and remove coating to prevent drain clogging.
- B. Protect installed tile work with Kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. Apply coat of sealer to all grout joints and all unglazed tile.
- C. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.
- D. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings from tile surfaces.

- E. Leave finished installation clean and free of cracked, chipped, broken, unbonded or otherwise defective tile work.

END OF SECTION 093013

SECTION 095113 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the acoustical panel ceilings as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Acoustical panel units.
  - 2. Exposed "T" suspension system, including hangers and inserts.
  - 3. Aluminum trim.
  - 4. Provisions for the installation of lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles and similar items provided under other Sections.
  - 5. Cutting, drilling, scribing and fitting as required for electro-mechanical penetrations.
  - 6. Perimeter and column moldings, trim and accessories for acoustical ceilings.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Steel Deck - Section 053100.
- B. Drywall ceilings - Section 092116.
- C. Diffusers, grilles and related frames - Division 23.
- D. Lighting fixtures - Division 26.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Codes and Standards: In addition to complying with all pertinent codes and regulations, comply with all pertinent recommendations published by the Ceilings and Interior Systems Contractor's Association.
- B. Qualifications of Installers
  - 1. The suspended ceiling subcontractor shall have a record of successful installation of similar ceilings acceptable to Architect and shall be currently approved by the manufacturer of the ceiling suspension system.
  - 2. For the actual fabrication and installation of all components of the system, use only personnel who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the skills required and completely familiar with the requirements established for this work.
- C. The work is subject to the following standards:

1. ASTM C 635 "Standard Specification for Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-In Panel Ceilings," American Society for Testing and Materials.
  2. ASTM C 636 "Standard Recommended Practice for Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-In Panels," American Society for Testing and Materials.
- D. In addition to suspension system specified, provide seismic struts and seismic clips to meet seismic standards as required by prevailing Codes and Ordinances.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Submit completely dimensioned ceiling layouts for all areas where acoustical ceilings are required, showing:
1. Any deviations from Architect's reflected ceiling plan layouts, especially lighting fixture and dimensions. Also indicate if any light fixtures will not fit into Architect's ceiling layout due to dimensional restrictions or field conditions.
  2. Direction and spacing of suspension members and location of hangers for carrying suspension members.
  3. Direction, sizes and types of acoustical units, showing suspension grid members, and starting point for each individual ceiling area.
  4. Moldings at perimeter of ceiling, at columns and elsewhere as required due to penetrations or exposure at edge of ceiling tiles.
  5. Location and direction of lights, air diffusers, air slots, and similar items in the ceiling plane.
  6. Details of construction and installation at all conditions.
  7. Materials, gauges, thickness and finishes.
- B. Samples and Product Literature: Submit the following samples and related manufacturer's descriptive literature.
1. Twelve (12) inch long components of suspension systems, including moldings.
  2. Acoustical units — full size.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical ceiling units to project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, direct sunlight, surface contamination or other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical ceiling units, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.
- C. Handle acoustical ceiling units carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install acoustical ceilings until wet-work in space is completed and nominally dry, work above ceilings has been completed, and ambient conditions of temperature and humidity will be continuously maintained at values near those indicated for final occupancy.



1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of acoustical ceiling units and suspension system components with other work supported by or penetrating through ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire suppression system components, and partition system.

1.9 EXTRA STOCK

- A. Extra Stock: Deliver stock of maintenance material to Owner. Furnish maintenance material matching products installed, packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with appropriate labels.
  - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Units: Furnish quantity of full size units equal to 2.0% of amount installed.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 ACOUSTICAL UNITS

- A. Basis of Design: Sand Micro by Certain Teed Ceilings. Mineral-Fiber Acoustical Panel. Provide mineral fiber panels with have factory-applied white finish as manufactured by Certain Teed Ceilings, or comparable product of USG Interiors, Inc., Armstrong World Industries, or approved equal. Panels shall meet ASTM E 1264, Class A, with maximum UL flame spread of 25 and smoke developed of 50 per ASTM E 84.

1. ACT

- a. Manufacturer: Certain Teed Ceilings.
- b. Model: Sand Micro SHM-157 and SHM-197.
- c. Color: White.
- d. Size: 24" x 24" and 24"x48"
- e. Thickness: 5/8"
- f. Edge: Square
- g. Finished Surface: Painted with Mold/Mildew inhibitor

2.2 ALUMINUM TRIM

- A. Extruded aluminum, ASTM B221 "Axiom" by Armstrong in profiles indicated on drawings. Baked Enamel finish in custom color selected by Architect.

2.3 SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. Provide exposed tee, 2-way grid steel suspension system with low sheen white baked enamel finish as manufactured by Certain Teed, or comparable product of USG Interiors, Inc., Armstrong World Industries, or approved equal.
- B. The suspension system shall support the ceiling assembly shown on the drawings and specified herein, with a maximum deflection of 1/360 of the span, in accordance with ASTM C 635.
- C. Provide min. 12 ga. galvanized wire hangers, soft annealed steel conforming to ASTM A 641, prestretched, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, size so that stress at 3 times hanger design load (ASTM C 635, Table 1, Direct Hung) will be less than yield stress of wire.

- D. Provide ceiling clips and inserts to receive hangers, type as recommended by suspension system manufacturer, sizes for pull-out resistance of not less than five (5) times the hanger design load, as indicated in ASTM C 635.
- E. Suspension systems shall conform to ASTM C 635, intermediate duty.
- F. Provide manufacturer's standard wall moldings with off-white baked enamel finish to match suspension systems. For circular penetrations of ceilings, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas where acoustical panel ceilings are to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected to permit proper installation of the layout.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordination: Furnish layouts for inserts, clips, or other supports required to be installed by other trades for support of acoustical ceilings.
- B. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical units to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid use of less-than-half width units at borders, and comply with reflected ceiling plans.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Codes and Standards: Install materials in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions, and to comply with governing regulations and industry standards.
- B. Install suspension systems to comply with ASTM C 636, with wire hangers supported only from building structural members. Locate hangers not more than 6" from each end and spaced 4'-0" along direct-hung runner, leveling to tolerance of 1/8" in 12'-0".
- C. Secure wire hangers by looping and wire-tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye-screws, or other devices which are secure and appropriate for substrate, and which will not deteriorate or fail with age or elevated temperatures.
- D. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum which are not part of supporting structural or ceiling suspension system. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal force by bracing, reinforcing, countersplaying or other equally effective means.
- E. Install edge moldings at edges of each acoustical ceiling area, and at locations where edge of acoustical units would otherwise be exposed after completion of the work.
  - 1. Secure moldings to building construction by fastening through vertical leg. Space holes not more than 3" from each end and not more than sixteen (16) inches o.c. between end holes. Fasten tight against vertical surfaces.
  - 2. Level moldings with ceiling suspension system, to a level tolerance of 1/8" in 12'-0".
- F. Install acoustical units in coordination with suspension system, with edges concealed by support of suspension members. Scribe and cut panels to fit accurately at borders and at penetrations.

- G. Install hold-down clips in toilet areas, and in areas where required by governing regulations; space 2'-0" o.c. on all cross tees.
- H. Light fixtures or other ceiling apparatus shall not be supported from main beams or cross tees if their weight causes the total load to exceed the deflection capability of the ceiling suspension system. In such cases the load shall be supported by supplemental hangers furnished and installed by this Section of work.
- I. Where fixture or ceiling apparatus installation causes eccentric loading on runners, provide stabilizer bars to prevent rotation.

3.4 ADJUST AND CLEAN

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical ceilings, including trim, edge molding, and suspension members; comply with manufacturer's instructions for cleaning and touch-up of minor finish damage. Remove and replace work which cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 095113

SECTION 096513 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the resilient accessories, as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Rubber base.
  - 2. Accessories.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Gypsum Board Assemblies - Section 092116.
- B. Resilient Tile Flooring - Section 096519.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications of Installers: Use only personnel who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the skills required and completely familiar with the requirements established for this work.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturer's Data: For information only, submit manufacturer's technical information and installation instructions for type of resilient base.
- B. Samples: Submit six (6) inch long samples of base.

1.6 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

- A. Deliver materials to the project site in the manufacturer's original unopened containers, clearly marked to indicate pattern, gauge, lot number and sequence of materials.
- B. Carefully handle all materials and store in original containers at not less than seventy (70) degrees F. for at least forty-eight (48) hours before start of installation.

1.7 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Continuously heat spaces to receive base to a temperature of seventy (70) degrees F. for at least forty-eight (48) hours prior to installation, whenever project conditions are such that heating is required. Maintain seventy (70) degrees F. temperature continuously during and after installation as recommended by the manufacturer, but for not less than forty-eight (48) hours. Maintain a temperature of not less than fifty-five (55) degrees F. in areas where work is completed.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 RUBBER BASE

- A. Provide 4" high by 1/8" thick continuous vulcanized SBR rubber top set cove base with pre-formed internal and external corner pieces as manufactured by Roppe or comparable product by Johnsonite, Nora Systems, or approved equal; color indicated below. Base shall conform to ASTM F 1861, Type TS, Group 1 (solid).
  - 1. Basis of Design: Roppe, 175 Slate, Pinnacle, Type TS, 1/8" with standard toe.
- B. Rubber base shall meet requirements of ASTM E 84, Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials, Class A, Smoke Developed <450.

### 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesives: Waterproof, stabilized type, as recommended by the manufacturer for the type of service indicated; Johnsonite "960 Cove Base Adhesive" or equal.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where resilient base is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. In all spaces where base is indicated, install bases tight to walls, partitions, columns, built-in cabinets, etc., without gaps at top or bulges at bottom, with tight joints and flush edges, with molded corner pieces at internal and external corners. Provide end stops adjacent to flush type door frames and where base does not terminate against an adjacent surface. Keep base in full contact with walls until adhesive sets.

### 3.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove any excess adhesive or other surface blemishes from base using neutral type cleaners as recommended by the manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 096513

SECTION 096519 - RESILIENT TILE FLOORING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the resilient tile flooring, as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Luxury vinyl tile.
  - 2. Transition strips.
  - 3. Accessories.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Resilient Base and Accessories - Section 096513.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications of Installers: Use only personnel who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the skills required and completely familiar with the requirements established for this work.
- B. All adhesives must contain low or no VOCs. VOC levels in grams per liter must be less than or equal to thresholds established by the latest version of South Coast Air Quality Management District (SCAQMD) Rule 1168.
- C. Resilient Tile Flooring must comply with the requirements of Scientific Certification Systems FloorScore Standard.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturer's Data: For information only, submit manufacturer's technical information and installation instructions for type of resilient tile.
- B. Samples
  - 1. Submit full-size sample tiles for each type and color required, representative of the expected range of color and pattern variation. Sample submittals will be reviewed for color, texture and pattern only. Compliance with all other requirements is the exclusive responsibility of the Contractor.
  - 2. Submit six (6) inch long samples of transition strips.
- C. Submit manufacturer's warranty as noted herein.
- D. Certificates: Submit Scientific Certification Systems FloorScore Standard Certificates.

1.6 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

- A. Deliver materials to the project site in the manufacturer's original unopened containers, clearly marked to indicate pattern, gauge, lot number and sequence of materials.
- B. Carefully handle all materials and store in original containers at not less than seventy (70) degrees F. for at least forty-eight (48) hours before start of installation.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F. or more than 95 deg F., in spaces to receive floor tile during the following time periods:
  - 1. 48 hours before installation.
  - 2. During installation.
  - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F. or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Close spaces to traffic during floor tile installation.
- D. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after floor tile installation.
- E. Install floor tile after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Provide manufacturers 5-year limited warranty.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 LUXURY VINYL TILE (LVT)

- A. Provide 0.098" (2.5mm) thick solid vinyl tile conforming to ASTM F 1700, Class III, Type B; colors as indicated below. Provide tile units with uniformly distributed color and pattern throughout the thickness of tile. Variations in shades and off-pattern matches between containers are not acceptable.
- B. See Material Schedule on the contract drawings for Manufacturer, Style / Type, Colors, and Sizes of LVT.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesives: Waterproof, stabilized type, as recommended by the tile manufacturer for the type of service indicated.
- B. Concrete Slab Primer: Non-staining type recommended by the tile manufacturer.
- C. Leveling Compound: Latex/Portland cement flash patching and leveling compound equal to No. DSP-520 made by H.B. Fuller or No. 226 with 3701 admixture made by Laticrete or equal made by Mapei, or approved equal.

- D. Edging Strips: 1/8" thick, homogeneous vinyl or rubber composition, tapered or bullnose edge, color as selected by the Architect from manufacturer's standards.
- E. Rubber Transition Strips: "Slim Line Transitions" as manufactured by Johnsonite, or approved equal.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where resilient tile flooring is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

#### 3.2 CONDITION OF SURFACES

- A. Allowable Variations in Substrate Levels (Floors):  $\pm 1/8"$  in 10'-0" distance and 1/4" total maximum variation from levels shown.
- B. Grind or fill concrete substrates as required to comply with allowable variation.

#### 3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to floor tile manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.
  - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
  - 2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
  - 3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 9 pH.
  - 4. Moisture Testing: Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing according to floor tile manufacturer's written recommendations, but not less stringent than the following:
    - a. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test according to ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb. of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
    - b. Perform relative humidity test using in situ probes according to ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum **75** percent relative humidity level.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install floor tiles until they are the same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.
  - 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient floor tile and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient floor tile.



### 3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Install tile only after all finishing operations, including painting, have been completed and permanent heating system is operating. Moisture content of concrete slabs, building air temperature and relative humidity must be within limits recommended by tile manufacturer.
- B. Place tile units with adhesive cement in strict compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Butt tile units tightly to vertical surfaces, thresholds, nosings and edgings. Scribe around obstructions and to produce neat joints, laid tight, even and in straight, parallel lines. Extend tile units into toe spaces, door reveals, and into closet and similar openings.
- C. Maintain reference markers, holes, or openings that are in place or plainly marked for future cutting by repeating on the finish tile as marked in the subfloor. Use chalk or other non-permanent marking devices.
- D. Lay tile from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor off-sets, so that tile at opposite edges of the room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid use of cut widths less than 1/2 tile at room perimeters. Lay tile square to room axis, unless otherwise shown.
- E. Match tiles for color and pattern by using tile from cartons in the same sequence as manufactured and packaged. Cut tile neatly to and around all fixtures. Broken, cracked, chipped or deformed tile is not acceptable.
- F. Tightly cement tile to sub-base without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks through tile, or other surface imperfections.
- G. Lay tile with grain in all tile running in the same direction.
- H. Place resilient edge strips tightly butted to tile and secure with adhesive. Provide edging strips at all unprotected edges of tile, unless otherwise shown.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove any excess adhesive or other surface blemishes from tile, using neutral type cleaners as recommended by the tile manufacturer. Protect installed flooring from damage by use of heavy Kraft paper or other covering.

END OF SECTION 096519

SECTION 099000 - PAINTING AND FINISHING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the painting and finishing as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Prime painting unprimed surfaces to be painted under this Section.
  - 2. Painting all items furnished with a prime coat of paint, including touching up of or repairing of abraded, damaged or rusted prime coats applied by others.
  - 3. Painting all ferrous metal (except stainless steel) exposed to view.
  - 4. Painting all galvanized ferrous metals exposed to view.
  - 5. Painting interior concrete block exposed to view.
  - 6. Painting gypsum drywall exposed to view.
  - 7. Painting concrete floors.
  - 8. Sealing concrete floors.
  - 9. Painting of wood exposed to view, except items which are specified to be painted or finished under other Sections of these specifications. Back painting of all wood in contact with concrete, masonry or other moisture areas.
  - 10. Painting pipes, pipe coverings, conduit, ducts, insulation, hangers, supports and other mechanical and electrical items and equipment exposed to view.
  - 11. Painting surfaces above, behind or below grilles, gratings, diffusers, louvers, lighting fixtures, and the like, which are exposed to view through these items.
  - 12. Incidental painting and touching up as required to produce proper finish for painted surfaces, including touching up of factory finished items.
  - 13. Painting of any surface not specifically mentioned to be painted herein or on drawings, but for which painting is obviously necessary to complete the job, or work which comes within the intent of these specifications, shall be included as though specified.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Shop priming is required on some, but not all of the items scheduled to be field painted. Refer to other Sections of work for complete description.
- B. Shop Coat on Machinery and Equipment: Refer to the Sections under which various items of manufactured equipment with factory applied shop prime coats are furnished, including, but not

necessarily limited to, the following Sections. All items of equipment furnished with prime coat finish shall be finish painted under this Section.

1. Plumbing - Division 22.
2. Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning - Division 23.

#### 1.4 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT NOT TO BE PAINTED

- A. Items of equipment furnished with complete factory finish, except for items specified to be given a finish coat under this Section.
- B. Factory-finished toilet partitions.
- C. Factory-finished acoustical tile.
- D. Non-ferrous metals, except for items specified and/or indicated to be painted.
- E. Finished hardware, except for hardware that is factory primed.
- F. Surfaces not to be painted shall be left completely free of droppings and accidentally applied materials resulting from the work of this Section.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Job Mock-Up
  1. In addition to the samples specified herein to be submitted for approval, apply in the field, at their final location, each type and color of approved paint materials, applied 10 feet wide, floor to ceiling of wall surfaces, before proceeding with the remainder of the work, for approval by the Architect. Paint mock-ups to include door and frame assembly.
  2. These applications when approved will establish the quality and workmanship for the work of this Section.
  3. Repaint individual areas which are not approved, as determined by the Architect, until approval is received. Assume at least two paint mock-ups of each color and gloss for approval.
- B. Qualification of Painters: Use only qualified journeyman painters for the mixing and application of paint on exposed surfaces.
- C. Paint Coordination: Provide finish coats that are compatible with the prime coat paints used. Review other Sections of these specifications in which prime paints are to be provided to ensure compatibility of the total coatings system for the various substrates. Upon request from other subcontractors, furnish information on the characteristics of the finish materials proposed to be used, to ensure that compatible prime coats are used. Provide barrier coats over incompatible primers or remove and re-prime as required. Notify the Architect in writing of any anticipated problems using the coating systems as specified with substrates primed by others.
- D. All paints must conform to the Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC) standards of prevailing codes and ordinances.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Materials List: Before any paint materials are delivered to the job site, submit to the Architect a complete list of all materials proposed to be furnished and installed under this portion of the work. This shall in no way be construed as permitting substitution of materials for those specified or accepted for this work by the Architect.

B. Samples

1. Accompanying the materials list, submit to the Architect copies of the full range of colors available in each of the proposed products.
2. Upon direction of the Architect, prepare and deliver to the Architect two (2) identical sets of samples of each of the selected colors and glosses painted onto 8-1/2" x 11" x 1/4" thick material; whenever possible, the material for samples shall be the same material as that on which the coating will be applied in the work.

C. Manufacturer's Recommendations: In each case where material proposed is not the material specified or specifically described as an acceptable alternate in this Section of these specifications, submit for the Architect's review the current recommended method of application published by the manufacturer of the proposed material.

D. Closeout Submittal

1. Coating Maintenance Manual: Upon conclusion of the project, the Contractor or paint manufacturer/supplier shall furnish a coating maintenance manual such as Sherwin Williams "Custodian Project Color and Product Information" report or equal. Manual shall include an Area Summary with finish schedule, Area Detail designating where each product/color/finish was used, product data pages, MSDS, care and cleaning instructions, touch-up procedures, and color samples of each color and finish used.

1.7 PRODUCT HANDLING

A. Deliver all paint materials to the job site in their original unopened containers with all labels intact and legible at time of use.

B. Protection

1. Store only the approved materials at the job site, and store only in a suitable and designated area restricted to the storage of paint materials and related equipment.
2. Use all means necessary to ensure the safe storage and use of paint materials and the prompt and safe disposal of waste.
3. Use all means necessary to protect paint materials before, during and after application and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.

C. Replacements: In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary.

1.8 EXTRA STOCK

- A. Upon completion of this portion of the Work, deliver to the Owner an extra stock of paint equaling approximately ten (10) percent of each color and gloss used and each coating material used, with all such extra stock tightly sealed in clearly labeled containers.

1.9 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Apply water-based paints only when the temperature of surfaces to be painted and the surrounding air temperatures are between 50 degrees F. and 90 degrees F., unless otherwise permitted by the paint manufacturer's printed instructions.
- B. Apply solvent-thinned paints only when the temperature of surfaces to be painted and the surrounding air temperatures are between 45 degrees F. and 95 degrees F. unless otherwise permitted by the paint manufacturer's printed instructions.

- C. Do not apply paint in snow, rain, fog or mist; or when the relative humidity exceeds eighty-five (85) percent; or to damp or wet surfaces; unless otherwise permitted by the paint manufacturer's printed instructions.
- D. Painting may be continued during inclement weather only if the areas and surfaces to be painted are enclosed and heated within the temperature limits specified by the paint manufacturer during application and drying periods.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PAINT MANUFACTURERS

- A. Except as otherwise noted, provide the painting products listed for all required painting made by one of the manufacturers listed in the paint schedule (Section 2.4). These companies are Benjamin Moore, PPG Paint (Glidden Professional), and Sherwin Williams (S-W). Comply with number of coats and required minimum mil thicknesses as specified herein.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Provide undercoat paint produced by the same manufacturer as the finish coats. Use only thinners approved by the paint manufacturer and use only to recommended limits.
- B. Colors and Glosses: All colors and glosses shall be as selected by the Architect. Certain colors will require paint manufacturer to prepare special factory mixes to match colors selected by the Architect. Color schedule (with gloss) shall be furnished by the Architect.
- C. Coloring Pigment: Products of or furnished by the manufacturer of the paint or enamel approved for the work.
- D. Linseed Oil: Raw or boiled, as required, of approved manufacture, per ASTM D 234 and D 260, respectively.
- E. Turpentine: Pure distilled gum spirits of turpentine, per ASTM D 13.
- F. Shellac: Pure gum shellac (white or orange) cut in pure denatured alcohol using not less than four (4) lbs. of gum per gallon of alcohol.
- G. Driers, Putty, Spackling Compound, Patching Plaster, etc.: Best quality, of approved manufacture.
- H. Heat-Resistant Paint: Where required, use heat resistant paint when applying paint to heating lines and equipment.

### 2.3 GENERAL STANDARDS

- A. The various surfaces shall be painted or finished as specified below in Article 2.4. However, the Architect reserves the right to change the finishes within the range of flat, semi-gloss or gloss, without additional cost to the Owner.
- B. All paints, varnishes, enamels, lacquers, stains and similar materials must be delivered in the original containers with the seals unbroken and label intact and with the manufacturer's instructions printed thereon.
- C. All painting materials shall bear identifying labels on the containers with the manufacturer's instructions printed thereon.
- D. Paint shall not be badly settled, caked or thickened in the container, shall be readily dispersed with a paddle to a smooth consistency and shall have excellent application properties.

- E. Paint shall arrive on the job color-mixed except for tinting of under-coats and possible thinning.
- F. All thinning and tinting materials shall be as recommended by the manufacturer for the particular material thinned or tinted.
- G. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to see that all mixed colors match the color selection made by the Architect prior to application of the coating.

## 2.4 SCHEDULE OF FINISHES

### A. High Performance Coating on Exterior Galvanized Ferrous Metals

- First Coat: "PittGuard Rapid Coat Epoxy 95-245 Series by PPG, "Series 27WB Typoxy" by Tnemec; "Epoxy Mastic Coating V 160" by Benjamin Moore Corotech or "Recoatable Epoxy Primer 867-45" by Sherwin Williams.
- Second Coat: "Pittthane Ultra 95-812 (Gloss)" or "High Build 95-8800 (Semi-Gloss)" by PPG; "Series 1080 (gloss) Endura-Shield WB" or "Series 1081 (semi-gloss) Endura-Shield WB" by Tnemec; "Acrylic Aliphatic Urethane V 500 (Gloss)" or "V 510 (Semi-Gloss)" by Benjamin Moore Corotech or "Hi-Solids Urethane B65-300/350" by Sherwin Williams.

### B. High Performance Coating on Exterior Non-Galvanized Ferrous Metals

- Prime Coat: "Amercoat 68HS Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer" by PPG; "Series 94-H<sub>2</sub>O Hydro-Zinc" by Tnemec; "Organic Zinc Rich Primer V 170" by Benjamin Moore Corotech or "Zinc Clad II Plus Inorganic Zinc Rich Coating B69V212" by Sherwin Williams.
- Second Coat: "Pitt Guard Rapid Coat Epoxy 95-245" by PPG; "Series 27WB Typoxy" by Tnemec; "Epoxy Mastic Coating V 160" by Benjamin Moore Corotech or "Macropoxy 646 Fast Cure Epoxy B58-600" by Sherwin Williams.
- Third Coat: "Pittthane Ultra 95-812 (Gloss)" or "High Build 95-8800 (Semi-Gloss)" by PPG; "Series 1070V (gloss) Fluoronar" or "Series 1071V (semi-gloss) Fluoronar" by Tnemec; "Acrylic Aliphatic Urethane V 500 (Gloss)" or "V 510 (Semi-Gloss)" by Benjamin Moore Corotech or "Hi-Solids Polyurethane B65-300/350" by Sherwin Williams.

### C. Interior Ferrous Metal

#### Satin Finish/Latex

- Primer: Benj. Moore Ultra Spec HP Acrylic Metal Primer (HP04)  
PPG Pitt Tech Plus DTM Acrylic Primer 4020  
Sherwin-Williams Pro-Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer B66-3100 Series
- First Coat: Benj. Moore Ultra Spec-HP DTM Acrylic Low Luster (HP25)  
PPG Pitt Glaze WB1 Pre-Catalyzed Eggshell Epoxy 16-310  
S-W Pro Industrial Acrylic Eg-Shel, B66-660 Series
- Second Coat: Benj. Moore Ultra Spec-HP DTM Acrylic Low Luster (HP25)  
PPG Pitt Glaze WB1 Pre-Catalyzed Eggshell Epoxy 16-310  
S-W Pro Industrial Acrylic Eg-Shel, B66-660 Series
- a. Total DFT not less than: 3.9 mils

#### Semi-Gloss Finish/Latex

- Primer: Benj. Moore Ultra Spec-HP Acrylic Metal Primer (HP04)  
PPG Devflex 4020 PF DTM Primer/Flat Finish  
Sherwin-Williams Pro-Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer B66-3100 Series
- First Coat: Benj. Moore Ultra Spec HP DTM Acrylic Semi-Gloss (HP29)  
PPG Pitt Glaze WB1 Pre-Catalyzed Semi-Gloss Epoxy 16-510  
S-W Pro Industrial Acrylic Semi-Gloss, B66-650 Series
- Second Coat: Benj. Moore Ultra Spec HP DTM Acrylic Semi-Gloss (HP29)  
PPG Pitt Glaze WB1 Pre-Catalyzed Semi-Gloss Epoxy 16-510  
S-W Pro Industrial Acrylic Semi-Gloss, B66-650 Series
- a. Total DFT not less than: 4.0 mils

D. Interior Concrete Block

Flat Finish/Vinyl Acrylic Latex over Filler

- Block Filler: Benj. Moore Ultra Spec Masonry Int./Ext. High Build Block Filler (571)  
PPG Speedhide HI Fill Latex Block Filler 6-15XI  
S-W Pro Industrial Heavy-Duty Block Filler, B42-150
- First Coat: Benj. Moore Ultra Spec 500 Interior Flat Latex (N536)  
PPG Speedhide Zero Interior Latex Flat 6-4110XI  
S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Flat, B30-12600 Series
- Second Coat: Benj. Moore Ultra Spec 500 Interior Flat Latex (N536)  
PPG Speedhide Zero Interior Latex Flat 6-4110XI  
S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Flat, B30-12600 Series
- a. Total DFT not less than: 10.7 mils

Eggshell Finish/Vinyl Acrylic Latex Over Filler

- Block Filler: Benj. Moore Ultra Spec Masonry Int./Ext. High Build Block Filler (571)  
PPG Speedhide HI Fill Latex Block Filler 6-15XI  
S-W Pro Industrial Heavy-Duty Block Filler, B42-150
- First Coat: Benj. Moore Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Eggshell (N538)  
PPG Speedhide Zero Interior Latex Eggshell 6-4310XI  
S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Eggshell, B20-1900 Series
- Second Coat: Benj. Moore Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Eggshell (N538)  
PPG Speedhide Zero Interior Latex Eggshell 6-4310XI  
S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Eggshell, B20-1900 Series
- a. Total DFT not less than: 10.9 mils

Semi-Gloss Finish/Vinyl Acrylic Latex over Filler

- Block Filler: Benj. Moore Ultra Spec Masonry Int./Ext. High Build Block Filler (571)  
PPG Speedhide HI Fill Latex Block Filler 6-15XI  
S-W Pro Industrial Heavy-Duty Block Filler, B42-150
- First Coat: Benj. Moore Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Gloss (N540)  
PPG Speedhide Zero Interior Semi-Gloss Latex, 6-4510XI Series  
S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex S. Gloss, B31-2600 Series
- Second Coat: Benj. Moore Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Gloss (N540)  
PPG Speedhide Zero Interior Semi-Gloss Latex, 6-4510XI Series  
S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex S. Gloss, B31-2600 Series
- a. Total DFT not less than: 10.7 mils

E. Interior Drywall

Flat Finish/Vinyl Acrylic Latex

- Primer: Benj. Moore Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Primer (N534)  
PPG Speedhide Zero Interior Latex Primer 6-4900XI  
S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Primer, B28-2600
- First Coat: Benj. Moore Ultra Spec 500 Latex Flat (N536)  
PPG Speedhide Zero Interior Latex Flat 6-4110XI  
S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Flat, B30-2600 Series
- Second Coat: Benj. Moore Ultra Spec 500 Latex Flat (N536)  
PPG Speedhide Zero Interior Latex Flat 6-4110XI  
S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Flat, B30-2600 Series
- a. Total DFT not less than: 3.6 mils

Eggshell Finish/Vinyl Acrylic Latex

- Primer: Benj. Moore Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Primer (N534)  
PPG Speedhide Zero Interior Latex Primer 6-4900XI  
S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Primer, B28-2600
- First Coat: Benj. Moore Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Eggshell (N538)

- PPG Speedhide Zero Interior Latex Eggshell 6-4310XI  
S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Eg-Shell, B20-1900 Series
- Second Coat: Benj. Moore Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Eggshell (N538)  
PPG Speedhide Zero Interior Latex Eggshell 6-4310XI  
S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Eg-Shell B20-1900 Series
- a. Total DFT not less than: 3.8 mils

F. Interior Painted Wood

Satin Finish/Latex

- Primer: Benj. Moore Advance Waterborne Int. Alkyd Primer (790)  
PPG Seal Grip Interior Primer/Finish 17-951  
S-W Multi-Purpose Latex Primer/Sealer B51 Series
- First Coat: Benj. Moore Advance Waterborne Int. Alkyd Satin (792)  
PPG Speedhide Zero Interior Latex Satin, 6-4410XI  
S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Eg-Shel, B20-1900 Series
- Second Coat: Benj. Moore Advance Waterborne Int. Alkyd Satin (792)  
PPG Speedhide Zero Interior Latex Satin, 6-4410XI  
S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Eg-Shel, B20-1900 Series
- a. Total DFT not less than: 4.0 mils

Semi-Gloss Finish/Latex

- Primer: Benj. Moore Advance Waterborne Int. Alkyd Primer (790)  
PPG Seal Grip Interior Primer/Finish 17-951  
S-W Multi-Purpose Latex Primer/Sealer B51 Series
- First Coat: Benj. Moore Advance Waterborne Int. Alkyd (793)  
PPG Speedhide Zero Interior Semi-Gloss Latex, 6-4510XI  
S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Semi-Gloss, B31-2600 Series
- Second Coat: Benj. Moore Advance Waterborne Int. Alkyd (793)  
PPG Speedhide Zero Interior Semi-Gloss Latex, 6-4510XI  
S-W ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Semi-Gloss, B31-2600 Series
- a. Total DFT not less than: 3.8 mils

G. Concrete Floor Paint

- Primer: Corotech V155 Solid Epoxy Pre-Primer  
First Coat: Corotech V440 Waterborne Amine Epoxy  
Second Coat: Corotech V440 Waterborne Amine Epoxy  
Non-Slip Aggregate: Broadcast Corotech V630 Anti-Slip Aggregate

- H. Concrete Floor Sealer: "Super Diamond VOX" water-based, low-VOC acrylic sealer, as manufactured by Euclid Chemical Company, or approved equal.

2.5 EXISTING SURFACES TO BE PAINTED

- A. Existing surfaces shall be painted in accordance with schedule given in Article 2.4 herein except that first or prime coat may be eliminated where existing paint is sound. Where existing paint must be removed down to base material, provide first or prime coat as specified.

2.6 PIPING AND MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT EXPOSED TO VIEW

- A. Paint all exposed piping, conduits, ductwork and mechanical and electrical equipment. Use heat resisting paint when applied to heating lines and equipment. The Contractor is cautioned not to paint or otherwise disturb moving parts in the mechanical systems. Mask or otherwise protect all parts as required to prevent damage.
- B. Exposed Uncovered Ductwork, Piping, Hangers and Equipment: Latex Enamel Undercoater and one (1) coat Acrylic Latex Flat.



- C. Exposed Covered Piping, Duct Work and Equipment: Primer/Sealer and one (1) coat Acrylic Latex Flat.
- D. Panel Boards, Grilles and Exposed Surfaces of Electrical Equipment: Latex Enamel Undercoater and two (2) coats Latex Semi-Gloss.
- E. Equipment or Apparatus with Factory-Applied Paint: Refinish any damaged surfaces to match original finish. Do not paint over name plates and labels.
- F. All surfaces of insulation and all other work to be painted shall be wiped or washed clean before any painting is started.
- G. All conduit, boxes, distribution boxes, light and power panels, hangers, clamps, etc., are included where painting is required.
- H. All items of Mechanical and Electrical trades which are furnished painted under their respective Contracts shall be carefully coordinated with the work of this Section so as to leave no doubt as to what items are scheduled to be painted under this Section.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where painting and finishing are to be applied and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

#### 3.2 GENERAL WORKMANSHIP REQUIREMENTS

- A. Only skilled mechanics shall be employed. Application may be by brush or roller. Spray application only upon acceptance from the Architect in writing.
- B. The Contractor shall furnish the Architect a schedule showing when he expects to have completed the respective coats of paint for the various areas and surfaces. This schedule shall be kept current as the job progresses.
- C. The Contractor shall protect his work at all times and shall protect all adjacent work and materials by suitable covering or other method during progress of his work. Upon completion of the work, he shall remove all paint and varnish spots from floors, glass and other surfaces. He shall remove from the premises all rubbish and accumulated materials of whatever nature not caused by others and shall leave his part of the work in clean, orderly and acceptable condition.
- D. Remove and protect hardware, accessories, device plates, lighting fixtures, and factory finished work, and similar items, or provide ample in place protection. Upon completion of each space, carefully replace all removed items by workmen skilled in the trades involved.
- E. Remove electrical panel box covers and doors before painting walls. Paint separately and re-install after all paint is dry.
- F. All materials shall be applied under adequate illumination, evenly spread and flowed on smoothly to avoid runs, sags, holidays, brush marks, air bubbles and excessive roller stipple.
- G. Coverage and hide shall be complete. When color, stain, dirt or undercoats show through final coat of paint, the surface shall be covered by additional coats until the paint film is of uniform finish, color, appearance and coverage, at no additional cost to the Owner.
- H. All coats shall be dry to manufacturer's recommendations before applying succeeding coats.

### 3.3 PREPARATION OF SURFACES

- A. Existing Surfaces: Clean existing surfaces requiring paint or finishing, remove all loose and flaking paint or finish and sand surface smooth as required to receive new paint or finish. No telegraphing of lines, ridges, flakes, etc., through new surfacing is permitted. Where this occurs, Contractor shall be required to sand smooth and re-finish until surface meets with Architect's approval.
- B. General
  - 1. The Contractor shall be held entirely responsible for the finished appearance and satisfactory completion of painting work. Properly prepare all surfaces to receive paint, which includes cleaning, sanding, and touching-up of all prime coats applied under other Sections of the work. Broom clean all spaces before painting is started. All surfaces to be painted or finished shall be completely dry, clean and smooth.
  - 2. Perform all preparation and cleaning procedures in strict accordance with the paint manufacturer's instructions and as herein specified, for each particular substrate condition.
  - 3. Clean surfaces to be painted before applying paint or surface treatments. Remove oil and grease with clean cloths and cleaning solvents prior to mechanical cleaning. Program the cleaning and painting so that dust and other contaminants from the cleaning process will not fall on wet, newly painted surfaces.
- C. Metal Surfaces
  - 1. Weld Fluxes: Remove weld fluxes, splatters, and alkali contaminants from metal surfaces in an approved manner and leave surface ready to receive painting.
  - 2. Bare Metal: Thoroughly clean off all foreign matter such as grease, rust, scale and dirt before priming coat is applied. Clean surfaces, where solder flux has been used, with benzene. Clean surfaces by flushing with mineral spirits. For aluminum surfaces, wipe down with an oil free solvent prior to application of any pre-treatment.
    - a. Bare metal to receive high performance coating specified herein must be blast cleaned SSPC SP-6 prior to application if field applied primer; coordinate with steel trades furnishing ferrous metals to receive this coating to insure that this cleaning method is followed.
  - 3. Shop Primed Metal: Clean off foreign matter as specified for "Bare Metal." Prime bare, rusted, abraded and marred surfaces with approved primer after proper cleaning of surfaces. Sandpaper all rough surfaces smooth.
  - 4. Galvanized Metal: Prepare surface as per the requirements of ASTM D 6386.
  - 5. Metal Filler: Fill dents, cracks, hollow places, open joints and other irregularities in metal work to be painted with an approved metal filler suitable for the purpose and meeting the requirements of the related Section of work; after setting, sand to a smooth, hard finish, flush with adjoining surface.
- D. Gypsum Drywall Surfaces: Scrape off all projections and splatters, spackles all holes or depressions, including taped and spackled joints, sand smooth. Conform to standards established in Section 092116, "Gypsum Board Assemblies."
- E. Wood Surfaces: Sand to remove all roughness, loose edges, splinters, or splinters and then brush to remove dust. Wash off grease or dirt with an approved cleaner. Fill all cracks, splits, nail holes, screw holes, and surface defects with putty after the priming coat has been applied. Putty shall be brought up flush with the surface and sanded smooth and touched-up with primer when dry.

- F. Block Masonry Surfaces: Thoroughly clean off all grit, grease, dirt, mortar drippings or splatters, and other foreign matter. Remove nibs or projections from masonry surfaces. Fill cracks, holes or voids not filled under the "Masonry" Section, with Portland cement grout, and bag surface so that it has approximately the same texture as the adjacent masonry surface.
- G. Testing for Moisture Content: Contractor shall test all masonry and drywall surfaces for moisture content using a reliable electronic moisture meter. Contractor shall also test latex type fillers for moisture content before application of top coats of paint. Do not apply any paint or sealer to any surface or to latex type filler where the moisture content exceeds seven (7) percent as measured by the electronic moisture meter.
- H. Touch-Up: Prime paint all patched portions in addition to all other specified coats.

#### 3.4 MATERIALS PREPARATION

- A. Mix and prepare painting materials in strict accordance with the manufacturer's directions.
- B. Store materials not in actual use in tightly covered containers. Maintain containers used in storage, mixing, and application of paint in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
- C. Stir all materials before application to produce a mixture of uniform density, and as required during the application of the materials. Do not stir any film which may form on the surface into the material. Remove the film and, if necessary, strain the material before using.
- D. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat where multiple coats of the same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match the color of the finish coat; provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.

#### 3.5 APPLICATION

##### A. General

1. Apply paint by brush or roller in accordance with the manufacturer's directions. Use brushes best suited for the type of material being applied. Use rollers of carpet, velvet back, or high pile sheep's wool as recommended by the paint manufacturer for material and texture required.
2. The number of coats and paint film thickness required is the same regardless of the application method. Do not apply succeeding coats until the previous coat has completely dried. Sand between each enamel or varnish coat application with fine sandpaper or rub surfaces with pumice stone where required to produce an even, smooth surface in accordance with the coating manufacturer's directions.
3. Apply additional coats when undercoats, stains, or other conditions show through the final coat of paint, until the paint film is of uniform finish, color and appearance. Give special attention to insure that all surfaces, including edges, corners, crevices, welds, and exposed fasteners receive a film thickness equivalent to that of flat surfaces.
4. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture the same as similar exposed surfaces. Paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
  - a. "Exposed surfaces" is defined as those areas visible when permanent or built-in fixtures, convactor covers, covers for finned tube radiation, grilles, etc., are in place in areas scheduled to be painted.
5. Paint interior surfaces of ducts, where visible through registers or grilles, with a flat, non-specular black paint, before final installation of equipment.
6. Paint the back sides of access panels, removable or hinged covers to match the exposed surfaces.

7. Finish doors on tops, bottoms, and side edges the same as the faces, unless otherwise indicated.
8. Enamel finish applied to wood or metal shall be sanded with fine sandpaper and then cleaned between coats to produce an even surface.
9. Paste wood filler applied on open grained wood after beginning to flatten, shall be wiped across the grain of the wood, then with a circular motion, to secure a smooth, filled, clean surface with filler remaining in open grain only. After overnight dry, sand surface with the grain until smooth before applying specified coat.

B. Scheduling Painting

1. Apply the first coat material to surfaces that have been cleaned, pre-treated or otherwise prepared for painting as soon as practicable after preparation and before subsequent surface deterioration.
2. Allow sufficient time between successive coatings to permit proper drying. Do not re-coat until paint has dried to where it feels firm, does not deform or feel sticky under moderate thumb pressure, and the application of another coat of paint does not cause lifting or loss of adhesion of the undercoat.

- C. Prime Coats: Re-coat primed and sealed walls and ceilings where there is evidence of suction spots or unsealed areas in first coat, to assure a finish coat with no burn-through or other defects due to insufficient sealing.
- D. Pigmented (Opaque) Finishes: Completely cover to provide an opaque, smooth surface of uniform finish, color, appearance and coverage.
- E. Touching-Up of Factory Finishes: Unless otherwise specified or shown, materials with a factory finish shall not be painted at the project site. To touch up, the Contractor shall use the factory finished material manufacturer's recommended paint materials to repair abraded, chipped, or otherwise defective surfaces.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect work of other trades, whether to be painted or not, against damage by the painting and finishing work. Leave all such work undamaged. Correct any damages by cleaning, repairing or replacing, and repainting, as acceptable to the Architect.
- B. Provide "Wet Paint" signs as required to protect newly painted finishes. Remove temporary protective wrappings provided by others for protection of their work after completion of painting operations.

3.7 CLEAN UP

- A. During the progress of the work, remove from the site all discarded paint materials, rubbish, cans and rags at the end of each work day.
- B. Upon completion of painting work, clean window glass and other paint spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paint by proper methods of washing and scraping, using care not to scratch or otherwise damage finished surfaces.
- C. At the completion of work of other trades, touch-up and restore all damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

END OF SECTION 099000

SECTION 101419 - DIMENSIONAL LETTERS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. The Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the dimensional letter signage as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein.
- B. Cast Aluminum Letters.
- C. Cast Aluminum School Logo

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. For actual installation of dimensional letter signage, use only personnel who are thoroughly familiar with the manufacturer's recommended methods of installation and who are completely trained in the required skills.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data and installation instructions for type of signage required.
- B. Samples: Submit samples of dimensional letter signage showing finishes, surface textures and qualities of manufacture and design of sign components, including graphics.
- C. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings for fabrication and erection of dimensional letter signage. Include plans, elevations, and large scale details of sign wording and lettering layout. Show anchorage and accessory items. Furnish location template drawings for items supported or anchored to permanent construction.

1.5 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Protection: Use all means necessary to protect the materials of this Section before, during, and after installation, and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.
- B. Replacements: In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 DIMENSIONAL LETTERS AND NUMBERS

- A. Cutout Characters: Characters with uniform faces; square-cut, smooth, eased edges; precisely formed lines and profiles. Character dimensions and thicknesses shall be as detailed on the drawings.
  - 1. Character Material: Stainless steel sheet; ASTM A 240 or ASTM A 666, Type 316, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness, No. 4 finish.

2. Mounting: Projecting studs fabricated from same basic metal and finish of fastened metal unless otherwise indicated. Provide threaded studs with sleeve spacer, welded or brazed to back of sign material, screwed into back of sign assembly, or screwed into tapped lugs cast integrally into back of cast sign material, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Typeface: As indicated.
  4. Logos as depicted on the drawings.
- B. Cast Aluminum letters, #514 aluminum alloy.
1. Finish: Aluminum clear brushed anodized, sanded return.
  2. Font: As selected by the Architect from manufacturers' standard font list.
- C. Fabrication
1. Preassemble signs and assemblies in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs and assemblies only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation; apply markings in locations concealed from view after final assembly.
  2. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Form assemblies and joints exposed to weather to resist water penetration and retention.
  3. Comply with AWS for recommended practices in welding. Provide welds behind finished surfaces without distorting or discoloring exposed side. Clean exposed welded connections of flux, and dress exposed and contact surfaces.
  4. Conceal connections if possible; otherwise, locate connections where they are inconspicuous.
  5. Internally brace signs for stability and for securing fasteners.
  6. Provide rebates, lugs, and brackets necessary to assemble components and to attach to existing work. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use concealed fasteners where possible; use exposed fasteners that match sign finish.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where dimensional letter signage is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units and components at the locations directed by the Architect, securely mounted with concealed theft-resistant fasteners. Attach to substrates in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install level, plumb, and at the proper height. Cooperate with other trades for installation of dimensional letters to finish surfaces. Repair or replace damaged units as directed by the Architect.
- C. Mount letters and numbers using standard fastening methods recommended by the manufacturer for letter form, type of mounting, wall construction, and condition of exposure indicated. Provide heavy paper template to establish letter spacing and to locate holes for fasteners.

1. Projected Mounting: Mount letters at the projection distance from the wall surface indicated.
2. Using a template, drill holes in substrate aligning with studs on back of sign. Remove loose debris from hole and substrate surface.
3. Masonry Substrates: Fill holes with adhesive. Leave recess space in hole for displaced adhesive. Place spacers on studs, place sign in position, and push until spacers are pinched between sign and substrate, embedding the stud ends in holes. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.
4. Cast metal letters mounted on bottom rail.

### 3.3 WARRANTY

- A. Letters should be guaranteed for the life of business against defects.

END OF SECTION 101419

SECTION 101453 - TRAFFIC SIGNAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Installation of metal traffic signs

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 321216 – Asphalt Paving

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with the General Requirements of Division 1.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's name, specifications and installation instructions.
- C. Quality Control Submittals
  - 1. Qualifications Certification: Submit certification signed by applicable subcontractor, prime contractor and/or manufacturer indicating compliance with requirements of this Section.
  - 2. Experience Listing: Submit a list of completed projects using the products proposed for this project, including owner's contact information and telephone number for each project.
- D. Closeout Procedures: Comply with the requirements of Section 017700.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Design Requirements: Comply with the applicable requirements of New York State Department of Transportation Standard Specification, Section 645.

1.05 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Proceed with and complete traffic signage installation as rapidly as portions of the site become available, working within seasonal limitations for the work required.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Signs

- 1. Comply with applicable local and state requirements. Where local or state requirements are not applicable or available, comply with the latest edition of ASSHTO M268.
- 2. Provide size, shape, text, color and reflectivity as shown on the Contract Documents.

B. Posts

- 1. Heavy duty, 10' minimum 3 lb. per foot, green enamel U-channel posts.

C. Hardware

- a. All nuts, bolts and washers to be stainless steel.



- b. All brackets and supports to be galvanized steel.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Installer Verification of Conditions: Examine conditions under which traffic signage is to be installed with the materials and components specified in this section. Affected Prime Contractors, the Owner's Representative and the Architect shall be notified in writing of any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely installation of the work.

- 1. When installer confirms conditions as acceptable to ensure proper installation of the work and to ensure requirements of applicable warranties or guarantees can be satisfied, submit written confirmation to Architect. Failure to submit written confirmation and subsequent installation will be assumed to indicate conditions are acceptable to Installer.

#### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Erect traffic signs in locations designated on the Contract Documents and in accordance with the approved shop drawings and the applicable requirements of New York State Department of Transportation Standard Specification, Section 645.
- B. Protect finishes from abrasion and other damage during handling and installation.
- C. Mount signs at the height shown on the drawings or as directed by the Architect. Align sign with the mounting post and angle properly for traffic flow. Tighten bolts and nuts properly and bend bolts where required to prevent vandalism.

#### 3.03 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repairs and Protection of Traffic Signage
  - 1. Repair or replace broken or defective traffic signs as directed by the Architect.
  - 2. Protect traffic signage from damage until acceptance of the installation work.

END OF SECTION 101453

SECTION 102123 - CUBICLE CURTAINS AND TRACKS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. The Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary to complete the cubicle curtains and tracks as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Toilet accessories - Section 102800.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Product data on physical characteristics, durability, resistance to fading, and flame resistance characteristics for each type of product specified.
- C. Shop drawings showing location, lay-out, track types, anchorage details, and conditions requiring accessories.
- D. Samples for initial selection purposes in form of manufacturer's color charts consisting of actual units or sections of units showing full range of colors, textures, and patterns available for each type of curtain material.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. ADC, Flex-I-Trac 130 Series
  - 2. General Cubicle from Construction Specialties
  - 3. A.R. Nelson

2.2 TRACK

- A. Track: Anodized, extruded aluminum "C" section track.
  - 1. Curves: Factory-fabricated, 12" radius, 90 deg. and 45 deg. bends.
  - 2. Splicing Clamp: Anodized aluminum sleeve matching track color.
  - 3. Gauge: 13.

- B. Track Accessories: Provide end caps, connectors, end stops, coupling sleeves, wall brackets, and other accessories as required for secure and operational installation. Provide a quantity of carriers for 6" spacing the entire length of curtain.

- 1. Carriers: One piece nylon glide with chrome plated steel hook.
- 2. Mount assemblies to ceiling with No. 1423 ceiling clamp.
- 3. At cubicles, provide No. 1352 master carrier.

## 2.3 CURTAINS

- A. Curtain Fabric: Inherently and permanently flame resistant for the life of the fabric. Launderable to a temperature of not less than 95 deg. F.

- 1. Fire Performance Characteristic: Provide curtain fabric identical to that tested for the following fire performance requirement, according to test method indicated, by UL or other testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- a. Rating                      Flame resistant.
- b. Test Method              NFPA 701.

- 2. Fabric

- a. As selected by Architect.

- B. Curtain Top: Not less than 20" wide nylon mesh with overlapped seams, double-lock stitched to body of curtain. Sides and top of mesh shall be bound by same fabric as body of curtain.

- 1. Mesh: As selected by Architect.

- C. Fabrication: Provide curtains not less than 10% wider than length of track from which they hang, extending to 15" above the floor.

- 1. Top Hem: Not less than 1-1/2" wide, triple thickness, reinforced with integral web, and double stitched.

- a. Grommets: Rolled-edge, rustproof, and spaced not more than 6" o.c.

- 2. Bottom and Side Hems: Not less than 1" wide, reinforced, double thickness, and single stitched.

- 3. Seams: Not less than 1/2" wide, double turned and double stitched.

- D. Curtain Drop: Stainless steel beaded chain with aluminum hook.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units with clips and anchorages suited to mounting and substrate indicated.
- B. Install ceiling mounted tracks at intervals of not less than 3'.

EASTCHESTER UNION FREE SCHOOL DISTRICT    SECTION 102123 – CUBICLE CURTAINS AND TRACKS  
2022 CAPITAL PROJECT  
PHASE 2

3.2        ADJUSTING

- A.    Adjust for unencumbered operation of hardware.

END OF SECTION 102123

SECTION 102813 - TOILET ACCESSORIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- E. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- E. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the toilet accessories as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Mirrors.
  - 2. Grab bars.
  - 3. Additional toilet accessories as scheduled on the drawings.
  - 4. Electric hand dryers.
  - 5. Underlavatory guards.
  - 6. Shelf and hook strip for Janitor's Closets.
  - 7. Shower curtains and rods.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- E. Unit Masonry - Section 042000.
- F. Gypsum Board Assemblies - Section 092116.
- G. Ceramic Tiling - Section 093013.
- H. Toilet Partitions - Section 102113.
- I. Electrical - Division 26.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- E. Inserts and Anchorages: Furnish inserts and anchoring devices which must be set in concrete or built into masonry; coordinate delivery with other work to avoid delay.
- F. Accessory Locations: Coordinate accessory locations with other work to avoid interference and to assure proper operation and servicing of accessory units. Accessories shall be installed at heights in compliance with prevailing Handicapped Code.
- G. Products: Unless otherwise noted, provide products of same manufacturer for each type of unit and for units exposed in same areas.
- H. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

- I. Comply with ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- J. Electrical Equipment certified by Underwriters Laboratory, Inc., with UL and ULC labels.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- E. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data, catalog cuts and installation instructions for each toilet accessory.
- F. Setting Drawings: Provide setting drawings, templates, instructions, and directions for installation of anchorage devices in other work.
- G. Submit schedule of accessories indicating quantity and location of each item.

#### 1.6 PRODUCT HANDLING

- E. Deliver accessories to the site ready for use in the manufacturer's original and unopened containers and packaging, bearing labels as to type or material, manufacturer's name and brand name. Delivered materials shall be identical to approved samples.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.5 MATERIALS

- E. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 240 or ASTM A 666, Type 304, with polished No. 4 finish, 22 gauge minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Brass: ASTM B 19 flat products; ASTM B 16, rods, shapes, forgings, and flat products with finished edges; or ASTM B 30, castings.
- G. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, G60.
- H. Chromium Plating: Nickel and chromium electro-deposited on base metal, ASTM B 456, Type SC 2.
- I. Mirrors: ASTM C 1503, mirror glazing quality, clear glass mirrors, nominal 1/4" thick.

#### 2.6 FASTENING DEVICES

- E. Exposed Fasteners: Theft-proof type, chrome plated, or stainless steel; match finishes on which they are being used.
- F. Concealed Fasteners: Galvanized (ASTM A 123) or cadmium plated.
- G. No exposed fastening devices permitted on exposed frames.
- H. For metal stud drywall partitions, provide ten (10) gauge galvanized sheet concealed anchor plates for securing surface mounted accessories.

#### 2.7 FABRICATION

- E. General: Stamped names or labels on exposed faces of toilet accessory units are not permitted. Unobtrusive labels on surfaces not exposed to view are acceptable. Where locks are required for a particular type of toilet accessory, provide same keying throughout project. Furnish two keys for each lock.

F. Surface-Mounted Toilet Accessories, General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, exposed edges rolled. Hang doors or access panels with continuous stainless steel piano hinge. Provide concealed anchorage.

G. Recessed Toilet Accessories, General: Fabricate units of all welded construction, without mitered corners. Hang doors or access panels with full-length stainless steel piano hinge. Provide anchorage that is fully concealed when unit is closed.

## 2.8 MANUFACTURERS

E. Provide products manufactured by Bobrick Washroom Equipment Co., American Specialties, Inc., Bradley Corp., A & J Washroom Accessories, or approved equal.

F. Provide electric hand dryer manufactured by Excel Dryer, Inc., or approved equal.

## 2.9 ACCESSORY SCHEDULE

A. Accessories: Battery-operated and Manual paper towel dispensers, battery-operated soap dispensers, toilet tissue dispensers.

### B. Grab Bar:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick; B-5806 Series for WC Grab bars and B-6806 Series for Shower Grab Bars
2. Mounting: Flanges with concealed fasteners.
3. Material: Stainless steel, 0.05 inch thick.
  - a. Finish: Smooth, No. 4 finish (satin) on ends and slip-resistant texture in grip area.
4. Outside Diameter: 1-1/4 inches.
5. Configuration and Length: As indicated on Drawings.

### C. Waste Receptacle:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick B-43644.
2. Mounting: Recessed in new or existing wall construction per manufacturer's recommendations.
3. Material:
  - a. Cabinet & Flange: Stainless steel, 22 ga . Finish: Smooth, No. 4 finish (satin).
  - b. Receptacle: Stainless steel, 20 ga . Finish: Smooth, No. 4 finish (satin).
4. Unit equipped with LinerMate
5. Cabinet to be all-welded construction. Flange to be one-piece seamless construction. Receptacle to be formed one-piece seamless construction.
6. Configuration and Length: As indicated on Drawings and per model number specifics.

### G. Mirror:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick; B-165 1830
2. Frame: Stainless-steel channel.
  - a. Corners: Manufacturer's standard.
3. Hangers: Produce rigid, tamper- and theft-resistant installation, using method indicated below.
  - b. One-piece, galvanized-steel, wall-hanger device with spring-action locking mechanism to hold mirror unit in position with no exposed screws or bolts.
4. Size: As indicated on Drawings.

### H. Electric Hand Dryer:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Xlerator Hand Dryer XL-SI-120V.
2. Mounting: ADA-Compliant Recess Kit, custom colored painted to be approved by the Architect.

3. Operation: Infrared Electronic-sensor, sensor, self-adjusting activated with timed power cut-off switch.
  - a. Operation Time: 30 to 40 seconds.
4. Cover Material and Finish: Zinc die cast, color as selected by the Architect from the manufacturer's full range.
5. HEPA Filtration System: Filters 99.97 percent of bacteria at 0.3 microns from the air stream.
6. Noise Reduction Nozzle: Reduces air deflection noise level by 9 dB and increases the dry time by 2-3 seconds.
7. Electrical Requirements: 120 VAC, 50/60 Hz. 1.6kW. Hand Dryer to be **clearly labeled** on main breaker.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION

- E. Examine the areas and conditions where toilet accessories are to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- E. Accessories that are to be partition mounted shall be closely coordinated with other trades, so that the necessary reinforcing is provided to receive the accessories.
- F. Furnish templates and setting drawings and anchor plates required for the proper installation of the accessories at gypsum drywall and masonry partitions. Coordinate the work to assure that base plates and anchoring frames are in the proper position to secure the accessories.
- G. Verify by measurements taken at the job site those dimensions affecting the work. Bring field dimensions that are at variance with those on the approved shop drawings to the attention of the Architect. Obtain decision regarding corrective measures before the start of fabrication of items affected.
- H. Cooperate in the coordination and scheduling of the work of this Section with the work of other Sections so as not to delay job progress.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- E. Install accessories at locations indicated on the drawings, using skilled mechanics, in a plumb, level and secure manner.
- F. Concealed anchor assemblies for gypsum drywall partitions shall be securely anchored to metal studs to accommodate accessories. Assemblies shall consist of plates and/or angles tack welded to studs.
- G. Secure accessories in place, at their designated locations by means of theft-proof concealed set screws, so as to render removing of the accessory with a screwdriver impossible.
- H. Unless otherwise indicated, accessories shall conform to heights from the finished floor as shown on the drawings. Where locations are not indicated, such locations shall be as directed by the Architect. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.
- I. Installed accessories shall operate quietly and smoothly for use intended. Doors and operating hardware shall function without binding or unnecessary friction. Dispenser type accessories shall be keyed alike. Prior to final acceptance, master key and one duplicate key shall be given to Owner's authorized agent.



- J. The Architect shall be the sole judge of workmanship. Workmanship shall be of the highest quality. Open joints, weld marks, poor connections, etc., will not be permitted. The Architect has the right to reject any accessory if he feels the workmanship is below the standards of this project.
- K. Grab bars shall be installed so that they can support a three-hundred (300) lb. load for five minutes per ASTM F 446.

#### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- E. Upon completion of the installation, clean accessories of dirt, paint and foreign matter.
- F. Inspect installation to verify secure and proper mounting. Test each dryer to verify operation, control functions, and performance. Correct deficiencies.
- G. During the installation of accessories and until finally installed and accepted, protect accessories with gummed canvas or other means in order to maintain the accessories in acceptable condition.
- H. Replace and/or repair, to the Owner's satisfaction, and at no additional cost to the Owner, installed work that is damaged or defective.

END OF SECTION 102813

SECTION 104416 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS AND CABINETS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. The Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the fire extinguishers and cabinets as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Gypsum Board Assemblies - Section 092116.
- B. Fire suppression systems - Division 21.
- C. Fire hose cabinets and valve cabinets - Division 21.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Provide portable fire extinguishers, cabinets and accessories by one manufacturer.
- B. UL-Listed Products: Provide new portable fire extinguishers which are UL-listed and bear UL "Listing Mark" for type, rating, and classification of extinguisher indicated.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data and installation instructions for all portable fire extinguishers required. For fire extinguisher cabinets include roughing-in dimensions, and details showing mounting methods, relationships to surrounding construction, door hardware, cabinet type and materials, trim style and door construction, style and materials. Where color selections by Architect are required, include color charts showing full range of manufacturer's standard colors and designs available.
- B. Samples: Submit samples, 6" square, of each required finish. Prepare samples on metal of same gauge as metal to be used in the work. Where normal color variations are to be expected, include 2 or more units in each sample showing the limits of such variations.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products of one of the following:
  - 1. JL Industries.
  - 2. Larsen's Mfg. Co.
  - 3. Potter Roemer.

## 2.2 EXTINGUISHERS

- A. General: Provide fire extinguishers for each extinguisher cabinet and other locations indicated, in colors and finishes selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard which comply with requirements of governing authorities.
- B. Abbreviations indicated below to identify extinguisher type related to UL classification and rating system and not necessarily to type and amount of extinguishing material contained in extinguisher.
- C. Multi-Purpose Dry Chemical Type: UL rated 2-A:10-B:C, 5 lb. nominal capacity, in enameled steel container, for Class A, Class B and Class C fires.

## 2.3 MOUNTING BRACKETS

- A. Provide manufacturer's standard bracket designed to prevent accidental dislodgment of extinguisher, of proper size for type and capacity of extinguisher specified, in manufacturer's standard enamel finish; color to match extinguisher.

## 2.4 CABINETS

- A. Type and Style: Fire extinguisher cabinets shall be metal, semi-recessed, with plexiglass panel, sized to fit within the partition or wall depth. Provide fire-rated cabinets within fire-rated partitions.
- B. Color: Fire extinguisher cabinets shall be factory pre-finished with baked enamel in the colors selected by the Architect from the standard range of colors of the selected manufacturer.
- C. Design is based on "Model FS AL C2409-R" of Larsen's Mfg. Co. Other manufacturers noted herein may substitute their equivalent cabinet upon acceptance by the Architect.

## 2.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify fire extinguisher in cabinet with lettering spelling "FIRE EXTINGUISHER" painted on door by silk-screen process. Provide lettering on door as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard letter sizes, styles, colors and layouts.
- B. Identify bracket-mounted extinguishers with red letter decals spelling 'FIRE EXTINGUISHER' applied to wall surface. Letter size, style and location as selected by the Architect.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where fire extinguishers and cabinets are to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install items included in this Section in locations indicated and at heights to comply with applicable regulations of governing authorities.
  - 1. Prepare recesses in walls for fire extinguisher cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and style of trim and to comply with manufacturer's instructions.
  - 2. Securely fasten mounting brackets and fire extinguisher cabinets to structure, square and plumb, to comply with manufacturer's instructions.

- B. Where exact location of cabinets and bracket-mounted fire extinguishers is not indicated, locate as directed by the Architect.

3.3 SERVICE

- A. Determine the approximate completion date of the work and then inspect, charge, and tag the fire extinguishers at a date not more than 10 days before or not less than one day before actual completion date of the work.

END OF SECTION 104416

SECTION 10 75 00 - FLAGPOLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Ground Set Flagpoles
- B. Accessories

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 31 20 00 – Earth Moving
- B. Division 26 Electrical

1.03 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM B 241/B 241 M – Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Seamless Pipe and Seamless Extruded Tube

1.04 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Design Requirements
  - 1. Flagpole Height: 30 feet.
  - 2. Flag Size: 5 feet by 8 feet.
- B. Performance Requirements: Provide flagpole and installation designed to withstand a minimum wind speed of 120 MPH without permanent deformation.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with the requirements of Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures and as modified below.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's name, specifications and installation instructions for each item specified.
- C. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings for flagpoles, including scaled sections, dimensioned elevations, anchors, reinforcement, accessories and installation details.
- D. Quality Control Submittals
  - 1. Qualifications Certification: Submit written certification or similar documentation signed by the applicable subcontractor, prime contractor and/or manufacturer (where applicable) indicating compliance with the requirements of this specification.
  - 2. Experience Listing: Submit a list of completed projects using the products proposed for this project, including owner's contact information and telephone number for each project, demonstrating compliance with applicable requirements of this specification.
- E. Closeout Procedures: Comply with the requirements of Section 01 77 00.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Design Data: Provide documentation of compliance to the specified performance requirements, bearing the seal and signature of a Registered Professional Engineer licensed to practice in the state in which the project is located.

1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Establish and maintain required lines and elevations for grade control.

1.08 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Proceed with and complete flagpole installation as rapidly as portions of the site become available, working within seasonal limitations for the work required.

1.09 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Spiral wrap flagpole with protective covering and pack in protective shipping tubes or containers.
- B. Protect flagpoles and accessories from damage or moisture.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Furnish manufacturer's standard warranty against defects in product, workmanship and materials.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

- A. For convenience, details and specifications have been based on flagpoles manufactured by Concord Industries, Inc., Addison, Texas (Tel. #1-800-527-3902).

2.02 CONCEALED HALYARD GROUND SET FLAGPOLE

- A. Concealed halyard system flagpole similar to "Independence" by Concord Industries, Inc.
- B. Shaft: Seamless cone tapered aluminum tubing conforming to ASTM B 241, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
  - 1. Finish: Polished to a deep luster sheen, clear anodized finish conforming to AA M32-C22-A41.
  - 2. 7" Butt Diameter
  - 3. 0.188" wall thickness
  - 4. Single pole section
- C. Truck: Cast aluminum housing and spindle, internal halyard type with 2½" diameter plated sheave; revolving mounting, non-fouling.
- D. Halyard
  - 1. Material: 1/8" diameter braided steel aircraft wire.

2. Hardware: Two chrome swivel type flag snaps each set spaced for the specified flag sizes, stainless steel quick links attached to halyard ends with connecting swivel and neoprene coated counter weight with beaded nylon retainer ring.

- E. Winch and Handle: Internal, direct drive, gearless type mounted on a rotating plate. The winch shall be constructed of stainless steel, locking in any position upon removal of the winch handle and include a single reinforced access opening and door with keylock with access hole in the door for the winch handle.

## 2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Ground Sleeve: Galvanized steel components as indicated below:

- a. Foundation Tube: Corrugated, 16 gauge tube with diameter and length as required for the specified flagpole height, centered on and welded to face of base plate.
- b. Base Plate: Square with side dimensions of 4 inches greater than the inside dimension of the foundation tube.
- c. Ground Spike:  $\frac{3}{4}$ " diameter, 18" long, centered on and welded to the face of the base plate opposite the foundation tube attachment.
- d. Setting Plate: 6' square with a drilled hole at the center for attachment to the ground spike, welded perpendicular to the length of the ground spike, 6 inches from the base plate.

- B. Shoebase Mounting Hardware

- a. Anchor Base: Cast aluminum, heat treated, drilled for anchor bolt diameter and pattern specified in the manufacturer's descriptive literature for the specified flagpole height, sleeved over the shaft butt and joined to the shaft butt by continuous, circumferential welds at outside top and inside bottom of the base. The entire assembly, including the flagpole, shall be heat treated after the attachment of the shoebase casting.
- b. Fasteners: Quantity, diameter and length specified in the manufacturer's descriptive literature for the specified flagpole height, including anchor bolts, nuts and washers.

- C. Flash Collar: Manufacturer's standard spun aluminum flash collar with finish matching the shaft.

- D. Finial: Spun aluminum, 14 gauge wall thickness, flush seam, gold anodized finish, diameter matching the butt diameter of the shaft.

- E. Flagpole lighting: International Dark Sky Association certified Dark-Sky Friendly Fixture

- a. 572 Lumen LED lighting (four total lights)
- b. Rotates with flag
- c. Internal halyard
- d. 12 volt system with driver contained inside the truck
- e. 110V/120V input, 12 Volt output
- f. 1.25" NPT Spindle
- g.  $\frac{1}{2}$ "-13NC top drilling for finial attachment
- h. Finish: Satin
- i. 6" diameter
- j. Similar to model ABW2-35FP-SAT by Concord Industries.

- F. Cleat Covers: Aluminum housing, finish matching the shaft, with keyed operated cylinder lock, keyed alike for multiple units; two keys supplied for each lock.

- G. Halyard Boxes: Aluminum housing with finish matching the shaft, five feet in height.

2.04 CONCRETE MIXES

- A. Concrete: 3000 psi compressive strength at 28 days, 6% air entrained.
- B. Grout: 5000 psi, non-shrink grout at 28 days.

2.05 FABRICATION

- A. Provide self-aligning internal sleeves for shafts fabricated in sections for field assembly; field welded connections including plug welding is not permitted.
- B. Fabricate end to end joints of shaft sections for hairline joint after connection; match, mark and number shaft sections for field assembly.

2.06 TYPICAL POLE DIMENSIONS

- A. Provide and install flagpoles with the following typical pole dimensions and specifications:

Exposed Height	Overall Height	Butt Diam.	Top Diam.	Wall Thickness	Tapered Length	Straight Length
<b>35 ft.</b>	<b>38'-6"</b>	<b>7"</b>	<b>3.5"</b>	<b>0.188"</b>	<b>20 ft.</b>	<b>18'-6"</b>

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Installer Verification of Conditions: Examine conditions under which flagpoles are to be installed with the materials and components specified in this section. Affected Prime Contractors, the Owner's Representative and the Project Designer shall be notified in writing of any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely installation of the work.
  - a. When the installer confirms conditions as being acceptable to ensure proper and timely installation of the work and to ensure requirements of applicable warranties or guarantees can be satisfied, submit written confirmation to the Project Designer. Failure to submit written confirmation and subsequent installation will be assumed to indicate conditions are acceptable to the installer.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install flagpole components and accessories in accordance with approved shop drawings and the manufacturer's installation instructions.
- B. Ground Sleeve
  - a. Excavate in well compacted soil to the indicated depth, width and length, providing shoring for unstable soil conditions. Remove all non-soil materials from the excavation area.
  - b. Coat the surface of the ground sleeve assembly, and the surfaces of the shaft that will be installed below grade with bituminous paint, minimum 5 mil dry film thickness.
  - c. Place the ground sleeve assembly in excavation. Drive the ground spike into undisturbed soil to the extent that the base plate is flush with the bottom of the excavation.



- d. Place concrete in the excavation immediately after mixing using a chute to deliver the concrete for proper placement. Surround the ground sleeve with concrete, placing the concrete to finish grade and compacting with vibrators.
- e. Slope the concrete surface from the top of the ground sleeve to grade for water run-off, screed the concrete surface to a smooth trowel finish.
- f. Moist cure the concrete surface allowing the concrete to attain its full 28 day compressive strength prior to installing the flagpole.

C. Shoe Base

- a. Set the base in a grout bed of sufficient height that excess grout is displaced as anchoring and adjusting of the flagpole assembly progresses. Align the base hole pattern with anchor bolts and lower the base to the grout bed.
- b. Anchor and align the flagpole plumb. Provide temporary bracing until the grout attains its full compressive strength.
- c. Screed exposed grout surfaces to a 45 degree fillet removing excess grout from the substrate.

3.03 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Repairs and Protection of Flagpoles

- 1. Repair or replace broken or defective flagpole components as directed by the Project Designer.
- 2. Protect units from damage until acceptance of flagpole installation.

END OF SECTION 10 75 00

SECTION 122413 - WINDOW SHADES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the window shades as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Manually-operated window shades.
  - 2. Field measurements of as-built conditions.
  - 3. Electric drapery tracks.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Provide assemblies which are complete assemblies produced by one manufacturer, including hardware, accessory items, mounting brackets, and fastenings.
- B. Provide materials in colors as selected by the Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include styles, material descriptions, construction details, dimensions of individual components and profiles, features, finishes, and operating instructions.
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit floor layout and elevations, indicating location of all window treatments, mechanism details, type and size of each unit, type and location of controls. Shop drawings must also show seaming of shade fabric. Submit shop drawings showing details of installation and relation to adjoining construction and conditions.
- C. Samples: Submit full size sample of each shade type for Architect's acceptance.
- D. Mock-Up
  - 1. Install each type of shade assembly on one complete column bay for Architect's acceptance of installation details, workmanship and operation.
  - 2. Approved mock-up shall be used as the standard for installation of work under this Section, and no further installation work shall proceed before Architect's acceptance of the mock-up.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's standard non-depreciating 25-year limited warranty covering all hardware, motors, motor control system and shade cloth.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Protect shades from damage, soiling and deterioration during transit, storage and handling to, until Owner's acceptance.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUALLY OPERATED SHADES

- A. Provide manually operated shade system equal to "FlexShade NEXD," made by the Draper or equal made by MechoShades, Sol-R-Veil Inc., Rollease Acmeda Contract Series 1 or approved equal conforming to standards specified herein.

- 1. Operation: Bead chain and clutch operating mechanism allowing shade to stop when chain is released. Designed never to need adjustment or lubrication. Provide limit stops to prevent shade from being raised or lowered too far.

- a. Clutch mechanism: Molded components from proprietary POM thermoplastic, .118" (3mm) steel baseplate and .354 inch (9 mm) primary carbon steel post are joined via a high tonnage hydraulic swaging process; assembled with a rotational roller bearing, overrunning design, and positive mechanical engagement of drive mechanism to tube. White or Black color as selected by Architect. Center bead chain placement for right- or left-hand operation and accommodates side channel with no adjustment of chain location.
- b. Bead chain loop: Stainless steel bead chain.
- c. Bead Chain Hold Down: Spring-Loaded Tensioner complying with ANSI/WCMA A100.1-2018 safety standard.

- 2. Single Roller Configuration:

- a. Mounting:
  - 1) Endcaps only.
  - 2) Endcaps and fascia.
  - 3) Endcaps and ceiling/wall headbox.
  - 4)
- b. Endcaps: 1018 stamped steel. Suitable for mounting to ceiling, wall, and jamb. Height adjustable idler end allows fine leveling adjustments after installation. Field adjustable from right hand to left hand operation. No "L" angle required for wall mounting. Contains at least two entry points for the idler end.
  - 1). Endcap covers: To match fascia or headbox color.
  - 2). Mounted to ceiling.
  - 3). Mounted to wall.
  - 4). Mounted to jamb.
- c. Fascia: L shaped aluminum extrusion to conceal shade roller and hardware.
  - 1). Attachment: Snaps onto endcaps without requiring exposed fasteners of any kind. Fascia can be mounted continuously across two or more shade bands. No notching is required.
  - 2). Finish: Custom powder coat as selected by the Architect.
- d. Headbox, Ceiling/Wall style: Aluminum fabrication with a top/back cover and fascia with endcaps for mounting:
  - 1). Finish: Custom powder coat as selected by the Architect.
- e. Headbox, Pocket style: Aluminum fabrication with removable closure, endcaps, and U-shaped pocket:

- 1). Finish: Custom powder coat as selected by the Architect.
- f. Type D Shade pocket: Rectangular pocket and endcaps designed for recessed ceiling installation of window shades with ceiling tile lip.
  - 1). Material: Extruded aluminum alloy or steel with white finish.
  - 2). Size: 5 inches (127 mm) wide by 5-3/8 inches (137 mm) high.
  - 3). Closure Panel:
  - 4). Pocket End Cap Kit: Metal endcaps with 7/8 inch (22 mm) lip for support of acoustical ceiling panel.
- g. Wall Clip with Closure Panel: For site constructed ceiling recesses, provide removable closure panel to minimize slot for shade passage but allowing access to shade for maintenance.
  - 1). Material: Aluminum alloy with white epoxy paint finish.
  - 2). Tile Lip: Provide wall clip with 7/8 inch tile lip (22 mm).
  - 3). Closure width: See drawings.
  - 4). Provide continuous wall clip, 1-3/4 (44 mm) by 3/16 inch (5 mm), for snap-in attachment of closure panel without fasteners.
3. Shade slat: As directed by Architect.
4. Light Gap Reduction Channels.
  - a. Aluminum L Angle – 3/4 inch (19 mm) by 1 inch (25 mm).

## 2.2 SHADE CLOTH

- A. Shade cloth shall be of weave, color and optical properties as selected by the Architect made by Draper or equal by other manufacturers noted herein.
- B. Where black-out shades are indicated, shade cloth shall be opaque acrylic black-out shade cloth made by Draper or equal by other manufacturers noted herein; color selected by the Architect.
- C. Emergency Rescue Notice: provide label on window shade of same size, text and font whenever window shade occurs on a window identified as a rescue window such that the label can be seen from the interior while the shade is in the down position.

## 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. The shade and the fabric shall hang flat without buckling or distortion. The edge, when trimmed, shall hang straight without curling or raveling. An unguided roller shade cloth shall roll true and straight, without tracking sideways more than +/- 1/8" in either direction due to warp distortion or weave design. Shades shall fill window openings from head to sill and jamb to jamb.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where window treatments are to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION: GENERAL

- A. Coordinate with the work of other trades to assure proper and adequate provision in the work of those trades for interface with the work of this Section.

- B. Install the work of this Section in strict accordance with the indicated design and the installation recommendations of the manufacturer as approved by the Architect.
- C. Upon completion of the installation, put all components through at least ten (10) complete cycles of operation, adjusting as necessary to achieve optimum operation.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF MANUAL ROLLER SHADES

- A. Install roller shades level, plumb, square, and true according to manufacturer's written instructions and located so shade band is not closer than 2" to interior face of glass. Allow proper clearances for window operation hardware.
- B. Adjust and balance roller shades to operate smoothly, easily, safely, and free from binding or malfunction throughout entire operational range.
- C. Clean roller shade surfaces after installation, according to manufacturers written instructions.

### 3.4 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

- A. Protect installed units to ensure proper operating condition, without damage or blemishes. Repair or replace damaged units as directed by the Architect.

END OF SECTION 122413

SECTION 124823 - ENTRANCE FLOOR GRIDS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary to complete the entrance floor grids as shown on the drawings and specified herein.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Concrete recess - Section 033000.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer: Except as otherwise indicated, provide entrance grid and accessories by a single manufacturer for entire project.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacture's specifications and installation instructions or entrance grid. Include methods of installation for each type of substrate.
- B. Samples: Submit samples for each type of exposed entrance grid, frames and accessories required. Provide 12" square samples of grid including frame.

1.6 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Protection: Use all means necessary to protect the materials of this Section before, during, and after installation, and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.
- B. Replacements: In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GRID ASSEMBLY

- A. Furnish and install KD98 stainless steel floor grate manufactured by Kadee Industries or approved equal by C/S Group or approved equal.
- B. Tread Material: Type 304 stainless steel 0.070" x 0.177" surface wire, No. 4 satin finish.
  - 1. Wire Spacing: Standard slot openings of 0.125".
- C. Support Rods: Type 304 Stainless steel 0.070" x 1", spaced 1" on center.
- D. Framing: Type 304 stainless steel with unit construction to support 300 pounds per sq. ft.
- E. Accessories: Provide hidden locking devices to prevent warping and rattling. Furnish the number of lock downs recommended by manufacturer.

- F. Provide stainless steel pan and drain body.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where entrance floor grid is to be installed and notify the Architect of conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install grid frames integrally with principal pour of concrete floor system. Locate, align and level frame members accurately.
- B. Protection: Upon completion of frame installations and concrete work, provide temporary filler of plywood or fiberboard in mat recesses, and cover frames with plywood protective flooring. Maintain protection until construction traffic has ended and project reaches substantial completion.
- C. Delay installation of grid until work on the project reaches substantial completion.
- D. Install grid in frame and anchor with hidden lock downs.

END OF SECTION 124823

SECTION 13 34 15 - TUBULAR FRAME BLEACHERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Installation of aluminum, elevated, fully closed deck, tubular frame bleacher system including engineering, foundation slab, freight, installation and supervision to provide a new grandstand structure.

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 31 20 00 – Earth Moving
- B. Section 32 12 16 – Asphalt Paving
- C. Section 32 13 13 – Concrete Paving
- D. Section 32 31 13 – Chain Link Fences and Gates

1.03 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Design Requirements: Closed deck, tubular frame bleachers with closed deck stair treads.
  - 1. Comply with the applicable requirements of the IBC and the Building Code of the State of NY.
  - 2. Capacity: Provide ten row bleacher system with overall dimensions as shown on drawings.
- B. Structural Requirements
  - 1. Dead Load: No less than 6 psf for seatboards, footboards, risers and aluminum framing.
  - 2. Uniformly Distributed Live Load: Not less than 120 psf to structural members, all stringers and girders shall be limited to L/200 for maximum vertical live load deflection and 120 psf for seat and foot boards.
  - 3. Design Wind Speed: Comply with applicable requirements of the building code within the State of New York including applicable portions of ASCE 7 for Wind Load Pressure.
  - 4. Sway: Not less than 24 plf parallel to the seat run and 10 plf perpendicular to the seat.
  - 5. Deflection: Structural elements shall be sized to limit the live load deflections to 1/200 of the span.
- C. Guardrails
  - 1. Horizontal Load: 50 lbs. plf.
  - 2. Vertical Load: 100 lbs plf.
- E. Seismic: Comply with the applicable requirements of the Building Code of the State of New York. Calculations and design to be based on the local governing building code.
- F. Miscellaneous Requirements: Provide system with the following applicable requirements:
  - a. Railings: NFPA-101
  - b. Handicapped Access and Seating: Provide adequate spaces to comply with current ADA standards.
  - c. Steel Design and Fabrication: Design in accordance with the American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC), AA-94 and AISC Manual of Steel Construction, Load and Resistance Factor Design, 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition.
  - d. Welding: Perform work in accordance with American Welding Society (AWS) standards and AWS D1.2.
  - e. Aluminum: Perform work in accordance with Aluminum Association of America.



- f. Life Safety: NFPA-101 and NFPA-102.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with the requirements of Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures and as modified below.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's name, specifications and installation instructions for each item specified.
- C. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings showing layouts of tubular frame bleacher units coordinated with field measurements, sealed by a registered professional engineer and including the following minimum information:
1. Seat heights.
  2. Row spacing and rise.
  3. Aisle widths and locations.
  4. Overall dimensions, connections and relationship to adjoining accessories and construction.
  5. Types of materials and finishes.
- D. Quality Control Submittals
1. Qualifications Certification: Submit written certification or similar documentation signed by the applicable subcontractor, prime contractor and/or manufacturer (where applicable) indicating compliance with the requirements specified below in the "Quality Assurance" section of this specification.
  2. Experience Listing: Submit a list of completed projects using the products proposed for this project, including owner's contact information and telephone number for each project, demonstrating compliance with applicable requirements specified in the "Quality Assurance" section of this specification.
- E. Closeout Procedures: Comply with the requirements of Section 01 77 00.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Experience: A company specializing in tubular frame bleacher construction with a minimum of five years of experience in the fabrication of bleacher systems. The installer of the structure shall be the manufacturer of the bleachers or a certified manufacturer's subcontractor.
- B. Warranty: Upon substantial completion of the project, the tubular frame bleacher system shall be guaranteed for the following minimum periods:
1. Structure: Five years against structural defects including labor for repair.
  2. Finish: Three years against finish including labor for repair.
- C. Engineer Qualifications: The design of the tubular frame bleacher system shall be reviewed and sealed by a licensed professional engineer in the state where the structure is to be installed.
- D. Regulatory Requirements: Obtain written permission from applicable agencies prior to the start of construction. Submit one copy of the permit as specified in "Submittals-Quality Control Submittals" above.

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Establish and maintain required lines and elevations for grade control.

1.07 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Proceed with and complete tubular frame bleacher construction as rapidly as portions of the site become available, working within seasonal limitations for the work required.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURER

- A. For convenience, details and specifications have been based on "Alum-A-Stand Elevated Bleachers" as manufactured by Dant Clayton Corporation, Louisville, Kentucky (1-800-626-2177) or approved equal to establish quality and function.
- B. Refer to the Instruction to Bidders, General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 of the Project Manual for additional provisions and requirements relating to equivalent products or substitutions.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Understructure

1. The understructure shall be fabricated from 6061-T6 alloy aluminum extrusions.
2. Vertical members shall be 2 7/8" O.D. tubing.
3. Horizontal members and footboard supports shall be 3" X 2 7/8" channel.
4. Cross braces and diagonals shall be 2 1/4" X 7" channel.
5. Handrail supports shall be 2 5/8" O.D. tubing.
6. Assembly of the understructure shall be an interlocking design utilizing 7/16" X 3 1/2" hot dipped galvanized bolts.
7. The structure shall be designed so that in the event of accidental damage, sub-component parts may be replaced using common hand tools. Field welding for repairs is not acceptable.

B. Guardrail

1. Handrails shall be 3" X 2 7/8", 6061-T6 aluminum extruded channel, anodized to clear 204R1.
2. The guardrail system shall be an interlocking system with positive through bolt fastening. The top rail shall be designed to fully cover the rail support posts for a totally snag-free area, eliminating the potential of sharp edge contact with spectators.
3. Guardrails shall be 1 15/16" O.D., 6063-T6 alloy, extruded aluminum pipe.
4. Chain link fencing shall be aluminized, 6 gauge, 2" mesh black vinyl coated fabric.

C. Extrusions

- i. Seats shall be 6063-T6 extruded aluminum with a fluted surface and a wall thickness of 0.078". Seat boards shall have an actual minimum width of 9 1/2", outside legs with 1 3/4" actual vertical height and two internal legs with a 2 5/8" vertical height. Seat boards shall be attached to the frame through positive physical fastening with one 3/8" diameter bolt. Bolt clips, bolt runners or other friction type fastening devices are not acceptable. Seat board finish shall be anodized aluminum.

- ii. Footboards shall be mill finish, 6063-T6 extruded aluminum with a fluted surface and a wall thickness of 0.078". Each individual footboard member shall have two internal legs with 2 1/8" actual vertical height. All footboards shall attach without the use of hardware, attachment shall be positive snap and interlock with the support structure. Bolt clips, bolt runners or other friction type fastening devices are not acceptable.
- iii. Riser boards shall be anodized finish or powder coated. If powder coated, the owner shall choose from the manufacturer's standard available colors at no additional cost.

D. Walking Surface Requirements

- i. All aluminum decking intended for use as a walking surface, including walkways, aisles, walking surfaces in seating sections, stairs, ramps, platforms, handicapped areas and landings shall include a slip resistant surface treatment intended to minimize the effects of wet conditions for pedestrian safety.
  - ii. The surface treatment shall increase the slip resistance of the clear anodized finished aluminum to achieve a slip index (coefficient of friction) of 0.80 or higher in all directions of travel, including parallel to seating, as measured by the Variable Incidence Tribometer, under wet and dry conditions. This testing machine is referenced in ASTM F-1679, Standard Test Method for Using a Variable Incidence Tribometer.
  - iii. An independent test substantiating both the minimum required 0.80 coefficient of friction and the durability performance of the slip resistance feature must be provided during the shop drawing submittal approval process.
- E. Stairs: Self-supporting system, independent from attachment or suspension from any foot boards or decking member, constructed of 2 X 12 aluminum planking with maximum 6" riser and minimum 11" tread. All riser faces shall be fully closed.
- F. Aisles: Designed so that all vertical and horizontal areas within the six foot bay of aisle areas are fully closed.
- G. Handicapped Areas: Ramp, wheel chair areas and companion seating shall be installed as indicated on the drawings and in accordance with applicable codes and ADA requirements. Wheel chair spaces and companion seating shall be equally dispersed along the front walkway.
- H. Ramps and Ramp Platforms: Frames shall be constructed of 9" X 1.40" extruded aluminum mill finish channel with 3" X 1.4" extruded aluminum mill finish vertical channel columns. Treads shall be mill finish, 6063-T6 extruded aluminum with a fluted surface and a minimum wall thickness of 0.78". The actual minimum vertical height of the treads shall be 1.75".
- I. Hardware: Bolts used for field installation shall be hot dipped galvanized. Primary connections to bleacher system areas such as seats, cross braces, handrail (rail and posts), etc., shall be made with minimum 3/8" diameter hardware. All seat board, foot board and hand rail end caps shall be fabricated of cast aluminum.
- J. Reinforced Concrete
- 1. All concrete work and materials shall be in accordance with ACI 318-83.
  - 2. Cast in place concrete shall have a minimum compressive strength of 4000 psi at 28 days.
  - 3. All exterior concrete shall be air entrained to 6% +/- 1%.
  - 4. Reinforcing steel shall be in accordance with ASTM A615, Grade 60.
  - 5. Embedment of reinforcing in concrete shall be 3" if directly placed on earth, 2" if concrete is poured against forms and exposed to weather and 1½" with columns to ties, unless otherwise specified on the drawings.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Installer Verification of Conditions: Examine conditions under which the tubular frame bleacher system is to be constructed with the materials and components specified in this section. Affected Prime Contractors, the Owner's Representative and the Project Designer shall be notified in writing of any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely installation of the work.
  - 1. When the installer confirms conditions as being acceptable to ensure proper and timely installation of the work and to ensure requirements of applicable warranties or guarantees can be satisfied, submit written confirmation to the Project Designer. Failure to submit written confirmation and subsequent installation will be assumed to indicate conditions are acceptable to the installer.

#### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install bleacher unit in accordance with the Manufacturer's instructions and final shop drawings. Provide indicated accessories, anchors, inserts and other items required for installation of the unit and attachments to adjoining construction.

#### 3.03 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repairs and Protection of Tubular Frame Bleachers
  - 1. Clean installed tubular frame bleacher unit on exposed and semi-exposed surfaces. Touch-up shop applied finishes, restoring damaged or soiled areas.
  - 2. Repair or replace broken or defective bleacher components as directed by the Project Designer.
  - 3. Protect system from damage until acceptance of tubular frame bleacher construction.

END OF SECTION 13 34 15

THIS PAGE HAS INTENTIONALLY BEEN LEFT BLANK

SECTION 220500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Transition fittings.
  - 2. Dielectric fittings.
  - 3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 4. Sleeves.
  - 5. Escutcheons.
  - 6. Grout.
  - 7. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
  - 8. Painting and finishing.
  - 9. Concrete bases.
  - 10. Supports and anchorages.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in duct shafts.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- F. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:
  - 1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
  - 2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Transition fittings.
  - 2. Dielectric fittings.
  - 3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 4. Escutcheons.
- B. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
- B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
  - 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
  - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- C. Electrical Characteristics for Mechanical Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for mechanical items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 8 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

### 2.2 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

### 2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
  - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
    - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
    - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
  - 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.



## 2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. AWWA Transition Couplings: Same size as, and with pressure rating at least equal to and with ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
    - b. Dresser Industries, Inc.; DMD Div.
    - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Incorporated (The); Pipe Products Div.
    - d. JCM Industries.
    - e. Smith-Blair, Inc.
    - f. Viking Johnson.
  - 2. Underground Piping NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Manufactured fitting or coupling.
  - 3. Underground Piping NPS 2 and Larger: AWWA C219, metal sleeve-type coupling.
  - 4. Aboveground Pressure Piping: Pipe fitting.
- B. Flexible Transition Couplings for Underground Nonpressure Drainage Piping: ASTM C 1173 with elastomeric sleeve, ends same size as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant metal band on each end.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
    - b. Fernco, Inc.
    - c. Mission Rubber Company.
    - d. Plastic Oddities, Inc.

## 2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Eclipse, Inc.
    - d. Epco Sales, Inc.
    - e. Hart Industries, International, Inc.
    - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
    - g. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
- D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:

- a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
  - b. Central Plastics Company.
  - c. Epco Sales, Inc.
  - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- E. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Calpico, Inc.
    - c. Central Plastics Company.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 2. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150-psig minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.
- F. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Calpico, Inc.
    - b. Lochinvar Corp.
- G. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Perfection Corp.
    - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
    - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - d. Victaulic Co. of America.

## 2.6 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Calpico, Inc.
    - c. Metraflex Co.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM NBR interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  - 3. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.

4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

## 2.7 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
  1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.

## 2.8 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
  1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated and rough brass.
- D. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.

## 2.9 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
  1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
  2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
  3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.

- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
  - 1. New Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
    - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
    - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - h. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.
    - i. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
- M. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- N. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- O. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.

- P. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
  2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
  3. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
    - a. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6.
    - b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
    - c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Refer to Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
      - 1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
  4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
- Q. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
  2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.
  3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- R. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- S. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems" for materials.
- T. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.

- U. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

### 3.3 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

### 3.4 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 3. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

### 3.5 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.

- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install plumbing equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

### 3.6 PAINTING

- A. Painting of mechanical systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 9 Section "Painting (Professional Line Products)."
- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

### 3.7 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
  - 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
  - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
  - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - 6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 7. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

### 3.8 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor mechanical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

### 3.9 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for mechanical equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.

- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 220517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves.
  - 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
  - 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
  - 4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
  - 5. Grout.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- G. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

## 2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. [Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.](#)
  - 2. [Zurn Specification Drainage Operation; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.](#)
- B. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

## 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. [Metraflex Company \(The\).](#)
  - 2. [Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.](#)
  - 3. [Proco Products, Inc.](#)
- B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
  - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
  - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. [Presealed Systems.](#)
- B. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

## 2.5 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
  - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
  - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
  - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
  - 3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

#### 3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
  - 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
  - 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
  - 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.

5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.

- B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

### 3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

### 3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than **NPS 6 (DN 150)**: Cast-iron wall sleeves.
    - b. Piping **NPS 6 (DN 150)** and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves.
  2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than **NPS 6 (DN 150)**: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for **1-inch (25-mm)** annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
    - b. Piping **NPS 6 (DN 150)** and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for **1-inch (25-mm)** annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:

- a. Piping Smaller Than **NPS 6 (DN 150)**: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for **1-inch (25-mm)** annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - b. Piping **NPS 6 (DN 150)** and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for **1-inch (25-mm)** annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
- a. Piping Smaller Than **NPS 6 (DN 150)**: PVC-pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping **NPS 6 (DN 150)** and Larger: PVC-pipe sleeves.
5. Interior Partitions:
- a. Piping Smaller Than **NPS 6 (DN 150)**: PVC-pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping **NPS 6 (DN 150)** and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 220517

## SECTION 220518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Escutcheons.
  - 2. Floor plates.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

#### 2.2 FLOOR PLATES

- A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.
- B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
    - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
    - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
    - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass] type with rough-brass finish.
    - i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
    - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with rough-brass finish.
    - k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
  - 2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping:
    - a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
    - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
    - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
    - g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-casting brass type with rough-brass finish.
    - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.
    - i. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting brass type with rough-brass finish.
    - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.

- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

- 1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.
  - 2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 220518



## SECTION 220523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Bronze angle valves.
2. Brass ball valves.
3. Bronze ball valves.
4. Iron ball valves.
5. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
6. Iron, grooved-end butterfly valves.
7. Bronze lift check valves.
8. Bronze swing check valves.
9. Iron swing check valves.
10. Iron swing check valves with closure control.
11. Iron, grooved-end swing check valves.
12. Iron, center-guided check valves.
13. Iron, plate-type check valves.
14. Bronze gate valves.
15. Iron gate valves.
16. Bronze globe valves.
17. Iron globe valves.
18. Lubricated plug valves.
19. Chainwheels.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.
2. Section 221113 "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for valves applicable only to this piping.
3. Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping" for valves applicable only to this piping.
4. Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties" for valves applicable only to this piping.
5. Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties" for valves applicable only to this piping.
6. Section 334100 "Storm Utility Drainage Piping" for valves applicable only to this piping.
7. Section 334600 "Subdrainage" for valves applicable only to this piping.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- F. RS: Rising stem.
- G. SWP: Steam working pressure.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
  - 2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
  - 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
  - 3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
  - 4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
  - 5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
  - 6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
  - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Refer to valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Valve Actuator Types:
  - 1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves **NPS 8 (DN 200)** and larger.
  - 2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
  - 3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves **NPS 6 (DN 150)** and smaller except plug valves.
  - 4. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 5 plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.
  - 5. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.
- E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With **2-inch (50-mm)** stem extensions and the following features:
  - 1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
  - 2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
  - 3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.
- F. Valve-End Connections:
  - 1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
  - 2. Grooved: With grooves according to AWWA C606.
  - 3. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
  - 4. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
- G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

### 2.2 BRONZE ANGLE VALVES

- A. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Bronze Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Hammond Valve.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
    - b. CWP Rating: **200 psig (1380 kPa).**
    - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.

- d. Ends: Threaded.
- e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
- f. Packing: Asbestos free.
- g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

B. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. NIBCO INC.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
  - b. CWP Rating: **200 psig** (1380 kPa).
  - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Threaded.
  - e. Stem: Bronze.
  - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
  - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

C. Class 150, Bronze Angle Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - b. Kitz Corporation.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
  - b. CWP Rating: **300 psig** (2070 kPa).
  - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Threaded.
  - e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
  - f. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

D. Class 150, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - d. Hammond Valve.
  - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - f. NIBCO INC.
  - g. Powell Valves.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
- b. CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.3 BRASS BALL VALVES

A. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Kitz Corporation.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
  - c. Body Design: One piece.
  - d. Body Material: Forged brass.
  - e. Ends: Threaded.
  - f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - g. Stem: Brass.
  - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  - i. Port: Reduced.

B. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Hammond Valve.
  - d. Jamesbury; a subsidiary of Metso Automation.
  - e. Jomar International, LTD.
  - f. Kitz Corporation.
  - g. Legend Valve.
  - h. Marwin Valve; a division of Richards Industries.
  - i. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - j. NIBCO INC.
  - k. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).

- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Forged brass.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
- h. Stem: Brass.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Full.

C. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Hammond Valve.
  - d. Jamesbury; a subsidiary of Metso Automation.
  - e. Kitz Corporation.
  - f. Marwin Valve; a division of Richards Industries.
  - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. SWP Rating: **150 psig** (1035 kPa).
  - c. CWP Rating: **600 psig** (4140 kPa).
  - d. Body Design: Two piece.
  - e. Body Material: Forged brass.
  - f. Ends: Threaded.
  - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - h. Stem: Stainless steel.
  - i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
  - j. Port: Full.

D. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Hammond Valve.
  - b. Jamesbury; a subsidiary of Metso Automation.
  - c. Legend Valve.
  - d. Marwin Valve; a division of Richards Industries.
  - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. SWP Rating: **150 psig** (1035 kPa).
  - c. CWP Rating: **600 psig** (4140 kPa).
  - d. Body Design: Two piece.
  - e. Body Material: Forged brass.
  - f. Ends: Threaded.
  - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - h. Stem: Brass.

- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Regular.

E. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jamesbury; a subsidiary of Metso Automation.
  - b. Marwin Valve; a division of Richards Industries.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
  - d. Body Design: Two piece.
  - e. Body Material: Brass or bronze.
  - f. Ends: Threaded.
  - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - h. Stem: Stainless steel.
  - i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
  - j. Port: Regular.

F. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jomar International, LTD.
  - b. Kitz Corporation.
  - c. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
  - d. Body Design: Three piece.
  - e. Body Material: Forged brass.
  - f. Ends: Threaded.
  - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - h. Stem: Brass.
  - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  - j. Port: Full.

G. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jomar International, LTD.
  - b. Kitz Corporation.
  - c. Marwin Valve; a division of Richards Industries.

d. [Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
- d. Body Design: Three piece.
- e. Body Material: Forged brass.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
- h. Stem: Stainless steel.
- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Full.

2.4 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [American Valve, Inc.](#)
- b. [Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.](#)
- c. [NIBCO INC.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
- c. Body Design: One piece.
- d. Body Material: Bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded.
- f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
- g. Stem: Bronze.
- h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- i. Port: Reduced.

B. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.](#)
- b. [NIBCO INC.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
- c. Body Design: One piece.
- d. Body Material: Bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded.
- f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.



- g. Stem: Stainless steel.
- h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- i. Port: Reduced.

C. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. [American Valve, Inc.](#)
  - b. [Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.](#)
  - c. [Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.](#)
  - d. [Hammond Valve.](#)
  - e. [Lance Valves; a division of Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.](#)
  - f. [Legend Valve.](#)
  - g. [Milwaukee Valve Company.](#)
  - h. [NIBCO INC.](#)
  - i. [Red-White Valve Corporation.](#)
  - j. [Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.](#)
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
  - d. Body Design: Two piece.
  - e. Body Material: Bronze.
  - f. Ends: Threaded.
  - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - h. Stem: Bronze.
  - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  - j. Port: Full.

D. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. [Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.](#)
  - b. [Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.](#)
  - c. [Hammond Valve.](#)
  - d. [Lance Valves; a division of Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.](#)
  - e. [Milwaukee Valve Company.](#)
  - f. [NIBCO INC.](#)
  - g. [Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.](#)
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
  - d. Body Design: Two piece.
  - e. Body Material: Bronze.
  - f. Ends: Threaded.
  - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.

- h. Stem: Stainless steel.
- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Full.

E. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - e. Hammond Valve.
  - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - g. NIBCO INC.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
  - d. Body Design: Two piece.
  - e. Body Material: Bronze.
  - f. Ends: Threaded.
  - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - h. Stem: Bronze.
  - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  - j. Port: Regular.

F. Two-Piece, Regular-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Hammond Valve.
  - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
  - d. Body Design: Two piece.
  - e. Body Material: Bronze.
  - f. Ends: Threaded.
  - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - h. Stem: Stainless steel.
  - i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
  - j. Port: Regular.

G. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - b. Hammond Valve.
  - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - d. NIBCO INC.
  - e. Red-White Valve Corporation.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
  - d. Body Design: Three piece.
  - e. Body Material: Bronze.
  - f. Ends: Threaded.
  - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - h. Stem: Bronze.
  - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  - j. Port: Full.

H. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - b. Hammond Valve.
  - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - d. NIBCO INC.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
  - d. Body Design: Three piece.
  - e. Body Material: Bronze.
  - f. Ends: Threaded.
  - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - h. Stem: Stainless steel.
  - i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
  - j. Port: Full.

2.5 IRON BALL VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Ball Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.

- c. [Kitz Corporation.](#)
- d. [Sure Flow Equipment Inc.](#)
- e. [Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Split body.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
- g. Stem: Stainless steel.
- h. Ball: Stainless steel.
- i. Port: Full.

2.6 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.](#)
- b. [Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.](#)
- c. [Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.](#)
- d. [Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.](#)
- e. [Hammond Valve.](#)
- f. [Kitz Corporation.](#)
- g. [Legend Valve.](#)
- h. [Milwaukee Valve Company.](#)
- i. [NIBCO INC.](#)
- j. [Red-White Valve Corporation.](#)
- k. [Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- e. Seat: EPDM.
- f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

B. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.](#)
- b. [Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.](#)
- c. [Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.](#)

- d. [Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.](#)
- e. [Hammond Valve.](#)
- f. [Kitz Corporation.](#)
- g. [Legend Valve.](#)
- h. [Milwaukee Valve Company.](#)
- i. [NIBCO INC.](#)
- j. [Red-White Valve Corporation.](#)
- k. [Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: **200 psig** (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- e. Seat: NBR.
- f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

C. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:

1. [Manufacturers](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [American Valve, Inc.](#)
- b. [Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.](#)
- c. [Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.](#)
- d. [Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Center Line.](#)
- e. [Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.](#)
- f. [Hammond Valve.](#)
- g. [Kitz Corporation.](#)
- h. [Legend Valve.](#)
- i. [Milwaukee Valve Company.](#)
- j. [Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.](#)
- k. [NIBCO INC.](#)
- l. [Sure Flow Equipment Inc.](#)
- m. [Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: **200 psig** (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- e. Seat: EPDM.
- f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- g. Disc: Nickel-plated[ or -coated] ductile iron.

D. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Ductile-Iron Disc:

1. [Manufacturers](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [American Valve, Inc.](#)
- b. [Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.](#)
- c. [Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.](#)
- d. [Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Center Line.](#)
- e. [Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.](#)
- f. [Hammond Valve.](#)
- g. [Kitz Corporation.](#)
- h. [Legend Valve.](#)
- i. [Milwaukee Valve Company.](#)
- j. [Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.](#)
- k. [NIBCO INC.](#)
- l. [Sure Flow Equipment Inc.](#)
- m. [Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: **200 psig** (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- e. Seat: NBR.
- f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- g. Disc: Nickel-plated[ or -coated] ductile iron.

E. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [American Valve, Inc.](#)
- b. [Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.](#)
- c. [Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.](#)
- d. [Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.](#)
- e. [Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.](#)
- f. [Hammond Valve.](#)
- g. [Kitz Corporation.](#)
- h. [Legend Valve.](#)
- i. [Milwaukee Valve Company.](#)
- j. [NIBCO INC.](#)
- k. [Red-White Valve Corporation.](#)
- l. [Sure Flow Equipment Inc.](#)
- m. [Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: **200 psig** (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- e. Seat: EPDM.
- f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- g. Disc: Stainless steel.

F. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - c. Cooper Cameron Valves; A div. of Cooper Cameron Corp.
  - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
  - f. Hammond Valve.
  - g. Kitz Corporation.
  - h. Legend Valve.
  - i. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - j. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
  - k. NIBCO INC.
  - l. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - m. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
  - n. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: **200 psig** (1380 kPa).
  - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - e. Seat: NBR.
  - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
  - g. Disc: Stainless steel.

2.7 IRON, GROOVED-END BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. 175 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
  - b. Shurjoint Piping Products.
  - c. Tyco Fire Products LP; Grinnell Mechanical Products.
  - d. Victaulic Company.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: **175 psig** (1200 kPa).
  - c. Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
  - d. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
  - e. Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
  - f. Seal: EPDM.

B. 300 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Anvil International, Inc.
  - b. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
  - c. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
  - d. NIBCO INC.
  - e. Shurjoint Piping Products.
  - f. Tyco Fire Products LP; Grinnell Mechanical Products.
  - g. Victaulic Company.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
  - b. NPS 8 (DN 200) and Smaller CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
  - c. NPS 10 (DN 250) and Larger CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
  - d. Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
  - e. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
  - f. Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
  - g. Seal: EPDM.

## 2.8 BRONZE LIFT CHECK VALVES

### A. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
  - c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded.
  - f. Disc: Bronze.

### B. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Hammond Valve.
  - b. Kitz Corporation.
  - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - d. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
  - e. NIBCO INC.
  - f. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.



2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
- d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded.
- f. Disc: NBR, PTFE, or TFE.

2.9 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. American Valve, Inc.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- e. Hammond Valve.
- f. Kitz Corporation.
- g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- h. NIBCO INC.
- i. Powell Valves.
- j. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- k. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
- d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded.
- f. Disc: Bronze.

B. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- d. Hammond Valve.
- e. Kitz Corporation.
- f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- g. NIBCO INC.
- h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- i. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
- d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded.
- f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.

C. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - e. Kitz Corporation.
  - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - g. NIBCO INC.
  - h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
  - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
  - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded.
  - f. Disc: Bronze.

D. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Hammond Valve.
  - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - e. NIBCO INC.
  - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
  - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
  - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded.
  - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.

2.10 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
    - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
    - d. Hammond Valve.
    - e. Kitz Corporation.
    - f. Legend Valve.
    - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - h. NIBCO INC.
    - i. Red-White Valve Corporation.
    - j. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
    - k. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - e. Ends: Flanged.
    - f. Trim: Bronze.
    - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.
- B. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic-to-Metal Seats:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
    - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - e. Ends: Flanged.
    - f. Trim: Composition.
    - g. Seat Ring: Bronze.
    - h. Disc Holder: Bronze.
    - i. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
    - j. Gasket: Asbestos free.
- C. Class 250, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
    - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
    - d. Hammond Valve.

- e. [Milwaukee Valve Company.](#)
- f. [NIBCO INC.](#)
- g. [Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Trim: Bronze.
- g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.11 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES WITH CLOSURE CONTROL

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Spring-Closure Control:

1. [Manufacturers](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [NIBCO INC.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Trim: Bronze.
- g. Gasket: Asbestos free.
- h. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and spring.

B. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Weight-Closure Control:

1. [Manufacturers](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.](#)
- b. [Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.](#)
- c. [Hammond Valve.](#)
- d. [Milwaukee Valve Company.](#)
- e. [NIBCO INC.](#)
- f. [Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- e. Ends: Flanged.

- f. Trim: Bronze.
- g. Gasket: Asbestos free.
- h. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and weight.

2.12 IRON, GROOVED-END SWING CHECK VALVES

A. 300 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Anvil International, Inc.
  - b. Shurjoint Piping Products.
  - c. Tyco Fire Products LP; Grinnell Mechanical Products.
  - d. Victaulic Company.
2. Description:
  - a. CWP Rating: **300 psig** (2070 kPa).
  - b. Body Material: ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - c. Seal: EPDM.
  - d. Disc: Spring-operated, ductile iron or stainless steel.

2.13 IRON, CENTER-GUIDED CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Anvil International, Inc.
  - b. Hammond Valve.
  - c. Metraflex, Inc.
  - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - e. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
  - f. NIBCO INC.
  - g. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
  - h. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
  - b. CWP Rating: **200 psig** (1380 kPa).
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
  - d. Style: Compact wafer.
  - e. Seat: Bronze.

B. Class 125, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Flomatic Corporation.

- b. [Hammond Valve.](#)
- c. [Metraflex, Inc.](#)
- d. [Milwaukee Valve Company.](#)
- e. [Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.](#)
- f. [NIBCO INC.](#)
- g. [Sure Flow Equipment Inc.](#)
- h. [Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
- b. CWP Rating: **200 psig** (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
- d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Seat: Bronze.

C. Class 150, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. [Manufacturers](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.](#)
- b. [Crispin Valve.](#)
- c. [Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
- b. CWP Rating: **300 psig** (2070 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- d. Style: Compact wafer.
- e. Seat: Bronze.

D. Class 150, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. [Manufacturers](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.](#)
- b. [Crispin Valve.](#)
- c. [Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
- b. CWP Rating: **300 psig** (2070 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Seat: Bronze.

E. Class 250, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Hammond Valve.
    - b. Metraflex, Inc.
    - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - d. NIBCO INC.
    - e. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - b. CWP Rating: **400 psig** (2760 kPa).
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
    - e. Seat: Bronze.
- F. Class 250, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Hammond Valve.
    - b. Metraflex, Inc.
    - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - d. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
    - e. NIBCO INC.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - b. CWP Rating: **400 psig** (2760 kPa).
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
    - e. Ends: Flanged.
    - f. Seat: Bronze.
- G. Class 300, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
    - b. Crispin Valve.
    - c. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - b. CWP Rating: **500 psig** (3450 kPa).
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
    - e. Seat: Bronze.
- H. Class 300, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
    - b. Crispin Valve.
    - c. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - b. CWP Rating: **500 psig** (3450 kPa).
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
    - e. Ends: Flanged.
    - f. Seat: Bronze.
- I. Class 125, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Hammond Valve.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
    - d. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - b. CWP Rating: **200 psig** (1380 kPa).
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - d. Style: Compact wafer.
    - e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- J. Class 125, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Anvil International, Inc.
    - b. GA Industries, Inc.
    - c. Hammond Valve.
    - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - e. NIBCO INC.
    - f. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
    - b. CWP Rating: **200 psig** (1380 kPa).
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
    - e. Ends: Flanged.
    - f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.



K. Class 150, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. [APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.](#)
  - b. [Crispin Valve.](#)
  - c. [Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.](#)
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
  - b. CWP Rating: **300 psig** (2070 kPa).
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - d. Style: Compact wafer.
  - e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

L. Class 150, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. [APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.](#)
  - b. [Crispin Valve.](#)
  - c. [DFT Inc.](#)
  - d. [Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.](#)
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
  - b. CWP Rating: **300 psig** (2070 kPa).
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
  - e. Ends: Flanged.
  - f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

M. Class 250, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. [Flo Fab Inc.](#)
  - b. [Hammond Valve.](#)
  - c. [Milwaukee Valve Company.](#)
  - d. [NIBCO INC.](#)
  - e. [Sure Flow Equipment Inc.](#)
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
  - b. CWP Rating: **400 psig** (2760 kPa).
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
  - d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
  - e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

N. Class 250, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Hammond Valve.
  - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - c. NIBCO INC.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
  - b. CWP Rating: **400 psig** (2760 kPa).
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
  - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
  - e. Ends: Flanged.
  - f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

O. Class 300, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
  - b. Crispin Valve.
  - c. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
  - b. CWP Rating: **500 psig** (3450 kPa).
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - d. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
  - e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

P. Class 300, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
  - b. Crispin Valve.
  - c. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
  - b. CWP Rating: **500 psig** (3450 kPa).
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
  - e. Ends: Flanged.
  - f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

2.14 IRON, PLATE-TYPE CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - c. Flomatic Corporation.
  - d. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: API 594.
  - b. CWP Rating: **200 psig** (1380 kPa).
  - c. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
  - e. Seat: Bronze.

B. Class 150, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - c. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
  - d. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: API 594.
  - b. CWP Rating: **300 psig** (2070 kPa).
  - c. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - e. Seat: Bronze.

C. Class 250, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: API 594.
  - b. CWP Rating: **400 psig** (2760 kPa).
  - c. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
  - e. Seat: Bronze.

D. Class 300, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - c. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
    - d. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: API 594.
    - b. CWP Rating: **500 psig** (3450 kPa).
    - c. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - e. Seat: Bronze.
- E. Class 125, Iron, Single-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Flo Fab Inc.
    - b. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: API 594.
    - b. CWP Rating: **200 psig** (1380 kPa).
    - c. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plate.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- F. Class 125, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
    - d. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International, Inc.
    - e. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
    - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: API 594.
    - b. CWP Rating: **200 psig** (1380 kPa).
    - c. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- G. Class 150, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
    - d. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: API 594.
    - b. CWP Rating: **300 psig** (2070 kPa).
    - c. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - e. Seat: [EPDM] [or] [NBR] <Insert material>.
- H. Class 250, Iron, Wafer, Single-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: API 594.
    - b. CWP Rating: **400 psig** (2760 kPa).
    - c. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plate.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- I. Class 250, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - c. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: API 594.
    - b. CWP Rating: **400 psig** (2760 kPa).
    - c. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
    - e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- J. Class 300, Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
    - b. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: API 594.
- b. CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

2.15 BRONZE GATE VALVES

A. Class 125, NRS Bronze Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. American Valve, Inc.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- e. Hammond Valve.
- f. Kitz Corporation.
- g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- h. NIBCO INC.
- i. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

B. Class 125, RS Bronze Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. American Valve, Inc.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- e. Hammond Valve.
- f. Kitz Corporation.
- g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- h. NIBCO INC.
- i. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

C. Class 150, NRS Bronze Gate Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
  - a. Hammond Valve.
  - b. Kitz Corporation.
  - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - d. NIBCO INC.
  - e. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
  - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
  - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Threaded.
  - e. Stem: Bronze.
  - f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
  - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

D. Class 150, RS Bronze Gate Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - c. Hammond Valve.
  - d. Kitz Corporation.
  - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - f. NIBCO INC.
  - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
  - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
  - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Threaded.
  - e. Stem: Bronze.
  - f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
  - g. Packing: Asbestos free.

- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron[, bronze, or aluminum].

## 2.16 IRON GATE VALVES

### A. Class 125, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - d. Hammond Valve.
  - e. Kitz Corporation.
  - f. Legend Valve.
  - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - h. NIBCO INC.
  - i. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: **200 psig** (1380 kPa).
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Flanged.
  - e. Trim: Bronze.
  - f. Disc: Solid wedge.
  - g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

### B. Class 125, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - d. Hammond Valve.
  - e. Kitz Corporation.
  - f. Legend Valve.
  - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - h. NIBCO INC.
  - i. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: **200 psig** (1380 kPa).
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Flanged.
  - e. Trim: Bronze.
  - f. Disc: Solid wedge.



- g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

C. Class 250, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - c. NIBCO INC.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: **500 psig** (3450 kPa).
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Flanged.
  - e. Trim: Bronze.
  - f. Disc: Solid wedge.
  - g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

D. Class 250, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - c. Hammond Valve.
  - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - e. NIBCO INC.
  - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: **500 psig** (3450 kPa).
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Flanged.
  - e. Trim: Bronze.
  - f. Disc: Solid wedge.
  - g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.17 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - c. Hammond Valve.
  - d. Kitz Corporation.

- e. [Milwaukee Valve Company.](#)
- f. [NIBCO INC.](#)
- g. [Red-White Valve Corporation.](#)
- h. [Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
- e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
- f. Packing: Asbestos free.
- g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

B. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. [Manufacturers](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.](#)
- b. [Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.](#)
- c. [NIBCO INC.](#)
- d. [Red-White Valve Corporation.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

C. Class 150, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. [Manufacturers](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.](#)
- b. [Hammond Valve.](#)
- c. [Kitz Corporation.](#)
- d. [Milwaukee Valve Company.](#)
- e. [NIBCO INC.](#)
- f. [Red-White Valve Corporation.](#)
- g. [Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
- b. CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded.

- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

## 2.18 IRON GLOBE VALVES

### A. Class 125, Iron Globe Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - d. Hammond Valve.
  - e. Kitz Corporation.
  - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - g. NIBCO INC.
  - h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - i. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: **200 psig** (1380 kPa).
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Flanged.
  - e. Trim: Bronze.
  - f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

### B. Class 250, Iron Globe Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - d. Hammond Valve.
  - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - f. NIBCO INC.
  - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: **500 psig** (3450 kPa).
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Flanged.
  - e. Trim: Bronze.
  - f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.19 LUBRICATED PLUG VALVES

A. Class 125, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Nordstrom Valves, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
  - d. Pattern: Regular or short.
  - e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

B. Class 125, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Nordstrom Valves, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
  - d. Pattern: Venturi.
  - e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

C. Class 125, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Homestead Valve; a division of Olson Technologies, Inc.
  - b. Milliken Valve Company.
  - c. R & M Energy Systems; a unit of Robbins & Myers, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
  - d. Pattern: Regular or short.
  - e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

D. Class 125, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Homestead Valve; a division of Olson Technologies, Inc.
    - b. Milliken Valve Company.
    - c. R & M Energy Systems; a unit of Robbins & Myers, Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
    - b. CWP Rating: **200 psig** (1380 kPa).
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - d. Pattern: Regular or short.
    - e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
- E. Class 250, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Nordstrom Valves, Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
    - b. CWP Rating: **400 psig** (2760 kPa).
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - d. Pattern: Regular or short.
    - e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
- F. Class 250, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Nordstrom Valves, Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
    - b. CWP Rating: **400 psig** (2760 kPa).
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - d. Pattern: Regular or short.
    - e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
- G. Class 250, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Homestead Valve; a division of Olson Technologies, Inc.
    - b. Milliken Valve Company.

- c. [R & M Energy Systems; a unit of Robbins & Myers, Inc.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
- b. CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
- d. Pattern: Venturi.
- e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

H. Class 250, Cylindrical, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [Homestead Valve; a division of Olson Technologies, Inc.](#)
- b. [Milliken Valve Company.](#)
- c. [R & M Energy Systems; a unit of Robbins & Myers, Inc.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type IV.
- b. CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, Grade 40 cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
- d. Pattern: Regular or short.
- e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

2.20 CHAINWHEELS

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

2. [Babbitt Steam Specialty Co.](#)
3. [Roto Hammer Industries.](#)
4. [Trumbull Industries.](#)

B. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, brackets, and chain.

1. Brackets: Type, number, size, and fasteners required to mount actuator on valve.
2. Attachment: For connection to ball, butterfly and plug valve stems.
3. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile or cast iron, of type and size required for valve. Include zinc coating.
4. Chain: Hot-dip, galvanized steel, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

#### 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install chainwheels on operators for ball, butterfly, gate, globe and plug valves **NPS 4 (DN 100)** and larger and more than **96 inches (2400 mm)** above floor. Extend chains to **60 inches (1520 mm)** above finished floor.
- F. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
  - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
  - 2. Center-Guided and Plate-Type Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
  - 3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.

#### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

#### 3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
  - 1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly, or gate, valves.

2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
  3. Throttling Service: Globe, ball, or butterfly valves.
  4. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
    - a. **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze or nonmetallic disc.
    - b. **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and Larger for Domestic Water: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, metal or resilient-seat check valves.
    - c. **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and Larger for Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or spring.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
1. For Copper Tubing, **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  2. For Copper Tubing, **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100)**: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  3. For Copper Tubing, **NPS 5 (DN 125)** and Larger: Flanged ends.
  4. For Steel Piping, **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Threaded ends.
  5. For Steel Piping, **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100)**: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  6. For Steel Piping, **NPS 5 (DN 125)** and Larger: Flanged ends.
  7. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing and Steel Piping: Valve ends may be grooved.

### 3.5 DOMESTIC, HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller:
1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
  2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
  3. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, brass or bronze with brass trim.
  4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
  5. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125, NRS.
  6. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
- B. Pipe **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and Larger:
1. Iron Valves, **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100)**: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
  2. Iron Ball Valves: Class 150.
  3. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, EPDM seat, ductile-iron disc.
  4. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves: 175 CWP.
  5. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic-to-metal seats.
  6. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control: Class 125, lever and spring.
  7. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves: 300 CWP.
  8. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 125, compact-wafer seat.
  9. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves: Class 125; dual plate; metal seat.
  10. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125, OS&Y.
  11. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125.



3.6 SANITARY-WASTE AND STORM-DRAINAGE VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller:

1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
3. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, brass or bronze with brass trim.
4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
5. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125, NRS.
6. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.

B. Pipe **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and Larger:

1. Iron Valves, **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100)**: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
2. Iron Ball Valves: Class 150.
3. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic-to-metal seats.
4. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control: Class 125, lever and spring.
5. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves: 300 CWP.
6. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125, OS&Y.
7. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125.
8. Lubricated Plug Valves: Class 125, regular gland, threaded.

END OF SECTION 220523

## SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
4. Metal framing systems.
5. Fiberglass strut systems.
6. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
7. Fastener systems.
8. Pipe stands.
9. Pipe positioning systems.
10. Equipment supports.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Section 220516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
3. Section 220548.13 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for vibration isolation devices.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.

2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
  1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  2. Metal framing systems.
  3. Fiberglass strut systems.
  4. Pipe stands.
  5. Equipment supports.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
  2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
  2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
  3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
  4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
  5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.

C. Copper Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 FIBERGLASS PIPE HANGERS

A. Clevis-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Type 1, steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of fiberglass or fiberglass-reinforced resin.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, washer, and nuts made of stainless steel.

B. Strap-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Type 9 or Type 10, steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of fiberglass-reinforced resin.
2. Hanger Rod and Fittings: Continuous-thread rod, washer, and nuts made of stainless steel.

2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. [Allied Tube & Conduit.](#)
  - b. [Cooper B-Line, Inc.](#)
  - c. [Flex-Strut Inc.](#)
  - d. [GS Metals Corp.](#)
  - e. [Thomas & Betts Corporation.](#)
  - f. [Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.](#)
  - g. [Wesanco, Inc.](#)
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: MFMA-4.

4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
7. Metallic Coating: Hot-dipped galvanized.
8. Paint Coating: Epoxy.
9. Plastic Coating: Epoxy.

B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Anvil International; a subsidiary of Mueller Water Products Inc.
  - b. Empire Industries, Inc.
  - c. ERICO International Corporation.
  - d. Haydon Corporation; H-Strut Division.
  - e. NIBCO INC.
  - f. PHD Manufacturing, Inc.
  - g. PHS Industries, Inc.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
7. Coating: Zinc.

2.5 FIBERGLASS STRUT SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Allied Tube & Conduit.
  2. Champion Fiberglass, Inc.
  3. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
- B. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly similar to MFMA-4 for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
1. Channels: Continuous slotted fiberglass channel with inturned lips.
  2. Channel Nuts: Fiberglass nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
  3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.

2.6 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. [ERICO International Corporation.](#)
  2. [National Pipe Hanger Corporation.](#)
  3. [PHS Industries, Inc.](#)
  4. [Pipe Shields, Inc.; a subsidiary of Piping Technology & Products, Inc.](#)
  5. [Piping Technology & Products, Inc.](#)
  6. [Rilco Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig (688-kPa) minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- C. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig (688-kPa), ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig (688-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
- D. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- E. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- F. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches (50 mm) beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

## 2.7 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

## 2.8 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece stainless-steel base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:
1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
  2. Base: Stainless steel.
  3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
  4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.
- E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:

1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
  2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
  3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
  4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
  5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.
- F. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

## 2.9 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, positioning system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

## 2.10 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

## 2.11 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

- C. Fiberglass Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with applicable portions of MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- D. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- E. Fiberglass Strut System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled fiberglass struts.
- F. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- G. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
  - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- H. Pipe Stand Installation:
  - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
  - 2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- I. Pipe Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.
- J. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- K. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- L. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- M. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- N. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- O. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- P. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- Q. Insulated Piping:



1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
  - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
  - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
  - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe **NPS 4 (DN 100)** and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
  - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe **NPS 4 (DN 100)** and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
  - a. **NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) thick.**
  - b. **NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.**
  - c. **NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): 18 inches (457 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.**
  - d. **NPS 8 to NPS 14 (DN 200 to DN 350): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.075 inch (1.91 mm) thick.**
  - e. **NPS 16 to NPS 24 (DN 400 to DN 600): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.105 inch (2.67 mm) thick.**
5. Pipes **NPS 8 (DN 200)** and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.

- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to **1-1/2 inches (40 mm)**.

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of **2.0 mils (0.05 mm)**.
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant attachments for hostile environment applications.

- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750)**.
  - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to **1050 deg F (566 deg C)**, pipes **NPS 4 to NPS 24 (DN 100 to DN 600)**, requiring up to **4 inches (100 mm)** of insulation.
  - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes **NPS 3/4 to NPS 36 (DN 20 to DN 900)**, requiring clamp flexibility and up to **4 inches (100 mm)** of insulation.
  - 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 15 to DN 600)** if little or no insulation is required.
  - 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 15 to DN 100)**, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
  - 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes **NPS 3/4 to NPS 8 (DN 20 to DN 200)**.
  - 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200)**.
  - 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200)**.
  - 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200)**.
  - 10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes **NPS 3/8 to NPS 8 (DN 10 to DN 200)**.
  - 11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes **NPS 3/8 to NPS 3 (DN 10 to DN 80)**.
  - 12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750)**.
  - 13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
  - 14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes **NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900)**, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
  - 15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes **NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900)**, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
  - 16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 (DN 65 to DN 900)** if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
  - 17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes **NPS 1 to NPS 30 (DN 25 to DN 750)**, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  - 18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 65 to DN 600)**, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.

19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes **NPS 2 to NPS 42 (DN 50 to DN 1050)** if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes **NPS 2 to NPS 24 (DN 50 to DN 600)** if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes **NPS 2 to NPS 30 (DN 50 to DN 750)** if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers **NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 24 to DN 600)**.
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers **NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 20 to DN 600)** if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to **6 inches (150 mm)** for heavy loads.
  2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For **120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C)** piping installations.
  3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
  4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
  5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For **120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C)** piping installations.
- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
  8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
  9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
  10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
  11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
  12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:

- a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb (340 kg).
  - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb (680 kg).
  - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb (1360 kg).
13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
  15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
  2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
  3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
  4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
  5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
  6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
  7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
  8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
    - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
    - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
    - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- P. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- R. Use mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

- S. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION 220529

SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Pipe labels.
  - 4. Stencils.
  - 5. Valve tags.
  - 6. Warning tags.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

#### A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

#### B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: Black.
3. Background Color: White.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

#### C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

#### D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

### 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Black.
- C. Background Color: Yellow.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).



- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

## 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) high.

## 2.4 STENCILS

- A. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch (19 mm) for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.
  - 1. Stencil Material: Fiberboard or metal.
  - 2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, acrylic enamel black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
  - 3. Identification Paint: Exterior, acrylic enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.5 VALVE TAGS

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch (13-mm) numbers.
  - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain.

- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.6 WARNING TAGS

- A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.

1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches (75 by 133 mm) minimum.
2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

### 3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- B. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles, complying with ASME A13.1] on each piping system.
1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
  2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- C. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
1. Near each valve and control device.
  2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.

3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet (7.6 m) in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

D. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

1. Domestic Water Piping:
  - a. Background Color: Blue.
  - b. Letter Color: White.
2. Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping:
  - a. Background Color: Sanitary Waste: Black. Storm Drainage: Yellow.
  - b. Letter Color: Black.

3.4 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
  1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
    - a. Cold Water: 2 inches (50 mm), round.
    - b. Hot Water: 2 inches (50 mm), square.
  2. Valve-Tag Color:
    - a. Cold Water: Blue.
    - b. Hot Water: Red.
  3. Letter Color:
    - a. Cold Water: White.
    - b. Hot Water: Black.

3.5 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 220553

## SECTION 220719 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
  - 1. Domestic cold-water piping.
  - 2. Domestic hot-water piping.
  - 3. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
  - 4. Domestic chilled-water piping for drinking fountains.
  - 5. Sanitary waste piping exposed to freezing conditions.
  - 6. Storm-water piping exposed to freezing conditions.
  - 7. Roof drains and rainwater leaders.
  - 8. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 220716 "Plumbing Equipment Insulation."

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
  - 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
  - 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
  - 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
  - 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
  - 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
- C. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:
  - 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation Materials: 12 inches (300 mm) long by NPS 2 (DN 50).
  - 2. Jacket Materials for Pipe: 12 inches (300 mm) long by NPS 2 (DN 50).

3. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches (300 mm) square.
4. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- C. Mockups: Before installing insulation, build mockups for each type of insulation and finish listed below to demonstrate quality of insulation application and finishes. Build mockups in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect. Use materials indicated for the completed Work.
  1. Piping Mockups:
    - a. One 10-foot (3-m) section of NPS 2 (DN 50) straight pipe.
    - b. One each of a 90-degree threaded, welded, and flanged elbow.
    - c. One each of a threaded, welded, and flanged tee fitting.
    - d. One NPS 2 (DN 50) or smaller valve, and one NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) or larger valve.
    - e. Four support hangers including hanger shield and insert.
    - f. One threaded strainer and one flanged strainer with removable portion of insulation.
    - g. One threaded reducer and one welded reducer.
    - h. One pressure temperature tap.
    - i. One mechanical coupling.
  2. For each mockup, fabricate cutaway sections to allow observation of application details for insulation materials, adhesives, mastics, attachments, and jackets.

3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
  4. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting insulation application.
  5. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
  7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed.
- D. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

#### 1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Foamglas.
  - 2. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
  - 3. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
  - 4. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
  - 5. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied [ASJ] [ASJ-SSL]: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
  - 6. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
- G. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
    - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
    - c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.
- H. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
    - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
    - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
    - e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.
- I. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.
    - b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
    - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley-K.
    - e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.

2. Type I, **850 Deg F (454 Deg C)** Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

J. Phenolic:

1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. [Kingspan Tarec Industrial Insulation NV; Koolphen K.](#)
  - b. [Resolco International BV; Insul-phen.](#)
2. Preformed pipe insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type III, Grade 1.
3. Block insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type II, Grade 1.
4. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
5. Factory-Applied Jacket: ASJ. Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

K. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials.

1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. [Armacell LLC; Tubolit.](#)
  - b. [Nomaco Insulation; IMCOLOCK and NOMALOCK.](#)

## 2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.

1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. [Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Super-Stik.](#)

B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.

1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. [Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Thermokote V.](#)

C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.

1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. [Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Ramcote 1200 and Quik-Cote.](#)

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.



- B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of **minus 100 to plus 200 deg F** (**minus 73 to plus 93 deg C**).
1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-84.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aeroseal.
    - b. Armaceil LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
    - d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- E. Phenolic Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of **minus 75 to plus 300 deg F** (**minus 59 to plus 149 deg C**).
1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-96.
      - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-33.
    2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
  - F. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
    1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
      - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
      - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
      - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
    2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
  - G. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
    1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
      - b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
      - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
      - d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.
    2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- 2.4 MASTICS
- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
    1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, **0.013 perm** (**0.009 metric perm**) at **43-mil** (**1.09-mm**) dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: **Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F** (**Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C**).
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-30.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 501.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-35.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-10.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, **0.05 perm** (**0.03 metric perm**) at **35-mil** (**0.9-mm**) dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: **0 to 180 deg F** (**Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C**).
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Encacel.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 570.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 60-95/60-96.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, **0.05 perm** (**0.033 metric perm**) at **30-mil** (**0.8-mm**) dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: **Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F** (**Minus 46 to plus 104 deg C**).
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.

- d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
  - e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
- 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms (1.2 metric perms) at 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) dry film thickness.
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
  - 4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
  - 5. Color: White.

## 2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- 1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2.
    - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
    - c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.
  - 3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
  - 4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
  - 5. Color: White.

## 2.6 SEALANTS

- A. Joint Sealants:
- 1. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass and Phenolic Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
    - e. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittseal 444.
  - 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  - 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F (Minus 73 to plus 149 deg C).
  - 5. Color: White or gray.
  - 6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
  - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
  - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: **Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).**
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: **Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).**
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately **2 oz./sq. yd.** (68 g/sq. m) with a thread count of **10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in.** (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm) for covering pipe and pipe fittings.
1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Chil-Glas Number 10.
- B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately **1 oz./sq. yd.** (34 g/sq. m) with a thread count of **10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in.** (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm), in a Leno weave, for pipe.
1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Mast-A-Fab.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; Elastafab 894.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of **8 oz./sq. yd.** (271 g/sq. m).
1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Alpha Associates, Inc.; Alpha-Maritex 84215 and 84217/9485RW, Luben 59.

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
    - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
    - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
    - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
  2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
  3. Color: Color-code jackets based on system.
  4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
    - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
- C. Metal Jacket:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
  - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
  - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with **ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M)**, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
  - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
  - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: **3-mil- (0.075-mm-)** thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
  - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: **3-mil- (0.075-mm-)** thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
  - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
    - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
    - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
    - 3) Tee covers.
    - 4) Flange and union covers.
    - 5) End caps.
    - 6) Beveled collars.
    - 7) Valve covers.
    - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
3. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.
  - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
  - b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: **3-mil- (0.075-mm-)** thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
  - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: **3-mil- (0.075-mm-)** thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
  - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
    - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
    - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
    - 3) Tee covers.
    - 4) Flange and union covers.
    - 5) End caps.
    - 6) Beveled collars.
    - 7) Valve covers.
    - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
- D. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: **125-mil- (3.2-mm-)** thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:



- a. [Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittwrap.](#)
- b. [Polyguard Products, Inc.; Insulrap No Torch 125.](#)

## 2.11 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. [Products](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. [ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.](#)
- b. [Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.](#)
- c. [Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.](#)
- d. [Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.](#)

- 2. Width: **3 inches** (75 mm).
- 3. Thickness: **11.5 mils** (0.29 mm).
- 4. Adhesion: **90 ounces force/inch** (1.0 N/mm) in width.
- 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
- 6. Tensile Strength: **40 lbf/inch** (7.2 N/mm) in width.
- 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. [Products](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. [ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.](#)
- b. [Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.](#)
- c. [Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.](#)
- d. [Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.](#)

- 2. Width: **3 inches** (75 mm).
- 3. Thickness: **6.5 mils** (0.16 mm).
- 4. Adhesion: **90 ounces force/inch** (1.0 N/mm) in width.
- 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
- 6. Tensile Strength: **40 lbf/inch** (7.2 N/mm) in width.
- 7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

1. [Products](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. [ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.](#)
- b. [Compac Corporation; 130.](#)
- c. [Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.](#)

- 2. Width: **2 inches** (50 mm).
- 3. Thickness: **6 mils** (0.15 mm).
- 4. Adhesion: **64 ounces force/inch** (0.7 N/mm) in width.
- 5. Elongation: 500 percent.
- 6. Tensile Strength: **18 lbf/inch** (3.3 N/mm) in width.



D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
  - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
  - c. Compac Corporation; 120.
  - d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.
2. Width: **2 inches** (50 mm).
3. Thickness: **3.7 mils** (0.093 mm).
4. Adhesion: **100 ounces force/inch** (1.1 N/mm) in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: **34 lbf/inch** (6.2 N/mm) in width.

2.12 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
  - b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping and Seals.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304; **0.015 inch** (0.38 mm) thick, **3/4 inch** (19 mm) wide with closed seal.
3. Aluminum: **ASTM B 209** (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, **0.020 inch** (0.51 mm) thick, **3/4 inch** (19 mm) wide with closed seal.

B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal **3/4-inch-** (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.

C. Wire: **0.062-inch** (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, galvanized steel.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. C & F Wire.

2.13 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. McGuire Manufacturing.
  - b. Plumberex.
  - c. Truebro; a brand of IPS Corporation.
  - d. Zurn Industries, LLC; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.

2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.
- B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Truebro; a brand of IPS Corporation.
    - b. Zurn Industries, LLC; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.
  2. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer **5 mils (0.127 mm)** thick and an epoxy finish **5 mils (0.127 mm)** thick if operating in a temperature range between **140 and 300 deg F (60 and 149 deg C)**. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
  2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between **32 and 300 deg F (0 and 149 deg C)** with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with **3-inch- (75-mm-)** wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced **4 inches (100 mm)** o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at **2 inches (50 mm)** o.c.
    - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.

4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
  2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  3. Nameplates and data plates.
  4. Cleanouts.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
  4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
  - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
  - 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  - 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  - 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  - 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
  - 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
  - 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
  - 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and

- unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
  2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
  3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
  4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least **2 inches (50 mm)** over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
  5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION

#### A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at **6 inches (150 mm)** o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

#### B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.

4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### 3.8 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

#### A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

#### B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.

#### C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

#### D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

### 3.9 INSTALLATION OF PHENOLIC INSULATION

#### A. General Installation Requirements:

1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches (75 mm). Secure inner layer with 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) wire spaced at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals.

#### B. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:



1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor retarders on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.

D. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

### 3.10 INSTALLATION OF POLYOLEFIN INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyolefin sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install cut sections of polyolefin pipe and sheet insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.11 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.
2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.

3.12 FINISHES

A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.

- a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

### 3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### 3.14 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
  - 1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
  - 2. Underground piping.
  - 3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

### 3.15 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Domestic Cold Water:
  - 1. **NPS 1 (DN 25)** and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Cellular Glass: **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** thick.
    - b. Flexible Elastomeric: **1 inch (25 mm)** thick.
    - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: **1 inch (25 mm)** thick.
    - d. Phenolic: **1 inch (25 mm)** thick.

- e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- 2. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
  - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
    - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    - d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    - e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - 2. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
    - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    - d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    - e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- C. Stormwater and Overflow:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
    - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    - d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    - e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- D. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
    - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    - d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
    - e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- E. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

- b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- c. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

F. Sanitary Waste Piping Where Heat Tracing Is Installed:

- 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
  - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
  - c. Phenolic: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.

G. Floor Drains, Traps, and Sanitary Drain Piping within 10 Feet (3 m) of Drain Receiving Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F (16 Deg C):

- 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
  - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - e. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

H. Hot Service Drains:

- 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
  - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

I. Hot Service Vents:

- 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
  - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

3.16 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Domestic Water Piping:

- 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
  - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
  - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
  - d. Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
  - e. Polyolefin: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:

- 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

- b. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
  - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
  - d. Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
  - e. Polyolefin: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
- C. Sanitary Waste Piping Where Heat Tracing Is Installed:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
    - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
    - c. Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
- D. Hot Service Drains:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
    - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- E. Hot Service Vents:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
    - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type II: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

### 3.17 OUTDOOR, UNDERGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Sanitary Waste Piping, All Sizes, Where Heat Tracing Is Installed: Cellular glass, 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

### 3.18 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
  - 1. None.
  - 2. PVC, Color-Coded by System: 20 mils (0.5 mm) thick.
  - 3. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick.
  - 4. Painted Aluminum, Smooth: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick.
  - 5. Stainless Steel, Type 304, Smooth 2B Finish: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
  - 1. None.
  - 2. PVC, Color-Coded by System: 20 mils (0.5 mm) thick.
  - 3. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick.

4. Painted Aluminum, Smooth: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick.
5. Stainless Steel, Type 304, Smooth 2B Finish: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick.

3.19 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
  1. None.
  2. PVC, Color-Coded by System: 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick.
  3. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick.
  4. Painted Aluminum, Smooth: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
  5. Stainless Steel, Type 304, Smooth 2B Finish: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
  1. PVC: 20 mils (0.5 mm) thick.
  2. Painted Aluminum, Smooth with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick.
  3. Stainless Steel, Type 304, Smooth 2B Finish with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick.

3.20 UNDERGROUND, FIELD-INSTALLED INSULATION JACKET

- A. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

END OF SECTION 220719

## SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Under-building-slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, and fittings inside buildings.
  - 2. Encasement for piping.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For transition fittings and dielectric fittings.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.
- B. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14 and NSF 61. Plastic piping components shall be marked with "NSF-pw."

#### 2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) and ASTM B 88, Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type C) water tube, drawn temper.
- B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) and ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) water tube, annealed temper.



- C. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
- D. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
- E. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
- F. Copper Unions:
  - 1. MSS SP-123.
  - 2. Cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body.
  - 3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces.
  - 4. Solder-joint or threaded ends.
- G. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Elkhart Products Corporation.
    - b. NIBCO Inc.
    - c. Viega.
  - 2. Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end.
  - 3. Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end.
- H. Copper Push-on-Joint Fittings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Victaulic Company.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Cast-copper fitting complying with ASME B16.18 or wrought-copper fitting complying with ASME B 16.22.
    - b. Stainless-steel teeth and EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end instead of solder-joint ends.
- I. Copper-Tube, Extruded-Tee Connections:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. T-Drill Industries Inc.
  - 2. Description: Tee formed in copper tube according to ASTM F 2104.
- J. Appurtenances for Grooved-End Copper Tubing:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Anvil International.
  - b. Shurjoint Piping Products.
  - c. Victaulic Company.
2. Bronze Fittings for Grooved-End, Copper Tubing: ASTM B 75 (ASTM B 75M) copper tube or ASTM B 584 bronze castings.
3. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved-End Copper Tubing:
  - a. Copper-tube dimensions and design similar to AWWA C606.
  - b. Ferrous housing sections.
  - c. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
  - d. Bolts and nuts.
  - e. Minimum Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).

## 2.3 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

### A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:

1. AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

### B. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:

1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

### C. Compact-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:

1. AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile iron.
2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

### D. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:

1. AWWA C151/A21.51.
2. Push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.

### E. Standard-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings:

1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.
2. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.

### F. Compact-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings:

1. AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile iron.
2. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.

### G. Plain-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51.

H. Appurtenances for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Shurjoint Piping Products.
  - b. Star Pipe Products.
  - c. Victaulic Company.
2. Fittings for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron castings or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron castings with dimensions that match pipe.
3. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron-Piping:
  - a. AWWA C606 for ductile-iron-pipe dimensions.
  - b. Ferrous housing sections.
  - c. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
  - d. Bolts and nuts.
  - e. Minimum Pressure Rating:
    - 1) NPS 14 to NPS 18 (DN 350 to DN 450): 250 psig (1725 kPa).
    - 2) NPS 20 to NPS 46 (DN 500 to DN 900): 150 psig (1035 kPa).

2.4 GALVANIZED-STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Galvanized-Steel Pipe:

1. ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Standard Weight.
2. Include ends matching joining method.

B. Galvanized-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Standard Weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.

C. Galvanized, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.

D. Malleable-Iron Unions:

1. ASME B16.39, Class 150.
2. Hexagonal-stock body.
3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface.
4. Threaded ends.

E. Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125, cast iron.

F. Appurtenances for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Anvil International.
  - b. Grinnell Mechanical Products; Tyco Fire Products LP.
  - c. Shurjoint Piping Products.
  - d. Victaulic Company.

2. Fittings for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe: Galvanized, ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting; ASTM A 106/A 106M, steel pipe; or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
3. Fittings for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe:
  - a. AWWA C606 for steel-pipe dimensions.
  - b. Ferrous housing sections.
  - c. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
  - d. Bolts and nuts.
  - e. Minimum Pressure Rating:
    - 1) NPS 8 (DN 200) and Smaller: 600 psig (4137 kPa).

## 2.5 STAINLESS-STEEL PIPING

- A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61.
- B. Stainless-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 312/A 312M, Schedule 10 and Schedule 40.
- C. Stainless-Steel Pipe Fittings: ASTM A 815/A 815M.
- D. Appurtenances for Grooved-End, Stainless-Steel Pipe:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Anvil International.
    - b. Grinnell Mechanical Products; Tyco Fire Products LP.
    - c. Shurjoint Piping Products.
    - d. Victaulic Company.
  2. Fittings for Grooved-End, Stainless-Steel Pipe: Stainless-steel casting with dimensions matching stainless-steel pipe.
  3. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved-End, Stainless-Steel Pipe:
    - a. AWWA C606 for stainless-steel-pipe dimensions.
    - b. Stainless-steel housing sections.
    - c. Stainless-steel bolts and nuts.
    - d. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
    - e. Minimum Pressure Rating:
      - 1) NPS 8 (DN 200) and Smaller: 600 psig (4137 kPa).

## 2.6 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:
  1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys.
- D. Flux: ASTM B 813, water flushable.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gaskets, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.7      ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- B. Form: Sheet or tube.
- C. Color: Black.

## 2.8      TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements:
  - 1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
  - 2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
  - 3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
- C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Cascade Waterworks Manufacturing.
    - b. Dresser, Inc.; Piping Specialties Products.
    - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The).
    - d. JCM Industries.
    - e. Romac Industries, Inc.
    - f. Smith-Blair, Inc.; a Sensus company.
    - g. Viking Johnson.
- D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
    - b. Harvel Plastics, Inc.
    - c. Spears Manufacturing Company.
  - 2. Description:

- a. CPVC or PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions.
- b. One end with threaded brass insert and one solvent-cement-socket or threaded end.

E. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Colonial Engineering, Inc.
  - b. NIBCO Inc.
  - c. Spears Manufacturing Company.
2. Description:
  - a. CPVC or PVC four-part union.
  - b. Brass or stainless-steel threaded end.
  - c. Solvent-cement-joint or threaded plastic end.
  - d. Rubber O-ring.
  - e. Union nut.

2.9 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company; member of the Phoenix Forge Group.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Hart Industries International, Inc.
    - d. Jomar International.
    - e. Matco-Norca.
    - f. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    - g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - h. Wilkins; a Zurn company.
  2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
  3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
  4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company; member of the Phoenix Forge Group.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Matco-Norca.
    - d. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

- e.     Wilkins; a Zurn company.
- 2.     Standard: ASSE 1079.
- 3.     Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
- 4.     Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
- 5.     End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D.     Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
  - 1.     Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a.     Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b.     Calpico, Inc.
    - c.     Central Plastics Company.
    - d.     Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 2.     Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
  - 3.     Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  - 4.     Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
  - 5.     Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
  - 6.     Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
- E.     Dielectric Nipples:
  - 1.     Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a.     Elster Perfection Corporation.
    - b.     Grinnell Mechanical Products; Tyco Fire Products LP.
    - c.     Matco-Norca.
    - d.     Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
    - e.     Victaulic Company.
  - 2.     Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
  - 3.     Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
  - 4.     Pressure Rating and Temperature: 300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
  - 5.     End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
  - 6.     Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1     EARTHWORK

- A.     Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

#### 3.2     PIPING INSTALLATION

- A.     Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and

calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.

- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- D. Install underground copper tube and ductile-iron pipe in PE encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- E. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve inside the building at each domestic water-service entrance. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" and with requirements for drain valves and strainers in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- F. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- G. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- H. Install domestic water piping level with 0.25 percent slope downward toward drain and plumb.
- I. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
- J. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- K. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- L. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- M. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- N. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- O. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- P. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- Q. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- R. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.



- S. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- T. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements for thermostats in Section 221123 "Domestic Water Pumps."
- U. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements for thermometers in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

### 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- D. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Comply with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Braze Joints" chapter.
- E. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- F. Pressure-Sealed Joints for Copper Tubing: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- G. Push-on Joints for Copper Tubing: Clean end of tube. Measure insertion depth with manufacturer's depth gage. Join copper tube and push-on-joint fittings by inserting tube to measured depth.
- H. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2104. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.
- I. Joint Construction for Grooved-End Copper Tubing: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Roll groove ends of tubes. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of tubes or tube and fitting. Install

coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in tubing grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.

- J. Joint Construction for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Piping: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Cut round-bottom grooves in ends of pipe at gasket-seat dimension required for specified (flexible or rigid) joint. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- K. Joint Construction for Grooved-End Steel Piping: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Roll groove ends of pipe as specified. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- L. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- M. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

#### 3.4 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
  - 1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
  - 2. Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.
- C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings or unions.

#### 3.5 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings or nipples.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100). Use dielectric flange kits.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

#### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger, support products, and installation in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
  - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.

2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
    - a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m) if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- E. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 3/4 (DN 20) and Smaller: 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4 (DN 25 and DN 32): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  4. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  5. NPS 3 to NPS 5 (DN 80 to DN 125): 10 feet (3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  6. NPS 6 (DN 150): 10 feet (3 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  7. NPS 8 (DN 200): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
- F. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).
- G. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  2. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  3. NPS 2 (DN 50): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  4. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 11 feet (3.4 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  5. NPS 3 and NPS 3-1/2 (DN 80 and DN 90): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  6. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  7. NPS 6 (DN 150): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
  8. NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
- H. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).
- I. Install hangers for stainless-steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  2. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  3. NPS 2 (DN 50): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  4. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 11 feet (3.4 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  5. NPS 3 and NPS 3-1/2 (DN 80 and DN 90): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  6. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  7. NPS 6 (DN 150): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
  8. NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.

- J.      Install supports for vertical stainless-steel piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).
- K.      Install vinyl-coated hangers for CPVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1.      NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: 36 inches (900 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - 2.      NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 2 (DN 32 to DN 50): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - 3.      NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 65 to DN 90): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - 4.      NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  - 5.      NPS 6 (DN 150): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
  - 6.      NPS 8 (DN 200): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
- L.      Install supports for vertical CPVC piping every 60 inches (1500 mm) for NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller, and every 72 inches (1800 mm) for NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and larger.
- M.      Install vinyl-coated hangers for PEX piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1.      NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: 32 inches (815 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
- N.      Install vinyl-coated hangers for PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1.      NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - 2.      NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 65 to DN 90): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - 3.      NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  - 4.      NPS 6 (DN 150): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
  - 5.      NPS 8 (DN 200): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
- O.      Install supports for vertical PVC piping every 48 inches (1200 mm).
- P.      Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A.      Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B.      When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C.      Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D.      Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
  - 1.      Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
  - 2.      Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.

3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

### 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  1. Piping Inspections:
    - a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
    - b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
      - 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
      - 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
    - c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
    - d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Piping Tests:
    - a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
    - b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
    - c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
    - d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
    - e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
    - f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.

- B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.10 ADJUSTING

- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
  - 1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
  - 2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
  - 3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
  - 4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
    - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
    - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
  - 5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
  - 6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
  - 7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
  - 8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

### 3.11 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
  - 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
  - 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
    - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
    - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
      - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm (50 mg/L) of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
      - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm (200 mg/L) of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
    - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
    - d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
    - e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
  - 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.

2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
  - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
  - b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

### 3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
- D. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 3 (DN 80) and smaller, shall be one of the following:
  1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A); wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
- E. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 4 to NPS 8 (DN 100 to DN 200) and larger, shall be one of the following:
  1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A); wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
  2. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard- or compact-pattern, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
  3. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard- or compact-pattern, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
  4. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- F. Under-building-slab, combined domestic water, building-service, and fire-service-main piping, NPS 6 to NPS 12 (DN 150 to DN 300), shall be one of the following:
  1. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard- or compact-pattern, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
  2. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard- or compact-pattern, push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
  3. Plain-end, ductile-iron pipe; grooved-joint, ductile-iron-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
- G. Under-building-slab, domestic water piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be one of the following:

1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.

H. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be one of the following:

1. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
3. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
4. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); copper push-on-joint fittings; and push-on joints.
5. CPVC, Schedule 40; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
6. CPVC, Schedule 80 pipe; CPVC, Schedule 80 threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
7. CPVC Tubing System: CPVC tube; CPVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and NPS 2 (DN 50) CPVC pipe with CPVC socket fittings may be used instead of tubing.

I. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100), shall be one of the following:

1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); cast- or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
3. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); grooved-joint, copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.
4. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
5. Galvanized-steel pipe; grooved-joint, galvanized-steel-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.

J. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 5 to NPS 8 (DN 125 to DN 200), shall be one of the following:

1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); cast- or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); grooved-joint, copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.
3. Galvanized-steel pipe and nipples; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
4. Galvanized-steel pipe; grooved-joint, galvanized-steel-pipe appurtenances; and grooved joints.
5. Stainless-steel Schedule 10 pipe, grooved-joint fittings, and grooved joints.

### 3.13 VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:

1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.



2.     Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  3.     Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated balancing valves.
  4.     Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B.     Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.
- C.     Iron grooved-end valves may be used with grooved-end piping.

END OF SECTION 221116

## SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Vacuum breakers.
2. Backflow preventers.
3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
4. Balancing valves.
5. Strainers.
6. Outlet boxes.
7. Hose stations.
8. Hose bibbs.
9. Wall hydrants.
10. Post hydrants.
11. Drain valves.
12. Water-hammer arresters.
13. Air vents.
14. Trap-seal primer valves.
15. Trap-seal primer systems.
16. Specialty valves.
17. Flexible connectors.
18. Water meters.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers, pressure gages, and flow meters in domestic water piping.
2. Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping" for water meters.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For domestic water piping specialties.
  1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61 and NSF 14. Mark "NSF-pw" on plastic piping components.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig (860 kPa) unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 VACUUM BREAKERS

- A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - b. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
  - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - d. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - e. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
  - f. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
2. Standard: ASSE 1001.
3. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3 (DN 8 to DN 80), as required to match connected piping.
4. Body: Bronze.
5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
6. Finish: Rough bronze.

- B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.

- c. [MIFAB, Inc.](#)
  - d. [Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.](#)
  - e. [Woodford Manufacturing Company; a division of WCM Industries, Inc.](#)
  - f. [Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Products.](#)
  - g. [Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.](#)
2. Standard: ASSE 1011.
  3. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
  4. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
  5. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated.
- C. Spill-Resistant Vacuum Breakers:
1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. [Conbraco Industries, Inc.](#)
    - b. [Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.](#)
  2. Standard: ASSE 1056.
  3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
  4. Size: **NPS 3/4 (DN 20)**.
  5. Accessories:
    - a. Valves: Ball type, on inlet and outlet.

## 2.4 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

- A. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers RPPA1:
1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. [Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.](#)
    - b. [Conbraco Industries, Inc.](#)
    - c. [FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.](#)
    - d. [Flomatic Corporation.](#)
    - e. [Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.](#)
    - f. [Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.](#)
  2. Standard: ASSE 1013.
  3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
  4. Pressure Loss: **12 psig (83 kPa)** maximum, through middle third of flow range.
  5. Size: 6".
  6. Design Flow Rate: 1,000 **gpm (L/s)**.
  7. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits: 950 **gpm (L/s)**.
  8. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: **5 psig (kPa)** for sizes **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and smaller; **10 psig (kPa)** for **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and larger.
  9. Body: Bronze for **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and larger.
  10. End Connections: Threaded for **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and smaller; flanged for **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and larger.
  11. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.

12. Accessories:

- a. Valves **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.
- b. Valves **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
- c. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.

B. Double-Check, Detector-Assembly Backflow Preventers DCDA1:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - c. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - d. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
  - e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
2. Standard: ASSE 1048 and is FM Global approved or UL listed.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Pressure Loss: **5 psig (35 kPa)** maximum, through middle third of flow range.
5. Size: **8 NPS (DN)**.
6. Design Flow Rate: **750 gpm (L/s)**.
7. Selected Unit Flow Range Limits: **2,000 gpm (L/s)**.
8. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: **10 psig (kPa)**.
9. Body: Cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved.
10. End Connections: Flanged.
11. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
12. Accessories:
  - a. Valves: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
  - b. Bypass: With displacement-type water meter, shutoff valves, and reduced-pressure backflow preventer.

C. Backflow-Preventer Test Kits:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - c. Flomatic Corporation.
  - d. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
  - e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
2. Description: Factory calibrated, with gages, fittings, hoses, and carrying case with test-procedure instructions.

2.5 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES

A. Water Regulators PRV1:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - c. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
  - d. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
2. Standard: ASSE 1003.
3. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig (1035 kPa).
4. Size: 6 NPS (DN).
5. Design Flow Rate: 1,000 gpm (L/s).
6. Design Inlet Pressure: 96 psig (kPa).
7. Design Outlet Pressure Setting: 65 psig (kPa).
8. Body: Bronze with chrome-plated finish for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3 (DN 65 and DN 80).
9. Valves for Booster Heater Water Supply: Include integral bypass.
10. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3 (DN 65 and DN 80).

B. Water-Control Valves SOCV1:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. CLA-VAL.
  - b. OCV Control Valves.
  - c. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Control Valves (Watts ACV).
  - d. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
2. Description: Pilot-operated, diaphragm-type, single-seated, main water-control valve.
3. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating. Include small pilot-control valve, restrictor device, specialty fittings, and sensor piping.
4. Main Valve Body: Cast- or ductile-iron body with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating; or stainless-steel body.
  - a. Size: 6 NPS (DN).
  - b. Pattern: Globe-valve design.
  - c. Trim: Stainless steel.
5. Design Flow: 1,000 gpm (L/s).
6. Design Inlet Pressure: 96 psig (kPa).
7. Design Outlet Pressure Setting: 65 psig (kPa).
8. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

2.6 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

2. Body: Bronze for **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, epoxy coated and for **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and larger.
3. End Connections: Threaded for **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and smaller; flanged for **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and larger.
4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations unless otherwise indicated.
5. Perforation Size:
  - a. Strainers **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: **0.020 inch (0.51 mm)**.
  - b. Strainers **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100)**: **0.045 inch (1.14 mm)**.
6. Drain: Factory-installed, hose-end drain valve.

## 2.7 OUTLET BOXES

### A. Clothes Washer Outlet Boxes LB:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Acorn Engineering Company.
  - b. IPS Corporation.
  - c. Oatey.
  - d. Symmons Industries, Inc.
  - e. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
  - f. Whitehall Manufacturing; a div. of Acorn Engineering Company.
  - g. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Products.
  - h. Precision Plumbing Products.
2. Mounting: Recessed.
3. Material and Finish: Enameled-steel or epoxy-painted-steel box and faceplate.
4. Faucet: Combination valved fitting or separate hot- and cold-water valved fittings complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlets.
5. Supply Shutoff Fittings: **NPS 1/2 (DN 15)** gate, globe, or ball valves and **NPS 1/2 (DN 15)** copper, water tubing.
6. Drain: **NPS 2 (DN 50)** standpipe and P-trap for direct waste connection to drainage piping.
7. Inlet Hoses: Two **60-inch- (1500-mm-)** long, rubber household clothes washer inlet hoses with female, garden-hose-thread couplings. Include rubber washers.
8. Drain Hose: One **48-inch- (1200-mm-)** long, rubber household clothes washer drain hose with hooked end.

## 2.8 HOSE STATIONS

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Armstrong International, Inc.
3. Leonard Valve Company.
4. T & S Brass.

B. Single-Temperature-Water Hose Stations:

1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1.
2. Cabinet: Stainless-steel enclosure with exposed valve handle, hose connection, and hose rack. Include thermometer in front.
3. Hose-Rack Material: Stainless steel.
4. Body Material: Bronze with stainless-steel wetted parts.
5. Body Finish: Rough bronze, chrome plated.
6. Mounting: Wall, with reinforcement.
7. Supply Fittings: **NPS 3/4 (DN 20)** gate, globe, or ball valve and check valve and **NPS 3/4 (DN 20)** copper, water tubing. Omit check valve if check stop is included with fitting.
8. Hose: Manufacturer's standard, for service fluid, temperature, and pressure; **50 feet (15 m)** long.
9. Nozzle: With hand-squeeze, on-off control.
10. Vacuum Breaker:
  - a. Integral or factory-installed, nonremovable, manual-drain-type, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011 or backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1052.
  - b. Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlet.

2.9 HOSE BIBBS

A. Hose Bibbs:

1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
2. Body Material: Bronze.
3. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
4. Supply Connections: **NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 (DN 15 or DN 20)** threaded or solder-joint inlet.
5. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
6. Pressure Rating: **125 psig (860 kPa)**.
7. Vacuum Breaker: Integral, nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
8. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, or chrome or nickel plated.
9. Finish for Service Areas: Rough bronze.
10. Finish for Finished Rooms: Chrome or nickel plated.
11. Operation for Equipment Rooms: Wheel handle or operating key.
12. Operation for Service Areas: Wheel handle.
13. Operation for Finished Rooms: Operating key.
14. Include operating key with each operating-key hose bibb.
15. Include integral wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.

2.10 WALL HYDRANTS

A. Nonfreeze Wall Hydrants GHYD1, WHYD1

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Josam Company.
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.



- e. [Watts Drainage Products.](#)
  - f. [Woodford Manufacturing Company; a division of WCM Industries, Inc.](#)
  - g. [Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Products.](#)
  - h. [Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Products.](#)
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for exposed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
  - 3. Pressure Rating: **125 psig (860 kPa)**.
  - 4. Operation: Loose key.
  - 5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
  - 6. Inlet: **NPS 3/4 or NPS 1 (DN 20 or DN 25)**.
  - 7. Outlet: Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
  - 8. Box: Deep, flush mounted with cover.
  - 9. Box and Cover Finish: Chrome plated.
  - 10. Outlet: Exposed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
  - 11. Nozzle and Wall-Plate Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
  - 12. Operating Keys(s): Two with each wall hydrant.

B. Moderate-Climate Wall Hydrants RWHYD1:

- 1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. [Josam Company.](#)
  - b. [MIFAB, Inc.](#)
  - c. [Prier Products, Inc.](#)
  - d. [Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.](#)
  - e. [Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.](#)
  - f. [Watts Drainage Products.](#)
  - g. [Woodford Manufacturing Company; a division of WCM Industries, Inc.](#)
  - h. [Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Products.](#)
  - i. [Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Products.](#)
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
- 3. Pressure Rating: **125 psig (860 kPa)**.
- 4. Operation: Loose key.
- 5. Inlet: **NPS 3/4 or NPS 1 (DN 20 or DN 25)**.
- 6. Outlet:
  - a. Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker or nonremovable hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011 or backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1052.
  - b. Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
- 7. Box: Deep, flush mounted with cover.
- 8. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
- 9. Outlet:
  - a. Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker or nonremovable hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011 or backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1052.
  - b. Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.

10. Nozzle and Wall-Plate Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
11. Operating Keys(s): Two with each wall hydrant.

C. Vacuum Breaker Wall Hydrants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
  - b. Smith, Jay. R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - c. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
  - d. Woodford Manufacturing Company; a division of WCM Industries, Inc.
  - e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Products.
2. Standard: ASSE 1019, Type A or Type B.
3. Type: Freeze-resistant, automatic draining with integral air-inlet valve.
4. Classification: Type A, for automatic draining with hose removed or Type B, for automatic draining with hose removed or with hose attached and nozzle closed.
5. Pressure Rating: **125 psig (860 kPa).**
6. Operation: Loose key.
7. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
8. Inlet: **NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 (DN 15 or DN 20).**
9. Outlet: Exposed with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.

2.11 POST HYDRANTS

A. Nonfreeze, Draining-Type Post Hydrants RFHYD (DM):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. MIFAB, Inc.
  - b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - c. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - d. Watts Drainage Products.
  - e. Woodford Manufacturing Company; a division of WCM Industries, Inc.
  - f. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Products.
  - g. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Products.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M.
3. Type: Nonfreeze, exposed-outlet post hydrant.
4. Operation: Loose key.
5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of at least length required for burial of valve below frost line.
6. Casing: Bronze with casing guard.
7. Inlet: **NPS 3/4 (DN 20).**
8. Outlet: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
9. Drain: Designed with hole to drain into ground when shut off.
10. Vacuum Breaker:
  - a. Nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011 or backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1052.
  - b. Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlet.

11. Operating Key(s): Two with each loose-key-operation wall hydrant.

## 2.12 DRAIN VALVES

### A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: **400-psig** (**2760-kPa**) minimum CWP.
3. Size: **NPS 3/4** (**DN 20**).
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

### B. Gate-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-80 for gate valves.
2. Pressure Rating: Class 125.
3. Size: **NPS 3/4** (**DN 20**).
4. Body: ASTM B 62 bronze.
5. Inlet: **NPS 3/4** (**DN 20**) threaded or solder joint.
6. Outlet: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

### C. Stop-and-Waste Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for ball valves or MSS SP-80 for gate valves.
2. Pressure Rating: **200-psig** (**1380-kPa**) minimum CWP or Class 125.
3. Size: **NPS 3/4** (**DN 20**).
4. Body: Copper alloy or ASTM B 62 bronze.
5. Drain: **NPS 1/8** (**DN 6**) side outlet with cap.

## 2.13 WATER-HAMMER ARRESTERS

### A. Water-Hammer Arresters WHA:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
  - d. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
  - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - f. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - g. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - h. Watts Drainage Products.
  - i. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Products.
2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.

3. Type: Metal bellows.
4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F, or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

## 2.14 AIR VENTS

### A. Bolted-Construction Automatic Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze.
2. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 125-psig (860-kPa) minimum pressure rating at 140 deg F (60 deg C).
3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
5. Size: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) minimum inlet.
6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.

### B. Welded-Construction Automatic Air Vents:

1. Body: Stainless steel.
2. Pressure Rating: 150-psig (1035-kPa) minimum pressure rating.
3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
5. Size: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) minimum inlet.
6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.

## 2.15 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER DEVICE

### A. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device TP:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. MIFAB, Inc.
  - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
  - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - e. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
2. Standard: ASSE 1018.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum.
4. Body: Bronze.
5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) threaded, union, or solder joint.
6. Gravity Drain Outlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) threaded or solder joint.
7. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze for units used with pipe or tube that is not chrome finished.

## 2.16 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER SYSTEMS

### A. Trap-Seal Primer Systems TPA:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.](#)
2. Standard: ASSE 1044.
3. Piping: **NPS 3/4**, **ASTM B 88**, **Type L** (**DN 20**, **ASTM B 88M**, **Type B**); copper, water tubing.
4. Cabinet: Surface-mounted steel box with stainless-steel cover.
5. Electric Controls: 24-hour timer, solenoid valve, and manual switch for 120-V ac power.
  - a. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
6. Vacuum Breaker: ASSE 1001.
7. Number Outlets: Four.
8. Size Outlets: **NPS 1/2** (**DN 15**).

## 2.17 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Comply with requirements for general-duty metal valves in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."

B. CPVC Union Ball Valves:

1. [Manufacturers](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. [American Valve, Inc.](#)
  - b. [Georg Fischer LLC; GF Piping Systems.](#)
  - c. [Hayward Flow Control Systems; Hayward Industrial Products, Inc.](#)
  - d. [IPEX.](#)
  - e. [NIBCO Inc.](#)
  - f. [Thermoplastic Valves Inc.](#)
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-122.
  - b. Pressure Rating and Temperature: **125 psig** (**860 kPa**) at **73 deg F** (**23 deg C**).
  - c. Body Material: CPVC.
  - d. Body Design: Union type.
  - e. End Connections for Valves **NPS 2** (**DN 50**) and Smaller: Detachable, socket or threaded.
  - f. End Connections for Valves **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4** (**DN 65 to DN 100**): Detachable, threaded.
  - g. Ball: CPVC; full port.
  - h. Seals: PTFE or EPDM-rubber O-rings.
  - i. Handle: Tee shaped.

C. PVC Union Ball Valves:

1. [Manufacturers](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. [American Valve, Inc.](#)

- b. [Georg Fischer LLC; GF Piping Systems.](#)
- c. [Hayward Flow Control Systems; Hayward Industrial Products, Inc.](#)
- d. [IPEX.](#)
- e. [Jomar International.](#)
- f. [KBI Company.](#)
- g. [Legend Valve.](#)
- h. [McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.](#)
- i. [NIBCO Inc.](#)
- j. [Thermoplastic Valves Inc.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-122.
- b. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 125 psig (860 kPa) at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
- c. Body Material: PVC.
- d. Body Design: Union type.
- e. End Connections for Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Detachable, socket or threaded.
- f. End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Detachable, threaded.
- g. Ball: PVC; full port.
- h. Seals: PTFE or EPDM-rubber O-rings.
- i. Handle: Tee shaped.

D. CPVC Non-Union Ball Valves:

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [American Valve, Inc.](#)
- b. [KBI Company.](#)
- c. [Legend Valve.](#)
- d. [NIBCO Inc.](#)
- e. [Thermoplastic Valves Inc.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-122.
- b. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 125 psig (860 kPa) at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
- c. Body Material: CPVC.
- d. Body Design: Non-union type.
- e. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
- f. Ball: CPVC; full or reduced port.
- g. Seals: PTFE or EPDM-rubber O-rings.
- h. Handle: Tee shaped.

E. PVC Non-Union Ball Valves:

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [American Valve, Inc.](#)
- b. [Georg Fischer LLC; GF Piping Systems.](#)
- c. [Hayward Flow Control Systems; Hayward Industrial Products, Inc.](#)
- d. [IPEX.](#)

- e. [Jomar International.](#)
- f. [KBI Company.](#)
- g. [Legend Valve.](#)
- h. [McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.](#)
- i. [NIBCO Inc.](#)
- j. [Thermoplastic Valves Inc.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-122.
- b. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 125 psig (860 kPa) at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
- c. Body Material: PVC.
- d. Body Design: Non-union type.
- e. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
- f. Ball: PVC; full or reduced port.
- g. Seals: PTFE or EPDM-rubber O-rings.
- h. Handle: Tee shaped.

F. CPVC Butterfly Valves:

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [Georg Fischer LLC; GF Piping Systems.](#)
- b. [Hayward Flow Control Systems; Hayward Industrial Products, Inc.](#)
- c. [NIBCO Inc.](#)
- d. [Thermoplastic Valves Inc.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 125 psig (860 kPa) at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
- b. Body Material: CPVC.
- c. Body Design: Lug or wafer type.
- d. Seat: EPDM rubber.
- e. Seals: PTFE or EPDM-rubber O-rings.
- f. Disc: CPVC.
- g. Stem: Stainless steel.
- h. Handle: Lever.

G. PVC Butterfly Valves:

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [American Valve, Inc.](#)
- b. [Georg Fischer LLC; GF Piping Systems.](#)
- c. [Hayward Flow Control Systems; Hayward Industrial Products, Inc.](#)
- d. [IPEX.](#)
- e. [Legend Valve.](#)
- f. [NIBCO Inc.](#)
- g. [Thermoplastic Valves Inc.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 125 psig (860 kPa) at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
- b. Body Material: PVC.
- c. Body Design: Lug or wafer type.
- d. Seat: EPDM rubber.
- e. Seals: PTFE or EPDM-rubber O-rings.
- f. Disc: PVC.
- g. Stem: Stainless steel.
- h. Handle: Lever.

H. CPVC Ball Check Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Georg Fischer LLC; GF Piping Systems.
  - c. Hayward Flow Control Systems; Hayward Industrial Products, Inc.
  - d. IPEX.
  - e. NIBCO Inc.
  - f. Thermoplastic Valves Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 125 psig (860 kPa) at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
  - b. Body Material: CPVC.
  - c. Body Design: Union-type ball check.
  - d. End Connections for Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Detachable, socket or threaded.
  - e. End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Detachable, threaded.
  - f. Ball: CPVC.
  - g. Seals: EPDM- or FKM-rubber O-rings.

I. PVC Ball Check Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Georg Fischer LLC; GF Piping Systems.
  - c. Hayward Flow Control Systems; Hayward Industrial Products, Inc.
  - d. IPEX.
  - e. Legend Valve.
  - f. NIBCO Inc.
  - g. Thermoplastic Valves Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 125 psig (860 kPa) 73 deg F (23 deg C).
  - b. Body Material: PVC.
  - c. Body Design: Union-type ball check.
  - d. End Connections for Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Detachable, socket or threaded.
  - e. End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Detachable, threaded.



- f. Ball: PVC.
- g. Seals: EPDM- or FKM-rubber O-rings.

J. CPVC Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Georg Fischer LLC; GF Piping Systems.
  - b. Spears Manufacturing Company.
2. Description:
  - a. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 125 psig (860 kPa) at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
  - b. Body Material: CPVC.
  - c. Body Design: Nonrising stem.
  - d. End Connections for Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Socket or threaded.
  - e. End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Threaded.
  - f. Gate and Stem: Plastic.
  - g. Seals: EPDM rubber.
  - h. Handle: Wheel.

K. PVC Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Asahi/America.
  - b. Georg Fischer LLC; GF Piping Systems.
  - c. KBI Company.
  - d. Spears Manufacturing Company.
2. Description:
  - a. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 125 psig (860 kPa) at 73 deg F (23 deg C).
  - b. Body Material: PVC.
  - c. Body Design: Nonrising stem.
  - d. End Connections for Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Socket or threaded.
  - e. End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Threaded.
  - f. Gate and Stem: Plastic.
  - g. Seals: EPDM rubber.
  - h. Handle: Wheel.

2.18 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
  2. Flexicraft Industries.
  3. Flex Pression, Ltd.
  4. Flex-Weld Incorporated.
  5. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.

6. [Mercer Gasket & Shim, Inc.](#)
  7. [Metraflex, Inc.](#)
  8. [Proco Products, Inc.](#)
  9. [TOZEN Corporation.](#)
  10. [Unaflex.Universal Metal Hose; a Hyspan company.](#)
- B. Bronze-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum **200 psig (1380 kPa)**.
  2. End Connections **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
  3. End Connections **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.
- C. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.
1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum **200 psig (1380 kPa)**.
  2. End Connections **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
  3. End Connections **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.
- 2.19 WATER METERS (Water Meter to be provided and installed by local utility Co. Meter types described below for reference only. Verify meter requirements with local water company.)
- A. Displacement-Type Water Meters:
1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. [AALIANT; a Venture Measurement product line.ABB.Badger Meter, Inc.](#)
    - b. [Carlson Meter.](#)
    - c. [Mueller Co. Ltd.; a subsidiary of Mueller Water Products Inc.](#)
    - d. [Schlumberger Limited; Water Services.](#)
    - e. [Sensus.](#)
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: AWWA C700.
    - b. Pressure Rating: **150-psig (1035-kPa)** working pressure.
    - c. Body Design: Nutating disc; totalization meter.
    - d. Registration: In **gallons (liters)** or **cubic feet (cubic meters)** as required by utility company.
    - e. Case: Bronze.
    - f. End Connections: Threaded.
- B. Turbine-Type Water Meters:
1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. [AALIANT; a Venture Measurement product line.](#)
    - b. [Badger Meter, Inc.](#)
    - c. [Hays Fluid Controls.](#)

- d. [Master Meter, Inc.](#)
- e. [McCrometer, Inc.](#)
- f. [Mueller Co. Ltd.; a subsidiary of Mueller Water Products Inc.](#)
- g. [Schlumberger Limited](#); Water Services.
- h. [SeaMetrics Inc.](#)
- i. [Sensus.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: AWWA C701.
- b. Pressure Rating: 150-psig (1035-kPa) working pressure.
- c. Body Design: Turbine; totalization meter.
- d. Registration: In gallons (liters) or cubic feet (cubic meters) as required by utility company.
- e. Case: Bronze.
- f. End Connections for Meters NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded.
- g. End Connections for Meters NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged.

C. Compound-Type Water Meters:

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [ABB.](#)
- b. [Badger Meter, Inc.](#)
- c. [Master Meter, Inc.](#)
- d. [Mueller Co. Ltd.; a subsidiary of Mueller Water Products Inc.](#)
- e. [Schlumberger Limited](#); Water Services.
- f. [Sensus.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: AWWA C702.
- b. Pressure Rating: 150-psig (1035-kPa) working pressure.
- c. Body Design: With integral mainline and bypass meters; totalization meter.
- d. Registration: In gallons (liters) or cubic feet (cubic meters) as required by utility company.
- e. Case: Bronze.
- f. Pipe Connections: Flanged.

- D. Remote Registration System: Direct-reading type complying with AWWA C706; modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.

- E. Remote Registration System: Encoder type complying with AWWA C707; modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
  - 2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe-to-floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are unacceptable for this application.
  - 3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- B. Install water regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with memory-stop balancing valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- C. Install water-control valves with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with globe valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- D. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.
- E. Install temperature-actuated, water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
  - 1. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.
- F. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each control valve, water pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve and pump.
- G. Install outlet boxes recessed in wall or surface mounted on wall. Install 2-by-4-inch (38-by-89-mm) fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking, wall reinforcement between studs. Comply with requirements for fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."
- H. Install hose stations with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with thermometer on outlet.
  - 1. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified. Install 2-by-4-inch (38-by-89-mm) fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking, wall reinforcement between studs. Comply with requirements for fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."
- I. Install ground hydrants with 1 cu. yd. (0.75 cu. m) of crushed gravel around drain hole. Set ground hydrants with box flush with grade.
- J. Install draining-type post hydrants with 1 cu. yd. (0.75 cu. m) of crushed gravel around drain hole. Set post hydrants in concrete paving or in 1 cu. ft. (0.03 cu. m) of concrete block at grade.
- K. Set nonfreeze, nondraining-type post hydrants in concrete or pavement.
- L. Set freeze-resistant yard hydrants with riser pipe in concrete or pavement. Do not encase canister in concrete.

- M. Install water-hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.
- N. Install air vents at high points of water piping. Install drain piping and discharge onto floor drain.
- O. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.
- P. Install drainage-type, trap-seal primer valves as lavatory trap with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting.
- Q. Install trap-seal primer systems with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust system for proper flow.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for ground equipment in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking is specified in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for electrical connections.

### 3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
  - 1. Pressure vacuum breakers.
  - 2. Intermediate atmospheric-vent backflow preventers.
  - 3. Reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers.
  - 4. Double-check, backflow-prevention assemblies.
  - 5. Reduced-pressure-detector, fire-protection, backflow-preventer assemblies.
  - 6. Double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventers.
  - 7. Water pressure-reducing valves.
  - 8. Calibrated balancing valves.
  - 9. Outlet boxes.
  - 10. Hose stations.
  - 11. Supply-type, trap-seal primer valves.
  - 12. Trap-seal primer systems.
- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Test each pressure vacuum breaker, reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer, double-check, backflow-prevention assembly and double-check, detector-assembly

backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.

- B. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.
- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION 221119

## SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
  - 2. Specialty pipe fittings.
  - 3. Encasement for underground metal piping.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water (30 kPa).
  - 2. Waste, Force-Main Piping: 50 psig (345 kPa).
- B. Seismic Performance: Soil, waste, and vent piping and support and installation shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For sovent drainage system. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For waste and vent piping, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - 2. Detailed description of piping anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF/ANSI 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class.
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.

2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ANACO-Husky.
    - b. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
    - c. Fernco Inc.
    - d. Matco-Norca, Inc.
    - e. MIFAB, Inc.
    - f. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
    - g. Stant.
    - h. Tyler Pipe.
  - 2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.
  - 3. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
- C. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:



1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. ANACO-Husky.
  - b. Clamp-All Corp.
  - c. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
  - d. MIFAB, Inc.
  - e. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
  - f. Stant.
  - g. Tyler Pipe.
2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
3. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

## 2.4 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
- B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.
- C. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
  1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
  2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

## 2.5 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Transition Couplings:
  1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
  2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
  3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Fernco Inc.
      - 2) Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
      - 3) Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies, Inc.
    - b. Standard: ASTM C 1173.

- c. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
  - d. Sleeve Materials:
    - 1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
    - 2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
    - 3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
4. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
    - 2) Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
  - b. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
  - c. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
5. Pressure Transition Couplings:
- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
    - 2) Dresser, Inc.
    - 3) EBAA Iron, Inc.
    - 4) JCM Industries, Inc.
    - 5) Romac Industries, Inc.
    - 6) Smith-Blair, Inc.; a Sensus company.
    - 7) The Ford Meter Box Company, Inc.
    - 8) Viking Johnson.
  - b. Standard: AWWA C219.
  - c. Description: Metal, sleeve-type same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to, and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.
  - d. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard Ductile iron.
  - e. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
  - f. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- K. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- L. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- M. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 (DN 80) and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger.
  - 2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 1 percent downward in direction of flow.
  - 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- N. Install engineered soil and waste drainage and vent piping systems as follows:

1. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Solvent Drainage System: Comply with ASSE 1043 and solvent fitting manufacturer's written installation instructions.
  3. Reduced-Size Venting: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
- O. Install underground, ductile-iron, force-main piping according to AWWA C600. Install buried piping inside building between wall and floor penetrations and connection to sanitary sewer piping outside building with restrained joints. Anchor pipe to wall or floor. Install thrust-block supports at vertical and horizontal offsets.
1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- P. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
- Q. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- R. Install underground, copper, force-main tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- S. Install force mains at elevations indicated.
- T. Plumbing Specialties:
1. Install backwater valves in sanitary waster gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
  2. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
  3. Install drains in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
- U. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

### 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.

- B. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
- C. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.
- D. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.

### 3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Transition Couplings:
  - 1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
  - 2. In Drainage Piping: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
  - 3. In Aboveground Force Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.
  - 4. In Underground Force Main Piping:
    - a. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Fitting-type transition couplings.
    - b. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: Pressure transition couplings.

### 3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General valve installation requirements are specified in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- B. Shutoff Valves:
  - 1. Install shutoff valve on each sewage pump discharge.
  - 2. Install gate or full-port ball valve for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.
  - 3. Install gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
- C. Check Valves: Install swing check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sewage pump discharge.
- D. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.
  - 1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. Use normally closed type unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Floor Drains: Drain outlet backwater valves unless drain has integral backwater valve.
  - 3. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
  - 4. Comply with requirements for backwater valve specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
  - 1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
  - 2. Install stainless-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
  - 3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
  - 4. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
  - 5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
  - 6. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
    - a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m) if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  - 7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  - 8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches (300 mm) of each fitting, valve, and coupling.
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- E. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum rods.
- A. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5 : 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8 : 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
  - 5. Spacing for 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches .
- B. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet .
- C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/4 : 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 : 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 2-1/2 : 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 3 and NPS 5 : 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 6 : 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 6. NPS 8 : 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- D. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).
- E. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
  - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  - 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  - 4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
  - 5. Install horizontal backwater valves in pit with pit cover flush with floor.
  - 6. Comply with requirements for backwater valves, cleanouts and drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
  - 7. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
- D. Connect force-main piping to the following:
  - 1. Sanitary Sewer: To exterior force main.
  - 2. Sewage Pump: To sewage pump discharge.
- E. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- F. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

### 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
  - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.

- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  - 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water (30 kPa). From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
  - 4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg (250 Pa). Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
  - 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - 6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- E. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  - 1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - 2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
  - 3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - 4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

### 3.10 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.



- D. Exposed PVC Piping: Protect plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.

### 3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - 3. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
  - 4. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- C. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 and larger shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- D. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - 3. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
  - 4. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- E. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 5 and larger shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- F. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty cast-iron hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- G. Underground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 and larger shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty cast-iron hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

END OF SECTION 221316

## SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Backwater valves.
- 2. Cleanouts.
- 3. Floor drains.
- 4. Trench drains.
- 5. Channel drainage systems.
- 6. Air-admittance valves.
- 7. Roof flashing assemblies.
- 8. Through-penetration firestop assemblies.
- 9. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
- 10. Flashing materials.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties" for storm drainage piping inside the building, drainage piping specialties, and drains.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. FOG: Fats, oils, and greases.
- C. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- D. HDPE: High-density polyethylene plastic.
- E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- F. PP: Polypropylene plastic.
- G. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and accessories for the following:
  - 1. FOG disposal systems.
  - 2. Grease interceptors.
  - 3. Grease removal devices.
  - 4. Oil interceptors.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for frost-resistant vent terminals.
  - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For drainage piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic sanitary piping specialty components.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Coordinate size and location of roof penetrations.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 BACKWATER VALVES

- A. Horizontal, Cast-Iron Backwater Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
    - b. MIFAB, Inc.

- c. [Smith, Jay R. Mfr. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.](#)
  - d. [Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.](#)
  - e. [Watts Drainage Products Inc.](#)
  - f. [Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.](#)
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.14.1.
  - 3. Size: Same as connected piping.
  - 4. Body: Cast iron.
  - 5. Cover: Cast iron with bolted access check valve.
  - 6. End Connections: Hub and spigot or hubless.
  - 7. Type Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to hang open for airflow unless subject to backflow condition.
  - 8. Extension: ASTM A 74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron, soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.

## 2.2 CLEANOUTS

### A. Exposed Metal Cleanouts:

- 1. ASME A112.36.2M, Cast-Iron Cleanouts:
  - a. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) [Josam Company.](#)
    - 2) [MIFAB, Inc.](#)
    - 3) [Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.](#)
    - 4) [Tyler Pipe.](#)
    - 5) [Watts Drainage Products.](#)
    - 6) [Zurn Plumbing Products Group.](#)
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.
- 3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
- 4. Body Material: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
- 5. Closure: Countersunk, cast-iron plug.
- 6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
- 7. Closure: Stainless-steel plug with seal.

### B. Metal Floor Cleanouts :

- 1. ASME A112.36.2M, Cast-Iron Cleanouts:
  - a. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) [Josam Company.](#)
    - 2) [Oatey.](#)
    - 3) [Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
    - 4) [Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.](#)
    - 5) [Tyler Pipe.](#)
    - 6) [Watts Drainage Products.](#)
    - 7) [Zurn Plumbing Products Group.](#)

2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for threaded, adjustable housing cleanout.
3. Size: Same as connected branch.
4. Type: Threaded, adjustable housing.
5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
6. Clamping Device: Not required.
7. Outlet Connection: Spigot.
8. Closure: Cast-iron plug.
9. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with set-screws or other device.
10. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Painted cast iron.
11. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
12. Top Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
13. Riser: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.
14. Standard: ASME A112.3.1.
15. Size: Same as connected branch.
16. Housing: Stainless steel.
17. Closure: Stainless steel with seal.
18. Riser: Stainless-steel drainage pipe fitting to cleanout.

C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
  - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - e. Watts Drainage Products.
  - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Countersunk, cast-iron plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
7. Wall Access: Round, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with screw.
8. Wall Access: Square, nickel-bronze, copper-alloy, or stainless-steel wall-installation frame and cover.

2.3 FLOOR DRAINS

A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains FD1, FD2:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
  - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - e. Watts Drainage Products.
  - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.

2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
3. Pattern: Floor drain.
4. Body Material: Gray iron.
5. Seepage Flange: Not required.
6. Anchor Flange: Not required.
7. Clamping Device: Not required.
8. Outlet: Bottom.
9. Backwater Valve: Not required.
10. Coating on Interior and Exposed Exterior Surfaces: Not required.
11. Sediment Bucket: Not required.
12. Top or Strainer Material: Stainless steel.
13. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Rough bronze.
14. Top Shape: Round.
15. Dimensions of Top or Strainer: Refer to Drain Schedule on contract document.
16. Top Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
17. Funnel: Not required.
18. Inlet Fitting: Gray iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
19. Trap Material: Bronze.
20. Trap Pattern: Standard P-trap.
21. Trap Features: Trap-seal primer valve drain connection.

## 2.4 TRENCH DRAINS

### A. Trench Drains TD1:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3 for trench drains.
3. Material: Ductile or gray iron.
4. Flange: Anchor.
5. Clamping Device: Not required.
6. Outlet: Bottom.
7. Grate Material: Ductile iron.
8. Grate Finish: Painted.
9. Dimensions of Frame and Grate: Refer to drain schedule on contract document.
10. Top Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
11. Trap Material: Cast iron.
12. Trap Pattern: Standard P-trap.

## 2.5 CHANNEL DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

### A. Polymer-Concrete Channel Drainage Systems GTD1:

1. Narrow, Sloped-Invert, Polymer-Concrete Channel Drainage Systems:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1) ACO Polymer Products, Inc.
  - 2) Josam Company.
  - 3) Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
2. Type: Modular system of channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling.
  - a. Channel Sections: Narrow, interlocking-joint, sloped-invert, polymer-concrete modular units with end caps. Include rounded bottom, with built-in invert slope of 0.6 percent and with outlets in number, sizes, and locations indicated. Include extension sections necessary for required depth.
    - 1) Dimensions: 4-inch (102-mm) inside width. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
    - 2) Frame: Gray-iron or galvanized steel for grates.
  - b. Grates: Manufacturer's designation "heavy duty," with slots or perforations, and of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections.
    - 1) Material: Ductile iron.
    - 2) Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections.
  - c. Covers: Solid ductile or gray iron, of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections, and of lengths indicated.
  - d. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.
  - e. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.
  - f. Channel Sections: Narrow, interlocking-joint, precast, polymer-concrete modular units with end caps. Include rounded bottom, with level invert and with NPS 4 (DN 100) outlets in number and locations indicated.
    - 1) Dimensions: 11.81" inside width and 13.06" deep. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
    - 2) Frame: Gray-iron or galvanized steel for grates.
  - g. Grates: Manufacturer's designation "heavy duty," with slots or perforations, and of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections.
    - 1) Material: Ductile iron.
    - 2) Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections.
  - h. Covers: Solid ductile or gray iron, of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections, and of lengths indicated.
  - i. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.
  - j. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.



B. Polymer-Concrete Sediment Interceptor GTDSI:

1. Description: 14.18" x 19.68", precast, polymer-concrete body, with outlets in number and sizes indicated. Include ~~24-inch-~~ (610-mm-) square, gray-iron slotted grate.
2. Frame: Galvanized steel for grate.

2.6 ROOF FLASHING ASSEMBLIES

A. Roof Flashing Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Acorn Engineering Company; Elmdor/Stoneman Div.
  - b. Thaler Metal Industries Ltd.
2. Description: Manufactured assembly made of ~~4.0-lb/sq. ft.~~ (20-kg/sq. m), ~~0.0625-inch-~~ (1.6-mm-) thick, lead flashing collar and skirt extending at least ~~6 inches~~ (150 mm) from pipe, with galvanized-steel boot reinforcement and counterflashing fitting.
  - a. Open-Top Vent Cap: Without cap.
  - b. Low-Silhouette Vent Cap: With vandal-proof vent cap.
  - c. Extended Vent Cap: With field-installed, vandal-proof vent cap.

2.7 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP ASSEMBLIES

A. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ProSet Systems Inc.
2. Standard: UL 1479 assembly of sleeve and stack fitting with firestopping plug.
3. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent stack.
4. Sleeve: Molded PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
5. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron, hubless-pattern, wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
6. Special Coating: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Open Drains :

1. Description: Shop or field fabricate from ASTM A 74, Service class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron, soil-pipe fittings. Include P-trap, hub-and-spigot riser section; and where required, increaser fitting joined with ASTM C 564, rubber gaskets.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping with increaser fitting of size indicated.

B. Deep-Seal Traps :

1. Description: Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping and cleanout trap-seal primer valve connection.
  2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.
    - a. NPS 2 (DN 50): 4-inch- (100-mm-) minimum water seal.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: 5-inch- (125-mm-) minimum water seal.
- C. Floor-Drain, Trap-Seal Primer Fittings :
1. Description: Cast iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
  2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet with NPS 1/2 (DN 15) side inlet.
- D. Air-Gap Fittings :
1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
  2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
  3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
  4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
  5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.
- E. Sleeve Flashing Device :
1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device, that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top of fitting that will extend 2 inches (51 mm) above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
  2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.
- F. Stack Flashing Fittings :
1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
  2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.
- G. Vent Caps :
1. Description: Cast-iron body with threaded or hub inlet and vandal-proof design. Include vented hood and setscrews to secure to vent pipe.
  2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.
- H. Frost-Resistant Vent Terminals :
1. Description: Manufactured or shop-fabricated assembly constructed of copper, lead-coated copper, or galvanized steel.
  2. Design: To provide 1-inch (25-mm) enclosed air space between outside of pipe and inside of flashing collar extension, with counterflashing.
- I. Expansion Joints :
1. Standard: ASME A112.21.2M.
  2. Body: Cast iron with bronze sleeve, packing, and gland.
  3. End Connections: Matching connected piping.

4. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent piping.

## 2.9 FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Lead Sheet: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, copper bearing, with the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:
  1. General Use: 4.0-lb/sq. ft. (20-kg/sq. m), 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) thickness.
  2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 3.0-lb/sq. ft. (15-kg/sq. m), 0.0469-inch (1.2-mm) thickness.
  3. Burning: 6-lb/sq. ft. (30-kg/sq. m), 0.0938-inch (2.4-mm) thickness.
- B. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M, of the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:
  1. General Applications: 12 oz./sq. ft. (3.7 kg/sq. m or 0.41-mm thickness).
  2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 8 oz./sq. ft. (2.5 kg/sq. m or 0.27-mm thickness).
- C. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch (1.01-mm) minimum thickness, unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 (Z275) hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.
- D. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil (1.01-mm) minimum thickness.
- E. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.
- F. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.
- G. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.
- H. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

## 2.10 MOTORS

- A. General requirements for motors are specified in Section 220513 "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."
  1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install backwater valves in building drain piping. For interior installation, provide cleanout deck plate flush with floor and centered over backwater valve cover, and of adequate size to remove valve cover for servicing.
- B. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Size same as drainage piping up to **NPS 4 (DN 100)**. Use **NPS 4 (DN 100)** for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
  2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
  3. Locate at minimum intervals of **50 feet (15 m)** for piping **NPS 4 (DN 100)** and smaller and **100 feet (30 m)** for larger piping.
  4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- C. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- D. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- E. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
  2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
    - a. Radius, **30 Inches (750 mm)** or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than **1/4-inch (6.35-mm)** total depression.
    - b. Radius, **30 to 60 Inches (750 to 1500 mm)**: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
    - c. Radius, **60 Inches (1500 mm)** or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than **1-inch (25-mm)** total depression.
  3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
  4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Assemble and install ASME A112.3.1, stainless-steel channel drainage systems according to ASME A112.3.1. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with surface.
- H. Assemble non-ASME A112.3.1, stainless-steel channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- I. Assemble FRP channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- J. Assemble plastic channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- K. Install fixture air-admittance valves on fixture drain piping.
- L. Install stack air-admittance valves at top of stack vent and vent stack piping.
- M. Install air-admittance-valve wall boxes recessed in wall.
- N. Install roof flashing assemblies on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.

- O. Install flashing fittings on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.
- P. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies in plastic conductors and stacks at floor penetrations.
- Q. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub 1 inch (25 mm) floor.
- R. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.
- S. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.
  - 1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
  - 2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.
- T. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- U. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- V. Install vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof.
- W. Install frost-resistant vent terminals on each vent pipe passing through roof. Maintain 1-inch (25-mm) clearance between vent pipe and roof substrate.
- X. Install expansion joints on vertical stacks and conductors. Position expansion joints for easy access and maintenance.
- Y. Install frost-proof vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof. Maintain 1-inch (25-mm) clearance between vent pipe and roof substrate.
- Z. Assemble components of FOG disposal systems and install on floor. Install trap, vent, fresh-air inlet, and flow-control fitting according to authorities having jurisdiction. Install shelf fastened to reinforcement in wall construction and adjacent to unit, unless otherwise indicated. Install culture bottle, culture metering pump, timer, and control on shelf. Install tubing between culture bottle, metering pump, and chamber.
- AA. Install grease interceptors, including trapping, venting, and flow-control fitting, according to authorities having jurisdiction and with clear space for servicing.
  - 1. Above-Floor Installation: Set unit with bottom resting on floor, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Flush with Floor Installation: Set unit and extension, if required, with cover flush with finished floor.
  - 3. Recessed Floor Installation: Set unit in receiver housing having bottom or cradle supports, with receiver housing cover flush with finished floor.
  - 4. Install cleanout immediately downstream from interceptors not having integral cleanout on outlet.
- BB. Install grease removal devices on floor. Install trap, vent, and flow-control fitting according to authorities having jurisdiction. Install control panel adjacent to unit, unless otherwise indicated.
- CC. Install oil interceptors, including trapping, venting, and flow-control fitting, according to authorities having jurisdiction and with clear space for servicing. Coordinate oil-interceptor storage tank and gravity drain with Section 231113 "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping."

- DD. Install solids interceptors with cleanout immediately downstream from interceptors that do not have integral cleanout on outlet. Install trap on interceptors that do not have integral trap and are connected to sanitary drainage and vent systems.
- EE. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting-type specialties.
- FF. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. FOG Disposal Systems: Connect inlet and outlet to unit, connect flow-control fitting and fresh-air inlet piping to unit inlet piping, and connect vent piping between trap and media chamber. Connect electrical power.
- D. Grease Interceptors: Connect inlet and outlet to unit, and connect flow-control fitting and vent to unit inlet piping. Install valve on outlet of automatic drawoff-type unit.
- E. Grease Removal Devices: Connect controls, electrical power, factory-furnished accessories, and inlet, outlet, and vent piping to unit.
- F. Oil Interceptors: Connect inlet, outlet, vent, and gravity drawoff piping to unit; flow-control fitting and vent to unit inlet piping; and gravity drawoff and suction piping to oil storage tank.
- G. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- H. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### 3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
  - 1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of lead sheets 6.0-lb/sq. ft. (30-kg/sq. m), 0.0938-inch (2.4-mm) thickness or thicker. Solder joints of lead sheets 4.0-lb/sq. ft. (20-kg/sq. m), 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) thickness or thinner.
  - 2. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
  - 1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches (250 mm), and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around pipe.
  - 2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around sleeve.

3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least **8 inches (200 mm)** around specialty.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
- E. Install flashing for piping passing through roofs with counterflashing or commercially made flashing fittings, according to Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- F. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.
- G. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

### 3.4 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
  1. FOG disposal systems.
  2. Grease interceptors.
  3. Grease removal devices.
  4. Oil interceptors.
  5. Solids interceptors.
- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221319

## SECTION 224000 - PLUMBING FIXTURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following conventional plumbing fixtures and related components:
  - 1. Faucets for lavatories bathtub/showers and sinks.
  - 2. Flushometers.
  - 3. Toilet seats.
  - 4. Protective shielding guards.
  - 5. Fixture supports.
  - 6. Shower receptors.
  - 7. Dishwasher air-gap fittings.
  - 8. Water closets.
  - 9. Urinals.
  - 10. Lavatories.
  - 11. Bathtubs.
  - 12. Individual showers.
  - 13. Kitchen sinks.
  - 14. Service sinks.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 10 Section "Toilet and Bath Accessories."
  - 2. Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" and "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties" for backflow preventers, floor drains, and specialty fixtures not included in this Section.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. Accessible Fixture: Plumbing fixture that can be approached, entered, and used by people with disabilities.
- C. Cast Polymer: Cast-filled-polymer-plastic material. This material includes cultured-marble and solid-surface materials.
- D. Cultured Marble: Cast-filled-polymer-plastic material with surface coating.
- E. Fitting: Device that controls the flow of water into or out of the plumbing fixture. Fittings specified in this Section include supplies and stops, faucets and spouts, shower heads and tub spouts, drains and tailpieces, and traps and waste pipes. Piping and general-duty valves are included where indicated.



- F. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- G. PMMA: Polymethyl methacrylate (acrylic) plastic.
- H. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- I. Solid Surface: Nonporous, homogeneous, cast-polymer-plastic material with heat-, impact-, scratch-, and stain-resistance qualities.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of plumbing fixture indicated. Include selected fixture and trim, fittings, accessories, appliances, appurtenances, equipment, and supports. Indicate materials and finishes, dimensions, construction details, and flow-control rates.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For plumbing fixtures to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- D. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain plumbing fixtures, faucets, and other components of each category through one source from a single manufacturer.
  - 1. Exception: If fixtures, faucets, or other components are not available from a single manufacturer, obtain similar products from other manufacturers specified for that category.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, "Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities"; Public Law 90-480, "Architectural Barriers Act"; and Public Law 101-336, "Americans with Disabilities Act"; for plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.
- D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in Public Law 102-486, "Energy Policy Act," about water flow and consumption rates for plumbing fixtures.
- E. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects," for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- F. Select combinations of fixtures and trim, faucets, fittings, and other components that are compatible.
- G. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for plumbing fixtures:
  - 1. Enameled, Cast-Iron Fixtures: ASME A112.19.1M.
  - 2. Slip-Resistant Bathing Surfaces: ASTM F 462.

3. Solid-Surface-Material Lavatories and Sinks: ANSI/ICPA SS-1.
  4. Stainless-Steel Residential Sinks: ASME A112.19.3.
  5. Vitreous-China Fixtures: ASME A112.19.2M.
  6. Water-Closet, Flush Valve, Tank Trim: ASME A112.19.5.
  7. Water-Closet, Flushometer Tank Trim: ASSE 1037.
- H. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for lavatory and sink faucets:
1. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Side Spray: ASME A112.18.3M.
  2. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Hose-Thread Outlet: ASME A112.18.3M.
  3. Diverter Valves for Faucets with Hose Spray: ASSE 1025.
  4. Faucets: ASME A112.18.1.
  5. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1011.
  6. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
  7. Integral, Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
  8. NSF Potable-Water Materials: NSF 61.
  9. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
  10. Supply Fittings: ASME A112.18.1.
  11. Brass Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2.
- I. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for bathtub bathtub/shower and faucets:
1. Backflow Protection Devices for Hand-Held Showers: ASME A112.18.3M.
  2. Combination, Pressure-Equalizing and Thermostatic-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASSE 1016.
  3. Deck-Mounted Bath/Shower Transfer Valves: ASME 18.7.
  4. Faucets: ASME A112.18.1.
  5. Hand-Held Showers: ASSE 1014.
  6. High-Temperature-Limit Controls for Thermal-Shock-Preventing Devices: ASTM F 445.
  7. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
  8. Manual-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASTM F 444.
  9. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
  10. Pressure-Equalizing-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASTM F 444 and ASSE 1016.
- J. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous fittings:
1. Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
  2. Brass and Copper Supplies: ASME A112.18.1.
  3. Dishwasher Air-Gap Fittings: ASSE 1021.
  4. Manual-Operation Flushometers: ASSE 1037.
  5. Plastic Tubular Fittings: ASTM F 409.
  6. Brass Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2.
  7. Sensor-Operation Flushometers: ASSE 1037 and UL 1951.
- K. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
1. Disposers: ASSE 1008 and UL 430.
  2. Dishwasher Air-Gap Fittings: ASSE 1021.
  3. Flexible Water Connectors: ASME A112.18.6.
  4. Floor Drains: ASME A112.6.3.
  5. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.

6. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
7. Plastic Toilet Seats: ANSI Z124.5.
8. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 AS SPECIFIED ON DRAWINGS.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before plumbing fixture installation.
- B. Examine cabinets, counters, floors, and walls for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Assemble plumbing fixtures, trim, fittings, and other components according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Install off-floor supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounting fixtures.
  1. Use carrier supports with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet fixtures.
  2. Use carrier supports without waste fitting for fixtures with tubular waste piping.
  3. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible fixtures.
- C. Install back-outlet, wall-mounting fixtures onto waste fitting seals and attach to supports.
- D. Install floor-mounting fixtures on closet flanges or other attachments to piping or building substrate.
- E. Install wall-mounting fixtures with tubular waste piping attached to supports.
- F. Install floor-mounting, back-outlet water closets attached to building floor substrate and wall bracket and onto waste fitting seals.
- G. Install counter-mounting fixtures in and attached to casework.
- H. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- I. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each fixture to be connected to water distribution piping. Attach supplies to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
  1. Exception: Use ball, gate, or globe valves if supply stops are not specified with fixture. Valves are specified in Division 22 Section "General Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."

- J. Install trap and tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be directly connected to sanitary drainage system.
- K. Install tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be indirectly connected to drainage system.
- L. Install flushometer valves for accessible water closets and urinals with handle mounted on wide side of compartment. Install other actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
- M. Install tanks for accessible, tank-type water closets with lever handle mounted on wide side of compartment.
- N. Install toilet seats on water closets.
- O. Install trap-seal liquid in dry urinals.
- P. Install faucet-spout fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
- Q. Install water-supply flow-control fittings with specified flow rates in fixture supplies at stop valves.
- R. Install faucet flow-control fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
- S. Install shower flow-control fittings with specified maximum flow rates in shower arms.
- T. Install traps on fixture outlets.
  - 1. Exception: Omit trap on fixtures with integral traps.
  - 2. Exception: Omit trap on indirect wastes, unless otherwise indicated.
- U. Install disposer in outlet of each sink indicated to have disposer. Install switch where indicated or in wall adjacent to sink if location is not indicated.
- V. Install dishwasher air-gap fitting at each sink indicated to have air-gap fitting. Connect inlet hose to dishwasher and outlet hose to disposer.
- W. Install hot-water dispensers in back top surface of sink or in countertop with spout over sink.
- X. Install escutcheons at piping wall/ceiling penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Escutcheons are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- Y. Set shower receptors and service basins in leveling bed of cement grout. Grout is specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- Z. Seal joints between fixtures and walls, floors, and countertops using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Sealants are specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Conductors and Cables."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verify that installed plumbing fixtures are categories and types specified for locations where installed.
- B. Check that plumbing fixtures are complete with trim, faucets, fittings, and other specified components.
- C. Inspect installed plumbing fixtures for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.
- D. Test installed fixtures after water systems are pressurized for proper operation. Replace malfunctioning fixtures and components, then retest. Repeat procedure until units operate properly.
- E. Install fresh batteries in sensor-operated mechanisms.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust faucets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning fixtures, fittings, and controls.
- B. Operate and adjust disposers. Replace damaged and malfunctioning units and controls.
- C. Adjust water pressure at faucets and flushometer valves to produce proper flow and stream.
- D. Replace washers and seals of leaking and dripping faucets and stops.
- E. Install fresh batteries in sensor-operated mechanisms.

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean fixtures, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials. Do the following:
  - 1. Remove faucet spouts and strainers, remove sediment and debris, and reinstall strainers and spouts.
  - 2. Remove sediment and debris from drains.
- B. After completing installation of exposed, factory-finished fixtures, faucets, and fittings, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged finishes.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures and fittings.
- B. Do not allow use of plumbing fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION

This Page Left Intentionally Blank

## SECTION 230100 - COMMON HVAC REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this and all Division 23 Sections.

#### 1.2 PLANS AND SPECIFICATIONS

- A. All work under this title, on drawings or specified, is subject to the general and special contract conditions for the entire project, and the contractor for this portion of the work is required to refer especially thereto, and to the architectural drawings.
- B. Drawings are diagrammatic and specifications are complementary and must be so interpreted to determine the full scope of work under this heading. Wherever any material, article, operation or method is either specified or shown on the drawings, this contractor is required to provide each item and perform each prescribed operation according to the designate quality, qualification or condition, furnishing all necessary labor, equipment or incidentals.
- C. Wherever the designation "Architect" appears, it shall imply Architect or Engineer. Wherever the term "Contractor" or "MC" appears, it shall imply the Contractor responsible for Division 23, Mechanical Work.

#### 1.3 CONFLICTS

- A. If, in the interpretation of contract documents, it appears that the drawings and specifications are not in agreement, the Contractor is to contact the Engineer. The Engineer shall be the final authority. Addenda supersede the provisions which they amend.
- B. In the absence of a written clarification by the engineer, the Contractor must install his work in accordance with the more stringent and/or costly condition. Contractor assumes full responsibility for any and all items furnished and installed without the written approval by the Architect or Engineer. Under no circumstances will a change order be approved for work installed that was not approved by the Architect or Engineer.

#### 1.4 DIMENSIONS, LAYOUTS AND OBSTACLES

- A. Verify dimensions and elevations from actual field measurements after building construction has sufficiently progressed.
- B. Assume full and final responsibility for the accuracy of any or all work performed under this Division and make repairs and corrections as required or directed at no extra cost to the Owner.
- C. Layouts of piping, ductwork, and equipment shown on drawings are diagrammatic. Contractor shall verify dimensions and layouts for specific project conditions, field verify any existing conditions, and coordinate with all other trades prior to procurement, fabrication and installation of equipment and material. Existing Conditions shall be field verified by contractor prior to bid submissions. Unknown conditions during construction due to omission of contractor field verification prior to bid shall be resolved by the contractor at no cost to the owner or project. Contractor assumes full responsibility for completeness of installation including coordination of work with other trades.
- D. Make actual installations in accord with design layouts, but with necessary adjustments as determined by trade coordination, actual material and equipment procured, field verifications, and other project conditions in order to provide a fully functional and complete system, save and maintainable in all

aspects. Any such required adjustments and deviations shall require specific approval of the Engineer/Architect prior to procurement, fabrication, and installation.

- E. Take particular care to coordinate all piping, ductwork, and equipment under this Division to prevent conflict and remove and relocate work as may be made necessary by such conflict at no extra cost to the Owner or project.
- F. Unless expressly permitted by the Engineer/Architect or shown otherwise on the Drawings, all piping, ducts and similar items shall be installed so that they are concealed except as permitted by the Engineer/Architect in service rooms noted on the Drawings.
- G. The Owner or Owner's Representative reserves the right to relocate terminal equipment six (6) feet in any direction from locations indicated on plans, before roughing-in, with no extra cost to the Owner or project.

#### 1.5 REVIEW OF PROPOSED EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

##### A. Submittals:

- 1. Contractor shall submit a complete list and schedule, including all proposed equipment and materials to the Construction Manager and Engineer for review and approval within 10 business days of contract award.
- 2. Submit all proposed material, equipment, and fabrication shop drawings to the Engineer for approval prior to procurement, fabrication, and installation.

##### B. Substitution Requests:

- 1. Substitutions are defined as any manufacturer and/or model not indicated in drawings or specifications as the "basis of design". Requests for substitutions must be made in writing ten (10) days prior to bid date so that an addendum may reach all contractors.
- 2. In addition to other contract provisions regarding substitution requests, Contractor must certify by letter that he has checked the proposed substitution products or materials for conformance to applicable codes, standards, and regulations, specifications, and space limitations and assumes full responsibility thereafter.
- 3. Approval of substitution requests is at the sole discretion of the Engineer and Owner.
- 4. If substitutions are proposed after the bids are received, the Contractor shall state amount of credit to the Owner for substitution. Substitutions that are considered equal by the Contractor and carried in bid without approval by Engineer shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. The Engineer and/or Owner shall not be made liable or responsible for losses incurred by the Contractor, due to the rejection of said items for installation.
- 5. Where equipment requiring different arrangement or connections other than as indicated is acceptable, it shall be the responsibility of this Contractor to furnish revised layouts, and install the equipment to operate properly and in harmony with the intent of the drawings and specifications. All changes in the work required by the different arrangement shall be done at no additional cost to the Owner or Project, including but not limited to structural steel modifications. Control and power wiring modifications required by Contractor, imposed modifications, and the additional cost of these modifications, shall be the responsibility of this Contractor.
- 6. Where "basis of design" equipment manufacturer and model number is indicated on the drawings, any proposed substitution must match the "basis of design" product performance, efficiencies, ratings, materials of construction, dimensions, and weight, whether or not this information is included in the written specifications.



1.6 PERMITS, CODES AND ORDINANCES

- A. The Contractor shall arrange and pay for all permits, inspections, etc., as required by local utilities or applicable agencies.
- B. All work and material shall be in complete accordance with the ordinances, regulations, codes, etc., of all political entities exercising jurisdictions.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Install HVAC Systems in accordance with applicable industry standards.
- B. Install HVAC Systems in accordance with manufacturer's installation, operations and maintenance instructions.

1.8 COORDINATION WITH OTHER TRADES

- A. Check mechanical drawings with all other trades including electrical, plumbing, fire protection and general construction.
- B. Anticipate, avoid, and resolve interferences with other trades.
- C. Take particular care to coordinate all piping, ductwork, plumbing and major electrical components above ceiling, to prevent conflict. Remove and relocate work as may be made necessary by such conflict, at no extra cost to the Owner. The use of coordination drawings is recommended but may not be required (refer to Division 1 for additional requirements). Lack of coordination drawings assumes contractor has verified and coordinated all work associated with installation.
- D. Obtain decision for approval from project Engineer for proposed grouped installations before proceeding, and for clearance in structure and finish of the building.
- E. Verify with drawings all ductwork and equipment layout in concealed areas.
- F. The Contractor to coordinate with, receive and install, Owner furnished equipment where indicated.
- G. Coordinate location of controls and instrumentation devices, including but not limited to control valves, control dampers, thermowells, pressure probes, flow switches, insertion flow meters, and ultrasonic flow meters, with Building Automation System (BAS) requirements.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery of Materials: Make provisions for delivery and safe storage of all materials. Check and properly receipt material to be "furnished by others" to contractor, and assume full responsibility for all materials while in storage with full visible identification and information.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Existing Conditions: Field verify existing conditions that will determine exact locations, distances, levels, dimensions, elevations, etc. Review all drawings of other trades and report any conflicts to the Architect/Engineer which will affect the project cost. Lack of field verification does not constitute a basis for change orders and additional costs incurred by the owner or project. Contractor assumes full responsibility for completeness of installation including coordination of work with other trades.

- B. Existing facilities shall be considered occupied and functioning during the entire duration of construction. Care shall be taken when working in or around occupied spaces. There will be no interruption in mechanical systems or utilities without written approval from the Owner.

#### 1.11 SUPPORTS

- A. Mechanical Contractor is responsible for providing all support components necessary for properly supporting HVAC Systems including hangers, rods, anchors, steel, and bases.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS (not used)

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

##### 3.1 COMMON HVAC SYSTEMS INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of HVAC systems.
- B. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size systems and address other design considerations. Install systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved by Architect and Engineer.
- C. Install systems in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install systems indicated to be exposed and in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls.
- E. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are indicated.
- G. Diagonal runs of piping and ductwork are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- H. Install systems above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- I. Install systems and equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations
- J. Install equipment with all required manufacturer's service clearances maintained.
- K. Install systems at indicated slopes.
- L. Install systems free of sags and bends.
- M. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- N. Install systems to allow application of insulation.
- O. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- P. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

- Q. Running pipe and ductwork over electrical equipment and in elevator machine rooms is prohibited.
- R. Running piping and ductwork into or through interior exit stairways, other than systems serving such stairwells as permitted by the International Building Code, is prohibited.
- S. Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe and duct penetrations. Such Penetrations shall be sealed with firestop materials and required fire and smoke rated dampers shall be provided.
- T. Install HVAC systems on required supports and bases meeting maximum allowable spans and sized for the specific loads.
- U. Install controls and instrumentation devices for HVAC systems required for system operations and as indicated.

END OF SECTION 230100

SECTION 230102 – COMMON HVAC DEMOLITION REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Description of Work: Provide removal systems as indicated and as required for removal and/or abandonment of systems, equipment and devices, etc. made obsolete by this Project, and as required for removal and remodeling by other trades.

1.2 EXISTING CONDITIONS

- A. Existing HVAC systems, equipment and devices may not all be shown on the Drawings. Existing conditions, where indicated, are based on preliminary field observations and/or existing conditions documentation made available to the Architect and Engineer and must be verified. Report any discrepancies to the Architect and Engineer before disturbing the existing installation.
- B. Prior to bidding, examine the site to determine all actual observable conditions. Additional work or scope changes due to the Contractor's failure to investigate such existing conditions shall not be grounds for change orders or cause additional costs to the owner and project.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Adjoining Areas: It is expected that the Contractor understands that adjoining areas of the building (or project site) must remain in operation and HVAC Systems and services must remain in operation at all times, unless specifically approved otherwise.
- B. Scheduling: Demolition work and any required shut-downs shall be scheduled in conjunction with all other trades and the owner. Contractor cooperation will be expected under all conditions.
- C. Area Limits: Construction traffic and removal of debris will be limited to specific areas and routes. Confirm with the Construction Manager and Owner.
- D. Coordinate and ensure that all equipment affected by the work is de-energized and electrically disconnected by a qualified and authorized contractor or owner's representative prior to proceeding with demolition.

1.4 ADJACENT MATERIALS

- A. Protection: During execution of removal work, primary consideration shall be given to protecting from damage, building structure, furnishings, finishes and the like, which are not specifically indicated to be removed.
- B. Repairs: Existing items or surfaces to remain, which are damaged as a result of this work shall be refinished, repaired or replaced to the satisfaction of the Owner, at no cost to the Owner or Project.

1.5 TRANSIENT SERVICES

- A. Locate and identify any and all services passing through the project area which serve areas outside the work limits.
- B. Maintain all services to areas outside the work limits unless specifically authorized otherwise in writing by the Engineer or Owner's Representative. When transient services must be interrupted, provide temporary services for affected areas outside the work limits.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Patching: Materials used for patching shall be in conformance with the applicable sections of the Project Manual. Where materials are not specifically described, but required for proper completion of the Work, they shall be as selected by the Contractor, subject to approval of the Architect and Engineer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION/VERIFICATION

- A. Inspection: Before commencing work of this Section, carefully inspect the project site and become familiar with existing systems and conditions.
- B. Items to be Salvaged: Verify with the Architect, Engineer, and Owner's Representative, all systems, materials and equipment which are to be salvaged, and those which must be removed. The Owner reserves the right to salvage any or all existing materials and equipment at the project site.

### 3.2 DEMOLITION

- A. General: Remove equipment, ductwork, piping, controls and related materials within the project work limits, as indicated.
- B. Protection: Perform all removal work in such a manner so that damage to adjacent items and surfaces is minimized.
- C. Patching: When materials are removed, patch and finish surfaces to remain to match surrounding surfaces.

### 3.3 EXISTING SYSTEMS TO REMAIN

- A. General: Protect and maintain access to existing systems which must remain. Reinstall existing systems disturbed.
- B. Reconnections: Where systems in adjoining areas or indicated to remain, become disconnected or affected by demolition work, they shall be reconnected as required to restore original operation. Restoration work shall comply with requirements for new work.

### 3.4 EXISTING SYSTEMS WORK TO BE RELOCATED

- A. General: Disconnect, remove, reinstall and reconnect equipment indicated to be relocated and where required to accommodate remodeling or new construction. Extend existing installations as required. Materials and methods used for relocations and extensions shall conform to requirements for new work.

### 3.5 DISPOSITION OF EXISTING MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

- A. Items to Salvage: Material and equipment which is indicated (or directed by Owner) to be salvaged, shall be carefully removed and stored where directed on the site.
- B. Items to Reuse/Relocate: Carefully remove and store on site, all material and equipment indicated to be reused or relocated. Thoroughly clean, and make any necessary minor repairs to such equipment, prior to installation.

- C. Items to Remove: Remove and legally dispose of all other materials and debris resulting from demolition work on a daily basis.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Remove from the Project Site all dirt, dust and debris resulting from removal operations on a daily basis. Refuse shall not be allowed to block or otherwise impair circulation in corridors, stairs, sidewalks, roadways or other traffic areas.

END OF SECTION 230102

SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Each motor and all components shall be designed, manufactured and tested in accordance with the following latest applicable standards.
  - 1. New York State Electrical Code.
  - 2. National Electric Manufacturers Association Standards (NEMA).
  - 3. ANSI/NEMA MG1 – Motors and Generators.
  - 4. IEEE-112 – Test Method “B”.
  - 5. NEMA – ICS-3-303.
  - 6. IEEE Standard 519.
  - 7. IEEE Standard 444 (ANSI C34.3).

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.
- B. Furnish and install electric motors required for equipment furnished under this Division. Electric motors shall be factory mounted on equipment wherever possible and shall be constructed as specified in this Section. If electric motors are shipped loose and must be installed by the Division 26 Electrical Subcontractor, The Division 23 Subcontractor shall notify each Electrical Subcontractor in writing prior to the bid date.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
  - 1. Motor controllers.
  - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
  - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
  - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. The following submittal data shall be furnished and shall include, but not limited to the following:
  - 1. Motors – For all motors not included in another section, Submittal shall state motor manufacturer, horsepower, frame size, frequency, voltage power factor, efficiency, speed starting torque class, insulation class, service factor and winding material. Also to be included, special shaft or mounting detail requirements as well as shaft limitation details and any other special requirements shall be listed on the drawings.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Furnish a warranty of (1) year.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

### 2.2 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. General Electric.
  - 2. Baldor.
  - 3. Marathon.
  - 4. Westinghouse.
  - 5. Siemens.
  - 6. Toshiba.

### 2.3 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 104 deg F and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.
- C. All motors shall be started across the line, unless otherwise specified. All motors 100 horsepower and larger shall be suitable for wye-delta starting unless otherwise specified.
- D. Unless otherwise indicated, all motors shall be single speed (1,750 rpm). All motors shall include open drip proof enclosures unless otherwise specified. All motors installed outdoors and exposed to the elements shall be totally enclosed fan cooled (TEFC) or totally enclosed air over (TEAO).
  - 1. Totally enclosed fan cooled (TEFC) motors shall have corrosion resistant fans.

Motor Voltages shall be as follows:

MOTOR HP	VOLTAGE
1/2 HP or Less	120V / Single Phase / 60 Hz.
Greater than 1/2 HP	208V or 460V/ 3 Phase / 60 Hz.

- E. All motors shall have copper windings.

### 2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.



- D. Windings shall be copper for all motors and treated with an epoxy varnish to inhibit the absorption of moisture.
- E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
- F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading. Provide the necessary seals on the shaft to keep bearing system free of contaminants and moisture. Lubricant shall be high temperature, non-bleeding grease.
- H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating, unless otherwise noted.
- I. Insulation: Shall be Class F, 105°F rise insulation suitable for use in a 104°F ambient temperature.
- J. Code Letter Designation:
  - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
  - 2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

## 2.5 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
  - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
  - 2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
  - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
  - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

## 2.6 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
  - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
  - 2. Split phase.
  - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
  - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.

- C. Bearings: Pre-lubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Motor installation shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and as indicated on the drawings. Align pulleys and install all belts at proper tension to minimize wear on belts and drives.

END OF SECTION 230513

SECTION 230515 - MAGNETIC MOTOR CONTROLLERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Enclosed full-voltage combination magnetic motor controllers.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store controllers indoors in clean, dry space with uniform temperature to prevent condensation. Protect controllers from exposure to dirt, fumes, water, corrosive substances, and physical damage.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Ambient Environment Ratings: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than 23 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
  - 2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet for electromagnetic and manual devices.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. UL Compliance: Fabricate and label magnetic motor controllers to comply with UL 508 and UL 60947-4-1.
- C. NEMA Compliance: Fabricate motor controllers to comply with ICS 2.

2.2 ENCLOSED FULL-VOLTAGE COMBINATION MAGNETIC MOTOR CONTROLLERS

- A. Description: Across-the-line start, electrically held, for nominal system voltage of 600-V ac and less.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. ABB
  - 2. Danfoss
  - 3. Eaton

4. Yaskawa

- C. Standard: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A.
- D. Each motor except as noted, shall be provided with a combination non-fused disconnect and across-the-line magnetic starter with pushbutton stations mounted on the cover. Coordinate requirements with the electrical contractor. For automatically or remotely controlled motors, furnish hand off auto (H-O-A) selector switches in place of the push buttons.
- E. Furnish manually operated motor starters of the proper size for all motors less than 1/2 hp which are not automatically controlled. Starters for motors 175 watts or less shall consist of a snap switch with thermal overload protection where such protection is not an integral part of the motor.
- F. Combination magnetic starters for all motors shall have thermal overload, pilot light, low voltage protection in all three phases. Include a control transformer for each magnetic starter to provide 120 volt control power with three (3) sets of spare normally closed or normally open contacts.
- G. All starters shall be assembled and internally wired with all devices in conformance with NEMA standards.
- H. Disconnect switches are provided by the electrical contractor if not integral with equipment.
- I. Provide enclosures for starters suitable for operating environment. Enclosures shall be NEMA 1 ventilated sheetmetal for indoor application, NEMA 3R with additional gasketing weatherproof raintight enclosure or exposed outdoor service or indoor service exposed to moisture. Provide disconnect switch on enclosure as required for service.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and space conditions for compliance with requirements for motor controllers, their relationship with the motors, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Wall-Mounted Controllers: Install magnetic controllers on walls with tops at uniform height indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall. For controllers not at walls, provide freestanding racks complying with Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Maintain minimum clearances and workspace at equipment according to manufacturer's written instructions and NFPA 70.
- D. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
- E. Setting of Overload Relays: Select and set overloads on the basis of full-load current rating as shown on motor nameplate. Adjust setting value for special motors as required by NFPA 70 for motors that are high-torque, high-efficiency, and so on.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.

- B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Comply with the provisions of NFPA 70B, "Testing and Test Methods" Chapter.
2. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
  - a. Compare equipment nameplate data with drawings and specifications.
  - b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
  - c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
  - d. Verify the unit is clean.
  - e. Inspect contactors:
    - 1) Verify mechanical operation.
    - 2) Verify contact gap, wipe, alignment, and pressure are according to manufacturer's published data.
  - f. Motor-Running Protection:
    - 1) Verify overload element rating is correct for its application.
    - 2) If motor-running protection is provided by fuses, verify correct fuse rating.
  - g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
    - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values with values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
    - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12. Bolt-torque levels shall be according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
  - h. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.
3. Electrical Tests:
  - a. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Insulation-resistance values shall be according to manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.1. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.5. Values of insulation resistance less than those of this table or manufacturer's recommendations shall be investigated and corrected.
  - b. Test motor protection devices according to manufacturer's published data.
  - c. Perform operational tests by initiating control devices.

- C. Motor controller will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 SYSTEM FUNCTION TESTS

- A. System function tests shall prove the correct interaction of sensing, processing, and action devices. Perform system function tests after field quality control tests have been completed and all components have passed specified tests.
  - 1. Develop test parameters and perform tests for the purpose of evaluating performance of integral components and their functioning as a complete unit within design requirements and manufacturer's published data.
  - 2. Verify the correct operation of interlock safety devices for fail-safe functions in addition to design function.
  - 3. Verify the correct operation of sensing devices, alarms, and indicating devices.
- B. Motor controller will be considered defective if it does not pass the system function tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 230513

SECTION 230517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves.
  - 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
  - 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
  - 4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
  - 5. Grout.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements.
- B. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - 2. CALPICO, Inc.

3. Metraflex Company (The).
4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
5. Proco Products, Inc.

B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
2. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Presealed Systems.

B. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

## 2.5 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
  1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
  2. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.



2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 7 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
  3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
  4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
  5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.
- B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 7 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

### 3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

### 3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:

1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
5. Interior Partitions:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 230517

SECTION 230518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Escutcheons.
  - 2. Floor plates.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, [concealed] [and] [exposed-rivet] hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

2.2 FLOOR PLATES

- A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.
- B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:

- a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
- b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.
- d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.
- g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.

2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping:

- a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
- c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed exposed-rivet hinge.
- f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge.

C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.

D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.
2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 230518

SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Metal framing systems.
4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
5. Fastener systems.
6. Pipe stands.
7. Equipment supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Division 23 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
3. Division 23 Section "Vibration Controls for HVAC" for vibration isolation devices.
4. Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
  2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:

1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
2. Metal framing systems.
3. Pipe stands.
4. Equipment supports.

- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

- B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.

- C. Copper Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

#### 2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

## 2.3 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

### A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
  - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
  - c. Flex-Strut Inc.
  - d. GS Metals Corp.
  - e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
  - f. Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.
  - g. Wesanco, Inc.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: MFMA-4.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
7. Metallic Coating: Hot-dipped galvanized.

### B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Anvil International; a subsidiary of Mueller Water Products Inc.
  - b. Empire Industries, Inc.
  - c. ERICO International Corporation.
  - d. Haydon Corporation; H-Strut Division.
  - e. NIBCO INC.
  - f. PHD Manufacturing, Inc.
  - g. PHS Industries, Inc.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
7. Coating: Zinc.

## 2.4 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

### A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
2. Clement Support Services.
3. ERICO International Corporation.
4. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
5. PHS Industries, Inc.

6. Pipe Shields, Inc.; a subsidiary of Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
  7. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
  8. Rilco Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  9. Value Engineered Products, Inc.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: C 59, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- C. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength.
- D. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- E. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- F. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

## 2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, stainless-steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

## 2.6 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece stainless-steel base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:
1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
  2. Base: Stainless steel.
  3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
  4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.
- E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:
1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
  2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
  3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.



4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.

- F. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

## 2.7 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Fiberglass Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with applicable portions of MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- D. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- E. Fiberglass Strut System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled fiberglass struts.
- F. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- G. Fastener System Installation:
1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.

2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- H. Pipe Stand Installation:
1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
  2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- I. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- J. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- K. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- L. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- M. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- N. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- O. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- P. Insulated Piping:
1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
  2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:

- a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
  - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
  - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
  - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
  - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
  6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09 Section "Exterior Painting" Division 09 Section "Interior Painting" and Division 09 Section "High Performance Coatings."

- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers, and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
  - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
  - 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
  - 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
  - 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
  - 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  - 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  - 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  - 10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
  - 11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
  - 12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  - 13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.

14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
  15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
  16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
  17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
  2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
  3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
  4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
  5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
  8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.

9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
  10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
  11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
  12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
  13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
  15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
  2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
  3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
  4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
  5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
  6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
  7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
  8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
    - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
    - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
    - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- P. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

- Q. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- R. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 230529

SECTION 230548 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. The Division 23 Subcontractor shall assume complete responsibility for the anchoring of the equipment, piping systems, etc., specified herein to the concrete foundation pads, to the concrete inertia bases and to the supporting structural steel and concrete beams.
- B. Furnish and install foundation vibration isolation and associated equipment for piping, rotating equipment, etc., as specified herein.
- C. This section Includes the following:
  - 1. All outdoor equipment, including roof-mounted components, shall comply with section 1609, Wind Load, 2020 New York State Building Code. There shall be no decrease of the effects of wind load on a component due to other structures or components acting as blocks or screens.
  - 2. All below, at grade or above grade locations located in a flood hazard area as defined and located herein.
  - 3. Wind and flood load and isolation materials shall be the certified products of the same manufacturing group and shall be certified by that group.
  - 4. It is the intent of the wind load portion of this specification to keep all mechanical, building system components in place during high wind event and additionally operational.
  - 5. All such systems must be installed in strict accordance with wind codes, component manufacturer's and building construction standards.
  - 6. This specification is considered to be minimum requirements for, wind, flood and vibration control considerations.
  - 7. Any variation, which results in non-compliance with the specification requirements, shall be corrected by the contractor in an approved manner.
- D. The Division 23 Contractor shall provide all miscellaneous steel for support of equipment, piping and ductwork systems.
- E. Section Includes:
  - 1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
  - 2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
  - 3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
  - 4. Open-spring isolators.
  - 5. Housed-spring isolators.
  - 6. Restrained-spring isolators.
  - 7. Housed-restrained-spring isolators.
  - 8. Pipe-riser resilient supports.
  - 9. Resilient pipe guides.
  - 10. Air-spring isolators.
  - 11. Restrained-air-spring isolators.
  - 12. Elastomeric hangers.
  - 13. Spring hangers.
  - 14. Vibration isolation equipment bases.



15. Restrained isolation roof-curb rails.

F. Related Requirements:

1. All equipment and material to be furnished and installed on this project shall be in accordance with the requirements of the authorities having jurisdiction and suitable for its intended use on.
2. All vibration isolation devices and components shall be designed, manufactured, and tested in accordance with the latest applicable standards.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Basic Wind Speed: The basic wind speed, in mph, for determination of the wind loads shall be as per Section 1609 (2020 New York State Building Code), or local code, if more severe. Local jurisdictions shall determine wind speeds for indicated special wind regions located near gorges or mountainous terrain. Section 6.5.4 of ASCE 7-05 shall be used after determination of basic wind speed by the local jurisdiction. See Section 1609.3 ASCE 7-05 for basic wind speed determination in non-hurricane prone regions.
- B. Flood or Flooding: A general and temporary condition or partial and complete inundation of normally dry land from:
  1. The overflow of inland or tidal waters.
  2. The unusual and rapid accumulation of runoff of surface waters from any source.
- C. Flood Hazard Area: The greater of the following of two areas:
  1. The area within a flood plain subject to a 1 percent or greater chance of flooding in any year.
  2. The area designated as a flood hazard area on a community's flood hazard map, or otherwise legally designated.
- D. Special Flood Hazard Area Subject to High Velocity Wave Action: Area within the flood hazard area that is subject to high velocity wave action and shown on a Flood Insurance Rate Map (FIRM) or other flood hazard map as zone V, VO, VE or VI-30.
- E. Flood Insurance Rate Map (FIRM): An official map of a community on which the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) has delineated both the special flood hazard areas and the risk premium zones applicable to the community.
- F. Hurricane Prone Regions: Areas prone to hurricanes include the U.S. Atlantic Ocean, Gulf Coasts, Hawaii, Puerto Rico, Guam, Virgin Islands, and American Samoa where the wind speed is greater than 90 mph.

1.4 GENERAL DESIGN AND PERFORMANCE

- A. General Design Performance Requirements
  1. Attachment calculations by the Restraint Manufacturer's licensed Engineer substantiating the mounting system or wind restraints, fasteners or ICC Certified Concrete Anchors shall be submitted for approval along with the shop drawings. Wind loads shall have their calculations based on Section 1.4, Paragraph B, article 8, Design Wind Loads. A registered professional engineer having a PE from the same state as the project, or state of restraint manufacturer shall stamp all analysis, or as required by local building codes.
  2. Design Wind Loads:
    - a. All outdoor mounted components shall be positively fastened to their supporting structure as discussed below. Fastening to metal deck is unacceptable.
      - 1) If component is curb mounted, article 7, Design Seismic Loads, paragraph g shall be followed for all roof-mounted components in excess of 9 sq. ft. in cross-

sectional area. Curbs shall be as described in Base type B-3 if isolated, Base type B-4 if non-isolated.

- 2) If component is support mounted, article 7, Design Seismic Loads, paragraph g shall be followed for all roof-mounted components requiring waterproofed rail supports. Equipment supports shall be Base type B-5 if isolated, Base type B-6 if non-isolated.
- 3) If equipment is dunnage mounted, positive attachment shall occur through welding or bolting of equipment to dunnage steel.
- b. Loads and calculations shall be based on 2020 New York State Building Code, figure 1609 and related sections in ASCE 7-05.
- c. Where buildings are less than or equal to 60 feet in height to the top of the roof slab (not parapet walls), the force on roof-mounted components shall be based on Section 6.5.15.1, ASCE 7-05.
- d. Equivalent basic wind speed shall be based on 2020 New York State Building Code, Table 1609.3.1.

In no event shall adjacent buildings, structures or screens be considered to diminish the calculated wind load or its effect on an outdoor component.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

### A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device type required.

### B. Shop Drawings:

1. The Mechanical Subcontractor shall submit isolation Shop Drawings for all horizontal and vertical piping, equipment inertia bases, mechanical equipment and cooling towers to the Structural Engineer, Architect and Mechanical Engineer prior to fabrication and installation of any of the isolation and restraint equipment of systems.
2. Submittal data shall include certification by the vibration isolation manufacturer that all heating hot water and steam piping systems for both horizontal and vertical piping have been examined for excessive stresses and that none will exist in the proposed design.
3. Piping shop drawings shall indicate the anticipated expansion and contraction of all piping systems at each support point, initial and final loads on the building structure, spring deflection changes, construction loading, normal operating condition loading and the structural loading, which will occur during expansion and contraction.
4. Each device shall have a permanently attached identification tag which is cross referenced to the diagrams by location and service.
5. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases shall include anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
6. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

### C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each vibration isolation device.

1. Include design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of vibration isolation device installation for HVAC piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- C. Welding certificates.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATION

- A. Springs: All springs shall have a minimum additional travel to solid equal to 50% of the rated deflection. All springs except internal nested springs shall have an outside diameter not less than 0.8 of the compressed height of the spring. Ends of springs shall be square and ground for stability. Laterally stable springs shall have  $k_x/k_y$  ratios of at least 0.9. All springs shall be fully color-coded to indicate capacity – color striping is not considered adequate.
- B. Corrosion Protection: All springs shall be powder-coated enamel. Housings shall be galvanized, powder-coated enamel, or painted with rust-resistant paint. Hot-dipped galvanized housings shall be provided as indicated on the Schedule.

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - c. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  - d. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

2.3 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

- A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads - Type A:
  - 1. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
  - 2. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
  - 3. Pad Material: Neoprene.
  - 4. Surface Pattern: Waffle pattern..
  - 5. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.
  - 6. 0.75" minimum thickness.
  - 7. 50 PSI maximum loading.
  - 8. 1/16" galvanized steel plate between multiple layers of pad thickness.
  - 9. Through Hole with Resilient washer.
  - 10. Elastomeric Isolation Pads shall be Mason Type Super W or approved equal.
- B. Elastomeric Isolation Mount – Type D

1. Molded unit type neoprene element with projecting bushing lining rod clearance hole.
2. Neoprene element to be minimum 1 3/4" (45 mm) thick.
3. Steel retainer box encasing neoprene mounting.
4. Clearance between mounting hanger rod and neoprene bushing shall be minimum 1/8" .
5. Mountings shall be Mason Industries Type HD or approved equal.

#### 2.4 OPEN-SPRING ISOLATORS - Type E

##### A. Open Spring Isolators:

1. Spring isolators shall be free standing and laterally stable without any housing and complete with a molded neoprene cup or 1/4"(6mm) neoprene acoustical friction pad between the baseplate and the support.
2. All mountings shall have leveling bolts that must be rigidly bolted to the equipment.
3. Installed and operating heights shall be equal.
4. The ratio of the spring diameter divided by the compressed spring height shall be no less than 0.8. Springs shall have a minimum additional travel to solid equal to 50% of the rated deflection.
5. All air ducts with a cross section of 2ft<sup>2</sup> or larger shall be isolated from the building structure by Type C floor supports with a minimum deflection of 0.75". Isolators shall continue for 50' from the equipment.
6. Submittals shall include spring diameters, deflection, compressed spring height and solid spring height.
7. Mountings shall be Mason type SLF, or approved equal.

#### 2.5 RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

##### A. Restrained spring isolators - Type F

1. Spring isolators shall be free standing and laterally stable without any housing and complete with a molded neoprene cup or 1/4"(6mm) neoprene acoustical friction pad between the baseplate and the support.
2. All mountings shall have leveling bolts that must be rigidly bolted to the equipment. Installed and operating heights shall be equal.
3. Neoprene acoustical pad within a rigid sided housing that includes vertical limit stops to prevent spring extension when weight is removed and temporary steel spacers between the upper and lower housings.
4. Housings shall serve as blocking during erection. When the equipment is at full operating weight, the springs shall be adjusted to assume the weight and the spacers removed, without changing the installed and operating heights. All restraining bolts shall have large rubber grommets to provide cushioning in the vertical as well as horizontal modes.
5. The hole through the bushing shall be a minimum of 0.75"(20mm) larger in diameter than the restraining bolt.
6. Horizontal clearance on the sides between the spring assembly and the housing shall be a minimum of 0.5"(12mm) to avoid bumping and interfering with the spring action.
7. Vertical limit stops shall be out of contact during normal operation.
8. Cooling tower mounts are to be located between the supporting steel and the roof or the grillage and dunnage as shown on the drawings when there is no provision for direct mounting.
9. Housings and springs shall be powder coated and hardware electro galvanized.
10. The ratio of the spring diameter divided by the compressed spring height shall be no less than 0.8. Springs shall have a minimum additional travel to solid equal to 50% of the rated deflection.
11. Submittals shall include spring diameters, deflection, compressed spring height and solid spring height.
12. Mountings shall be Mason Industries Type SLR, or approved equal..

## 2.6 PIPE-RISER RESILIENT SUPPORT

- A. Description: All-directional, acoustical pipe anchor consisting of Anchors, Guides and spring mounts – Type H.
1. All vertical risers subjected to thermal expansion and/or contraction shall be supported by spring isolators and central anchors designed to insure loading within design limits at structural support points.
  2. The riser design must be prepared and submitted for approval by the same isolation vendor supplying the HVAC mechanical equipment isolation and must include the initial load, initial deflection, change in deflection, final load and change in load at all spring support locations. In order to minimize load changes, the initial spring deflection must be at least 4 times the thermal movement. The submittal must also include anchor loads when installed, cold filled, and at operating temperature. Include calculated pipe stress at end conditions and branch off locations as well as installation instruction. The submittal must be stamped and signed by a licensed professional engineer in the employ of the vibration vendor for at least five years.
  3. Proper provision shall be made for seismic protection in seismic zones.
  4. The isolation vendor shall provide and design all brackets at riser spring and anchor locations where standard clamps lack capacity or do not fit. The contractor must install and adjust all isolators under the supervision of the designing isolation vendor or his representative.
  5. The support spring mounts shall be Mason Type SLF, anchors Type ADA and telescoping guides Type VSG.
  6. All vertical risers shall be supported by spring isolators designed to support the riser filled with water, if it is a water line.
  7. Assigned loads must be within the building design limits at the support points. Neutral central resilient anchors close to the center of the run shall direct movement up and down.
  8. The anchors shall be capable of holding an upward force equal to the water weight when the system is drained. If one level cannot accommodate this force, anchors can be located on 2 or 3 adjacent floors.
  9. Resilient guides shall be spaced and sized properly depending on the pipe diameter. Submittals must include the initial load, initial deflection, change in deflection, final load and change in load at all spring and anchor support locations, as well as guide spacing.
  10. The initial spring deflection shall be a minimum of 0.75"(20mm) or four times the thermal movement at the isolator location, whichever is greater.
  11. Calculations shall include pipe stress at end conditions and branch off locations and the manufacturer must include installation instructions. Submittal must be stamped and signed by a licensed professional engineer in the employ of the vibration vendor for at least 5 years.
- B. RESILIENT PIPE GUIDES – Type H-1
1. Description: Telescopic arrangement of post and sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum 1/2-inch- thick neoprene.
    - a. Pipe guides shall consist of a telescopic arrangement of two sizes of steel tubing separated by a minimum 1/2"(12mm) thickness of 60 durometer or softer neoprene.
    - b. The height of the guides shall be preset with a shear pin to allow vertical motion due to pipe expansion or contraction.
    - c. Guides shall be capable of 1-5/8"(40mm) motion, or to meet location requirements.
    - d. Pipe guides shall be Mason Industries Type VSG.
- C. PIPE ANCHORS – Type H-2
1. Description: All directional acoustical pipe anchors consist of two sizes of steel tubing separated by a minimum 1/2"(12mm) thickness of 60 duro or softer neoprene.

- a. Split Seals consist of pipe halves with minimum 3/4"(20mm) thick neoprene sponge cemented to the inner faces.
- b. Vertical restraint shall be provided by similar material arranged to prevent up or down vertical travel.
- c. Allowable loads on the isolation material shall not exceed 500 psi (3.45 N/mm<sup>2</sup>) and the design shall be balanced for equal resistance in any direction.
- d. All directional anchors shall be Mason Industries Type ADA.

## 2.7 ACOUSTICAL WALL, CEILING OR FLOOR SEAL – Type I

- A. Description: Split Seals consist of pipe halves with minimum 3/4"(20mm) thick neoprene sponge cemented to the inner faces.
1. The seal shall be tightened around the pipe to eliminate clearance between the inner sponge face and the piping.
  2. Concrete may be packed around the seal to make it integral with the floor, wall or ceiling if the seal is not in place prior to the construction of the building member.
  3. Seals shall project a minimum of 1"(25mm) past either face of the wall. Where temperatures exceed 240°F (115°C), 10 lb. density fiberglass may be used in lieu of the sponge.
  4. Seals shall be Mason Industries Type SWS.

## 2.8 SPRING HANGERS

### A. Spring Isolator - Type J:

1. Hangers shall consist of rigid steel frames containing minimum 1-1/4"(32mm) thick neoprene elements at the top and a steel spring seated in a steel washer reinforced neoprene cup on the bottom.
2. The neoprene element and the cup shall have neoprene bushings projecting through the steel box. In order to maintain stability the boxes shall not be articulated as clevis hangers nor the neoprene element stacked on top of the spring.
3. Spring diameters and hanger box lower hole sizes shall be large enough to permit the hanger rod to swing through a 30° arc from side to side before contacting the cup bushing and short circuiting the spring.
4. The ratio of the spring diameter divided by the compressed spring height shall be no less than 0.8. Springs shall have a minimum additional travel to solid equal to 50% of the rated deflection.
5. Submittals shall include a hanger drawing showing the 30° capability.
6. Hangers shall be Mason Industries - Type 30N.

### B. Spring Isolator – Type K

1. Hangers shall consist of rigid steel frames containing minimum 1-1/4"(32mm) thick neoprene elements at the top and a steel spring seated in a steel washer reinforced neoprene cup on the bottom.
2. The neoprene element and the cup shall have neoprene bushings projecting through the steel box. In order to maintain stability the boxes shall not be articulated as clevis hangers nor the neoprene element stacked on top of the spring.
3. Spring diameters and hanger box lower hole sizes shall be large enough to permit the hanger rod to swing through a 30° arc from side to side before contacting the cup bushing and short circuiting the spring.
4. The ratio of the spring diameter divided by the compressed spring height shall be no less than 0.8. Springs shall have a minimum additional travel to solid equal to 50% of the rated deflection.
5. Submittals shall include a hanger drawing showing the 30° capability.
6. Hangers shall be pre-compressed and locked at the rated deflection by means of a resilient upstop to keep the piping or equipment at a fixed elevation during installation.

7. The hangers shall be designed with a release mechanism to free the spring after the installation is complete and the hanger is subjected to its full load. Deflection shall be clearly indicated by means of a scale.
8. Submittals shall include a drawing of the hanger showing the 30° capability.
9. Hangers shall be Mason Industries Type PC30N.

C. Spring Hanger Guidelines:

- A. The first four pipe hangers in the main lines near the mechanical equipment shall be Type J.
- B. Hangers supporting piping 2" and larger in all other locations throughout the building shall be isolated by Type I.
- C. Heat exchangers and expansion tanks are considered part of the piping run.
- D. The first four isolators from the isolated equipment shall have the same static deflection as specified for the mountings under the connected equipment.
- E. If piping is connected to equipment located in basements and hangs from ceilings under occupied spaces the first four hangers shall have 0.75" deflection for pipe sizes up to and including 3", 1-1/2" deflection for pipe sizes over 3" and up to and including 6", and 2-1/2" deflection thereafter.
- F. Where piping connects to mechanical equipment install Type R expansion joints or specification P stainless hoses if O is not suitable for the service.
- G. All piping passing through the equipment walls, floors or ceilings shall be protected against sound leakage by means of an acoustical seal, Type J.
- H. All air ducts with a cross section of 2ft<sup>2</sup> or larger shall be isolated from the building structure by Type K hangers with a minimum deflection of 0.75". Isolators shall continue for 50' from the equipment.
- I. If air velocity exceeds 1000 fpm , hangers or supports shall continue for an additional 50' or as shown on the drawings

2.9 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES

A. Steel Bases: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails - Type O.

1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
  - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
4. Centrifugal refrigeration machines and pump bases may be T or L shaped.
5. Pump bases for split case pumps shall be large enough to support suction and discharge elbows.
6. All perimeter members shall be steel beams with a minimum depth equal to 1/10 of the longest dimension of the base. Base depth need not exceed 14"(350mm) provided that the deflection and misalignment is kept within acceptable limits as determined by the manufacturer.
7. Height saving brackets shall be employed in all mounting locations to provide a base clearance of 1"(25mm).
8. Bases shall be Mason Industries Type WF or approved equal.

B. Concrete Inertia Base: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails ready for placement of cast-in-place concrete – Type P.

1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
  - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.

2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
3. Bases shall be a minimum of 1/12 of the longest dimension of the base but not less than 6".
4. Minimum thickness of the inertia base shall be according to the following tabulation:

Motor Size		Minimum Thickness	
(HP)	(Kw)	(In.)	(mm)
5-15	(4-11)	6	(150)
20-50	(15-37)	8	(200)
60-75	(45-55)	10	(250)
100-250	(75-190)	12	(300)
300-500	(220-375)	18	(350)

4. Forms shall include minimum concrete reinforcing consisting of 1/2" bars welded in place on 6" centers running both ways in a layer 1-1/2" above the bottom. Forms shall be furnished with steel templates to hold the anchor bolt sleeves and anchor bolts while concrete is being poured.
5. Height saving brackets shall be employed in all mounting locations to maintain a 1" clearance below the base.
6. Wooden formed bases leaving a concrete rather than a steel finish are not acceptable.
7. Fabrication: Fabricate steel templates to hold equipment anchor-bolt sleeves and anchors in place during placement of concrete. Obtain anchor-bolt templates from supported equipment manufacturer.
8. Base shall be Mason Industries - Type BMK or K or approved equal.

#### 2.10 ISOLATION ROOF-CURB RAILS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Mason Industries, Inc
  2. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  3. Kinetics Noise Control.
  4. Thybar Corporation.

#### B. Spring Isolated Curb – Type Q

1. Description: Factory-assembled, fully enclosed, insulated, air- and watertight curb rail designed to resiliently support equipment and shall include the following:
2. Curb mounted rooftop equipment shall be mounted on spring isolation curbs.
3. The lower member shall consist of a sheet metal Z section containing adjustable and removable steel springs that support the upper floating section.
4. The upper frame must provide continuous support for the equipment and must be captive so as to resiliently resist wind forces.
5. Lower Support Assembly: The lower support assembly shall be formed sheet metal section containing adjustable and removable steel springs that support upper frame. The lower support assembly shall have a means for attaching to building structure and a wood nailer for attaching roof materials and shall be insulated with a minimum of 2 inches of rigid glass-fiber insulation on inside of assembly. Adjustable, restrained-spring isolators shall be mounted on elastomeric vibration isolation pads and shall have access ports, for level adjustment, with removable waterproof covers at all isolator locations. Isolators shall be located so they are accessible for adjustment at any time during the life of the installation without interfering with the integrity of the roof.
6. All directional neoprene snubber bushings shall be a minimum of 1/4"(6mm) thick.
7. Steel springs shall be laterally stable and rest on 1/4"(6mm) thick neoprene acoustical pads.
8. Hardware must be plated and the springs provided with a rust resistant finish.



9. The curbs waterproofing shall consist of a continuous galvanized flexible counter flashing nailed over the lower curb's waterproofing and joined at the corners by EPDM bellows.
10. All spring locations shall have access ports with removable waterproof covers. Lower curbs shall have provision for 2"(50mm) of insulation.
11. Curb shall be Mason Industries - Type RSC or approved equal.

C. Vibration Isolation Bases – Type R

1. Curb mounted rooftop equipment shall be mounted on vibration isolation bases that fit over the roof curb and under the isolated equipment.
2. The extruded aluminum top member shall overlap the bottom to provide water runoff independent of the seal. Aluminum members shall house electro galvanized or powder coated springs selected for 0.75"(20mm) minimum deflection.
3. Travel to solid shall be 1.5"(40mm) minimum.
4. Spring diameters shall be no less than 0.8 of the spring height at rated load. Wind resistance shall be provided by means of resilient snubbers in the corners with a minimum clearance of 1/4"(6mm) so as not to interfere with the spring action except in high winds.
5. Manufacturer's self adhering closed cell sponge gasketing must be used both above and below the base and a flexible EPDM duct like connection shall seal the outside perimeter.
6. Foam or other sliding or shear seals are unacceptable in lieu of the EPDM ductlike closure.
7. Submittals shall include spring deflections, spring diameters, compressed spring height and solid spring height as well as seal and wind resistance details.
8. Curb mounted bases shall be Mason Industries - Type CMAB or approved equal.

2.11 FLEXIBLE HOSES

A. Flexible Stainless Steel Hoses – Type T:

1. Flexible stainless steel hose shall have stainless steel braid and carbon steel fittings. Sizes 3" and larger shall be flanged. Smaller sizes may have male nipples. Minimum lengths shall be as tabulated below:

Flanged		
3" x 12"	6" x 18"	12" x 24"
4" x 12"	8" x 18"	14" x 30"
5" x 18"	10" x 18"	16" x 18"
Male Nipples		
1/2" x 12"	1-1/4" x 12"	2" x 12"
3/4" x 12"	1-1/2" x 12"	2-1/2" x 18"
1" x 12"		

2. At equipment, hoses shall be installed on the equipment side of the shut off valves horizontal and parallel to the equipment shafts wherever possible.
3. Hoses shall be Mason Industries - Type FFL.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.
- C. All vibration isolators must be installed in strict accordance with the manufacturers written instructions and all certified submittal data.
- D. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping or duct work resulting in stresses or misalignment.
- E. No rigid connections between equipment and the building structure shall be made that degrades the noise and vibration control system herein specified.
- F. The contractor shall not install any equipment, piping, duct or conduit which makes rigid connections with the building unless isolation is not specified. "Building" includes, but is not limited to, slabs, beams, columns, studs and walls.
- G. Coordinate work with other trades to avoid rigid contact with the building.
- H. Any conflicts with other trades which will result in rigid contact with equipment or piping due to inadequate space or other unforeseen conditions should be brought to the architects/engineers attention prior to installation. Corrective work necessitated by conflicts after installation shall be at the responsible contractor's expense.
- I. Bring to the architects/engineers attention any discrepancies between the specifications and the field conditions or changes required due to specific equipment selection, prior to installation. Corrective work necessitated by discrepancies after installation shall be at the responsible contractor's expense.
- J. Correct, at no additional cost, all installations which are deemed defective in workmanship and materials at the contractor's expense.
- K. Where piping passes through walls, floors or ceilings the vibration isolation manufacturer shall provide Type G seals.
- L. Locate isolation hangers as near to the overhead support structure as possible.
- M. Air handling equipment and centrifugal fans shall be protected against excessive displacement which results from high air thrust when thrust forces exceed 10% of the equipment weight. Horizontal thrust restraints shall be Type J restraints.
- N. Rooftop equipment isolators must be bolted to the equipment and structure. Mountings must be designed to resist 100m/h wind loads.

### 3.3 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Division 03 Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

### 3.4 INSPECTION

- A. On completion of installation of all vibration isolation devices herein specified, the local representative of the isolation materials manufacturer(s) shall inspect the completed system and report in writing any installation errors, improperly selected isolation devices, or other faults that could affect the performance of the system. Contractor shall submit a report to the Architect, including the manufacturer's representative's final report, indicating all isolation reported as properly installed or requiring correction, and include a report by the Contractor on steps taken to properly complete the isolation work.

### PART 4 – ISOLATOR APPLICATION SCHEDULE

ISOLATION SELECTION GUIDE			EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION ARRANGEMENT					
			MOUNTED			SUSPENDED		
EQUIPMENT	SIZE	LOCATION	BASE TYPE	ISOLAT OR TYPE	DEFL (in.)	BASE TYPE	ISOLATOR TYPE	DEFL (in.)
Air Handlers Without Internal Isolated Fan Sections Below – 300 rpm (or VFD) 301 – 450 rpm 451 – 600 rpm 601 – 750 rpm 751 – 850 rpm 851 - greater		Above Grade	Per Mfr.	E		Per Mfr.	J,K	
					4.0			4.25
					3.5			3.75
					3.0			3.25
					2.0			2.25
					1.5			1.75
					1.0			1.25
Air Handlers <b>WITH</b> Internal Isolated Fans		Above Grade	Per Mfr.	A	0.25		D	0.5
Air Handlers		ON GRADE	Per Mfr.	A	0.25	----	----	----
Condensate Pumps		All	Per Mfr.	A	0.10	----	----	----
Air-Cooled Condenser		All	Per Mfr.	F	2.0	----	----	----
PUMPS <sup>(3)</sup> - Mechanical and Domestic Water	5HP +	All	P	F <sup>(1),(2)</sup>	2.0	Per Mfr.	J,K	2.25
	< 5HP		P	B	0.5		D	0.5
	VFD		P	F <sup>(1),(2)</sup>	4.0		J,K	4.25
Cooling Towers Below – 300 rpm (or VFD) 301 – 450 rpm 451 – 600 rpm 601 – 750 rpm 751 – 850 rpm		Above Grade	Per Mfr.	F		----	----	----
					4.0			
					3.5			
					3.0			
					2.0			
					1.5			
851 - greater			1.0					
Boilers		Above Grade	Per Mfr.	F	1.0	----	----	----
Chillers – Absorption, Centrifugal, Rotary/Screw		Above Grade	Per Mfr.	F <sup>(1)</sup>	1.0	----	----	----
Fans – Cabinet, Centrifugal,				F <sup>(1)</sup>		Per	J,K	

In-Line Centrif.					Mfr.		
Below – 300 rpm (or VFD)		P		4.0			4.25
301 – 450 rpm		O		3.5			3.75
451 – 600 rpm		O		3.0			3.25
601 – 750 rpm		O		2.0			2.25
751 – 850 rpm		O		1.5			1.75
851 - greater		O		1.0			1.25
Curb Mounted Roof Equip.	Roof	O	Q,R	Per fan RPM above	----	----	----
Vertical Pipe Riser	All		H	0.75		H,I	0.75
Horizontal Piping	ALL		E			I,J,K	

**Notes for Isolation Selection Guide**

- (1) Double Layer neoprene isolation pads to be included within spring assembly cup.
- (2) Electrical Connections to be made with minimum 18" flexible conduit.
- (3) In-Line Pumps to be mounted per manufacturer's recommendations.

END OF SECTION 230548.13

SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Pipe labels.
  - 4. Duct labels.
  - 5. Stencils.
  - 6. Valve tags.
  - 7. Warning tags.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets.
5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: White.
3. Background Color: Black.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: White.
- C. Background Color: Red.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

## 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

## 2.4 DUCT LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Black.
- C. Background Color: White.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, duct size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

## 2.5 STENCILS

- A. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; minimum letter height of 1-1/4 inches for ducts; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.
  - 1. Stencil Material: Aluminum.

2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
3. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.6 VALVE TAGS

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
  1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
  1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.7 WARNING TAGS

- A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
  1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
  2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
  3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
  4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

### 3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  1. Near each valve and control device.
  2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.



3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

B. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

1. Chilled Water Piping:
  - a. Background Color: Green.
  - b. Letter Color: White.
2. Hot Water Piping:
  - a. Background Color: Green.
  - b. Letter Color: White.
3. Refrigerant Piping:
  - a. Background Color: Green.
  - b. Letter Color: White.
4. Cold Condensate drain piping:
  - a. Background Color: Green.
  - b. Letter Color: White.
5. Cold water makeup piping:
  - a. Background Color: Green.
  - b. Letter Color: White.
6. Low Pressure Steam Piping:
  - a. Background Color: Purple.
  - b. Letter Color White.
7. Steam Condensate Piping:
  - a. Background Color: Purple.
  - b. Letter Color White.

3.4 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Install plastic-laminated duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:

1. Blue: For cold-air supply ducts.
2. Yellow: For hot-air supply ducts.
3. Green: For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts.
4. ASME A13.1 Colors and Designs: For hazardous material exhaust:
  - a. Orange background with black lettering.

- B. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

### 3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
  - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
    - a. Chilled Water: 2 inches, round.
    - b. Condenser Water: 2 inches.
    - c. Refrigerant: 2 inches, round.
    - d. Heating Water: 2 inches, round.
  - 2. Valve-Tag Color:
    - a. Chilled Water: Natural brass.
    - b. Condenser Water: Natural brass.
    - c. Refrigerant: Natural brass.
    - d. Heating Water: Natural brass.
  - 3. Letter Color:
    - a. Chilled Water: Black.
    - b. Condenser Water: Black.
    - c. Refrigerant: Black.
    - d. Hot Water: Black.

### 3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 230553

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Balancing Air Systems.
    - a. Constant-volume air systems.
  - 2. Balancing Water Systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- E. TAB Specialist: An entity engaged to perform TAB Work.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 10 business days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB contractor and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 10 business days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 30 business days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. Certified TAB reports.
- E. Sample report forms.
- F. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
  - 1. Instrument type and make.
  - 2. Serial number.
  - 3. Application.
  - 4. Dates of use.
  - 5. Dates of calibration.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Contractor Qualifications:
  - 1. Engage a TAB entity certified by AABC or as approved by the Engineer before the commencement of work.
    - a. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB contractor and certified by AABC.
    - b. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB contractor and who is certified by AABC as a TAB technician.
  - 2. TAB Contractor shall be an independent company not associated with the HVAC contractor.
  - 3. TAB Contractor must submit the following project references, subject to Engineer's review and approval/rejection before commencement of work:
    - a. 5 projects with water cooled chillers and variable primary flow chilled water pumping.
    - b. 5 projects with cooling towers and constant flow condenser water pumping.
    - c. 5 projects with condensing boilers and variable primary flow hot water pumping.
- B. TAB Conference: Meet with Commissioning Authority on approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Require the participation of the TAB field supervisor and technicians. Provide seven days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.
  - 1. Agenda Items:
    - a. The Contract Documents examination report.
    - b. The TAB plan.
    - c. Coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
    - d. Coordination of documentation and communication flow.
- C. Certify TAB field data reports and perform the following:
  - 1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
  - 2. Certify that the TAB team complied with the approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.
- D. TAB Report Forms: Use standard TAB contractor's forms approved by Engineer and Commissioning Authority.
- E. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: As described in ASHRAE 111, Section 5, "Instrumentation."
- F. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
- G. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Notice: Provide five business days' advance notice for each test. Include scheduled test dates and times.

- B. Perform TAB after leakage and pressure tests on air and water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine systems for installed balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they meet the leakage class of connected ducts as specified in Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts" and are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
- F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
  - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
  - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and filters and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens are replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
- L. Examine three-way valves for proper installation for their intended function of diverting or mixing fluid flows.

- M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- P. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.
- B. Complete system-readiness checks and prepare reports. Verify the following:
  - 1. Permanent electrical-power wiring is complete.
  - 2. Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.
  - 3. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
  - 4. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
  - 5. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
  - 6. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
  - 7. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
  - 8. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

### 3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in ASHRAE 111 or SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" and in this Section.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
  - 1. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
  - 2. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Division 23 Section "Duct Insulation," Division 23 Section "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Division 23 Section "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

### 3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.

- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

### 3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
  - 1. Measure total airflow.
    - a. Where sufficient space in ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow.
  - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows to determine actual static pressure:
    - a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practical and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
    - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    - c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from the flexible connection, and downstream from duct restrictions.
    - d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.
  - 3. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.
    - a. Report the cleanliness status of filters and the time static pressures are measured.
  - 4. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices, such as sound traps, heat-recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
  - 5. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
  - 6. Obtain approval from Engineer for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
  - 7. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor

amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.

- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
  - 1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
    - a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.
  - 2. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper, and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
  - 3. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
- C. Measure air outlets and inlets without making adjustments.
  - 1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.
- D. Adjust air outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using branch volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.
  - 1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
  - 2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

### 3.6 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
  - 1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
  - 2. Motor horsepower rating.
  - 3. Motor rpm.
  - 4. Efficiency rating.
  - 5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
  - 6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
  - 7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.

### 3.7 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

- A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each water coil:
  - 1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
  - 2. Water flow rate.
  - 3. Water pressure drop.
  - 4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  - 5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
  - 6. Airflow.
  - 7. Air pressure drop.



B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each steam coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Airflow.
3. Air pressure drop.
4. Inlet steam pressure.

### 3.8 TOLERANCES

A. Set HVAC system's air flow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:

1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 5 percent.
2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 5 percent.
3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 2 percent.
4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 2 percent.

### 3.9 REPORTING

A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems' balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems' balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.

B. Status Reports: Prepare weekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

### 3.10 FINAL REPORT

A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.

1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.

B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:

1. Pump curves.
2. Fan curves.
3. Manufacturers' test data.
4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and product data.

C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:

1. Title page.
2. Name and address of the TAB contractor.
3. Project name.
4. Project location.
5. Architect's name and address.

6. Engineer's name and address.
  7. Contractor's name and address.
  8. Report date.
  9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
  10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
  11. Summary of contents including the following:
    - a. Indicated versus final performance.
    - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
  12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
  13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
  14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
  15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
    - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    - b. Conditions of filters.
    - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
    - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
    - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
  2. Water and steam flow rates.
  3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
  4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
  5. Terminal units.
  6. Balancing stations.
  7. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
    - a. Unit identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.
    - d. Model number and unit size.
    - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    - f. Unit arrangement and class.
    - g. Discharge arrangement.
    - h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    - i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
    - j. Number, make, and size of belts.
    - k. Number, type, and size of filters.
  2. Motor Data:

- a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
- b. Horsepower and rpm.
- c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
- d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
- e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Total air flow rate in cfm.
- b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
- c. Fan rpm.
- d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
- e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- i. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
- j. Return airflow in cfm.
- k. Outdoor-air damper position.
- l. Return-air damper position.
- m. Vortex damper position.

F. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:

1. Fan Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Make and type.
- d. Model number and size.
- e. Manufacturer's serial number.
- f. Arrangement and class.
- g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.

2. Motor Data:

- a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
- b. Horsepower and rpm.
- c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
- d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
- e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
- g. Number, make, and size of belts.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
- c. Fan rpm.
- d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
- e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.

- G. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:

1. Report Data:
  - a. System and air-handling-unit number.
  - b. Location and zone.
  - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
  - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
  - e. Duct size in inches.
  - f. Duct area in sq. ft..
  - g. Indicated air flow rate in cfm.
  - h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
  - i. Actual air flow rate in cfm.
  - j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
  - k. Barometric pressure in psig.

- H. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:
  - a. Instrument type and make.
  - b. Serial number.
  - c. Application.
  - d. Dates of use.
  - e. Dates of calibration.

### 3.11 INSPECTIONS

- A. Initial Inspection:

1. After testing and balancing are complete, operate each system and randomly check measurements to verify that the system is operating according to the final test and balance readings documented in the final report.
2. Check the following for each system:
  - a. Measure airflow of at least 10 percent of air outlets.
  - b. Measure water flow of at least 5 percent of terminals.
  - c. Measure room temperature at each thermostat/temperature sensor. Compare the reading to the set point.
  - d. Verify that balancing devices are marked with final balance position.
  - e. Note deviations from the Contract Documents in the final report.

- B. Final Inspection:

1. After initial inspection is complete and documentation by random checks verifies that testing and balancing are complete and accurately documented in the final report, request that a final inspection be made by Commissioning Authority.
2. The TAB contractor's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Commissioning Authority.
3. Commissioning Authority shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.

4. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
5. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.

C. TAB Work will be considered defective if it does not pass final inspections. If TAB Work fails, proceed as follows:

1. Recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB contractor to complete TAB Work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB contractor's final payment.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.12 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 230593

SECTION 230713 - DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:

1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
5. Indoor, concealed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
6. Indoor, exposed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
7. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
8. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
9. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
10. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Division 23 Section "HVAC Equipment Insulation."
2. Division 23 Section "HVAC Piping Insulation."
3. Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

- C. References:

1. ASTM International (ASTM)
2. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. (ASHRAE)
3. North American Insulation Manufacturers Association (NAIMA)
4. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)
5. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association, Inc. (SMACNA)
6. Underwriter's Laboratories (UL)
7. Underwriter's Laboratories Environment and UL Environment/GREENGUARD.
8. UL 2824 – GREENGUARD Certification Program Method for Measuring Microbial Resistance From Various Sources Using Static Environmental Chambers.

- B. Definitions:

1. Thermal Conductivity (k value): Btu•in./hr.•ft<sup>2</sup>•°F
2. UL Environment and UL Environment GREENGUARD provides independent, third-party, Indoor Air Quality (IAQ) certification of products for emissions of respirable particles and Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC's), including formaldehyde and other specific product-related pollutants. Certification is based upon criteria used by EPA, OSHA and WHO.
3. IAQ: Indoor Air Quality
4. EPA: Environmental Protection Agency
5. WHO: World Health Organization
6. ASJ+: All Service Jacket composed of aluminum foil reinforced with glass scrim bonded to a kraft paper interleaving with an outer film layer leaving no paper exposed.
7. ASJ: All Service Jacket

8. SSL+: Self-sealing Advanced Closure System
9. SSL: Self-Sealing Lap
10. FSK: Foil-Scrim-Kraft; jacketing
11. PSK: Poly-Scrim-Kraft; jacketing
12. PVC: Polyvinyl Chloride
13. FRP: Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic
14. ECOSE® Technology: a binder system based on rapidly renewable bio-based materials rather than petroleum-based chemicals commonly used in other fiber glass insulation products. ECOSE Technology reduces our binder embodied energy by up to 70% and does not contain phenol, formaldehyde, acrylics or artificial colors.
15. UL Environment GOLD Certification: (Formerly known as GREENGUARD CHILDREN & SCHOOLS Certification) offers stricter certification criteria, considers safety factors to account for sensitive individuals (such as children and the elderly), and ensures that a product is acceptable for use in environments such as schools and healthcare facilities. It is referenced by both The Collaborative for High Performance Schools (CHPS) and the Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED) Building Rating Systems.
16. UL Environment Validated- Formaldehyde Free Verification Requirements: for a product to be verified as formaldehyde free, product samples must have a measured emission factor of less than or equal to 5 µg/m<sup>2</sup> h at 24 elapsed hours or 3 µg/m<sup>2</sup> h at 336 elapsed hours. An emission factor of 5 µg/m<sup>2</sup> h, corresponds to a measured chamber concentration of 2.5 µg/m<sup>3</sup> for a typical building ratio of 0.5 m<sup>2</sup>/m<sup>3</sup>. This chamber concentration is comparable to, or below typical outdoor air concentrations. This demonstrates that the formaldehyde exposure from products labeled as formaldehyde free will not contribute to airborne formaldehyde concentrations at greater levels than those found in the natural outdoor environment.
17. Declare and The Living Building Challenge – The Living Building Challenge is a philosophy, advocacy tool and certification program that addresses development at all scales. The purpose of The Living Building Challenge is to define the most advanced measure of sustainability in the built environment today and acts to diminish the gap between current limits and ideal solutions. Declare supports The Living Building Challenge by providing a transparent materials database that project teams can select from to meet Imperative 11.
18. Imperative 11, Red List – requires that manufacturers disclose the ingredients in their products to insure that they are free of Red List chemicals and materials. The Red List represents the “worst in class” materials, chemicals and elements known to pose serious risks to human health and the greater ecosystem.
19. Underwriter’s Laboratories Environment and UL Environment/GREENGUARD: offers independent green claims validation, product assessment and certification.  
UL Environment and UL Environment GREENGUARD provides third-party credibility for sustainable products.
20. UL Environment Claims Validation (ECV): service and label tests a manufacturer’s product and validates that the environmental claims they make in their marketing and packaging materials are factual. This Environmental Claims Validation (ECV) service will allow manufacturers to verify that their products contain a quantifiable amount of recycled content and, as such, help limit raw material extraction and reduce landfill waste. Furthermore, UL ECV can validate that a product is Formaldehyde Free. It also will enable products to qualify for LEED® points under Pilot Credit 43: MR – Certified Products.
21. EUCEB: exonerated fiber from a health and safety standpoint by the European Certification Board process.
22. Recycled content – post-consumer: materials such as bottled glass collected at curbside or other collection sites after consumer use and used in the manufacturing process to create a new product rather than being placed in a landfill or incinerated.
23. Recycled content – pre-consumer (aka post-industrial): materials used or created from one manufacturing process which are collected as scrap and placed back into another manufacturing process rather than being placed in a landfill or incinerated.

24. Polybrominated diphenyl ethers (PBDE) such as Penta-BDE, Octa-BDE or Deca-BDE fire retardants:
25. UL Classified: UL has tested and evaluated samples of the product with respect to certain properties of the product. UL Classifies products to:
  - a. Applicable UL requirements
  - b. Standards for safety
  - c. Standards of other National and International organizations
26. EPD: Environmental Product Declaration. A third party verified document that reports environmental data of products based on the Life Cycle Assessment (LCA) and other relevant information, and in accordance with the International Standard ISO 14025 (Type III Environmental Declarations).

## 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).
- B. EPD Submittals: As certified by UL Environment.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
  3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
  4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

## 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to UL 723 **or** ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.



2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
3. Supply fiber glass insulation products that are manufactured using a minimum of 50% "post-consumer" recycled material. Request 3<sup>rd</sup> party verification such as ULE.
4. Supply fiber glass insulation products that are manufactured using a bio-based binder rather than non-renewable petroleum-based chemicals and with a binder that does not contain phenol, formaldehyde, or acrylics; whenever possible. Request 3<sup>rd</sup> party verification such as ULE.
5. Supply fiber glass insulation products that have achieved UL GOLD Certification and are verified formaldehyde free by UL Environment Validated or UL GREENGUARD; whenever possible. Request 3<sup>rd</sup> party verification such as ULE.
6. Supply fiber glass insulation products that are Living Building Challenge – Declare, Red List free whenever possible.
7. Products shall contain no polybrominated diphenyl ethers (PBDE) such as Penta-BDE, Octa-BDE or Deca-BDE fire retardants; whenever available.
8. WET: Contractor shall take precaution to protect insulation materials from moisture exposure or physical damage. Any fiber glass insulation that becomes wet or damaged shall be replaced at no additional cost.
  - a. HVAC duct work insulation used in the air stream must be discarded if exposed to liquid water.
  - b. Pipe Insulation with factory applied ASJ+ facing having been installed per manufacturer's installation recommendation which may experience intermittent exposure to liquid water after installation may be exempted from removal and replacement requirements.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

#### 1.7 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain formaldehyde, asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds, whenever possible.
- C. Insulation materials applied to carbon steel shall be Mass Load Corrosion Rate (MLCR) tested per ASTM C 1617.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Products shall contain no polybrominated diphenyl ethers (PBDE) such as Penta-BDE, Octa-BDE or Deca-BDE fire retardants; whenever available.
- F. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- G. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Types I, II and III, ASTM C 1136 Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I with factory-applied FSK jacket. UL/ULC Classified FSK, FHC 25/50 per ASTM E 84 for PSK only. UL GREENGUARD Gold Certified and UL Environment Validated to be formaldehyde free. Product shall contain no polybrominated diphenyl ethers (PBDE) such as Penta-BDE, Octa-BDE or Deca-BDE. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Knauf Insulation; Atmosphere Duct Wrap with ECOSE Technology.
    - b. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
    - c. Johns Manville; Microlite.
    - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
    - e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.
- H. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board with ECOSE Technology.
    - b. CertainTeed Corp.; Commercial Board.
    - c. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.
    - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Board.
    - e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.

## 2.2 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

- A. Fire-Rated Board: Structural-grade, press-molded, xonolite calcium silicate, fireproofing board suitable for operating temperatures up to 1700 deg F. Comply with ASTM C 656, Type II, Grade 6. Tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- a. Johns Manville; Super Firetemp M.
- B. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- a. 3M; Fire Barrier Wrap Products.
- b. Unifrax Corporation; FyreWrap.
- c. CertainTeed Corp.; FlameChek
- d. Johns Manville; Firetemp Wrap.
- e. Nelson Fire Stop Products; Nelson FSB Flameshield Blanket.
- f. Thermal Ceramics; FireMaster Duct Wrap
2. Provide products that are listed by at least one the following
- a. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL), in "Fire Resistance Directory" category HNLJ, HNMF or XHEZ as appropriate.
- b. Intertek Testing Services (ITS) (formerly Omega Point Laboratories (OPL)), in "Intertek Directory of Listed Products."
- c. International Code Council, Evaluation Services (ICC-ES). See report ESR-1255.
- d. Any other qualified independent testing and inspection agency that conducts periodic follow-up inspections.
3. Fire-resistant Enclosure Listings:
- a. Commercial Cooking Exhaust Duct (Grease) Duct:  
Intertek 3MU/FRD 120-18, 3MU/FRD 120-19  
ICC-ES ESR-1255
- b. Chemical Fume Duct:  
Intertek 3MU/FRD 120-10, 3MU/FRD 120-11
- c. Ventilation Duct:  
Intertek 3MU/DI 60-01, 3MU/DI 120-01  
UL: HNLJ.V-27
4. Firestop Listings: The following is only a partial list of ASTM E 814 tested through-penetration designs. Consult with the manufacturer for more information.
- a. UL: W-L-7180, W-J-7104, C-AJ-7096, F-C-7054.
- b. Intertek (formerly Omega Point Laboratories): Note: Intertek Design Listings for fire-resistant enclosures contain the information about firestopping the ducts where they penetrate a fire rated assembly; they are stand-alone listings which do not require an additional firestop listing.
5. Fire Rating (Ventilation Air Duct): All duct wraps must be One (1) hour rated, but in no case less than the rating of any time-rated assemblies which are penetrated.
6. Fire Rating (Ventilation Air Duct): All duct wraps must be Two (2) hour rated, but in no case less than the rating of any time-rated assemblies which are penetrated.

7. Fire Rating (Grease Duct): All duct wraps must be compliant to all five (5) sections of ASTM E 2336. All duct wraps must be a minimum one (1) hour rated, but in no case less than the rating of any time-rated assemblies which are penetrated.
8. Fire Rating (Plenum Rated): All plenum wraps must be compliant to NFPA 262 (electrical cables) and/or UL 1887 (non-metallic pipe).
9. Fire Rated Duct Wrap Insulation:
  - a. 3M Fire Barrier Duct Wrap 615+: Lightweight, non-asbestos, high temperature, bio-soluble, calcium-magnesium-silicate (CMS) non-woven blanket, encapsulated in a scrim-reinforced foil, blanket thickness of 1.5 inches (38 mm) for ventilation and grease duct applications.
    - i. Color: White blanket, aluminum foil encapsulated.
    - ii. Weight: 0.9 psf (4.38 kg/m<sup>2</sup>).
    - iii. Density: 6 pcf nominal.
    - iv. Thermal Conductivity (k-value) at 500 Degrees F (260 Degrees C) (ASTM C411, ASTM C518): 0.48 Btu/(ft<sup>2</sup> × h × F) (0.07 W/(m × K)).
    - v. R-Value per ASTM C 518 at ambient (77 F/ 25 C): at least 6.3 (F-ft<sup>2</sup>-hr / Btu)
    - vi. Service range up to 2000°F (1093°C)
    - vii. Fire Resistance: For use in 2 hour fire resistant systems.
    - viii. Product complies with ASTM E 2336 test standard.
    - ix. Product complies with ISO 6944 test standard.
    - x. Through-penetration per ASTM E 814 (UL 1479)
    - xi. Flame and smoke spread index of <25/<50
    - xii. Non-combustible per ASTM E 136
  - b. 3M Fire Barrier Plenum Wrap 5A+: Lightweight, non-asbestos, high temperature, bio-soluble, calcium-magnesium-silicate (CMS) non-woven blanket, encapsulated in a scrim-reinforced foil, blanket thickness of 0.5 inches (13 mm) for protection of items within a plenum area.
    - i. Color: White blanket, aluminum foil encapsulated.
    - ii. Weight: 0.25 psf (1.22 kg/m<sup>2</sup>).
    - iii. Density: 6 pcf nominal.
    - iv. Thermal Conductivity (k-value) at 500 Degrees F (260 Degrees C) (ASTM C411, ASTM C518): 0.48 Btu/(ft<sup>2</sup> × h × F) (0.07 W/(m × K)).
    - v. Service range up to 2000°F (1093°C)
    - vi. Plenum Rating (electrical cables): Product complies with NFPA 262 (UL 910).
    - vii. Plenum Rating (non-metallic pipe): Product complies with UL 1887.
    - viii. Flame and smoke spread index of <25/<50
    - ix. Non-combustible per ASTM E 136.

Through-penetration firestop materials:

- i. Packing materials: Pieces of 3M Fire Barrier Duct Wrap, or 4 pcf mineral wool.
- ii. Sealants: 3M Fire Barrier Water Tight Sealant 1000 NS: non-slump silicone sealant, 1003 SL self-leveling silicone sealant, 3M Fire Barrier Sealant 2000+: non-slump silicone sealant, or CP 25WB+: high-performance, intumescent water-based sealant, as stated in firestop Design Listing.

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-30.
  - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 501.
  - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-35.
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-10.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Encacel.
  - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 570.
  - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 60-95/60-96.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
  - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
  - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
  - e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2.Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
  - b. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.
3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
5. Color: White.

## 2.6 SEALANTS

### A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
  - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
  - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- ### A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

## 2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- ### A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. in. for covering ducts.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Chil-Glas No. 5.
- ### B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for ducts.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Mast-A-Fab.
- b. Vimasco Corporation; Elastafab 894.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Alpha Associates, Inc.; Alpha-Maritex 84215 and 84217/9485RW, Luben 59.

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil- thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
  - a. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Alumaguard 60.

2.11 TAPES

- A. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
  - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
  - c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
  - d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

- B. Duct Wrap Tape:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. 3M; Fire Barrier Wrap Products.
  - b. Unifrax Corporation; FyreWrap.
  - c. CertainTeed Corp.; FlameChek
  - d. Johns Manville; Firetemp Wrap.
  - e. Nelson Fire Stop Products; Nelson FSB Flameshield Blanket.
  - f. Thermal Ceramics; FireMaster Duct Wrap
2. High performance filament tape, 3M No. 898 1 inch (25 mm) wide.



3. 3M FSK Facing Tape 3320 with aluminum foil, fiberglass scrim, kraft paper backing: nominal 3 inches (76 mm) or 4 inches (102 mm) wide (for sealing cut blanket edges and seams), 3M No. 3320.

## 2.12 SECUREMENTS

### A. Bands:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
  - b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.
2. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal.
3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

### B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper or zinc coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CWP-1.
    - 2) GEMCO; CD.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; CD.
    - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; TPA, TPC, and TPS.
2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper or zinc coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CHP-1.
    - 2) GEMCO; Cupped Head Weld Pin.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Cupped Head.
    - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; CHP.
3. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; RC-150.
    - 2) GEMCO; R-150.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.
    - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; Speed Clips.
  - b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- D. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. C & F Wire.

## 2.13 CORNER ANGLES

- A. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- A. Locate insulation and cover seams in the least visible location. All surface finishes shall be extended in such a manner as to protect all raw edges, ends and surfaces of insulation.
- B. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- C. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- D. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- E. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

- F. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- G. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- I. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Non self-sealing systems:
    - a. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
    - b. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
    - c. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
      - 1) For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
    - d. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
    - e. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
  - 2. Self-sealing systems (ASJ+/SSL+ and ASJ/SSL):
    - a. Longitudinal jacketing lap joints for pipe insulation installed on piping systems with operating temperatures below ambient shall be vapor sealed with factory-applied pressure sensitive adhesive, vapor retarder self-sealing lap. For proper sealing, lap joints shall be sealed with reasonable pressure being applied with a plastic squeegee. All circumferential joints shall be vapor sealed with factory furnished matching, pressure sensitive butt strips installed with reasonable pressure being applied with a plastic squeegee. Additionally, raw ends of pipe insulation sections shall be coated with vapor retarder mastic at 12 foot intervals on straight piping and on either side of all fittings, flanges or valves. Vapor retarder mastic shall completely coat the ends of the pipe insulation and extend onto the bore of the pipe insulation and onto the jacketing a minimum of 2".
- J. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- K. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- L. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.

2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
  2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Install Duct Wrap using manufacturer's stretch-out tables to obtain specified R-value using a maximum compression of 25%.
  2. Minimum Installed R-value shall comply with the 2010 ASHRAE 90.1 and the 2009 International Energy Conservation Code, whichever is more stringent.
  3. Firmly butt all joints.
  4. The longitudinal seam of the vapor retarder must be overlapped a minimum of 2 inches. A 2-inch tab is provided on Knauf Friendly Feel® Duct Wrap for the circumferential seam. Secure all seams and overlaps using outward clinch staples approximately 6" on center. It is neither necessary nor desirable to adhere duct wrap to the duct surfaces with adhesive.
  5. Where vapor retarder performance is required, all penetrations and damage to the facing shall be repaired using pressure-sensitive tape matching the facing, or mastic prior to system startup. Pressure-sensitive tapes shall be a minimum 3 inches wide and shall be applied with moving pressure using a squeegee or other appropriate sealing tool. Closure shall have a 25/50 Flame Spread/Smoke Developed Rating per UL 723.

6. Duct Wrap shall be additionally secured to the bottom of rectangular ductwork over 24 inches wide using mechanical fasteners on 18-inch centers. Care should be exercised to avoid over-compression of the insulation during installation. Unfaced Duct Wrap shall be overlapped a minimum of 2 inches and fastened using 4-inch to 6-inch nails or skewers spaced 4 inches apart, or secured with a wire/banding system. Care should be exercised to avoid damage to the Duct Wrap.
  7. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
    - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
  8. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
  9. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
  10. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.
- B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply insulation to the equipment surface with joints firmly butted and as close as possible to the equipment surface. Insulation shall be secured as required with mechanical fasteners or banding material. Fasteners shall be located a maximum of 3" from each edge and spaced no greater than 12" on center.
  2. For below ambient systems, vapor retarder jacketing shall overlap a minimum of 2" at all seams and be sealed with appropriate pressure-sensitive tape or mastic. All penetrations and facing damage shall be covered with a minimum 2" overlap of tape or mastic.
  3. Equipment insulation exposed to the elements shall be finished with minimum 0.030-inch thick, outdoor, weather resistant PVC; laminated self-adhesive water based weatherproof mastic and glass cloth; or metal. All longitudinal joints shall be positioned so as to shed water; with a minimum 3" overlap, and completely weather sealed. Laminated systems shall be applied per manufacturer's recommendations.
  4. For high-temperature applications, insulation may either be mounted in direct contact with the hot surface, in H-bar configuration, or pre-fabricated panel systems mounted away from the operating surface. When installing H-Bar or panel systems which are mounted away from the operating surface, convection stops shall be installed at a maximum of 8 feet along the vertical surfaces. Insulation may be applied over welded pins or studs up to 1/2" in diameter. Insulation shall be held in place using mesh reinforcement or steel bands. Insulation shall not be compressed beyond a maximum of 1/8 inch at any point. Pins and studs shall be spaced a maximum of 4" from each edge and no greater than 16" on center. For temperatures above 500°F (260°C) and design thicknesses over 3", insulation shall be applied using double-layer with staggered joints. Finish

- shall be minimum 0.020-inch thick PVC jacketing, insulating cement with canvas, glass cloth with mastic, or metal as specified on the drawings.
5. For Equipment insulation exposed in mechanical rooms or subject to mechanical abuse, finish with minimum 0.020 inch thick PVC Jacketing or metal or laminated self-adhesive water and weather seals. All other insulation shall be finished as appropriate for the location and service or as specified on the drawings.
  6. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
    - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
  7. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
  8. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.
  9. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
  10. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
    - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face

and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.

11. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
12. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

### 3.2 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
  1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
  2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- thick coats of lagging adhesive.
  3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
  1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
  2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
  3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.
  5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

### 3.3 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.
- B. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.
- C. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- D. Fire Rated Duct Wrap Insulation (1 and 2 HR. Enclosures)
  1. Kitchen Exhaust Grease Ducts: Install fire-resistive duct wrap insulation in direct contact with ductwork to Manufacturer's instructions and referenced standards, to applicable Intertek design numbers, including listed penetration firestop system.
    - i. For kitchen exhaust grease ducts, regardless of fire rating, provide two layers of 3M Fire Barrier Duct Wrap 615+ per layer with 3 inch (76mm) overlaps.
  2. Kitchen Exhaust Ductwork: Inner layer material perimeter and longitudinal joints may either be tightly butted or minimum 3 inch (76 mm) overlaps. Outer layer overlap requirements are minimum 3 inch (76 mm) perimeter and longitudinal overlaps. If required, tape seams using minimum 3 inch (76 mm) wide aluminium foil adhesive tape.
  3. Ventilation Air Ducts (1 and 2 hr. Enclosure): Install fire-resistive duct wrap insulation in direct contact with ductwork to Manufacturer's instructions and referenced standards, including Listed penetration firestop system.

- i. Apply fire-resistive duct wrap insulation continuously to ductwork as indicated on Drawings. For ventilation air ducts, provide one layer of 3M Fire Barrier Duct Wrap 615+ with 3 inch (76 mm) overlaps for 1 and 2 hour applications. Observe requirements for additional duct wrap material required at firestop, when required.
4. Ventilation Ductwork (1 and 2 hr. applications): overlap perimeter and longitudinal joints 3 inches (76 mm). If required, tape seams using minimum 3 inch (76 mm) wide aluminium foil adhesive tape.
5. Filament tape may be used as a temporary securing measure during application of duct wrap. Finish installation using 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide by 0.015 inch (0.4 mm) steel banding on exterior layer of wrap. Spacing 10.5 inches (267 mm) on center and within 1.5 inches (39 mm) of all overlapped seams. Consult individual listings for approved banding type.
6. Duct Widths Greater than 24 Inches (610 mm): Weld insulation pins to bottom of horizontal ducts on a 12 inch (305 mm) by 10.5 inch (267 mm) maximum grid spacing. Welded insulation pins to one of the wider sides of all vertical ducts on a 12 inch (305 mm) by 10.5 inch (267 mm) maximum grid spacing. Impale duct wrap insulation over pins and secure with speed clips.
7. Duct Access Doors: Install duct wrap to Manufacturer's instructions and procedures.
8. Firestopping At Fire Separations:
  - ii. Firestop all wrapped ductwork penetrating fire rated concrete floors, gypsum board, block and concrete wall assemblies and gypsum board shaft wall assemblies using UL and/or Intertek firestop system Listings appropriate for the applicable duct wrap system .
  - iii. Kitchen exhaust grease ducts: Fire resistive duct wrap insulation to be continuous through wall or floor penetrations. Minimum 0.5 inch (13 mm), maximum 4.5 inch (114 mm) clearance permitted between outer layer of duct wrap insulation and edge of opening. Fill annular space between edge of opening and wrapped duct with pieces of 3M duct wrap insulation or mineral wool insulation firmly packed into opening. Compress to percentage stated and minimum depth stated in firestop listing. Recess packing material below surface on both sides of walls or top side only for floors to depth stated in firestop listing. Seal over packing material using 3M firestop sealant to depth stated in firestop listing, flush with top side of floor and both sides of wall surfaces.
  - iv. Ventilation ducts: Fire resistive insulation may pass continuously through fire rated wall or floor penetrations or may tightly butt to both sides of fire rated separations. Minimum 1 inch (25 mm), maximum 3 inch (76 mm) clearance permitted around unwrapped duct in opening or from edge of opening to outer layer of duct wrap. Consult individual Listed firestop systems for specific requirements.
    - a. Option A: Terminate wrap at fire separation. Fill space around unwrapped duct where it passes through a fire-rated wall or floor with pieces of 3M duct wrap insulation or mineral wool insulation firmly packed into opening. Compress to the percentage stated in the firestop listing to full depth of floor or wall. Recess packing on both sides of walls or top side of floor to depth stated in firestop listing. Seal over packing material using 3M Fire Barrier Sealant to depth stated in firestop listing, flush with top side of floor and both sides of wall surfaces. Tightly butt fire resistive duct wrap insulation to each side of wall or floor assembly and seal interface with a continuous bead of 3M Fire Barrier Sealant.



- b. Option B: Wrap continuous through fire separation. Fill space around continuously wrapped duct where it passes through fire rated wall or floor with pieces of 3M duct wrap insulation or mineral wool insulation firmly packed into opening and compress to the percentage stated in the firestop listing to a minimum depth of 4 inches (102 mm). Recess packing material below surface on both sides of wall or top side of floor to depth stated in firestop listing. Seal over packing material using 3M Fire Barrier Sealant to depth stated in firestop listing, flush with top side of floor and both sides of wall surfaces.
- v. Where kitchen exhaust hoods are located within a fire rated area or zone, begin application of duct wrap insulation inside fire rated area 6 inches (152 mm) from face of fire rated wall or ceiling assembly for non-combustible fire separations, and 18 inches (457 mm) from face of wall or ceiling surface inside fire rated area for combustible fire separations, or as indicated on the Drawings. Apply two layers of duct wrap continuously to ductwork through fire separation for distance indicated on the Drawings.

### 3.4 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 09 Section "Exterior Painting" and Division 09 Section "Interior Painting."
  - 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
    - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- C. Do not field paint FSK jackets.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by the Commissioning Authority, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### 3.6 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
  - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
  - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
  - 3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.

4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
5. Indoor, concealed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
6. Indoor, exposed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
7. Indoor, concealed oven and warewash exhaust.
8. Indoor, exposed oven and warewash exhaust.
9. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
10. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
11. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
12. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

B. Items Not Insulated:

1. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
2. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
3. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
4. Flexible connectors.
5. Vibration-control devices.
6. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.7 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Concealed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2-3/8 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (R-6).
- B. Concealed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2-3/8 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (R-6).
  2. No insulation required if ductwork is located in a ceiling return plenum.
- C. Concealed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (R-8).
- D. Concealed, round and flat-oval, exhaust-air duct insulation between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (R-8).
  2. No insulation required if ductwork is located upstream of the isolation damper.
- E. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2-3/8 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (R-6).
- F. Concealed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2-3/8 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (R-6).
  2. No insulation required if ductwork is located in a ceiling return plenum.
- G. Concealed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (R-8).
- H. Concealed, rectangular, exhaust-air duct insulation between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior shall be the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (R-8).
  2. No insulation required if ductwork is located upstream of the isolation damper.

- I. Concealed, Type I, Commercial, Kitchen Hood Exhaust Duct and Plenum Insulation: Fire-rated blanket or board; thickness as required to achieve 2-hour fire rating.
- J. Concealed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2-3/8 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (R-6).
- K. Concealed, return-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2-3/8 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (R-6).
- L. Concealed, outdoor-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (R-8).
- M. Concealed, exhaust-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (R-8).
- N. Exposed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. In mechanical rooms and service areas, use mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2-3/8 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (R-6).
  - 2. In finished spaces, exposed spiral round and flat-oval ductwork shall be internally acoustically lined and provided with perforated inner wall, with internal liner thickness as required to provide R-6.
- O. Exposed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. In mechanical rooms and service areas, use mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2-3/8 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (R-6).
  - 2. No insulation required for return ductwork running through air-conditioned spaces.
- P. Exposed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. In mechanical rooms and service areas, use mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (R-8).
  - 2. In finished spaces, exposed spiral round and flat-oval ductwork shall be internally acoustically lined and provided with perforated inner wall, with internal liner thickness as required to provide R-8.
- Q. Exposed, round and flat-oval, exhaust-air duct insulation between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior shall be the following:
  - 1. In mechanical rooms and service areas, use mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (R-8).
  - 2. No insulation required for exhaust ductwork upstream of isolation damper.
- R. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. In mechanical rooms and service areas, use mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 1-1/2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (R-6).
  - 2. In finished spaces, exposed ductwork shall be internally acoustically lined, thickness as required to provide R-6.
- S. Exposed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. In mechanical rooms and service areas, use mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 1-1/2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (R-6).
  - 2. No insulation required for return ductwork running through air-conditioned spaces.
- T. Exposed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. In mechanical rooms and service areas, use mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches thick and 1-1/2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (R-8).

2. In finished spaces, exposed ductwork shall be internally acoustically lined, thickness as required to provide R-8.
- U. Exposed, rectangular, exhaust-air duct insulation between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches thick and 1-1/2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (R-8).
  2. No insulation required for exhaust ductwork upstream of isolation damper.
- V. Exposed, Type I, Commercial, Kitchen Hood Exhaust Duct and Plenum Insulation: Fire-rated board; thickness as required to achieve 2-hour fire rating.
- W. Exposed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 1-1/2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (R-6).
- X. Exposed, return-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 1-1/2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (R-6).
- Y. Exposed, outdoor-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 1-1/2 lb/cu. ft. nominal density (R-8).
- Z. Exposed, exhaust-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches thick and 1-1/2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density (R-8).

### 3.8 ABOVEGROUND, OUTDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Concealed, rectangular, supply, return, outside air intake, and exhaust duct insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches thick and 1-1/2 lb/cu. Ft. nominal density (R-8).
- B. Exposed, rectangular, supply, return, outside air intake, and exhaust duct insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches thick and 1-1/2-lb/cu. Ft. nominal density (R-8).
- C. Insulation on top of rectangular ductwork shall pitch from high point at the center to each side, to avoid trapping of water in the center. Maintain minimum insulation thickness at all surfaces.

### ASHRAE 90.1 – 2010 REQUIREMENTS – DUCT INSULATION

Minimum Duct Insulation R-Value <sup>a</sup> , Combined Heating and Cooling Supply Ducts and Return Ducts							
Duct Location							
Climate Zone	Exterior	Ventilated Attic	Unvented Attic Above Insulated Ceiling	Unvented Attic with Roof Insulation <sup>a</sup>	Unconditioned Space <sup>b</sup>	Indirectly Conditioned Space <sup>c</sup>	Buried
Supply Ducts							
1	R-6.0	R-6.0	R-8.0	R-3.5	R-3.5	None	R-3.5
2	R-6.0	R-6.0	R-6.0	R-3.5	R-3.5	None	R-3.5
3	R-6.0	R-6.0	R-6.0	R-3.5	R-3.5	None	R-3.5
4	R-6.0	R-6.0	R-6.0	R-3.5	R-3.5	None	R-3.5
5	R-6.0	R-6.0	R-6.0	R-1.9	R-3.5	None	R-3.5
6	R-8.0	R-6.0	R-6.0	R-1.9	R-3.5	None	R-3.5
7	R-8.0	R-6.0	R-6.0	R-1.9	R-3.5	None	R-3.5
8	R-8.0	R-8.0	R-8.0	R-1.9	R-6.0	None	R-6.0

Return Ducts							
1 thru 8	R-3.5	R-3.5	R-3.5	None	None	None	None

Where insulation R-values in this table are different from R-values specified in other articles, the most stringent requirement shall apply.

<sup>a</sup> Insulation R – values, measured in (hr· ft<sup>2</sup>· °F)/Btu, are for the insulation as installed and do not include film resistance. The required minimum thicknesses do not consider water vapor transmission and possible surface condensation. Where exterior walls are used as plenum walls, wall insulation shall be required by the most restrictive condition of Section 6.4.4.2 or Section 5. Insulation resistance measured on a horizontal plane in accordance with ASTM C518 at a Mean temperature of 75° F at the installed thickness.

<sup>b</sup> Includes crawlspace, both ventilated and non-ventilated.

<sup>c</sup> Includes return air plenum with or without exposed roofs above.

### 3.9 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Ducts and Plenums, Concealed:
  - 1. None.
- D. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed:
  - 1. None.

### 3.10 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Ducts and Plenums, Concealed:
  - 1. Apply two coats of weatherproof mastic and embed into wet coat two layers of glass cloth over insulation jacket. Smooth membrane to avoid wrinkles and overlap all seams at least 3 inches. Apply a second coat of the same coating to the entire surface.
  - 2. Polyguard Alumaguard 60.
- D. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:
  - 1. Apply two coats of weatherproof mastic and embed into wet coat two layers of glass cloth over insulation jacket. Smooth membrane to avoid wrinkles and overlap all seams at least 3 inches. Apply a second coat of the same coating to the entire surface.
  - 2. Polyguard Alumaguard 60.
- E. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches:
  - 1. Apply two coats of weatherproof mastic and embed into wet coat two layers of glass cloth over insulation jacket. Smooth membrane to avoid wrinkles and overlap all seams at least 3 inches. Apply a second coat of the same coating to the entire surface.
  - 2. Polyguard Alumaguard 60.

END OF SECTION 230713

SECTION 230719 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Furnish and install thermal insulation as specified herein and as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:
  - 1. Condensate drain piping, indoors and outdoors.
  - 2. Heating hot-water piping, indoors and outdoors.
  - 3. Chilled-water piping, indoors and outdoors.
  - 4. Refrigerant suction and hot-gas piping, indoors and outdoors.
  - 5. Steam and condensate return piping, indoors and outdoors.
- C. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 23 Section "Duct Insulation."
  - 2. Division 23 Section "HVAC Equipment Insulation."

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. All equipment and material to be furnished and installed shall be UL or ETL listed in accordance with the requirements of the authorities having jurisdiction and suitable for its intended use.
- B. All thermal insulation shall be designed, manufactured and tested in accordance with the following latest applicable standards.
  - 1. ASTM B209, ASTM C591, ASTM C1136, ASTM C755, ASTM C34, ASTM C177, ASTM C355, ASTM C533, ASTM C547, ASTM C552, ASTM E84 and ASTM E96.
  - 2. UL 723.
  - 3. ADA.
  - 4. NFPA 225.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Mechanical Contractor shall submit product data including materials, thermal properties, adhesives and installation details.
2. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
3. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
4. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
5. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
6. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
7. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
8. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.



1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.9 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.
    - b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
    - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley-K.
    - e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.
  - 2. Type I, 850 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

## 2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Super-Stik.
- B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Thermokote V.
- C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Ramcote 1200 and Quik-Cote.

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-84.
  - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
    - b. - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.

- d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
    - b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
    - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
    - d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

#### 2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide the following] [provide one of the following] [available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.

5. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide the following] [provide one of the following] [available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-30.
    - b. Marathon Industries; 501.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-35.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-10.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide the following] [provide one of the following] [available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Encacel.
    - b. - Marathon Industries; 570.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 60-95/60-96.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.

- b. Marathon Industries; 550.
  - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
  - e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
- 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  - 4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
  - 5. Color: White.

## 2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2.
    - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
    - c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.
  - 3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
  - 4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
  - 5. Color: White.

## 2.6 SEALANTS

- A. Joint Sealants:
  - 1. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass, Phenolic, and Polyisocyanurate Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
    - b. Marathon Industries; 405.

- c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
    - e. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittseal 444.
  - 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  - 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
  - 5. Color: White or gray.
  - 6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
    - b. Marathon Industries; 405.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
  - 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  - 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
  - 5. Color: Aluminum.
  - 6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
  1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
  4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
  5. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

## 2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. for covering pipe and pipe fittings.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Chil-Glas Number 10.
- B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for pipe.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Mast-A-Fab.
- b. Vimasco Corporation; Elastafab 894.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Alpha Associates, Inc.; Alpha-Maritex 84215 and 84217/9485RW, Luben 59.

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
    - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
    - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
    - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
  2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
  3. Color: White.
  4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
    - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
- D. Metal Jacket:
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
    - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
    - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.



2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
  - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
  - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
  - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 2.5-mil- thick polysurlyn.
  - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
    - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
    - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
    - 3) Tee covers.
    - 4) Flange and union covers.
    - 5) End caps.
    - 6) Beveled collars.
    - 7) Valve covers.
    - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

E. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil- thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
  - a. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Alumaguard 60.

## 2.11 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
  - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
  - c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
  - d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.

7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
    - c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
    - d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.
    - b. Compac Corporation; 130.
    - c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.
  2. Width: 2 inches.
  3. Thickness: 6 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 500 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.

- b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
  - c. Compac Corporation; 120.
  - d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.
- 2. Width: 2 inches.
- 3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
- 4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
- 5. Elongation: 5 percent.
- 6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

## 2.12 SECUREMENTS

### A. Bands:

- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
  - b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.
- 2. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal.

### B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

### C. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
  - a. C & F Wire.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
  - 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
  - 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.

3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
    - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
  1. Vibration-control devices.
  2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  3. Nameplates and data plates.
  4. Manholes.
  5. Handholes.
  6. Cleanouts.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.

2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
  6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
  7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
  8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
  9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
  2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on

each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.

3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

#### A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

#### B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

#### C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.



D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.8 FINISHES

A. Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 09 Section "Exterior Painting" and Division 09 Section "Interior Painting."

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.

- a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by the Commissioning Authority, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### 3.10 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
  1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
  2. Underground piping.
  3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

### 3.11 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Hot Water Supply and Return:
  1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral Fiber: 1-1/2 inches thick, factory applied jacket.
  2. NPS 1-1/2 and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral Fiber: 2 inches thick, factory applied jacket.

B. Chilled Water Supply and Return:

1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral Fiber: 1 inches thick, factory applied jacket, vapor barrier.
2. NPS 1-1/2 and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral Fiber: 1-1/2 inches thick, factory applied jacket, vapor barrier.

C. Low Pressure Steam and Steam Condensate Return:

1. NPS 3 and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral Fiber: 2-1/2 inches thick, factory applied jacket.
2. NPS 4 and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral Fiber: 3 inches thick, factory applied jacket.

D. Refrigerant Suction and Liquid:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Mineral Fiber: 1 inch thick, factory applied jacket, vapor barrier.
  - b. Closed Cell Elastomer: 1 inch thick.

E. Condensate Drain:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral Fiber: 1 inch thick, factory applied jacket, vapor barrier.

- F. For piping smaller than 1-1/2 inches and located in partitions within conditioned spaces, reduction of these thicknesses by 1 inch shall be permitted but not to a thickness less than 1 inch.

3.12 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Hot Water Supply and Return:

1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral Fiber: 1-1/2 inches thick, factory applied jacket.
2. NPS 1-1/2 and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral Fiber: 2 inches thick, factory applied jacket.

B. Chilled Water Supply and Return:

1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral Fiber: 1 inches thick, factory applied jacket, vapor barrier.

2. NPS 1-1/2 and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral Fiber: 1-1/2 inches thick, factory applied jacket, vapor barrier.

C. Low Pressure Steam and Steam Condensate Return:

1. NPS 3 and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral Fiber: 2-1/2 inches thick, factory applied jacket.
2. NPS 4 and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral Fiber: 3 inches thick, factory applied jacket.

D. Refrigerant Suction and Liquid:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Mineral Fiber: 1 inch thick, factory applied jacket, vapor barrier.
  - b. Closed Cell Elastomer: 1 inch thick.

E. Condensate Drain:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral Fiber: 1 inch thick, factory applied jacket, vapor barrier.

3.13 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
  1. None.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
  1. PVC: 30 mils thick.

3.14 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
  1. Aluminum, Smooth, with Z-Shaped Locking Seam, aluminum bands, and moisture barrier lining: 0.016 inch thick.

D. Piping, Exposed:

1. Aluminum, Smooth, with Z-Shaped Locking Seam, aluminum bands, and moisture barrier lining:  
0.016 inch thick.

END OF SECTION 230719

SECTION 230800 - COMMISSIONING OF HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes commissioning process requirements for HVAC&R systems, assemblies, and equipment.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "General Commissioning Requirements" for general commissioning process requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Commissioning Plan: A document that outlines the organization, schedule, allocation of resources, and documentation requirements of the commissioning process.
- B. CxA: Commissioning Authority.
- C. HVAC&R: Heating, Ventilating, Air Conditioning, and Refrigeration.
- D. Systems, Subsystems, Equipment, and Components: Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, subsystems, equipment, and components.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of readiness.
- B. Certificates of completion of installation, prestart, and startup activities.

1.5 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Perform commissioning of mechanical systems installed under Division 23 in accordance with the requirements of the 2020 New York State Energy Code, Section C408.2. Commissioning work shall be performed by Contractor's qualified personnel or qualified manufacturer's representatives or subcontractors, under the direction and supervision of a Registered Design Professional either employed by the Contractor or hired by the Contractor at the Contractor's sole cost. The Registered Design Professional shall be an individual who is either a licensed and registered architect (RA) in accordance with Article 147 of the New York State Education Law or a licensed and registered professional engineer (PE) in accordance with Article 145 of the New York State Education Law. The Registered Design Professional responsible for commissioning shall be referenced hereafter within this specification section as the "Commissioning Authority" or "CxA".
- B. Perform commissioning tests at the direction of the CxA.
- C. Attend construction phase controls coordination meeting.

- D. Attend testing, adjusting, and balancing review and coordination meeting.
- E. Participate in HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and component maintenance orientation and inspection as directed by the CxA.
- F. Provide information requested by the CxA for final commissioning documentation.
- G. Provide measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data, and provide data acquisition equipment to record data for the complete range of testing for the required test period.

#### 1.6 CxA'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Provide Project-specific construction checklists and commissioning process test procedures for actual HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be furnished and installed as part of the construction contract. Develop a Commissioning Plan including the following items:
  - 1. A narrative description of the activities that will be accomplished during each phase of commissioning, including the personnel intended to accomplish each of the activities.
  - 2. A listing of the specific equipment, appliances or systems to be tested and a description of the tests to be performed.
  - 3. Functions to be tested including, but not limited to, calibrations and economizer controls.
  - 4. Conditions under which the test will be performed. Testing shall affirm winter and summer design conditions and full outside air conditions.
  - 5. Measurable criteria for performance.
- B. Direct commissioning testing.
  - 1. Equipment functional performance testing shall demonstrate the installation and operation of components, systems, and system-to-system interfacing relationships in accordance with approved plans and specifications such that operation, function, and maintenance serviceability for each of the commissioned systems is confirmed. Testing shall include all modes and sequence of operation, including under full-load, part-load and the following emergency conditions: Performance of alarms; Mode of operation upon a loss of power and restoration of power. Exception – not required for unitary or packaged HVAC equipment without supply air economizers.
  - 2. HVAC and service water-heating control systems shall be tested to document that control devices, components, equipment and systems are calibrated and adjusted and operate in accordance with approved plans and specifications. Sequences of operation shall be functionally tested to document they operate in accordance with approved plans and specifications.
  - 3. Air economizers shall undergo a functional test to determine that they operate in accordance with manufacturer's specifications.
- C. Verify testing, adjusting, and balancing of Work are complete.
- D. Provide test data, inspection reports, and certificates in Systems Manual.
- E. Prepare and submit to ownership a Preliminary Commissioning Report in accordance with the requirements of Section C408.2.4 of the 2020 New York State Energy Conservation Code and a Final Commissioning Report in accordance with the requirements of Section C408.2.5.2 of the 2020 New York State Energy Conservation Code.

#### 1.7 COMMISSIONING DOCUMENTATION

- A. Provide the following information to the CxA for inclusion in the commissioning plan:
  - 1. Plan for delivery and review of submittals, systems manuals, and other documents and reports.

2. Identification of installed systems, assemblies, equipment, and components including design changes that occurred during the construction phase.
3. Process and schedule for completing construction checklists and manufacturer's prestart and startup checklists for HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be verified and tested.
4. Certificate of completion certifying that installation, prestart checks, and startup procedures have been completed.
5. Certificate of readiness certifying that HVAC&R systems, subsystems, equipment, and associated controls are ready for testing.
6. Test and inspection reports and certificates.
7. Corrective action documents.
8. Verification of testing, adjusting, and balancing reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TESTING PREPARATION

- A. Certify that HVAC&R systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, calibrated, and started and are operating according to the Contract Documents.
- B. Certify that HVAC&R instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents, and that pretest set points have been recorded.
- C. Certify that testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures have been completed and that testing, adjusting, and balancing reports have been submitted, discrepancies corrected, and corrective work approved.
- D. Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested (e.g., normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).
- E. Inspect and verify the position of each device and interlock identified on checklists.
- F. Check safety cutouts, alarms, and interlocks with smoke control and life-safety systems during each mode of operation.
- G. Testing Instrumentation: Install measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data as directed by the CxA.

3.2 TESTING AND BALANCING VERIFICATION

- A. Prior to performance of testing and balancing Work, provide copies of reports, sample forms, checklists, and certificates to the CxA.
- B. Notify the CxA at least 10 days in advance of testing and balancing Work, and provide access for the CxA to witness testing and balancing Work.
- C. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to verify testing and balancing of HVAC&R systems at the direction of the CxA.



1. The CxA will notify testing and balancing Subcontractor 10 days in advance of the date of field verification. Notice will not include data points to be verified.
2. The testing and balancing Subcontractor shall use the same instruments (by model and serial number) that were used when original data were collected.
3. Failure of an item includes, other than sound, a deviation of more than 10 percent. Failure of more than 10 percent of selected items shall result in rejection of final testing, adjusting, and balancing report. For sound pressure readings, a deviation of 3 dB shall result in rejection of final testing. Variations in background noise must be considered.
4. Remedy the deficiency and notify the CxA so verification of failed portions can be performed.

### 3.3 GENERAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to perform commissioning test at the direction of the CxA.
- B. Scope of HVAC&R testing shall include entire HVAC&R installation, from central equipment for heat generation and refrigeration through distribution systems to each conditioned space. Testing shall include measuring capacities and effectiveness of operational and control functions.
- C. Test all operating modes, interlocks, control responses, and responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and verify proper response of building automation system controllers and sensors.
- D. The CxA along with the HVAC&R Contractor, testing and balancing Subcontractor, and HVAC&R Instrumentation and Control Subcontractor shall prepare detailed testing plans, procedures, and checklists for HVAC&R systems, subsystems, and equipment.
- E. Tests will be performed using design conditions whenever possible.
- F. Simulated conditions may need to be imposed using an artificial load when it is not practical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions as directed by the CxA and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return settings to normal operating conditions.
- G. The CxA may direct that set points be altered when simulating conditions is not practical.
- H. The CxA may direct that sensor values be altered with a signal generator when design or simulating conditions and altering set points are not practical.
- I. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the HVAC&R system, document the deficiency and report it to the Owner. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.
- J. If the testing plan indicates specific seasonal testing, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation and schedule seasonal tests.

### 3.4 HVAC&R SYSTEMS, SUBSYSTEMS, AND EQUIPMENT TESTING PROCEDURES

- A. HVAC&R Instrumentation and Control System Testing: Field testing plans and testing requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and Division 23 Section "Sequence and Operations for HVAC Controls." Assist the CxA with preparation of testing plans.
- B. Refrigeration System Testing: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of refrigerant compressors and condensers, heat pumps, and other refrigeration systems.

The CxA shall determine the sequence of testing and testing procedures for each equipment item and pipe section to be tested.

- C. HVAC&R Distribution System Testing: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of air, steam, and hydronic distribution systems; special exhaust; and other distribution systems, including HVAC&R terminal equipment and unitary equipment.
- D. Vibration and Sound Tests: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of vibration isolation and seismic controls.

END OF SECTION 230800

SECTION 230923 - INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 CODES AND STANDARDS

- A. Work, materials, and equipment shall comply with the most restrictive of local, state, and federal authorities' codes and ordinances or these plans and specifications. As a minimum, the installation shall comply with current editions in effect 30 days prior to receipt of bids of the following codes:
  - 1. National Electric Code (NEC)
  - 2. International Building Codes
  - 3. ANSI/ASHRAE 135-2004: Data Communication Protocol for Building Automation and Control Systems (BACnet)
- B. Conflict of Codes. Where two or more codes conflict, the most restrictive shall apply. Nothing in this specification or related documentation shall be construed to permit work not conforming to applicable codes.

1.3 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes control equipment for HVAC systems and components, including control components for terminal heating and cooling units not supplied with factory-wired controls.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 23 Section "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls" for requirements that relate to this Section.

1.4 OVERVIEW

- A. Expand existing building automation system (BAS) at each building to provide the control sequences specified. The system shall provide control and monitoring of the equipment indicated.
- B. Provide controllers and communications infrastructure to match existing BAS in the building. Provide seamless integration with existing control network and user interfaces. Network gateways and protocol interface equipment are not acceptable. The automatic temperature controls contractor for the district is Automated Control Logic (ACL) – 578 Commerce Street, Thornwood, NY 10594 – (914) 769-8880 – Attn: Preston Bruenn - [pbruenn@automatedcontrollogic.com](mailto:pbruenn@automatedcontrollogic.com).
- C. Provide instrumentation, valves, dampers, actuators and wiring as required to provide specified operating sequences.
- D. Modify existing graphical user interfaces and/or provide new graphical user interfaces to include all equipment/systems included in this project.
- E. In addition to providing BAS controls, the automatic temperature controls contractor shall also be responsible for:
  - 1. Furnishing, installing, wiring, configuring, and programming all standalone HVAC controls specified for the project.
  - 2. Installing, wiring, configuring, and programming all packaged controls furnished by HVAC equipment manufacturers under this project.

- F. The automatic temperature controls contractor be responsible for HVAC controls scope indicated in this specification section, Division 23 section "HVAC Sequence of Operations", all other Division 23 specification sections, and the drawings. Review all mechanical drawings and Division 23 specifications prior to bidding.

#### 1.5 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Furnish and install as herein specified, a complete automatic temperature control system of the DDC type.
- B. All temperature control systems and components under this subcontract are to be fully modulating type, except where noted otherwise. The system shall be complete in all respects including all associated control equipment, thermostats, control valves, valve actuators, damper operators, relays, pilot positioners, control wiring, control air piping, switches, interlock wiring, electrical control components and associated piping or wiring, appurtenances, etc., to provide the functions described in these specifications and plans, regardless of whether or not said device relay, etc. is specifically mentioned hereafter.
- C. The system shall be supervised and checked out completely in all respects by competent mechanics, regularly employed by the manufacturer.
- D. The Contractor shall furnish and install all necessary software and hardware, wiring, and computing equipment in compliance with this specification. Any variances from this specification or related documentation shall be submitted in writing at the time of bid.
- E. System Requirements
1. Standard Material/Products. All material and equipment used shall be standard components, regularly manufactured and available, and not custom designed especially for this project
  2. Modular Design. The system architecture shall be fully modular permitting expansion of application software, system peripherals, and field hardware.
  3. Performance. The system, upon completion of the installation and prior to acceptance of the project, shall perform all operating functions as detailed in this specification.
  4. Equipment: The Contractor shall provide the following system hardware:
    - a. All sensing devices, relays, switches, indicating devices, and transducers required to perform the functions as listed in I/O Summary Tables.
    - b. All monitoring and control wiring.

#### 1.6 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. The BAS shall consist of Direct Digital Control (DDC) controllers, Building Controllers (BC), network management tools, programming tools, web browser based Graphical User Interface, sensors, relays, valves, actuators, and other equipment as may be necessary to provide for a complete and operational control system for the HVAC and other building related systems as described within these specifications.
- B. The documentation contained in this section and other contract documents pertaining to HVAC Controls is schematic in nature. The Contractor shall provide hardware and software necessary to implement the functions shown or as implied in the contract documents.
- C. All control panels to be mounted at serviceable heights. All control panels are to be hinged. If controllers are to be mounted in a rooftop or air handling unit, please install in weathertight enclosure. Control panel locations must be pre-approved by facilities.
- D. Floating Point Control is not acceptable. Control output must be DC 2-10V, 0 -10V or 4- 20 mA.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General - The HVAC Control System shall be furnished, engineered, and installed by a licensed Controls Contractor or System Integrator (SI). All work provided under this section shall be provided by direct employees of the SI or under the direct supervision of the SI personnel.

#### 1.8 NAMEPLATES

- A. Nameplates shall be provided for all control items listed or shown in the submittal and approved control diagrams.
- B. Each inscription shall identify its function, such as "mixed air controller", "cold deck sensor" in official languages etc. and when applicable, its position.
  - 1. Size of nameplates shall be 1 inch by 3 inches minimum.
  - 2. Lettering shall be minimum ¼ inch high normal black lettering.
  - 3. Submit duplicate samples of identification tags and lists of wording proposed for approval.

#### 1.9 SUBMITTALS

- A. General
  - 1. Meet all applicable Submittal requirements of Division 01 and other divisions where applicable, including listed below and in the Submittal check list.
  - 2. Provide to the Engineer and Owner all information or data necessary to determine compliance with these specifications.
  - 3. Indicate dimensions, description of materials and finishes, general construction, specific modifications, component connections, anchorage methods, hardware, and installation procedures, including specific requirements indicated.
  - 4. All Drawings and Diagrams shall be machine-drafted using AutoCAD 2000 or later, or Microsoft Visio. At project closeout, provide vellum plots and diskette or CD copy of control drawings and layout drawings to the Owner.
  - 5. Provide system device and LAN conduit routing drawing, using building plans for a background. All controllers, gateways, hubs, devices and communication cabling shall be accurately shown, except that individual sensor I/O wiring and devices need not be shown. Layout drawings shall be the same size as the Engineer's construction documents.
- B. Hardware - Include a complete list of materials of equipment to be used, including technical data, performance curves, project specification sheets and installation/ maintenance instructions.
- C. Control System Diagrams - Provide schematic diagrams for each controlled system. Illustrate the relationship between control system and controlled equipment. Show all control elements. Show all terminations and cable/tube numbers.
  - 1. Provide equipment interface details using actual equipment termination information. Blank terminals or "field verify" is not acceptable.
  - 2. Provide individual diagrams for each mechanical system. If two systems are identical, then a single diagram may represent multiple mechanical systems. Notations like "this part here only applies to units xxx", etc. are not acceptable.

3. The control diagrams and sequence of operation shall be together on the same sheet and shall be suitable for posting.
  4. The sequence of operation shall reference a schematic diagram of the controlled system. The sequence of operation shall describe in words the control strategies utilized, worded in such a way to serve as an informative reference to the maintenance and service personnel who will be responsible for unit operation.
  5. Each component and instrument on the control diagrams shall have a unique tag number such as temperature element "TE-1". The sequence of operation verbiage shall make specific reference to the individual component tag numbers, such as "Controller (C-1) compares the space temperature sensor (TE-1) to set point, and modulates hot water heating coil valve (V-1) as required". The mechanical system being controlled shall be schematically drawn and show the measurement and control points, such as "TE-1" and "V-1".
- D. Graphic Displays - Include draft copies of graphic displays indicating mechanical system components, control system components, and controlled function status and value.
- E. Point List - Provide a point list for each system controller including both inputs and outputs (I/O) point, point number, the controlled device associated with the I/O point and the location of the I/O device. Use naming convention consistent with control diagrams and sequence of operation.
- F. Other Items Requiring Submittals
1. Point to point and basic function commissioning forms to be used on site for the start, test and check of network components and systems.
  2. List of specific personnel who will be involved in the system installation and commissioning.
  3. Functional performance test documentation and procedures to be used in commissioning control sequences.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Manuals shall be submitted indicating the correct procedures and processes to operate and maintain the system. O&M's shall be delivered either hard copy or on a CD-ROM developed specifically for the project. Contractor shall submit (3) copies of the Operation and Maintenance Manuals.
- H. Parts List shall be submitted listing: manufacturer's name, part number, nomenclature, and stock level required for maintenance and repair necessary to ensure continued operation with minimal delay.
- I. Submittal Check List - The following Submittal Check list is intended to provide the SI, Consulting Engineer and Owner with a working document upon which to verify compliance with the major portions of the specification that can more easily be verified through printed documentation. It in no way excludes the SI from compliance or for verification of compliance of any portion of this specification.
1. Provide control drawings
  2. Provide graphics in draft form
  3. Provide points list
  4. Provide software manuals
  5. Provide Commissioning forms

6. Provide a list of personnel for install and commissioning
7. Provide Functional performance test documentation
8. Provide Operational & maintenance manuals
9. Provide Parts List
10. Provide required training materials
11. Provide Verification of warranty of 12 months

1.10 TRAINING

- A. Training - Meet all applicable Training requirements of Division 01, Division 23, and the following.
- B. Instruct the operators how to accomplish control of the system. Include basic troubleshooting and override of equipment and controls in the event of system failure.
- C. Training Allowance: Provide not less than eight (8) hours formal training to the Owner's designated operations personnel.
- D. Training Manuals - Include the following in training manuals.
  1. Manufacturer's training brochures.
  2. Operation and maintenance manuals.
  3. Completed Field Acceptance Test Procedure.
  4. "As-installed" Drawings.
  5. Manufacturer's Operation Manuals.
  6. Software interaction sheets to be used in instructing students how to use the control system, on a command-by-command basis.
- E. Training Classes - Prior to conducting training, prepare and submit for approval the proposed training literature and topics. Submit this information at least two weeks prior to the first class.
- F. Provide approved training manuals to the Owner at least one week prior to the first class.
- G. Provide Audio Visual Tutorials both in a CD format and on the manufactures website instructing on the operation of the programming software tools as provided under this specification.

1.11 AS-BUILT DOCUMENTATION AND OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE (O&M) MANUALS

- A. As-built documentation shall consist of (4) hard copies and (4) electronic copies on CD's for all information described below
- B. The final documentation package shall include:
  1. Hard and soft copies of all control drawings.

2. Manufacturer's technical data sheets for all hardware and software.
  3. Factory operating and maintenance manuals with any customization required.
  4. Soft copies of programming and front-end software and each controller's database. Hard copy output of programming is not necessary.
  5. Provide clear, concise, printed and soft copy descriptions of all control sequences in the working language.
  6. Soft copy text files shall be in Microsoft Word format.
  7. Copy of all graphics files.
- C. Each instruction and reference manual shall be bound in hardback, 3 ring, binders or an approved equivalent shall be provided to the Engineer.
1. Binders to be no more than 2/3 full.
  2. Each binder to contain index to full volume.
  3. One complete set of manuals shall be furnished prior to the time that the system or equipment tests are performed, and the remaining manuals shall be furnished at acceptance.
  4. The identification of each manual's contents shall be inscribed on the cover and spine.
  5. The manuals shall include the names, addresses and telephone numbers of each subcontractor installing equipment systems and of the local representatives for each item of equipment and each system.
  6. The manuals shall have a table of contents and be assembled to conform to the table of contents with the tab sheets placed before instructions covering the subject.
  7. Additionally, each manual shall contain a comprehensive index of all manuals submitted in accordance with this paragraph.
  8. Manuals and specifications shall be furnished which provide full and complete coverage of the following subjects:
    - a. Operational Requirements: This document shall describe in concise terms, all the functional and operational requirements for the system and its functions that have been implemented. It shall be written using common terminology for building operation staff and shall not presume knowledge of digital computers, electronics or in-depth control theory.
    - b. System Operation: Complete step by step procedures for operation of the system, including required actions at each operator station; operation of computer peripherals; input and output formats; and emergency, alarm and failure recovery. Step-by-step instructions for system startup, back-up equipment operation, and execution of all system functions and operating modes shall be provided.
    - c. Maintenance: Documentation of all maintenance procedures for all system components including inspection, periodic preventive maintenance, fault diagnosis, and repair or replacement of defective module. This shall include calibration, maintenance, and repair or replacement of all system hardware.



- d. Test Procedures and Reports: The test implementation shall be recorded with a description of the test exercise script of events and documented as test procedures. A provision for the measurement or observation of results, based on the published test specification, forms the test reports. The procedures record and the results of these exercises shall be conveniently bound and documented together.
- e. Configuration Control: Documentation of the basic system design and configuration with provisions and procedures for planning, implementing, and recording any hardware or software modifications required during the installation, test, and operating lifetime of the system. This shall include all information required to ensure necessary coordination of hardware and software changes, data link or message format/content changes, and sensor or control changes in the event system modification are required, and to fully document such new system configurations.

#### 1.12 WARRANTY

- A. The HVAC Control System shall be free from defects in workmanship and material under normal use and service. If within twelve (12) months from the date of substantial completion, the installed equipment is found to be defective in operation, workmanship or materials, the building systems contractor shall replace, repair or adjust the defect at no cost. Service shall be provided within 4 hours upon notice from Owner's designated Representative.
- B. The warranty shall extend to material that is supplied and installed by the Contractor. Material supplied but not installed by the Contractor shall be covered per the above to the extent of the product only. Installation labor shall be the responsibility of the trade contractor performing the installation.
- C. All corrective software modifications made during warranty service periods shall be updated on all user documentation and on user and manufacturer archived software disks.

#### 1.13 GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACE

- A. The Graphical User Interface (GUI) shall employ browser-like functionality for ease of navigation. It shall include a tree view (similar to Windows Explorer) for quick viewing of, and access to, the hierarchical structure of the database. In addition, menu-pull downs, and toolbars shall employ buttons, commands and navigation to permit the operator to perform tasks with a minimum knowledge of the HVAC Control System and basic computing skills. These shall include, but are not limited to, forward/backward buttons, home button, and a context sensitive locator line (similar to a URL line), that displays the location and the selected object identification.
- B. Provide a visual graphical representation of each piece of mechanical equipment and/or mechanical system that duplicates the represented system, where applicable. Graphics shall include at a minimum the value of each input, each output, each setpoint, alarms and graphical representation of trend logs. The graphic shall provide for the ability to command each point, including both timed and permanent overrides. In addition, provide for all information represented in the graphics in an associated graphical table with links to the equipment graphics and command-able points. All graphics shall commiserate with latest industries standards and practices. Sample graphics shall be provide as part of the submittals for approval by owner.
- C. Real-Time Displays. The GUI, shall at a minimum, support the following graphical features and functions:
  - 1. Graphic screens shall be developed using any drawing package capable of generating or assembling objects from a GIF, or JPG file format. Use of proprietary graphic file formats shall not be acceptable. In addition to, or in lieu of a graphic background, the GUI shall support the use of scanned pictures.

2. Graphic screens shall have the capability to contain objects for text, real-time values, animation, color spectrum objects, logs, graphs, HTML or XML document links, schedule objects, hyperlinks to other URL's, and links to other graphic screens.
  3. Modifying common application objects, such as schedules, calendars, and set points shall be accomplished in a graphical manner.
    - a) Schedule times will be adjusted using a graphical slider, without requiring any keyboard entry from the operator.
    - b) Holidays shall be set by using a graphical calendar, without requiring any keyboard entry from the operator.
  4. Commands to start and stop binary objects shall be done by right-clicking the selected object and selecting the appropriate command from the pop-up menu. No entry of text shall be required.
  5. Adjustments to analog objects, such as set points, shall be done by right-clicking the selected object and using a graphical slider to adjust the value. No entry of text shall be required.
- D. System Configuration. At a minimum, the GUI shall permit the operator to perform the following tasks, with proper password access:
1. Create, delete or modify control strategies.
  2. Add/delete objects to the system.
  3. Tune control loops through the adjustment of control loop parameters.
  4. Enable or disable control strategies.
  5. Generate hard copy records or control strategies on a printer.
  6. Select points to be alarm-able and define the alarm state.
  7. Select points to be trended over a period of time and initiate the recording of values automatically.
- E. Security. Each operator shall be required to log on to that system with a user name and password in order to view, edit, add, or delete data. System security shall be selectable for each operator. The system administrator shall have the ability to set passwords and security levels for all other operators. Each operator password shall be able to restrict the operators' access for viewing and/or changing each system application, full screen editor, and object. Each operator shall automatically be logged off of the system if no keyboard or mouse activity is detected. This auto log-off time shall be set per operator password. All system security data shall be stored in an encrypted format.
- F. System Diagnostics. The system shall automatically monitor the operation of all workstations, printers, modems, network connections, building management panels, and controllers. The failure of any device shall be annunciated to the operator.
- G. Alarm Console
8. The system will be provided with a dedicated alarm window or console. This window will notify the operator of an alarm condition, and allow the operator to view details of the alarm and acknowledge the alarm. The use of the Alarm Console can be enabled or disabled by the system administrator.

9. When the Alarm Console is enabled, a separate alarm notification window will supersede all other windows on the desktop and shall not be capable of being minimized or closed by the operator. This window will notify the operator of new alarms and un-acknowledged alarms. Alarm notification windows or banners that can be minimized or closed by the operator shall not be acceptable.

#### 1.14 UNINTERRUPTABLE POWER SUPPLIES

- A. Provide the OWS, Server, and each NCU (JACE) with individual UPS to provide clean, reliable, noise-filtered power at all times and to protect and maintain systems operation throughout short term power interruptions of up to 15 minutes duration.
- B. Acceptable Manufacturer is APC or Functional Devices.

#### 1.15 REPORTING ACCURACY

- A. Table 1 – Reporting Accuracy

Measured Variable	Reported Accuracy
Space Temperature	$\pm 0.5^{\circ}\text{C}$ ( $\pm 1^{\circ}\text{F}$ )
Ducted Air	$\pm 0.5^{\circ}\text{C}$ ( $\pm 1^{\circ}\text{F}$ )
Outside Air	$\pm 1.0^{\circ}\text{C}$ ( $\pm 2^{\circ}\text{F}$ )
Dew Point	$\pm 1.5^{\circ}\text{C}$ ( $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{F}$ )
Water Temperature	$\pm 0.5^{\circ}\text{C}$ ( $\pm 1^{\circ}\text{F}$ )
Delta-T	$\pm 0.15^{\circ}$ ( $\pm 0.25^{\circ}\text{F}$ )
Relative Humidity	$\pm 5\%$ RH
Water Flow	$\pm 2\%$ of full scale
Airflow (terminal)	$\pm 10\%$ of full scale (see Note 1)
Airflow (measuring stations)	$\pm 5\%$ of full scale
Airflow (pressurized spaces)	$\pm 3\%$ of full scale
Air Pressure (ducts)	$\pm 25$ Pa ( $\pm 0.1$ in. w.g.)
Air Pressure (space)	$\pm 3$ Pa ( $\pm 0.01$ in. w.g.)
Water Pressure	$\pm 2\%$ of full scale (see Note 2)

Electrical	±1% of reading (see Note 3)
Carbon Monoxide (CO)	±5% of reading
Carbon Dioxide (CO <sub>2</sub> )	±50 ppm

1. Note 1: Accuracy applies to 10%–100% of scale
2. Note 2: For both absolute and differential pressure
3. Note 3: Not including utility-supplied meters

B. Control Stability and Accuracy Table

Controlled Variable	Control Accuracy	Range of Medium
Air Pressure	±50 Pa (±0.2 in. w.g.) ±3 Pa (±0.01 in. w.g.)	0–1.5 kPa (0–6 in. w.g.) -25 to 25 Pa (-0.1 to 0.1 in. w.g.)
Airflow	±10% of full scale	
Space Temperature	±1.0°C (±2.0°F)	
Duct Temperature	±1.5°C (±3°F)	
Humidity	±5% RH	
Fluid Pressure	±10 kPa (±1.5 psi) ±250 Pa (±1.0 in. w.g.)	MPa (1–150 psi) 0–12.5 kPa (0–50 in. w.g.)

1.16 POWER SUPPLIES

- A. Power Supplies. Control transformers shall be UL listed. Furnish Class 2 current-limiting type or furnish over-current protection in primary and secondary circuits for Class 2 service in accordance with NEC requirements. Limit connected loads to 80% of rated capacity.
- B. DC power supply output shall match output current and voltage requirements. Unit shall be full-wave rectifier type with output ripple of 5.0 mV maximum peak-to-peak. Regulation shall be 1.0% line and load combined, with 100-microsecond response time for 50% load changes. Unit shall have built-in over-voltage and over-current protection and shall be able to withstand 150% current overload for at least three seconds without trip-out or failure.
  1. Unit shall operate between 0°C and 50°C (32°F and 120°F). EM/RF shall meet FCC Class B and VDE 0871 for Class B and MILSTD 810C for shock and vibration.
  2. Line voltage units shall be UL recognized and CSA listed.

1.17 POWER LINE FILTERING

- A. Provide internal or external transient voltage and surge suppression for workstations and controllers. Surge protection shall have:
  - 1. Dielectric strength of 1000 V minimum
  - 2. Response time of 10 nanoseconds or less
  - 3. Transverse mode noise attenuation of 65 dB or greater
  - 4. Common mode noise attenuation of 150 dB or greater at 40–100 Hz

1.18 MOTORIZED CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. Type. Control dampers shall be the parallel or opposed-blade type as specified below or as scheduled on drawings.
  - 1. Outdoor and return air mixing dampers and face-and-bypass dampers shall be parallel-blade and shall direct airstreams toward each other.
  - 2. Other modulating dampers shall be opposed-blade.
  - 3. Two-position shutoff dampers shall be parallel- or opposed-blade with blade and side seals.
- B. Frame. Damper frames shall be 2.38 mm (13 gauge) galvanized steel channel or 3.175 mm (1/8 in.) extruded aluminum with reinforced corner bracing.
- C. Blades. Damper blades shall not exceed 20 cm (8 in.) in width or 125 cm (48 in.) in length. Blades shall be suitable for medium velocity (10 m/s [2000 fpm]) performance. Blades shall be not less than 1.5875 mm (16 gauge).
- D. Shaft Bearings. Damper shaft bearings shall be as recommended by manufacturer for application, oil impregnated sintered bronze, or better.
- E. Seals. Blade edges and frame top and bottom shall have replaceable seals of butyl rubber or neoprene. Side seals shall be spring-loaded stainless steel. Blade seals shall leak no more than 50 L/s·m<sup>2</sup> (10 cfm per ft<sup>2</sup>) at 1000 Pa (4 in. w.g.) differential pressure. Blades shall be airfoil type suitable for wide-open face velocity of 7.5 m/s (1500 fpm).
- F. Sections. Individual damper sections shall not exceed 125 cm × 150 cm (48 in. × 60 in.). Each section shall have at least one damper actuator.
- G. Modulating dampers shall provide a linear flow characteristic where possible.
- H. Linkages. Dampers shall have exposed linkages.

1.19 ELECTRIC DAMPER AND VALVE ACTUATORS

- A. Approved Manufacturer:
  - 1. Belimo
  - 2. No other manufacturers will be allowed.

- B. Stall Protection. Mechanical or electronic stall protection shall prevent actuator damage throughout the actuator's rotation.
- C. Spring-return Mechanism. Actuators used for power-failure and safety applications shall have an internal mechanical spring-return mechanism or an uninterruptible power supply (UPS).
- D. Signal and Range. Proportional actuators shall accept a 0–10 Vdc or a 0–20 mA control signal and shall have a 2–10 Vdc or 4–20 mA operating range.
- E. Wiring. 24 Vac and 24 Vdc actuators shall operate on Class 2 wiring.
- F. Manual Positioning. Operators shall be able to manually position each actuator when the actuator is not powered. Non-spring-return actuators shall have an external manual gear release. Spring-return actuators with more than 7 N·m (60 in.-lb) torque capacity shall have a manual crank.
- G. Floating Point Control is not acceptable. Control output must be DC 2-10V, 0 -10V or 4- 20 mA.

#### 1.20 CONTROL VALVES

- A. Approved Manufacturer:
  - 1. Belimo
  - 2. No other manufacturers will be allowed.
- B. Control valves shall be two-way or three-way type for two-position or modulating service as shown.
- C. Close-off (differential) Pressure Rating: Valve actuator and trim shall be furnished to provide the following minimum close-off pressure ratings:
  - 1. Water Valves:
    - a. Two-way: 150% of total system (pump) head.
    - b. Three-way: 300% of pressure differential between ports A and B at design flow or 100% of total system (pump) head.
- D. Water Valves.
  - 1. Body and trim style and materials shall be in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations for design conditions and service shown, with equal percentage ports for modulating service.
  - 2. Sizing Criteria:
    - a. Two-position service: Line size.
    - b. Two-way modulating service: Pressure drop shall be equal to twice the pressure drop through heat exchanger (load), 50% of the pressure difference between supply and return mains, or 5 psi, whichever is greater.
    - c. Three-way modulating service: Pressure drop equal to twice the pressure drop through the coil exchanger (load), 35 kPa (5 psi) maximum.

- d. Valves ½ in. through 2 in. shall be bronze body or cast brass ANSI Class 250, spring-loaded, PTFE packing, quick opening for two-position service. Two-way valves to have replaceable composition disc or stainless steel ball.
  - e. Valves 2½ in. and larger shall be cast iron ANSI Class 125 with guided plug and PTFE packing.
3. Water valves shall fail normally open or closed, as scheduled on plans, or as follows:
- a. Water zone valves—normally open preferred.
  - b. Heating coils in air handlers—normally open.
  - c. Chilled water control valves—normally closed.
  - d. Other applications—as scheduled or as required by sequences of operation.
- E. Floating Point Control is not acceptable. Control output must be DC 2-10V, 0 -10V or 4- 20 mA.

#### 1.21 BINARY TEMPERATURE DEVICES

- A. Low-Voltage Space Thermostats. Low-voltage space thermostats shall be 24 V, bimetal-operated, mercury-switch type, with adjustable or fixed anticipation heater, concealed setpoint adjustment, 13°C–30°C (55°F–85°F) setpoint range, 1°C (2°F) maximum differential, and vented ABS plastic cover.
- B. Line-Voltage Space Thermostats. Line-voltage space thermostats shall be bimetal-actuated, open-contact type or bellows-actuated, enclosed, snap-switch type or equivalent solid-state type, with heat anticipator, UL listing for electrical rating, concealed setpoint adjustment, 13°C–30°C (55°F–85°F) setpoint range, 1°C (2°F) maximum differential, and vented ABS plastic cover.
- C. Low-Limit Thermostats. Low-limit airstream thermostats shall be UL listed, vapor pressure type. Element shall be at least 6 m (20 ft) long. Element shall sense temperature in each 30 cm (1 ft) section and shall respond to lowest sensed temperature. Low-limit thermostat shall be manual reset only.

#### 1.22 INTELLIGENT SPACE SENSORS

- A. Also known as Network Sensors.
- B. Intelligent Space Sensors (ISS) shall communicate on a daisy-chained network connected to any Local Control Unit (LCU) or Terminal Control Unit (TCU) and shall provide ambient space condition sensing without the use of hardware I/O at the LCU or TCU.
  - 1. CO2 and Relative Humidity options to be utilized where shown on Mechanical Drawings.
- C. Each ISS shall provide a white Liquid Crystal Display (LCD), where indicated on the drawings, with the following minimum features:
  - 1. Minimum 1.4" x 1.18" display area
  - 2. Backlit
- D. The ISS shall be capable of displaying on its LCD the measured space temperature from 50 °F to 104 °F and/or humidity from 0 % RH to 100 % RH with one decimal and/or the CO2 measurement from 0 to 2000 ppm.

- E. The ISS shall be capable of displaying the following elements:
  - 1. Space temperature
  - 2. Cooling space temperature set point
  - 3. Heating space temperature set point
  - 4. Current heating or cooling mode
  - 5. Current occupancy mode
  - 6. Fan speed
  - 7. Light status
  - 8. Blind position
  - 9. Alarm condition
  - 10. Current time
  - 11. Energy consumption indicator
- F. Each ISS shall provide a local keypad for local user interface to perform navigation and adjustment of points configured as adjustable.
- G. The ISS shall be configured for the LCU or TCU intended application requirements.
- H. Provide an ISS where indicated on the drawings each ISS shall provide at a minimum the following on-board integral I/O without the consumption of any inputs and/or outputs at the host LCU or TCU:
  - 1. Temperature Sensor
    - a. Sensing Element: 10k Thermistor
    - b. Accuracy:  $\pm 0.9$  °F
    - c. Resolution:  $\pm 0.18$  °F
    - d. Range: 41 °F to 104 °F
  - 2. Relative Humidity Sensor
    - a. Accuracy:  $\pm 3$  % RH
    - b. Resolution: 1 % RH
    - c. Range: 10 % RH to 90 % RH
  - 3. CO2 Sensor
    - a. Accuracy: 400 to 1,250 ppm  $\pm 30$  ppm or 3% of reading, 1,250 to 2,000 ppm  $\pm 5\%$  of reading + 30 ppm



- b. Range: 0 to 2,000 ppm
- c. Operating elevation: 0 to 16,000 ft
- d. Calibration method: self-calibration method eliminates the need for manual calibration and calibrates the sensor based on baseline concentrations measured during unoccupied periods in the space. Sensor shall not require manual calibration over a minimum product rated life of 15 years.
- e. Temperature dependence: 0.11% FS per °F
- f. Stability: <2% of FS over life of sensor (15 years)
- g. Pressure dependence: 0.135% of reading per mm Hg
- h. Sensing method: Non-dispersive infrared (NDIR) absorption and Gold plated optics shall be provided.

#### 1.23 TEMPERATURE SENSORS

- A. Type. Temperature sensors shall be Resistance Temperature Device (RTD) or thermistor.
- B. Duct Sensors. Duct sensors shall be single point or averaging as shown. Averaging sensors shall be a minimum of 1.5 m (5 ft) in length per 1 m<sup>2</sup> (10 ft<sup>2</sup>) of duct cross-section.
- C. Immersion Sensors. Provide immersion sensors with a separable stainless steel well. Well pressure rating shall be consistent with system pressure it will be immersed in. Well shall withstand pipe design flow velocities.
- D. Space Sensors. Space sensors shall have setpoint adjustment, override switch, display, and communication port as shown.
- E. Differential Sensors. Provide matched sensors for differential temperature measurement.

#### 1.24 HUMIDITY SENSORS

- A. Duct and room sensors shall have a sensing range of 20%–80%.
- B. Duct sensors shall have a sampling chamber.
- C. Outdoor air humidity sensors shall have a sensing range of 20%–95% RH and shall be suitable for ambient conditions of -40°C–75°C (-40°F–170°F).
- D. Humidity sensors shall not drift more than 1% of full scale annually.

#### 1.25 FLOW SWITCHES

- A. Flow-proving switches shall be paddle (water service only) or differential pressure type (air or water service) as shown. Switches shall be UL listed, SPDT snap-acting, and pilot duty rated (125 VA minimum).
- B. Paddle switches shall have adjustable sensitivity and NEMA 1 enclosure unless otherwise specified.
- C. Differential pressure switches shall have scale range and differential suitable for intended application and NEMA 1 enclosure unless otherwise specified.

1.26 FLOW STATIONS

- A. Air flow stations to utilize thermal dispersion technology.
- B. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - 1. Ebtron.
  - 2. No substitutions will be allowed.

1.27 RELAYS

- A. Control Relays. Control relays shall be plug-in type, UL listed, and shall have dust cover and LED “energized” indicator. Contact rating, configuration, and coil voltage shall be suitable for application.
- B. Time Delay Relays. Time delay relays shall be solid-state plug-in type, UL listed, and shall have adjustable time delay. Delay shall be adjustable  $\pm 100\%$  from setpoint shown. Contact rating, configuration, and coil voltage shall be suitable for application. Provide NEMA 1 enclosure for relays not installed in local control panel.

1.28 OVERRIDE TIMERS

- A. Unless implemented in control software, override timers shall be spring-wound line voltage, UL Listed, with contact rating and configuration required by application. Provide 0–6 hour calibrated dial unless otherwise specified. Flush mount timer on local control panel face or where shown.

1.29 CURRENT TRANSMITTERS

- A. AC current transmitters shall be self-powered, combination split-core current transformer type with built-in rectifier and high-gain servo amplifier with 4–20 mA two-wire output. Full-scale unit ranges shall be 10 A, 20 A, 50 A, 100 A, 150 A, and 200 A, with internal zero and span adjustment. Unit accuracy shall be  $\pm 1\%$  full-scale at 500 ohm maximum burden.
- B. Transmitter shall meet or exceed ANSI/ISA S50.1 requirements and shall be UL/CSA recognized.
- C. Unit shall be split-core type for clamp-on installation on existing wiring.

1.30 CURRENT TRANSFORMERS

- A. AC current transformers shall be UL/CSA recognized and shall be completely encased (except for terminals) in approved plastic material.
- B. Transformers shall be available in various current ratios and shall be selected for  $\pm 1\%$  accuracy at 5 A full-scale output.
- C. Use fixed-core transformers for new wiring installation and split-core transformers for existing wiring installation.

1.31 VOLTAGE TRANSMITTERS

- A. AC voltage transmitters shall be self-powered single-loop (two-wire) type, 4–20 mA output with zero and span adjustment.

- B. Adjustable full-scale unit ranges shall be 100–130 Vac, 200–250 Vac, 250–330 Vac, and 400–600 Vac. Unit accuracy shall be  $\pm 1\%$  full-scale at 500 ohm maximum burden.
- C. Transmitters shall meet or exceed ANSI/ISA S50.1 requirements and shall be UL/CSA recognized at 600 Vac rating.

#### 1.32 VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS

- A. AC voltage transformers shall be UL/CSA recognized, 600 Vac rated, and shall have built-in fuse protection.
- B. Transformers shall be suitable for ambient temperatures of 4°C–55°C (40°F–130°F) and shall provide  $\pm 0.5\%$  accuracy at 24 Vac and 5 VA load.
- C. Windings (except for terminals) shall be completely enclosed with metal or plastic.

#### 1.33 POWER MONITORS

- A. Selectable rate pulse output for kWh reading, 4–20 mA output for kW reading, N.O. alarm contact, and ability to operate with 5.0 amp current inputs or 0–0.33 volt inputs.
- B. 1.0% full-scale true RMS power accuracy, +0.5 Hz, voltage input range 120–600 V, and auto range select.
- C. Under voltage/phase monitor circuitry.
- D. NEMA 1 enclosure.
- E. Current transformers having a 0.5% FS accuracy, 600 VAC isolation voltage with 0–0.33 V output. If 0–5 A current transformers are provided, a three-phase disconnect/shorting switch assembly is required.

#### 1.34 CURRENT SWITCHES

- A. Current-operated switches shall be self-powered, solid-state with adjustable trip current. Select switches to match application current and DDC system output requirements.

#### 1.35 PRESSURE TRANSDUCERS

- A. Transducers shall have linear output signal and field-adjustable zero and span.
- B. Transducer sensing elements shall withstand continuous operating conditions of positive or negative pressure 50% greater than calibrated span without damage.
- C. Water pressure transducer diaphragm shall be stainless steel with minimum proof pressure of 1000 kPa (150 psi). Transducer shall have 4–20 mA output, suitable mounting provisions, and block and bleed valves.
- D. Water differential pressure transducer diaphragm shall be stainless steel with minimum proof pressure of 1000 kPa (150 psi). Over-range limit (differential pressure) and maximum static pressure shall be 2000 kPa (300 psi.) Transducer shall have 4–20 mA output, suitable mounting provisions, and 5-valve manifold.

#### 1.36 DIFFERENTIAL PRESSURE SWITCHES

- A. Differential pressure switches (air or water service) shall be UL listed, SPDT snap-acting, pilot duty rated (125 VA minimum) and shall have scale range and differential suitable for intended application and NEMA 1 enclosure unless otherwise specified.

1.37 PRESSURE-ELECTRIC (PE) SWITCHES

- A. Shall be metal or neoprene diaphragm actuated, operating pressure rated for 0–175 kPa (0–25 psig), with calibrated scale minimum setpoint range of 14–125 kPa (2–18 psig) minimum, UL listed.
- B. Provide one- or two-stage switch action (SPDT, DPST, or DPDT) as required by application Electrically rated for pilot duty service (125 VA minimum) and/or for motor control.
- C. Switches shall be open type (panel-mounted) or enclosed type for remote installation. Enclosed type shall be NEMA 1 unless otherwise specified.
- D. Each pneumatic signal line to PE switches shall have permanent indicating gauge.

1.38 VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVES (VFD)

- A. Refer to Division 23 Section “Variable Frequency Motor Controllers”.

1.39 LOCAL CONTROL PANELS

- A. All indoor control cabinets shall be fully enclosed NEMA 1 construction with (hinged door) key-lock latch and removable subpanels. A single key shall be common to all field panels and subpanels.
- B. All control panels to be mounted at serviceable heights. All control panels are to be hinged. If controllers are to be mounted in a rooftop or air handling unit, please install in weathertight enclosure. Control panel locations must be pre-approved by facilities. (City of Bridgeport standard)
- C. Interconnections between internal and face-mounted devices shall be prewired with color-coded stranded conductors neatly installed in plastic troughs and/or tie-wrapped. Terminals for field connections shall be UL listed for 600 volt service, individually identified per control/ interlock drawings, with adequate clearance for field wiring. Control terminations for field connection shall be individually identified per control drawings.
- D. Provide ON/OFF power switch with overcurrent protection for control power sources to each local panel.

PART 2 - EXECUTION

2.1 MANUFACTURER'S RECOMMENDATIONS

- A. Installation to be to manufacturer's recommendations. Provide printed copies of recommendations with shop drawings or product data.

2.2 GENERAL WORKMANSHIP

- A. Install equipment, piping, and wiring or raceway horizontally, vertically, and parallel to walls wherever possible.
- B. Provide sufficient slack and flexible connections to allow for piping and equipment vibration isolation.
- C. Install equipment in readily accessible locations as defined by National Electrical Code (NEC) Chapter 1 Article 100 Part A.

- D. Verify wiring integrity to ensure continuity and freedom from shorts and ground faults.
- E. Equipment, installation, and wiring shall comply with industry specifications and standards and local codes for performance, reliability, and compatibility.

## 2.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Work, materials, and equipment shall comply with rules and regulations of applicable local, state, and federal codes and ordinances.
- B. Continually monitor field installation for code compliance and workmanship quality.
- C. Contractor shall arrange for work inspection by authorities having jurisdiction over the work.

## 2.4 ELECTRICAL WIRING

- A. All electrical work (except for motor feeders, wiring between motors, motor controllers, feeder panels, fuses, circuit breakers and bus bars) required for automatic temperature control systems shall be provided by the automatic temperature control contractor. Work shall include but not be limited to time switches, damper motors, damper switches, electric thermostats, electric relays, E/P switches, interlocking wiring, wire, conduit, etc.
- B. All 115 volt power required for control purposes shall be provided by the control contractor from a source established by the electrical contractor. This work shall be performed by a licensed electrician, either employed by the automatic temperature controls contractor, or hired by the automatic temperature controls contractor as a subcontractor.
- C. The automatic temperature controls contractor shall include wiring diagrams in his/her shop drawing submittals fully coordinated with the electrical contractor's work. It shall be the automatic temperature control contractor's responsibility to provide all wiring and conduit as required to achieve the function called for in these specifications, conforming with local codes for material and installation. The Division 26 specifications for the project's electrical work are to be followed.
- D. Furnish a certificate indicating the method of wiring compliance with local codes as part of the first shop drawing submittal.
- E. Control and interlock wiring and installation shall comply with Division 26, national and local electrical codes, ANSI/NFPA 70, manufacturer's recommendations, and the requirements listed below. Where there is a disagreement between these requirements, the most stringent requirement shall apply for bidding purposes. Notify the Engineer of any disagreement in requirements.
  - 1. Electrical wiring, terminal blocks and other high voltage contacts shall be fully enclosed or properly guarded and marked to prevent accidental injury to personnel.
  - 2. All wiring associated with and required by the BAS shall be the responsibility of this contractor.
    - a. The term "wiring" shall be construed to include furnishing of wire, conduit, and miscellaneous material and labor as required to install a total working system.
    - b. If departures from the contract documents are deemed necessary by the contractor, details of such departures, including changes in related portions of the project and the reasons therefore, shall be submitted with the drawings to the Engineer for approval.
  - 3. NEC Class 1 (line voltage) wiring shall be UL listed in approved raceway as specified by NEC.

4. Low-voltage wiring shall meet NEC Class 2 requirements. Sub fuse low-voltage power circuits as required to meet Class 2 current limit.
5. NEC Class 2 (current-limited) wires not in raceway but in concealed and accessible locations such as return air plenums shall be UL listed for the intended application.
6. Install wiring in raceway where subject to mechanical damage and at levels below 3 m (10ft) in mechanical, electrical, or service rooms.
7. Install Class 1 and Class 2 wiring in separate raceways. Boxes and panels containing high-voltage wiring and equipment shall not be used for low-voltage wiring except for the purpose of interfacing the two through relays and transformers.
8. Do not install wiring in raceway containing tubing.
9. Run exposed Class 2 wiring parallel to a surface or perpendicular to it and tie neatly at 10 ft. intervals
10. Use structural members to support or anchor plenum cables without raceway. Do not use ductwork, electrical raceways, piping, or ceiling suspension systems to support or anchor cables.
11. Secure raceways with raceway clamps fastened to structure and spaced according to code requirements. Raceways and pull boxes shall not be hung on or attached to ductwork, electrical raceways, piping, or ceiling suspension systems.
12. Size raceway and select wire size and type in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and NEC requirements.
  - a. Include one pull string in each raceway.
13. Use color-coded conductors throughout.
14. Locate control and status relays in designated enclosures only. Do not install control and status relays in packaged equipment control panel enclosures containing Class 1 starters.
15. Conceal raceways except within mechanical, electrical, or service rooms. Maintain minimum clearance of 6 in. between raceway and high-temperature equipment such as steam pipes or flues.
16. Adhere to requirements in Division 26 where raceway crosses building expansion joints.
17. Install insulated bushings on raceway ends and enclosure openings. Seal top ends of vertical raceways.
18. Terminate control and interlock wiring related to the work of this section. Maintain at the job site updated (as-built) wiring diagrams that identify terminations.
19. Flexible metal raceways and liquid-tight flexible metal raceways shall not exceed 3 ft in length and shall be supported at each end. Do not use flexible metal raceway less than ½ in. electrical trade size. Use liquid-tight flexible metal raceways in areas exposed to moisture including chiller and boiler rooms.
20. Install raceway rigidly, support adequately, ream at both ends, and leave clean and free of obstructions. Join raceway sections with couplings and according to code. Make terminations in boxes with fittings. Make terminations not in boxes with bushings.

## 2.5 COMMUNICATIONS WIRING

- A. Communication wiring shall be low-voltage Class 2 wiring and shall comply with Article 3.7 (Wiring).
- B. Install communication wiring in separate raceways and enclosures from other Class 2 wiring.
- C. During installation do not exceed maximum cable pulling, tension, or bend radius specified by the cable manufacturer.
- D. Verify entire network's integrity following cable installation using appropriate tests for each cable.
- E. Install lightning arrestor according to manufacturer's recommendations between cable and ground where a cable enters or exits a building.
- F. Each run of communication wiring shall be a continuous length without splices when that length is commercially available.
  - 1. Runs that are longer than commercially available lengths shall have as few splices as possible using commercially available lengths.
- G. Label communication wiring to indicate origination and destination.
- H. Ground coaxial cable according to NEC regulations article on "Communications Circuits, Cable, and Protector Grounding."

## 2.6 SCHEDULE OF RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. The following schedule identifies the responsible Division for the installation of the building automation system. This schedule should be used as a general guide. The Construction Manager is the central authority governing the total responsibility of all trade contractors. Therefore, deviations and clarifications of this schedule are permitted provided the Construction Manager assumes responsibility to coordinate the trade contractors different than as indicated herein. If deviations or clarifications to this schedule are implemented, submit a record copy to the Engineer.

Item		Furnish By	Install By	Power By	Control Wiring By
1	Equipment Motors	M	M	E	SI
2	Magnetic Motor Starters and VFD's	M	E	E	SI
3	General equipment disconnect switches, thermal overload switches, manual operating switches	E	E	E	SI
4	Line voltage contactors	SI	SI	SI	SI
5	Control relay transformers (other than starters)	SI	SI	SI	SI
6	Line voltage control items such as line voltage thermostats not	SI	SI	SI	SI

Item		Furnish By	Install By	Power By	Control Wiring By
	connected to control panel systems.				
7	Loose controls and instruments furnished as part of the packaged mechanical equipment or required for operation such as valves, float controls, relays, sensors, etc.	SI	SI	SI	SI
8	Control and Instrumentation panels	SI	SI	SI	SI
9	Automatic control valves, automatic dampers and damper operators, solenoid valves, insertion temperature and pressure sensors.	SI	M	SI	SI
10	Duct type fire and smoke detectors, including relays for fan shut down.	E	M	E	E
14	Control interlock wiring or software bindings between, pumps, fans, air handling units and other miscellaneous mechanical equipment.	SI	SI	SI	SI
15	Non-ducted electric unit heaters and cabinet heaters, and electric baseboard radiation.	M	M	E	SI
16	Airflow control devices with transmitter.	SI	M	SI	SI
17	Air terminal devices without fans or electric heater (i.e., VAV boxes).	M	M	SI	SI
18	Air terminal devices with fans and/or electric heaters (i.e., VAV and fan powered boxes).	M	M	E	SI
19	Intelligent Devices and Control Units provided with packaged mechanical equipment	M	M	SI	SI
20	Routers, Bridges and Repeaters.	SI	SI	SI	SI
<u>Abbreviations</u>					
Furnish.		Furnished by			



Item		Furnish By	Install By	Power By	Control Wiring By
Install.	Installed by				
Power	Power Wiring Connection, Low and Medium Voltage				
SI	Systems Integrator				
M	Mechanical Contractor				
E	Electrical Contractor				

Notes to Schedule of Responsibilities:

1. Magnetic motor starters (special duty type) shall be set in place under electrical division except when part of factory wired equipment, in which case set in place under mechanical division.
2. Where a remote motor disconnect is required in addition to the one provided integral to an Variable Frequency Drive (VFD), the SI Contractor shall provide the necessary control interlock between the disconnects.
3. The System Integrator shall inform the Mechanical Contractor and the Electrical Contractor of the additional capacity required of control power transformers.
4. The Mechanical Contractor shall refer to the electrical specifications and plans for all power and control wiring and shall advise the Engineer of any discrepancies prior to bidding. The System Integrator shall be responsible for all control wiring as outlined, whether called for by the mechanical or electrical drawings and specifications.

## 2.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
- B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest.
  2. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
  3. Test each point through its full operating range to verify that safety and operating control set points are as required.
  4. Test each control loop to verify stable mode of operation and compliance with sequence of operation. Adjust PID actions.
  5. Test each system for compliance with sequence of operation.
  6. Test software and hardware interlocks.
- C. DDC Verification:
  1. Verify that instruments are installed before calibration, testing, and loop or leak checks.

2. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
3. Check instrument installation for direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, and other applicable considerations.
4. Check flow instruments. Inspect tag number and line and bore size, and verify that inlet side is identified and that meters are installed correctly.
5. Check control valves. Verify that they are in correct direction.
6. Check DDC system as follows:
  - a. Verify that wires at control panels are tagged with their service designation and approved tagging system.
  - b. Verify that DDC controllers are protected from power supply surges.

D. Replace damaged or malfunctioning controls and equipment and repeat testing procedures.

END OF SECTION 230923

SECTION 230993 - SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS FOR HVAC CONTROLS

GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes control sequences for HVAC systems, subsystems, and equipment.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" for control equipment and devices and for submittal requirements.

1.3 ABBREVIATIONS

- A. BMS: Building management system.
- B. DDC: Direct digital control.
- C. VAV: Variable air volume.
- D. DCV: Demand controlled ventilation.
- E. CV: Constant volume.
- F. AI: Analog input.
- G. AO: Analog output.
- H. DI: Digital input.
- I. DO: Digital output.

1.4 GENERAL

- A. All points required by the sequence of operation and all associated values shall be available to the operator at the BMS operator interface, as a graphical display that depicts all mechanical systems controlled.
- B. All setpoints shall be adjustable from the BMS operator interface. This includes setpoints internal to control algorithms. All commands shall be subject to override from the BMS operator interface. All control points shall be adjustable or subject to override from the same graphical page on which the points are displayed.
- C. All points for a specific piece of equipment shall be controlled by the same DDC controller unless otherwise noted. For example, and air handler fan cannot be on a different DDC controller than the hydronic control valves.

- D. All safety devices shall be hardwired to the motor controller and shall have a second contactor for monitoring at the BMS.
- E. Each failure alarm, as included in the points list and/or sequence description, shall indicate the type of equipment that has failed (i.e. chiller, boiler, fan, pump, etc) including the specific designation (i.e. Hot Water Pump HWP-1).
- F. Alarming devices (freezestats, etc.) shall be wired so that contacts are open in the alarm condition. All alarm points shall be have audible and visual annunciation at the BMS. All alarm points with varying parameters shall be have operator adjustable limits.
- G. Freezestats must read a freeze condition for a period of 15 seconds (adjustable) prior to shutting down an air handling unit. Manual reset at the BMS shall be required to allow system restart.
- H. Air pressure switches shall require manual reset at the switch to allow system restart. Remote reset capability at the BMS workstation shall not be provided.
- I. When a piece of equipment is disabled, all associated alarms shall be inhibited.
- J. All control devices exposed to outdoor air conditions shall be specifically designed by manufacturer for outside air conditions, including but not limited to weatherproof NEMA 3R or NEMA 4X enclosures.
- K. When a motor controller is equipped with a Hand-Off-Auto (HOA) switch, the motor shall only be controlled by the BMS when the switch is in the "Auto" position.
- L. Pressure safeties, interlocked dampers, freezestats, fire alarm system devices, etc. shall be hardwired to the motor controller to shut down motors when the HOA is in "Hand" and "Auto" positions. Override of safeties shall not be possible, except for fire alarm system override of freezestats for smoke control functions.
- M. Where fans and dampers are to be hardwire interlocked, provide control wiring between the fan motor terminal strip and damper, such that the damper must be open, as detected by an end switch, before the motor is energized. Hardwire interlock shall function when the motor controller HOA switch is in "Hand" and "Auto" positions.
- N. Data Logging: BAS shall be able to trend all monitored values within a period of 1 year. The frequency of recording shall be adjustable from every 1 minute to 1 hour. The trends shall be able to be printed in the Microsoft Excel format with clearly defined headings.
- O. Automatic temperature controls contractor shall be responsible for providing for all automatic temperature controls scope indicated in the drawings, as well as in the mechanical specifications.
- P. For all mechanical equipment furnished and installed under this project, the automatic temperature controls contractor shall mount and wire all control components that are shipped with the unit that are not factory installed. This shall include, but not be limited to, manufacturer-supplied wall mounted temperature sensors, wall-mounted controllers, etc.
- Q. For all mechanical equipment furnished and installed under this project, the automatic temperature controls contractor shall furnish, mount, and wire any additional components not provided by the unit manufacturer, to achieve a completely operational system. This shall include, but not be limited to, any devices required to interface to the unit.
- R. Points lists are provided for convenience, but are not all inclusive. The BMS contractor shall be responsible for providing all points, devices, sensors, and control wiring necessary to accomplish the

specified sequences of operations. All points required to provide the sequence of operations shall be included in the BMS contractor's bid as if listed.

- S. In the case of a discrepancy, the worst case or highest cost shall apply for bidding purposes. The automatic temperature controls contractor shall notify the engineer of any discrepancy via RFI prior to bid and prior to performing the associated work.
  - T. Safeties for each piece of equipment shall be visually represented at the graphic for that piece of equipment.
  - U. Each BMS graphic view shall include a shortcut to the associated written sequence of operations for the equipment represented on that view.
  - V. All equipment and device locations shall be identified by room number on the associated BMS graphic, and shall be displayed visually on a floor plan when selected.
  - W. All hot water and steam control valves for air handlers and terminal units shall fail in the open position. Fail-in-place or fail-closed valves shall not be acceptable.
- 1.5 FAN COIL UNIT WITH A HOT WATER HEATING COIL, CHILLED WATER COOLING COIL, AND OUTSIDE AIR INTAKE (FCU-WV-1)
- A. Safeties
    - 1. A freezestat installed on the discharge of the heating coil shall disable the unit upon sensing a temperature below 40°F (adj.) and generate an alarm at the BMS. The hot water or steam control valve shall modulate as necessary to maintain a heating coil discharge air temperature of 45°F (adj.).
  - B. The BMS contractor shall furnish, install, and wire a BMS space thermostat, modulating control valve for hot water, and modulating control valve for chilled water.
  - C. During occupied hours, the blower shall run continuously, the outside air damper shall open, the hot water or steam control valve shall modulate to maintain the space temperature heating setpoint of 70°F (adj), and the chilled water control valve shall modulate to maintain the space temperature cooling setpoint of 75°F (adj).
  - D. During unoccupied hours, the blower shall cycle with heating but otherwise be off, the outside air damper shall close, the hot water or steam control valve shall modulate to maintain the space temperature heating setpoint of 60°F (adj), and the chilled water control valve shall modulate to maintain the space temperature cooling setpoint of 85°F (adj).
  - E. When the boiler plant is disabled, heating shall be locked out.
  - F. When the chiller plant is disabled, cooling shall be locked out.
  - G. A visual notification shall be generated at the BMS operator workstation when differential pressure across the filter exceeds 0.5 inches water column (adj.).
  - H. Provide the following points hardwired to the BMS:
    - 1. Fans:
      - a. DI: Supply fan on/off status via current sensor.

- b. DO: Supply fan enable/disable command.
- 2. Valves:
  - a. AI: Chilled water valve position monitoring (0-100%).
  - b. AO: Chilled water valve position control (0-100%).
  - c. AI: Hot water valve position monitoring (0-100%).
  - d. AO: Hot water valve position control (0-100%).
- 3. Space temperature:
  - a. AI: Space temperature via wall-mounted temperature sensor (°F).
- 4. Water temperature:
  - a. AI: Chilled water supply temperature (°F).
  - b. AI: Chilled water return temperature (°F).
  - c. AI: Hot water supply temperature (°F).
  - d. AI: Hot water return temperature (°F).
- 5. Filters:
  - a. DI: Filter differential pressure status (inches w.c.).
- I. Provide the following points on the associated equipment graphic, in addition to the hardwired points indicated above:
  - 1. General Status:
    - a. Unit status (enabled/disabled).
    - b. Unit command (enable/disable).
  - 2. Space temperature:
    - a. Space temperature occupied mode heating set point (°F).
    - b. Space temperature unoccupied mode heating set point (°F).
  - 3. Filters:
    - a. Dirty filter alarm.
  - 4. Occupancy Schedule:
    - a. 24 hour/day, 365 day/week occupied/unoccupied schedule for each unit, operator programmable in 5-minute increments, with graphical calendar interface, and command option to reset to default global setting.

1.6 FAN COIL UNIT WITH A HOT WATER HEATING COIL, CHILLED WATER COOLING COIL, AND NO OUTSIDE AIR INTAKE (FCU-WV-2)

A. Safeties

1. A freezestat installed on the discharge of the heating coil shall disable the unit upon sensing a temperature below 40°F (adj.) and generate an alarm at the BMS. The hot water or steam control valve shall modulate as necessary to maintain a heating coil discharge air temperature of 45°F (adj.).
- B. The BMS contractor shall furnish, install, and wire a BMS space thermostat, modulating control valve for hot water, and modulating control valve for chilled water.
- C. During occupied hours, the blower shall cycle with heating but otherwise be off, the hot water or steam control valve shall modulate to maintain the space temperature heating setpoint of 70°F (adj), and the chilled water control valve shall modulate to maintain the space temperature cooling setpoint of 75°F (adj).
- D. During unoccupied hours, the blower shall cycle with heating but otherwise be off, the hot water control valve shall modulate to maintain the space temperature heating setpoint of 60°F (adj), and the chilled water control valve shall modulate to maintain the space temperature cooling setpoint of 85°F (adj).
- E. When the boiler plant is disabled, heating shall be locked out.
- F. When the chiller plant is disabled, cooling shall be locked out.
- G. A visual notification shall be generated at the BMS operator workstation when differential pressure across the filter exceeds 0.5 inches water column (adj.).
- H. Provide the following points hardwired to the BMS:
1. Fans:
    - a. DI: Supply fan on/off status via current sensor.
    - b. DO: Supply fan enable/disable command.
  2. Valves:
    - a. AI: Chilled water valve position monitoring (0-100%).
    - b. AO: Chilled water valve position control (0-100%).
    - c. AI: Hot water valve position monitoring (0-100%).
    - d. AO: Hot water valve position control (0-100%).
  3. Space temperature:
    - a. AI: Space temperature via wall-mounted temperature sensor (°F).
  4. Water temperature:
    - a. AI: Chilled water supply temperature (°F).

- b. AI: Chilled water return temperature (°F).
    - c. AI: Hot water supply temperature (°F).
    - d. AI: Hot water return temperature (°F).
  - 5. Filters:
    - a. DI: Filter differential pressure status (inches w.c.).
- I. Provide the following points on the associated equipment graphic, in addition to the hardwired points indicated above:
  - 1. General Status:
    - a. Unit status (enabled/disabled).
    - b. Unit command (enable/disable).
  - 2. Space temperature:
    - a. Space temperature occupied mode heating set point (°F).
    - b. Space temperature unoccupied mode heating set point (°F).
  - 3. Filters:
    - a. Dirty filter alarm.
  - 4. Occupancy Schedule:
    - a. 24 hour/day, 365 day/week occupied/unoccupied schedule for each unit, operator programmable in 5-minute increments, with graphical calendar interface, and command option to reset to default global setting.
- 1.7 FAN COIL UNIT WITH A STEAM HEATING COIL, DUAL-TEMPERATURE HOT/CHILLED WATER COIL FOR FUTURE USE, AND OUTSIDE AIR INTAKE (FCU-AH-1, FCU-GR-1, FCU-GR-2, & FCU-HS-1)
  - A. Safeties
    - 1. A freezestat installed on the discharge of the heating coil shall disable the unit upon sensing a temperature below 40°F (adj.) and generate an alarm at the BMS. The hot water or steam control valve shall modulate as necessary to maintain a heating coil discharge air temperature of 45°F (adj.).
  - B. The BMS contractor shall furnish, install, and wire a BMS space thermostat and modulating control valve for steam.
  - C. During occupied hours, the blower shall run continuously, the outside air damper shall open, and the steam control valve shall modulate to maintain the space temperature heating setpoint of 70°F (adj.).



- D. During unoccupied hours, the blower shall cycle with heating but otherwise be off, the outside air damper shall close, and the steam control valve shall modulate to maintain the space temperature heating setpoint of 60°F (adj).
- E. When the boiler plant is disabled, heating shall be locked out.
- F. The dual-temperature coil shall not be connected to piping or provided with a control valve under this project. Piping and controls for the dual-temperature coil shall be provided under a separate future project.
- G. A visual notification shall be generated at the BMS operator workstation when differential pressure across the filter exceeds 0.5 inches water column (adj.).
- H. Provide the following points hardwired to the BMS:
  - 1. Fans:
    - a. DI: Supply fan on/off status via current sensor.
    - b. DO: Supply fan enable/disable command.
  - 2. Valves:
    - a. AI: Steam valve position monitoring (0-100%).
    - b. AO: Steam valve position control (0-100%).
  - 3. Space temperature:
    - a. AI: Space temperature via wall-mounted temperature sensor (°F).
  - 4. Filters:
    - a. DI: Filter differential pressure status (inches w.c.).
- I. Provide the following points on the associated equipment graphic, in addition to the hardwired points indicated above:
  - 1. General Status:
    - a. Unit status (enabled/disabled).
    - b. Unit command (enable/disable).
  - 2. Space temperature:
    - a. Space temperature occupied mode heating set point (°F).
    - b. Space temperature unoccupied mode heating set point (°F).
  - 3. Filters:
    - a. Dirty filter alarm.

4. Occupancy Schedule:

- a. 24 hour/day, 365 day/week occupied/unoccupied schedule for each unit, operator programmable in 5-minute increments, with graphical calendar interface, and command option to reset to default global setting.

1.8 FAN COIL UNIT WITH A STEAM HEATING COIL, DUAL-TEMPERATURE HOT/CHILLED WATER COIL FOR FUTURE USE, AND NO OUTSIDE AIR INTAKE (FCU-AH-2, FCU-GR-3, FCU-HS-2, & FCU-HS-3)

A. Safeties

- 1. A freezestat installed on the discharge of the heating coil shall disable the unit upon sensing a temperature below 40°F (adj.) and generate an alarm at the BMS. The hot water or steam control valve shall modulate as necessary to maintain a heating coil discharge air temperature of 45°F (adj.).
- B. The BMS contractor shall furnish, install, and wire a BMS space thermostat and modulating control valve for steam.
- C. During occupied hours, the blower shall run continuously, the outside air damper shall open, and the steam control valve shall modulate to maintain the space temperature heating setpoint of 70°F (adj.).
- D. During occupied hours, the blower shall cycle with heating but otherwise be off, and the steam control valve shall modulate to maintain the space temperature heating setpoint of 70°F (adj.).
- E. During unoccupied hours, the blower shall cycle with heating but otherwise be off, and the steam control valve shall modulate to maintain the space temperature heating setpoint of 60°F (adj.).
- F. When the boiler plant is disabled, heating shall be locked out.
- G. The dual-temperature coil shall not be connected to piping or provided with a control valve under this project. Piping and controls for the dual-temperature coil shall be provided under a separate future project.
- H. A visual notification shall be generated at the BMS operator workstation when differential pressure across the filter exceeds 0.5 inches water column (adj.).
- I. Provide the following points hardwired to the BMS:
  - 1. Fans:
    - a. DI: Supply fan on/off status via current sensor.
    - b. DO: Supply fan enable/disable command.
  - 2. Valves:
    - a. AI: Steam valve position monitoring (0-100%).
    - b. AO: Steam valve position control (0-100%).
  - 3. Space temperature:

- a. AI: Space temperature via wall-mounted temperature sensor (°F).
- 4. Filters:
  - a. DI: Filter differential pressure status (inches w.c.).
- J. Provide the following points on the associated equipment graphic, in addition to the hardwired points indicated above:
  - 1. General Status:
    - a. Unit status (enabled/disabled).
    - b. Unit command (enable/disable).
  - 2. Space temperature:
    - a. Space temperature occupied mode heating set point (°F).
    - b. Space temperature unoccupied mode heating set point (°F).
  - 3. Filters:
    - a. Dirty filter alarm.
  - 4. Occupancy Schedule:
    - a. 24 hour/day, 365 day/week occupied/unoccupied schedule for each unit, operator programmable in 5-minute increments, with graphical calendar interface, and command option to reset to default global setting.
- 1.9 GENERAL EXHAUST FANS (EF-GR-1)
  - A. The fan shall run whenever the facility is occupied. The fan shall be de-energized whenever the facility is unoccupied.
  - B. Provide the following points hardwired to the BMS:
    - 1. Fan:
      - a. DO: Exhaust fan enable/disable command.
  - C. Provide the following points on the associated equipment graphic, in addition to the hardwired points indicated above:
    - 1. Occupancy Schedule:
      - a. 24 hour/day, 365 day/week occupied/unoccupied schedule for each unit, operator programmable in 5-minute increments, with graphical calendar interface, and command option to reset to default global setting.

END OF SECTION 230993

SECTION 232113 - HYDRONIC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes pipe and fitting materials and joining methods for the following:

- 1. Hot-water heating piping.
- 2. Chilled-water piping.
- 3. Makeup-water piping.
- 4. Condensate-drain piping.
- 5. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

- 1. Steel pipe and fittings
- 2. Copper pipe and fittings

- B. Delegated-Design Submittal:

- 1. Design calculations and detailed fabrication and assembly of pipe anchors and alignment guides, hangers and supports for multiple pipes, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to the building structure.
- 2. Locations of pipe anchors and alignment guides and expansion joints and loops.
- 3. Locations of and details for penetrations, including sleeves and sleeve seals for exterior walls, floors, basement, and foundation walls.
- 4. Locations of and details for penetration and firestopping for fire- and smoke-rated wall and floor and ceiling assemblies.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Piping layout, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

- 1. Suspended ceiling components.
- 2. Other building services.
- 3. Structural members.

- B. Qualification Data: For Installer.

- C. Welding certificates.

- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
- B. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- C. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
  - 1. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.
  - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 150 psig at 220 deg F.
  - 2. Chilled-Water Piping: 150 psig at 150 deg F.
  - 3. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig at 150 deg F.
  - 4. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F.
  - 5. Air-Vent Piping: 200 deg F.
  - 6. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L or K.
- B. Wrought copper fittings.

2.3 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; welded and seamless, Grade B, and wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- B. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- C. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- D. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.
- E. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
  - 1. Material Group: 1.1.
  - 2. End Connections: Butt welding.
  - 3. Facings: Raised face.

- F. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of same materials and wall thicknesses as pipe in which they are installed.

## 2.4 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
  - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
    - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
- F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- G. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for fluid to be handled and working temperatures and pressures.

## 2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
    - b. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
    - c. Central Plastics Company.
    - d. Hart Industries International, Inc.
    - e. Jomar International, Ltd.
    - f. Matco-Norca.
    - g. Watts Regulator Co.
    - h. Zurn Industries, LLC; AquaSpec Commercial Faucet Products.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
    - b. Pressure Rating: Match pressure and temperature rating of piping system where used.
    - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy, welded ferrous.

C. Dielectric Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Elster Perfection.
  - b. Grinnell Mechanical Products.
  - c. Matco-Norca.
  - d. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
  - e. Victaulic Company.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
  - b. Electroplated steel nipple, complying with ASTM F 1545.
  - c. Pressure Rating: Match pressure and temperature rating of piping system where used.
  - d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy, welded ferrous.
  - e. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. General:

1. Threaded, grooved, or compression joints shall not be allowed on this project, unless specifically noted below as an exception.
2. Provide a bid alternate price for the use of Viega "Pro-Press" joints instead of soldered or brazed joints for copper piping.

B. Hot water and dual-temperature hot/chilled water piping up to 220°F and 150 psig, above ground:

1. NPS 2 and Smaller, shall be any of the following:
  - a. Hard Copper, Type L, ASTM A88, wrought-copper fittings, and silver soldered or brazed joints.
  - b. Black Steel, Schedule 40, ASTM A53 or A106, Seamless, Grade B, with socket welded joints and 2000 lb class forged steel fittings.
2. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10:
  - a. Black Steel, Schedule 40, ASTM A53 or A106, Seamless, Grade B, with welded joints and wrought steel fittings same weight as pipe.

C. Chilled water piping up to 150°F and 150 psig, above ground:

1. NPS 2 and Smaller, shall be any of the following:
  - a. Hard Copper, Type L, ASTM A88, wrought-copper fittings, and silver soldered or brazed joints.
  - b. Black Steel, Schedule 40, ASTM A53 or A106, Seamless, Grade B, with socket welded joints and 2000 lb class forged steel fittings.
2. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 10:
  - a. Black Steel, Schedule 40, ASTM A53 or A106, Seamless, Grade B, with welded joints and wrought steel fittings same weight as pipe.

- D. Cold water makeup and fill piping, above ground:
  - 1. NPS 2 and Smaller:
    - a. Hard Copper, Type L, ASTM A88, wrought-copper fittings, and silver soldered or brazed joints.
- E. Cold condensate drain and miscellaneous drain piping, above ground:
  - 1. NPS 2 and Smaller:
    - a. Hard Copper, Type L, ASTM A88, wrought-copper fittings, and silver soldered or brazed joints.
- F. Air vent piping, above ground:
  - 1. NPS 2 and Smaller:
    - a. Hard Copper, Type K, ASTM A88, wrought-copper fittings, and silver soldered or brazed joints.
- G. Piping to miscellaneous gauges:
  - 1. NPS 2 and Smaller:
    - a. Red brass, standard wall, ASTM B34 seamless, with threaded joints.
- H. Safety-Valve Inlet and Outlet Piping:
  - 1. Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install all piping at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.



- K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.
- L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
- M. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.
- N. All horizontal condensate piping shall be pitched a minimum of 1/8 inch per foot of length, and shall be a minimum of NPS 3/4.
- O. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.
- P. Install branch connections to mains using mechanically formed tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.
- Q. Install valves according to Division 23 Section "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."
- R. Install unions in piping adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- S. Install flanges in piping and larger at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated, see details.
- T. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- U. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for installation of expansion loops, expansion joints, anchors, and pipe alignment guides.
- V. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for identifying piping.
- W. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 23 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- X. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 23 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- Y. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 23 Section "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

### 3.3 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing, such as steel and copper.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric nipples.

### 3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hanger, support, and anchor devices. Comply with the following requirements for maximum spacing of supports.
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
  - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet long.
  - 2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet or longer.
  - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
  - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
  - 5. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
  - 6. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.
- C. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - 1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 7 feet.
  - 2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 7 feet.
  - 3. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet.
  - 4. NPS 2: Maximum span, 10 feet.
  - 5. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 11 feet.
  - 6. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 12 feet.
- D. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - 1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
  - 2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
  - 3. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 4. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 5. NPS 2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 6. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 7. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
- E. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot intervals between floors.

### 3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M.

- E. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- F. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
- G. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

### 3.6 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.
- B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
- C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.
- D. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:
  - 1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
  - 2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
  - 3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
  - 4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
  - 5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.
- B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:
  - 1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
  - 2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
  - 3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
  - 4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure, but not less than 100 PSI. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to

- pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times the "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 2-hours, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
  6. Prepare written report of testing.

C. Perform the following before operating the system:

1. Open manual valves fully.
2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION 232113

SECTION 232116 - HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes special-duty valves and specialties for the following:

1. Hot-water heating piping.
2. Chilled-water piping.
3. Makeup-water piping.
4. Condensate-drain piping.
5. Air-vent piping.
6. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

1. Valves: Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.
2. Air-control devices.
3. Hydronic specialties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-control devices, hydronic specialties, and special-duty valves to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Differential Pressure Meter: For each type of balancing valve and automatic flow control valve, include flowmeter, probes, hoses, flow charts, and carrying case.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
  1. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the minimum working pressure and temperature ratings indicated in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping".

### 2.2 VALVES

- A. Gate, Globe, Check, Ball, and Butterfly Valves: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "General-Duty Valves for HVAC."
- B. Automatic Temperature-Control Valves, Actuators, and Sensors: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC." "

- C. Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    - b. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
    - c. Flow Design Inc.
    - d. Gerand Engineering Co.
    - e. Griswold Controls.
    - f. Nexus Valve, Inc.
    - g. Taco.
    - h. Tour & Andersson; available through Victaulic Company.
  - 2. Body: Bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
  - 3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
  - 4. Plug: Resin.
  - 5. Seat: PTFE.
  - 6. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
  - 7. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
  - 8. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
  - 9. Minimum Working Pressure and Temperature: 150 psig at 220 deg F, unless otherwise indicated in Division 23 "Hydronic Piping".

- D. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    - b. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
    - c. Flow Design Inc.
    - d. Gerand Engineering Co.
    - e. Griswold Controls.
    - f. Nexus Valve, Inc.
    - g. Taco.
    - h. Tour & Andersson.
  - 2. Body: Cast-iron or steel body, ball, plug, or globe pattern with calibrated orifice or venturi.

3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
5. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
6. Seat: PTFE.
7. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
8. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
9. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
10. Minimum Working Pressure and Temperature: 150 psig at 220 deg F, unless otherwise indicated in Division 23 "Hydronic Piping".

E. Diaphragm-Operated, Pressure-Reducing Valves: ASME labeled.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
  - d. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - e. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
  - f. Watts Regulator Co.
2. Body: Bronze or brass.
3. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
4. Seat: Brass.
5. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
6. Diaphragm: EPT.
7. Low inlet-pressure check valve.
8. Inlet Strainer: stainless steel, removable without system shutdown.
9. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
10. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.
11. Minimum Working Pressure and Temperature: 150 psig at 220 deg F, unless otherwise indicated in Division 23 "Hydronic Piping".

F. Diaphragm-Operated Safety Valves: ASME labeled.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
  - d. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - e. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
  - f. Watts Regulator Co.
2. Body: Bronze or brass.
3. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
4. Seat: Brass.
5. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
6. Diaphragm: EPT.
7. Wetted, Internal Work Parts: Brass and rubber.
8. Inlet Strainer: Stainless steel, removable without system shutdown.
9. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.

10. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV, and selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.
11. Minimum Working Pressure and Temperature: 150 psig at 220 deg F, unless otherwise indicated in Division 23 "Hydronic Piping".

G. Automatic Flow-Control Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Flow Design Inc.
  - b. Griswold Controls.
  - c. Nexus Valve, Inc.
2. Body: Brass or ferrous metal.
3. Piston and Spring Assembly: Stainless steel, tamper proof, self-cleaning, and removable.
4. Combination Assemblies: Include bronze or brass-alloy ball valve.
5. Identification Tag: Marked with zone identification, valve number, and flow rate.
6. Size: Same as pipe in which installed.
7. Performance: Maintain constant flow, plus or minus 5 percent over system pressure fluctuations.
8. Minimum Working Pressure and Temperature: 150 psig at 220 deg F, unless otherwise indicated in Division 23 "Hydronic Piping".

2.3 AIR-CONTROL DEVICES

A. Manual Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
  - d. Nexus Valve, Inc.
  - e. Taco, Inc.
2. Body: Bronze.
3. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
4. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
5. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
6. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8.
7. Minimum Working Pressure and Temperature: 150 psig at 220 deg F, unless otherwise indicated in Division 23 "Hydronic Piping".

B. Automatic Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
  - d. Nexus Valve, Inc.



- e. Taco, Inc.
  - 2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
  - 3. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
  - 4. Operator: Noncorrosive metal float.
  - 5. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
  - 6. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/4.
  - 7. Minimum Working Pressure and Temperature: 150 psig at 220 deg F, unless otherwise indicated in Division 23 "Hydronic Piping".
- C. Diaphragm-Type Expansion Tanks:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. AMTROL, Inc.
    - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
    - d. Taco, Inc.
  - 2. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig working pressure and 375 deg F maximum operating temperature. Factory test after taps are fabricated and supports installed and are labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
  - 3. Diaphragm: Securely sealed into tank to separate air charge from system water to maintain required expansion capacity.
  - 4. Air-Charge Fittings: Schrader valve, stainless steel with EPDM seats.
  - 5. Minimum Working Pressure and Temperature: 150 psig at 220 deg F, unless otherwise indicated in Division 23 "Hydronic Piping".
- D. Tangential-Type Air Separators:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. AMTROL, Inc.
    - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
    - d. Taco, Inc.
  - 2. Tank: Welded steel; ASME constructed and labeled for 125-psig minimum working pressure and 375 deg F maximum operating temperature.
  - 3. Air Collector Tube: Perforated stainless steel, constructed to direct released air into expansion tank.
  - 4. Tangential Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged connections for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  - 5. Blowdown Connection: Threaded.
  - 6. Size: Match system flow capacity.
  - 7. Minimum Working Pressure and Temperature: 150 psig at 220 deg F, unless otherwise indicated in Division 23 "Hydronic Piping".
- E. In-Line Air Separators:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Armstrong Products, Inc.
  - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
  - d. Taco, Inc.
2. Tank: One-piece cast iron with an integral weir constructed to decelerate system flow to maximize air separation.
3. Minimum Working Pressure and Temperature: 150 psig at 220 deg F, unless otherwise indicated in Division 23 "Hydronic Piping".

F. Air Purgers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
  - d. Taco, Inc.
2. Body: Cast iron with internal baffles that slow the water velocity to separate the air from solution and divert it to the vent for quick removal.
3. Minimum Working Pressure and Temperature: 150 psig at 220 deg F, unless otherwise indicated in Division 23 "Hydronic Piping".

2.4 HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Flanged.
3. Strainer Screen:
  - a. NPS 2 and smaller: Stainless-steel 20-mesh screen.
  - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 8: Stainless-steel basket with 1/8 inch perforations.
  - c. NPS 10 and larger: Stainless-steel basket with 5/32 inch perforations.
4. Minimum Working Pressure and Operating Temperature: 150 psig at 220 deg F, unless otherwise indicated in Division 23 "Hydronic Piping".

B. Basket Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen:
  - a. NPS 2 and smaller: Stainless-steel 20-mesh screen.
  - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 8: Stainless-steel basket with 1/8 inch perforations.
  - c. NPS 10 and larger: Stainless-steel basket with 5/32 inch perforations.
4. Minimum Working Pressure and Operating Temperature: 150 psig at 220 deg F, unless otherwise indicated in Division 23 "Hydronic Piping".

C. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch misalignment.

4. Minimum Working Pressure and Operating Temperature: 150 psig at 220 deg F, unless otherwise indicated in Division 23 "Hydronic Piping".

- D. Expansion Fittings: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping."

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Install shutoff-duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.
- B. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves at each branch connection to return main.
- C. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.
- D. Calibrated-orifice balancing valves shall not be utilized for shutoff service. At each balancing valve, provide a separate shut-off valve.
- E. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.
- F. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.
- G. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.

#### 3.2 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Outside of mechanical rooms, install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.
- B. Inside mechanical rooms, install automatic air vents at high points of system piping in mechanical equipment rooms only. Install manual vents at heat-transfer coils and elsewhere as required for air venting.
- C. Install piping from boiler air outlet, air separator, or air purger to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.
- D. Install in-line air separators in pump suction. Install drain valve on air separators NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger.
- E. Install tangential air separator in pump suction. Install blowdown piping with gate or full-port ball valve; extend full size to nearest floor drain.
- F. Install expansion tanks on the floor. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure that tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.

END OF SECTION 232116

SECTION 232213 - STEAM AND CONDENSATE HEATING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes pipe and fittings for LP steam and condensate piping:

1. Steel pipe and fittings.
2. Joining materials.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

1. Steel pipe and fitting.
2. Joining material.

- B. Shop Drawings

1. Piping layout, drawn to scale, including locations of pipe anchors and alignment guides and expansion joints and loops.
2. Locations of and details for penetrations, including sleeves and sleeve seals for exterior walls, floors, basement, and foundation walls.
3. Locations of and details for penetration and firestopping for fire- and smoke-rated wall and floor and ceiling assemblies.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

- B. Welding certificates.

- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:

- B. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

- C. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to the following:

1. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressures and temperatures unless otherwise indicated:

1. LP Steam Piping: 15 psig.
2. Condensate Piping: 50 psig at 250 deg F.

## 2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, plain ends, welded and seamless, Grade B, and Schedule as indicated in piping applications articles.
- B. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125, 150, and 300 as indicated in piping applications articles.
- C. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3; Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in piping applications articles.
- D. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in piping applications articles.
- E. Cast-Iron Threaded Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 125 and 250 as indicated in piping applications articles; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced.
- F. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.
- G. Wrought-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
  1. Material Group: 1.1.
  2. End Connections: Butt welding.
  3. Facings: Raised face.
- H. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel of same Type, Grade, and Schedule as pipe in which installed.

## 2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
  1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
    - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- D. Welding Materials: Comply with Section II, Part C, of ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and for chemical analysis of pipe being welded.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 LP STEAM PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. LP Steam Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Schedule 40, Type S, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 125 cast-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
- B. LP Steam Piping, NPS 2-1/2 through NPS 12 : Schedule 40, Type E, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 150 wrought-steel fittings, flanges, and flange fittings; and welded and flanged joints.
- C. Condensate piping above grade, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:
  - 1. Schedule 80, Type S, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 125 cast-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
- D. Condensate piping above grade, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be either of the following:
  - 1. Schedule 80, Type E, Grade B, steel pipe; Class 150 wrought-steel fittings, flanges, and flange fittings; and welded and flanged joints.

#### 3.2 ANCILLARY PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Blowdown-Drain Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which blowdown drain is installed.
- B. Vacuum-Breaker Piping: Outlet, same as service where installed.
- C. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed.

#### 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- G. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- H. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.

- K. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 full port ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
- L. Install steam supply piping at a minimum uniform grade of 0.2 percent downward in direction of steam flow.
- M. Install condensate return piping at a minimum uniform grade of 0.4 percent downward in direction of condensate flow.
- N. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side down.
- O. Install branch connections to mains using tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to top of main pipe.
- P. Install valves according to the following Sections or other Sections as needed:
  - 1. Section 230523.12 "Ball Valves for HVAC Piping."
  - 2. Section 230523.14 "Check Valves for HVAC Piping."
  - 3. Section 230523.15 "Gate Valves for HVAC Piping."
- Q. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- R. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
- S. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- T. Install strainers on supply side of control valves, pressure-reducing valves, traps, and elsewhere as indicated. Install NPS 3/4 nipple and full port ball valve in blowdown connection of strainers NPS 2 and larger. Match size of strainer blowoff connection for strainers smaller than NPS 2.
- U. Comply with requirements in Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for installation of expansion loops, expansion joints, anchors, and pipe alignment guides.
- V. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for identifying piping.
- W. Install drip legs at low points and natural drainage points such as ends of mains, bottoms of risers, and ahead of pressure regulators, and control valves.
  - 1. On straight runs with no natural drainage points, install drip legs at intervals not exceeding 300 feet.
  - 2. Size drip legs same size as main. In steam mains NPS 6 and larger, drip leg size can be reduced, but to no less than NPS 4.
- X. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- Y. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

### 3.4 STEAM AND CONDENSATE PIPING SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 232216 "Steam and Condensate Heating Piping Specialties" for installation requirements for strainers, flash tanks, special-duty valves, steam traps, thermostatic air vents and vacuum breakers, and steam and condensate meters.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for installation of hangers, supports, and anchor devices.
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
  - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet long.
  - 2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet or longer.
  - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
  - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
- C. Install hangers for steel steam supply piping and steel steam condensate piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- D. Install hangers for fiberglass piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- E. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches of each fitting.
- F. Support vertical runs of steel steam supply piping and steel steam condensate piping to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

### 3.6 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
- D. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

### 3.7 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Size for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.
- B. Install traps and control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
- C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.



- D. Install vacuum breakers downstream from control valve, close to coil inlet connection.
- E. Install a drip leg at coil outlet.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare steam and condensate piping according to ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," and as follows:
  - 1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
  - 2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
  - 3. Flush system with clean water. Clean strainers.
  - 4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
  - 2. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength.
  - 3. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 232213

SECTION 232216 - STEAM AND CONDENSATE HEATING PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following piping specialties for steam and condensate piping:

1. Strainers.
2. Stop-check valves.
3. Safety valves.
4. Steam traps.
5. Thermostatic air vents and vacuum breakers.
6. Flexible connectors.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Strainer.
2. Valve.
3. Steam trap.
4. Air vent and vacuum breaker.
5. Connector.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For valves, safety valves, pressure-reducing valves, steam traps, air vents, vacuum breakers, and meters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to the following:

1. ASME Compliance: Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp flash tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressures and temperatures unless otherwise indicated:

1. LP Steam Piping: 15 psig.
2. Condensate Piping: 50 psig at 250 deg F.
3. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig at 150 deg F.
4. Blowdown-Drain Piping: Equal to pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.
5. Air-Vent and Vacuum-Breaker Piping: Equal to pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.
6. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

## 2.2 STRAINERS

### A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A126, Class B cast iron, with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for strainers NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for strainers NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: Stainless-steel, 40-mesh strainer or perforated stainless-steel basket.
4. Tapped blowoff plug.
5. CWP Rating: 250-psig working steam pressure.

## 2.3 STOP-CHECK VALVES

### A. Stop-Check Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Crane; a Crane brand
  - b. Jenkins Valves
2. Body and Bonnet: Malleable iron.
3. End Connections: Flanged.
4. Disc: Cylindrical with removable liner and machined seat.
5. Stem: Brass alloy.
6. Operator: Outside screw and yoke with cast-iron handwheel.
7. Packing: PTFE-impregnated packing with two-piece packing gland assembly.
8. Pressure Class: 250.

## 2.4 STEAM SAFETY VALVES

### A. Cast-Iron Steam Safety Valves: ASME labeled.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. WATTS
  - b. Spirax Sarco, Inc
  - c. Armstrong International
2. Disc Material: Forged copper alloy with bronze nozzle.
3. End Connections: Raised-face flanged inlet and threaded or flanged outlet connections.
4. Spring: Fully enclosed cadmium-plated steel spring with adjustable pressure range and positive shutoff, factory set and sealed.
5. Pressure Class: 250.
6. Drip-Pan Elbow: Cast iron and having threaded inlet, outlet, and drain, with threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
7. Exhaust Head: Cast iron and having threaded inlet and drain, with threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
8. Size and Capacity: As required for equipment according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

## 2.5 STEAM TRAPS

### A. Float and Thermostatic Steam Traps:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Spirax Sarco, Inc.
  - b. Armstrong International, Inc.
  - c. Hoffman Specialty
2. Body and Bolted Cap: ASTM A126 cast iron.
3. End Connections: Threaded.
4. Float Mechanism: Replaceable, stainless steel.
5. Head and Seat: Hardened stainless steel.
6. Trap Type: Balanced pressure.
7. Thermostatic Bellows: Stainless steel.
8. Thermostatic air vent capable of withstanding 45 deg F of superheat and resisting water hammer without sustaining damage.
9. Vacuum Breaker: Thermostatic with phosphor bronze bellows, and stainless-steel cage, valve, and seat.
10. Maximum Operating Pressure: 125 psig.

## 2.6 THERMOSTATIC AIR VENTS AND VACUUM BREAKERS

### A. Thermostatic Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Spirax Sarco, Inc.
  - b. Armstrong International, Inc.
  - c. Hoffman Specialty
2. Body: Cast iron, bronze, or stainless steel.
3. End Connections: Threaded.
4. Float, Valve, and Seat: Stainless steel.
5. Thermostatic Element: Phosphor bronze bellows in a stainless-steel cage.
6. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
7. Maximum Temperature Rating: 450 deg F.

### B. Vacuum Breakers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Spirax Sarco, Inc.
  - b. Armstrong International, Inc.
  - c. Hoffman Specialty
2. Body: Cast iron, bronze, or stainless steel.
3. End Connections: Threaded.
4. Sealing Ball, Retainer, Spring, and Screen: Stainless steel.
5. O-Ring Seal: Ethylene propylene rubber.
6. Pressure Rating: 200 psig.
7. Maximum Temperature Rating: 450 deg F.

## 2.7 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

### A. Stainless-Steel Bellows, Flexible Connectors:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Twin City Hose, Inc.
  - b. The Metraflex Company
  - c. Duraflex, Inc.
2. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforced, protective jacket.
3. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
4. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch misalignment.
5. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Install shutoff duty valves at branch connections to steam supply mains, at steam supply connections to equipment, and at the outlet of steam traps.
- B. Install safety valves on pressure-reducing stations and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install safety-valve discharge piping, without valves, to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.

#### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- B. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 full-port ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
- C. Install valves according to Section 230523.12 "Ball Valves for HVAC Piping," Section 230523.14 "Check Valves for HVAC Piping," and Section 230523.15 "Gate Valves for HVAC Piping."
- D. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
- E. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
- F. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- G. Install strainers on supply side of control valves, pressure-reducing valves, traps, and elsewhere as indicated. Install NPS 3/4 nipple and full-port ball valve in blowdown connection of strainers NPS 2 and larger. Match size of strainer blowoff connection for strainers smaller than NPS 2.

#### 3.3 STEAM-TRAP INSTALLATION

- A. Install steam traps in accessible locations as close as possible to connected equipment.
- B. Install full-port ball valve, strainer, and union upstream from trap; install union, check valve, and full-port ball valve downstream from trap unless otherwise indicated.

3.4 SAFETY VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install safety valves according to ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
- B. Pipe safety-valve discharge without valves to atmosphere outside the building.
- C. Install drip-pan elbow fitting adjacent to safety valve and pipe drain connection to nearest floor drain.
- D. Install exhaust head with drain to waste, on vents equal to or larger than NPS 2-1/2.

3.5 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Install traps and control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
- B. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.
- C. Install vacuum breakers downstream from control valve, close to coil inlet connection.

END OF SECTION 232216

SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Double-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
3. Single-wall round and flat-oval ducts and fittings.
4. Double-wall round and flat-oval ducts and fittings.
5. Sheet metal materials.
6. Duct liner.
7. Sealants and gaskets.
8. Hangers and supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM International (ASTM).
- B. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air Conditioning Engineers, Inc. (ASHRAE).
- C. North American Insulation Manufacturers Association (NAIMA).
- D. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA).
- E. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association, Inc. (SMACNA).
- F. Underwriters Laboratories (UL).
- G. Underwriters Laboratories Environmental (UL Environment).

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Thermal Conductivity (K value): Units of Btu-inch/hour per square foot per degree F.
- B. UL GREENGUARD: Provides independent third-party, Indoor Air Quality (IAQ) certification of products for emissions of respirable particles and Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC's), including formaldehyde and other specific product-related pollutants. Certification is based upon criteria used by EPA, OSHA, and WHO.

- C. EPA: Environmental Protection Agency.
- D. WHO: World Health Organization.
- E. ASJ+: All Service Jacket composed of aluminum foil reinforced with glass scrim bonded to a kraft paper interleaving with an outer film layer leaving no paper exposed.
- F. ASJ: All Service Jacket (no outer film).
- G. SSL+: Self-Sealing Lap with Advanced Closure System.
- H. SSL: Self-Sealing Lap.
- I. FSK: Foil Scrim Kraft; jacketing.
- J. PSK: Poly Scrim Kraft; jacketing.
- K. PVC: Polyvinyl Chloride.
- L. Glass Mineral Wool: Interchangeable with fiber glass, but replacing the term in the attempt to disassociate and differentiate Glass Mineral Wool from the potential health and safety risk of special purpose or reinforcement products that do not meet the bio solubility criteria of insulation made from glass. Rock Mineral Wool will replace the traditional Mineral Wool label. Both are used in lieu of the Mineral Fiber label.
- M. ECOSE Technology: a revolutionary new binder system based on rapidly renewable bio-based materials; rather than petroleum-based chemicals commonly used in other glass mineral wool insulation materials. ECOSE Technology reduces the binder embodied energy by up to 70 percent and does not contain phenol, formaldehyde, acrylics or artificial colors.
- N. UL GREENGUARD Gold Certification: (formerly known as GREENGUARD Children & Schools Certification) offers stricter certification criteria, considers safety factors to account for sensitive individuals (such as children and the elderly), and ensures that a product is acceptable for use in environments such as schools and healthcare facilities. It is referenced by both The Collaborative for High Performance Schools (CHPS) and the Leadership in Energy Environmental Design (LEED) Building Rating Systems.
- O. UL Environment Formaldehyde Free Verification Requirements: For a product to be verified as formaldehyde free, product samples must have a measured emission factor of less than or equal to 5  $\mu\text{g}/\text{m}^2\text{h}$  at 24 elapsed hours or 3  $\mu\text{g}/\text{m}^2\text{h}$  at 336 elapsed hours. An emission factor of 5  $\mu\text{g}/\text{m}^2\text{h}$  corresponds to measured chamber concentration of 2.5  $\mu\text{g}/\text{m}^3$  for a typical building ratio of 0.5  $\text{m}^2/\text{m}^3$ . This chamber concentration is comparable to, or below typical outdoor air concentrations. This demonstrates that the formaldehyde exposure from products labeled as formaldehyde free will not contribute to airborne formaldehyde concentrations at greater levels than those found in the natural outdoor environment.

#### 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.



- B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and ASCE/SEI 7.
- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

#### 1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:
  - 1. Liners and adhesives.
  - 2. Sealants and gaskets.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
  - 2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
  - 3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
  - 4. Elevation of top of ducts.
  - 5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
  - 6. Fittings.
  - 7. Reinforcement and spacing.
  - 8. Seam and joint construction.
  - 9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
  - 10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
  - 11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
  - 12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment, and vibration isolation.

#### 1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Duct installation in indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
  - 2. Suspended ceiling components.
  - 3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
  - 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  - 5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
  - 6. Items above finished ceiling including the following:
    - a. Lighting fixtures.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
    - c. Speakers.
    - d. Sprinkler System.
    - e. Plumbing piping and equipment.
    - f. Electrical Equipment and conduit.
    - g. Building Structure.
    - h. Access panels.
    - i. Perimeter moldings.

- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
  - 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
  - 3. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- C. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."
- D. Surface Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, UL/ULC Classified per UL 723 or meeting ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- E. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame spread index of 25 or less, and smoke developed index of 50 or less.
- F. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame spread index of 75 or less, and smoke developed index of 150 or less.
- G. Formaldehyde Free Third Party certified with UL Environmental Validation.
- H. Biosoluble: As determined by research conducted by the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) and supported by revised reports from the National Toxicology Program (NTP) and the California Office of Environmental Health Hazard Assessment. Certified by European Certification Board for Mineral Wool Products (EUCB).
- I. Recycled Content: A minimum of 50 percent Post-Consumer recycled glass content certified and UL Validated.
- J. Low Emitting Materials: For all thermal and acoustical applications of Glass Mineral Wool Insulation Products, provide materials complying with the testing and products requirements of UL GREENGUARD Gold Certification.
- K. Living Building Challenge - Declare Red List Free.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL

- A. Ductwork less than 26 gauge shall not be used on this project.

### 2.2 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

### 2.3 SINGLE-WALL ROUND AND FLAT-OVAL DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Lindab Inc.
    - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    - c. SEMCO Incorporated.
    - d. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
    - e. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.
- B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension).
- C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
- D. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
  - 2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
- E. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.4 DOUBLE-WALL ROUND AND FLAT-OVAL DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Lindab Inc.
  - 2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  - 3. SEMCO Incorporated.
  - 4. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
- B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension) of the inner duct.
- C. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
    - a. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
  - 2. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
    - a. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
    - b. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
  - 3. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Inner Duct: Minimum 0.028-inch perforated galvanized sheet steel having 3/32-inch- diameter perforations, with overall open area of 23 percent.
- E. Insulation for use in Double Wall Spiral Duct; UL/ULC Classified per UL 723; maximum service temperature 650° F (271° C) per ASTM C 411; complying with requirements of ASTM C 553; Type I and Type II; and does not support the growth of mold, fungi, or bacteria per ASTM C 1338. UL GREENGUARD Gold certified and UL Environment Validated to be formaldehyde free.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Knauf Insulation; KN Series with ECOSE Technology.

2.5 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless

otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
  - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article.
- E. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.
- F. Factory- or Shop-Applied Antimicrobial Coating:
  - 1. Apply to the surface of sheet metal that will form the interior surface of the duct. An untreated clear coating shall be applied to the exterior surface.
  - 2. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
  - 3. Coating containing the antimicrobial compound shall have a hardness of 2H, minimum, when tested according to ASTM D 3363.
  - 4. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
  - 5. Shop-Applied Coating Color: Black.
  - 6. Antimicrobial coating on sheet metal is not required for duct containing liner treated with antimicrobial coating.
- G. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
  - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- H. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

## 2.6 DUCT LINER

- A. Glass Mineral Wool Duct Liner: UL/ULC Classified per UL 723. Comply with ASTM C 1071 Type I and Type II, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard." UL GREENGUARD Certified; does not support the growth of mold, fungi or bacteria per ASTM C 1338.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; Linacoustic RC
    - b. Knauf Insulation; Sonic XP Duct Liner with ECOSE Technology or Rigid Plenum Liner with ECOSE Technology
    - c. CertainTeed Corporation; Insulation Group.
    - d. Owens Corning.
    - d. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:

- 1) Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
  - 2) Type II, Rigid: 0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
2. Duct Liners meet ASTM C 1338 by applying an EPA registered anti-microbial agent to aid in the prevention of fungal and bacterial growth. The addition of a coating as suggested above MAY affect the FHC Classification of the product
  3. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
  4. Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.
    - a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. Insulation Pins and Washers:
1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch - diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
  2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick galvanized steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- C. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."
1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
  2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
  3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
  4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
  5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
  6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm.
  7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
  8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
    - a. Fan discharges.
    - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
    - c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.

9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.
  - a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.
10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

## 2.7 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
  1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
  2. Tape Width: 4 inches.
  3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
  4. Water resistant.
  5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
  7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
  8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
  9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
  10. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  11. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
  1. Application Method: Brush on.
  2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
  3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
  4. Water resistant.
  5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
  7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
  8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
  9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- D. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
  1. Application Method: Brush on.
  2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
  3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.

4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
6. Water resistant.
7. Mold and mildew resistant.
8. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
9. VOC: Maximum 395 g/L.
10. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
11. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.
12. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
13. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

E. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.

1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.
6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

F. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

G. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.8 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.



- F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
  - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
  - 2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
  - 3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round and flat-oval ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

### 3.3 DUCT SEALING

- A. Ductwork shall be constructed and erected in accordance with the following.
  - 1. Low Pressure Ductwork Systems – All longitudinal and transverse joints, seams and connections of supply and return ducts operating at a static pressure less than or equal to 2-inches w.g. shall be securely fastened and sealed with welds, gaskets, mastics, mastic plus embedded fabric systems or tapes installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
  - 2. Medium Pressure Duct Systems – All ducts and plenums operating at a static pressure greater than 2-inches w.g. but less than 3-inches w.g. shall be insulated and sealed as per the schedule below.
  - 3. High Pressure Duct Systems – Ducts designed to operate at a static pressure greater than 3-inches w.g. shall be insulated and sealed as per the schedule below.
- B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and the following:
  - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
  - 3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class B.
  - 6. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class A.
  - 7. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 8. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
  - 9. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class C.
  - 10. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class B.
  - 11. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
  - 12. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

### 3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.

1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
  2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
  3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
  4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

### 3.6 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Division 09 Section "Exterior Painting" and Division 09 Section "Interior Painting."

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Leakage Tests:
1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test. Submit duct drawings clearly identifying each section of ductwork tested with numbering corresponding to test results for that section.  
  
Rate of air leakage (CL) must be less than or equal to 6.0 as determined in accordance with the equation below:  
$$CL = F/P^{0.65}$$
  
where:  
F = The measured leakage rate in cfm per 100 square feet of duct surface.  
P = The static pressure of the test.
  2. Test the following systems:

- a. Ducts with a Pressure Class Higher Than 3-Inch wg: Test representative duct sections, totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
  - b. Ducts located outdoors, all pressure classes: Test representative duct sections, totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
  4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
  5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
  6. Give seven days' advance notice to Engineer and Commissioning Authority for testing.

C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:

1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
  - a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.

D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.8 DUCT CLEANING

A. Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.

1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.

C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:

1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.

D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:

1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.

3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
4. Coils and related components.
5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.

E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

3.9 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" and ASHRAE 62.1 Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."

3.10 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows:

1. Provide aluminum construction for all ducts and plenums exposed to weather and moisture, including outside air and exhaust ducts within 10 feet of louvers.

- B. Pressure class of all ductwork shall equal or exceed the design pressure of the air distribution system where used. Refer to equipment schedules on drawings for air handling unit and fan external static pressure (ESP) values.

- C. Supply Ducts:

1. Pressure classes shall be as follows:

- a. Pressure Class: 2-inch wg (Positive).

- 1) Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: See article "DUCT SEALING" for requirements.
- 2) SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.
- 3) SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
- 4) Where used:

- a) All supply ductwork, unless otherwise noted or connected to a higher static pressure duct system.

- b. Pressure Class: 3-inch wg (Positive).
  - 1) Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: See article "DUCT SEALING" for requirements.
  - 2) SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
  - 3) SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
  - 4) Where used:
    - a) All supply ductwork for systems with design pressure 2-3 inch w.g., unless otherwise noted.
- c. Pressure Class: 4-inch wg (Positive).
  - 1) Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: See article "DUCT SEALING" for requirements.
  - 2) SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
  - 3) SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.
  - 4) Where used:
    - a) All supply ductwork for systems with design pressure 3-4 inch w.g.
    - b) All supply ductwork from discharge of air handling units to inlets of terminal boxes.
    - c) All supply ductwork located outdoors.
    - d) All supply ductwork located within 20 feet of the inlet of an air handling unit over 2000 CFM or its associated return fan.

D. Return Ducts:

- 1. Pressure classes shall be as follows:
  - a. Pressure Class: 2-inch wg (Positive or negative).
    - 1) Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: See article "DUCT SEALING" for requirements.
    - 2) SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.
    - 3) SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
    - 4) Where used:
      - a) All return ductwork, unless otherwise noted or connected to a higher static pressure duct system.
  - b. Pressure Class: 3-inch wg (Positive or negative).
    - 1) Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: See article "DUCT SEALING" for requirements.
    - 2) SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
    - 3) SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
    - 4) Where used:
      - a) All return ductwork for systems with design pressure 2-3 inch w.g., unless otherwise noted.
  - c. Pressure Class: 4-inch wg (Positive or negative).
    - 1) All return ductwork for systems with design pressure 3-4 inch w.g.
    - 2) Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: See article "DUCT SEALING" in this specification for requirements.
    - 3) SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
    - 4) SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.
    - 5) Where used:
      - a) All return ductwork for systems with design pressure 3-4 inch w.g.
      - b) All return ductwork located outdoors.
      - c) All return ductwork located within 20 feet of the inlet of an air handling unit over 2000 CFM or its associated return fan.

E. Exhaust Ducts:

- 1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:

- a. Pressure Class: 3-inch wg (Positive or negative).
    - 1) Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: See article "DUCT SEALING" in this specification for requirements.
    - 2) SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
    - 3) SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
    - 4) Where used:
      - a) All exhaust and relief air ductwork, unless otherwise noted or connected to a higher static pressure duct system.
  - b. Pressure Class: Positive 4-inch wg.
    - 1) Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
    - 2) SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
      - a) SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.
    - 3) Where used:
      - a) All exhaust and relief air ductwork for systems with design pressure 3-4 inch w.g.
2. Ducts Connected to Domestic Range Hoods:
- a. Type 304, stainless-steel sheet.
  - b. Exposed to View: No. 4 finish.
  - c. Concealed: No. 2D finish.
  - d. Welded seams and flanged joints with watertight EPDM gaskets.
  - e. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: Welded seams, joints, and penetrations.
  - f. SMACNA Leakage Class: 3.
- F. Outdoor-Air (Not Filtered, Heated, or Cooled) Ducts:
- a. Pressure Class: 2-inch wg (Positive or negative).
    - 1) Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: See article "DUCT SEALING" for requirements.
    - 2) SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.
    - 3) SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
    - 4) Where used:
      - a) All outside air intake ductwork, unless otherwise noted or connected to a higher static pressure duct system.
  - b. Pressure Class: 3-inch wg (Positive or negative).
    - 1) Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: See article "DUCT SEALING" for requirements.
    - 2) SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
    - 3) SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
    - 4) Where used:
      - a) All outside air intake ductwork for systems with design pressure 2-3 inch w.g., unless otherwise noted.
      - b) All outside air intake ductwork located outdoors.
      - c) All outside air intake ductwork from louver to the inlet of an air handling units over 2000 CFM or its associated return fan.
  - c. Pressure Class: 4-inch wg (Positive or negative).
    - 1) All return ductwork for systems with design pressure 3-4 inch w.g.
    - 2) Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: See article "DUCT SEALING" in this specification for requirements.
    - 3) SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
    - 4) SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.
    - 5) Where used:
      - a) All outside air intake ductwork for systems with design pressure 3-4 inch w.g.

G. Intermediate Reinforcement:

1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel.
2. PVC-Coated Ducts:
  - a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
  - b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
3. Stainless-Steel Ducts:
  - a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
  - b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
4. Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum.

H. Liner:

1. Provide acoustically lined duct where listed below and/or as shown on the drawings:
  - a. All transfer ducts.
  - b. Within a minimum of 20 feet of all AC unit discharges.
  - c. Within a minimum of 20 feet of fan inlet and discharges.
  - d. Within a minimum of 15 feet downstream of the terminal boxes (VAV, Dual Duct, CAV or Fan Powered).
2. Thickness:
  - a. Liner thickness shall be a minimum of 1-inch, unless otherwise noted.
  - b. For indoor ductwork with internal liner, if the contractor intends eliminate external duct insulation, then the then contractor must increase internal liner thickness as needed to achieve the minimum R-values indicated in Division 23 Section "Duct Insulation"
  - c. For outdoor ductwork with internal liner, do not eliminate any external insulation. Provide the full thickness of external insulation at indicated in Division 23 Section "Duct Insulation".

I. Double-Wall Duct Interstitial Insulation:

1. Thickness:
  - a. Liner thickness shall be a minimum of 1-inch, unless otherwise noted.
  - b. For indoor ductwork with internal liner, if the contractor intends eliminate external duct insulation, then the then contractor must increase internal liner thickness as needed to achieve the minimum R-values indicated in Division 23 Section "Duct Insulation"
  - c. For outdoor ductwork with internal liner, do not eliminate any external insulation. Provide the full thickness of external insulation at indicated in Division 23 Section "Duct Insulation".

J. Elbow Configuration:



1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
  - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio. If radius elbows of less than 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio are used due to space restrictions, provide turning vanes.
  - b. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
  - c. No other elbow types shall be used unless specifically noted on the drawings.
2. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
  - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
    - 1) 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow. If radius elbows of less than 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio are used due to space restrictions, provide turning vanes.
    - 2) No other elbow types shall be used unless specifically noted on the drawings.
  - b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
  - c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam.

K. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
  - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
  - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: 45-degree entry. Bellmouth spin in allowed only for branch ducts to individual diffusers or registers.
  - c. No other branch connections shall be used unless specifically noted on the drawings.
2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
  - a. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
  - b. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral. Bellmouth spin in allowed only for branch ducts to individual diffusers or registers.
  - c. No other branch connections shall be used unless specifically noted on the drawings.

END OF SECTION 233113

SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
2. Manual volume dampers.
3. Control dampers.
4. Fire dampers.
5. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
6. Flange connectors.
7. Turning vanes.
8. Remote damper operators.
9. Duct-mounted access doors.
10. Flexible connectors.
11. Flexible ducts.
12. Duct accessory hardware.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 23 Section "HVAC Gravity Ventilators" for roof-mounted ventilator caps.
2. Division 28 Section "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System" for duct-mounted fire and smoke detectors.
3. Division 23 Section "General Mechanical Requirements".

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.

1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
  - a. Special fittings.
  - b. Manual volume damper installations.
  - c. Control-damper installations.
  - d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, ceiling, and corridor damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
  - e. Duct security bars.
  - f. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
  - 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304, and having a No. 2 finish for concealed ducts and No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 finish for exposed ducts.
- C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
- E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.3 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Ruskin Company (Model CBD2).
  - 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - 3. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 4. Pottorff.
- B. Description: Gravity balanced.
- C. Maximum Air Velocity: 2000 fpm.
- D. Maximum System Pressure: Match SMACNA pressure classification for duct system where installed. Refer to Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts".
- E. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.090-inch- thick extruded aluminum, with welded corners or mechanically attached and mounting flange.
- F. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, end pivoted, maximum 6-inch width, 0.025-inch- thick, roll-formed 6063-T5 formed aluminum with sealed edges.
- G. Blade Action: Parallel.
- H. Blade Seals: Extruded vinyl, mechanically locked.
- I. Blade Axles:
  - 1. Material: Corrosion-resistant, long-life, synthetic, locked to blade and formed as single piece with bearings.
- J. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
- K. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- L. Bearings: Corrosion-resistant, long-life, synthetic, formed as single piece with axles].
- M. Mounting: Vertical, Horizontal - air flow up, or Horizontal - air flow down as shown on drawings.
- N. Accessories:
  - 1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
  - 2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
    - a. Adjustable zinc plated steel weights mechanically attached to blade enabling damper to operate over wide range of pressures.
  - 3. Electric actuators.
  - 4. Chain pulls.
  - 5. Screen Mounting: Front mounted in sleeve.
    - a. Sleeve Thickness: 20 gage minimum.
    - b. Sleeve Length: 12 inches minimum.
  - 6. Screen Mounting: Front or Rear mounted.
  - 7. Screen Material: Aluminum.
  - 8. Screen Type: Bird.

9. 90-degree stops.

## 2.4 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

### A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ruskin Company (MD).
  - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  - c. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - d. Pottorff.
  - e. Vent Products Company, Inc.
2. Performance Data:
  - a. Capacity: Demonstrate capacity of damper to withstand HVAC system operating conditions.
    - 1) Closed Position: Maximum pressure of 3 inches w.g.
    - 2) Open Position: Maximum air velocity of 1,500 feet per minute (457 m/min).
  - b. Pressure Drop: Maximum 0.1 inch w.g. at 1,500 feet per minute across 24 inch x 24 inch damper.
3. Standard leakage rating.
4. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
5. Frames:
  - a. Frame: Hat-shaped, five (5) inches, minimum 16 ga. Roll formed, galvanized steel hat-shaped channel, reinforced at corners..
  - b. Mitered and welded corners.
  - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
6. Blades:
  - a. Multiple or single blade.
  - b. Opposed-blade design.
  - c. Single skin with 3 longitudinal grooves.
  - d. Minimum 16 ga. Equivalent thickness, galvanized steel.
  - e. Nominal 6-inche width.
7. Blade Axles: Minimum ½ inch diameter, plated steel, hex shaped, mechanically attached to blade.
8. Bearings:
  - a. Molded synthetic sleeve, turning in extruded hole in frame].
  - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
9. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
10. Factory Sleeve: Minimum 20 ga. Thickness, minimum 12-inches in length.
11. Actuator: Hand quadrant for 3/8 inch square extended shaft
12. Hand Quadrant Standoff Bracket: 2-inch standoff for insulated ductwork.

B. Standard, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ruskin Company.
  - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  - c. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - d. Pottorff.
  - e. Ruskin Company.
2. Standard leakage rating.
3. Performance Data:
  - a. Pressure Drop: Maximum 0.07 inch w.g. at 1,500 feet per minute across 24 inch x 24 inch damper.
  - b. Temperature Rating: Withstand -50 to 250 degrees F .
  - c. Capacity: Demonstrate capacity of damper to withstand HVAC system operating conditions.
    - 1) Closed Position: Maximum pressure of 3 inches w.g..
    - 2) Open Position: Maximum air velocity of 1,500 feet per minute.
4. Suitable for horizontal or vertical (with thrust washers) applications.
5. Frames: 5-inches x 1inch x minimum 0.125 inch 6063-T5 extruded aluminum hat shaped channel, mounting flanges on both sides of frame, reinforced at corners.
6. Blades:
  - a. Multiple or single blade.
  - b. Opposed-blade design.
  - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
  - d. Extruded Aluminum Blades: 0.125-inch- thick.
  - e. Nominal width: 6-inches.
7. Blade Axles: Minimum 1/2-inch diameter plated steel, hex shaped, mechanically attached to blade.
8. Bearings:
  - a. Molded synthetic, turning in hole in frame.
  - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
9. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.

C. Low-Leakage, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ruskin Company.
  - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  - c. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - d. Pottorff.
2. Performance Data:
  - a. Capacity: Demonstrate capacity of damper to withstand HVAC system operating conditions.
    - 1) Closed Position: Maximum pressure of 3 inches w.g.
    - 2) Open Position: Maximum air velocity of 1,500 feet per minute (457 m/min).

- b. Pressure Drop: Maximum 0.1 inch w.g. at 1,500 feet per minute across 24 inch x 24 inch damper.
  - 3. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.
  - 4. Low-leakage rating and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
    - a. Leakage: Maximum 3.7 cubic feet per minute per square foot at 1 inch w.g. for all sizes 36 inches wide and above.
  - 5. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  - 6. Frames:
    - a. 5 inches x minimum 16 gage roll formed, galvanized steel hat-shaped channel, reinforced at corners. Structurally equivalent to 13 gage U-channel.
    - b. Mitered and welded corners.
    - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
  - 7. Blades:
    - a. Multiple or single blade.
    - b. Orientation: [Horizontal] [Vertical with thrust washers].
    - c. Material: Minimum 16 gage (1.6 mm) equivalent thickness, galvanized steel.
    - d. Width: Nominal 6 inches (152 mm)..
  - 8. Blade Axles: Minimum 1/2 inch (13 mm) diameter plated steel, hex-shaped, mechanically attached to blade.
  - 9. Bearings:
    - a. Molded synthetic sleeve, turning in extruded hole in frame.
    - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  - 10. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
  - 11. Jamb Seals: Cambered Flexible metal compression type].
  - 12. Accessories:
    - a. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration.
    - b. Factory Sleeve: Minimum 20 gage (1.0 mm) thickness, minimum 12 inches length.
- D. Low-Leakage, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Ruskin Company.
    - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    - c. Nailor Industries Inc.
    - d. Pottorff.
  - 2. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.
  - 3. Low-leakage rating, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
  - 4. Performance Data:
    - a. Temperature Rating: Withstand -50 to 250 degrees F (-46 to 121 degrees C).
    - b. Capacity: Demonstrate capacity of damper to withstand HVAC system operating conditions.
      - 1) Closed Position: Maximum pressure of 5 inches w.g..
      - 2) Open Position: Maximum air velocity of 2,000 feet per minute.
    - c. Leakage: Maximum 3.2 cubic feet per minute per square foot (1.0 m<sup>3</sup>/min/m<sup>2</sup>) at 1 inch w.g. (0.25 kPa) for all sizes 12 inches (305 mm) wide and above.

- d. Pressure Drop: Maximum 0.07 inch w.g. (0.02 kPa) at 1,500 feet per minute (457 m/min) across 24 inch x 24 inch (610 x 610 mm) damper.
- 5. Suitable for horizontal or vertical (with thrust washer) applications.
- 6. Frames: 5-inches x 1-inch x 0.125 inch 6063-T5 extruded aluminum hat-shaped channel, mounting flanges on both sides of frame, reinforced at corners.
- 7. Blades:
  - a. Multiple or single blade.
  - b. Opposed-blade design.
  - c. Minimum 0.125 inch extruded aluminum.
  - d. Width: Nominal 6-inches.
- 8. Blade Axles: Minimum ½ inch diameter plated steel, hex shaped, mechanically attached to blade.
- 9. Bearings:
  - a. Molded synthetic sleeve, turning in hole in frame.
  - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
- 10. Blade Seals: Extruded Ruskiprene (Neoprene) edge type for low leakage. Mechanically attached to blade edge.
- 11. Jamb Seals: Cambered Flexible metal compression type.
- 12. Accessories:
  - a. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration.
  - b. Factory Sleeve: Minimum 20 gage thickness, minimum 12 inches length.

E. Jackshaft:

- 1. Size: 0.5-inch diameter.
- 2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
- 3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.

F. Damper Hardware:

- 1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch- thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
- 2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
- 3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

2.5 CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  - 2. Lloyd Industries, Inc.
  - 3. Metal Form Manufacturing, Inc.
  - 4. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 5. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
  - 6. Pottorff.
  - 7. Ruskin Company.



- B. Ratings:
  - 1. Temperature Rating: -25°F to 180°F.
  - 2. Leakage: 8.0 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup> @ 4.0 in.wg. or 4.0 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup> @ 1.0 in.wg., with low leakage seals.
  - 3. Maximum Velocity: 3000 fpm (15.2 m/s)
  - 4. Differential Pressure Rating: 5 in.wg. at a 12 inch blade length
- C. Low-leakage rating, with linkage concealed in frame, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
- D. Frames:
  - 1. Hat-shaped channel, roll formed galvanized steel with interlocking gusseted corners. Structurally equivalent to 13 gauge U-channel type frame. Low profile head and sill on sizes less than 13 inches high.
- E. Blades:
  - 1. 6 inch x 16 gauge (152 x 1.5 mm) maximum width.
  - 2. Galvanized steel 3-V.
  - 3. Opposed-blade design.
  - 4. Blade Edging: Extruded PVC blade edge.
- F. Jamb Seals: Stainless steel, flexible metal compression type
- G. Blade Axles: Minimum ½" (13mm) diameter plated steel hex-shaped, mechanically attached to blade.
- H. Bearings:
  - 1. Synthetic sleeve-type turning in extruded hole in frame.
  - 2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  - 3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.
- I. Finish: stainless steel
- J. Accessories:
  - 1. Actuator:
    - a. Refer to Division 23 Section "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls" to determine if each motorized damper will be provided with a 2-position or modulating actuator
    - b. Refer to Division 23 Section "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls" to determine if each motorized damper will be fail open, closed, or in place.
    - c. Electrical voltage shall be 120 VAC. Electrical contractor will provide a junction box in the general vicinity. HVAC automatic temperature controls subcontractor shall be responsible for extending power to actuator.
    - d. Mounting shall be external.
  - 2. PI-50 Dual Position Indicator Switch Package: Shall connect directly to the blade axle for positive annunciation (interconnecting arms, wire-forms, or brackets shall not be accepted) and provide full open and full closed blade indication to a remote location.
  - 3. Flange Frame. 1 ½ inches both sides.
  - 4. Factory Sleeve. Minimum 20 gauge, factory installed.
  - 5. Duct Transition Connections: Round, Oval, or Rectangular as required.

## 2.6 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. REFERENCES
  - 1. AMCA 500-D – Laboratory Test Methods for Testing Dampers for Ratings.

2. AMCA 511 - Certified Ratings Program for Air Control Devices.
  3. IBC – International Building Code.
  4. CSFM - California State Fire Marshall Listing for Fire Damper.
  5. MEA – City of New York, Department of Buildings, Material and Acceptance Division.
  6. NFPA 90A - Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems.
  7. NFPA 101 – Life Safety Code.
  8. UL 555 - Standard for Safety; Fire Dampers
- B. QUALITY ASSURANCE
1. Dampers shall be warranted against manufacturing defects for a period of 1 years.
  2. Dampers shall be tested, rated and labeled in accordance with the latest UL-555 requirements.
  3. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
  4. Damper pressure drop ratings shall be based on tests and procedures performed in accordance with AMCA 500.
- C. Fire Rating:
1. For fire partitions rated for 2-hours or less, provide fire dampers with 1-1/2 hour rating in accordance with UL-555.
  2. For fire partitions rated for more than 2-hours, provide fire dampers with 3 hour rating in accordance with UL-555.
- D. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Pottorff.
  2. Ruskin Company.
  3. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  4. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  5. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  6. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  7. Nailor Industries Inc.
  8. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
- E. Basis of design:
1. 1½ hours in accordance with UL-555: Pottorff VFD-10-D Series (Dynamic)
  2. 3 hours in accordance with UL-555: Pottorff VFD-30-D Series (Dynamic)
- F. Type: Dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.
- G. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2,000 fpm velocity.
- H. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream; Minimum 22 gauge roll formed, galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
- I. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.
1. Minimum Thickness: Minimum 20 gauge integral to frame, and of length to suit application.
- J. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- K. Blades: Minimum 24 gauge roll formed galvanized steel, curtain type.
- L. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.
- M. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.

N. Accessories:

1. Retaining Angles:

- a. SSPF-20, 1 ½ x ¾ inches x 20 gauge single side picture frame.
- b. SSPF-16, 1 ½ x 1 ½ inches x 16 gauge single side picture frame.
- c. DSPF-16, 1 ½ x 1 ½ inches x 16 gauge dual side picture frame.
- d. SS-16, 1 ½ x 1 ½ inches x 16 gauge single side, individual.
- e. DS-16, 1 ½ x 1 ½ inches x 16 gauge dual side, individual.

2.7 COMBINATION FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Pottorff.
2. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
3. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
5. Nailor Industries Inc.
6. Ruskin Company.

B. References:

1. AMCA 500-D – Laboratory Test Methods for Testing Dampers for Ratings.
2. AMCA 511 - Certified Ratings Program for Air Control Devices.
3. IBC – International Building Code.
4. CSFM - California State Fire Marshall Listing for Fire Damper and Smoke Damper.
5. MEA – City of New York, Department of Buildings, Material and Acceptance Division.
6. NFPA 90A - Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems.
7. NFPA 92A - Smoke-Control Systems.
8. NFPA 92B – Smoke Control Systems in Atria, Covered Malls, and Large Areas.
9. NFPA 101 – Life Safety Code.
10. UL 555 - Standard for Safety; Fire Dampers.
11. UL 555S - Standard for Safety; Leakage Rated Dampers for Use in Smoke Control Systems.

B. Model: FSD-140 series combination fire smoke damper.

C. Rating:

1. Fire Rating:

- a. For fire partitions rated for 2-hours or less, provide fire dampers with 1-1/2 hour rating in accordance with UL-555.
- b. For fire partitions rated for more than 2-hours, provide fire dampers with 3 hour rating in accordance with UL-555.

2. Smoke Rating:

a. 1½ Hour Fire Rated

- 1) FSD-141 – Leakage Class-1 - 8 cfm/ft² at 4 in.wg.
- 2) FSD-142 – Leakage Class-2 - 20 cfm/ft² at 4 in.wg.
- 3) FSD-143 – Leakage Class-3 - 80 cfm/ft² at 4 in.wg.
- 4) Elevated Temperature Rating: 350°F

b. 3 Hour Fire Rated

- 1) FSD-341 – Leakage Class-1 - 8 cfm/ft² at 4 in.wg.
- 2) FSD-342 – Leakage Class-2 - 20 cfm/ft² at 4 in.wg.
- 3) FSD-343 – Leakage Class-3 - 80 cfm/ft² at 4 in.wg.
- 4) Elevated Temperature Rating: 350°F

c. Air Flow Rating: 2000 fpm

d. Differential Pressure Rating: 4 in.wg.

D. Type: Dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 and UL 555S by an NRTL.

- E. Frame: Hat-shaped channel, roll formed galvanized steel with interlocking gusseted corners. Structurally equivalent to 10 gauge U-channel type frame. Low profile head and sill on sizes less than 17 inches high.
- F. Blades: 6 inch maximum width x 16 gauge, 3-V shape, roll formed galvanized steel.
- G. Jamb Seals: Stainless steel, flexible metal compression type.
- H. Blade Seals: Silicone rubber permanently bonded to blade.
- I. Axels: Minimum ½" diameter plated steel hex-shaped, mechanically attached to blade.
- J. Bearings: Self-lubricating stainless steel, sleeve-type turning in extruded hole in frame.
- K. Linkage: Concealed in frame.
- L. Fire Closure Device: Resettable
- M. Release Temperature:
  - 1. 165 °F (74 °C).
- N. Smoke Detector: Integral, factory wired for single-point connection.
- O. Mounting: Vertical and/or Horizontal (1 ½ hour rated only)
- P. Sleeve: Standard 16 inches long x 20 gauge (406mm x 1.0mm), factory installed.
- Q. Actuator:
  - 1. Type:
    - a. Electric 120 V, 60 Hz, two-position, fail close.
    - b. Electric 24V, 60 Hz, two-position, fail close.
    - c. Coordinate all voltage with the Fire Alarm contractor prior to submittal and ordering.
  - 2. Mounting:
    - a. External.
- R. Damper Motors: two-position action.
- S. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  - 2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
  - 3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
  - 4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf.
  - 5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F.

6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft., size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf.
7. Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz.

T. Retaining Angles:

1. Model:
  - a. SSPF-20, 1 ½ x ¾ inches x 20 gauge single side picture frame
  - b. SSPF-16, 1 ½ x 1 ½ inches x 16 gauge single side picture frame
  - c. DSPF-16, 1 ½ x 1 ½ inches x 16 gauge dual side picture frame
  - d. SS-16, 1 ½ x 1 ½ inches x 16 gauge single side, individual
  - e. DS-16, 1 ½ x 1 ½ inches x 16 gauge dual side, individual

U. Auxiliary switches: for position indication.

1. RRL/OCI: Shall connect directly to the blade axel for positive annunciation (interconnecting arms, wire-forms, or brackets shall not be accepted) and provide full open and full closed blade indication to a remote location.

V. Duct Smoke Detector:

1. Detectors shall be field supplied, mounted, and wired by the Fire Alarm Contractor.
2. Sampling tubes shall be field installed in ductwork by the HVAC Contractor.

## 2.8 FLANGE CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Nexus PDQ; Division of Shilco Holdings Inc.
3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B. Description: roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.

C. Material: Galvanized steel.

D. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

## 2.9 TURNING VANES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Duro Dyne Inc.
3. METALAIRE, Inc.
4. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.

- C. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
- D. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- E. Vane Construction: Double wall.

#### 2.10 REMOTE DAMPER OPERATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Young Regulator Company.
  - 2. Pottorff.
  - 3. Ventfabrics, Inc.
- B. Description: Cable system designed for remote manual damper adjustment.
- C. Tubing: Galvanized Steel.
- D. Cable: Stainless steel.
- E. Wall-Box Mounting: Recessed.
- F. Wall-Box Cover-Plate Material: Stainless steel.

#### 2.11 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  - 2. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  - 3. Elgen Manufacturing.
  - 4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - 5. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  - 6. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 7. Pottorff.
  - 8. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."
  - 1. Door:
    - a. Double wall, rectangular.
    - b. 22 gauge galvanized sheet metal with 1" thick fiberglass insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
    - c. Hinges and Latches: piano hinge and cam latches see schedule below.
    - d. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
  - 2. Frame: 22 gauge galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and closed cell neoprene gaskets for door to frame and frame to duct.
  - 3. Latches: Plated steel, cam type.
  - 4. Hinge: Zinc plated steel continuous piano type.

5. Number of Hinges and Locks:

- a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two cam locks.
- b. Access Doors up to 14 Inches Square: Continuous hinge and one cam latch.
- c. Access Doors 16" by 16" Inches and larger: Continuous hinge and two cam latches.

2.12 DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Flame Gard, Inc.
3. 3M.

B. Labeled according to UL 1978 by an NRTL.

C. Panel and Frame: Minimum thickness 0.0428-inch stainless steel.

D. Fasteners: Stainless steel. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.

E. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96; grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum 2000 deg F.

F. Minimum Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.

2.13 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Duro Dyne Inc.
3. Elgen Manufacturing.
4. Ventfabrics, Inc.

B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.

C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.

D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch- wide, 24 Gauge, galvanized sheet steel or 20 gauge aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.

E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.

1. Minimum Weight: 22 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 500 lbf/inch in the warp and 500 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

F. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.

1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 250 lbf/inch in the warp and 275 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.

- G. High-Temperature System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric coated with silicone rubber.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 17 oz./sq. yd..
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 200 lbf/inch in the warp and 250 lbf/inch in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F.
- H. High-Corrosive-Environment System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric with chemical-resistant coating.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 14 oz./sq. yd..
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 450 lbf/inch in the warp and 340 lbf/inch in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F.
- I. Thrust Limits: Combination coil spring and elastomeric insert with spring and insert in compression, and with a load stop. Include rod and angle-iron brackets for attaching to fan discharge and duct.
  - 1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  - 2. Outdoor Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  - 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  - 4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  - 5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  - 6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
  - 7. Coil Spring: Factory set and field adjustable for a maximum of 1/4-inch movement at start and stop.

#### 2.14 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install backdraft or control dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts and as indicated on the drawings. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.



1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
  2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install fire and smoke dampers according to UL listing.
- H. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
1. On both sides of duct coils.
  2. Upstream and downstream from duct filters.
  3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
  4. At drain pans and seals.
  5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
  6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
  7. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot spacing.
  8. Upstream and downstream from turning vanes.
  9. Upstream and downstream from duct silencers.
  10. Control devices requiring inspection.
- I. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- J. Access Door Sizes:
1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 8 inches.
  2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 12 inches.
  3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
  4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
  5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
  6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- K. Label access doors according to Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- L. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- M. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.
- N. Connect terminal units to supply ducts directly, except for fan-powered terminal units which shall be provided with flexible connectors.
- O. Connect diffusers to ducts with maximum 36-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- P. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- Q. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch movement during start and stop of fans.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END OF SECTION 233300

SECTION 233423 – HVAC FANS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1. SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: HVAC Power Ventilators

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 01 General Requirements
2. Division 07 Thermal and Moisture Protection
3. Division 09 Finishes
4. Division 23 Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC)
5. Division 26 Electrical

1.2. REFERENCES

A. Air Movement and Control Association Inc. (AMCA):

1. 99 - Standards Handbook
2. 200 - Publication, Air Systems
3. 201-90 - Publication, Fans and Systems
4. 202-88 - Publication, Troubleshooting
5. 203-90 - Publication, Field Performance Measurement of Fan Systems
6. 211-05 - Publication, Certified Ratings Program - Product Rating Manual for Fan Air Performance
7. 300-96 - Standard Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans
8. 311-05 - Publication, Certified Ratings Program - Product Rating Manual for Fan Sound Performance
9. 99-0401-86 - Classification for Spark Resistant Construction
10. 99-2408-69 - Operating Limits for Centrifugal Fans

B. Air Movement and Control Association Inc. (AMCA), American National Standards Institute (ANSI):

1. 204-05 - Standards Balance Quality and Vibration Levels for Fans
2. 210-99 - Standard Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating

C. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):

1. 11-r1999 - Method of Evaluating Load Ratings of Bearings

D. American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE):

1. 7-02 - Minimum Design Loads for Building and Other Structures

E. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers, Inc. (ASHRAE):

1. Chapter 45 - 2003 Handbook, HVAC Applications
2. Chapter 7 - 2001 Fundamentals handbook, Sound-Vibration
3. Chapter 32 - 2001 Fundamentals handbook, Duct Design
4. Chapter 18 - 1992 HVAC System and Equipment handbook, Fans

F. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

1. E330-02 - Standard Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Doors, Skylight and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Differences

G. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

1. 70 - National Electrical Code

2. 90A-02 - Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems
3. 92A-06 - Recommend Practice for Smoke-Control System
4. 92B-05 - Standard for Smoke Management System in Malls, Atria, and Large Areas
5. 96-04 - Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations

H. Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA):

1. 1910.212 - General requirements for Machine Guarding
2. 1910.219 - General requirements for guarding safe use of mechanical power transmission apparatus
3. 1926.300 - General requirements for safe operation and maintenance of hand and power tools

I. Underwriters Laboratories (UL):

1. 507 - Electric Fans
2. 555 - Fire Dampers
3. 555S - Smoke Dampers
4. 705 - Standard Power Ventilators
5. 762 - Standard Power Roof Ventilators for Restaurant Exhaust Appliances
6. 793 - Snow Load

1.3. SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit in accordance with Division 01 Submittal Procedures
- B. Provide dimensional drawings and product data on each fan
- C. Provide fan curves for each fan at the specified operation point, with the flow, static pressure, and horsepower clearly plotted
- D. Provide outlet velocity and fan's inlet sound power readings for the eight octave bands, decibels, and sones
- E. Strictly adhere to QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements as stated in section 1.04 of this specification
- F. Provide manufacturer's certification that exhaust fans are licensed to bear Air Movement and Control Association (AMCA), Certified Rating Seal for sound and air performance
- G. Installation, Operation, and Maintenance Manual (IOM): Provide manufacturer's installation, operations, and maintenance manual, including instructions on installation, operations, maintenance, pulley adjustment, receiving, handling, storage, safety information and cleaning. A troubleshooting guide, parts list, warranty, and electrical wiring diagrams

1.4. QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Performance ratings: Conform to AMCA standard 211 and 311. Fans must be tested in accordance with ANSI/AMCA Standard 210-99 and AMCA Standard 300-96 in an AMCA accredited laboratory. Fans shall be certified to bear the AMCA label for sound and air performance seal
- B. Classification for Spark Resistant Construction, levels A, B and C, conform to AMCA 99
- C. Each fan shall be given a balancing analysis which is applied to wheels at the outside radius. The maximum allowable static and dynamic imbalance is 0.05 ounces (Balance grade of G6.3)
- D. Comply with the National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA), standards for motors and electrical accessories
- E. The High Wind models have been analyzed and stamped by a state license P.E. to the ASCE 7-02 Standard which meets the IBC, Florida and Miami-Dade codes
- F. Each High Wind model is subject to be certified by a third party to the ASTM E330 Static Pressure Difference Standard

- G. All High Wind models have been analyzed using Computational Fluid Dynamics (CFD). The CFD simulates the flow of high speed (150MPH) winds over the surface of objects
- H. The Finite Element Analysis (FEA) is the results from the CFD and it can accurately predict the stress, strain, and deflection resulting from high wind loads

1.5. DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery: Deliver materials to site in manufacturer's original, unopened containers and packaging, with labels clearly indicating manufacturer, material, products included, and location of installation
- B. Storage: Store materials in a dry area indoor, protected from damage, and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. For long term storage follow manufacturer's Installation, Operations, and Maintenance Manual
- C. Handling: Handle and lift fans in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Protect materials and finishes during handling and installation to prevent damage. Follow all safety warnings posted by the manufacturer

1.6. WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit, for Owner's acceptance, manufacturer's standard warranty document executed by authorized company official. Manufacturer's warranty is in addition to, and not a limitation of, other rights Owner may have under Contract Documents
  - 1. The warranty of this equipment is to be free from defects in material and workmanship for a period of 1 Yr (Standard) from the purchase date. Any units or parts which prove defective during the warranty period will be replaced at the Manufacturers option when returned to Manufacturer, transportation prepaid
  - 2. Motor Warranty is warranted by the motor manufacturer for a period of 1 year. Should motors furnished by us prove defective during this period, they should be returned to the nearest authorized motor service station

1.7. MAINTENANCE

- A. Refer to Manufacturer's Installation, Operation and Maintenance Manual (IOM), to find maintenance procedures

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1. MANUFACTURER

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- 1. Greenheck (Basis of Design)
- 2. Pennbarry
- 3. Twin City

For manufacturers which are not "basis of design", refer to Division 01 "Product Substitution Procedures" for additional submittal and coordination requirements.

2.2. BELT DRIVE ROOF OR SIDEWALL UPBLAST CENTRIFUGAL EXHAUST FANS

- A. General Description:

- 1. Discharge air directly away from the mounting surface.
- 2. Upblast fan shall be for roof mounted applications for fan sizes 099-480 or wall mounted applications for fan sizes 099-300.
- 3. Performance capabilities up to 30,000 cubic feet per minute (cfm) and static pressure to 5 inches of water gauge.

4. Fans are available in fourteen sizes with nominal wheel diameters ranging from 9 inches through 48 inches (098 - 480 unit sizes).
5. Maximum continuous operating temperature is 400 Fahrenheit (204.4 Celsius)
6. Each fan shall bear a permanently affixed manufacture's engraved metal nameplate containing the model number and individual serial number

B. Wheel:

1. Material Type: Aluminum
2. Non-overloading, backward inclined centrifugal wheel
3. Statically and dynamically balanced in accordance to AMCA Standard 204-05
4. The wheel cone and fan inlet will be matched and shall have precise running tolerances for maximum performance and operating efficiency

C. Motors:

1. AC Induction Motor
  - a. Motor Enclosure: Open drip proof (ODP) - opening in the frame body and or end brackets
  - b. Motors are permanently lubricated, heavy duty ball bearing type to match with the fan load and pre-wired to the specific voltage and phase
  - c. Mounted on vibration isolators, out of the airstream
  - d. For motor cooling there shall be fresh air drawn into the motor compartment through an area free of discharge contaminants
  - e. Accessible for maintenance

D. Shaft and Bearings:

1. Fan Shaft shall be ground and polished solid steel with an anti-corrosive coating
2. Permanently sealed bearings or pillow block ball bearings
3. Bearing shall be selected for a minimum L10 life in excess of 100,000 hours (equivalent to L50 average life of 500,000 hours), at maximum cataloged operating speed
4. Bearings are 100 percent factory tested
5. Fan Shaft first critical speed is at least 25 percent over maximum operating speed

E. Housing:

1. Constructed of heavy gauge aluminum includes exterior housing, curb cap, windband, and motor compartment housing. Galvanized material is not acceptable
2. Housing shall have a rigid internal support structure
3. Windband to be one piece uniquely spun aluminum construction and maintain original material thickness throughout the housing
4. Windband to include an integral rolled bead for strength
5. Curb cap base to be fully welded to windband to ensure a leak proof construction. Tack welding, bolting, and caulking are not acceptable
6. Curb cap to have integral deep spun inlet venturi and pre-punched mounting holes to ensure correct attachment to curb
7. Drive frame assemblies shall be constructed of heavy gauge steel and mounted on vibration isolators
8. Breather tube shall be 10 square inches in size for fresh air motor cooling, and designed to allow wiring to be run through it

F. Vibration Isolation:

1. Double studded or pedestal style true isolators

2. No metal to metal contact
3. Sized to match the weight of each fan
- G. Disconnect Switches:
  1. NEMA rated: NEMA 3R: outdoor application falling rain water.
  2. Positive electrical shut-off
  3. Wired from fan motor to junction box installed within motor compartment
- H. Drive Assembly:
  1. Belts, pulleys, and keys oversized for a minimum of 150 percent of driven horsepower
  2. Belt: Static free and oil resistant
  3. Fully machined cast iron type, keyed and securely attached to the wheel and motor shafts
  4. Motor pulleys are adjustable for final system balancing
  5. Readily accessible for maintenance
- I. Drain Trough:
  1. Allows for one-point drainage of water, grease, and other residues
- J. Options/Accessories:
  1. Auto Belt Tensioner:
    - a. Automatic tensioning device that adjusts for the correct belt tension, only for single drives
  2. Clean Out Port:
    - a. Removable grease repellent compression rubber plug allows access for cleaning wheel through windband
  3. Roof Curbs:
    - a. Type: GPI Welded, straight sided curb with 2 inches of flashing flange and wood nailer
    - b. Mounted onto roof with fan
    - c. Material: Galvanized
    - d. Insulation thickness: 1 inch
  4. Dampers:
    - a. Type: VCD-23, 115 VAC
    - b. Prevents outside air from entering back into the building when fan is off
    - c. Balanced for minimal resistance to flow
    - d. Galvanized frames with prepunched mounting holes
  5. Curb Seal:
    - a. Foam Seal - dense foam tape seal

### **2.3. DIRECT DRIVE ROOF OR SIDEWALL UPBLAST CENTRIFUGAL EXHAUST FANS**

- A. General Description:
  1. Discharge air directly away from the mounting surface.
  2. Upblast fan shall be for roof mounted applications for fan sizes 060-300 or wall mounted applications for fan sizes 060-200.
  3. Performance capabilities up to 14,700 cubic feet per minute (cfm) and static pressure to 3 inches of water gauge.

4. Fans are available in twenty-two sizes with nominal wheel diameters ranging from 9 inches through 30 inches (060 - 300 unit sizes).
5. Maximum continuous operating temperature for fan sizes 098-300 is 400 Fahrenheit (204.4 Celsius) and for fan sizes 060-095 is 160 Fahrenheit ( 71.1 Celsius)
6. Each fan shall bear a permanently affixed manufacture's engraved metal nameplate containing the model number and individual serial number

B. Wheel:

1. Material Type: Aluminum
2. Non-overloading, backward inclined centrifugal wheel
3. Statically and dynamically balanced in accordance to AMCA Standard 204-05
4. The wheel cone and fan inlet will be matched and shall have precise running tolerances for maximum performance and operating efficiency

C. Motors:

1. Electronically Commutated Motor
  - a. Motor enclosure: Open drip proof
  - b. Motor to be a DC electronic commutation type motor (ECM) specifically designed for fan applications. AC induction type motors are not acceptable. Examples of unacceptable motors are: Shaded Pole, Permanent Split Capacitor (PSC), Split Phase, Capacitor Start and 3 phase induction type motors
  - c. Motors are permanently lubricated, heavy duty ball bearing type to match with the fan load and pre-wired to the specific voltage and phase
  - d. Internal motor circuitry to convert AC power supplied to the fan to DC power to operate the motor
  - e. Motor shall be speed controllable down to 20% of full speed (80% turndown). Speed shall be controlled by either a potentiometer dial mounted at the motor or by a 0-10 VDC signal
  - f. Motor shall be a minimum of 85% efficient at all speeds

D. Housing:

1. Constructed of heavy gauge aluminum includes exterior housing, curb cap, windband, and motor compartment housing. Galvanized material is not acceptable
2. Housing shall have a rigid internal support structure
3. Windband to be one piece uniquely spun aluminum construction and maintain original material thickness throughout the housing
4. Windband to include an integral rolled bead for strength
5. Curb cap base to be fully welded to windband to ensure a leak proof construction. Tack welding, bolting, and caulking are not acceptable
6. Curb cap to have integral deep spun inlet venturi and pre-punched mounting holes to ensure correct attachment to curb
7. Drive frame assemblies shall be constructed of heavy gauge steel and mounted on vibration isolators
8. Breather tube shall be 10 square inches in size for fresh air motor cooling, and designed to allow wiring to be run through it

E. Motor Cover:

1. Constructed of aluminum

F. Vibration Isolation:

1. Double studded or pedestal style true isolators



2. No metal to metal contact
3. Sized to match the weight of each fan
- G. Disconnect Switches:
  1. NEMA rated: NEMA 1: indoor application no water. Factory standard.
  2. Positive electrical shut-off
  3. Wired from fan motor to junction box installed within motor compartment
- H. Drain Trough:
  1. Allows for one-point drainage of water, grease, and other residues
- I. Options/Accessories:
  1. Roof Curbs:
    1. Type: GPI Welded, straight sided curb with 2 inches of flashing flange and wood nailer
    2. Mounted onto roof with fan
    3. Material: Galvanized
    4. Insulation thickness: 1 inch
  2. Dampers:
    - a. Type: VCD-23, 115 VAC
    - b. Prevents outside air from entering back into the building when fan is off
    - c. Balanced for minimal resistance to flow
    - d. Galvanized frames with prepunched mounting holes
  3. Curb Seal:
    - a. Foam Seal - dense foam tape seal

#### 2.4. DIRECT DRIVE INLINE CABINET CENTRIFUGAL EXHAUST FANS

- A. General Description:
  1. Base fan performance at standard conditions (density 0.075 Lb/ft<sup>3</sup>)
  2. Inline mounted applications
  3. Performance capabilities up to 3,700 cubic feet per minute (cfm) and static pressure to 1 inches of water gauge
  4. Fans are available in nineteen sizes (110 - 3600 unit sizes)
  5. Maximum operating temperature is 130 Fahrenheit (54.4 Celsius)
  6. Sound levels as low as 0.8 AMCA sones
  7. Fans are UL/cUL listed 507 - Electric Fans
  8. Each fan shall bear a permanently affixed manufacture's nameplate containing the model number and individual serial number
- B. Wheel:
  1. Forward curved centrifugal wheel
  2. Constructed of galvanized steel or calcium carbonate filled polypropylene
  3. Statically and dynamically balanced in accordance to AMCA Standard 204-05
- C. Motors:
  1. AC Induction Motor

- a. Motor enclosures: Totally enclosed air over: (TEAO)- designed to be used solely in the airstream, constructed with a dust tight cover and a aerodynamic body which relies upon the strong airflow of the fan to cool the motor, not suitable for hazardous environments.
- b. Motors shall be permanently lubricated sleeve bearing type to match with the fan load and furnished at the specific voltage and phase.
- c. Motor shall be mounted on vibration isolators and be accessible for maintenance
- d. Compatible for use with speed controls
- e. Thermal overload Protection
- D. Housing:
  - 1. Constructed of heavy gauge galvanized steel
  - 2. Interior shall be lined with 0.5 inches of acoustical insulation
  - 3. Profile as low as 9 1/4 inches
- E. Spring Loaded Aluminum Backdraft Damper:
  - 1. Prevents air from entering back into the building when fan is off
  - 2. Eliminates rattling or unwanted backdrafts
- F. Outlet:
  - 1. Type of outlet: Square
  - 2. Field rotatable from horizontal to vertical discharge
  - 3. Shall include an aluminum backdraft damper
- G. External Electrical Accessories:
  - 1. Eliminates removing the motor pack which saves time on installation
- H. Mounting Brackets:
  - 1. Fully adjustable for multiple installation conditions
- I. Access Panel:
  - 1. Once installed shall have easy access to internal components
- J. Options/Accessories:
  - 1. Vibration Isolation:
    - a. Available for suspended installations
    - b. Includes pre-punched hole for ease of installation and shall have all hardware to mount one unit

### 3. EXECUTION

#### 3.1. MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Compliance: Comply with manufacturer's product data, including technical bulletins, product catalog installation instructions

#### 3.2. EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to receive fans. Notify the Engineer of conditions that would adversely affect installation or subsequent utilization and maintenance of fans. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected

#### 3.3. PREPARATION

- A. Ensure roof openings are square, accurately aligned, correctly located, and in tolerance

- B. Ensure duct is plumb, sized correctly, and to proper elevation above roof deck. Install duct as specified in Air Distribution (Division 23)

#### 3.4. INSTALLATION

- A. Install fans system as indicated on the Installation, Operation and Maintenance Manual (IOM) and contract drawings
- B. Install fans in accordance with manufacturer's instructions

#### 3.5. SYSTEM STARTUP

- A. Refer to Installation, Operation, and Maintenance Manual (IOM)

#### 3.6. ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust exhaust fans to function properly
- B. Adjust Belt Tension
- C. Lubricate bearings
- D. Adjust drive for final system balancing
- E. Check wheel overlap

#### 3.7. CLEANING

- A. Clean as recommended by manufacturer. Do not use material or methods which may damage finish surface or surrounding construction

#### 3.8. PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed product and finished surfaces from damage during construction
- B. Protect installed exhaust fans to ensure that, except for normal weathering, fans will be without damage or deterioration at time of substantial completion

END OF SECTION 233423

## SECTION 233713 - DIFFUSERS REGISTERS AND GRILLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Square ceiling diffusers.
  - 2. Linear slot diffusers.
  - 3. Fixed face registers.
  - 4. Adjustable face registers.
  - 5. Fixed face grilles.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 08 Section "Operable Wall Louvers" and Division 08 Section "Fixed Louvers" for fixed and adjustable louvers and wall vents, whether or not they are connected to ducts.
  - 2. Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers, and grilles.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:
  - 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
  - 2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.
  - 3. Color chart for Architect and Engineer review.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
  - 2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
  - 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  - 4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
  - 5. Duct access panels.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CEILING DIFFUSERS

- A. Square Ceiling Diffusers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Titus.
  - b. Price Industries.
  - c. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
  - d. Kreuger.
2. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
3. Material: Refer to schedule on drawings.
4. Finish: Refer to schedule on drawings.
5. Face Size: Refer to schedule on drawings.
6. Face Style: Refer to schedule on drawings.
7. Mounting: Refer to schedule on drawings.
8. Pattern: Refer to schedule on drawings.
9. Dampers: Refer to schedule on drawings.
10. Accessories: Refer to schedule on drawings.

## 2.2 LINEAR DIFFUSERS

### A. Linear Slot Diffuser:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Titus.
  - b. Price Industries.
  - c. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
  - d. Kreuger.
2. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
3. Material - Shell: Refer to schedule on drawings.
4. Material - Pattern Controller and Tees: Refer to schedule on drawings.
5. Finish - Face and Shell: Refer to schedule on drawings.
6. Finish - Pattern Controller: Refer to schedule on drawings.
7. Finish - Tees: Refer to schedule on drawings.
8. Slot Width: Refer to schedule on drawings.
9. Number of Slots: Refer to schedule on drawings.
10. Length: Refer to schedule on drawings.

## 2.3 REGISTERS AND GRILLES

### A. Fixed Face Register:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Titus.
  - b. Price Industries.
  - c. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
  - d. Kreuger.
2. Material: Refer to schedule on drawings.
3. Finish: Refer to schedule on drawings.

4. Face Arrangement: Refer to schedule on drawings. Blades shall be horizontal for sidewall applications. Blades shall be parallel to the long dimension for ceiling applications.
5. Core Construction: Refer to schedule on drawings.
6. Frame: Refer to schedule on drawings.
7. Mounting: Refer to schedule on drawings.
8. Damper Type: Refer to schedule on drawings.

B. Adjustable Face Register:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Titus.
  - b. Price Industries.
  - c. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
  - d. Kreuger.
2. Material: Refer to schedule on drawings.
3. Finish: Refer to schedule on drawings.
4. Face Arrangement: Refer to schedule on drawings. Outer set of blades shall be horizontal for sidewall applications. Outer set of blades shall be parallel to the long dimension for ceiling applications.
5. Core Construction: Refer to schedule on drawings.
6. Frame: Refer to schedule on drawings.
7. Mounting: Refer to schedule on drawings.
8. Damper Type: Refer to schedule on drawings.

C. Fixed Face Grille:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Titus.
  - b. Price Industries.
  - c. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
  - d. Kreuger.
2. Material: Refer to schedule on drawings.
3. Finish: Refer to schedule on drawings.
4. Face Arrangement: Refer to schedule on drawings. Blades shall be horizontal for sidewall applications. Blades shall be parallel to the long dimension for ceiling applications.
5. Core Construction: Refer to schedule on drawings.
6. Frame: Refer to schedule on drawings.
7. Mounting: Refer to schedule on drawings.
8. Damper Type: Refer to schedule on drawings.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where diffusers, registers, and grilles are to be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713

SECTION 238239 - FAN COIL UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes fan coil units with hot-water, chilled-water, dual temperature hot/chilled-water, or steam coils.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories for each unit type and configuration.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include location and size of each field connection.
  - 4. Include details of anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
  - 5. Include equipment schedules to indicate rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
  - 6. Indicate location and arrangement of piping valves and specialties.
  - 7. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For cabinet unit heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of fan coil units and suspension system components with other construction that penetrates or is supported by ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression-system components, and partition assemblies.
- B. Coordinate size and location of wall sleeves for outdoor-air intake.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Trane (Basis of Design)
  - 2. Carrier



3. Daikin
4. Johnson Controls
5. For manufacturers which are not the "Basis of Design", refer to Division 01 "Product Substitution Procedures" for additional submittal and coordination requirements.

## 2.2 DESCRIPTION

- A. Factory-assembled and -tested unit complying with AHRI 440.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.3 COIL SECTION INSULATION

- A. Insulation Materials: ASTM C1071; surfaces exposed to airstream shall have aluminum-foil facing or erosion-resistant coating to prevent erosion of glass fibers.
  1. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
  2. Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.26 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. at 75 deg F mean temperature.
  3. Fire-Hazard Classification: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E84.
  4. Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C916 and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
  5. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- B. Insulation Materials: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B. Unicellular polyethylene thermal plastic, preformed sheet insulation complying with ASTM C534, Type II, except for density.
  1. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
  2. Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.24 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. at 75 deg F mean temperature.
  3. Fire-Hazard Classification: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM C411.
  4. Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
  5. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

## 2.4 CABINETS

- A. Material: Steel with baked-enamel finish with manufacturer's custom paint, in color selected by Architect.
  1. Vertical Unit, Exposed Front Panels: Minimum 14 gauge sheet steel, removable panels with channel-formed edges secured with tamperproof cam fasteners.
  2. Horizontal Unit, Exposed Bottom Panels: Minimum 18 gauge sheet steel, removable panels secured with tamperproof cam fasteners and safety chain.
  3. Recessed Flanges: Steel, finished to match cabinet.
  4. Control Access Door: Key operated.

## 2.5 FILTERS

- A. Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value: MERV as noted on drawings, rated in accordance with ASHRAE 52.2.

## 2.6 COILS

- A. Hot-Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch and rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig and a maximum entering-water temperature of 220 deg F. Include manual air vent and drain.
- B. Chilled-Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch and rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig and a maximum entering-water temperature of 220 deg F. Include manual air vent and drain.
- C. Dual-Temperature Hot/Chilled-Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch and rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig and a maximum entering-water temperature of 220 deg F. Include manual air vent and drain.
- D. Steam Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch and rated for a minimum working pressure of 75 psig.

## 2.7 CONTROLS

- A. Fan and Motor Board: Removable.
  - 1. Fan: Forward curved, double width, centrifugal, directly connected to motor; thermoplastic or painted-steel wheels and aluminum, painted-steel, or galvanized-steel fan scrolls.
  - 2. Motor: Permanently lubricated, multispeed; resiliently mounted on motor board. Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - 3. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.
- B. Control devices and operational sequences are specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" and Section 230993 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC."
- C. Electrical Connection: Factory-wired motors and controls for a single field connection.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to receive cabinet unit heaters for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations before unit-heater installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall boxes in finished wall assembly; seal and weatherproof. Joint-sealant materials and applications are specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- B. Install cabinet unit heaters to comply with NFPA 90A.
- C. Suspend cabinet unit heaters from structure with elastomeric hangers. Vibration isolators are specified in Section 230548 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

- D. Install new filters in each fan-coil unit within two weeks of Substantial Completion.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping," Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties," Section 232213 "Steam and Condensate Heating Piping," and Section 232216 "Steam and Condensate Heating Piping Specialties." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to cabinet unit heater's factory, hot-water piping package. Install the piping package if shipped loose.
- D. Connect supply and return ducts to cabinet unit heaters with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- E. Comply with safety requirements in UL 1995.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install union and gate or ball valve on supply-water connection and union and calibrated balancing valve on return-water connection of cabinet unit heater. Hydronic specialties are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
- G. Unless otherwise indicated, install union and gate or ball valve on steam-supply connection and union, strainer, steam trap, and gate or ball valve on condensate-return connection of cabinet unit heater. Steam specialties are specified in Section 232216 "Steam and Condensate Heating Piping Specialties."
- H. Ground equipment according to Division 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- I. Connect wiring according to Division 26 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
- B. Units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 238219

SECTION 260500 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL WORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division-1 Specification Sections, apply to Work of this Section.

1.2 WORK INCLUDED

- A. Include all labor, materials and appliances required for the furnishing, installing, and testing, complete and ready for operation, in a manner satisfactory to the Architect, all the Work shown on the Drawings and specified herein, as indicated in the following Sections:

SECTION	TITLE
260500	General Requirements for Electrical Work
260519	Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables
260526	Grounding and Bonding For Electrical Systems
260529	Hangars and Supports For Electrical Systems
260532	Junction Boxes for Electrical Systems
260533	Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems
260544	Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling
260553	Identification for Electrical Systems
260943	Network Lighting Controls
260950	Empty Conduit Systems
262413	Switchboards
262416	Panelboards
262726	Wiring Devices
262816	Enclosed Switches & Circuit Breakers
265000	Temporary Light and Power
265100	Interior Lighting
283100	Fire Detection and Alarm

1.3 SEPARATION OF WORK BY RELATED TRADES

- A. The specifications for the overall construction delineate various items of work under separate trade headings. The list below sets forth this delineation to the extent that it affects the electric work.
- B. In the absence of more detailed information, the list shall be taken as a specific instruction to the electrical trade to include the work assigned to it.
- C. Indications that any trade is to perform an item of work means that it is to perform the work for its own accommodation only, except as specifically noted otherwise.
- D. Abbreviations are as follows:

Oth = Other than Electrical or Mechanical

Plb = Plumbing  
FP = Fire Protection  
Htg = Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning  
Elec = Electrical  
f = Furnished  
i = Installed  
p = Provided (Furnished and Installed)

E.

Item	_Oth Plb Htg Elec	Notes
1. Motors for equipment Specifications	X	
2. Motor controllers for mechanical equipment	X X	Specifications and drawings delineate exceptions
3. Power wiring for mechanical equipment motors and controls	X	
4. Control wiring	X	Specifications and drawings delineate exceptions
5. Temporary light and power to accommodate all trades	X	Electric work to also include responsibility for any "one time" utility company charges for the introduction of temporary electric service
6. Hoisting, rigging, bracing and dunnage for safe rigging	X	
7. Cutting, chasing and patching	X	Cost where due to late installation or improper coordination of work is the responsibility of the Electrical Contractor
8. Framed slots and openings in walls,		Coordination of locations is part of electrical work

Item	_Oth Plb Htg Elec	Notes
decks and slabs	X	
9. Sleeves in fieldcast concrete	X	
10. Sleeves through waterproof slabs, decks and walls	X	Includes drilling of holes for other than field poured concrete
11. Waterproof and fireproof sealing of excess openings in slabs, decks and fire-rated walls	X	
12. Excavation and Backfill	X	Beyond 5 feet from building line
13. Fastenings	X	
14. Supports	X	
15. Concrete encasement of conduits	X	Beyond 5 feet from building
16. Flashing of electric conduits through roof (pitch pockets)	X	
17. Concrete foundations, pads and bases, inside building	X	Furnishing of anchors and vibration mounts included in the electric
18. Field touchup painting of damaged shop coats	X	
19. Field rustproof painting of supporting steel members,		

Item	_Oth	Plb	Htg	Elec	Notes
frames and racks				X	
20. Finished wall and ceiling access doors, panels and supporting frames				X	
21. Lighting fixtures and lamps for lighting fixtures				X	Except as noted
22. Ceiling opening frames for recessed lighting fixtures and other electrical items				X	
23. Electric heaters with integral fans (cabinet heaters) and the like	X				Line and control connections and control devices mounting included in electric
24. Electric power consumption items and controls for same as covered elsewhere	X				Line connections to control equipment included in electric. Specifications and drawings delineate exceptions
25. Rubbish removal	X				Removal of the shipping and packing materials of electrical items to designated location is included in the electric regardless of by whom the items are furnished

- F. Include in the electrical work all necessary supervision and the issuing of all coordination information to any other trades who are supplying work to accommodate the electrical installations.
- G. For items that are to be installed but not purchased as part of the electrical work, the electrical work shall include:

1. The coordination of delivery.
2. Unloading from delivery trucks driven into any point on the property line at grade level.
3. Careful examination upon delivery to the project. Claims that any of these items have been received in such condition that installation will require procedures beyond the reasonable scope of the electrical work will be considered only if presented in writing within one week of the date of delivery to the project of the items in question. The electric work includes all procedures, regardless of how extensive, necessary to put into satisfactory operation, all items for which no claims have been submitted as outlined above.
4. Safe handling and field storage up to the time of permanent placement in the project.
5. Protection from any damage, defacement or corrosion after permanent placement.
6. Field make-up and internal wiring as may be necessary for proper operation in accordance with wiring diagrams provided by the furnishing contractor.
7. Mounting in place including the purchase and installation of all dunnage, supporting members and fastenings necessary to adapt to architectural and structural conditions.
8. Connection to building wiring including the purchase and installation of all termination junction boxes necessary to adapt and connect to this wiring. Included also, shall be the purchase and installation of any connectors, cable reducers or other wiring terminations as may be necessary to adapt terminals to the building wiring as called for and to the connection methods set forth in these specifications.

#### 1.4 HARMONY OF WORK

- A. The work called for under this Contract shall be carried on simultaneously with the work of other trades in a manner such as not to delay the overall progress of the work. The Electrical Contractor shall be prepared to furnish promptly to other trades involved at the project all information and measurements relating to this work which they may require. He shall cooperate with them in order to secure the harmony necessary in the interest of the project as a whole.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. In order to define requirements for quality, function, sizes, gauges, grades, etc., documents designate Manufacturer's Brands, and other pertinent data describing products that conform to this Project's requirements.
- B. Equivalent or better products of other unnamed manufacturers may be proposed for consideration, if submitted at the time of bid with adequate documentation to determine equivalence.

#### 1.6 INTERPRETATION OF DOCUMENTS

- A. As used in the drawings and specifications for electrical work, certain non-technical words shall be understood to have specific meanings as follows regardless of indications to the contrary in the General Conditions of other documents governing the electrical work.
  1. "Electrical Contractor," "This Contractor," "This (The) Subcontractor" - The party or parties who have been duly awarded the contract for and are thereby made responsible for the electrical work as described herein.
  2. "This Contract," "The Contract" - The agreement covering the work to be performed by "This Contractor."
  3. "Equal," "Satisfactory," "Accepted," "Acceptable" "Equivalent" - Acceptable for use on the project, as determined by the Engineer based on documents presented for such determination.



4. "These Specifications," "This Section, Part, Division" (of the Specification) - The document specifying the work to be performed by "This Contractor."
  5. "The Electrical Work," "This Work" - All labor, materials, equipment apparatus, controls, accessories, and other items required for a proper and complete installation by the Electrical Contractor.
  6. "Architect," "Engineer," "Owner," "Owner's Representative" - The party or parties responsible for interpreting, accepting and otherwise ruling on the performance under this Contract.
  7. "Furnish" - Purchase and deliver to the project site complete with every necessary appurtenance and support, all as part of the electrical work.
  8. "Install" - Unload at the delivery point at the site and perform every operation necessary to establish secure mounting and correct operation at the proper location in the project, all as part of the electrical work.
  9. "Provide" - "Furnish" and "Install."
  10. "New" - Manufactured within the past two years and never before used.
- B. Items and installation methods as described in the drawings and specifications for electrical work are to be used only under normal electric work conditions as hereinafter described unless there are specific notations to the contrary.
- C. Items and installation methods as described in the drawings and specifications for electrical work are to be used only at less than 600 volts unless there are specific notations the contrary.
- D. Except where modified by a specific notation to the contrary, it shall be understood that the indication and/or description of any electrical item in the drawings or specifications for electrical work carries with it the instruction to furnish, install and connect the item as part of the electrical work, regardless of whether or not this instruction is explicitly stated.
- E. It shall be understood that the specifications and drawings for electrical work are complementary and are to be taken together for a complete interpretation of the electrical work, except that indications on the drawings, which refer to an individual element of work, take precedence over the specifications where they conflict with same.
- F. To the extent that they govern the basic work, the specifications also govern change order work, if any.
- G. No exclusion from, or limitation in, the symbolism used on the drawings for electrical work or the language used in the specifications for electrical work shall be interpreted as a reason for omitting the appurtenances or accessories necessary to complete any required system or item of equipment.
- H. The drawings for electrical work utilize symbols and schematic diagrams which have no dimensional significance. The work shall, therefore, be installed to fulfill the diagrammatic intent expressed on the electrical drawings, but in conformity with the dimensions indicated on the final architectural drawings, field layouts and shop drawings of all trades.
- I. Certain details appear on the drawings for electrical work which are specific with regard to the dimensioning and positioning of the work. These are intended only for general information purposes. They do not obviate field coordination for individual items of the indicated work.
- J. Location of lighting fixtures are diagrammatic. Refer to reflected ceiling plans for exact locations.
- K. Information as to general construction and architectural features and finishes shall be derived from structural and architectural drawings and specifications only.

- L. The use of words in the singular shall not be considered as limiting where other indications denote that more than one item is required.
- M. Ratings of devices, materials and equipment specified without reference to specific performance criteria shall be understood to be nominal or nameplate ratings established by means of industry standard procedures.
- N. In addition to their usage in codes or other industry standards, certain words as used in the drawings or specifications for the electrical work shall be understood to have the specific meanings ascribed to them in the following list:
  - 1. "Circuitry," "Circuit," "Wiring" - Any electric work (not limited to light and power distribution) which consists of wire, cables, raceways and/or specialty wiring method assemblies taken all together, complete with associated junction boxes, pull boxes, outlet boxes, joints, couplings, splices and connections except where limited to lesser meaning by specific description.
  - 2. "Motor Circuit" - Any circuit which operates nominally at 100 volts or more, and which carries electrical input energy to a motor.
  - 3. "Control Circuit" (used in conjunction with a motor for which a manual starter is supplied) - Any circuit containing an extension of power circuit wires, other than those constituting the direct connection between source of supply, starter and motor.
  - 4. "Control Circuit" (used in conjunction with a motor for which a magnetic starter is supplied) - Any circuit (other than a motor power circuit), which carries current intended for directing or indicating the performance of a motor starter.
  - 5. "Control Device" - Any device which performs a function in a motor control circuit (pushbutton, automatic contacts, pilot light, solenoid, etc.).
  - 6. "Package Unit" - An item of equipment having one or more motors or other electric energy consuming elements integrally factory mounted on a single base, complete with all associated control devices and interconnecting wiring.
  - 7. "Low Voltage" - Below 50 volts.
  - 8. "Grade Slab" - A building floor slab which is in contact with or directly over grade (earth).
  - 9. "Building" - The extent of a building, as defined by the outside surfaces of its peripheral walls, the top surface of its roof, and the underside surface of its grade slab.
  - 10. "Subject to Mechanical Damage" - Exposed within seven feet of the floor in mechanical rooms, or other spaces where heavy items (over 100 pounds) are moved around or rigged as a common practice or as required for replacement purposes.

#### 1.7 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop drawing requirements shall be as outlined under Division 1 and as herein noted.
- B. Prior to purchasing any equipment or materials and within 45 days of contract award a list of their manufacturers shall be submitted for review along with a proposed schedule of shop drawings submission. The contractor shall be responsible for any delay in review of shop drawings caused by failure to submit such data. Prior to assembling or installing the work, the following shall be submitted for review.
  - 1. Catalog information and factory assembly drawings, and data required for a complete explanation and description of all fixtures, devices and equipment, including construction, material, finishes, operating characteristics, physical dimensions and listing or labeling of the appropriate recognized agency or authority.
  - 2. Field installation drawings, as required to explain fully all procedures involved in erecting, mounting and connecting all equipment including wiring diagrams.
  - 3. Layout drawings for the main electrical equipment, such as switchboard rooms, major conduit bank runs, underground services.

C. Documents will not be accepted for review unless:

1. In compliance as to number of copies and type of paper with the requirements of the general conditions.
2. Submitted with complete identification including Project name, applicable Contract Specifications reference with Section, number and Contract Drawing reference.
3. Includes complete information pertaining to appurtenance and accessories.
4. Submitted as a package when pertaining to related items.
5. Properly marked with service or function identification as related to this project when consisting of catalog sheets displaying other items which are not applicable.
6. Properly marked with external connection identification as related to this project when consisting of standard factory assembly or field installation drawings.

1.8 SAMPLES

- A. For approval, prepare and submit samples to the Architect and Engineer in accordance with requirements set forth in the Special Sections requiring samples.
- B. The samples shall be properly tagged and will remain in the Architect's or Engineer's possession until final acceptance of the Work.

1.9 RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. During construction the Electrical Contractor keep an accurate record on a set of Contract Drawings of all deviations between the work shown and work installed. These shall include changes and addenda of this Division which exist in the completed work, including the markings and location of disconnect devices and final circuit numbers as installed.
- B. As part of the required electric work, a complete set of "as-built" or record electric drawings shall be made up and delivered to the Architect and Owner.
- C. The drawings shall indicate:
  1. All electric work installed exactly in accordance with the original design.
  2. All electric work installed as a modification or addition to the original design.
  3. The dimensional information necessary to delineate the exact location of all circuitry and wiring runs (other than lighting and appliance branch circuitry and small control, signal and communications circuitry runs) which are so buried or concealed as to be untraceable by inspection through the regular means of access established for inspection and maintenance.
  4. The numbering information necessary to correlate all electrical energy consuming items (or outlets for same) to the panel or switchboard circuits from which they are supplied.
- D. The Electrical Contractor shall maintain a complete file of all contracts and shop drawings at the site and available for inspection by Owner's representatives. All installation and equipment shop drawings shall be initialed and dated upon installation.
- E. The drawings shall be of photo mylar reproducible type or as directed. The design tracings will be made available for copying into reproducibles should it be determined that such reproducible would serve as suitable backgrounds for the "as-built" drawings. The quantity of design tracings which are made available shall in no way be interpreted as setting a limit to the number of drawings necessary to show the required "as-built" information.

1.10 TRAINING AND OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

- A. On completion and acceptance of the Work, furnish for approval, two copies of written instructions on the proper operation and maintenance of all equipment and apparatus furnished under this Division.
- B. This manual shall provide all manufacturer's literature relating to the equipment, all cuts, wiring diagrams, instruction sheets and all other information that would be useful to the Owner in operation and maintenance of the Electrical Systems.
- C. This Contractor shall provide a training period of one (1) week for operating personnel assigned to maintain this facility in addition to the training requirements of individual sections.
- D. The instructions shall include the submission of the name, address and telephone number of the manufacturer's representative and service company for each item of equipment so that service and spare parts can be readily obtained.

1.11 COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS

- A. All Work shall conform to these Project Specifications and to applicable requirements of hereinafter listed standards. Referenced standard shall be considered as the minimum acceptable. Project Specifications shall govern where the referenced standards are exceeded.
- B. Materials specified by reference to a specific Standard, a trade association Standard, or other similar Standard shall comply with the requirements in the latest revision thereof, in effect at the time of bidding, except as limited by type, class or grade, or modified in such reference.
- C. All personnel in charge of site operations will be held to have acquainted themselves with all referenced Standards insofar as they may be termed applicable to this Project.
- D. All equipment, materials and installation methods shall be in accordance with the applicable portions of:
  - 1. National Electrical Code (NEC).
  - 2. New York State Building Code
  - 3. Underwriters' Laboratories (UL)
  - 4. National Equipment Manufacturers Association (NEMA).
  - 5. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineering (IEEE).
  - 6. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA).
  - 7. American National Standards Institute (ANSI).
  - 8. New York State Energy Conservation Code.
  - 9. New York State Education Department.
  - 10. Any other codes having jurisdiction.

1.12 LAWS AND ORDINANCES

- A. All Local Laws and Regulations, governing or relating to any portion of this Work are hereby made a part of these Specifications. Responsibility for compliance to their provisions is included.
- B. Inform the Owner, or his Representative, of any Work or Materials which violates any of the applicable Laws and Regulations before proceeding with the Work.
- C. Installation procedures, methods and conditions shall comply with the latest requirements of the Federal Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA).

1.13 PERMITS AND CERTIFICATES

- A. Give necessary notices, and obtain permits or licenses necessary to carry out this Work and pay all fees therefore.
- B. Arrange for inspection and tests of any and all parts of the Work if so required by authorities or local service companies having jurisdiction and pay all charges for same.
- C. Pay all costs for, and furnish to the Owner, all certificates necessary as evidence that the work installed conforms with all regulations where they apply to this work.

1.14 WARRANTIES AND GUARANTEES

- A. Where warranties and special guarantees covering installation, operation or performance of any system or appliances furnished under this Contract are required, the full responsibility for the fulfillment of such warranties and guarantees must be assumed by this Contractor, who shall obtain written Warranties and Guarantees, in triplicate, which shall be filed with the Owner, or his Representative, before final acceptance.
- B. All work shall be warranted to be free from defects. Any defective materials or workmanship, as well as damage to the work of all trades resulting from same, shall be replaced or repaired as directed for the duration of stipulated warrantee periods.
- C. The duration of warrantee periods following the date of acceptance of the work shall be, for work not otherwise specified - one year.
- D. The date of acceptance shall be the date of the final payment for the work or the date of a formal notice of acceptance, whichever is earlier.
- E. Certification shall be submitted attesting to the fact that specified performance and other criteria are met by all items of all electric work installed.

1.15 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where electrical work is to be installed and notify the architect of conditions detrimental to proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected by the contractor in a manner acceptable to the architect.

1.16 INTENT OF SPECIFICATIONS AND DRAWINGS

- A. It shall be understood that the drawings show the general runs of piping and the approximate location of apparatus. Do not scale the Drawings to determine the exact positions and clearances. Obtain from the architect any dimensions not shown.
- B. Methods of construction and details of workmanship where not specifically described herein or indicated on the Drawings shall be subject to the Owners, or his Representative's approval. It is the intent of these Specifications to provide complete Systems left in good working order, ready for operation, including necessary labor and materials, whether or not specifically shown on the Drawings or mentioned herein.

- C. Obtain from the Owner, or his Representative at the Site, the location of any apparatus not definitely located on the Drawings. Locate equipment and accessories in such a manner as to provide easy access for proper service and maintenance.

#### 1.17 ERRORS AND OMISSIONS

- A. If any errors, omissions or discrepancies appear in the drawings, specifications or other documents, the Contractor shall within ten (10) days after receiving such documents notify the Architect in writing of such omissions or errors. In the event of the Contractor's failing to give such notice, he will be held responsible for the results of any such errors or omissions and the cost of rectifying same.
- B. The Contractor shall be responsible for total coordination between the different Divisions of the Contract. Items furnished under one Division and requiring work under another Division is part of the Contract and no allowance will be given to Contractor's claims for extra work.
- C. Before submitting a proposal, the Contractor shall visit the site of the work and become thoroughly familiar with all conditions and limitations. The submission of a proposal will be construed as evidence that such an examination has been made, and later claims for labor, equipment or materials required or for difficulties encountered which could have been foreseen had such an examination been made, will not be recognized.

#### 1.18 INDEMNIFICATION

- A. The Electrical Contractor shall agree to indemnify and save harmless the party contracting for his services against loss or expense by reason of the liability imposed by law upon such party for damages because of bodily injuries, including death at any time resulting therefrom, accidentally sustained by any person or persons or on account of damage to property arising out of, or in consequence of the performance of this contract, whether such injuries to persons or damage to property are due, or claimed to be due, to any negligence of the Electrical Contractor, the party contracting for his services, his or their employees or agents, or any other person.
- B. The Electrical Contractor shall carry all the insurance necessary to support the above agreement, and shall submit copies of the insurance certificates attesting to the fact that he is properly covered.
- C. The Electrical Contractor shall obtain all necessary allowances, pay any royalties, etc., in connection with the use of any patented devices or systems, and shall render the party contracting for his services harmless from any claims or lawsuits arising from such use.

#### 1.19 STORAGE OF MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

- A. Store materials and equipment where directed or approved by the Architect. Any damage caused by any overloading of the Structure shall be repaired at no additional cost to the Owner.
- B. Do not store where exposed to the weather.
- C. Protect all materials from damage from work of other trades.
- D. Cover all equipment with a suitable, approved material to prevent damage.

#### 1.20 PROTECTIVE PAINTING

- A. Electrical material and equipment shall be furnished primed and painted per manufacturer standard specification and color.

- B. After installation of equipment under this Section, clean and repaint all surfaces as required where damages are due to shipment and/or installation. Use manufacturer's standard color.
- C. Except as otherwise specified, finished painting will be done under another Section.

#### 1.21 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Do all cutting necessary for the installation of Electrical Work. Accurately lay out all work for which cutting is required, so as to avoid unnecessarily large openings. Cutting of beams, joists, floors or walls of the building will not be permitted except after receiving approval of the structural engineer. Rough patching will be done by this Contractor in a manner to accommodate finished patching work.
- B. All holes through floors shall be made by power driven coring equipment. Holes shall be of adequate size to accommodate the packing of the space between cored hole and pipe. Sleeves will not be required for core drilled holes providing the drilling produces a solid core and the floor is not waterproofed. If a solid core is not obtained, this Contractor shall provide a sleeve for the pipe and the irregular floor opening will be patched by this Contractor.
- C. The Electrical Contractor shall set sleeves for conduits accurately before the concrete floors are poured. Should he neglect to perform this preliminary work, and should cutting be required in order to install his conduits or equipment, the expense of this cutting and restoring of surfaces to their original conditions shall be borne by the Electrical Contractor.
- D. Finished patching will be done "Under Another Section of the Specifications."

#### 1.22 RUBBISH REMOVAL AND CLEAN-UP

- A. The Electrical Contractor shall, at the conclusion of each day's work, clean up and stockpile on the site, at locations designated, all rubbish, debris and trash, which may have accumulated during the day as a result of work of the Electrical Contractor and of his presence on the job. The General Contractor will then remove stockpiled rubbish.
- B. When directed, remove from entire installation of work of this Section all protecting materials, dirt, dust, smears, stains, paint spots, and the like and leave in a clean condition. Clean and remove all smudges, fingerprints, etc., from lighting fixtures, switches, receptacles, etc., after installation.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS AND MATERIALS

Not used.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION AND INSTALLATION

Not used.

END OF SECTION 260500

## SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
  - 2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.
  - 3. Sleeves and sleeve seals for cables.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 27 Section "Voice and Data Communication Cabling" for cabling used for voice and data circuits.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- B. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.



- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Alcan Products Corporation; Alcan Cable Division.
  - 2. American Insulated Wire Corp.; a Leviton Company.
  - 3. General Cable Corporation.
  - 4. Senator Wire & Cable Company.
  - 5. Southwire Company.
- B. Copper Conductors: Comply with NEMA WC 70.
- C. Aluminum Conductors: Not permitted.
- D. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for Types THW THHN-THWN XHHW UF USE and SO.
- E. Multiconductor Cable: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for armored cable, Type AC metal-clad cable, Type MC Type SO and Type USE with ground wire.

### 2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
  - 2. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
  - 3. O-Z/Gedney; EGS Electrical Group LLC.
  - 4. 3M; Electrical Products Division.
  - 5. Tyco Electronics Corp.
- C. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

## 2.3 SLEEVES FOR CABLES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel with minimum 0.052-inch (1.3-mm) thickness as indicated and of length to suit application.
- D. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."

## 2.4 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - 2. Calpico, Inc.
  - 3. Metraflex Co.
  - 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
- D. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and cable.
  - 1. Sealing Elements: interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
  - 2. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
  - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders: Copper or Aluminum. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- C. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- D. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspace: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- E. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway Armored cable, Type AC.
- F. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- G. Class 1 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, in raceway.
- H. Class 2 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, in raceway.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- C. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- D. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- E. Support cables according to Division 26 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints."
- F. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."
- G. Installation of aluminum conductors shall comply with NECA/AA 104-2000.
- H. Use oxide inhibitor for all aluminum conductor terminations.
- I. Aluminum conductors are permitted for feeders only, not to be used in branch circuits.

### 3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
- B. Make splices and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
  - 1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice and tap conductor for aluminum conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least **6 inches (150 mm)** of slack.

### 3.5 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."
- B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
- D. Rectangular Sleeve Minimum Metal Thickness:
  - 1. For sleeve rectangle perimeter less than **50 inches (1270 mm)** and no side greater than **16 inches (400 mm)**, thickness shall be **0.052 inch (1.3 mm)**.
  - 2. For sleeve rectangle perimeter equal to, or greater than, **50 inches (1270 mm)** and 1 or more sides equal to, or greater than, **16 inches (400 mm)**, thickness shall be **0.138 inch (3.5 mm)**.
- E. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- F. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both wall surfaces.
- G. Extend sleeves installed in floors **2 inches (50 mm)** above finished floor level.
- H. Size pipe sleeves to provide **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** annular clear space between sleeve and cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed.
- I. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry.
- J. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint according to Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
- K. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal with firestop materials according to Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."

- L. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- M. Aboveground Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- N. Underground Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

### 3.6 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal underground exterior-wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for cable material and size. Position cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

### 3.7 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 3. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in cables and conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner.
    - a. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each splice 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    - b. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

- c. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies splices checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
- D. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
  - 1. Test procedures used.
  - 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
  - 3. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.
- E. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 260519

## SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes methods and materials for grounding systems and equipment.
1. Underground distribution grounding.
  2. Common ground bonding.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Other Informational Submittals: Plans showing dimensioned as-built locations of grounding features specified in Part 3 "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
  - 1. Test wells.
  - 2. Ground rods.
  - 3. Ground rings.
  - 4. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
  - 5. Grounding for sensitive electronic equipment.
- C. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include the following in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals:
  - 1. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at ground rings.
    - a. Tests shall be to determine if ground resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if they do not.
    - b. Include recommended testing intervals.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
  - 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
  - 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
  - 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
  - 4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
  - 5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
  - 6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
  - 7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
- C. Bare Grounding Conductor and Conductor Protector for Wood Poles:
  - 1. No. 4 AWG minimum, soft-drawn copper.
  - 2. Conductor Protector: Half-round PVC or wood molding. If wood, use pressure-treated fir or cypress or cedar.
- D. Grounding Bus: Rectangular bars of annealed copper, [1/4 by 2 inches (6 by 50 mm)] in cross section, unless otherwise indicated; with insulators.

## 2.2 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by a nationally recognized testing laboratory acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used, and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy, bolted pressure-type, with at least two bolts.
  - 1. Pipe Connectors: Clamp type, sized for pipe.
- C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.



## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install barecopper conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum.
  - 1. Bury at least 24 inches (600 mm) below grade.
  - 2. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches (300 mm) above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.
- C. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical and telephone equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
  - 1. Install bus on insulated spacers 1 inch (25 mm), minimum, from wall 6 inches (150 mm) above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, down to specified height above floor, and connect to horizontal bus.
- D. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
  - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
  - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors, except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
  - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
  - 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
  - 2. Lighting circuits.
  - 3. Receptacle circuits.
  - 4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - 5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - 6. Flexible raceway runs.
  - 7. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
  - 8. Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in the switchgear, switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.
  - 9. Computer and Rack-Mounted Electronic Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in branch-circuit runs from equipment-area power panels and power-distribution units.
- C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers,

humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.

- D. Signal and Communication Equipment: For telephone, alarm, voice and data, and other communication equipment, provide No. 4 AWG minimum insulated grounding conductor in raceway from grounding electrode system to each service location, terminal cabinet, wiring closet, and central equipment location.
1. Service and Central Equipment Locations and Wiring Closets: Terminate grounding conductor on a 1/4-by-2-by-12-inch (6-by-50-by-300-mm) grounding bus.
  2. Terminal Cabinets: Terminate grounding conductor on cabinet grounding terminal.
- E. Metal Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible, unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance, except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
  - 1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
  - 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
  - 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations, but if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
- C. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
  - 1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes, using a bolted clamp connector or by bolting a lug-type connector to a pipe flange, using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
  - 2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
  - 3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.
- D. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install tinned bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
- E. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 feet (18 m) apart.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  2. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
    - a. Measure ground resistance not less than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
    - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
  3. Prepare dimensioned drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.
- B. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
  2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
  3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
- C. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 260526

## SECTION 260529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
  - 1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
  - 2. Construction requirements for concrete bases.

#### 1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design supports for multiple raceways, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Design supports for multiple raceways capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems and its contents.
- C. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
- D. Rated Strength: Adequate in tension, shear, and pullout force to resist maximum loads calculated or imposed for this Project, with a minimum structural safety factor of five times the applied force.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For steel slotted support systems.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:
  - 1. Trapeze hangers. Include Product Data for components.
  - 2. Steel slotted channel systems. Include Product Data for components.
  - 3. Equipment supports.
- C. Welding certificates.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
    - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
    - c. ERICO International Corporation.
    - d. GS Metals Corp.
    - e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
    - f. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
    - g. Wesanco, Inc.
  - 2. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
  - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  - 4. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  - 5. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.
- B. Raceway and Cable Supports: As described in NECA 1 and NECA 101.
- C. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- D. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be malleable iron.
- E. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- F. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
  - 1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
    - a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - b. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Hilti Inc.

- 2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
  - 3) MKT Fastening, LLC.
  - 4) Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.; Masterset Fastening Systems Unit.
2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials in which used.
  - a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - b. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
    - 2) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - 3) Hilti Inc.
    - 4) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
    - 5) MKT Fastening, LLC.
3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units similar to MSS Type 18; complying with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58, type suitable for attached structural element.
5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

## 2.2 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted, structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems except if requirements in this Section are stricter.
- B. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.

- C. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.

- 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.

- D. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

### 3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this Article.

- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT, IMC, and RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, as permitted in NFPA 70.

- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).

- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:

- 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
  - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
  - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
  - 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
  - 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches (100 mm) thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
  - 6. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that meet seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements.

- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid reinforcing bars.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.

- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.

- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

### 3.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.
- B. Use 3000-psi (20.7-MPa), 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Anchor equipment to concrete base.
  - 1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - 3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Division 09 painting Sections for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 260529



SECTION 260532 - JUNCTION BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division-1 Specification Sections, apply to Work of this Section.

1.2 WORK DESCRIPTION

- A. Work of this section includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary to provide complete the boxes, cabinets and enclosures shown on the drawings and specified herein.

1.3 REFERENCE TO OTHER SPECIFICATION SECTIONS

- A. Raceways.
- B. Wire and Cable.
- C. Supports and fastenings.
- D. Grounding.
- E. Specific equipment sections as applicable.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturer's product data and catalog cuts.
- B. For custom fabricated pull boxes, cabinets and enclosures, dimensioned shop drawings.
- C. For boxes, cabinets and enclosures mounted in finished surfaces, samples of finish as requested by the architect.

PART 2 - EQUIPMENT AND PERFORMANCE

2.1 OUTLET BOXES

- A. Outlet boxes shall be industry standard metal types.
- B. Round or octagon boxes shall not be less than 4" in diameter.
- C. Boxes shall be of the size and depth necessary to suit building construction, to allow for easy wiring and installation of working devices and to meet Code minimum volume requirements.
- D. Sheet metal boxes shall be of galvanized steel.
- E. Cast metal boxes shall be of galvanized ferrous metal or aluminum except exclude aluminum where aluminum conduit is excluded.
- F. Galvanizing shall be by the hot dipping method which applies the galvanized plating after the boxes

are cut, formed and welded, or cast, drilled and threaded.

- G. All sheet metal boxes shall have suitable knockouts.
- H. All cast metal boxes shall have properly drilled and tapped holes.
- I. Boxes for lighting fixture outlets shall conform to the following:

Fixture Type	Placement of Circuitry	Box Type
1. Ceiling surface or pendent	Exposed	Sheet metal square or round with fixture stud
	Concealed in suspended ceilings	Sheet metal octagon with banger bars and fixture stud
2. Wall bracket	Exposed	Sheet metal square or round with fixture stud
	Concealed in wall construction to which separate finish is applied	Sheet metal square with round opening raised cover and fixture stud
3. Recessed	Concealed in suspended ceiling	Sheet metal square with hanger bars and blank cover
4. Flush in wall	Concealed in wall construction to which separate finish is applied	Sheet metal square or multigang with rectangular opening raised cover
	Concealed in wall construction which is integrally finished or is left unfinished	Sheet metal single or multigang utility or where depth of construction permits Sheet metal square or multigang with rectangular opening raised cover
5. Exposed on wall	Exposed	Sheet metal single or multigang utility except cast metal "FS" type where subject to mechanical damage
6. Free standing on circuitry	Concrete embedded or concealed in suspended floor	Sheet metal utility stubbed up from ceiling below

- L. GEM boxes are not acceptable.
- M. Select outlet boxes for other items on the same basis as for lighting fixtures and wiring devices.
- N. Outlet boxes set flush with wall or partition shall have blank plates of the type specified for flush wiring devices. At other locations, use standard blank cover as supplied.

## 2.2 PULLBOXES AND JUNCTION BOXES

- A. Except as noted herein, pull boxes and junction boxes shall be manufactured from galvanized industry standard gauge sheet steel.

- B. They shall be sized so that the minimum bending radius criteria specified for the wires and cables they contain are maintained.
- C. They shall be supplied in non-standard shapes where necessary for a neat workmanlike application to special building configurations.

### 2.3 CABINETS AND ENCLOSURES

- A. All electrical equipment shall be installed within cabinets or enclosure. Where available from the supplier of any component that supplier's recommended cabinet or enclosure shall be provided.
- B. Where not available from a component supplier, provide a cabinet or enclosure of suitable dimension to house and support all components to be installed maintaining the recommended clearances for each component.

### 2.4 WET AND DAMP LOCATIONS

- A. At damp or wet locations and for exterior work outlet boxes and fittings shall be of galvanized cast ferrous metal only.
- B. At wet or damp location, junction boxes, pull boxes, cabinets, cabinet trims, and the like, shall be fabricated of galvanized sheet metal, and conform to the following:
  - 1. Shall be constructed with continuously welded joints and seams.
  - 2. Edges and weld spots shall be factory treated with cold galvanizing compound.
  - 3. Connection to circuitry shall be by means of welded threaded hubs.
  - 4. The covers, doors, plates and trims used in conjunction with all enclosures, pull boxes, outlet boxes, junction boxes cabinets shall be equipped with gaskets.
  - 5. All enclosures, cabinets, junction and pull boxes shall be equipped with breather and drain fittings when installed above grade.

### 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Where pull boxes have any single horizontal dimension larger than 36" they shall be fitted with cable support racks consisting of 3/4" diameter steel pipes with flanged ends bolted to the sides or frame of the pull box. Each pipe support shall be fitted with a continuous fiber insulating sleeve. The pipe supports shall be arranged in tiers corresponding to the cables entering and leaving the box. Sufficient pipe support racks will be included within the pull box so that no cable shall remain unsupported for a horizontal distance greater than 36". In no case shall cable support pipe racks be mounted so that they interfere with the removal of screw covers.
- B. Exclude unused circuitry openings in outlets, boxes, cabinets and enclosures. Unused openings to be sealed as follows:
  - 1. Unused openings in cast boxes shall be closed with approved cast metal threaded plugs.
  - 2. Unused openings in sheetmetal boxes shall be closed with sheet metal knock-out plugs.
  - 3. In junction and pull boxes, each such opening shall be closed with a galvanized sheet steel plate fastened with a continuous weld all around.
- C. All cabinets and enclosures shall be equipped with hinged lockable covers.

### 2.6 SPECIAL APPLICATIONS

A. Medical Equipment System

1. Coordinate with vendors prior to bid submission. Submit price accordingly.

2.7 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

- A. Appleton Electric
- B. Steel City
- C. Hubbell
- D. Raceway Components

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 LOCATION

- A. Unless noted below or otherwise specifically indicated, include a separate outlet box for each individual wiring device, lighting fixture and signal or communication system outlet component. Outlet boxes supplied attached to lighting fixtures shall not be used as replacements for the boxes specified herein unless they are specifically rated to accept "through circuit" building wires.
- B. A continuous row of fixtures of the end-to-end channel type designed for "through wiring" and wired in accordance with the specifications hereinafter pertaining to circuitry through a series of lighting fixtures, may be supplied through a single outlet box.
- C. Connection to recessed ceiling fixtures supplied with pig-tails may be arranged so that more than one, but no more than four such fixtures are connected into a single outlet box. When adopting this procedure:
  1. Utilize an outlet box no smaller than 4-11/16" square by 2-1/8" deep.
  2. Allow no fixture to be supplied from an outlet box in another room.
- D. Include all required outlet boxes regardless of indications on the drawings.
- E. Exclude surface mounted outlet boxes in conjunction with concealed circuitry.
- F. Outlet boxes for switches shall be located at the strike side of doors unless otherwise called for on drawings and directed by Architect. Indicated door swings are subject to field change. Outlet boxes shall be located on the basis of final door swing arrangement.
- G. Apply junction and pull boxes in accordance with the following:
  1. Include pull boxes in long straight runs of raceway to assure that cables are not damaged when they are pulled in.
  2. Include junction and pull boxes to assure a neat and workmanlike installation of raceways.
  3. Include junction and pull boxes to fulfill requirements pertaining to the limitations to the number of bends permitted in raceway between cable access points, the accessibility of cable joints and splices, and the application of cable supports.
  4. Include all required junction and pull boxes regardless of indications on the drawings (which, due to symbolic methods of notation, may omit to show some of them).

### 3.2 ACCESSIBILITY

- A. Locate all boxes so that their removable covers are accessible without necessitating the removal of parts of permanent building structure, including piping, ductwork and other permanent elements.
- B. For a large box on circuitry concealed in a partition, suspended ceiling or wall, arrange for, as part of the electrical work, an opening in the building construction which conceals the circuitry as required to totally hide the box but still introduce the necessary access to its removable cover. Provide also, as part of the electrical work, a door, panel, or plate, of a type approved by the Architect to cover completely the access opening in the building construction called for above.

### 3.3 SEPARATION OF SERVICES

- A. Where the wires and cables following the same routing are indicated as running in separate pull boxes, it shall be understood that a segregation of the wires and cables is required. Separately indicated pull boxes may be incorporated into single boxes on condition that segregation is maintained by barriers, unless otherwise indicated on drawings or schedules.
- B. Barriers in junction and pull boxes shall be on non-current carrying material of adequate thickness for mechanical strength. Each barrier shall have an angle iron framing support all around.

### 3.4 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Submit as-built drawings indicating the location of all pull boxes, cabinets and enclosures.

END OF SECTION 260532

SECTION 260533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes raceways, fittings, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets for electrical wiring.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 2 Section "Underground Ducts and Utility Structures" for exterior ductbanks, manholes, and underground utility construction.
  - 2. Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems" for firestopping materials and installation at penetrations through walls, ceilings, and other fire-rated elements.
  - 3. Division 26 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints" for seismic restraints and bracing of raceways, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
  - 4. Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices" for devices installed in boxes and for floor-box service fittings.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
- B. ENT: Electrical nonmetallic tubing.
- C. FMC: Flexible metal conduit.
- D. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
- E. LFMC: Liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
- F. LFNC: Liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit.
- G. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details of components for raceways, fittings, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.

- C. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
  - 1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.
  - 2. Detail assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
- D. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans drawn to scale and coordinating penetrations and ceiling-mounted items. Show the following:
  - 1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
  - 2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
  - 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  - 4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
- E. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that enclosures, cabinets, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints." Include the following:
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
    - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
    - b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
  - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of raceways, boxes, enclosures, cabinets, and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

### 2.2 METAL CONDUIT AND TUBING

- A. Manufacturers:
1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
  2. Alflec Inc.
  3. Anamet Electrical, Inc.; Anaconda Metal Hose.
  4. Electri-Flex Co.
  5. Grinnell Co./Tyco International; Allied Tube and Conduit Div.
  6. LTV Steel Tubular Products Company.
  7. Manhattan/CDT/Cole-Flex.
  8. O-Z Gedney; Unit of General Signal.
  9. Wheatland Tube Co.
- B. Rigid Steel Conduit: ANSI C80.1.
- C. Aluminum Rigid Conduit: ANSI C80.5.
- D. IMC: ANSI C80.6.
- E. Plastic-Coated Steel Conduit and Fittings: NEMA RN 1.
- F. Plastic-Coated IMC and Fittings: NEMA RN 1.
- G. EMT and Fittings: ANSI C80.3.
1. Fittings: Compression type.
- H. FMC: Steel.
- I. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket.
- J. Fittings: NEMA FB 1; compatible with conduit and tubing materials.

### 2.3 METAL WIREWAYS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Hoffman.
  2. Square D.



- B. Material and Construction: Sheet metal sized and shaped as indicated, NEMA 1 3R.
- C. Fittings and Accessories: Include couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- D. Select features, unless otherwise indicated, as required to complete wiring system and to comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Wireway Covers: Screw-cover type.
- F. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

## 2.4 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Cooper Crouse-Hinds; Div. of Cooper Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Emerson/General Signal; Appleton Electric Company.
  - 3. Erickson Electrical Equipment Co.
  - 4. Hoffman.
  - 5. Hubbell, Inc.; Killark Electric Manufacturing Co.
  - 6. O-Z/Gedney; Unit of General Signal.
  - 7. RACO; Division of Hubbell, Inc.
  - 8. Robroy Industries, Inc.; Enclosure Division.
  - 9. Scott Fetzer Co.; Adalet-PLM Division.
  - 10. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Co.
  - 11. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
  - 12. Walker Systems, Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).
  - 13. Woodhead, Daniel Company; Woodhead Industries, Inc. Subsidiary.
- B. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- C. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA FB 1, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- D. Floor Boxes: Cast metal, fully adjustable, rectangular.
- E. Floor Boxes: Nonmetallic, nonadjustable, round.
- F. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- G. Cast-Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA FB 1, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.
- H. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, with continuous hinge cover and flush latch.
  - 1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  - 2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Plastic, finished inside with radio-frequency-resistant paint.
- I. Cabinets: NEMA 250, Type 1, galvanized steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge. Key latch to match panelboards. Include metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage and include accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.

## 2.5 FACTORY FINISHES

- A. Finish: For raceway, enclosure, or cabinet components, provide manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled surface raceways, enclosures, and cabinets before shipping.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors:
  - 1. Exposed: Rigid steel or IMC.
  - 2. Concealed: Rigid steel or IMC.
  - 3. Underground, Single Run: RNC.
  - 4. Underground, Grouped: RNC.
  - 5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
  - 6. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 3R 4.
- B. Indoors:
  - 1. Exposed: EMT.
  - 2. Concealed: EMT.
  - 3. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC; except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
  - 4. Damp or Wet Locations: Rigid steel conduit.
  - 5. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except as follows:
    - a. Damp or Wet Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4,.
- C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch trade size (DN 21).
- D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
  - 1. Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings approved for use with that material. Patch all nicks and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits.
- E. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.
- F. Do not install aluminum conduits embedded in or in contact with concrete.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Keep raceways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- B. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.

- C. Support raceways as specified in Division 26 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints."
- D. Install temporary closures to prevent foreign matter from entering raceways.
- E. Protect stub-ups from damage where conduits rise through floor slabs. Arrange so curved portions of bends are not visible above the finished slab.
- F. Make bends and offsets so ID is not reduced. Keep legs of bends in the same plane and keep straight legs of offsets parallel, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Install concealed raceways with a minimum of bends in the shortest practical distance, considering type of building construction and obstructions, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Raceways Embedded in Slabs: Install in middle 1/3 of slab thickness where practical and leave at least 2 inches (50 mm) of concrete cover.
  - 1. Secure raceways to reinforcing rods to prevent sagging or shifting during concrete placement.
  - 2. Space raceways laterally to prevent voids in concrete.
  - 3. Run conduit larger than 1-inch trade size (DN 27) parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support.
- I. Install exposed raceways parallel or at right angles to nearby surfaces or structural members and follow surface contours as much as possible.
  - 1. Run parallel or banked raceways together on common supports.
  - 2. Make parallel bends in parallel or banked runs. Use factory elbows only where elbows can be installed parallel; otherwise, provide field bends for parallel raceways.
- J. Join raceways with fittings designed and approved for that purpose and make joints tight.
  - 1. Use insulating bushings to protect conductors.
- K. Tighten set screws of threadless fittings with suitable tools.
- L. Terminations:
  - 1. Where raceways are terminated with locknuts and bushings, align raceways to enter squarely and install locknuts with dished part against box. Use two locknuts, one inside and one outside box.
  - 2. Where raceways are terminated with threaded hubs, screw raceways or fittings tightly into hub so end bears against wire protection shoulder. Where chase nipples are used, align raceways so coupling is square to box; tighten chase nipple so no threads are exposed.
- M. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb (90-kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack at each end of pull wire.

- N. Telephone and Signal System Raceways, **2-Inch Trade Size (DN 53)** and Smaller: In addition to above requirements, install raceways in maximum lengths of **150 feet (45 m)** and with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes where necessary to comply with these requirements.
- O. Install raceway sealing fittings at suitable, approved, and accessible locations and fill them with UL-listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings at the following points:
  - 1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
  - 2. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- P. Stub-up Connections: Extend conduits through concrete floor for connection to freestanding equipment. Install with an adjustable top or coupling threaded inside for plugs set flush with finished floor. Extend conductors to equipment with rigid steel conduit; FMC may be used **6 inches (150 mm)** above the floor. Install screwdriver-operated, threaded plugs flush with floor for future equipment connections.
- Q. Flexible Connections: Use maximum of **72 inches (1830 mm)** of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed lighting fixtures; for equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for all motors. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations. Install separate ground conductor across flexible connections.
- R. Surface Raceways: Install a separate, green, ground conductor in raceways from junction box supplying raceways to receptacle or fixture ground terminals.
- S. Install hinged-cover enclosures and cabinets plumb. Support at each corner.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure coatings, finishes, and cabinets are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
  - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
  - 2. Repair damage to PVC or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. After completing installation of exposed, factory-finished raceways and boxes, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged finishes.

END OF SECTION 260533

## SECTION 260543 - UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Direct-buried conduit, ducts, and duct accessories.
2. Concrete-encased conduit, ducts, and duct accessories.
3. Handholes and boxes.
4. Manholes.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Trafficways: Locations where vehicular or pedestrian traffic is a normal course of events.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include duct-bank materials, including separators and miscellaneous components.
2. Include ducts and conduits and their accessories, including elbows, end bells, bends, fittings, and solvent cement.
3. Include accessories for manholes, handholes, boxes, and other utility structures.
4. Include warning tape.
5. Include warning planks.

- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Precast or Factory-Fabricated Underground Utility Structures:
  - a. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, attachments to other work, and accessories.
  - b. Include duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
  - c. Include reinforcement details.
  - d. Include frame and cover design and manhole frame support rings.
  - e. Include details.
  - f. Include grounding details.

- g. Include dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, pulling-in and lifting irons, and sumps.
  - h. Include joint details.
- 2. Factory-Fabricated Handholes and Boxes Other Than Precast Concrete:
  - a. Include dimensioned plans, sections, and elevations, and fabrication and installation details.
  - b. Include duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
  - c. Include cover design.
  - d. Include grounding details.
  - e. Include dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, and pulling-in and lifting irons.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Duct-Bank Coordination Drawings: Show duct profiles and coordination with other utilities and underground structures.
  - 1. Include plans and sections, drawn to scale, and show bends and locations of expansion fittings.
  - 2. Drawings shall be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Product Certificates: For concrete and steel used in precast concrete handholes, as required by ASTM C 858.
- C. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency responsible for testing nonconcrete handholes and boxes.
- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
- B. Furnish cable-support stanchions, arms, insulators, and associated fasteners in quantities equal to 5 percent of quantity of each item installed.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions, and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Architect and Construction Manager no fewer than three (3) days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Architect's and/or Construction Manager's written permission.
- B. Ground Water: Assume ground-water level is at grade level unless a lower water table is noted on Drawings.
- C. Ground Water: Assume ground-water level is 36 inches below ground surface unless a higher water table is noted on Drawings.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR DUCTS AND RACEWAYS

- A. Comply with ANSI C2.

### 2.2 CONDUIT

- A. Rigid Steel Conduit: Galvanized. Comply with ANSI C80.1.
- B. RNC: NEMA TC 2, Type EPC-40-PVC and Type EPC-80-PVC, UL 651, with matching fittings by same manufacturer as the conduit, complying with NEMA TC 3 and UL 514B.

### 2.3 NONMETALLIC DUCTS AND DUCT ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. ARNCO Corp.
  - 2. Beck Manufacturing.
  - 3. Cantex, Inc.
  - 4. CertainTeed Corporation.
  - 5. Condux International, Inc.
  - 6. Electri-Flex Company.
  - 7. IPEX Inc.
  - 8. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.

- C. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: NEMA TC 2, UL 651, ASTM F 512, Type EPC-80, with matching fittings complying with NEMA TC 3 by same manufacturer as the duct.
- D. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: NEMA TC 6 & 8, ASTM F 512, UL 651A, Type HDPE, with matching fittings complying with NEMA TC 9 by same manufacturer as the duct.
- E. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: NEMA TC 6 & 8, ASTM F 512, Type DB-120-PVC, for direct burial, with matching fittings complying with NEMA TC 9 by same manufacturer as the duct.
- F. Duct Accessories:
  - 1. Duct Separators: Factory-fabricated rigid PVC interlocking spacers, sized for type and size of ducts with which used, and selected to provide minimum duct spacing indicated while supporting ducts during concreting or backfilling.
  - 2. Warning Tape: Underground-line warning tape specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 3. Concrete Warning Planks: Nominal 12 by 24 by 3 inches in size, manufactured from 6000-psi concrete.
    - a. Color: Red dye added to concrete during batching.
    - b. Mark each plank with "ELECTRIC" in 2-inch- high, 3/8-inch- deep letters.

#### 2.4 PRECAST CONCRETE HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Christy Concrete Products.
  - 2. Elmhurst-Chicago Stone Co.
  - 3. Oldcastle Precast Group.
  - 4. Rinker Group, Ltd.
  - 5. Riverton Concrete Products.
  - 6. Utility Concrete Products, LLC.
  - 7. Utility Vault Co.
- C. Comply with ASTM C 858 for design and manufacturing processes.
- D. Description: Factory-fabricated, reinforced-concrete, monolithically poured walls and bottom unless open-bottom enclosures are indicated. Frame and cover shall form top of enclosure and shall have load rating consistent with that of handhole or box.
  - 1. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof cast-iron frame, with cast-iron cover with recessed cover hook eyes and tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
  - 2. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof steel frame, with steel cover with recessed cover hook eyes and tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.



3. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof steel frame, with hinged steel access door assembly with tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
  - a. Cover Hinges: Concealed, with hold-open ratchet assembly.
  - b. Cover Handle: Recessed.
4. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof aluminum frame with hinged aluminum access door assembly with tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
  - a. Cover Hinges: Concealed, with hold-open ratchet assembly.
  - b. Cover Handle: Recessed.
5. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
6. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC."
7. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have closed bottom unless otherwise indicated.
8. Extensions and Slabs: Designed to mate with bottom of enclosure. Same material as enclosure.
  - a. Extension shall provide increased depth of 12 inches.
  - b. Slab: Same dimensions as bottom of enclosure, and arranged to provide closure.
9. Joint Sealant: Asphaltic-butyl material with adhesion, cohesion, flexibility, and durability properties necessary to withstand maximum hydrostatic pressures at the installation location with the ground-water level at grade.
10. Windows: Precast openings in walls, arranged to match dimensions and elevations of approaching ducts and duct banks, plus an additional 12 inches vertically and horizontally to accommodate alignment variations.
  - a. Windows shall be located no less than 6 inches from interior surfaces of walls, floors, or frames and covers of handholes, but close enough to corners to facilitate racking of cables on walls.
  - b. Window opening shall have cast-in-place, welded-wire fabric reinforcement for field cutting and bending to tie in to concrete envelopes of duct banks.
  - c. Window openings shall be framed with at least two additional No. 3 steel reinforcing bars in concrete around each opening.
11. Duct Entrances in Handhole Walls: Cast end-bell or duct-terminating fitting in wall for each entering duct.
  - a. Type and size shall match fittings to duct or conduit to be terminated.
  - b. Fittings shall align with elevations of approaching ducts and be located near interior corners of handholes to facilitate racking of cable.
12. Handholes 12 inches wide by 24 inches long and larger shall have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

2.5 HANDHOLES AND BOXES OTHER THAN PRECAST CONCRETE

- A. General Requirements for Handholes and Boxes: Comply with SCTE 77. Comply with tier requirements in "Underground Enclosure Application" Article.
  - 1. Color: Gray.
  - 2. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have closed bottom unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
  - 4. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
  - 5. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC."
  - 6. Direct-Buried Wiring Entrance Provisions: Knockouts equipped with insulated bushings or end-bell fittings, selected to suit box material, sized for wiring indicated, and arranged for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
  - 7. Duct Entrance Provisions: Duct-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
  - 8. Handholes 12 inches wide by 24 inches long and larger shall have factory-installed inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons.
- B. Polymer Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with a polymer resin, and reinforced with steel or fiberglass or a combination of the two.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Armorcast Products Company.
    - b. Carson Industries LLC.
    - c. NewBasis.
    - d. Quazite: Hubbell Power System, Inc.
- C. Fiberglass Handholes and Boxes with Polymer Concrete Frame and Cover: Sheet-molded, fiberglass-reinforced, polyester resin enclosure joined to polymer concrete top ring or frame.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Armorcast Products Company.
    - b. Carson Industries LLC.
    - c. Christy Concrete Products.
    - d. Quazite: Hubbell Power System, Inc.
    - e. Synertech Moulded Products, Inc.
- D. Fiberglass Handholes and Boxes: Molded of fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, with covers made of cast iron hot-dip galvanized-steel diamond plate.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements.

2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Carson Industries LLC.
  - b. Christy Concrete Products.
  - c. Nordic Fiberglass, Inc.
  - d. Quazite: Hubbell Power System, Inc.
  - e. Or Approved Equal.
- E. High-Density Plastic Boxes: Injection molded of high-density polyethylene or copolymer-polypropylene. Cover shall be made of polymer concrete or hot-dip galvanized-steel diamond plate.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements.
  2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Carson Industries LLC.
    - b. Nordic Fiberglass, Inc.
    - c. PenCell Plastics.
    - d. Quazite: Hubbell Power System, Inc.

## 2.6 PRECAST MANHOLES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  1. Christy Concrete Products.
  2. Elmhurst-Chicago Stone Co.
  3. Oldcastle Precast Group.
  4. Rinker Group, Ltd.
  5. Riverton Concrete Products.
  6. Utility Concrete Products, LLC.
  7. Utility Vault Co.
  8. Wausau Tile Inc.
- C. Comply with ASTM C 858.
- D. Structural Design Loading: Comply with requirements in "Underground Enclosure Application" Article.
- E. Precast Manholes: One-piece units and units with interlocking mating sections, complete with accessories, hardware, and features.
- F. Windows: Precast openings in walls, arranged to match dimensions and elevations of approaching ducts and duct banks, plus an additional 12 inches vertically and horizontally to accommodate alignment variations.

1. Windows shall be located no less than 6 inches from interior surfaces of walls, floors, or roofs of manholes, but close enough to corners to facilitate racking of cables on walls.
  2. Window opening shall have cast-in-place, welded-wire fabric reinforcement for field cutting and bending to tie in to concrete envelopes of duct banks.
  3. Window openings shall be framed with at least two additional No. 3 steel reinforcing bars in concrete around each opening.
- G. Duct Entrances in Manhole Walls: Cast end-bell or duct-terminating fitting in wall for each entering duct.
1. Type and size shall match fittings to duct or conduit to be terminated.
  2. Fittings shall align with elevations of approaching ducts and be located near interior corners of manholes to facilitate racking of cable.
- H. Concrete Knockout Panels: 1-1/2 to 2 inches thick, for future conduit entrance and sleeve for ground rod.
- I. Ground Rod Sleeve: Provide a 3-inch PVC conduit sleeve in manhole floors 2 inches from the wall adjacent to, but not underneath, the ducts routed from the facility.
- J. Joint Sealant: Asphaltic-butyl material with adhesion, cohesion, flexibility, and durability properties necessary to withstand maximum hydrostatic pressures at the installation location with the ground-water level at grade.

## 2.7 CAST-IN-PLACE MANHOLES

- A. Description: Underground utility structures, constructed in place, complete with accessories, hardware, and features. Include concrete knockout panels for conduit entrance and sleeve for ground rod.
- B. Materials: Comply with ASTM C 858 and with Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Structural Design Loading: As specified in "Underground Enclosure Application" Article.

## 2.8 UTILITY STRUCTURE ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Bilco Company (The).
  2. Campbell Foundry Company.
  3. Christy Concrete Products.
  4. East Jordan Iron Works, Inc.
  5. Elmhurst-Chicago Stone Co.
  6. McKinley Iron Works, Inc.
  7. Neenah Foundry Company.

8. NewBasis.
  9. Oldcastle Precast Group.
  10. Osburn Associates, Inc.
- C. Manhole Frames, Covers, and Chimney Components: Comply with structural design loading specified for manhole.
1. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof, gray cast iron complying with ASTM A 48/A 48M or Class 30B with milled cover-to-frame bearing surfaces; diameter, 26 inches.
    - a. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
    - b. Special Covers: Recess in face of cover designed to accept finish material in paved areas.
  2. Cover Legend: Cast in. Selected to suit system.
    - a. Legend: "ELECTRIC-LV" for duct systems with power wires and cables for systems operating at 600 V and less.
    - b. Legend: "ELECTRIC-HV" for duct systems with medium-voltage cables.
  3. Manhole Chimney Components: Precast concrete rings with dimensions matched to those of roof opening.
    - a. Mortar for Chimney Ring and Frame and Cover Joints: Comply with ASTM C 270, Type M, except for quantities less than 2.0 cu. ft. where packaged mix complying with ASTM C 387, Type M, may be used.
    - b. Seal joints watertight using preformed plastic or rubber conforming to ASTM C 990. Install sealing material according to the sealant manufacturers' printed instructions.
- D. Manhole Sump Frame and Grate: ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 30B, gray cast iron.
- E. Pulling Eyes in Concrete Walls: Eyebolt with reinforcing-bar fastening insert, 2-inch- diameter eye, and 1-by-4-inch bolt.
1. Working Load Embedded in 6-Inch, 4000-psi Concrete: 13,000-lbf minimum tension.
- F. Pulling Eyes in Nonconcrete Walls: Eyebolt with reinforced fastening, 1-1/4-inch- diameter eye, rated 2500-lbf minimum tension.
- G. Pulling-In and Lifting Irons in Concrete Floors: 7/8-inch- diameter, hot-dip galvanized, bent steel rod; stress relieved after forming; and fastened to reinforcing rod. Exposed triangular opening.
1. Ultimate Yield Strength: 40,000-lbf shear and 60,000-lbf tension.
- H. Bolting Inserts for Concrete Utility Structure Cable Racks and Other Attachments: Flared, threaded inserts of noncorrosive, chemical-resistant, nonconductive thermoplastic material; 1/2-inch ID by 2-3/4 inches deep, flared to 1-1/4 inches minimum at base.

1. Tested Ultimate Pullout Strength: 12,000 lbf minimum.
  - I. Ground Rod Sleeve: 3-inch, PVC conduit sleeve in manhole floors 2 inches from the wall adjacent to, but not underneath, the ducts routed from the facility.
  - J. Expansion Anchors for Installation after Concrete Is Cast: Zinc-plated, carbon-steel-wedge type with stainless-steel expander clip with 1/2-inch bolt, 5300-lbf rated pullout strength, and minimum 6800-lbf rated shear strength.
  - K. Cable Rack Assembly: Steel, hot-dip galvanized, except insulators.
    1. Stanchions: T-section or channel; 2-1/4-inch nominal size; punched with 14 holes on 1-1/2-inch centers for cable-arm attachment.
    2. Arms: 1-1/2 inches wide, lengths ranging from 3 inches with 450-lb minimum capacity to 18 inches with 250-lb minimum capacity. Arms shall have slots along full length for cable ties and be arranged for secure mounting in horizontal position at any vertical location on stanchions.
    3. Insulators: High-glaze, wet-process porcelain arranged for mounting on cable arms.
  - L. Cable Rack Assembly: Nonmetallic. Components fabricated from nonconductive, fiberglass-reinforced polymer.
    1. Stanchions: Nominal 36 inches high by 4 inches wide, with minimum of nine holes for arm attachment.
    2. Arms: Arranged for secure, drop-in attachment in horizontal position at any location on cable stanchions, and capable of being locked in position. Arms shall be available in lengths ranging from 3 inches with 450-lb minimum capacity to 20 inches with 250-lb minimum capacity. Top of arm shall be nominally 4 inches wide, and arm shall have slots along full length for cable ties.
  - M. Duct-Sealing Compound: Nonhardening, safe for contact with human skin, not deleterious to cable insulation, and workable at temperatures as low as 35 deg F. Capable of withstanding temperature of 300 deg F without slump and adhering to clean surfaces of plastic ducts, metallic conduits, conduit coatings, concrete, masonry, lead, cable sheaths, cable jackets, insulation materials, and common metals.
  - N. Fixed Manhole Ladders: Arranged for attachment to wall and floor of manhole. Ladder and mounting brackets and braces shall be fabricated from nonconductive, structural-grade, fiberglass-reinforced resin.
  - O. Portable Manhole Ladders: UL-listed, heavy-duty wood specifically designed for portable use for access to electrical manholes. Minimum length equal to distance from deepest manhole floor to grade plus 36 inches. One required.
  - P. Cover Hooks: Heavy duty, designed for lifts 60 lbf and greater. Two required.
- 2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Test and inspect precast concrete utility structures according to ASTM C 1037.

- B. Nonconcrete Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of manholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
  - 1. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.
  - 2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
  - 3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification, complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of ducts, manholes, handholes, and boxes with final arrangement of other utilities, site grading, and surface features as determined in the field. Notify Architect if there is a conflict between areas of excavation and existing structures or archaeological sites to remain.
- B. Coordinate elevations of ducts and duct-bank entrances into manholes, handholes, and boxes with final locations and profiles of ducts and duct banks, as determined by coordination with other utilities, underground obstructions, and surface features. Revise locations and elevations as required to suit field conditions and to ensure that duct runs drain to manholes and handholes, and as approved by Architect.
- C. Clear and grub vegetation to be removed, and protect vegetation to remain according to Section 311000 "Site Clearing." Remove and stockpile topsoil for reapplication according to Section 311000 "Site Clearing."

#### 3.2 UNDERGROUND DUCT APPLICATION

- A. Ducts for Electrical Cables More than 600 V: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-80-PVC, in concrete-encased duct bank unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Ducts for Electrical Feeders 600 V and Less: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-80-PVC, in concrete-encased duct bank unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Ducts for Electrical Feeders 600 V and Less: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-80-PVC, in direct-buried duct bank unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Ducts for Electrical Branch Circuits: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-80-PVC, in direct-buried duct bank unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Underground Ducts Crossing Paved Paths: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, encased in reinforced concrete.

### 3.3 UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURE APPLICATION

#### A. Handholes and Boxes for 600 V and Less:

1. Units in Roadways and Other Deliberate Traffic Paths: Precast concrete. AASHTO HB 17, H-20 structural load rating.
2. Units in Driveway, Parking Lot, and Off-Roadway Locations, Subject to Occasional, Nondeliberate Loading by Heavy Vehicles: Precast concrete, AASHTO HB 17, H-20 structural load rating.
3. Units in Sidewalk and Similar Applications with a Safety Factor for Nondeliberate Loading by Vehicles: Precast concrete, AASHTO HB 17, H-10 or Polymer concrete units, SCTE 77, Tier 8 structural load rating.
4. Units Subject to Light-Duty Pedestrian Traffic Only: Fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, structurally tested according to SCTE 77 with 3000-lbf vertical loading.
5. Cover design load shall not exceed the design load of the handhole or box.

#### B. Manholes: Precast concrete.

1. Units Located in Roadways and Other Deliberate Traffic Paths by Heavy or Medium Vehicles: H-20 structural load rating according to AASHTO HB 17.
2. Units Not Located in Deliberate Traffic Paths by Heavy or Medium Vehicles: H-10 load rating according to AASHTO HB 17.

### 3.4 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation and Backfill: Comply with Section 312000 "Earth Moving," but do not use heavy-duty, hydraulic-operated, compaction equipment.
- B. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation, and re-establish original grades unless otherwise indicated. Replace removed sod immediately after backfilling is completed.
- C. Restore areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Restore vegetation and include necessary topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, and mulching. Comply with Section 329200 "Turf and Grasses" and Section 329300 "Plants."
- D. Cut and patch existing pavement in the path of underground ducts and utility structures according to the "Cutting and Patching" Article in Section 017300 "Execution."

### 3.5 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Install ducts according to NEMA TCB 2.
- B. Slope: Pitch ducts a minimum slope of 1:300 down toward manholes and handholes and away from buildings and equipment. Slope ducts from a high point in runs between two manholes, to drain in both directions.



- C. Curves and Bends: Use 5-degree angle couplings for small changes in direction. Use manufactured long sweep bends with a minimum radius of 48 inches, both horizontally and vertically, at other locations unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Joints: Use solvent-cemented joints in ducts and fittings and make watertight according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger couplings so those of adjacent ducts do not lie in same plane.
- E. Installation Adjacent to High-Temperature Steam Lines: Where duct banks are installed parallel to underground steam lines, perform calculations showing the duct bank will not be subject to environmental temperatures above 40 deg C. Where environmental temperatures are calculated to rise above 40 deg C, and anywhere the duct bank crosses above an underground steam line, install insulation blankets listed for direct burial to isolate the duct bank from the steam line.
- F. Duct Entrances to Manholes and Concrete and Polymer Concrete Handholes: Use end bells, spaced approximately 10 inches o.c. for 5-inch ducts, and vary proportionately for other duct sizes.
  - 1. Begin change from regular spacing to end-bell spacing 10 feet from the end bell without reducing duct line slope and without forming a trap in the line.
  - 2. Direct-Buried Duct Banks: Install an expansion and deflection fitting in each conduit in the area of disturbed earth adjacent to manhole or handhole. Install an expansion fitting near the center of all straight line direct-buried duct banks with calculated expansion of more than 3/4 inch.
  - 3. Grout end bells into structure walls from both sides to provide watertight entrances.
- G. Building Wall Penetrations: Make a transition from underground duct to rigid steel conduit at least 10 feet outside the building wall, without reducing duct line slope away from the building, and without forming a trap in the line. Use fittings manufactured for duct-to-conduit transition. Install conduit penetrations of building walls as specified in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."
- H. Sealing: Provide temporary closure at terminations of ducts that have cables pulled. Seal spare ducts at terminations. Use sealing compound and plugs to withstand at least 15-psig hydrostatic pressure.
- I. Pulling Cord: Install 100-lbf- test nylon cord in empty ducts.
- J. Concrete-Encased Ducts: Support ducts on duct separators.
  - 1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct bank. Prepare trench bottoms as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipes less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
  - 2. Width: Excavate trench 12 inches wider than duct bank on each side.
  - 3. Width: Excavate trench 3 inches wider than duct bank on each side.
  - 4. Depth: Install top of duct bank at least 24 inches below finished grade in areas not subject to deliberate traffic, and at least 30 inches below finished grade in deliberate traffic paths for vehicles unless otherwise indicated.
  - 5. Support ducts on duct separators coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.

6. Separator Installation: Space separators close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of ducts, with not less than four spacers per 20 feet of duct. Secure separators to earth and to ducts to prevent floating during concreting. Stagger separators approximately 6 inches between tiers. Tie entire assembly together using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
7. Minimum Space between Ducts: 3 inches between ducts and exterior envelope wall, 2 inches between ducts for like services, and 4 inches between power and signal ducts.
8. Elbows: Use manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment, at building entrances through floor, and at changes of direction in duct run unless otherwise indicated. Extend concrete encasement throughout length of elbow.
9. Elbows: Use manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment, at building entrances through floor, and at changes of direction in duct run.
  - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete.
  - b. Stub-Ups to Equipment: For equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
10. Reinforcement: Reinforce concrete-encased duct banks where they cross disturbed earth and where indicated. Arrange reinforcing rods and ties without forming conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
11. Forms: Use walls of trench to form side walls of duct bank where soil is self-supporting and concrete envelope can be poured without soil inclusions; otherwise, use forms.
12. Concrete Cover: Install a minimum of 3 inches of concrete cover at top and bottom, and a minimum of 2 inches on each side of duct bank.
13. Concreting Sequence: Pour each run of envelope between manholes or other terminations in one continuous operation.
  - a. Start at one end and finish at the other, allowing for expansion and contraction of ducts as their temperature changes during and after the pour. Use expansion fittings installed according to manufacturer's written recommendations, or use other specific measures to prevent expansion-contraction damage.
  - b. If more than one pour is necessary, terminate each pour in a vertical plane and install 3/4-inch reinforcing-rod dowels extending a minimum of 18 inches into concrete on both sides of joint near corners of envelope.
14. Pouring Concrete: Comply with requirements in "Concrete Placement" Article in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Place concrete carefully during pours to prevent voids under and between conduits and at exterior surface of envelope. Do not allow a heavy mass of concrete to fall directly onto ducts. Allow concrete to flow to center of bank and rise up in middle, uniformly filling all open spaces. Do not use power-driven agitating equipment unless specifically designed for duct-bank application.

K. Direct-Buried Duct Banks:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct bank. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for preparation of trench bottoms for pipes less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.

2. Support ducts on duct separators coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
3. Space separators close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of ducts, with not less than four spacers per 20 feet of duct. Secure separators to earth and to ducts to prevent displacement during backfill and yet permit linear duct movement due to expansion and contraction as temperature changes. Stagger spacers approximately 6 inches between tiers.
4. Depth: Install top of duct bank at least 36 inches below finished grade unless otherwise indicated.
5. Set elevation of bottom of duct bank below frost line.
6. Install ducts with a minimum of 3 inches between ducts for like services and 6 inches between power and signal ducts.
7. Elbows: Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment, at building entrances through floor, and at changes of direction in duct run unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
8. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment, at building entrances through floor, and at changes of direction in duct run.
  - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete.
  - b. For equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of equipment pad or foundation. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
9. After installing first tier of ducts, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point and work toward end of duct run, leaving ducts at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Repeat procedure after placing each tier. After placing last tier, hand place backfill to 4 inches over ducts and hand tamp. Firmly tamp backfill around ducts to provide maximum supporting strength. Use hand tamper only. After placing controlled backfill over final tier, make final duct connections at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for installation of backfill materials.
  - a. Place minimum 3 inches of sand as a bed for duct bank. Place sand to a minimum of 6 inches above top level of duct bank.
  - b. Place minimum 6 inches of engineered fill above concrete encasement of duct bank.
- L. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately 12 inches above direct-buried ducts and duct banks, placing them 24 inches o.c. Align planks along the width and along the centerline of duct bank. Provide an additional plank for each 12-inch increment of duct-bank width over a nominal 18 inches. Space additional planks 12 inches apart, horizontally.
- M. Warning Tape: Bury warning tape approximately 12 inches above all concrete-encased ducts and duct banks. Align tape parallel to and within 3 inches of centerline of duct bank. Provide an additional warning tape for each 12-inch increment of duct-bank width over a nominal 18 inches. Space additional tapes 12 inches apart, horizontally.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF CONCRETE MANHOLES, HANDHOLES, AND BOXES

#### A. Cast-in-Place Manhole Installation:

1. Finish interior surfaces with a smooth-troweled finish.
2. Windows for Future Duct Connections: Form and pour concrete knockout panels 1-1/2 to 2 inches thick, arranged as indicated.
3. Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for cast-in-place concrete, formwork, and reinforcement.

#### B. Precast Concrete Handhole and Manhole Installation:

1. Comply with ASTM C 891 unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install units level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting ducts, to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
3. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

#### C. Elevations:

1. Manhole Roof: Install with rooftop at least 15 inches below finished grade.
2. Manhole Frame: In paved areas and trafficways, set frames flush with finished grade. Set other manhole frames 1 inch above finished grade.
3. Install handholes with bottom below frost line, below grade.
4. Handhole Covers: In paved areas and trafficways, set surface flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch above finished grade.
5. Where indicated, cast handhole cover frame integrally with handhole structure.

#### D. Drainage: Install drains in bottom of manholes where indicated. Coordinate with drainage provisions indicated.

#### E. Manhole Access: Circular opening in manhole roof; sized to match cover size.

1. Manholes with Fixed Ladders: Offset access opening from manhole centerlines to align with ladder.
2. Install chimney, constructed of precast concrete collars and rings, to support cast-iron frame to connect cover with manhole roof opening. Provide moisture-tight masonry joints and waterproof grouting for frame to chimney.

#### F. Waterproofing: Apply waterproofing to exterior surfaces of manholes and handholes after concrete has cured at least three days. Waterproofing materials and installation are specified in Section 071353 "Elastomeric Sheet Waterproofing." Section 071354 "Thermoplastic Sheet Waterproofing." After ducts have been connected and grouted, and before backfilling, waterproof joints and connections, and touch up abrasions and scars. Waterproof exterior of manhole chimneys after mortar has cured at least three days.

#### G. Dampproofing: Apply dampproofing to exterior surfaces of manholes and handholes after concrete has cured at least three days. Dampproofing materials and installation are specified in Section 071113 "Bituminous Dampproofing." After ducts are connected and grouted, and before

backfilling, dampproof joints and connections, and touch up abrasions and scars. Dampproof exterior of manhole chimneys after mortar has cured at least three days.

- H. Hardware: Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, and cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated.
- I. Fixed Manhole Ladders: Arrange to provide for safe entry with maximum clearance from cables and other items in manholes.
- J. Field-Installed Bolting Anchors in Manholes and Concrete Handholes: Do not drill deeper than 3-7/8 inches for manholes and 2 inches for handholes, for anchor bolts installed in the field. Use a minimum of two anchors for each cable stanchion.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF HANDHOLES AND BOXES OTHER THAN PRECAST CONCRETE

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting ducts, to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances. Use box extension if required to match depths of ducts, and seal joint between box and extension as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas and trafficways, set cover flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch above finished grade.
- D. Install handholes and boxes with bottom below frost line, below grade.
- E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.
- F. Field cut openings for ducts and conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.
- G. For enclosures installed in asphalt paving and subject to occasional, nondeliberate, heavy-vehicle loading, form and pour a concrete ring encircling, and in contact with, enclosure and with top surface screeded to top of box cover frame. Bottom of ring shall rest on compacted earth.
  - 1. Concrete: 3000 psi, 28-day strength, complying with Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete," with a troweled finish.
  - 2. Dimensions: 10 inches wide by 12 inches deep.

### 3.8 GROUNDING

- A. Ground underground ducts and utility structures according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - 1. Demonstrate capability and compliance with requirements on completion of installation of underground ducts and utility structures.
  - 2. Pull solid aluminum or wood test mandrel through duct to prove joint integrity and adequate bend radii, and test for out-of-round duct. Provide a minimum 6-inch- long mandrel equal to 80 percent fill of duct. If obstructions are indicated, remove obstructions and retest.
  - 3. Test manhole and handhole grounding to ensure electrical continuity of grounding and bonding connections. Measure and report ground resistance as specified in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Correct deficiencies and retest as specified above to demonstrate compliance.

### 3.10 CLEANING

- A. Pull leather-washer-type duct cleaner, with graduated washer sizes, through full length of ducts. Follow with rubber duct swab for final cleaning and to assist in spreading lubricant throughout ducts.
- B. Clean internal surfaces of manholes, including sump. Remove foreign material.

END OF SECTION 260543

SECTION 260544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves for raceway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Silicone sealants.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

A. Wall Sleeves:

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral water-stop unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.

- C. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

- D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:
  - 1. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
  - 2. Minimum Metal Thickness:
    - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and with no side larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
    - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter 50 inches or more and one or more sides larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

## 2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. CALPICO, Inc.
    - c. Metraflex Company (The).
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc. (Linkseal)
    - e. Proco Products, Inc.
  - 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  - 3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
  - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Presealed Systems.



## 2.4 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## 2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.
  - 1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
  - 2. Sealant shall have VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 3. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.
- C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
  - 1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
    - a. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
    - b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
  - 2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.

3. Size pipe sleeves to provide **1/4-inch** annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance.
4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors **2 inches** above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.

D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:

1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.

E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

### 3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.
- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position water-stop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION 260544

## SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Identification for raceway and metal-clad cable.
  - 2. Identification for conductors and communication and control cable.
  - 3. Underground-line warning tape.
  - 4. Warning labels and signs.
  - 5. Instruction signs.
  - 6. Equipment identification labels.
  - 7. Miscellaneous identification products.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each electrical identification product indicated.
- B. Identification Schedule: An index of nomenclature of electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels.
- C. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 and ANSI C2.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in the Contract Documents, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual, and with those required by codes, standards, and 29 CFR 1910.145. Use consistent designations throughout Project.

- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- C. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with location of access panels and doors.
- D. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 RACEWAY AND METAL-CLAD CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway and cable size.
- B. Color for Printed Legend:
  - 1. Power Circuits: Black letters on an orange field.
  - 2. Legend: Indicate system or service and voltage, if applicable.
- C. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.
- D. Snap-Around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeves, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
- E. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeves, **2 inches (50 mm)** long, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
- F. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; **2 inches (50 mm)** wide; compounded for outdoor use.

### 2.2 CONDUCTOR AND COMMUNICATION- AND CONTROL-CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Colored, self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than **3 mils (0.08 mm)** thick by **1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm)** wide.
- B. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.
- C. Aluminum Wraparound Marker Labels: Cut from **0.014-inch- (0.35-mm-)** thick aluminum sheet, with stamped, embossed, or scribed legend, and fitted with tabs and matching slots for permanently securing around wire or cable jacket or around groups of conductors.
- D. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, **2 by 2 by 0.05 inch (50 by 50 by 1.3 mm)**, with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking nylon tie fastener.

- E. Write-On Tags: Polyester tag, 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and polyester or nylon tie for attachment to conductor or cable.
  - 1. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.

## 2.3 WARNING LABELS AND SIGNS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- B. Self-Adhesive Warning Labels: Factory printed, multicolor, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for display on front cover, door, or other access to equipment, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Baked-Enamel Warning Signs: Preprinted aluminum signs, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting. Nominal size, 7 by 10 inches (180 by 250 mm).
- D. Metal-Backed, Butyrate Warning Signs: Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs with 0.0396-inch (1-mm) galvanized-steel backing; and with colors, legend, and size required for application. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting. Nominal size, 10 by 14 inches (250 by 360 mm).
- E. Warning label and sign shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
  - 1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
  - 2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES (915 MM)."

## 2.4 INSTRUCTION SIGNS

- A. Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine plastic, minimum 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick for signs up to 20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm) and 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick for larger sizes.
  - 1. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
  - 2. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners.
  - 3. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

## 2.5 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS

- A. Adhesive Film Label: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- B. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm). Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and ultraviolet-resistant seal for label.
- C. Self-Adhesive, Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Adhesive backed, with white letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm).

- D. Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Punched or drilled for screw mounting. White letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be **3/8 inch (10 mm)**.
- E. Stenciled Legend: In nonfading, waterproof, black ink or paint. Minimum letter height shall be **1 inch (25 mm)**.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Cable Ties: Fungus-inert, self-extinguishing, 1-piece, self-locking, Type 6/6 nylon cable ties.
  - 1. Minimum Width: **3/16 inch (5 mm)**.
  - 2. Tensile Strength: **50 lb (22.6 kg)**, minimum.
  - 3. Temperature Range: **Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C)**.
  - 4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.
- B. Paint: Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Division 9 painting Sections.
  - 1. Exterior Concrete, Stucco, and Masonry (Other Than Concrete Unit Masonry):
    - a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: One finish coat(s) over a primer.
      - 1) Primer: Exterior concrete and masonry primer.
      - 2) Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss acrylic enamel.
  - 2. Exterior Concrete Unit Masonry:
    - a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: One finish coat(s) over a block filler.
      - 1) Block Filler: Concrete unit masonry block filler.
      - 2) Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss acrylic enamel.
  - 3. Exterior Ferrous Metal:
    - a. Semigloss Alkyd-Enamel Finish: One finish coat(s) over a primer.
      - 1) Primer: Exterior ferrous-metal primer.
      - 2) Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss alkyd enamel.
  - 4. Exterior Zinc-Coated Metal (except Raceways):
    - a. Semigloss Alkyd-Enamel Finish: One finish coat(s) over a primer.
      - 1) Primer: Exterior zinc-coated metal primer.
      - 2) Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss alkyd enamel.
  - 5. Interior Concrete and Masonry (Other Than Concrete Unit Masonry):
    - a. Semigloss Alkyd-Enamel Finish: One finish coat(s) over a primer.
      - 1) Primer: Interior concrete and masonry primer.
      - 2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss alkyd enamel.

6. Interior Concrete Unit Masonry:
  - a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: One finish coat(s) over a block filler.
    - 1) Block Filler: Concrete unit masonry block filler.
    - 2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.
7. Interior Gypsum Board:
  - a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: One finish coat(s) over a primer.
    - 1) Primer: Interior gypsum board primer.
    - 2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.
8. Interior Ferrous Metal:
  - a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: One finish coat(s) over a primer.
    - 1) Primer: Interior ferrous-metal primer.
    - 2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.
9. Interior Zinc-Coated Metal (except Raceways):
  - a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: One finish coat(s) over a primer.
    - 1) Primer: Interior zinc-coated metal primer.
    - 2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.
- C. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits More Than 30 A: Identify with orange self-adhesive vinyl label.
- B. Accessible Raceways and Cables of Auxiliary Systems: Identify the following systems with color-coded, self-adhesive vinyl tape applied in bands:
  1. Fire Alarm System: Red.
  2. Fire-Suppression Supervisory and Control System: Red and yellow.
  3. Combined Fire Alarm and Security System: Red and blue.
  4. Security System: Blue and yellow.
  5. Mechanical and Electrical Supervisory System: Green and blue.
  6. Telecommunication System: Green and yellow.
  7. Control Wiring: Green and red.
- C. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification: For secondary conductors No. 1/0 AWG and larger in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes use color-coding conductor tape.

Identify source and circuit number of each set of conductors. For single conductor cables, identify phase in addition to the above.

- D. Branch-Circuit Conductor Identification: Where there are conductors for more than three branch circuits in same junction or pull box, use color-coding conductor tape. Identify each ungrounded conductor according to source and circuit number.
- E. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach write-on tags to conductors and list source and circuit number.
- F. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, signal, sound, intercommunications, voice, and data connections.
  - 1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
  - 2. Use system of marker tape designations that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
  - 3. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and Operation and Maintenance Manual.
- G. Locations of Underground Lines: Identify with underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical fiber cable.
- H. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145 and apply self-adhesive warning labels. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
  - 1. Equipment with Multiple Power or Control Sources: Apply to door or cover of equipment including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Power transfer switches.
    - b. Controls with external control power connections.
  - 2. Equipment Requiring Workspace Clearance According to NFPA 70: Unless otherwise indicated, apply to door or cover of equipment but not on flush panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.
- I. Instruction Signs:
  - 1. Operating Instructions: Install instruction signs to facilitate proper operation and maintenance of electrical systems and items to which they connect. Install instruction signs with approved legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation.
  - 2. Emergency Operating Instructions: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum **3/8-inch- (10-mm-)** high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer.
- J. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and Operation and Maintenance Manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm systems unless equipment is provided with its own identification.



1. Labeling Instructions:
  - a. Indoor Equipment: Adhesive film label with clear protective overlay. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** high letters on **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** high label; where 2 lines of text are required, use labels **2 inches (50 mm)** high.
  - b. Outdoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
  - c. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
2. Equipment to Be Labeled:
  - a. Panelboards, electrical cabinets, and enclosures.
  - b. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
  - c. Electrical switchgear and switchboards.
  - d. Transformers.
  - e. Electrical substations.
  - f. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
  - g. Disconnect switches.
  - h. Enclosed circuit breakers.
  - i. Motor starters.
  - j. Push-button stations.
  - k. Contactors.
  - l. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
  - m. Battery racks.
  - n. Voice and data cable terminal equipment.
  - o. Intercommunication and call system master and staff stations.
  - p. Television/audio components, racks, and controls.
  - q. Fire-alarm control panel and annunciators.
  - r. Security and intrusion-detection control stations, control panels, terminal cabinets, and racks.
  - s. Monitoring and control equipment.
  - t. Terminals, racks, and patch panels for voice and data communication and for signal and control functions.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- B. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.
- C. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- D. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before application, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification device.
- E. Attach nonadhesive signs and plastic labels with screws and auxiliary hardware appropriate to the location and substrate.
- F. System Identification Color Banding for Raceways and Cables: Each color band shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent bands of two-color markings in contact, side by side. Locate bands at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at **50-**

foot (15-m) maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot (7.6-m) maximum intervals in congested areas.

- G. Color-Coding for Phase Identification, 600 V and Less: Use the colors listed below for ungrounded service feeder conductors.
1. Color shall be factory applied.
  2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
    - a. Phase A: Black.
    - b. Phase B: Red.
    - c. Phase C: Blue.
  3. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches (150 mm) from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Locate bands to avoid obscuring factory cable markings.
- H. Aluminum Wraparound Marker Labels and Metal Tags: Secure tight to surface of conductor or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- I. Underground-Line Warning Tape: During backfilling of trenches install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above line at 6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm) below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches (400 mm) overall.
- J. Painted Identification: Prepare surface and apply paint according to Division 9 painting Sections.

END OF SECTION 260553

## SECTION 260943 - NETWORK LIGHTING CONTROLS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes a networked lighting control system comprised of the following components:
  - 1. System Software Interfaces
    - a. Management Interface
    - b. Visualization Interface
    - c. Smartphone Programming Interface for Wired Devices
    - d. Smartphone Programming Interface for Wireless Devices
  - 2. System Backbone and Integration Equipment
    - a. System Controller
    - b. Digital Time Clock
  - 3. Wired Networked Devices
    - a. Wall Stations
    - b. Graphic Wall Stations
    - c. Digital Key Switches
    - d. Auxiliary Input/Output Devices
    - e. Occupancy and Photocell Sensors
    - f. Wall Switch Sensors
    - g. Power Packs and Secondary Packs
    - h. Relay and Dimming Panel
    - i. Bluetooth® Low Energy Programming Device
    - j. Communication Bridge
  - 4. Wireless Networked Devices
    - a. Wireless Networked Wall Switches, Dimmers
    - b. Wireless Networked Indoor Occupancy and Photosensors
    - c. Wireless Networked Outdoor Occupancy and Photosensors
    - d. Wireless Networked Power Packs
- B. The networked lighting control system shall meet all the characteristics and performance requirements specified herein.
- C. The contractor shall provide, install and verify proper operation of all equipment necessary for proper operation of the system as specified herein and as shown on applicable drawings.
- D. Related Documents
  - 1. Section 26 27 26 Wiring Devices
  - 2. Section 26 51 13 Interior Lighting Fixtures

## 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal shall be provided including the following items.
  - 1. Bill of Materials necessary to install the networked lighting control system.
  - 2. Product Specification Sheets indicating general device descriptions, dimensions, electrical specifications, wiring details, and nomenclature.
  - 3. Riser Diagrams showing device wiring connections of system backbone and typical per room/area type.
  - 4. Information Technology (IT) connection information pertaining to interconnection with facility IT networking equipment and third-party systems.
  - 5. Other Diagrams and Operational Descriptions – as needed to indicate system operation or interaction with other system(s).
  - 6. Contractor Startup/Commissioning Worksheet (must be completed prior to factory start-up).
  - 7. Service Specification Sheets indicating general service descriptions, including startup, training, post-startup support, and service contract terms.
  - 8. Hardware and Software Operation Manuals.

## 1.3 APPROVALS

- A. Prior approval from Engineer is required for products or systems manufactured by companies not specified in the Network Lighting Controls section of this specification.
- B. Any alternate product or system that has not received prior approval from the Engineer at least 10 days prior to submission of a proposal package shall be rejected.
- C. Alternate products or systems require submission of catalog datasheets, system overview documents and installation manuals to Engineer.
- D. For any alternate system that does not support any form of wireless communication to networked luminaires, networked control devices, networked sensors, or networked input devices, bidders shall provide a total installed cost including itemized labor costs for installing network wiring to luminaires, control devices, sensors, input devices and other required system peripherals.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Qualifications
  - 1. System electrical components shall be listed or recognized by a nationally recognized testing laboratory (e.g., UL, ETL, or CSA) and shall be labeled with required markings as applicable.
  - 2. System shall be listed as qualified under DesignLights Consortium Networked Lighting Control System Specification V2.0.
  - 3. System luminaires and controls are certified by manufacturer to have been designed, manufactured and tested for interoperability.
  - 4. All components shall be subjected to 100% end of line testing prior to shipment to the project site to ensure proper device operation.

5. All components and the manufacturing facility where product is manufactured must be RoHS compliant.

B. Installation and Startup Qualifications

1. System startup shall be performed by qualified personnel approved or certified by the manufacturer.

C. Service and Support Requirements

1. Phone Support: Toll free technical support shall be available.
2. Remote Support: The bidder shall offer a remote support capability.
3. Onsite Support: The bidder shall offer onsite support that is billable at whole day rates.
4. Service Contract: The bidder shall offer a Service Contract that packages phone, remote, and onsite support calls for the project. Response times for each type of support call shall be indicated in the terms of the service contract included in the bid package.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Only install indoor equipment after the following site conditions are maintained:

1. Ambient Temperature: 14 to 105 degrees F (-10 to 40 degrees C)
2. Relative Humidity: less than 90% non-condensing

- B. Equipment shall not be subjected to dust, debris, moisture, or temperature and humidity conditions exceeding the requirements indicated above or as marked on the product, at any point prior to installation.

- C. Only properly rated equipment and enclosures, installed per the manufacturer's instructions, may be subjected to dust and moisture following installation.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. The manufacturer shall provide a minimum five-year warranty on all hardware devices supplied and installed. Warranty coverage shall begin on the date of shipment.

- B. The hardware warranty shall cover repair or replacement any defective products within the warranty period.

1.7 MAINTENANCE & SUSTAINABILITY

- A. The manufacturer shall make available to the owner new parts, upgrades, and/or replacements available for a minimum of 5 years following installation.

PART 2 - EQUIPMENT

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis of Design System: Acuity Controls nLight

2.2 SYSTEM COMPLIANCE

- A. System components shall comply with UL 916 and UL 924 standards where applicable.
- B. System components shall comply with CFR Title 47, Part 15 standards where applicable.
- C. System components shall comply with ISED Canada RSS-247 standards where applicable.
- D. All equipment shall be installed and connected in compliance with NFPA 70.

## 2.3 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. System Architecture
  - 1. System shall have an architecture that is based upon three main concepts: (1) networkable intelligent lighting control devices, (2) standalone lighting control zones using distributed intelligence, (3) optional system backbone for remote, time based and global operation.
  - 2. Intelligent lighting control devices shall have individually addressable network communication capability and consist of one or more basic lighting control components: occupancy sensor, photocell sensor, relay, dimming output, contact closure input, analog 0-10V input, and manual wall station capable of indicating switching, dimming, and/or scene control. Combining one or more of these components into a single device enclosure shall be permissible so as to minimize overall device count of system.
  - 3. System must be capable of interfacing directly with networked luminaires such that either low voltage network cabling or wireless RF communication is used to interconnect networked luminaires with control components such as sensors, switches and system backbone (see *Control Zone Characteristics* sections for each type of network connection, wired or wireless).
  - 4. Networked luminaires and intelligent lighting control devices shall support individual (unique) configuration of device settings and properties, with such configuration residing within the networked luminaires and intelligent control devices.
  - 5. Lighting control zones consisting of one or more networked luminaires and intelligent lighting control devices and shall be capable of providing automatic control from sensors (occupancy and/or photocell) and manual control from local wall stations without requiring connection to a higher-level system backbone; this capability is referred to as “distributed intelligence.”
    - a. Lighting control zones (wired and wireless) of at least 128 devices per zone shall be supported.
  - 6. Networked luminaires and intelligent lighting control devices shall have distributed intelligence programming stored in non-volatile memory, such that following any loss of power the lighting control zones shall operate according to their defined default settings and sequence of operations.
  - 7. Lighting control zones shall be capable of being networked with a higher-level system backbone to provide time based control, remote control from inputs and/or systems external to the control zone, and remote configuration and monitoring through a software interface.
  - 8. The system may include one or more system controllers that provide time-based control. The system controller also provides a means of connecting the lighting control system to a system software interface and building management systems via BACnet/IP or BACnet MS/TP protocol.

9. All system devices shall support firmware update, either remotely or from within the applications space, for purposes of upgrading functionality at a later date.

B. Wired Networked Control Zone Characteristics

1. Connections to devices within a wired networked lighting control zone and to backbone components shall be with a single type of low voltage network cable, which shall be compliant with CAT5e specifications or higher. To prevent wiring errors and provide cost savings, the use of mixed types of low voltage network cables shall not be permitted.
2. Devices in an area shall be connected via a “daisy-chain” topology; requiring all individual networked devices to be connected back to a central component in a “hub-and-spoke” topology shall not be permitted, so as to reduce the total amount of network cable required for each control zone.
3. System shall provide the option of having pre-terminated plenum rated low voltage network cabling supplied with hardware so as to reduce the opportunity for improper wiring and communication errors during system installation.
4. Following proper installation and provision of power, all networked devices connected together with low voltage network cable shall automatically form a functional lighting control zone without requiring any type of programming, regardless of the programming mechanism (e.g. software application, handheld remote, pushbutton). The “out of box” default sequence of operation is intended to provide typical sequence of operation so as to minimize the system startup and programming requirements and to also have functional lighting control operation prior to system startup and programming.
5. Once software is installed, system shall be able to automatically discover all connected devices without requiring any provisioning of system or zone addresses.
6. All networked devices shall have the ability to detect improper communication wiring and blink its LED in a specific cadence as to alert installation/startup personnel.
7. Networked control devices intended for control of egress and/or emergency light sources shall not require the use of additional, externally mounted UL924 shunting and/or 0-10V disconnect devices, so as to provide a compliant sequence of operation while reducing the overall installation and wiring costs of the system. The following types of wired networked control devices shall be provided for egress and/or emergency light fixtures:
  - a. Low-Voltage power sensing: These devices shall automatically provide 100% light level upon detection of loss of power sensed via the low voltage network cable connection.
  - b. UL924 Listed Line-Voltage power sensing: These devices shall be listed as emergency relays under the UL924 standard, and shall automatically close the load control relay and provide 100% light output upon detection of loss of power sensed via line voltage connection to normal power.
8. Networked luminaires and intelligent lighting control devices located in different areas shall be able to transmit and track information within at least 128 system-wide control zones to support required sequences of operation that may span across multiple areas. Occupancy and photocell commands shall be available across a single controller, and switch commands shall be available across single or multiple controllers. These shall also be referred to as global control zones.
9. Wired networked Wall stations shall provide the follow Scene Control Capabilities:
  - a. Preset Scenes that can activate a specific combination of light levels across multiple local and global channels, as required.



- b. Profile Scenes that can modify the sequence of operation for the devices in the area (group) in response to a button press. This capability is defined as supporting “Local Profiles” and is used to dynamically optimize the occupant experience and lighting energy usage. Wall stations shall be able to manually start and stop Local Profiles, or the local profile shall be capable of ending after a specific duration of time between 5 minutes and 12 hours. Parameters that shall be configurable and assigned to a Local Profile shall include, but not be limited to, fixture light level, occupancy time delay, response to occupancy sensors (including enabling/disabling response), response to daylight sensors (including enabling/disabling response), and enabling/disabling of wall stations.
- c. 3-way / multi-way control: multiple wall stations shall be capable of controlling the same local and global control zones, so as to support “multi-way” preset scene and profile scene control.

C. Wireless Networked Control Zone Characteristics

- 1. No wired connections between networked devices shall be required for the purposes of system communications.
- 2. Multiple wireless networking protocols shall be supported:
  - a. A standards based, distributed star topology type of protocol for 900 MHz communication, so as to support lighting control applications and IoT applications.
  - b. A Bluetooth standard protocol for 2.4 GHz communication that supports direct connection to a smartphone and tablet device, so as to support device configuration, control applications, and IoT without requiring the use of a system backbone.
- 3. Wireless network shall be self-healing, such that the loss of backbone or local communication between devices does not result in the loss of control of the lights in the space.
- 4. Wireless network communication shall support uniform and instant response such that all luminaires in a lighting control zone respond immediately and synchronously in response to a sensor or wall station signal.
- 5. To support the system architecture requirement for distributed intelligence, wireless network communication shall support communication of control signals from sensors and wall stations to networked luminaires and wireless load control devices, without requiring any communication, interpretation, or translation of information through a backbone device such as a wireless access point, communication bridge or gateway.
- 6. All wireless communication between lighting control components shall support the following five tiers of security measures.
  - a. Data Encryption
  - b. Firmware Protection
  - c. Tamper-Proof Hardware
  - d. Authenticated User Access
  - e. Mutual Device Authentication
- 7. Accounting for typical environmental conditions and building construction materials encountered within commercial indoor lighting environments, wireless networked devices shall be capable of communicating to at least 150' spacing between devices with embedded wireless transceivers under typical site conditions.

8. Wireless networked devices shall have a line-of-sight communication range of at least 1000' under ideal environmental conditions.

D. System Integration Capabilities

1. The system shall interface with third party building management systems (BMS) to support two-way communication using the industry standard BACnet/IP or BACnet MS/TP protocols. The following system integration capabilities shall be available via BACnet/IP and BACnet MS/TP protocols:
  - a. The system shall support control of individual devices, including, but not limited to, control of relay and dimming output.
  - b. The system shall support reading of individual device status information. The available status will depend on the individual device type and capabilities, which may include but not be limited to, relay state, dimming output, power measurement, occupancy sensor status, and photocell sensor states or readings. All system devices shall be available for polling for devices status.
  - c. The system shall support activation of pre-defined system Global Profiles (see *Supported Sequence of Operations for further definition of Global Profile capabilities*).
2. The system shall support activation of Global Profiles from third party systems by receiving dry contact closure output signals or digital commands via RS-232/RS-485. (See *Supported Sequence of Operations for further definition of Profile and Scene Preset capabilities*.)
3. The system shall support activation of demand response levels from Demand Response Automation Servers (DRAS) via the OpenADR 2.0a protocol.

E. Supported Sequence of Operations

1. Control Zones
  - a. Networked luminaires and intelligent lighting control devices installed in an area (also referred to as a group of devices) shall be capable of transmitting and tracking occupancy sensor, photocell sensor, and manual switch information within at least 48 unique control zones to support different and reconfigurable sequences of operation within the area. These shall also be referred to as local control zones.
2. Wall station Capabilities
  - a. Wall stations shall be provided to support the following capabilities:
    - .1 On/Off of a local control zone.
    - .2 Continuous dimming control of light level of a local control zone.
  - b. 3-way / multi-way control: multiple wall stations shall be capable of controlling the same local control zones, so as to support "multi-way" switching and/or dimming control.
3. Occupancy Sensing Capabilities
  - a. Occupancy sensors shall be configurable to control a local zone.

- b. Multiple occupancy sensors shall be capable of controlling the same local zones. This capability combines occupancy sensing coverage from multiple sensors without consuming multiple control zones.
- c. System shall support the following types of occupancy sensing sequence of operations:
  - .1 On/Off Occupancy Sensing
  - .2 Partial-On Occupancy Sensing
  - .3 Partial-Off Occupancy Sensing
  - .4 Vacancy Sensing (Manual-On / Automatic-Off)
- d. On/Off, Partial-On, and Partial-Off Occupancy Sensing modes shall function according to the following sequence of operation:
  - .1 Occupancy sensors shall automatically turn lights on to a designated level when occupancy is detected. To support fine tuning of Partial-On sequences the designated occupied light level shall support at least 100 dimming levels.
  - .2 Occupancy sensors shall automatically turn lights off or to a dimmed state (Partial-Off) when vacancy occurs or if sufficient daylight is detected. To support fine tuning of Partial-Off sequences the designated unoccupied dim level shall support at least 100 dimming levels.
  - .3 To provide additional energy savings the system shall also be capable of combining Partial-Off and Full-Off operation by dimming the lights to a designated level when vacant and then turning the lights off completely after an additional amount of time.
  - .4 Photocell readings, if enabled in the Occupancy Sensing control zone, shall be capable of automatically adjusting the light level during occupied or unoccupied conditions as necessary to further reduce energy usage. Additional requirements and details for photocell sensing capabilities are indicated under *Photocell Sensing Capabilities*.
  - .5 The use of a wall station shall change the dimming level or turn lights off as selected by the occupant. The lights shall optionally remain in this manually-specified light level until the zone becomes vacant; upon vacancy the normal sequence of operation, as defined above, shall proceed.
- e. Vacancy Sensing mode (also referred to as Manual-On / Automatic-Off) shall function according to the following sequence of operation:
  - .1 The use of a wall station is required turn lights on. The system shall be capable of programming the zone to turn on to either a designated light level or the previous user light level. Initially occupying the space without using a wall station shall not result in lights turning on.
  - .2 Occupancy sensors shall automatically turn lights off or to a dimmed state (Partial-Off) when vacancy occurs or if sufficient daylight is detected. To support fine tuning of Partial-Off sequences the designated unoccupied dim level shall support at least 100 dimming levels.

- .3 To provide additional energy savings and an enhanced occupant experience, the system shall also be capable of dimming the lights when vacant and then turning the lights off completely after an additional amount of time.
  - .4 To minimize occupant impact in case the area or zone is still physically occupied following dimming or shutoff of the lights due to detection of vacancy, the system shall support an “automatic grace period” immediately following detection of vacancy, during which time any detected occupancy shall result in the lights reverting to the previous level. After the grace period has expired, the use of a wall station is required to turn lights on.
  - .5 Photocell readings, if enabled in the Occupancy Sensing control zone, shall be capable of automatically adjusting the light level during occupied or unoccupied conditions as necessary to further reduce energy usage. Additional requirements and details for photocell sensing capabilities are indicated under *Photocell Sensing Capabilities*.
  - .6 At any time, the use of a wall station shall change the dimming level or turn lights off as selected by the occupant. The lights shall optionally remain in this manually-specified light level until the zone becomes vacant; upon vacancy the normal sequence of operation, as defined above, shall proceed.
  - f. To comply with the 2020 Energy Conservation Construction Code of New York State, occupancy time delays before dimming or shutting off lights shall be maximum 20 minutes except in areas where automatic shutoff would endanger the safety or security of occupants.
4. Photocell Sensing Capabilities (Automatic Daylight Sensing)
- a. Photocell sensing devices shall be configurable to control a local zone.
  - b. The system shall support the following type of photocell-based control:
    - .1 Continuous Dimming: The control zone automatically adjusts its dimming output in response to photocell readings, such that a minimum light level consisting of both electric light and daylight sources is maintained at the task. The photocell response shall be configurable to adjust the photocell setpoint and dimming rates.
5. Schedule Capabilities
- a. System shall support the creation of time schedules for time-of-day override of devices including offsets from dusk and dawn.
  - b. System shall support blink warning and timed extension capabilities. At the end of a scheduled period, the system shall be capable of providing a visible “blink warning” 5 minutes prior to the end of the schedule. Wall stations may be programmed to provide timed overrides that turn the lights on for an additional period of time. Timed override duration shall be programmable for each individual device, zone of devices, or customized group of devices, ranging from 5 minutes to 12 hours.
6. Global Profile Capabilities

- a. The system shall be capable of automatically modifying the sequence of operation for selected devices in response to any of the following: a time-of-day schedule, contact closure input state, manually triggered wired wall station input, RS-232/RS-485 command to wired input device, and BACnet input command. This capability is defined as supporting “Global Profiles” and is used to dynamically optimize the occupant experience and lighting energy usage.
  - b. Global profiles may be scheduled with the following capabilities:
    - .1 Global Profiles shall be stored within and executed from the system controller (via internal timeclock) such that a dedicated software host or server is not required to be online to support automatic scheduling and/or operation of Global Profiles.
    - .2 Global Profile time-of-day schedules shall be capable of being given the following recurrence settings: daily, specific days of week, every “n” number of days, weekly, monthly, and yearly. Lighting control profile schedules shall support definition of start date, end date, end after “n” recurrences, or never ending. Daylight savings time adjustments shall be capable of being performed automatically, if desired.
    - .3 Global Profile Holiday Schedules should follow recurrent settings for specific US holiday dates regardless if they always occur on a specific date or are determined by the day/week of the month.
    - .4 Global Profiles shall be capable of being scheduled to run according to timed offsets relative to sunrise or sunset. Sunrise/sunset times shall be automatically derived from location information using an astronomical clock.
    - .5 Software management interface shall be capable of displaying a graphic calendar view of profile schedules for each control zone.
  - c. System Global Profiles shall have the following additional capabilities:
    - .1 Global Profiles shall be capable of being manually activated directly from the system controller, specially programmed wired input devices, scene capable wired wall stations, and the software management interface.
    - .2 Global Profiles shall be selectable to apply to a single device, zone of devices, or customized group of devices.
    - .3 Parameters that shall be configurable and assigned to a Global Profile shall include, but not be limited to, fixture light level, occupancy time delay, response to occupancy sensors (including enabling/disabling response), response to daylight sensors (including enabling/disabling response), and enabling/disabling of wall stations.
  - d. A backup of Local and Global Profiles shall be stored on the software’s host server such that the Profile backup can be applied to a replacement system controller or wired wall station.
7. System shall support automated demand response capabilities with automatic reduction of light level to at least three levels of demand response.

## 2.4 SYSTEM SOFTWARE INTERFACES

### A. Management Interface

1. System shall provide a web-based management interface that provides remote system control, live status monitoring, and configuration capabilities of lighting control settings and schedules.
2. Management interface must be compatible with industry-standard web browsers.
3. Management interface shall require all users to login with a User Name and Password, and shall support creation of at least 100 unique user accounts.
4. Management interface shall support at least three permission levels for users: read-only, read & change settings, and full administrative system access.
5. Management interface shall be capable of restricting access for user accounts to specific devices within the system.
6. All system devices shall be capable of being given user-defined names.
7. The following device identification information shall be displayed in the Management interface: model number, model description, serial number or network ID, manufacturing date code, custom label(s), and parent network device.
8. Management interface shall be able to read the live status of a networked luminaire or intelligent control device and shall be capable of displaying luminaire on/off status, dim level, power measurement, device temperature, PIR occupancy sensor status, microphonic occupancy sensor status, remaining occupancy time delay, photocell reading, and active Profiles.
9. Management interface shall be able to read the current active settings of a networked luminaire or intelligent control device and shall be capable of displaying dimming trim levels, occupancy sensor and photocell enable/disable, occupancy sensor time delay and light level settings, occupancy sensor response (normal or vacancy), and photocell setpoints and transition time delays.
10. Management interface shall be able to change the current active settings and default settings for an individual networked luminaire or intelligent control device.
11. Management interface shall be capable of applying settings changes for a zone of devices or a group of selected devices using a single “save” action that does not require the user to save settings changes for each individual device.
12. A printable network inventory report shall be available via the management interface.
13. A printable report detailing all system profiles shall be available via the management interface.
14. All sensitive information stored by the software shall be encrypted.
15. All system software updates must be available for automatic download and installation via the internet.

B. Visualization and Programming Interfaces

1. System shall provide an optional web-based visualization interface that displays graphical floorplan.
2. Graphical floorplan shall offer the following types of system visualization:
  - a. Full Device Option - A master graphic of the entire building, by floor, showing each control device installed in the project with zones outlined. This shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
    - .1 Controls embedded light fixtures

- .2 Controls devices not embedded in light fixtures
- .3 Daylight Sensors
- .4 Occupancy Sensors
- .5 Wall Switches and Dimmers
- .6 Scene Controllers
- .7 Networked Relays
- .8 Wired Bridges
- .9 System Controllers
- .10 Wired Relay Panels
- .11 Group outlines
- b. Group Only Option - A master graphic of the entire building, by floor, showing only control groups outlined.
- c. Allow for pan and zoom commands so smaller areas can be displayed on a larger scale simply by panning and zooming each floor's master graphic.
- d. A mouse click on any control device shall display the following information (as applicable):
  - .1 The device catalog number.
  - .2 The device name and custom label.
  - .3 Device diagnostic information.
  - .4 Information about the device status or current configuration is available with an additional mouse click.
- 3. Application interface shall be provided for both Apple iOS® and Android operating systems that allows configuration of lighting control settings.
- 4. The application shall support the configuration and control of wired networked control devices via a Bluetooth® Low Energy (BLE) Programming Device.
  - a. Application shall support a security pin-code to access the zone of lighting control devices.
  - b. The application shall provide indication of signal strength where multiple Bluetooth Low Energy Programming Devices are available for configuration.
  - c. The application shall indicate the number of wired networked control devices connected to the local daisy-chain zone.
  - d. The application shall provide on/off/dimming control of all control groups.
  - e. The application shall provide the ability to identify all individual luminaires and control devices.
- 5. Programming capabilities through the application shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
  - a. Switch/occupancy/photosensor zone configuration
  - b. Manual/automatic on modes
  - c. Turn-on dim level
  - d. Occupancy sensor time delays

- e. Dual technology occupancy sensors sensitivity
- f. Photosensor calibration adjustment and auto-setpoint
- g. Multiple photosensor zone offset
- h. Trim level settings
- i. Preset scene creation and copy for scene capable devices.
- j. Application of custom device labels to the Bluetooth Low Energy Programming Devices and individual connected lighting control devices.

C. Smartphone Programming Interface for Wireless Devices

- 1. Application interface shall be provided for both Apple iOS® and Android operating systems that allows configuration of lighting control settings.
- 2. The application shall support the configuration of wireless networked control devices
  - a. Application shall limit access with a user name and password
  - b. Access to the program information will be governed by a permission system that allows users to share access with other users and restrict access to those who should not be able to reconfigure the equipment.
  - c. The application shall provide indication of signal strength where multiple Bluetooth Low Energy Programming Devices are available for configuration.
- 3. Programming capabilities through the application shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
  - a. Switch/occupancy/photosensor group configuration
  - b. Manual/automatic on modes
  - c. Turn-on dim level
  - d. Occupancy sensor time delays
  - e. Dual technology occupancy sensors sensitivity
  - f. Photosensor calibration adjustment and auto-setpoint
  - g. Multiple photosensor zone offset
  - h. Trim level settings

2.5 SYSTEM BACKBONE AND SYSTEM INTEGRATION EQUIPMENT

A. System Controller

- 1. System Controller shall be multi-tasking, real-time digital control processor consisting of modular hardware with plug-in enclosed processors, communication controllers, and power supplies.
- 2. System Controller shall have 32-bit microprocessor operating at a minimum of 1 GHz.
- 3. System Controller shall have minimum of 512MB memory, with a minimum of 4GB non-volatile flash, to support its own operating system and databases.
- 4. System Controller shall perform the following functions:
  - a. Time-based control of downstream wired and wireless network devices.
  - b. Linking into an Ethernet network.



- c. Integration with Building Management Systems (BMS) and Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning (HVAC) equipment.
  - d. Connection to various software interfaces, including management interface, historical database and analytics interface, and visualization interface.
- 5. System Controller shall have an integral web server to support configuration, diagnostics and hosting of software interfaces.
- 6. Device shall have option for a graphical touch screen to support configuration and diagnostics.
- 7. Device shall have three RJ-45 networked lighting control ports for connection to any of the following:
  - a. The graphical touch screen
  - b. Wired communication bridges
  - c. Direct connection to networked wired luminaires and intelligent lighting control devices (up to 128 total devices per port)
- 8. Device shall automatically detect all networked devices connected to it.
- 9. Device shall have an internal time clock used for astronomical and standard schedules.
- 10. Device shall have 2 switched RJ-45 10/100 BaseT Ethernet ports for local area network (LAN) connection.
  - a. Ethernet connection shall support daisy chain wiring to other lighting control system LAN devices.
  - b. Ethernet connection shall support IPv4 and shall be capable of using a dedicated static or DHCP assigned IP address.
- 11. Device shall have 2 x USB 2.0 Expansion ports for 802.11 Wi-Fi Adapter enabling wireless connectivity including:
  - a. Hot Spot
  - b. Access Point
  - c. Client
- 12. Each System Controller shall be capable of managing and operating at least 750 networked devices (wired or wireless).
  - a. Multiple System Controllers may be networked together via LAN connection to scale the system up to 20,000 networked devices.
- 13. System Controller shall support BACnet/IP and BACnet MS/TP protocols to directly interface with BMS and HVAC equipment without the need for additional protocol translation gateways.
  - a. BACnet MS/TP shall support 9600 to 115200 baud rate.
  - b. System Controller shall be BACnet Testing Laboratory (BTL listed) using Device Profile BACnet Building Controller (B-BC) with outlined enhanced features.
- 14. System controller shall contain a “FIPS 140-2 Level 1 Inside” cryptographic module.
- 15. System controller shall support RESTful API control of BACnet objects, user management, date and time, and file management.
- 16. System controller shall be available within a NEMA 1 enclosure with Class 1 and Class 2 separation

- a. Enclosure shall support power input power of 120-277VAC, or optional 347

B. Digital Electronic Time Clock (DTC)

1. DTC shall control and program a linear bus of lighting devices and supply all time functions without connection to a system controller.
  - a. Programming of the linear bus of lighting devices shall not require additional hardware, including computers, specialized dongles, or other connection devices.
  - b. Programming of the linear bus shall be exclusively done through the touch screen interface.
2. DTC shall be capable of up to 32 schedules. Each schedule shall consist of one set of On and Off times per day for each day of the week and for each of two holiday lists. The schedules shall apply to any individual relay or group of relays.
3. DTC shall be run from non-volatile memory so that all system programming is retained indefinitely.
4. DTC shall be optionally mounted inside of a relay panel. Installation inside of the relay panel shall eliminate the necessity of any additional enclosures for complete installation.
5. DTC shall have a capacitive 3.5" full color touch screen.

2.6 WIRED NETWORKED DEVICES

A. Wired Networked Wall Switches, Dimmers, Scene Controllers

1. Devices shall recess into single-gang switch box and fit a standard GFI opening.
2. Communication and low voltage power shall be delivered to each device via standard low voltage network cabling with RJ-45 connectors.
3. All switches shall have the ability to detect when it is not receiving valid communication and blink its LED in a pattern to visually indicate a potential wiring issue.
4. Devices with mechanical push-buttons shall provide tactile and LED user feedback.
5. Devices with mechanical push-buttons shall be made available with custom button labeling.
6. Wall switches & dimmers shall support the following device options:
  - a. Number of control zones: 1, 2 or 4
  - b. Control Types Supported:
    - .1 On/Off
    - .2 On/Off/Dimming
    - .3 On/Off/Dimming/Correlated Color Temperature Control for specific luminaire types
  - c. Color of device and cover plate: White
7. Scene controllers shall support the following device options:
  - a. Number of scenes: 1, 2 or 4
  - b. Control Types Supported:
    - .1 On/Off

- .2 On/Off/Dimming
- .3 Preset Level Scene Type
- .4 On/Off/Dimming/Preset Level for Correlated Color Temperature
- .5 Reprogramming of other devices within daisy-chained zone so as to implement user selected lighting scene. This shall support manual start/stop from the scene controller, or optionally programmed to automatically end after a user selectable duration between 5 minutes and 12 hours.
- .6 Selecting a lighting profile to be run by the system's upstream controller so as to implement a selected lighting profile across multiple zones. This shall support manual start/stop from the scene controller, or optionally programmed to automatically end after a user selectable duration between 5 minutes and 12 hours.

c. Color of device and cover plate: White

B. Wired Networked Graphic Wall Stations

- 1. Device shall surface mount to single-gang switch box.
- 2. Device shall have a 3.5", capacitive full color touch screen.
- 3. Device shall be powered with Class 2 low voltage supplied locally via a directly wired power supply.
- 4. Device shall have a micro-USB style connector for local computer connectivity.
- 5. Communication shall be over standard low voltage network cabling with RJ-45 connectors.
- 6. Device shall enable user supplied screen saver image to be uploaded within one of the following formats: jpg, png, gif, bmp, tif.
- 7. Device shall enable configuration of all switches, dimmers, control zones, and lighting preset scenes via password protected setup screens.
- 8. Graphic wall stations shall support the following device options:
  - a. Number of control zones: Up to 16
  - b. Number of scenes: Up to 16
  - c. Profile type scene duration: User configurable from 5 minutes to 12 hours
  - d. Color of device and cover plate: White

C. Wired Networked Digital Key Switches

- 1. Devices shall recess into single-gang switch box and fit a standard GFI opening.
- 2. Communication and low voltage power shall be delivered to each device via standard low voltage network cabling with RJ-45 connectors.
- 3. All switches shall have the ability to detect when it is not receiving valid communication and blink its LED in a pattern to visually indicate a potential wiring issue.
- 4. Devices shall have LED user feedback to provide indication of on/off status of the programmed lights or scene, as well as indication of device power.
- 5. Digital key switches shall support the following device options:

- a. Control Types Supported:
    - .1 On/Off
    - .2 On/Off/Dimming
    - .3 Preset Level Scene Type
    - .4 Reprogramming of other devices within daisy-chained zone so as to implement user selected lighting scene. This shall support manual start/stop from the scene controller, or optionally programmed to automatically end after a user selectable duration between 5 minutes and 12 hours.
    - .5 Selecting a lighting profile to be run by the system's upstream controller so as to implement a selected lighting profile across multiple zones. This shall support manual start/stop from the scene controller, or optionally programmed to automatically end after a user selectable duration between 5 minutes and 12 hours.
  - b. Color of device and cover plate: White
- D. Wired Networked Auxiliary Input / Output (I/O) Devices
- 1. Devices shall be plenum rated and be inline wired, screw mountable, or have an extended chase nipple for mounting to a ½" knockout.
  - 2. Communication and low voltage power shall be delivered to each device via standard low voltage network cabling with RJ-45 connectors.
  - 3. Auxiliary Input/Output Devices shall be specified as an input or output device with the following options:
    - a. Contact closure or Pull High input
      - .1 Input shall be programmable to support maintained or momentary inputs that can activate local or global scenes and profiles, activate lights at a preconfigured level, ramp light level up or down, or toggle lights on/off.
    - b. 0-10V analog input
      - .1 Input shall be programmable to function as a daylight sensor.
    - c. RS-232/RS-485 digital input
      - .1 Input supports activation of up to 4 local or global scenes and profiles, and on/off/dimming control of up to 16 local control zones.
    - d. 0-10V dimming control output, capable of sinking up to 20mA of current
      - .1 Output shall be programmable to support all standard sequence of operations supported by system.
    - e. Digital control output via EldoLED LEDcode communication
      - .1 Output shall be programmable to support light intensity control, as well as optional correlated color temperature (CCT) control, of the connected luminaire.
- E. Wired Networked Occupancy and Photosensors
- 1. Occupancy sensors shall sense the presence of human activity within the desired space and fully control the on/off function of the lights.

2. All sensors shall be Dual Technology. Dual technology sensors shall have one of its two technologies not require motion to detect occupancy. Acceptable dual technology includes PIR/Microphonics (also known as Passive Dual Technology or PDT) which both looks for occupant motion and listens for sounds indicating occupants. Sensors where both technologies detect motion (PIR/Ultrasonic) shall not be acceptable.
3. All sensing technologies shall be acoustically passive, meaning they do not transmit sounds waves of any frequency (for example in the Ultrasonic range), as these technologies have the potential for interference with other electronic devices within the space (such as electronic white board readers).
4. System shall have ceiling, fixture, recessed & corner mounted sensors available, with multiple lens options available customized for specific applications.
5. Communication and low voltage power shall be delivered to each device via standard low voltage network cabling with RJ-45 connectors.
6. All sensors shall have the ability to detect when it is not receiving valid communication and blink its LED in a pattern to visually indicate a potential wiring issue.
7. Sensor programming parameter shall be available and configurable remotely from the software and locally via the device push-button.
8. Ceiling mount occupancy sensors shall be available with zero or one integrated dry contact switching relays, capable of switching 1 amp at 24 VAC/VDC (resistive only).
9. Sensors shall be available with one or two occupancy “poles”, each of which provides a programmable time delay.
10. Sensors shall have optional features for photosensor/daylight override, automatic dimming control, and low temperature/high humidity operation.
11. Photosensor shall provide for an on/off set-point, and a dead band to prevent the artificial light from cycling. Delay shall be incorporated into the photocell to prevent rapid response to passing clouds.
12. Photosensor and dimming sensor’s set-point and dead band shall be automatically calibrated through the sensor’s microprocessor by initiating an “Automatic Set-point Programming” procedure. Min and max dim settings as well as set-point may be manually entered.
13. Dead band setting shall be verified and modified by the sensor automatically every time the lights cycle to accommodate physical changes in the space (i.e., furniture layouts, lamp depreciation, or lamp outages).
14. A dual zone option shall be available for On/Off Photocell, Automatic Dimming Control Photocell, or Combination units. The secondary daylight zone shall be capable of being controlled as an “offset” from the primary zone.
15. Color of device: White

F. Wired Networked Wall Switch Sensors

1. Devices shall recess into single-gang switch box and fit a standard GFI opening.
2. Communication and low voltage power shall be delivered to each device via standard low voltage network cabling with RJ-45 connectors.
3. All wall switch sensors shall have the ability to detect when it is not receiving valid communication and blink its LED in a pattern to visually indicate a potential wiring issue.
4. Devices with mechanical push-buttons shall provide tactile user feedback.

5. Wall switches sensors shall support the following device options:
  - a. User Input Control Types Supported: On/Off or On/Off/Dimming
  - b. Occupancy Sensing Technology: PIR only or Dual Tech acoustic
  - c. Daylight Sensing Option: Inhibit Photosensor
  - d. Color of device and cover plate: White
- G. Wired Networked Power Packs and Secondary Packs
  1. Power Packs shall incorporate one optional Class 1 relay, optional 0-10 VDC dimming output, and contribute low voltage Class 2 power to the rest of the system.
  2. Power Packs shall accept 120 or 277 VAC (or optionally 347 VAC) and carry a plenum rating.
  3. Secondary Packs shall incorporate the relay and 0-10 VDC or line voltage dimming output, but shall not be required to contribute system power.
  4. Power Supplies shall provide system power only, but are not required to switch line voltage circuit.
  5. Auxiliary Relay Packs shall switch low voltage circuits only, capable of switching 1 amp at 40 VAC/VDC (resistive only).
  6. Communication shall be delivered to each device via standard low voltage network cabling with RJ-45 connectors. Secondary packs shall receive low voltage power via standard low voltage network cable.
  7. Power Pack programming parameters shall be available and configurable remotely from the software and locally via the device push-button.
  8. Power Pack shall securely mount through a threaded ½ inch chase nipple or be capable of being secured within a luminaire ballast/driver channel. Plastic clips into junction box shall not be accepted. All Class 1 wiring shall pass through chase nipple into adjacent junction box without any exposure of wire leads. Note: UL Listing under Energy Management or Industrial Control Equipment automatically meets this requirement, whereas Appliance Control Listing does not meet this safety requirement.
  9. When required by local code, Power Pack must install inside standard electrical enclosure and provide UL recognized support to junction box. All Class 1 wiring is to pass through chase nipple into adjacent junction box without any exposure of wire leads.
  10. Power/Secondary Packs shall be available with the following options:
    - a. Power Pack capable of full 16-Amp switching of all normal power lighting load types, with optional 0-10V dimming output capable of up to 100mA of sink current.
    - b. Secondary Pack with UL924 listing for switching of full 16-Amp Emergency Power circuits, with optional 0-10V dimming output capable of up to 100mA of sink current.
    - c. Power and Secondary Packs capable of full 20-Amp switching of general purpose receptacle (plug-load) control.
    - d. Secondary Pack capable of full 16-Amp switching of all normal power lighting load types.

- e. Secondary Pack capable of 5-Amps switching and dimming 120 VAC incandescent lighting loads or 120/277 VAC line voltage dimmable fluorescent ballasts (2-wire and 3-wire versions).
- f. Secondary Pack capable of 5-Amps switching and dimming of 120/277 VAC magnetic low voltage transformers.
- g. Secondary Pack capable of 4-Amps switching and dimming of 120 VAC electronic low voltage transformers.
- h. Secondary Pack capable of louver/damper motor control for skylights.
- i. Secondary Pack capable of providing a pulse on/pulse off signal for purposes of controlling shade systems via relay inputs.
- j. Secondary Pack capable of switching 1 amp at 40 VAC/VDC (resistive only) with the intent to provide relay signal to auxiliary system (e.g. BMS).
- k. Power Supply capable of providing auxiliary bus power (no switched or dimmed load).

H. Wired Networked Relay and Dimming Panel

- 1. Relay and dimming panel shall be available with 4, 8, 12, 16, 24, 32, 40 or 48 individual relays per panel, with an equal number of individual 0-10V dimming outputs.
- 2. Optional Field Configurable Relays (FCR) used shall have the following required properties:
  - a. Configurable in the field to operate with single-, double-, or triple-pole relay groupings.
  - b. Configurable in the field to operate with normally closed or normally open behavior.
  - c. Provides visual status of current state and manual override control of each relay.
  - d. Listed for the following minimum ratings:
    - .1 40A @ 120-480VAC Ballast
    - .2 16A @ 120-277VAC Electronic
    - .3 20A @ 120-277VAC Tungsten
    - .4 20A @ 48VDC Resistive
    - .5 2HP @ 120VAC
    - .6 3HP @ 240-277VAC
    - .7 65kA SCCR @ 480VAC
- 3. 0-10 dimming outputs shall support a minimum of 100mA sink current per output.
- 4. Relay and dimming outputs shall be individually programmable to support all standard sequence of operations as defined in this specification.
- 5. Panel shall be UL924 listed for control of emergency lighting circuits.
- 6. Panel shall power itself from an integrated 120-277 VAC or optional 347VAC supply.
- 7. Panel shall provide a configurable low-voltage sensor input with the following properties:
  - a. Configurable to support any of the following input types:
    - .1 Indoor Photocell

- .2 Outdoor Photocell
- .3 Occupancy Sensor
- .4 Contact Closure
- b. Low voltage sensor input shall provide +24VDC power for the sensor so that additional auxiliary power supplies are not required.
- c. Sensor input supports all standard sequence of operations as defined in this specification.
- 8. Panel shall provide a contact closure input for each group of 8-relays that acts as a panel override to activate the normally configured state of all relays (i.e., normally open or normally closed) in the panel. This input is intended to provide an interface to alarm systems, fire panels, or BMS system to override the panel.
- 9. Panel shall supply current limited low voltage power to other networked devices connected via low voltage network cable.
- 10. Panel shall be available with NEMA 1 rated enclosure with the following mounting and cover options:
  - a. Surface-mounted for all panel sizes
  - b. Flush-mounted for up to 16 relay panel sizes
  - c. Screw-fastened for up to 16 relay panel sizes
  - d. Hinged cover with keyed lock for all panel sizes
- 11. Surface-mounted screw cover options for 8 and 16 relay panel sizes shall be plenum rated
- 12. Panel shall be rated from 0-50C for 8 and 16 enclosure sizes, and 0-45C for 32 and 48 enclosure sizes.
- I. Wired Networked Bluetooth® Low Energy Programming Device
  - 1. Device shall be plenum rated and be inline wired, screw mountable.
  - 2. Communication and low voltage power shall be delivered to device via standard low voltage network cabling with RJ-45 connectors.
  - 3. Bluetooth Low Energy connection shall allow connection from smartphone application for programming device settings within the local daisy-chain zone (*see list of available settings in section 2.4-System Software Interfaces, Sub-section E*).
    - a. Device shall provide visual indication of remote Bluetooth connection via LED integrated into device enclosure such that it is visible from all angles while the zone is being programmed.
- J. Wired Networked Communication Bridge
  - 1. Device shall surface mount to a standard 4" x 4" square junction box.
  - 2. Device shall have 8 RJ-45 ports for connection to lighting control zones (up to 128 devices per port), additional network bridges, and System Controller.
  - 3. Device shall be capable of aggregating communication from multiple lighting control zones for purposes of minimizing backbone wiring requirements back to System Controller.



4. Device shall be powered with Class 2 low voltage supplied locally via a directly wired power supply, or powered via low voltage network connections from powered lighting control devices (e.g. power packs).
5. Wired Bridge shall be capable of redistributing power from its local supply and connected lighting control zones with excess power to lighting control zones with insufficient local power. This architecture also enables loss of power to a particular area to be less impactful on network lighting control system.

## 2.7 WIRELESS NETWORKED DEVICES

### A. Wireless Networked Wall Switches, Dimmers

1. Devices shall recess into single-gang switch box and fit a standard GFI opening.
2. Communication shall be provided by wireless BLE connection and 900MHz link to other devices.
3. Devices shall have options to be powered by battery or line voltage. If powered by battery, expected battery life shall be no less than 10 years.
4. Devices with mechanical push-buttons shall provide tactile and LED user feedback during button press.
5. Devices with mechanical push-buttons shall be made available with custom button labeling.
6. Wall switches & dimmers shall support the following device options:
  - a. Number of control zones: 1, 2
  - b. Control Types Supported: On/Off or On/Off/Dimming
  - c. Color of device and cover plate: White
7. Scene switches shall support the following device options:
  - a. Number of Scenes. 2, 4
  - b. Control types supported
    - .1 On/Off
    - .2 On/Off/Dimming
    - .3 Preset Level Scene Type

### B. Wireless Networked Indoor Occupancy and Photosensors

1. Communication shall be provided by wireless BLE connection and 900MHz link to other devices.
2. Occupancy sensors shall sense the presence of human activity within the desired space and fully control the on/off function of the lights.
3. All sensors shall be Dual Technology. Dual technology sensors shall have one of its two technologies not require motion to detect occupancy. Acceptable dual technology includes PIR/Microphonics (also known as Passive Dual Technology or PDT) which both looks for occupant motion and listens for sounds indicating occupants. Sensors where both technologies detect motion (PIR/Ultrasonic) shall not be acceptable.

4. All sensing technologies shall be acoustically passive, meaning they do not transmit sound waves of any frequency (for example in the Ultrasonic range), as these technologies have the potential for interference with other electronic devices within the space (such as electronic white board readers).
  5. All sensors shall have the ability to detect when it is not receiving valid communication and blink its LED in a pattern to visually indicate a potential issue.
  6. Power shall be delivered to each device via standard low voltage wiring from a local power pack or by line voltage for devices with available nipple mount.
  7. Sensor programming parameter shall be available and configurable remotely from the software
  8. Network system shall have ceiling and fixture mounted sensors available, with multiple lens options available customized for specific applications.
  9. Sensors shall be available with zero or one integrated dry contact switching relays, capable of switching 1 amp at 24 VAC/VDC (resistive only).
  10. Sensors shall have standard daylight photosensor for programmable daylight harvesting
  11. Photosensor shall provide foot-candle setpoint and a deadband to prevent the artificial light from cycling. Set-point and deadband shall be capable of automatically calibrating through an "Automatic Set-Point Programming" procedure. Min and max dim settings as well as set-point may be manually entered.
  12. Deadband setting shall be verified and modified by the sensor automatically every time the lights cycle to accommodate physical changes in the space (i.e., furniture layouts, lamp depreciation, or lamp outages).
  13. Nipple mounted devices shall include option for power interruption detection, where unit powers and controls the emergency circuit, and an interruption of power to this circuit for >30 ms forces unit to shunt closed, go to full bright, and ignore all system commands for 90 minutes.
  14. Color of device: White
- C. Wireless Networked Outdoor Occupancy and Photosensors
1. Communication shall be provided by wireless BLE connection and 900MHz link to other devices.
  2. Sensor shall be available in both nipple mount and in-fixture mount options
    - a. Nipple mount sensor shall carry IP66 rating
    - b. In-fixture mount sensor shall carry IP65 rating
  3. Sensor shall be capable of operating in -40 to 65C ambient temperature ranges
  4. Sensors shall be capable of accepting 120-277, 347, or 480VAC input or DC power for embedded device.
  5. Occupancy sensors shall sense the presence of human activity within the desired space and fully control the on/off function of the lights.
  6. Sensors shall utilize passive infrared (PIR) technology, which detects occupant motion, to initially turn lights on from an off state, thus preventing false on conditions. Ultrasonic or Microwave based sensing technologies shall not be accepted.
  7. All sensors shall have the ability to detect when it is not receiving valid communication and blink its LED in a pattern to visually indicate a potential issue.

8. Sensor programming parameter shall be available and configurable remotely from the software
9. Nipple mounted sensors shall be available with multiple lens options available for various mounting heights
10. Sensors shall have standard daylight photosensor for programmable daylight harvesting
11. Photosensor shall provide foot-candle setpoint and a deadband to prevent the artificial light from cycling. Set-point and deadband shall be capable of automatically calibrating through an “Automatic Set-Point Programming” procedure. Min and max dim settings as well as set-point may be manually entered.
12. Deadband setting shall be verified and modified by the sensor automatically every time the lights cycle to accommodate physical changes in the space (i.e., changes in car type and color, lamp outages).
13. Devices shall include option for power interruption detection, where unit powers and controls the emergency circuit, and an interruption of power to this circuit for >30 ms forces unit to shunt closed, go to full bright, and ignore all system commands for 90 minutes.

D. Wireless Networked Power Packs

1. Communication shall be provided by wireless BLE connection and 900MHz link to other devices.
2. Power Packs shall incorporate one optional Class 1 relay, optional 0-10 VDC dimming output
3. Power Packs shall accept 120 through 277 VAC and carry a plenum rating.
4. Power Packs shall be available with optional 24VDC, 100mA output for use with ceiling mount sensors or other DC powered products.
5. Power Packs shall be available with options for integrated and remote capable antennas such that devices can be optionally installed in a sealed container without detriment to wireless strength.
6. Power Pack programming parameters shall be available and configurable remotely from the software
7. Power Pack shall securely mount to junction location through a threaded ½ inch chase nipple or be capable of being secured within a luminaire ballast/driver channel. Plastic clips into junction box shall not be accepted. All Class 1 wiring shall pass through chase nipple into adjacent junction box without any exposure of wire leads. Note: UL Listing under Energy Management or Industrial Control Equipment automatically meets this requirement, whereas Appliance Control Listing does not meet this safety requirement.
8. When required by local code, Power Pack must install inside standard electrical enclosure and provide UL recognized support to junction box. All Class 1 wiring is to pass through chase nipple into adjacent junction box without any exposure of wire leads.
9. Power Packs shall be available with the following options:
  - a. Power Pack capable of full 20-Amp switching of all normal power lighting load types, with optional 0-10V dimming output capable of up to 100mA of sink current.
  - b. Power Packs capable of full 20-Amp switching of general purpose receptacle (plug-load) control.

- c. Power Packs with UL924 listing capable of full 20-Amp switching of all emergency power lighting load types, with optional 0-10V dimming output capable of up to 100mA of sink current. There shall be two methods of achieving the UL924 operation:
  - .1 Power sense of normal power feed, where unit powers and controls emergency circuit, and loss of the normal power sense circuit forces the power pack to shunt closed, go to full bright, and ignore all system commands until normal power is restored.
  - .2 Power interruption detection, where unit powers and controls the emergency circuit, and an interruption of power to this circuit for >30 ms forces unit to shunt closed, go to full bright, and ignore all system commands for 90 minutes.
- d. Power Packs shall have the option of mounting inside a sealed metal enclosure, with a plenum rated antenna protruding from said enclosure to allow for an IP 67 rated application.

E. Wireless Networked Communication Adapter

- 1. A communication adapter shall be provided that interfaces with the System Controller via USB connection and interfaces with wireless networked devices via 900MHz.
- 2. Device shall be capable of communicating with at least 750 wireless networked devices and luminaires
- 3. Device shall be supplied with mounting hardware suitable for vertical ceiling mounting or for vertical mounting from a wall.
- 4. Device shall be unresponsive to wired and wireless communications that do not conform to the specific protocols used by the networked lighting control system.
- 5. Device shall be IP66 rated and shall be optionally installed in an indoor or outdoor location.
- 6. Device shall allow programming and control of indoor, outdoor, and industrial wireless control devices through a single user interface.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Installation Procedures and Verification

- 1. The successful bidder shall review all required installation and pre-startup procedures with the manufacturer's representative through pre-construction meetings.
- 2. The successful bidder shall install and connect the networked lighting control system components according to the manufacturer's installation instructions, wiring diagrams, the project submittals and plans specifications.
- 3. The successful bidder shall be responsible for testing of all low voltage network cable included in the bid. Bidder is responsible for verification of the following minimum parameters:
  - a. Wire Map (continuity, pin termination, shorts and open connections, etc.)
  - b. Length
  - c. Insertion Loss

B. Coordination with Owner's IT Network Infrastructure

1. The successful bidder is required to coordinate with the owner's representative to secure all required network connections to the owner's IT network infrastructure.
  - a. The bidder shall provide to the owner's representative all network infrastructure requirements of the networked lighting control system.
  - b. The bidder shall provide to the manufacturer's representative all necessary contacts pertaining to the owner's IT infrastructure, to ensure that the system is properly connected and started up.

C. Documentation and Deliverables

1. The installing contractor shall be responsible for documenting installed location of all networked devices, including networked luminaires. This includes responsibility to provide as-built plan drawing showing device address barcodes corresponding to locations of installed equipment.
2. The installing contractor is also responsible for the following additional documentation to the manufacturer's representative if visualization / graphical floorplan software is provided as part of bid package:
  - a. As-Built floor plan drawings showing device address locations required above. All documentation shall remain legible when reproducing\scanning drawing files for electronic submission.
  - b. As-Built electrical lighting drawings (reflected ceiling plan) in PDF and CAD format. Architectural floor plans shall be based on as-built conditions.
    - .1 CAD files shall have layers already turned on/off as desired to be shown in the graphical floorplan background images. The following CAD elements are recommended to be hidden to produce an ideal background graphical image:  
Titleblock  
Text- Inclusive of room names and numbers, fixture tags and drawings notes  
Fixture wiring and homeruns  
Control devices  
Hatching or poché of light fixtures or architectural elements
    - .2 CAD files shall be of AutoCAD 2020. Revit file overall floor plan views shall be exported to AutoCAD 2018.

3.2 SYSTEM STARTUP

- A. Upon completion of installation by the installer, including completion of all required verification and documentation required by the manufacturer, the system shall be started up and programmed.
  1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
    - a. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - b. Activate luminaires and verify that all lamps are operating at 100 percent.

- c. Confirm correct communications wiring, initiate communications between controllers, and program the lighting control system according to approved configuration schedules, time-of-day schedules, and input override assignments.
- 2. For CAT5 wired devices, low voltage network cable testing shall be performed prior to system startup.
- B. System start-up and programming shall include:
  - 1. Verifying operational communication to all system devices.
  - 2. Programming the network devices into functional control zones to meet the required sequence of operation.
  - 3. Programming and verifying all sequence of operations.
- C. Initial start-up and programming is to occur on-site.

### 3.3 PROJECT TURNOVER

- A. System Documentation
  - 1. Submit software database file with desired device labels and notes completed. Changes to this file will not be made by the factory.
  - 2. Installing contractor to grant access to the owner for the programming database, if requested.
- B. Owner Training
  - 1. Provisions for onsite training for owner and designated attendees to be included in submittal package.
- C. ADJUSTING
  - 1. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

END OF SECTION 260423



## SECTION 260950 - EMPTY CONDUIT SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division-1 Specification Sections, apply to Work of this Section.

#### 1.2 WORK DESCRIPTION

- A. Work of this section includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary to complete the installation of electrical work as shown on the drawings and specified herein, including:
  - 1. Work included under this section shall consist of furnishing complete empty conduit, pull box and back box system with nylon pull cord for installation of wire or cables by respective system suppliers.

#### 1.3 REFERENCE TO OTHER SPECIFICATION SECTIONS

- A. Raceways
- B. Boxes, Cabinets and Enclosures
- C. Supports and Fastenings

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit shop drawings for all special boxes as required by this section of specifications.

### PART 2 - EQUIPMENT AND PERFORMANCE

#### 2.1 RACEWAY

- A. Provide empty raceway from each outlet to the termination point noted.
- B. Where specific termination location is not indicated, stub raceway with a bushing into nearest accessible hung ceiling and elbow toward the area collection point for the system wiring.
- C. Raceway shall consist of electrical metallic tubing, 1" minimum size, unless noted otherwise.

#### 2.2 JUNCTION/PULLBOXES

- A. Provide junction and pullboxes at all required locations indicated and where more than 270° of bends occurs in a run of raceway.
- B. Junction and pullboxes shall be sized to meet the cabling requirements of the system being installed.
- C. Covers shall be removable and secured with screws.



2.3        OUTLETS

- A.    Outlets shall be standard receptacle type outlet boxes.
- B.    Where multioutlet application is required, provide multigang outlet as required.
- C.    Unless noted otherwise, provide a device plate with a 1" bushed opening with a finish to match receptacles in the area.

2.4        FISH WIRE

- A.    Provide a nylon fish wire for all raceway exceeding 10' in length.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1        COORDINATION WITH SYSTEM SUPPLIER

- A.    Before commencing installation, confirm installation requirements with the supplier of equipment and wiring for respective system.

3.2        INSTALLATION

- A.    Installation of all components of system shall follow individual section requirement.
- B.    System installation shall follow successful manufacturers approved shop drawings, wiring schematics and instructions.

3.3        RECORD DRAWINGS

- A.    Provide as-built drawings showing all outlet locations as installed, major runs of raceways and location of all junction and pullboxes.

END OF SECTION 260950

SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Distribution panelboards.
  - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- D. RMS: Root mean square.
- E. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard, overcurrent protective device, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
  - 1. Dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings. Include the following:
    - a. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
    - b. Bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
    - c. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
    - d. UL listing for series rating of installed devices.
    - e. Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
  - 2. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

- C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints." Include the following:
1. Basis of Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
    - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
    - b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
  2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- D. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- E. Field quality-control test reports including the following:
1. Test procedures used.
  2. Test results that comply with requirements.
  3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.
- F. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Include the following:
1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
  2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of panelboards and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 1 Section "Product Requirements."

- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- E. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- F. Comply with NFPA 70.

#### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
  - 2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).
- B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:
  - 1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
  - 2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, and encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements.
- B. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 3.

#### 1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Keys: Six spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Panelboards, Overcurrent Protective Devices, Controllers, Contactors, and Accessories:
    - a. Eaton Corporation; Cutler-Hammer Products.
    - b. General Electric Co.; Electrical Distribution & Protection Div.
    - c. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.

- d. Square D.

## 2.2 MANUFACTURED UNITS

- A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints."
- B. Enclosures: Flush- and surface-mounted cabinets. NEMA PB 1, Type 1.
  - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
    - a. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
    - b. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
  - 2. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box.
  - 3. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover.
  - 4. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
  - 5. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish over corrosion-resistant treatment or primer coat.
  - 6. Directory Card: With transparent protective cover, mounted in metal frame, inside panelboard door.
- C. Phase and Ground Buses:
  - 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
  - 2. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment ground conductors; bonded to box.
  - 3. Isolated Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for branch-circuit equipment ground conductors; insulated from box.
  - 4. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and UL listed as suitable for nonlinear loads.
  - 5. Split Bus: Vertical buses divided into individual vertical sections.
- D. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material.
  - 1. Main and Neutral Lugs: Compression type.
  - 2. Ground Lugs and Bus Configured Terminators: Compression type.
  - 3. Feed-Through Lugs: Compression type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
  - 4. Extra-Capacity Neutral Lugs: Rated 200 percent of phase lugs mounted on extra-capacity neutral bus.
- E. Service Equipment Label: UL labeled for use as service equipment for panelboards with main service disconnect switches.
- F. Future Devices: Mounting brackets, bus connections, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.

### 2.3 PANELBOARD SHORT-CIRCUIT RATING

- A. UL label indicating series-connected rating with integral or remote upstream overcurrent protective devices. Include size and type of upstream device allowable, branch devices allowable, and UL series-connected short-circuit rating.

### 2.4 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- B. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

### 2.5 OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker: UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
  - 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
  - 2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
  - 3. Electronic trip-unit circuit breakers shall have RMS sensing; field-replaceable rating plug; and with the following field-adjustable settings:
    - a. Instantaneous trip.
    - b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
    - c. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
    - d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and  $I^2t$  response.
  - 4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
  - 5. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker; trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
  - 6. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with [5] [30]-mA trip sensitivity.
- B. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker Features and Accessories: Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
  - 1. Lugs: Compression style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
  - 2. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HACR for heating, air-conditioning, and refrigerating equipment.
  - 3. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
  - 4. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
  - 5. Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.

6. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
7. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
8. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing or factory-assembled to operate as a single unit.

## 2.6 CONTROLLERS

- A. Motor Controllers: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, combination controller equipped for panelboard mounting and including the following accessories:
  1. Individual control-power transformers.
  2. Fuses for control-power transformers.
  3. Bimetallic-element overload relay.
  4. Indicating lights.
  5. Seal-in contact.
  6. Two convertible auxiliary contacts.
  7. Push buttons.
  8. Selector switches.
- B. Contactors: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, combination controller equipped for panelboard mounting and including the following accessories:
  1. Individual control-power transformers.
  2. Fuses for control-power transformers.
  3. Indicating lights.
  4. Seal-in contact.
  5. Two convertible auxiliary contacts.
  6. Push buttons.
  7. Selector switches.
- C. Controller Disconnect Switches: Fused switch and interlocked with controller.
  1. Auxiliary Contacts: Integral with disconnect switches to de-energize external control-power source.
- D. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, mechanically held general-purpose controller.
  1. Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.
  2. Control-Power Source: 120-V branch circuit.

## 2.7 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Furnish accessory set including tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.
- B. Furnish portable test set to test functions of solid-state trip devices without removal from panelboard.

- C. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for panelboard interior, including overcurrent protective devices and other components.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install panelboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 1.1.
- B. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints."
- C. Mount top of trim **74 inches (1880 mm)** above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Mount plumb and rigid without distortion of box. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish.
- E. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers.
  - 1. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.
- F. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- G. Stub four **1-inch (27-GRC)** empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four **1-inch (27-GRC)** empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.
- H. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties.

### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs as specified in Division 26 Section "Electrical Identification."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads. Obtain approval before installing. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate mounted with corrosion-resistant screws.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- B. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."



### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare for acceptance tests as follows:
  - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
- C. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - 1. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA ATS, Section 7.5 for switches and Section 7.6 for molded-case circuit breakers. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
- D. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes.
  - 1. Measure as directed during period of normal system loading.
  - 2. Perform load-balancing circuit changes outside normal occupancy/working schedule of the facility and at time directed. Avoid disrupting critical 24-hour services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
  - 3. After circuit changes, recheck loads during normal load period. Record all load readings before and after changes and submit test records.
  - 4. Tolerance: Difference exceeding 20 percent between phase loads, within a panelboard, is not acceptable. Rebalance and recheck as necessary to meet this minimum requirement.
- E. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scanning of each panelboard. Remove panel fronts so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
  - 1. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
  - 2. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
  - 3. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies panelboards checked and describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. On completion of installation, inspect interior and exterior of panelboards. Remove paint splatters and other spots. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning. Repair exposed surfaces to match original finish.

END OF SECTION 262416

SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Standard-grade receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.
  - 2. GFCI receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.
  - 3. Pendant cord-connector devices.
  - 4. Decorator-style devices, 20 A.
  - 5. Wall-switch and exterior occupancy sensors.
  - 6. Wall plates.
  - 7. Floor service fittings.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AFCI: Arc-fault circuit interrupter.
- B. BAS: Building automation system.
- C. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- D. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- E. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.
- F. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- G. SPD: Surge protective device.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. RoHS compliant.
- D. Comply with NEMA WD 1.
- E. Devices that are manufactured for use with modular plug-in connectors may be substituted under the following conditions:
  - 1. Connectors shall comply with UL 2459 and shall be made with stranding building wire.
  - 2. Devices shall comply with requirements in this Section.
- F. Devices for Owner-Furnished Equipment:
  - 1. Receptacles: Match plug configurations.
  - 2. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.
- G. Device Color:
  - 1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: Grey
  - 2. SPD Devices: Blue
  - 3. Isolated-Ground Receptacles: Orange
- H. Wall Plate Color: Stainless steel.
- I. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 STANDARD-GRADE RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A,

- A. Weather-Resistant Duplex Receptacle, 125 V, 20 A:
  - 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - b. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
    - c. Wiring Device-Kellems; Hubbell Incorporated, Commercial and Industrial.
  - 2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
  - 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.

4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" Article.

B. Tamper- and Weather-Resistant Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - b. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
  - c. Wiring Device-Kellems; Hubbell Incorporated, Commercial and Industrial.
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" and "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" articles.

2.3 GFCI RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A

A. Duplex GFCI Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - b. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
  - c. Wiring Device-Kellems; Hubbell Incorporated, Commercial and Industrial.
2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Type: Feed through.
5. Standards: Comply with UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.

B. Tamper- and Weather-Resistant, GFCI Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - b. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
  - c. Wiring Device-Kellems; Hubbell Incorporated, Commercial and Industrial.
2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
4. Type: Non-feed through.
5. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and UL 943 Class A.

6. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" and "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" articles.

#### 2.4 DECORATOR-STYLE DEVICES, 20 A

A. Decorator Tamper-Resistant Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - b. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
  - c. Wiring Device-Kellems; Hubbell Incorporated, Commercial and Industrial.
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" Article.

#### 2.5 TOGGLE SWITCHES

A. Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

B. Switches, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Single Pole:
    - 1) Cooper; AH1221.
    - 2) Hubbell; HBL1221.
    - 3) Leviton; 1221-2.
    - 4) Pass & Seymour; CSB20AC1.
  - b. Two Pole:
    - 1) Cooper; AH1222.
    - 2) Hubbell; HBL1222.
    - 3) Leviton; 1222-2.
    - 4) Pass & Seymour; CSB20AC2.
  - c. Three Way:
    - 1) Cooper; AH1223.
    - 2) Hubbell; HBL1223.
    - 3) Leviton; 1223-2.
    - 4) Pass & Seymour; CSB20AC3.
  - d. Four Way:
    - 1) Cooper; AH1224.
    - 2) Hubbell; HBL1224.
    - 3) Leviton; 1224-2.
    - 4) Pass & Seymour; CSB20AC4.

C. Pilot-Light Switches, 20 A:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Cooper; AH1221PL.
  - b. Hubbell; HBL1201PL.
  - c. Leviton; 1221-LH1.
  - d. Pass & Seymour; PS20AC1RPL for 125 V.
2. Description: Single pole, with neon-lighted handle, illuminated when switch is "off."

D. Key-Operated Switches, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Cooper; AH1221L.
  - b. Hubbell; HBL1221L.
  - c. Leviton; 1221-2L.
  - d. Pass & Seymour; PS20AC1-L.
2. Description: Single pole, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.

E. Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary-Contact, Center-off Switches: 125 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Cooper; 1995.
  - b. Hubbell; HBL1557.
  - c. Leviton; 1257.
  - d. Pass & Seymour; 1251.

F. Key-Operated, Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary-Contact, Center-off Switches: 125 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Cooper; 1995L.
  - b. Hubbell; HBL1557L.
  - c. Leviton; 1257L.
  - d. Pass & Seymour; 1251L.

2.6 WALL PLATES

A. Single Source: Obtain wall plates from same manufacturer of wiring devices.

B. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.

1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
2. Material for Finished Spaces: Smooth, Stainless steel.
3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.
4. Material for Damp Locations: Cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in wet and damp locations.

C. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Coordination with Other Trades:
  - 1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes, and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.
  - 2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
  - 3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
  - 4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.
- C. Conductors:
  - 1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
  - 2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
  - 3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall comply with NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
  - 4. Existing Conductors:
    - a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
    - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
    - c. Pigtail existing conductors is permitted, provided the outlet box is large enough.
- D. Device Installation:
  - 1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
  - 2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
  - 3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
  - 4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches in length.
  - 5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
  - 6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
  - 7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
  - 8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
  - 9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.
- E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles down, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.

F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

G. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

H. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

### 3.2 GFCI RECEPTACLES

A. Install non-feed-through GFCI receptacles where protection of downstream receptacles is not required.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Identify each receptacle with panelboard identification and circuit number. Use hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with black -filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

C. Essential Electrical System: Mark receptacles supplied from the essential electrical system to allow easy identification using a self-adhesive label.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests for Receptacles:

1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is unacceptable.
3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
6. Tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault-current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.

B. Test straight-blade for the retention force of the grounding blade according to NFPA 99. Retention force shall be not less than 4 oz..

C. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 262726



## SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following individually mounted, enclosed switches and circuit breakers:
1. Fusible switches.
  2. Nonfusible switches.
  3. Molded-case circuit breakers.
  4. Enclosures.

## 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Operation and maintenance data.

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

## 2.2 FUSIBLE AND NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Eaton Corporation; Cutler-Hammer Products.
2. General Electric Co.; Electrical Distribution & Control Division.
3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
4. Square D/Group Schneider.

B. Fusible Switch, 600 A and Smaller: NEMA KS 1, Type HD, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position. Fused switches shall be service rated.

C. Nonfusible Switch, 600 A and Smaller: NEMA KS 1, Type GD, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

D. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded, and bonded; and labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Auxiliary set of contacts arranged to open before switch blades open.

## 2.3 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS AND SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Eaton Corporation; Cutler-Hammer Products.
2. General Electric Co.; Electrical Distribution & Control Division.
3. Moeller Electric Corporation.
4. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
5. Square D/Group Schneider.

B. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker: NEMA AB 1, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
3. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
4. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with 30-mA trip sensitivity.

### C. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker Features and Accessories:

1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.

2. Lugs: Mechanical style with compression lug kits suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
3. Application Listing: Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HACR for heating, air-conditioning, and refrigerating equipment.
4. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
5. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 percent of rated voltage.

## 2.4 ENCLOSURES

- A. NEMA AB 1 and NEMA KS 1 to meet environmental conditions of installed location.
1. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
  2. Kitchen Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
  3. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Verify structural requirements with structural engineer.
- B. Concrete base is specified in Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems," and concrete materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 03.
- C. Comply with applicable portions of NECA 1, NEMA PB 1.1, and NEMA PB 2.1 for installation of enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
- D. Mount individual wall-mounting switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height, unless otherwise indicated. Anchor floor-mounting switches to concrete base.
- E. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- F. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- G. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs as specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare for acceptance testing as follows:
  1. Inspect mechanical and electrical connections.
  2. Verify switch and relay type and labeling verification.
  3. Verify rating of installed fuses.

- B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
1. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA ATS, Section 7.5 for switches and Section 7.6 for molded-case circuit breakers. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.

END OF SECTION 262816

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division-1 Specification Sections, apply to Work of this Section.

1.2 WORK DESCRIPTION

- A. Provide adequate applicable light and power for the project as follows:
  - 1. Furnish and install temporary service including all costs.
  - 2. Furnish and install wiring of General Contractor's and Owner's Field Office for light and power.
  - 3. Furnish and install wiring for adequate light and tools power for the project.
  - 4. Maintain the system in good and adequate working condition at all times.
  - 5. Furnish and install all lamps, breakers, and fusing, as is necessary.
  - 6. Replace burned out lamps, defective breakers, or blown fuses.
  - 7. Temporary light and power shall be installed in accordance with Codes and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 8. Provide standby labor to maintain temporary light and power from 1/2 hour before earliest trade and 1/2 hour after last trade standard working hours.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Provide all materials as required and in compliance with all applicable sections of this specification.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. All equipment shall be installed as required by all applicable sections of this specification.
- B. Remove all temporary wiring at end of project as directed.

END OF SECTION 265000

SECTION 265119 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Cylinder.
2. Downlight.
3. Linear industrial.
4. Recessed, linear.
5. Strip light.
6. Surface mount, linear.
7. Surface mount, nonlinear.
8. Suspended, linear.
9. Suspended, nonlinear.
10. Materials.
11. Luminaire support.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
  2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.

3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
4. Include emergency lighting units, including batteries and chargers.
5. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
6. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES "Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides" for each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project.
  - a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Samples: For each luminaire and for each color and texture with standard factory-applied finish.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of luminaire.

1. Include Samples of luminaires and accessories to verify finish selection.

E. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each type of luminaire, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Sample warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications:

1. Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

- B. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.
- C. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.
- D. Mockups: For interior luminaires in room or module mockups, complete with power and control connections.
  - 1. Obtain Engineer's approval of luminaires in mockups before starting installations.
  - 2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
  - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Warranty Period: one (1) year (from date of Substantial Completion).

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRODUCTS

- A. Refer to Lighting Fixture Schedule on the Drawings for all fixture designations, manufacturers, model numbers, and fixture specifications.
- B. This specification provides general criteria for the lighting fixtures specified on the Drawings.

### 2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
  - 1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
    - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
    - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.
    - c. CCT and CRI.
- C. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.



- D. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120V ac or 277V ac, as indicated on the Drawings.

2.3 CYLINDER.

- A. As indicated on the Drawings.

- B. Lamp:

1. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
2. Dimmable as indicated on the drawings.
3. Internal driver.
4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.

- D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

- E. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
2. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

- F. With integral mounting provisions.

- G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.4 DOWNLIGHT.

- A. As indicated on the Drawings.

- B. Lamp:

1. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
2. Dimmable as indicated on the Drawings.
3. Internal driver.
4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Housings:

1. Universal mounting bracket.

2. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.

D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

E. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.

2. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

F. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.

2. RoHS compliant.

3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

4. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.

## 2.5 LINEAR INDUSTRIAL.

A. As indicated on the Drawings.

B. Lamp:

1. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.

2. Dimmable as indicated on the Drawings.

3. Internal driver.

4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

C. Housing and Heat Sink Rating:

1. Class 1, Division 2 Group(s) A B C and D.

2. NEMA 4X.

3. IP 54.

4. IP 66.

5. Marine and wet locations.

6. CSA C22.2 No 137.

D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

E. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
2. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

F. With integral mounting provisions.

G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.

## 2.6 RECESSED, LINEAR.

A. As indicated on the Drawings.

B. Lamp:

1. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
2. Dimmable as indicated on the Drawings.
3. Internal driver.
4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

C. Housings:

1. With integral mounting provisions.

D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

E. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
2. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

F. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
4. NEMA LE 4.

## 2.7 STRIP LIGHT.

A. As indicated on the Drawings.

B. Lamp:

1. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
2. Dimmable from as indicated on the Drawings.
3. Internal driver.
4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

C. Housings:

1. With integral mounting provisions.

D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping of luminaire without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

E. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
2. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

F. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.8 SURFACE MOUNT, LINEAR.

A. As indicated on the Drawings.

B. Lamp:

1. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
2. Dimmable as indicated on the Drawings.
3. Internal driver.
4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

C. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. With integral mounting provisions.

D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

E. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
2. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

F. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.9 SURFACE MOUNT, NONLINEAR

A. As indicated on the Drawings.

B. Lamp:

1. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
2. Dimmable as indicated on the Drawings.
3. Internal driver.
4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

C. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. With integral mounting provisions.

D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

E. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
2. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

F. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.10 SUSPENDED, LINEAR

A. As indicated on the Drawings.

B. Lamp:

1. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
2. Dimmable as indicated on the Drawings.
3. Internal driver.
4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

C. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. With integral mounting provisions.

D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

E. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
2. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

F. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.11 SUSPENDED, NONLINEAR

A. As indicated on the Drawings.

B. Lamp:

1. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
2. Dimmable as indicated on the Drawings.
3. Internal driver.
4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

C. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Universal mounting bracket.
3. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.

D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

E. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
2. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

F. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.12 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts:

1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

B. Steel:

1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
2. ASTM A568/A568M for sheet steel.

C. Stainless Steel:

1. Manufacturer's standard grade.
2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/240M.

D. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.

E. Aluminum: ASTM B209.

2.13 METAL FINISHES

- A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.14 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.
- C. Wires: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage.
- D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.

- E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

- A. It is not permitted to use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
  - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
  - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
  - 3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
  - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- E. Flush-Mounted Luminaires:
  - 1. Secured to outlet box.
  - 2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
  - 3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.
- F. Wall-Mounted Luminaires:
  - 1. Attached to structural members in walls; or Attached to a minimum 20 gauge backing plate attached to wall structural members or Attached using through bolts and backing plates on either side of wall.
  - 2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.
- G. Suspended Luminaires:



1. Ceiling Mount:
  - a. As indicated on the Drawings.
2. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
3. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
4. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and wire support for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
5. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

H. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Secure luminaire to the luminaire opening using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.
3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

- I. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.

1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 265119

## SECTION 265213 - EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Emergency lighting.
2. Exit signs.
3. Materials.
4. Luminaire support components.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Correlated Color Temperature (CCT): The absolute temperature, measured in kelvins, of a blackbody whose chromaticity most nearly resembles that of the light source.
- B. Color Rendering Index (CRI): Measure of the degree of color shift that objects undergo when illuminated by the light source as compared with the color of those same objects when illuminated by a reference source.
- C. Emergency Lighting Unit: A lighting unit with internal or external emergency battery powered supply and the means for controlling and charging the battery and unit operation.
- D. Lumen (lm): The SI derived unit of luminous flux equal to the luminous flux emitted within a unit solid angle by a unit point source (1 lm = 1 cd-sr).

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of emergency lighting unit, exit sign, and emergency lighting support.
  - a. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
  - b. Include physical description of unit and dimensions.
  - c. Battery and charger for light units.
  - d. Include life, output of luminaire (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
  - e. Include photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests by, or under supervision of, qualified luminaire photometric testing laboratory, for each luminaire type.

B. Samples: For each product and for each color and texture specified.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of luminaire with factory-applied finishes.

D. Product Schedule:

1. For emergency lighting units. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
2. For exit signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer Extended Warranty for Emergency and Exit Lighting: Installer warrants that fabricated and installed emergency luminaires and exit signs, including batteries, perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to repair or replace components and assemblies that fail to perform as specified within extended warranty period.

- 1. Extended Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion; full coverage for labor, materials, and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and UL 924, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 101.
- C. Comply with NEMA LE 4 for recessed luminaires.
- D. Internal Type Emergency Power Unit: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within luminaire body.
  - 1. Emergency Connection: Operate lamp(s) continuously at an output of Ia specified on the Drawings upon loss of normal power. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire driver
  - 2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
  - 3. Test Push-Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening luminaire or entering ceiling space.
    - a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing or adjacent to luminaire if battery pack is remote; simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
    - b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
  - 4. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
  - 5. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.

6. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.
- E. External Type Emergency Power Unit: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, suitable for powering one or more lamps, remote mounted from luminaire.
1. Emergency Connection: Operate LEDlamp (s)continuously. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire driver.
  2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
  3. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
  4. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type.
  5. Housing: Type 1 enclosure listed for installation inside, on top of, or remote from luminaire. Remote assembly must be located no less than half of distance recommended by emergency power unit manufacturer, whichever is less.
  6. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
  7. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
  8. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

## 2.2 EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- A. General Characteristics: Self-contained units.
- B. Emergency Luminaire :
1. As indicated on the Drawings.
  2. Options:
    - a. Operating at nominal voltage of 120 V(ac).
    - b. Internal External emergency power unit.
    - c. Rated for installation in damp locations, and for sealed and gasketed luminaires in wet locations.
- C. Emergency Lighting Unit :
1. As indicated on the Drawings.
  2. Options:
    - a. Operating at nominal voltage of 120 V(ac).
    - b. Wall with universal junction box adaptor.
    - c. UV stable thermoplastic housing.
    - d. Two LED lamp heads.
    - e. Internal External emergency power unit.

## 2.3 EXIT SIGNS

- A. General Characteristics: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Internally Lighted Sign :
  - 1. As indicated on the Drawings.
  - 2. Options:
    - a. Operating at nominal voltage of 120 V(ac).
    - b. Lamps for AC Operation:
      - 1) LEDs; 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
    - c. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Internal emergency power unit.

## 2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts:
  - 1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
  - 2. Sheet metal components must be steel unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access:
  - 1. Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions.
  - 2. Designed to permit relamping without use of tools.
  - 3. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- C. Housings:
  - 1. As indicated on the Drawings.
- D. Conduit: EMT , minimum metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).

## 2.5 METAL FINISHES

- A. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.6 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Support Wires: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 0.106 inch.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for conditions affecting performance of luminaires.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where emergency lighting luminaires will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field tests and inspections must be witnessed by Owner, Construction Manager and Engineer of Record.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.
- C. Nonconforming Work:
  - 1. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.
  - 2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 SYSTEM STARTUP

- A. Perform startup service:
  - 1. Charge emergency power units and batteries minimum of 24 hours and conduct one-hour discharge test.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjustments: Within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site visit to do the following:

1. Inspect luminaires. Replace lamps, emergency power units , batteries, exit signs, and luminaires that are defective.
  - a. Parts and supplies must be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
2. Conduct short-duration tests on all emergency lighting.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace luminaires and exit signs that are damaged or caused to be unfit for use by construction activities.

END OF SECTION 265213



## **SECTION 265600 - EXTERIOR LIGHTING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes exterior lighting units with luminaires, lamps, ballasts, poles/support structures, and accessories.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 26 Section "Interior Lighting" for interior fixtures, lamps, ballasts, emergency lighting units, and accessories; and for exterior luminaires normally mounted on buildings.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Lighting Unit: A luminaire or an assembly of luminaires complete with a common support, including pole, post, or other structure, and mounting and support accessories.
- B. Luminaire (Light Fixture): A complete lighting device consisting of lamp(s) and ballast(s), when applicable, together with parts designed to distribute light, to position and protect lamps, and to connect lamps to power supply.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit shop drawings, samples of each specified fixture, and prototypes as specifically instructed below:
  - 1. Shop Drawings:
    - a. Manufacturer's dimensioned scale drawings showing in complete detail the fabrication of all lighting fixtures including overall and detail dimensions, finishes, metal gauges, glass thickness, type, fabrication methods, support method, ballasts, transformers, sockets, switches and types of wiring, electrical and mechanical connections, welds, fasteners, joints, end conditions, targeting and locking devices for adjustable fixtures, type of shielding, reflectors, trims, hinges, gaskets, provisions for relamping, and all other information to show compliance with the Contract Documents. Indicate type and extent of inert insulating materials to prevent electrocotic corrosion at junctions of dissimilar materials. Clearly indicate work performed by others and materials adjacent to work of this section.
    - b. Installation instructions clearly indicating work performed by others and materials

adjacent to work of this section.

- c. All drawings shall clearly indicate the Contract Drawing number of fixture details used as referenced in the development of the shop drawings and the name of the project, the specified location of the detail and the manufacturer's contact information.

2. Samples

- a. Submit sample fixtures for each type, finish, and color of fixture specified, including full size lens patterns.
- b. Submit for approval samples to the Architect and Lighting Designer when and where requested, the components tagged with the name of the project, and provided with a cord and plug, and specified lamps. Samples may not be returned. Allow two weeks from the date of receipt for thorough examination and review by the Architect and Lighting Designer.
- c. Fixtures under the contract shall be identical to the approved sample fixture. No fixture used as a sample will be allowed to be installed on the project.
- d. In the event the submissions are disapproved, the fixtures will be returned to the Contractor to immediately make a new submission of fixture or fixtures meeting the contract requirements.
- e. All charges for these shipments are to be prepaid by the Contractor.

3. Mock-Ups

- a. All custom fixtures require a submission of material finish samples, component approval, and a complete operating prototype, fixture (including, specified lamps) to be reviewed at the fabricator's shop prior to shipment of any material to the project.
- b. Shop drawings for all lighting fixtures shall be received no later than 30 days after award of contract. The Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating approvals to allow timely delivery to the project site.
- c. Shop drawings and samples requested shall be submitted for approval before fabrication. Any material produced prior to the approval of shop drawings or samples, and not in conformance with the Contract Documents, shall be disapproved with the Contractor bearing full responsibility and cost.
- d. When required and requested by the Architect and Lighting Designer, samples submitted as per above shall be subjected to photometric, thermal, mechanical, electrical or water testing at an independent test laboratory, at no expense to the owner.
- e. No variation from the general arrangement and details indicated on the drawings shall be made on the shop drawings unless required to suit the actual conditions on the premises, and then only with written acceptance of the Architect and Lighting Designer. All variations must be clearly marked as such on the drawings submitted for approval.

1.5 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. All fixtures and components shall be made in accordance with the National Electric Code (NEC), and bear the Underwriter's Laboratories (UL) or Factory Mutual Label.

- 1. All fixtures shall be fabricated, wired, and installed in compliance with applicable Local,

State, or Federal codes, regulations and building inspection standards, Contractor to certify and provide all required labels indicating compliance with above standards, affixed to each fixture in a position concealing it from normal view.

2. All fixtures shall comply with Certified Ballast Manufacturers Association (CBM), Illuminating Engineering Society (IES), and the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM).

#### 1.6 QUALIFICATION OF BIDDERS

- A. Manufacturers listed in the fixture schedule shall be assumed capable of supplying the listed fixtures unless exceptions are set forth in their quotations. Any such exceptions shall immediately be brought to the attention of the Architect and Lighting Designer. Manufacturers not listed must be pre-qualified to bid as follows:

1. Manufacturer shall have a minimum of five year experience in design and manufacturer of lighting fixtures of the type and quality shown pre-qualification submissions must include a list of completed projects and dated catalog pages or drawings indicating length of experience.
2. Manufacturer shall also submit prototype sample of each fixture for review by the Architect and Lighting Designer. Prototype samples shall be sufficiently detailed and operational to allow evaluation of compliance with the salient features of the specification. Preliminary design or shop drawings shall not be accepted in place of prototype samples.
3. The fabricator/installer shall have a minimum of five years experience in fabricating and installing specialty lighting components and fixtures.

- B. The Architect and Lighting Designer shall be the sole judge in determining whether the prototype sample and complies with the specifications, and shall reserve the right to disqualify any manufacturers.

#### 1.7 GUARANTEE

- A. The Contractor shall guarantee the fixtures, finishes, component parts, and materials for one (1) year in accordance with the General Conditions of this specification. Ballast shall be guaranteed for five (5) years in accordance with the general specifications.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handle all lighting fixtures and accessories carefully to avoid damage. Store in original protective packaging, tagged and marked as to type and location. Store under cover, out of contact with the ground, in clean, dry areas

#### 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaires and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, for their indicated use, location, and installation conditions by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction

B. Comply with ANSI C2.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

#### 1.10 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Lamps: 10 for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
2. Glass and Plastic Lenses, Covers, and Other Optical Parts: 1 for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
3. Ballasts: 1 for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
4. Globes and Guards: 1 for every 20 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL

- A. Lighting fixtures: as described in the lighting fixtures schedule. Lighting fixtures manufacturers' catalog numbers or model descriptions indicate quality, type, and style, but may not cover special required design details. Provide lighting fixtures having special details as noted in the fixture descriptions and drawings.
- B. Fixtures, in general, have been specified for the particular condition where they are being installed, verify the ceiling system, wall, and pavement construction types and provide lighting fixtures, fittings, hangers, clamps, brackets, yokes, plaster flanges, and miscellaneous devices as required for a complete installation.
- C. Pendant Mounted Fixtures: Provide for continuous row fixtures that span the junction of adjacent fixtures and suspended fixtures using pendant stems of single piece construction. When necessary for sloping ceilings or seismic code compliance, provide swivel type pendant hangers. Locate ballasts symmetrically or provide weights as required to maintain balanced, level fixtures.

#### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Fixtures: provide completely factory-assemblies, wired, and equipment with necessary sockets, ballasts, wiring, sheilding, reflectors, channels, lenses and other parts and appurtenances necessary to complete fixture installation.
- B. All fixture submittals shall clearly state all material components, including alloys of each component and their respective characteristics relative to fixture performance and durability.

## 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate surface mounted fixtures free of unnecessary knockouts, holes, and other gaps.
- B. Provide thickness of metal required or as specified so that all fixtures are rigid, stable and will resist deflection, twisting, warping or bending under normal installation procedures, loading, relamping, etc., or no less than as follows:
  - 1. All steel luminaire housings minimum gauge cold rolled steel for surface or suspend fluorescent fixtures, 22 gauge ribbed for recessed fluorescent fixtures, 18 gauge for incandescent and High Intensity Discharge (HID).
  - 2. All aluminum extrusions housings minimum 0.090 inch thick.
  - 3. All acrylic lenses shall be a minimum 0.1875 inch O.D. thick.
  - 4. All glass lenses shall be a minimum 0.375 inch thick.
  - 5. All cast aluminum or bronze housings minimum of 0.375 inch thick.
  - 6. All sheet bronze, steel, aluminum or other metal plate minimum of 22 gauge.
  - 7. Provide neoprene or silicone gasketing, barriers, and stops where required to prevent light leaks or water and water vapor penetration.
- C. Provide finish product with ground metal edges, tight fitting connections free of light leaks, hinges and closures, clean, neat edges, trims, and frames, continuous welds, ground smooth; all exposed screws countersunk flush is exposed fasteners are allowed.
- D. Provide positive, durable means of connection at all joints as required.
- E. Fabricate fixtures with a minimum number of joints. Make unexposed joints by acceptable method such as welding, brazing, screwing or bolting. Soldered joints are unacceptable. Do not use blind metal tapping methods or rivets for fastening parts, which must be removed during service, or for fastening parts, which must be removed during service, or for fastening electrical components and supports.
- F. All cast parts, including die cast members, shall be of uniformed quality, close grained, rigid, true to pattern free from blow holes, pores, discoloration, hard spots, shrinkage defects, cracks or other imperfections that affect strength and appearance or are indicative of inferior metals or alloys.
- G. Housing for fluorescent and HID fixtures: fabricate so electrical components are easily accessible and replaceable, without removing fixture body from mounting.
- H. Fasteners shall be manufactures of non-magnetic stainless steel, except in indoor applications where galvanized steel is acceptable in non-visible locations. Provide tamperproof screws in all fixtures mounted below 8 feet above finished floor. Use concealed hardware, unless noted otherwise.
- I. All adjustable fixtures shall be provided with reliable locking device to secure aiming angles of the fixture housing or lamp yoke as well as lamp and lens orientation devices to secure oval beam pattern lamps and spread lenses, as specified.

## 2.4 FINISHES

- A. Fixture finishes shall be applied in a manner that will assure a durable, wear-resistant surface.
1. Prior to finishing, all surfaces shall be free from foreign materials such as dirt, rust, oil, polishing compounds and mold release agents.
  2. Where necessary, surfaces shall not be hot cleaned by accepted chemical means shall receive corrosion inhibiting (phosphating) treatment assuring positive paint adhesion.
  3. Exposed metal surfaces used in interior areas, except chromium plated and stainless parts, shall be given an even coat of high grade methacrylate lacquer, or transparent epoxy with a satin finish.
  4. All castings, extrusions, and spinning shall be machined, sanded or similarly treated, and given a minimum of one coat of baked-on clear methacrylate lacquer, unless a painted finish is specified, to provide a consistent texture, color, and finish throughout all exposed surfaces.
  5. Exterior metal surfaces such as extrude parts or casings, which do not otherwise receive a finishing coating, shall be machined, sanded or similarly treated. All such finished components shall be given a minimum of one coat of baked-on clear methacrylate lacquer, satin finish, unless an alternate finish is specified.
  6. Aluminum surfaces exposed to the weather shall receive a duronodic or polyester powder paint or clear methacrylate lacquer finish as specified for corrosion resistance. When in contact with concrete, aluminum shall be coated with bituminous paint, zinc chromate primer, or separated by a layer of plastic or other gasketing material. Creosote and tar coatings should not be used because of their acid contents.
  7. Sheet steel fixture housing, iron steel parts, which have not received phosphating treatment or similar process or are to be utilized in exterior applications shall be made corrosion resistant by zinc or cadmium plating, or hot-dip zinc galvanizing after completion of all forming, welding, or drilling operations. Where aluminum parts come in contact with steel (or other metals), the steel shall be zinc plated or cadmium plated. Minimum thickness above protective coatings shall be:
    - a. Hot galvanized zinc coating - 0.00015 inch ASTM A252, G90
    - Cadmim Plating - 0.00015 inch.
- B. Cadmium plate screws, bolts, nuts and other fastening and latching hardware in accordance with ASTM F1135. After plating, chase and finish threads intend to receive holding screws to ensure easy installation and removal of knurled-headed screws.
1. Parts operated under temperatures injurious to hot-dipped galvanizing shall be electroplated.
  2. Where aluminum parts come in contact with bronze parts, apply both surfaces a coating guaranteed in accordance with the general requirements to prevent electrolytic action between the two meals.
- C. Reflectors and reflector bodies for flourescent lamp fixtures having baked-on white enamel finish, shall be made of steel of the thickness specified and given a suitable primer and white color coats properly applied to meet the following requirements and tests:
1. Initial reflection factor is not less than 86 percent.
  2. After 100 hours of exposure to a fade-o-meter, reflection factor is not less than 85 percent and finish shows no visible color change.

3. Exposure to 100 percent humidity at 110 degree F for 100 hours (Cook Box Test) shows no blistering or other effects.
  4. Salt Spray (20 percent sodium chloride) for 150 hours causes no breakdown of film.
- D. When requested by the Architect and Lighting Designer, the Contractor shall submit a sufficient quantity of flat metal panels having the identical primer and color coats applied in the same manner as proposed for the Contract items, for subjection to any one or all of the tests listed herein by an approved independent testing laboratory. Provide panels of suitable size and drilled as necessary for a particular test procedure. The contractor shall bear the cost of all required tests.

## 2.5 WIRING

- A. All wiring shall comply with the following:
1. Wiring between fluorescent lampholders and associated operating and starting equipment shall be of similar or heavier gauge than the leads furnished with the approved types of ballast with equal or better insulating and heat-resistant characteristics.
  2. Wire leads to the receptacle or connector of any side-prong incandescent lamp or any “cool-beam” lamp utilizing a dichroic reflector shall be SF-2 silicone rubber insulated stranded wire. Wire within housing shall be entirely covered with flexible woven fiberglass sleeve.
  3. Wiring shall be protected with tape or tubing at all points where abrasion may occur. Wiring shall be concealed within fixture construction except where design or mounting dictates otherwise.
  4. Minimize splices. Make splices with approved mechanical insulated steel spring type connectors, suitable for temperature and voltage conditions to which splices are to be subjected.
  5. Connections of wires to terminals of lampholders and other accessories shall be made in a neat and workmanlike manner and electrically and mechanically secure with no protruding or loose strands.
  6. Wiring channels and wireways shall be free from projections and rough or sharp edges throughout, and all points or edges over which conductors must pass and may be subject to injury or wear, shall be rounded and bushed.
  7. Insulated bushings shall be installed at points of entrance and exit of flexible wiring.
  8. Junction boxes attached to lighting fixtures shall be manufactured in accordance with the National Electrical Code and approved for the number of conductors indicated on the drawings. Supplementary junction boxes shall be installed where required to comply with the Code.
  9. All exposed wire shall be jacketed with a flexible woven fiberglass sleeve or similar flexible metallic or armored cable (BX) or EMT type conduit.
  10. When allowed to be exposed, all junction boxes and conduit to be painted as per the Architect and Lighting Designer’s request.

## 2.6 MARKING OF FIXTURES

- A. Fixtures designed for voltages other than 110-125 volts shall be marked with operating voltage.
- B. Fixtures equipped for operation of 265 MA or 325 MA rapid start lamps shall be clearly marked to

indicate the appropriate lamp type.

- C. Similarly, fixtures equipped for operation of instant start or other type lamps shall be clearly marked “USE INSTANT START LAMPS ONLY”, or as appropriate for other types as required. Clearly mark multi-level output ballasts as such, and indicate proper terminals for various outposts. Markings shall be clear and located to be readily visible to service personnel, but invisible from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
- D. Fixtures designed for operation of lamps below the rated enclosure maximum shall be clearly marked “Lamp Watts Not To Exceed \_\_\_\_\_” to maintain the design energy load.

## 2.7 SOUND TRANSMISSION

- A. Sound transmission through the light fixture units, when spaced as indicated on drawings, shall be sufficiently attenuated to maintain speech privacy between adjoining spaces. Contractor to provide insulating battens around the fixtures where sound transmission levels are unacceptable.

## 2.8 THERMAL PROTECTORS

- A. Provide thermal protectors as required by the NEC and other regulatory agencies in accordance with the section 01060 of the General Conditions. Thermal protectors shall prevent operation of lighting fixtures in enclosed spaces or adjacent to combustible materials at temperatures at or above 90 deg C (194 degrees F).

## 2.9 LAMPS

- A. Provide electric lamps as shown or as modified in reviewed shop drawings plus 10 percent additional spare lamps of all types. All incandescent or quartz tungsten halogen lamps shall not be operated other than for testing prior to final inspection. Use inexpensive A-lamps during construction for all incandescent fixtures having medium base sockets.
- B. Lamps as specified for the individual luminaires or lighting equipment shall be delivered and installed in fixtures and lighting equipment leaving these completely lamped with new lamps and in normal operating condition.
- C. Tungsten halogen (quartz) lamps: Use lamps and lighting fixtures with compatible temperature ratings.
- D. Fluorescent lamps, unless otherwise designated, shall be the rapid start type T8 and deliver not less than 3150 initial lumens for straight lamps. Fluorescent lamps are Triphosphor 3000 degrees Kelvin unless noted otherwise.
- E. Provide all incandescent lamps 130V, inside frosted, unless noted otherwise.

## 2.10 LAMPHOLDERS

- A. Lamp sockets shall be rigidly attached to fixture enclosure or husk.



- B. Incandescent and high intensity discharge lamp sockets shall be made of heavy duty heat-resistant porcelain over copper screw shells.
- C. Fluorescent lamp sockets operated with an open circuit voltage in excess of 300 volts shall be of the safety type, and open the supply circuit when the lamp is removed from the sockets.
- D. Provide nickel-plated brass or nickel and silver-plated contacts in all lampholders for Tungsten halogen lamps, lamps in outdoor fixtures, and mogul base incandescent, metal halide or mercury vapor lamps.
- E. All lamp sockets shall be suitable for the indicated lamps and shall be set so that the lamps are positioned in optically correct relation to all light fixture components. Metal halide or mercury vapor lamps.
- F. All lamp sockets shall be suitable for the indicated lamps and shall be set so that lamps are positioned in optically correct relation to all light fixture components. All adjustable sockets shall be preset at the factory for lamp specified.

#### 2.11 FLOURESCENT AND HIGH INTENSITY DISCHARGE LAMP BALLASTS

- A. All fluorescent and high density discharge lamp ballasts shall be suitable for electrical characteristics of supply circuits to which connected, and conform to the following:
  - 1. All ballasts shall be “Class P” indicating approved integral ballast protection. Fuses in the primary leads shall be provided in addition to the “Class P” ballast. Install fuses readily accessible and easy to replace. Provide smallest acceptable fuses.
  - 2. All ballasts shall be of high power factory type, energy saving, “super low heat” as manufactures by Universal, or approved equal.
  - 3. All HID ballasts to be encapsulated and have a maximum crest factor of 1.6.
  - 4. All HID ballasts shall meet UL standards for “Class H” operations (180 degress C) and shall be constant -wattage autotransformers (CWA) type, unless noted otherwise.
  - 5. UL and ANSI specifications with labels and/or symbols of approval by the UL and of certification by the Certified Ballasts Manufacturers (CBM) as tested by the ETL.
  - 6. The component parts shall be designed, fabricated, and assembled in accordance with the latest requirements of the NEC.
  - 7. Ballasts shall provide safe and reliable operation of the specified lamps.
  - 8. For the operation of pre-heat, instant start, and slimline lamps, lead-lag type ballasts shall be used.
  - 9. Whenever possible, provide two-lamp ballasts for fixtures with two flourescent lamps or multiple of two lamps. Three-lamp ballasts and four-lamp ballasts shall be used only as indicated.
  - 10. Identical ballasts from the same manufacturer shall be installed within each fixture type.
  - 11. Provide the lowest sound rating available for the lamps specified and clearly show their respective sound ratings. Ballasts found by the Architect and Lighting Designer or Engineer to be unduly noisy shall be replaced without charge prior to acceptance of the Work. Inform Architect and Lighting Designer in writing is ballasts with sound rating “A” are not available.

12. Dimmer type ballasts shall be of a design recognized and approved under the UL component program. These ballasts must coordinate with the dimming control devices specified for the particular application.
13. Ballasts intended for outdoor use shall have a minimum lamp starting temperature of 20 degrees F, except as noted otherwise.
14. Where ballasts are remote from fixture housing, provide suitable enclosures for installation with the conduit and wire from the ballasts to the lamp socket clearly mark “Caution”, “High Voltage”. All remote ballasts to the lamp socket as per the manufacturer with access plates for maintenance and on neoprene pads for sound absorption.

B. Electronic Ballasts, Additional Requirements

1. Physically interchangeable with electromagnetic ballasts in new or existing fixtures.
2. Operate lamps at frequencies between 25 and 40 KHz from 60 Hz input source with less than 10% flicker, at ambient temperature of 50 degrees F to 105 degrees F with 60 degrees C maximum case temperature during operation.
3. Maximum light regulation  $\pm 5\%$  with  $\pm 10\%$  input voltage variation.
4. Suitable for operation of 28T5, F21T5, F15T5, or F17T8, F25T8, and F325T8, one or two lamp, types as indicated or specified, designed for optimum operation of the specified lamps.
5. Solid-state consisting of rectifier, high frequency inverter, power control and regulation circuitry, in steel case, marked with manufacturer's name, part number, supply voltage, sound rating, power factor, open circuit voltage, RMS current draw, input watts, starting current, crest factor, efficiency and UL listing.
6. Ballasts life to be unaffected by lamp failure.
7. Minimum ballasts factor of 95%.
8. Maximum current crest factor of 1.7.
9. Maximum total harmonic distortion of 15%, maximum third harmonic distortion of 10%.
10. Minimum power factor of 90%.
11. Withstand line transients per IEEE 587, category A.
12. Rated life of 30,000 hours based on 10 hours per day.
13. Submit with shop drawings a certified test report from an independent test laboratory-illustrating conformance with specified requirements.
14. Submit evidence with shop drawings from ballasts supplier of three projects of significant magnitude, employing the proposed ballasts, in satisfactory operation for a minimum of one year. Identify projects, operating personnel familiar with the ballast performance, and frequency of ballasts failure.
15. Contractor to coordinate ballast line side voltage with branch circuit voltage as shown of Contract Drawings.

2.12 TRANSFORMERS (INCANDESCENT, COLD CATHODE, NEON)

- A. All transformers shall be sized to accommodate the intended load and utilize to operate lamps in a method approved by Underwriters Laboratory and acceptable by code, and shall not exceed the following:
1. Neon: 9,000 volts, 60 ma.
  2. Cold Cathode: 500 va.
  3. Incandescent: 500 va.

- B. Provide self contained, UL listed transformers in 16 gauge steel housings with secondary and primary wiring compartments, mount all transformers securely to the fixture housings (if integral) or to the building structure (if remote) with neoprene pads to isolate vibration and noise.
- C. Provide all transformers with secondary over-current protection and a primary disconnect switch, which will automatically disconnect the primary switch when the wiring compartment cover is removed.
- D. All transformers shall be installed in accessible and ventilated locations with a maximum 100 degrees F ambient temperature with air circulation on all side.
- E. All winding type transformers will be high power with a maximum crest factor of 1.6.
- F. All regulating transformers shall be tested to have an output regulated to  $\pm 3$  percent for input variations of 15 percent to 25 percent, less than 3 percent distortion with a minimum load efficiency of 85 percent, and operating temperature of 20 degrees C to 70 degrees C.

#### 2.13 REFLECTORS

- A. Reflectors and reflecting cones or baffles shall be as follows:
  - 1. Absolutely free of any tooling marks including spinning lines, indentations caused by riveting or other assembly techniques.
  - 2. No rivets, springs, or other hardware visible after installation.
  - 3. First quality polished, buffed and anodized finish.
  - 4. Low iridescence for flourescent source.
  - 5. Specular finish color as selected by the Architect and Lighting Designer.
  - 6. All reflectors and baffles of modified elliptical contour, with no apparent brightness from above 40 degrees above the nadir, with no lamp image or any part of the lamp visible from the above 40 degrees above the nadir.
  - 7. Cone flange formed as an integral part of the cone and with identical color and finish, unless specified otherwise. Width of the flange covers all ceiling opening without light leaks or hardware visible.

#### 2.14 LENSES

- A. All lenses secured by positive means with neoprene or silicone gasketing or washers as required to hold the lens tight within a frame or attach to a housing.
- B. All glass lenses shall be heat treated (tempered) or sealed with a clear acrylic laminate layer to provide a “safety glass” rating. All lenses which require removal for relamping or normal maintenance shall be attached to the fixture housing by a minimal length of safety chain to prohibit the lens from falling and striking surrounding surfaces. Glass edges exposd during the relamping process shall be gasketed to prevent chipping or cracking.
- C. Acrylic lenses shall be 100 percent virgin acrylic polymer, colorless, as manufactured by Rohm &

Haas, Dupont or equal unless noted otherwise.

2.15 LOUVERS

- A. All fluorescent light fixture specular and semi-specular louvers shall be low iridescence parabolic and shall be rated at 90 percent or over on the visual comfort probability (VCP) index.
- B. All plastic parabolic louvers shall be saicized before and after fabrication to insure minimum maintenance and retard dirt accumulation.
- C. All louvers shall be heat tested to withstand lamp-operating temperatures with no deformation of shape, paint blistering or discoloration.

2.16 FIXTURE TRIMS

- A. Provide trim details as shown on the drawings or as specified, which are indicative of appearance and dimensional requirements. The trim finish dimensions shall be subject to the approval of the Architect and Lighting Designer.
- B. Provide a mounting frame or ring with lock at recessed or semi-recessed light fixtures to secure mounting frame to the ceiling and support any reflectors, trims or lenses. Ring shall be compatible with the ceiling and of sufficient strength to rigidly support the fixture and any stress applied in relamping.

2.17 SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with all applicable seismic codes requiring independent support for lighting fixtures.
- B. Provide plaster frames and mounting frames for fixtures as required, appropriate for ceiling construction in which installed.
  - 1. Provide formed, rolled, or cast metal attachment devices including brackets, plaster rings, saddle hanger and tie bars, of rigidity and strength to maintain continuous alignment of installed fixtures.
- C. Provide necessary hardware including stems, plates, plaster frames, hangers, and similar items, for safe support of fixture.
  - 1. Provide fastening devices of positive locking type, not requiring special tools to apply or remove. Do not use tie wires in place of fastening devices.
- D. Provide fixture supports adequate to support the weight of fixture.
  - 1. Provide surface passivated supporting members; primed or paint-dipped to resist corrosion.
  - 2. Finish exposed hanging devices to match fixture finish unless indicated otherwise.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Setting and Securing: Set lighting fixtures plumb, square, and level with ceiling and walls, in alignment with adjacent lighting fixtures, and secure in accordance with manufacturers' directions and approved shop drawings. Conform to the requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Mounting: mounting heights specified or indicated are to bottom of suspended and ceiling-mounted fixtures and to center of wall-mounted fixtures.
- C. Support: Recessed and semi-recessed fixtures may be supported from suspended ceiling support system ceiling tees if the ceiling system support rods or wires are provided with a minimum of four rods or wires per fixture and located not more than 6 inches from each corner of each fixture.
  - 1. For round fixtures or fixtures smaller in size than the ceiling grid, provide a minimum of four rods or wires per fixture and locate at each corner of the ceiling grid in which the fixture is located.
  - 2. When fixtures of sizes less than the ceiling grid are indicated to be centered in the acoustical panel, support such fixtures independently or with at least two parallel 3/4 inch metal channels spanning and wired to the ceiling tees.
  - 3. Additionally, for recessed fixtures, provide support clips securely fastened to ceiling grid members, a minimum of one at or near each corner of each fixture.
- D. Coordination: Coordinate with work specified in other sections as appropriate to properly interface installation of lighting fixtures with other work.

### 3.2 GENERAL

- A. Install fixtures complete with lamps and with equipment, materials, parts, attachments, devices, hardware, hangers, cables, supports, channels, frames and brackets necessary to make a safe, complete, and fully operative installation.
- B. Do not install reflector cones, apertures, plates, lenses, diffuses, louvers, and decorative element of fixtures until completion of wet work, plastering, and general clean up in area of fixtures.
- C. Mount fixtures at heights and locations indicated on drawings or as directed by the Architect and Lighting Designer. Fixture locations indicated on Electrical Drawings are generalized and approximate. Carefully verify locations with the Architect and Lighting Designer's plans, reflected ceiling plans and other reference data prior to installation. Check for adequacy of headroom and non-interference with other equipment, such as ducts, pipes or openings. Bring conflicts to the Architect and Lighting Designer's attention before proceeding with work and ordering fixtures.
- D. Adequately protect housing of recessed lighting fixtures during installation by internal locking or framing to prevent discoloration of sides, and discoloration of threaded lugs; maintain perfect lug alignment and match corresponding holes in frames and rims. Insert holding screws freely without forcing, easily removable for servicing.
- E. Upon completion of installation, lighting fixtures and lighting equipment shall be in first class

operating order and free from defects in condition and finish. At time of final inspection, all fixtures and equipment shall be clean, fully lamped, and complete with required lenses; replace damaged diffusers, reflectors, side panels and other parts prior to final inspection.

### 3.3 COORDINATION

- A. Give ample notice of special openings required for placing equipment in building; avoid cutting completed work.
- B. Furnish materials and labor for work under this section in ample time, and in sufficient quantities so work may be installed in proper sequence to avoid unnecessary cutting of floors and walls.
- C. Coordinate and schedule work with work of others, Utility Company, and Telephone Company, to avoid delay in proper installation and completion of respective work.

### 3.4 ACCESSIBILITY

- A. Install equipment such as junction and pull boxes, fixture housings, transformers, ballasts. Switches and controls, and other apparatus that must be reached periodically for operation and maintenance, easily accessible.

### 3.5 ADJUSTMENTS

- A. Perform final focusing and adjustment, in presence of the Architect and Lighting Designer of adjustable fixtures as required.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each installed unit for damage. Replace damaged units.
- B. Provide instruments to make and record test results.
- C. Malfunctioning Fixtures and Components: replace or repair, then retest. Repeat procedure until units operate properly.

### 3.7 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Immediately prior to occupancy, clean reflector cones, reflector aperture plates, lenses, louvers, lamps and decorative elements. Destaticize lenses.

END OF SECTION 265600

SECTION 270000 – GENERAL COMMUNICATIONS REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. The scope of work specified by these documents shall result in the provision, installation and testing of the following Telecommunications Communications infrastructure, systems and equipment.
  - 1. All Communications Wiring
    - a. Contractor to provide all new CAT6 cabling at all telecom outlet locations. Refer to drawings for outlet locations.
      - 1) All new CAT6 cables shall be terminated onto new CAT6 patch panels and labeled to the Eastchester existing labelling scheme.
  - 2. Wireless Data Communication System (wiring only).
    - a. All WAP locations are to receive new CAT6 cabling.
      - 1) Cables to be terminated onto individual CAT6 patch panels and shall not be shared with other telecommunications outlet types.
  - 3. The Telecommunications Contractor shall ensure that the General Contractor and Painting Contractor acknowledge that painting of or over spray any single or group of 4 pair horizontal telecommunications Category 5e or Category 6 cable is not allowed. Any painted or over sprayed cable(s) shall be replaced at the telecommunications and/or painting contractor's expense. Painted Cable will not be covered as part of an extended warranty. Painted cable in addition to obscuring the print legend may act as an accelerant or create an additional smoke hazard in the event of a fire and as such this is considered a life safety issue.
  - 4. Wireless Access Points (WAPs) shall be provided by Client. Installed by the TC
  - 5. All Wireless Access Point devices and switches shall be furnished and configured by the owner.
  - 6. All Network access layer, Network core, Network security devices shall be furnished, installed and configured by the owner.
  - 7. Audio/Video Systems
    - a. Designated rooms (refer to Drawings) shall be equipped with recessed wall mounted media outlet. Refer to drawings for cable types and quantities.
  - 8. Security
    - a. Security devices shall be furnished, installed and configured by the security contractor:
- B. Telephone system (VoIP)
  - 1. The telephone system shall be furnished, installed and programmed by the owner.
- C. These systems shall be integrated by means of an in building Network of cables.
  - 1. Cable Infrastructure
    - a. All technology cabling for the schools will be integrated with the data network, telephone, intercom, and security systems, utilizing Category 6 cabling.
  - 2. Cabling for data and telecommunications between the jack plate and either MDF or IDF shall be category 6 as indicated in drawings and field conditions.
  - 3. All wiring will be in stub-ups or free air to J-hooks.

1.3 SUMMARY OF WORK

- A. Associated “T” drawing series attached

1.4 REGULATIONS AND CODE COMPLIANCE

- A. All work and materials shall conform to and be installed, inspected and tested in accordance with the most current governing rules and regulations of federal, state and local governmental agencies.
- B. The following is a list of codes and standards that will apply to this project:
  - 1. Federal Occupational Safety and Health Administration - OSHA.
  - 2. National Life Safety Code, NFPA 101.
  - 3. National Electrical Code (NEC), NFPA 70
  - 4. Underwriters Laboratory (UL).
  - 5. Factory Mutual and/or Owner's Insurance Carrier.
  - 6. ANSI/TIA - Telecommunications Building Wiring Standards (Most current addition, revision and addenda), including, but limited to, the following compilation series of documents: 568, 570, 598, 606, 607, 758, , FIP 174, FIP175, FIP176,
  - 7. BICSI Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual, Telecommunications Cabling Installation Manual, Customer-Owned Outside Plant Manual, LAN and Internetworking Design Manual.
  - 8. IEEE Standards.
  - 9. IEEE-SA - National Electrical Safety Code (NESC)
  - 10. Federal Communications Commission.
  - 11. NEMA – National Electrical Manufacturers' Association
  - 12. CSA – Canadian Standards Association
  - 13. Owner's Environmental Health and Safety Standards.
  - 14. Owner's Construction Standards.
  - 15. ADA, Americans with Disabilities Act.

1.5 GLOSSARY

- A. ANSI: American National Standards Institute
- B. ASME: American Society of Mechanical Engineers
- C. ASTM: American Society for Testing Materials
- D. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Services International
- E. CSA: Canadian Standards Association
- F. FCC: Federal Communications Commission
- G. FM: Factory Mutual Insurance Company
- H. IEEE: Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers



- I. IRI: Industrial Risk Insurers
- J. ISO: International Standards Organization
- K. NEC: National Electrical Code (latest applicable edition)
- L. NEMA: National Electrical Manufacturers' Association
- M. NESC: National Electrical Safety Code
- N. NFPA: National Fire Protection Association
- O. New York BFU: New York Board of Fire Underwriters
- P. New York /DEC: New York Department of Environmental Conservation
- Q. New York /UFBC: New York Uniform Fire Prevention and Building Code
- R. OSHA: Occupational Safety and Health Administration
- S. TIA: Telecommunications Industry Association
- T. UFPO: Underground Facilities Protective Organization
- U. UL: Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc.

#### 1.6 DEFINITIONS

- A. Approved / Approval: Written permission to use a material or system.
- B. As Called for: Materials, equipment including the execution specified/shown in the contract documents.
- C. Code Requirements: Minimum requirements
- D. Concealed: Work installed in pipe and duct shafts, chases or recesses, inside walls, above ceilings, in slabs or below grade.
- E. Design Equipment: Refer to the article, BASIS OF DESIGN.
- F. Design Make: Refer to the Article, BASIS OF DESIGN.
- G. Equal or Equivalent: Equally acceptable as determined by Owner's Representative.
- H. Exposed: Work not identified as concealed.
- I. Final Acceptance: Owner acceptance of the project from Contractor upon certified by Owner's Representative.
- J. Furnish: Supply and deliver to installation location.
- K. Furnished by Others: Receive delivery at job site or where called for and installed.

- L. Inspection: Visual observations by Owner's site Representative.
- M. Install: Mount and connect equipment and associated materials ready or use.
- N. Labeled: Refers to classification by a standards agency.
- O. Make: Refer to the article, BASIS OF DESIGN.
- P. Or Approved Equal: Approved equal or equivalent as determined by Owner's Representative.
- Q. Owner's Representative: Mast Construction
- R. Prime Professional: Architect or Engineer having a contract directly with the Owner for professional services.
- S. Provide: Furnish, install and connect ready for use.
- T. Relocate: Disassemble, disconnect, and transport equipment to new locations, then clean, test, and install ready for use.
- U. Replace: Remove and provide new item.
- V. Review: A general contractual conformance check of specified products. W. Roughing: Pipe, duct, conduit, cabling, equipment layout and installation.
- W. Satisfactory: As specified in contract documents.
- X. Site Representative: Construction Manager or Owner's Inspector at the work site.
- Y. Refer to General Conditions of the Contract for additional definitions.

#### 1.7 INTENT OF DRAWINGS

- A. The drawings are diagrammatic, unless detailed dimensioned drawings are included. Drawings show approximate locations of equipment, and fixtures. Exact locations are subject to the approval of the Owner's Representative.
- B. The Contractor should verify all dimensions locating the work and its relation to existing work, all existing conditions and their relation to the work and all man-made obstructions and conditions, etc. affecting the completion and proper execution of the work as indicated in the Contract Documents.
- C. Related Documents
  - 1. Drawings, General Conditions, and Special Conditions related to this project are found in this Division, as well as the other Divisions included in the Contract Documents.

## 2.0 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS:

#### A. Materials requirements:

1. All equipment and material for which there is a listing service shall bear a UL label.
2. Electrical equipment and systems shall meet UL Standards and requirements of the NEC and CSA. This listing requirement applies to the entire assembly. Any modifications to equipment to suit the intent of the specifications shall be performed in accordance with these requirements.
3. Equipment shall meet all applicable FCC Regulations
4. All materials, unless otherwise specified, shall be new and be the standard products of the manufacturer. Used equipment or damaged material will be rejected.
5. The listing of a manufacturer as “acceptable” does not indicate acceptance of a standard or catalogued item of equipment. All equipment and systems must conform to the Specifications and meet the quality of the design make.
6. Where applicable, all materials and equipment shall bear the label and listing of Underwriters Laboratory of Factory Mutual. Application and installation of all equipment and materials shall be in accordance with such labeling and listing.

### 2.3 CABLES

- A. Any cable associated with this Contract, passing through two or more floors shall be suitable, listed by a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and marked for use in a riser or plenum application. Riser cable shall minimally be CMR or OFNR rated per the National Electrical Code and shall meet all local and state codes.
- B. Any cable associated with this Contract shall be rated, listed by a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and marked for use in a plenum application, regardless if the ceiling is a ducted return air plenum or not. Cable shall be CMP rated per the National Electrical Code and shall meet all local and state codes.
- C. Voice copper backbone cables, if required, shall be twisted 24 AWG., contain a corrugated aluminum shield, be of the size indicated on the drawings and have the proper jacket classification per the NEC.
- D. All copper underground feeder cable associated with this Contract, if required, shall be suitable, listed and marked for use in a duct application per the National Electrical Code article 800 and shall meet all local codes. Copper underground cables shall be jell-filled, twisted 24 AWG., contain an overall corrugated shield, be of the size indicated on the drawings, shall have footage indicators imprinted on the cable jacket and shall meet REA/RUS specification PE-39 or PE-89.

### 2.4 FACTORY ASSEMBLED PRODUCTS

- A. Provide maximum standardization of components to reduce spare part requirements.
- B. Manufacturers of equipment assemblies that include components made by others shall assume complete responsibility for final assembled unit.

1. All components of an assembled unit need not be products of same manufacturer.
  2. Constituent parts, which are alike, shall be product of a single manufacturer.
  3. Components shall be compatible with each other and with the total assembly for intended service.
- C. Components of equipment shall bear manufacturer's name or trademark, model number and serial number on a nameplate securely affixed in a conspicuous place, or cast integral with, stamped or otherwise permanently marked upon the components of the equipment.
- D. Major items of equipment that serve the same function must be the same make and model. Exception will be permitted if performance requirements cannot be met.

## 2.5 COMPATABILITY OF RELATED EQUIPMENT

- A. Equipment and materials installed shall be compatible in all respects with other items being furnished and with existing items so that a complete and fully operational system will result.
- B. Provide maximum standardization of components to reduce spare part requirements.
- C. Manufacturers of equipment assemblies that include components made by others shall assume complete responsibility for final assembled unit.
1. All components of an assembled unit need not be products of same manufacturer.
  2. Constituent parts that are alike shall be product of a single manufacturer.
  3. Components of equipment shall bear manufacturer's name or trademark, model number and serial number on a nameplate securely affixed in a conspicuous place, or cast integral with, stamped or otherwise permanently marked upon the components of the equipment.

## 2.6 LIFTING ATTACHMENTS

- A. Equipment should have suitable lifting attachments to enable equipment to be lifted in its normal position. Lifting attachments shall withstand any handling conditions that might be encountered without bending or distortion of shape, such as rapid lowering and braking of load.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS SUPPORTS

- A. Metal bars, plates, tubing, etc. shall conform to the following ASTM standards:
1. Steel plates, shapes, bars, and grating - ASTM A 36
  2. Cold-Formed Steel Tubing - ASTM A 500
  3. Hot - Rolled Steel Tubing - ASTM A 500
  4. Steel Pipe - ASTM A 53, Schedule 40, welded
- B. Metal Fasteners shall be Zinc-coated (type, grade and class as required)

2.8 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Firestopping for Openings through Fire and Smoke Rated Walls and Floor Assemblies shall be listed or classified by an approved independent testing laboratory for "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems." The system shall meet the requirements of "Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Firestops" designated ASTM E814.
- B. Inside of all conduits, the firestop system shall consist of a dielectric, water resistant, non-hardening, permanently pliable/re-enterable putty along with the appropriate damming or backer materials (where required). The sealant must be capable of being removed and reinstalled and must adhere to all penetrants and common construction materials and shall be capable of allowing normal wire/cable movement without being displaced.
- C. All conduit and sleeve openings shall be waterproofed or fireproofed in compliance with New Jersey Building and Fire Codes. Strict adherence to National and State Fire Codes, particularly firestopping will be required.
- D. All openings remaining around and inside all conduit, sleeves and cable penetrations to maintain the integrity of any fire rated wall, ceiling, floor, etc. shall be patched.
- E. All building conduits and sleeves installed and/or used under this contract shall be firestopped, or re- firestopped, upon cable placement through such passageways.
- F. Manufacturer's recommended installation standards must be closely followed (i.e. minimum depth of material, use of ceramic fiber and installation procedures).
- G. Provide firestop system seals at all locations where conduit, fiber, cable trays, cables/wires, and similar utilities pass through or penetrate fire rated wall or floor assembly. Provide firestop seal between sleeve and wall for drywall construction.
- H. The minimum required fire resistance ratings of the wall or floor assembly shall be maintained by the firestop system. The installation shall provide an air and watertight seal.
- I. The methods used shall incorporate qualities that permit the easy removal or addition of conduits or cables without drilling or use of special tools. The product shall adhere to itself to allow repairs to be made with the same material and permit the vibration, expansion and/or contraction of any items passing through the penetration without cracking, crumbling and resulting reduction in fire rating. Typical rating:
  - 1. Floors - 3 hours
  - 2. Corridor walls - 2 hours
  - 3. Offices -  $\frac{3}{4}$  hour
  - 4. Smoke partitions -  $\frac{3}{4}$  - 1 hour
- J. Provide firestop pillows for existing cable tray penetrations through firewalls.

3. EXECUTION

3.1 ROUGH-IN

- A. Due to small scale of drawings, it is not possible to indicate all offsets, fittings, changes in elevation, etc. Verify final locations for installation with field measurements and with the equipment being connected. Verify exact location and elevations at work site prior to any rough in work. If field conditions, details, changes in equipment or shop drawing information require a significant change to the original documents, contact the owner's representative for approval before proceeding.
- B. All equipment locations shall be coordinated with other trades, other renovation projects, and existing conditions to eliminate interference with required clearances for equipment maintenance and inspection.
  - 1. Coordinate work with other trades, other renovation projects, and existing conditions to determine exact routing of all cable tray, hangers, conduit, etc., before fabrication and installation. Coordinate with Technology Drawings. Verify with Owners Representative exact location and mounting height of all equipment in finished areas, such as equipment racks, communication and electrical devices. Coordinate all work with existing Architecture.
  - 2. Where more than one trade is involved in an area, space or chase, all shall cooperate and install their own work to utilize the space equally between them in proportion to their individual requirements. There will be no priority schedule for trades. If, after installation of any equipment, piping, ducts, conduit, and boxes, it is determined that ample maintenance and passage space has not been provided, rearrange work and/or furnish other equipment as required for ample maintenance space. Any changes in the size or location of the material or equipment supplied or proposed, which may be necessary in order to meet field conditions or in order to avoid conflicts between trades, shall be brought to the immediate attention of the Owner's Representative and approval received before such alterations are made.
- C. Provide easy, safe, and code mandated clearances at equipment racks and enclosures, and other equipment requiring maintenance and operation.

3.2 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cut and drill from both sides of walls and/or floors to eliminate splaying. Patch adjacent existing work disturbed by installation of new work including insulation, walls and wall covering, ceiling and floor covering, other finished surfaces. Patch and/or paint openings and damaged areas equal to existing surface finish. Cut openings in prefabricated construction units in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.3 CONCEALMENT

- A. Use existing conduit and surface raceway where possible and practicable. Conceal all contract work above ceilings and in walls, below slabs, and elsewhere throughout building. If concealment is impossible or impractical, notify Owner's Representative before starting that part of the work and install only after his review. In areas with no ceilings, install only after Owner's Representative reviews and comments on arrangement and appearance.

### 3.4 CHASES

#### A. General

1. Field verifies for correct size and location for all openings, recesses and chase.
2. Assume responsibility for correct and final location and size of such openings.
3. Rectify improperly sized, improperly located or omitted chases or openings due to faulty or late information or failure to check final location.
4. Correct, by drilling, omitted or improperly located sleeves. Assume responsibility for all work and equipment damaged during course of drilling. Cap or firestop all unused conduits and sleeves.
5. Provide angle iron frame where openings are required for contract work.
6. Seal voids in fire rated assemblies with a firestopping seal system to maintain the fire resistance of the assembly. Provide 18 gauge-galvanized sleeves at fire rated assemblies. Extend sleeves 2" above floors.
7. In wall openings, drill or cut holes to suit. Provide 18 gauge galvanized sleeves at shafts and fire rated assemblies. Provide firestopping seal between sleeves and wall in drywall construction. Provide firestopping similar to that for floor openings.

### 3.5 WATERPROOFING

- A. The Contractor shall seal all foundation penetrating conduits and all service entrance conduits and sleeves to eliminate the intrusion of moisture and gases into the building. This requirement also includes spare conduits.
- B. Spare conduits shall be plugged with expandable plugs.
- C. All service entrance conduits through building shall be sealed or resealed upon cable placement.
- D. Conduits with cables in them shall be permanently sealed by firmly packing the void around the cable with oakum and capping with a hydraulic cement or waterproof duct seal.

### 3.6 SUPPORTS

- A. Provide required supports, beams, angles, hangers, rods, bases, braces, straps, struts, and other items to properly support contract work. Supports shall meet the approval of the Owner's Representative. Modify studs, add studs, add framing, or otherwise reinforce studs in metal stud walls and partitions as required to suit contract work. If necessary, in stud walls, provide special supports from floor to structure above. For precast Panels/Planks and Metal Decks, support communication work as determined by manufacturer and Owner's Representative. Provide heavy gauge steel mounting plates for mounting contract work. Mounting plates shall span two or more studs. Size, gauge, and strength of mounting plates shall be sufficient for equipment size, weight, and desired rigidity.

### 3.7 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate ordering and installation of all equipment with long lead times or having a major impact on work by other trades so as not to delay the job or impact the schedule.

- B. Where mounting heights are not detailed or dimensioned, install systems, materials and equipment to provide the maximum headroom possible.
- C. Set all equipment to accurate line and grade, level all equipment and align all equipment components.
- D. Provide all scaffolding, rigging, hoisting and services necessary for erection and delivery of equipment and apparatus furnished into the premises. These items shall be removed from premises when no longer required.
- E. No equipment shall be hidden or covered up prior to inspection by the owner's representative. All work that is determined to be unsatisfactory shall be corrected immediately.
- F. All work shall be installed level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components.

### 3.8 IMPLEMENTATION

- A. The contractor shall provide and install all hardware, software, connections and appurtenances required for fully operational systems.

END OF SECTION 270000



SECTION 270526 – GROUNDING AND BONDING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. This document describes the products and execution requirements relating to furnishing and installing Grounding/Earthing and Bonding for Communications Systems.
- B. This section includes minimum requirements for the following:
  - 1. Grounding/Earthing System.
  - 2. Telecommunications Grounding Busbar (TGB).
  - 3. Telecommunications Main Grounding Busbar (TMGB).
  - 4. Telecommunications Bonding Backbone (TBB).
  - 5. Rack Grounding/Earthing and Bonding.
- C. All cables and related terminations, support and grounding/earthing hardware shall be furnished, installed, wired, tested, labeled, and documented by the General Contractor as detailed in this document and on the drawings.
- D. Product specifications, general design considerations, and installation guidelines are provided in this document. Quantities of grounding/earthing products, typical installation details and cable routing are provided on the drawings. If this document is in conflict, with the drawings the drawings take precedence. The successful vendor shall meet or exceed all requirements for the cable system described in this document.

1.2 REGULATORY REFERENCES

- A. The following industry standards are the basis for the grounding/Earthing and bonding system described in this document.
  - 1. TIA/EIA
    - a. TIA-942 -A Telecommunications Infrastructure Standard for Data Centers
    - b. ANSI-TIA-607-C - Commercial Building Grounding/Bonding Requirements
    - c. TIA606-C- Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings
  - 2. IEEE
    - a. STD 1100 - IEEE Recommend Practice for Powering and Grounding Electronic Equipment (IEEE Emerald Book)
  - 3. NFPA
    - a. NFPA-70 - National Electric Code (NEC)
- B. The most recent versions of all documents apply to this project. If there is a conflict between applicable documents, the order above shall dictate the order of precedence in resolving the issue unless an enforceable local or national code is in effect.

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

#### A. General Contractor Qualifications:

1. The General Contractor shall submit references and other related evidence of installation experience for a period of three years prior to the issue date of this Specification.
2. All work shall be supervised on-site by a BICSI Registered Communications Distribution Designer (RCDD). Person must demonstrate knowledge and compliance with all BICSI, TIA, UL, and NEC standards and codes. General Contractor shall submit proof of RCDD designation.

#### B. Provided products shall meet the following requirements: Items of the same classification shall be identical. This requirement includes equipment, assemblies, parts, and components.

#### C. Assure that the "as installed" system is correctly and completely documented including engineering drawings, manuals, and operational procedures in such a manner as to support maintenance and future expansion of the system.

### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

#### A. Bonding - The permanent joining of metallic parts to form an electrically conductive path that will assure electrical continuity and the capacity to conduct safely any current likely to be imposed.

#### B. Common Bonding Network (CBN) - The principal means for affecting bonding and earthing inside a building.

#### C. Ground/Earth - A conducting connection, whether intentional or incidental, by which an electric circuit or equipment is connected to earth, or to some conducting body of relatively large extent that serves in place of the earth.

#### D. Retrofit Rack Grounding/Earthing - The application of grounding/earthing products and technology where equipment is already deployed and functioning.

### 1.5 OVERVIEW

#### A. The purpose of the grounding/earthing system is to create a low impedance path to earth ground for electrical surges and transient voltages. Lightning, fault currents, circuit switching (motors turning on and off), and electrostatic discharge are common causes of these surges and transient voltages. An effective grounding/earthing system minimizes the detrimental effects of these electrical surges, which include degraded network performance and reliability and increased safety risks.

#### B. The grounding/earthing system must be intentional, visually verifiable, adequately sized to handle expected currents safely, and directs these potentially damaging currents away from sensitive network equipment. As such, grounding/earthing must be purposeful in its design and installation.

#### C. Four issues require special consideration:

1. Although AC powered equipment typically has a power cord that contains a ground/earth wire, the integrity of this path cannot be easily verified. Thus, many equipment manufacturers require grounding/earthing above and beyond that which is specified by

- local electrical codes, such as the National Electrical Code, etcetera. Always follow the grounding/earthing recommendations of the manufacturer when installing equipment.
2. While the building steel and metallic water piping must be bonded to the grounding/earthing system for safety reasons, neither may be substituted for the telecommunications bonding backbone (TBB).
  3. Electrical continuity throughout each rack or cabinet is required to minimize safety risks. Hardware typically supplied with bolt together racks is not designed for grounding/earthing purposes.
  4. Additionally, most racks are painted. Paint is an insulator. Unless rack members are deliberately bonded, continuity between members is incidental, and in many cases, unlikely.
- D. Any metallic component that is part of a data center or telecommunications room, including equipment, racks, ladder racks, enclosures, cable trays, etc. must be bonded to the grounding/earthing system with a 1 ohm resistance between 2 points.

## 1.6 WORKMANSHIP

- A. The ground/earth system must be designed for high reliability. Therefore, the grounding/earthing system shall meet following criteria:
- B. Local electrical codes shall be adhered to.
1. The grounding/earthing system shall comply with ANSI/TIA-942-A and J-STD-607-C.
  2. All grounding/earthing conductors shall be copper.
  3. Lugs, HTAPs, grounding strips, and busbars shall be UL Listed and made of premium quality tin-plated electrolytic copper that provides low electrical resistance while inhibiting corrosion. Antioxidant shall be used when making bonding connections in the field.
  4. Wherever possible, two-hole lugs shall be used because they resist loosening when twisted (bumped) or exposed to vibration. All lugs shall be irreversible compression and meet NEBS Level 3 as tested by Telcordia. Lugs with inspection windows shall be used in all non-corrosive environments so that connections may be inspected for full conductor insertion (battery rooms are an exception where windowless lugs may be used).
  5. Die index numbers shall be embossed on all compression connections to allow crimp inspection.
  6. Cable assemblies shall be UL Listed and CSA Certified. Cables shall be a distinctive green or green/yellow in color, and all jackets shall be UL, VW-1 flame rated.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GROUNDING/EARTHING AND BONDING

- A. The Telecommunications Grounding Busbar (TGB) in each telecommunications space will be grounded/earthed to the Telecommunications Main Grounding Busbar (TMGB) located at the service entrance. The gauge of the connecting ground/earth cable, known as the Telecommunications Bonding Backbone (TBB) will follow J-STD-607-A guidelines, as is shown in the table below.
- 1.

<u>Sizing of the TBB</u>	
<u>TBB Length in Linear meters (feet)</u>	<u>TBB Size (AWG)</u>
Less than 4 (13)	6
4-6 (14-20)	4
6-8 (21-26)	3
8-10 (27-33)	2
10-13 (34-41)	1
13-16 (42-52)	1/0
16-20 (53-66)	2/0
Greater than 20 (66)	3/0

- B. The TMGB will be bonded to building steel and grounded/earthed to the electrical service ground according to BICSI TDM Manual and J-STD-607-C guidelines. Local codes may supersede these requirements. In telecommunications spaces with only one rack, the rack jumper cable can be connected directly to the TGB.

1.

<u>Cable Sizes for Other Grounding/Earthing Applications</u>	
<u>Purpose</u>	<u>Copper Code Cable Size</u>
Aisle grounds (overhead or under floor) of the common bonding net work	#2 AWG or larger (1/0 preferred)
Bonding conductor to each PDU or panel board serving the room.	Size per NEC 250.122 & manufacturer recommendations
Bonding conductor to HVAC equipment.	6 AWG
Building columns	4 AWG
Cable ladders and	6 AWG
Conduit, water pipe,	6 AWG

## 2.2 COMPONENTS, KITS AND HARDWARE

- A. STRUCTUREDGROUND™ Grounding System (STRUCTUREDEARTH™ Earthing System) kits, components, and hardware shall be used to construct the grounding/earthing system.
- B. Use lugs when connecting conductors to the TMGB and TGB.
- C. Route the TBB to each TGB in as straight a path as possible. The TBB should be installed as a continuous conductor, avoiding splices where possible. Use HTAP kits to provide a tap from the TBB to each TGB. When more than one TBB is used; bond them together using the TGBs on the top floor and every third floor in between with a conductor known as a Grounding Equalizer (GE). Use the J-STD-607-A guidelines for sizing of the TBB when sizing the GE (shown in the table above).

- D. Avoid routing grounding/earthing conductors in metal conduits. If the grounding/earthing conductor must be routed through a metal conduit, bond each end of the conduit to the grounding/earthing conductor. Use grounding clamps to bond to the conduit and a #6 AWG copper conductor to connect the GPL grounding clamp to the HTWC HTAP.

### 2.3 RACK GROUNDING/ EARTHING

- A. Equipment, equipment racks and ladder rack shall be bonded in accordance with the methods prescribed in ANSI/TIA-942-A.
- B. To provide electrical continuity between rack elements, paint piercing grounding washers, shall be used where rack sections bolt together, on both sides, under the head of the bolt and between the nut and rack.
- C. When the equipment manufacturer provides a location for mounting a grounding connection, that connection shall be utilized. Use the appropriate jumper for the equipment being installed and the thread-forming screws provided in the kit.
- D. Do not bond racks or cabinets serially. Use the copper compression HTAP that comes with the kit to bond the conductor to the common bonding network.

## PART 3 - PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 GROUNDING SYSTEM

- A. The communications grounding system shall be designed and/or approved by a qualified PE licensed in the state that the work is to be performed. The communications grounding system shall adhere to the recommendations of the ANSI/TIA-942-A and J-STD-607-C standards, and shall be installed in accordance with best industry practice.
- B. A General Contractor shall perform installation and termination of the main bonding conductor to the building service entrance ground.
- C. A General Contractor shall perform installation and termination of the main Telecommunications Grounding Bus Barr.

END OF SECTION 270526

SECTION 270528 – PATHWAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Conduit, fittings and bodies, including multi-cell conduit.
2. Riser flexible raceway (inner duct) and fittings.
3. Junction boxes pull boxes and gutters.
4. Measured pull tape.
5. J-Hooks.
6. Wire Tray / Ladder Rack.

- B. Provide temporary pathways of minimum 6000 type metal wiremold with covers for each school during the abatement process. Adhere the pathway to walls that will not be affected by the abatement process. Coordinate the pathways with the school district, general contractor and the architect.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

- B. Specific reference in specifications to codes, rules, regulations, standards, manufacturer's instructions or requirements of regulatory agencies shall mean the latest printed edition of each in effect at the date of contract unless the document is shown dated.

C. Conflicts:

1. Between referenced requirements: Comply with the one establishing the more stringent requirements.
2. Between referenced requirements and contract documents: Comply with the one establishing the more stringent requirements.

D. References:

1. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
  - a. C80.1 Rigid Steel Conduit - Zinc Coated.
  - b. C80.4 Fittings for Rigid Metal Conduit.
2. Federal Specifications (FS):
  - a. W-C-58C Conduit Outlet Boxes, Bodies Aluminum and Malleable Iron.
  - b. W-C-1094 Conduit and Conduit Fittings Plastic, Rigid.
  - c. WW-C-566C Flexible Metal Conduit.
  - d. WW-C-581D Coatings on Steel Conduit
  - e. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):
  - f. RN1 Polyvinyl-Chloride (PVC) Externally Coated Galvanized Rigid Steel Conduit and Electrical metallic Tubing.

- g. TC2 Electrical Plastic Tubing (EPT) and Conduit (EPC-40 and EPC-80).
- h. TC3 PVC Fittings for Use with Rigid PVC Conduit and Tubing.
- i. NEMA VE 1 - Metal Cable Tray Systems.
- j. NEMA VE 2 - Metal Cable Tray Installation Guidelines.
- 3. American Society for Testing and Materials International (ASTM)
  - a. ASTM A123 - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products.
  - b. ASTM A653 - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvanized) by the Hot-Dip Process.
  - c. ASTM B633 - Standard Specification for Electrodeposited Coatings of Zinc on Iron and Steel.
- 4. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):
  - a. 514 B Fittings for Conduit and Outlet Boxes.
  - b. 651 Schedule 40 and 80 Rigid PVC Conduit.
  - c. 651A Type EB and A Rigid PVC Conduit and HDPE Conduit.
  - d. 1666 Standard for Riser Application for Optical Fiber Raceway.
- 5. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) ANSI/NFPA 70 National Electrical Code (NEC).
- 6. ANSI/TIA-569-D-1, Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces
- 7. Building Industry Consulting Service International (BICSI) Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual (TDMM).
- 8. Local, county, state and federal regulations and codes in effect as of date of purchase.
- 9. Equipment of foreign manufacture must meet U.S. codes and standards. It shall be
- 10. Indicate in the proposal the components that may be of foreign manufacture, if any, and the country of origin.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. The Cable Contractor shall perform no portion of the work requiring submittal and review of record drawings, shop drawings, product data, or samples until the respective submittal has been approved by the Owner. Such work shall be in accordance with approved submittals.
- B. Qualifications: The Cable Contractor shall submit qualification data sheets for firms and persons as specified in the "Quality Assurance" article of this specification to demonstrate their capabilities and experience.
- C. Proposed product data sheets: The Cable Contractor shall submit catalog cut-sheets that include manufacturer, trade name, and complete model number for each product specified. Model number shall be handwritten and/or highlighted to indicate exact selection. Identify applicable specification section reference for each product.
- D. Coordination Drawings: The Cable Contractor shall submit coordination drawings showing coordination between communications pathways and other trades.
- E. Record Drawings: Furnish CAD drawings of completed work including cable ID numbers following the Owner's labeling standards. Submit in hardcopy (two full size and two half size) and electronic formats.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Cable Contractor Qualifications:

1. The Cable Contractor shall submit references and other related evidence of installation experience for a period of three years prior to the issue date of this Specification.
2. All work shall be supervised on-site by a BICSI Registered Communications Distribution Designer (RCDD). Must demonstrate knowledge and compliance with all BICSI, TIA, UL, and NEC standards and codes. Cable Contractor shall submit proof of RCDD designation.

B. Provided products shall meet the following requirements: Items of the same classification shall be identical. This requirement includes equipment, assemblies, parts, and components.

C. Assure that the "as installed" system is correctly and completely documented including engineering drawings, manuals, and operational procedures in such a manner as to support maintenance and future expansion of the system.

1.5 WARRANTY

A. General Warranty: Refer to General and Special Provisions Document for warranty requirements.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions in areas of installation by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

B. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating units without field measurements. Coordinate supports, adjacent construction, and fixture locations to ensure actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

1.7 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

A. Equipment shall be delivered in original packages with labels intact and identification clearly marked.

B. Equipment shall not be damaged in any way and shall comply with manufacturer's operating specifications.

C. Equipment and components shall be protected from the weather, humidity, temperature variations, dirt, dust, or other contaminants. Equipment damaged prior to system acceptance shall be replaced at no cost to the Owner.



1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Field coordinate installation of conduit and cable tray with other trades to ensure clearance requirements are met.
- B. Coordinate with all contractors providing equipment outside the scope of this contract.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PATHWAYS

- A. Definition:
  - 1. For the purpose of this document, the term "Telecommunication Pathways" defines a portion of the communication infrastructure. Telecommunication Pathways include products provided for the routing, segregation and support of telecommunication cabling both inside and outside of facilities.
- B. Primary Industry Standard Requirements for Telecommunication Pathways:
  - 1. Comply with ANSI/TIA-569-D-1

2.2 LADDER RACK

- A. Ladder Rack is to be constructed of steel or brushed aluminum, at least 24 wide and at least 2" deep
  - 1. Manufacture: CPI # 11252-724 or Belden BLRS250-24B
- B. Ladder Rack must be installed with the proper mounting hardware to securely fasten the Ladder Rack to the walls and secured above Rack/Cabinets with pencils rod to deck above.
- C. Cable Tray Supports:
  - 1. Shall be placed so that the support spans do not exceed maximum span per manufacture and NEC load rating. Supports shall be constructed from 12 gauge steel formed shape channel members 1-5/8 inch by 1-5/8 inch with necessary hardware, Unistrut or equal.
  - 2. Trapeze hanger's supports shall be supported by 1/2inch (minimum) diameter rods. Cable trays installed adjacent to walls shall be supported on wall mounted brackets. Support shall be loading condition with a safety factor of 3. Pencil rod to be secured to of the Floor-Mounted Racks.
  - 3. Butt-Splice Kit.
    - a. Junction-Splice Kit.
    - b. Heavy-Duty Butt-Splice Kit.
    - c. Heavy-Duty Junction-Splice Kit.
    - d. Adjustable Junction-Splice Kit.
    - e. Runway-Splice Kit.
    - f. Butt Swivel Splice Kit.
    - g. Junction Swivel Splice Kit.

h. Vertical Swivel Splice Kit.

- D. Accessories provided shall be manufacturer approved and furnished as required for a complete system as defined by the manufacturer to protect, support, bond, ground and install a cable tray system. Accessories shall consist of but are not limited to; section splice plates, expansion plates, blind-end plates, specially designed ladder dropouts, barriers, etc.

2.3 CABLE BASKET

- A. Cable tray shall be the primary pathway for cable distribution from MDF/IDF's to work outlets:
1. Comply with ANSI/TIA-569-D-1.
  2. Cable tray shall be 12" x 4" to accommodate known cable load and provide for 100% expansion.
  3. Cable tray shall be attached directly to the building structure and shall not be supported by any other building systems such as electrical conduits, HVAC duct work, and plumbing or sprinkler pipe.
  4. Comply with the requirements of all related NEMA, ASTM and BICSI standards.

2.4 J-HOOKS

- A. J-Hooks shall be the secondary pathway for cable distribution from TRs to work outlets:
1. Comply with ANSI/TIA-569-D-1.
  2. J-Hooks shall be sized to accommodate known cable load and provide for 100% expansion.
  3. J-Hooks shall be attached directly to the building structure and shall not be supported by any other building systems such as electrical conduits, HVAC duct work, and plumbing or sprinkler pipe.
  4. Comply with the requirements of all related NEMA, ASTM and BICSI standards.

2.5 CONDUIT SYSTEMS

- A. Conduit pathways shall be provided by the electrical contractor as complete Conduit systems including:
1. Conduit with pull strings.
  2. Pull box / Junction box assemblies.
  3. Mounting / attachment hardware.
  4. Labeling.
  5. Grounding.
- B. Conduit Fill Calculations.
1. Calculate and provide conduit systems with sizing and quantities to assure conduit wire/cable fill does not exceed pulling tensions, rush limits and performance properties of cables installed.
- C. Conduit Trade Sizes

1. Typical conduit trade sizes used in Inside Plant Telecommunication Pathways are:
  - a. Trade Size ½ Inch EMT.
  - b. Trade Size 1 Inch EMT (Minimum Conduit size without written exception by OAT Engineer).
  - c. Trade Size 1 Inch EMT.
  - d. Trade Size 2 Inch EMT.
  - e. Trade Size 3 Inch EMT.
  - f. Trade Size 4 Inch EMT.
  - g. Various trade size "Flex" conduit (typically limited to 6 feet in length).

## 2.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Fire stopping shall be provided for Telecommunication Pathways at penetration areas for fire rated walls and floors. Fire stopping shall meet or exceed the hour rating of wall or floor penetrated by the Telecommunication Pathway.
  1. Fire stopping shall comply with latest release of NEC NFPA 70.
  2. Fire stopping products and applications shall provide containment of smoke, fumes and flame with performance in accordance with ASTM E814-00 and UL 1479.
  3. Local Authority Having Jurisdiction -Building Code Requirements.
- B. Types of Fire stopping hardware and materials include:
  1. Mechanical Fire stopping Products Conduit Sleeves
    - a. Conduit Sleeves.
    - b. Cable Tray Penetrations.
    - c. Penetration Frame Products.
  2. Non-Mechanical Fire stopping Products:
    - a. Putties.
    - b. Caulks.
    - c. Cementitious / Foams / Intumescent Materials.
    - d. Prefabricated Pillows, Blocks and Blankets.
  3. Fire stopping products shall be installed per manufacturer's practices.
  4. Manufactures include:
    - a. Specified Technologies Inc. (STI) SpecSeal
    - b. 3M Products.
    - c. CSD Sealing Systems.
    - d. Approved Equal.

## 2.7 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems." for grounding conductors and connectors.
- B. Telecommunications Main Bus Bar:
  1. Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless compression-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
  2. Ground Bus Bar: Each communication room depicted in the drawings shall be provisioned with a Telecommunications Grounding Busbar (TGB) meeting or exceeding the following requirements:

- a. Each bar shall be installed with isolated standoff mounts.
  - b. Minimal bar size is 1/2" thick x 2" wide x 10" long.
  - c. The TGB's shall be electroplated and pre-drilled for connector attachment to 6 AWG ground cables.
  - d. Holes spaced 1-1/8 inches apart.
- C. A #6 AWG stranded copper wire cable shall be extended between Telecommunication Room (TR) Busbars (TGB) and the Telecommunications Main Grounding Busbar (TMGB) (located in MDF) via conduit and cable tray systems as shown on the drawings.
- D. Ground conductor shall be provided, installed and utilized for equipment, termination, cable tray, equipment rack and computer equipment grounding, including telephone systems.
- E. All grounding material and work shall comply with the National Electric Code (NEC Chapter 8), Local and State regulations as well as ANSI-J/STD-607-C.
- F. Coordinate with the electrical power trades for grounding wiring interface to an approved connection to the building electrical power service panel ground source. Provide #6 AWG stranded copper bonding conductor extending from the electrical ground source to the Telecommunication Main Grounding Busbar (TMGB) located in the MDF.
- G. Provide ground cable #6 AWG stranded copper bonding conductor installed from the TMGB to each of the TR's as depicted in the project drawings ground wiring riser diagram.
- H. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Cooper B-Line P/N: SB-477 or equal.

## 2.8 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Comply with ANSI/TIA-606-C and UL 969 for labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

## 2.9 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers that may be incorporated in the work, include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. PVC Rigid Conduit:
    - a. Carlon.
    - b. Robroy Industries, Inc.
    - c. Cantex.
    - d. Or equal.
  2. Conduit Fittings and Bodies:
    - a. Crouse-Hinds, Appleton Electric.
    - b. Killark Electric Manufacturing Company.
    - c. O-Z/Gedney.
    - d. Or equal

3. J-HOOKS:
  - a. Erico/Caddy.
  - b. Or equal.
4. Measured pull tape - pull tape printed with sequential footage markings for accurate measurements:
  - a. Fibertek.
  - b. Condux International.
  - c. Or equal.
5. Cable Basket / Ladder Rack
  - a. Belden Ladder Rack.
  - b. Cablo-Fil.
  - c. CPI.
  - d. Or equal.

## 2.10 MATERIALS

### A. Conduits

1. All conduits, fittings, junction and pull boxes shall be UL rated.
2. All conduits, fittings, junction and pull boxes shall comply with the NEC.

### B. Non-metallic conduits are not permitted in above ground installations. Conversion fittings are required for non-metallic (below ground) to metallic (above ground) transitions. Exceptions will be granted to accommodate the transition from outside plant to inside plant to comply with code requirements

### C. Measured Pull Tape

1. Pre-lubricated, woven polyester, low friction, and high abrasion resistant yarn
2. Minimum average tensile strength shall be 1250 lbs. for 1/2-inch and smaller conduits and inner duct.
3. Minimum average tensile strength shall be 1800 lbs. for conduits larger than 1/2 inch.

### D. Pull Boxes, Junction Boxes and Gutters

1. All junction boxes, gutters and pull boxes shall comply with NEC Article 314.
2. All junction boxes, gutters and pull boxes shall meet the following minimum material requirements:
  - a. 16-gauge steel or heavier.
  - b. Seams shall be continuously welded and grounded smooth.
  - c. External screws and clamps.
  - d. External mounting feet (where possible).
  - e. Oil-resistant gasket and adhesive.
  - f. ANSI 61 gray polyester powder coating inside and out over phosphatized surface.
  - g. UL 50 type 12.
3. All junction boxes, gutters and pull boxes shall be provided with bushings for conduits and/or cabling.
4. All junction boxes, gutters and pull boxes shall be securely installed.
5. All junction boxes, gutters and pull box sizes for single and multiple conduit runs shall comply with BICSI TDMM.

E. CABLE BASKET, CABLE TRAY and LADDER RACK

1. Rated for use with Category 6a cable
2. Sized for support of quantity of cable installed at each location
3. Metallic and/or plenum rated.

F. J-HOOKS

1. Rated for use with Category 6a cable
2. Installed as shown in drawings
3. Metallic and/or plenum rated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Cable Contractor's on-site RCDD supervisor shall review, approve and stamp all shop drawings, coordination drawings and record drawings.
- B. Verify conduit system is properly sized for cables (minimum one inch, unless otherwise noted in Drawings).
- C. Verify general conduit route following Drawings.
- D. Verify substrates to which work is connected and determine detail requirements for proper support.
- E. Verify proper location and type of rough-in for conduit terminations.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate locations with other trades prior to installation.
- B. Install work following drawings, manufacturer's instructions and approved submittal data.
- C. Installation plans and requests for information (RFIs) shall be reviewed by Cable Contractor's on-site RCDD.
- D. All work shall be supervised and reviewed by Cable Contractor's on-site RCDD.
- E. Locations and Types:
  1. J-HOOKS
    - a. Install J-Hooks directly to building structure. Hooks may not be supported by any other building system - e.g. HVAC ducts, electrical conduits, plumbing or ceiling supports.
    - b. J-Hooks shall be installed every 48".
    - c. J-Hooks must be install straight level & plumb.
    - d. Cables shall be neatly bundled and secured to hooks using Velcro or Velcro type straps or fasteners.

- e. Cable Contractor's RCDD supervisor shall coordinate with drawings of other disciplines to determine availability of space for installation.
2. CABLE TRAY/ LADDER RACK
  - a. Install cable tray in telecomm closets as depicted on drawings
  - b. Position, elevation and routing of cable tray shall be coordinated with GC to ensure there is no conflict with equipment furnished and installed by any other contractor on site (e.g. HVAC, Electrical, Plumbing etc.)
  - c. Cable tray shall be secured directly to building structure and not supported by any other equipment or service element (e.g. ceiling grid, black iron, HVAC supports etc.)
  - d. Ladder within the telecommunications rooms (MDF, IDF) may be supported to the above the equipment racks within these rooms.
  - e. Support system shall be straight, level and plumb and show no signs of sagging or drooping at any point.
  - f. Cables in these trays shall be neatly bundled and secured using Velcro straps ONLY
  - g. All tray and ladder rack shall be grounded according to NEMA, BICSI and local jurisdiction requirements
  - h. Cable Contractor's RCDD supervisor shall coordinate with drawings of other disciplines to determine availability of space for installation.
3. CABLE BASKET
  - a. Install cable basket in hallway ceilings as depicted on attached drawings telecomm closets as depicted on drawings
  - b. Position, elevation and routing of cable basket shall be coordinated with GC to ensure there is no conflict with equipment furnished and installed by any other contractor on site (e.g. HVAC, Electrical, Plumbing etc.)
  - c. Cable basket shall be secured directly to building structure and not supported by any other equipment or service element (e.g. ceiling grid, black iron, HVAC supports etc.)
  - d. Support system shall be straight, level and plumb and show no signs of sagging or drooping at any point.
  - e. Cables in these baskets shall be neatly bundled and secured using Velcro straps ONLY
  - f. All Cable basket shall be grounded according to NEMA, BICSI and local jurisdiction requirements
  - g. Cable Contractor's RCDD supervisor shall coordinate with drawings of other disciplines to determine availability of space for installation.

F. Design Considerations:

1. Conduit fill shall comply with ANSI/TIA -569-D.
2. The minimum bend radius is six times the conduit inside diameter (ID) for a two inch conduit or less.
3. The minimum bend radius is 10 times the conduit ID for a conduit greater than two inches.
4. Below grade conduit shall extend three inches above finished floor (AFF) with a bushing.
5. Ceiling conduit or sleeves shall extend six inches below finished ceiling with a bushing.
6. All stubbed conduit ends shall be provided with a ground bushing.
7. All conduit penetrations shall comply with all applicable fire codes. All conduit penetrations in fire-rated walls or floors shall be sealed and fire proofed to at least the rating of the penetration area.

8. Conduits shall be routed in the most direct route, with the fewest number of bends possible.
  9. There shall be no continuous conduit sections longer than 100 feet. For runs that total more than 100 feet, insert junction or pull boxes (or gutters if appropriate) so that no continuous run between pull boxes is greater than 100 feet.
  10. There shall be no more than two 90-degree bends (180 degrees total) between conduit pull boxes.
  11. Changes in direction shall be accomplished with sweeping bends observing minimum bend radius requirements above. Do not use pull boxes for direction changes unless specifically designated otherwise in the Drawings.
  12. Unless otherwise noted in the Drawings, conduits entering pull boxes shall be aligned with exiting conduits.
- G. Identification: Refer to Section 270553 Identification for Communications Systems for labeling requirements.

### 3.3 CLEANING

- A. Remove all unnecessary tools and equipment, unused materials, packing materials and debris from each area where Work has been completed unless designated for storage.

### 3.4 ACCEPTANCE

- A. Once all work has been completed, test documentation has been submitted and approved, and the Owner is satisfied that all work has been completed in accordance with contract documents; the Owner will notify Cable Contractor in writing of formal acceptance of the system.
- B. Acceptance shall be subject to completion of all work and submittal and approval of full documentation as described above.

END OF SECTION 270528



SECTION 270553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes labeling and identification standards for:
  - 1. Horizontal and backbone cabling and termination hardware
  - 2. Conduits and pathways
  - 3. Equipment cabinets, racks, frames and enclosures
- B. As-builts shall contain matching label information

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.
- B. Specific reference in specifications to codes, rules, regulations, standards, manufacturer's instructions, or requirements of regulatory agencies shall mean the latest printed edition of each in effect at the date of contract unless the document is shown dated.
- C. Conflicts:
  - 1. Between referenced requirements: Comply with the one establishing the more stringent requirements.
  - 2. Between referenced requirements and contract documents: Comply with the one establishing the more stringent requirements.
- D. References:
  - 1. ANSI/TIA -606-C Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings
  - 2. International Standards Organization/International Electromechanical Commission (ISO/IEC) DIS11801, January 6, 1994
  - 3. Building Industry Consulting Services International (BICSI) Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual (TDMM)
  - 4. Local, county, state and federal regulations and codes in effect as of date of purchase.
  - 5. Equipment of foreign manufacture must meet U.S. codes and standards. It shall be indicated in the proposal the components that may be of foreign manufacture, if any, and the country of origin

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. The Contractor shall submit catalog cut-sheets that include manufacturer, trade name, and complete model number for each product specified.
  - 2. Model number shall be handwritten and/or highlighted to indicate exact selection. Identify applicable specification section reference for each product.

- B. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Provided products shall meet the following requirements: Items of the same classification shall be identical. This requirement includes equipment, assemblies, parts, and components.
- B. Assure that the "as installed" system is correctly and completely documented including engineering drawings, manuals, and operational procedures in such a manner as to support maintenance and future expansion of the system.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers that may be incorporated in the work, include, but are not limited to the following:
- B. Labels and Labeling System
  - 1. Basis of Design: Brady
  - 2. Acceptable substitutes: Dymo, Belden or submitted and Approved equal

#### 2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. All telecommunication components, areas, and cables shall be labeled, including but not limited to:
  - 1. Fiber cables.
  - 2. Metallic cable.
  - 3. Ground points.
  - 4. Cross-connect fields.
  - 5. Exterior enclosures.
  - 6. Conduit ends (pathways).
  - 7. Pull boxes and junction boxes.
  - 8. Equipment racks and cabinets.
  - 9. Fiber patch panels
  - 10. Maintenance holes.
  - 10. Cables in maintenance holes and pull boxes.
  - 11. Patch cables/jumpers.
- B. Pathways are defined but not limited to; any conduit, innerduct, underground duct bank, wiring troughs, pull boxes, and any wiring systems used to enclose cabling of any type.
- C. All label material shall be suitable for intended usage and environment, meeting the legibility, defacement and general exposure requirements listed in UL 969 for indoor and outdoor use. Where insert labels are used, the insert label shall be covered with clear cover and securely held in place.

- D. Interior labeling: printer shall be of the thermal transfer type capable of printing self-laminating labels of various size up to and including 1.5"by 1.5" printable area with a 4.5" self-laminating tail. No non-self-laminating labels shall be approved.
- E. All labels shall be permanent, i.e. will not fade, peel, or deteriorate due to environment or time.
- F. Handwritten labels are not acceptable.

## 2.3 CONDUITS AND PATHWAYS

- A. Conduits: General-purpose label designed for powdered coated surfaces with an ultra-aggressive adhesive, trade name, "Mondo Bondo" (Brady). Label size shall be appropriate for the conduit size. Font size shall be easily visible from the finished floor.
- B. Innerduct: Polyethylene general-purpose tagging material
  - 1. Brady part number PTL-12- 109 (.75 X 3.00) used with an R4310 ribbon. This tag shall be attached using tie wraps.
- C. Junction boxes (larger than four-inch x four-inch): General-purpose label designed for powdered coated surfaces with an ultra-aggressive adhesive, trade name, "Mondo Bondo", Brady part number PTL-43-483 (1.90 X continuous) used with an R6010 ribbon. Font size shall be easily visible from the finished floor.
- D. Junction boxes (four-inch x four-inch): General-purpose label designed for powdered coated surfaces with an ultra-aggressive adhesive, trade name, "Mondo Bondo"
  - 1. Brady part number PTL-42-483 (1.00 X continuous) used with an R6010 ribbon.

## 2.4 BACKBONE AND HORIZONTAL CABLE AND TERMINATIONS

- A. Fiber termination hardware (cover): General purpose label designed for powdered coated surfaces, trade name, "Mondo Bondo"
  - 1. Brady part number PTL-42-483 (1.00 X continuous) used with an R6010 ribbon.
- B. Fiber termination hardware (designation strip): Thermal transfer printable label with a permanent acrylic adhesive
  - 1. Brady part number PTL-10-423 (.75 X .25) used with an R6010 ribbon.
- C. Patch panels: Gloss white film with a permanent acrylic based adhesive
  - 1. Brady part number PTL-39-422 (.375 X .60) used with an R6010 ribbon.
- D. Inside and outside plant fiber cables: Permanent acrylic adhesive, self-laminating vinyl wire and cable identification
  - 1. Brady part number PTL-33-427 (1.50 X 4.00 X 1.00) used with an R4310 ribbon.

2.5 EQUIPMENT RACKS AND CABINETS

- A. General purpose label designed for powdered coated surfaces.
- B. Basis of Design: Trade name, “Mondo Bondo”,
  - 1. Brady part number PTL-42-483 (1.00 X continuous) used with an R6010 ribbon.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

- A. Labeling format shall be as shown in Telecommunications Drawings Set.

3.2 CONDUITS AND JUNCTION/PULL BOXES

- A. All conduits, innerduct, junction boxes, gutters and pull boxes shall be labeled.
- B. Conduits shall be labeled with the word “communications” and the conduit’s origination room number and destination room number. Permanent room identifiers shall be used.
- C. Label conduit every 50 feet, at each wall and floor penetration and at each conduit termination, such as outlet boxes, pull boxes, and junction boxes, or as otherwise specified in other Sections.
- D. Junction boxes, gutters and pull boxes shall be labeled with identification name or number as determined by Contractor and submitted for approval.
- E. Labels on conduits, junction boxes, gutters and pull boxes shall be machine-generated and easily visible from the finished floor.

3.3 EQUIPMENT RACKS AND CABINETS

- A. All racks and cabinets shall be properly labeled with permanent typewritten labels, easily visible from finished floor.
- B. Label as indicated in Drawings.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Remove all unnecessary tools and equipment, unused materials, packing materials, and debris from each area where Work has been completed unless designated for storage.

3.5 ACCEPTANCE

- A. Once all work has been completed and the Owner is satisfied that all work has been completed in accordance with contract documents, the Owner will notify Contractor in writing of formal acceptance of the system.
- B. Acceptance shall be subject to completion of all work and submittal and approval of full documentation as described above.

END OF SECTION 270553

SECTION 270813 – TESTING COPPER CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. The work covered by this section of the Specifications includes all labor necessary to perform and complete such construction, all materials and equipment incorporated or to be incorporated in such construction and all services, facilities, tools and equipment necessary or used to perform and complete such construction. The work of this section shall include, but is not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Cable testing for copper cables.
  - 2. Providing testing results in accordance with the strictest manufacturer written recommendations.

1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Refer to Section 27 00 00 for general details.

1.3 CODES, STANDARDS AND GUIDELINES

- A. Except as modified by governing codes and by the Contract Documents, comply with the applicable provisions and recommendations in Section 27 00 00.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Refer to Section 27 00 00 for general details.
- B. Submit Manufacturer's Cut Sheets for the following:
  - 1. Any products not specifically listed in the PRODUCTS section shall require a submittal of the manufacturer's cut sheets.
- C. List of test equipment to be used.
- D. Sample of test data to be provided to the campus representative at the completion of testing.
- E. Identity and qualifications of Contractor's personnel who will perform the testing.
- F. Submit the proposed schedule for performing testing at least 2 weeks prior to the start of testing.

1.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Refer to Section 27 05 53 for general details.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Refer to Section 27 00 00 for general details.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CATEGORY 5E UTP CABLE TESTER

- A. Testing for all cables 25 pair or larger are to use a tester that tests 25 pair at a time.
- B. The field tester must meet the requirements of ANSI/TIA/EIA-568.
- C. Make and model at Contractor's discretion.

### 2.2 CATEGORY 6A UTP CABLE TESTER

- A. The field tester must be a Level IV or greater.
- B. The field tester must meet the requirements of ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B.2, Addendum 1
- C. Tester must output test results with Fluke's LinkWare reporting software.
- D. Make and model at Contractor's discretion.

### 2.3 MULTIMETER

- A. Make and model at Contractor's discretion.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 GENERAL

- A. The Contractor shall test, as described below, all metallic cables installed under these specifications.
- B. Visually inspect all cables, cable reels, and shipping cartons to detect cable damage incurred during shipping and transport. Return visibly damaged items to the manufacturer.
- C. Where post-manufacturer test data has been provided by the manufacturer on the reel or shipping carton: submit copies to the campus representative prior to installing cables.
- D. Test fully completed systems only. Piecemeal testing is not acceptable.
- E. Testing shall not be performed until after all hardware is installed and attached, and all labeling and identification has been completed.
- F. Any cable that does not pass all required testing shall be removed, replaced, and retested.
- G. Remove and replace any defective cables from pathways system. Do not abandon cables in place.
- H. The telecommunications representative reserves the right to observe all portions of the testing process.

- I. The telecommunications representative further reserves the right to conduct “Proof of performance testing”, using Contractor equipment and labor, a random re-test of up to ten percent (10%) of the cable plant to confirm documented test results.
- J. Perform all tests as required by the manufacturer in support of the structured cabling system warranty.

### 3.2 GROUNDING & BONDING

- A. All grounding and bonding is to be complete before any system testing is to be attempted.

### 3.3 TESTING

- A. All test results are to be defined as acceptable / unacceptable by the requirements of ANSI/TIA/EIA-568 B.2.
- B. Copper Cables – General Requirements
  - 1. After terminating and splicing the cables. Test all cable pairs for:
    - a. Continuity to the remote end.
    - b. Shorts between any 2 or more conductors or ground
    - c. Transposed pairs
    - d. Reversed Pairs
    - e. Split Pairs
    - f. Crossed Pairs
    - g. Wire map.
    - h. Length.
    - i. Shield Continuity (If Shielded)
    - j. Continuity to Grounding (If Shielded)
  - 2. Using a multimeter, test continuity to ground (TGB or TMGB) for a maximum resistance of 1Ω, see section 27-05-26 for additional detail.
- C. Indoor Riser or OSP Copper Cable
  - 1. After terminating and splicing the cables. Test all cable pairs for:
    - a. DC Loop Resistance for any 2 conductors in the cable
- D. Category 6 Copper Station Cables:
  - 1. Contractor is to perform a three connector permanent link test.
  - 2. After terminating both ends of all 4-pair cables, but before any cross-connects are installed, test these cables for the following:
    - a. Return Loss
    - b. Insertion Loss
    - c. Attenuation



- d. NEXT (near-end crosstalk)
- e. PSNEXT (power sum near-end crosstalk)
- f. FEXT (far end crosstalk)
- g. ACR-F (attenuation to crosstalk ratio)
- h. PSACR-F (power sum attenuation to crosstalk ratio)
- i. Propagation delay
- j. Delay skew

### 3.4 ACCEPTANCE

- A. All test results for Cat 3 cable are to be documented and submitted in Microsoft Excel or .csv format to the campus telecommunications representative within five (5) working days of test completion.
- B. All test results for Cat 6 cable are to be documented and submitted in Fluke LinkWare format to the campus telecommunications representative within five (5) working days of test completion.
- C. Test result shall be recorded per cable and identical copies placed on three removable media devices (CD or DVD) for delivery to the campus project manager and campus telecommunications representative.
- D. Each test report shall contain the following general information:
  - 1. Date of Preparation
  - 2. Date of Test
  - 3. Project Name
  - 4. Contractor's Name
  - 5. Media Type
  - 6. Make, Model and Serial Number of test equipment used
  - 7. Date of Last Calibration
  - 8. Names of Test Crew.
- E. In addition to the results of the specific tests specified, reports shall also include:
  - 1. Cable Number
  - 2. Cable Type
  - 3. Pair or Conductor Count
  - 4. Individual Pair or Conductor Numbers,
  - 5. Results of Each Test for Each Pair or Conductor

6. Total Number of Serviceable Pairs or Conductors in Cable.
  7. Ground Resistance Measurements
- F. Once the testing has been completed and the telecommunications representative is satisfied that all work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, the representative will notify the Contractor and/or project manager in writing or via email.

END OF SECTION 280813

## SECTION 275123 - INTEGRATED CRITICAL COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The drawings and general provisions of the Contract Documents apply to this Section.
- B. Provide a complete Valcom IP talk back paging system for the Waverly Elementary School
- C. Provide new speakers, horns, cabling and the necessary Valcom equipment for all the remaining schools.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This section includes a fully operational IP platform for internal and school communications system incorporating school safety notifications and general communications including but not limited to the following:
  - 1. State of the art IP Technology including the minimum functions listed.
    - a. Two-way internal intercommunications between staff locations and classrooms
    - b. Scheduled bell events
    - c. Emergency announcement that will override any pre-programmed zones assuring that all Emergency/Lockdown etc., are heard at each and every speaker location.
    - d. Capability of prerecording emergency announcements that can simply be activated by a simple Soft Key or via a dedicated push button.
    - e. Atomic Time Synchronization with Class Change Tones utilizing multiple, programmable schedules for each zone.
    - f. Emergency, group, all school and zone live voice paging
    - g. Emergency, group, all school and zone paging for pre-recorded audio – tones, music and voice.
    - h. Web-based user interface.
  - 2. The system shall support minimum of 1000 level priorities which shall be user definable, allowing each end point to place a minimum of 5 different priority calls at the same time.
  - 3. Any authorized administrator shall be able to call from outside the school into any classroom, zone or entire school directly via the School District supplied SIP enabled Telephone Network. This shall allow remote monitoring, call-in annunciation and two-way conversation from outside the facility as well as paging into the system. (Compliance with NEMA Standard SB-40 for emergency communications in K-12 Schools)
  - 4. Authorized system users shall be able to create a minimum of twenty (20) automated sequences with emergency instructions, tones, emails and relay activations, and the ability to replay them.
  - 5. Automated message strings shall be manually initiated from a single-button access on the console, on a SIP connected telephone, a panic button, from the web interface or via interface with third party systems.
  - 6. Paging and two-way intercom features shall be accessible from any system console or SIP connected telephone for each campus.
  - 7. The platform shall synchronize its system time to the network timeserver or a web-based time server.
  - 8. This specification establishes a minimum level of quality, features, and performance for individual components as well as the integrated system.

### 1.3 DEFINITION OF TERMS

- A. Installer(s): Shall refer to the person, persons, or company who or which actually contracts to perform the work specified herein.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product data for each component.
- B. Shop Drawings: Prior to proceeding with the work: Provide detailed equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location of each field connection, and a complete schedule of all equipment and materials with associated manufacturers cuts sheets which are to be used.
  - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Detail wiring for power, signal, and control systems and differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring. Identify terminals to facilitate installation, operation, and maintenance. Include a single-line diagram showing cabling interconnection of components and levels throughout system and impedances.
  - 2. Artwork drawings and lists indicating proposed nameplate nomenclature and arrangements for control panels and plug panels prior to fabrication reflecting equipment used.
  - 3. Each drawing shall have a descriptive title and all sub-parts of each drawing shall be labeled. All drawings shall have the name and locations of the project, Systems Contractor's name in the title block.
  - 4. Details and descriptions of any other aspect of the system, which must differ from the contract documents due to field conditions or equipment, furnished.
- C. FCC Approval: The system shall be approved for direct interconnection to the telephone utility under Part 68 of FCC rules and regulations. Systems, which are not FCC approved or utilize an intermediary device for connection, will not be considered. Provide the FCC registration number of the system being proposed as part of the submittal process.
- D. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of equipment certifying that products furnished comply with specified requirements.
- E. Installer Certificates: Signed by manufacturer certifying that installers comply with requirements.
- F. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that they comply with requirements.
- G. Field Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements. Include record of final matching transformer-tap settings, and signal ground-resistance measurement certified by Installer.
- H. Maintenance Data: For equipment to be included in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1.
  - 1. Record of Owners equipment-programming option decisions.
  - 2. All instructions necessary for proper operation and manufacturer's instructions.
  - 3. "Proof of Performance" information.
  - 4. Manufacturer's maintenance information.
  - 5. Copies of non-proprietary computer programs and system set up disks documenting all programmable features of the installed system.

- I. Record Drawings: Prior to final acceptance, provide three (3) complete sets of drawings indicating all cable numbers and construction details in accordance with the actual system installation. Revise all shop drawings to represent actual installation conditions. These Record Drawings will be used during “Final Acceptance Testing”.
- J. System Training: Submit the following information describing the training programs and system trainers as outlined in paragraph 1.6 of this specification and in accordance with Division 1 specifications.
  - 1. Include with the submittal a preliminary staff development training program in outline form for review and approval by the owner’s representative.
  - 2. Include with the submittal a current copy of the trainer’s certification from the manufacturer that certifies and identifies the trainer(s) who are eligible to provide training and support for the project.
  - 3. Include with the submittal a current copy of trainer’s need’s assessment form which will be reviewed with the owner for the system’s preliminary system programming and configuration.
  - 4. Include with the submittal copies of all documentation used to identify for the owner those participants attending and completing the training programs.
- K. A copy of the manufacturer’s standard statement of warranty proving all equipment provided for the school communications network is covered with the required five-year warranty shall be included with the project submittal. This statement of warranty shall be provided on the manufacturer’s stationary. See paragraph 1.7.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is an authorized representative of equipment manufacturer for both installation and maintenance of equipment required for this Section. Provide the following within thirty (30) days after notification to proceed:
  - 1. Provide a list of installations that the Installer has specifically installed for verification by the Owner. Random installations from other vendors and/or Installers shall not be accepted. The Installer, not its employees, must meet these qualifications.
  - 2. The Installer shall be bondable.
  - 3. The Installer shall demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Owner or his representative that he has:
    - a. Adequate plant and equipment to pursue the work properly and expeditiously.
    - b. Adequate staff and technical experience to implement the work.
    - c. Suitable financial status to meet the obligations of the work.
    - d. Technically capable and factory trained service personnel at a local service facility to provide routine and emergency service for all products used in this project.
- B. Any Contractor, who intends to bid on this work and does not meet the requirements of the “Quality Assurance” paragraph(s), shall employ the services of a “Installer” who does meet the requirements and who shall provide the equipment, make all connections and continuously supervise the installation. A subcontractor so employed as the “Installer” must be acceptable to the Architect/ Engineer. The “Installer” shall be identified within thirty (30) days of notification to proceed for acceptance by the Architect/Engineer

- C. Because the life expectancy of this type of communications structure normally exceeds 10 years, the owner expects continuity from the service provider. If the installing/servicing company has not been an authorized provider of the manufacturers product for it least ten years, the following is required:
  - 1. A list of (2) systems manufacturers of which they currently are authorized service providers where the relationship exceeds ten years
  - 2. A letter from the manufacturer outlining the details of changes in service providers over the last ten years and what actions they will take to ensure continuity of service to the customer.
- D. Each major component of equipment shall have the manufacturers name, address and model number on a plate securely affixed in a conspicuous place. NEMA code ratings, UL Label, or other data that is die-stamped into the surface of the equipment shall be easily visible.
- E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. Comply with NFPA 70
- G. Comply with NEMA Standard SB-40 for Emergency Communications in K-12 schools. .
- H. Comply with UL 60950.

#### 1.6 IN-SERVICE TRAINING

- A. The contractor shall provide and implement a complete and comprehensive staff training program for all administrators, facility staff members, and teachers. This mandatory training program will provide school staff a complete understanding of how to utilize and properly operate all functions
- B. The training program shall be implemented by a staff member/trainer employed by the contractor. The trainer must be factory certified to provide training on their product.
- C. All staff development training is to be coordinated through the owner's designated representative. As training sessions are completed, the trainer will provide the school's administrative staff and school district's staff a document listing all of the staff and faculty members who attended, received, and completed the training program.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Provide a manufacturer's five-year warranty of the school communications network equipment against defects in material and workmanship. This warranty will cover all electronic equipment, as well as wireless clocks, speakers, and call-in switches. If any defects are found within the warranty period, the defective equipment shall be replaced at no cost (equipment only); a one-year warranty shall be provided for labor.
- B. A copy of the manufacturer's standard statement of warranty proving all equipment
- C. provided for the school communications network is covered with the required five-year warranty shall be included with the project submittal. This statement of warranty shall be provided on the manufacturer's stationary. The standard five-year warranty is an important element in establishing a standard in quality. Manufacturers who circumvent the five-year warranty by

offering special “extended warranties” that are not part of their normal published warranty will not be accepted.

- D. Contractor shall respond, excluding weekends and holidays, within 24 hours to any warranty service calls. If equipment cannot be repaired within 24 hours of service visit, the contractor shall provide “loaner” equipment to the facility at no charge.

## 1.8 MANUFACTURERS

- 1. Valcom IP Talk Back Paging System

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

- A. The platform shall utilize state of the art IP Technology for Call-in Notification, School Safety Paging and Evacuation tones, Atomic Time Synchronization, Class Change Tones utilizing multiple, programmable schedules for each zone, Two-way hands-free Internal Intercommunications and Paging, and Program Distribution. The system shall be easy to learn and operate. All standard programming shall be web based and user friendly to allow the system administrator the ability to easily program system features. Systems which depend on second-party systems to accomplish these functions and features shall not be accepted.
- B. Provide complete and satisfactorily operating district/school communications and district/school safety as described herein, using materials and equipment of types, sizes, ratings, and performances as indicated. Use materials and equipment that comply with referenced standards and manufacturers' standard design and construction, in accordance with published product information. Coordinate the features of all materials and equipment so they form an integrated system, with components and interconnections matched for optimum performance of specified functions.
- C. The platform shall be a single electronic system consisting of a minimum of 10 intercom channels for each campus, interface with existing speakers in classrooms and common areas, SIP enabled PBX integration and district wide integration for paging, emergency notifications, calendar scheduling and configuration.
- D. The platform shall be capable to expansion by simple addition of hardware modules.
- E. The platform shall directly connect to the WAN/LAN without the need for a separate server at each school location. Configuration, including bell schedules, calendars, and emergency sequences can remotely be created, changed, stored and downloaded to the system by an authorized user from a browser-based interface.
- F. The platform shall provide the ability to initiate school safety paging announcements, evacuation tones and take cover tones from any telephone or connected web-browser within the facility or outside the facility to any other location within the facility or district.
- G. The platform shall provide the ability to selectively communicate or monitor individual classrooms in emergency situations from any telephone within the facility or outside the facility to any other location within the facility; all communication within the classroom shall be hands free and will not require any interaction by the classroom user.

- H. The platform shall provide classroom users the ability to confirm that they have safely secured their classrooms during lockdown with a single button press.
- I. IP-enabled two-way voice communication shall be available from any VOIP telephone through any speaker in a classroom. This shall allow hands-free communication to any classroom or any individual classroom loudspeaker unit. A programmable pre-announce tone shall sound immediately before the intercom path is opened and a supervisory tone shall continue to sound at regular intervals when speaker monitoring is active, complying fully with all privacy legislation. Pre-announce tone and supervisory tone shall be disabled automatically during emergency events.
- J. The platform shall allow users to configure multiple schedules per school, with a minimum of 500 unique events per schedule, and automatic Daylight Savings time correction. A minimum of 5 schedules may be active on any given day. User shall be able to select from 25 standard included tones as well as unlimited user created and uploaded audio files for class change signaling and messaging. In addition scheduled events shall include relay actions, email notifications, paging exclusions as system configuration changes. The platform shall allow control of the bell schedules via the district WAN/LAN without the need for a separate server at each school location. Bell schedules can remotely be created, changed, stored and assigned to calendar days for the local school by an authorized user from a browser-based interface.

## 2.2 EQUIPMENT AND MATERIAL

### A. Server Software

- 1. Provides district wide paging, bell event scheduling, emergency notification and configuration for entire district.
- 2. Ability to configure system and initiate system features, per school and district wide via web based interface.
- 3. The software has the ability to sync system time to the Atomic Clock Signal or to the school's or districts network time server
- 4. The software will provide a web-browser to deliver district wide emergency paging, pre-recorded messages and tones from any authorized computer in the facility or the district. The software must be capable of automatically notifying district personnel via the WAN of an alarm condition.
- 5. The software can automatically broadcast page emergency instructions via associated system hardware throughout an entire district when an alarm (e.g. lockdown, lockout, security, fire) is initiated via the web-based interface. The emergency instructions are preprogrammed and require no user intervention. The system provides redundant alarm annunciation over intercom/paging speakers and is not meant to replace primary fire alarm or security systems.
- 6. The software can be installed in cloud, virtual or physical server environments.
- 7. The web-based user interface supports secure HTTP browsing.
- 8. The server software supports encryption to ensure secure access.
- 9. The software shall support any combination of VoIP Telecenter Campus Controllers and Telecenter Page Modules for minimum of 1000 facilities.
- 10. The software shall support a minimum of 50,000 IP Speaker modules, district wide.

### B. VoIP Single Controller – with the following features and capabilities:

- 1. Provides call routing for paging and intercom for a all facilities



2. System shall connect to the district provided Telephone Network via a SIP connection.
3. Support a flexible numbering plan allowing two, three, four, five, or six digit extensions.
4. SIP interface to a district provided Telephone Network shall be capable of allowing connected phones to display classroom call-ins, answer internal intercom call-ins, make pages and change priorities of call-ins in progress...
5. Direct Dialing, two-way amplified voice intercom between any provided telephone or admin console and speaker without the use of a press-to-talk or talk-listen switch.
6. Ability to place two levels of call-in from any call in switch
7. The ability to answer intercom call-ins registered at administrative consoles and pre-selected telephones.
8. The ability to automatically escalate incoming call-ins to an alternate telephone or group of telephones if they remain unanswered for a predetermined amount of time.
9. The ability to manually upgrade an intercom call-in to an alternate telephone or group of telephones.
10. The ability for classrooms to “check-in” via push button when they have successfully secured their location during emergency.
11. Administrative console shall display locations that have not checked in to confirm their secured location and provide hands-free audio monitoring and communication to unsecured locations.
12. The controller shall not need direct connection to any classroom via home run or distributed wiring. It shall communicate solely through the IP network.
13. Single button access from any telephone on the system to distribute emergency announcements within the facility to all or select locations equipped with speakers. Emergency announcements originating from any assigned administrative telephone shall have priority over all regular system functions.
14. Ability for administrative consoles and connected phones to selectively monitor audio at any two way speaker during an emergency.
15. Stores a minimum of 48 hours of Bell Event Schedules, all emergency notification sequences as well as facility wide configuration.
16. System has the ability to sync system time to the Atomic Clock Signal or to the school's or districts network time server.
17. System's SIP Interface shall provide:
  - a. Audio paging access from any telephone to any single intercom speaker, zone (group) of intercom/paging speakers, or all speakers/paging horns throughout the entire facility.
  - b. Ability to answer a call-in directed to that SIP extension.
  - c. Ability to upgrade a call-in directed to that SIP extension
  - d. Single button access from any telephone on the system to initiate alarm signals within the facility to all or select locations equipped with speakers. A minimum of 25 separate distinct alarm signals shall be provided. Alarm signals originating from any assigned administrative telephone shall have priority over all regular system functions.
  - e. Ability to initiate a school-wide emergency including lockdown and evacuate sequences.
18. The system will have the ability to utilize a web-browser and a microphone connected to the PC to deliver district wide live emergency paging, pre-recorded messages and tones from any authorized computer in the facility or the district. The system must be capable of automatically notifying district personnel via the WAN of an alarm condition.
19. The system can automatically broadcast page emergency instructions throughout an entire campus when an alarm (e.g. lockdown, lockout, security, fire) is tripped or manually activated. The emergency instructions are preprogrammed and require no user

intervention. The system provides redundant alarm annunciation over intercom/paging speakers and is not meant to replace primary fire alarm or security systems.

C. IP addressable Modules:

1. System shall provide multiple IP addressable modules for intercom, paging and relay activation.
  - a. All modules are POE 802.3af compliant
  - b. All Modules support DHCP.
  - c. All Modules connect to network with a single RJ45 connector
2. IP-addressable Zone Paging Module
  - a. Zone paging module shall connect multiple speakers for district all page, all page, zone paging, bells, audio events and, emergency notification.
  - b. Zone Paging Modules shall be rack and wall mountable.
  - c. Zone Paging modules shall be able to belong to one or more of 100 independent zones for live paging, bells, pre-recorded audio and emergency notification
3. IP Addressable Aux I/O Module
  - a. Aux I/O Module shall have two input contacts and two output contacts.
  - b. Input and output contacts are individually addressable.
  - c. Aux I/O Module shall be wall and rack mountable.
  - d. User can program relays to be activated manually, through an event/bell schedule and during emergency notification.

D. IP Addressable Administrative Console

1. A full color screen with 64 soft keys, 3 line select, volume control, push to talk, speakerphone mode and left/right and up/down scrolling.
2. Audio paging access from any Console to any single intercom speaker, zone (group) of intercom/paging speakers, or all speakers/paging horns throughout the entire school.
3. Programmable soft key access from any console on the system to initiate alarm signals within the school to all or select locations equipped with speakers. A minimum of 25 separate distinct alarm signals shall be provided. Alarm signals originating from any assigned administrative telephone shall have priority over all regular system functions.
4. Programmable soft key access from any console to automatically broadcast page emergency instructions throughout an entire school when an alarm (e.g. lockdown, lockout, security, fire) is tripped or manually activated. The emergency instructions are preprogrammed and require no user intervention. The system provides redundant alarm annunciation over intercom/paging speakers and is not meant to replace primary fire alarm or security systems.
5. Ability to perform intercom to any single IP Addressable Speaker Module.
6. Ability to display 3 call-ins at a time on the screen, with unlimited number of call-ins annunciating and the ability to scroll to view all call-ins.
7. Ability to upgrade a call-in via soft key.
8. Programmable soft key access from any console for activating relays, campus wide.
9. Ability to maintain, along with controller and other IP Modules system functions, including intercom, bells and paging for the local campus in the event of district wide connection loss.

E. Audio Paging/Program Amplifiers (common areas only)

1. Power amplifier(s) shall be provided to provide a minimum of 2 watts of power to all paging speakers, and 15 watts of power to all paging horns.
  2. The maximum load on the paging/program amplifiers shall be 80% of the rated maximum output of the amplifiers.
  3. Audio Paging Amplifiers shall be Bogen 120 watt minimum per channel
  4. Each speaker connected to the amplifier shall be connected to 70V and ½ watt input at the speaker.
- F. Equipment Racks
1. All equipment racks shall provide 44 spaces (77") minimum for mounted system equipment.
  2. All equipment racks shall be multi-rack format ("gang-able") style, bolted together, and open cavity.
  3. All equipment racks will be provided with lockable rear doors.
  4. Equipment rack(s) shall be located in climate-controlled areas/rooms as shown on drawings.
  5. All head-end, distribution, and source equipment, including data and power, shall be located in racks configured as approved by the Engineer.
  6. Rack mounted equipment shall be accessible from front and rear.
  7. All unused rack spaces will be covered with appropriate blank/vent panels
  8. The Equipment Racks shall be Bogen

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with the Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting the performance of the School Communications and School Safety Network.
- B. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. equipment in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Furnish and install all material, devices, components and equipment for a complete operational system.
- C. Impedance and Level Matching: Carefully match input and output impedance's and signal levels at signal interfaces. Provide matching networks where required.
- D. Control Circuit Wiring: Install control circuits in accordance with NFPA 70 and as indicated. Provide number of conductors as recommended by system manufacturer to provide control functions indicated or specified.
- E. All housings are to be located as indicated.

- F. The contractor shall provide necessary transient protection on the AC power feed, all copper station lines leaving or entering the building, and all central office trunks. All protection shall be as recommended by the equipment supplier and referenced to earth ground.
- G. Wiring within Enclosures: Provide adequate length of conductors. Bundle, lace, and train the conductors to terminal points with no excess. Provide and use lacing bars.
- H. Provide physical isolation from speaker-microphone, telephone, line-level wiring, and power wiring. Run in separate raceways, or where exposed or in same enclosure, provide 12 inch minimum separation between conductors to speaker-microphones, telephone wiring and adjacent parallel power. Provide physical separation as recommended by equipment manufacturer for other system conductors.
- I. Identification of Conductors and Cables: Use color coding of conductors and apply wire and cable marking tape to designate wires and cables so all media are identified in coordination with system wiring diagrams.
- J. Weatherproofing: Provide weatherproof enclosures for items to be mounted outdoors or exposed to weather.

### 3.3 GROUNDING

- A. Provide equipment grounding connections for Integrated Electronic Communications Network systems as indicated. Tighten connections to comply with tightening torques specified in UL Standard 486A to assure permanent and effective grounds.
- B. Ground equipment, conductor, and cable shields to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize to the greatest extent possible, ground loops, common mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments. Provide 5-ohm ground at main equipment location. Measure, record, and report ground resistance.
- C. Provide all necessary transient protection on the AC power feed and on all copper station lines leaving or entering the building. Note in system drawings, the type and location of these protection devices as well as all wiring information.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Services: Provide services of a duly factory authorized service representative for this project location to supervise the field assembly and connection of components and the pre-testing, testing, and adjustment of the system.
- B. Inspection: Make observations to verify that units and controls are properly labeled and interconnecting wires and terminals are identified. Provide a list of final tap settings of paging speaker line matching transformers.
- C. Testing: Rectify deficiencies indicated by tests and completely re-test work affected by such deficiencies at Contractor's expense. Verify by the system test that the total system meets the Specifications and complies with applicable standards.

### 3.5 FINAL ACCEPTANCE TESTING

- A. The Final Acceptance Testing shall be provided to the Owner or the Owners designated representative only. Final acceptance testing to any other trade or service provider for the project will not comply with the requirements of this section.
- B. The contractor will provide a Final Acceptance Test record document signed by both the contractor and the Owner or designated Owner's Representative establishing the "In Warranty" date. The warranty period will not commence until the Final Acceptance Test is completed.
- C. Be prepared to verify the performance of any portion of the installation by demonstration, listening and viewing test, and instrumented measurements. Make additional adjustments within the scope of work and which are deemed necessary by the Owner because of the acceptance test.

### 3.6 COMMISSIONING

- A. The contractor shall train the Owner's maintenance personnel in the procedures and schedules involved in operating, troubleshooting, servicing, and preventative maintenance of the system. This training will be in accordance with the training as outlined in Section 1.6, paragraphs A, B & C of these specifications. In addition to the Training Materials provided, the contractor will also furnish Operators Manuals and Users Guides at the time of this training. Schedule training with at least 7-day notice.

### 3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Prior to final acceptance, the contractor shall vacuum and clean all system components and protect them from damage and deterioration. All blank spaces in equipment cabinets will be covered with blank panels. Top and side panels, and all cabinet doors will be installed. All general areas within and around all equipment rack/cabinets in the facility will be swept, vacuumed, and cleaned up. No cabinets will be left unlocked and all cabinet keys will be turned over to the owner or designated owner's representative.

END OF SECTION 275123

SECURITY 28 00 00  
TABLE OF CONTENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL .....	2
1.1 GENERAL .....	2
1.2 REFERENCE TO GENERAL CONDITIONS .....	2
1.3 SUMMARY .....	2
1.4 SUBMITTALS.....	5
1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE .....	8
1.6 WARRANTY.....	11
PART 2 - PRODUCTS .....	14
2.1 SECURITY MONITORING SYSTEM (SMS).....	14
2.2 INTRUSION DETECTION SYSTEM.....	31
2.3 VIDEO MANAGEMENT SYSTEM .....	36
2.4 WIRE AND CABLE .....	45
PART 3 - EXECUTION .....	46
3.1 GENERAL .....	46
3.2 SITE INSPECTION.....	47
3.3 INSTALLATION.....	48
3.4 WIRING TECHNIQUES.....	52
3.5 POWER REQUIREMENTS .....	54
3.6 LABELED DOORS AND FRAMES .....	54
3.7 LABELING.....	54
3.8 TRAINING .....	55
3.9 SYSTEM START-UP .....	56
3.10 SYSTEM ACCEPTANCE .....	56

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 GENERAL

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS, which are hereby made a part of this Section.

### 1.2 REFERENCE TO GENERAL CONDITIONS

- A. The General Conditions shall be considered as forming an integral part of the specifications and shall be carefully examined before bid for any work submitted.
- B. Definitions: In addition to the definitions outlined in the General Conditions, the following definitions shall apply to this Section of the Work:
1. Security System: The Security System shall consist of the upgrade of the existing S2 Security Management System (SMS), Work Stations, Upgrade of the existing Milestone Video Management System (VMS), Access Control, Intrusion Detection System (IDS), Video Intercom Integrated Communications, and all applicable wire and cable, and the functional integration of all subsystems through subsystem interfaces as specified herein.
  2. The project is a multiple phase project. This specification is for the integrated security system(s) for phase 2 and beyond and has indications for other phases. Refer to the division 01 for more information on the phases and implications for the security systems described herein.

### 1.3 SUMMARY

A. Scope of Work

1. The Security contractor shall provide a fully integrated Security System which shall include an upgraded S2 SMS, Upgraded Milestone VMS, IDS, Video Intercom, and applicable wire and cable for this project.
2. The Eastchester union free school district will be under going a major abatement of ceiling, walls and floors throughout all the schools. Coordinate all cabling installation with the school district and the general contractor.
3. Provide temporary pathways for all new cabling for devices where abatement is to take place. The temporary pathway shall consist of a minimum of 4" type metal wiremold with covers and adhere the pathway to the walls that are not affected by the abatement. Provide all fittings for complete pathways. Refer to the abatement drawings and specifications to compile a bill of materials for each building and provide record drawings that show how the pathways are installed.
4. Provide coils of cabling to adjust the camera, access control and intrusion detection system locations after the abatement is complete. The security contractor shall be responsible for installing the cabling into the new ceilings,

- walls etc. Coordinate the final installation with the school district and the general contractor.
5. The electrical contractor shall provide all back boxes, conduit, 120VAC power, and fire alarm relays as indicated on the security drawings.
  6. The Security contractor shall provide all category cabling, terminations at devices and patch panels along with patch cords to connect the cabling to the owners network. This shall be provided for all related IP security devices that is related to the security system.
  7. The Security contractor shall provide coordination with security door hardware. Coordinate door hardware with the Architect and the hardware engineer. Refer to Division 8 for additional scope of work.
  8. The Security contractor shall be responsible for providing complete and working systems.
  9. The hardware contractor is responsible for the installation and testing of a Shelter locking system for all classrooms and assembly area doors. The system shall connect to the S2 Security system via input and output 18/4 shielded cables from the repeaters to the S2 input and output boards. During a lockdown event created from the Shelter lock system the S2 Security system shall lock all access-controlled doors in the S2 Security system. During a lockdown event created by the S2 Security system the Shelter lock system shall lock all doors as part of the Shelter system via an output from the S2 Security system. Provide all cabling, connections to the S2 Security system and coordinate all connections with the Shelter system hardware contractor and the school district. Refer to the division 08 hardware specifications and the hardware drawings for a complete and working system.
  10. Provide video intercom communication from main entry points, as well as any areas designated in the Security drawings. All master stations shall be located at every workstation location and as designated in the Security drawing. Coordinate with Architect/Owner.
  11. All penetrations shall contain UL listed fire stopping as required by code which shall be installed by the security contractor or general contractor/construction manager.
  12. All new door hardware is by the division 8 contractor. Coordinate with the existing hardware for power, connections and activation into the new security panels.
  13. All device cabling shall be routed to the Security Distribution Frames (SDF) as shown on the security riser system drawings as ACS and IDS and part plans on where the security data gathering panels, transformers, and Power Supplies, etc. located therein. The Contractor shall provide copper cabling from the data gathering panels to the doors where indicated devices are new, where devices are indicated as existing the devices and cabling will remain but the cabling shall be terminated on new data gathering panels, cameras within 295' and Game Changer for cameras that are more than 295' from the MDF or IDF's.



14. The existing integrated communications (paging) speakers and wiring shall remain in the High School, Middle School, Ann Hutchinson Elementary school and the Greenville Elementary School and will have additional speakers installed into the existing systems.
15. Waverly Elementary School shall have a new Valcom paging system installed as part of the security contractor's scope. The paging cabling shall be rerouted to a new headend location in Waverly Elementary School. The existing Valcom systems headend for High school, Middle School, Ann Hutchinson Elementary and Greenville Elementary schools shall be upgraded with the necessary equipment to connect the new speakers to the existing system
16. The following are the systems that the school district has in their overall security platform along with integration requirements of the systems.:
  - a. S2 Security Netbox Extreme for the card access and lockdown system
  - b. Bosch Intrusion Detection System for after hours and 24 hour panic alarm notification to police, staff and district office
  - c. Milestone video management system for the surveillance system
  - d. Valcom for the paging and audible communications system.
17. All the above systems shall be integrated so that the alarms, acknowledgements, notifications and response are conveyed to the schools and the district offices in a timely and accurate manner.
18. Integration of the systems shall have the following attributes:
  - a. The S2 Netbox Extreme headend GUI and server shall be capable of activating camera views in the Milestone Video Management System associated with a particular event and store the event with the camera views until an authorized person deletes the event from the system.
  - b. The Milestone Video Management System shall be fully integrated with the S2 Security system for camera callup based on alarm type. The Milestone Video Management system shall provide alarm notifications to the S2 Security system for motion detection based on time schedules. The Milestone System shall be capable of manipulation of the cameras from the S2 Security GUI and provide for all camera views to be displayed on the alarm monitors and/or the camera monitors in each security office. Coordinate all camera views and camera naming convention with the district security Department.
  - c. The S2 Security system shall be fully integrated with the Bosch Intrusion Detection system for alarm notification within the S2 Security system whether the system is in alarm state or not. All points within the Bosch Intrusion Detection system shall communicate their status to the S2 Security system. When alarms are indicated from the Bosch Intrusion Detection system the S2 Security system shall have the alarms stored in the S2 Security system as an event and the associated camera views for any of the Bosch security points shall also be saved as part of the particular event.
  - d. The Valcom paging system shall be capable of announcing event audible sequences based on the type of event. (i.e. if a lock down occurs on the

S2 security system the Valcom paging system shall announce that a lock down is initialized and give detailed information about the lock down to the staff at the school and the district office). Coordinate all automated audible event notifications with the district security department

19. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and will be performed under the designated Sections. Security contractor to coordinate with the following. Refer to each trade construction documents for additional scope of work:

- a. Division 27 Sections – TELECOMMUNICATIONS
- b. Division 8 – OPENINGS
- c. Division 11 Sections – VEHICLE AND PEDESTRIAN EQUIPMENT
- d. Division 25 – INTEGRATED AUTOMATION
- e. Division 26 - -ELECTRICAL

- B. REFERENCES: The security system shall be installed in accordance with all applicable national, state and local codes including but not limited to the most recent editions of the following:

- 1. New York Building Code
- 2. National Fire Protection Association, 2015 (NFPA 70)
- 3. National Fire Protection Association Life Safety Code, 2015 (NFPA 101)
- 4. Building Officials & Code Administrators International, Inc. (BOCA) National Building Code
- 5. Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)
- 6. Underwriters Laboratories (UL) Applicable Standards for Safety
- 7. Underwriters Laboratories (UL) Applicable Standards for Proprietary Security Systems
- 8. Uniform Building Code, 2015 (UBC)
- 9. Open network video interface forum (ONVIF) standards and compliance
- 10. International Building Code (IBC), 2015
- 11. ANSI/BICSI 005-2016 Electronic Safety and Security Design and Implementation

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. General Description and Requirements

1. Submit Submittals in accordance with the construction schedule.
  2. Submittals shall consist of Product Data Sheets with Part Numbers Highlighted, Shop Drawings which shall include Symbols Lists, Floor Plans, Security Room Part Plans, Wall Field Elevations, Equipment Rack elevations, Component Installation Details, and Detail Riser diagrams for each system, Samples as requested, all Required State Licenses for both the contracting corporation, and their employees, Manufacturer's Certifications (2 minimum) and a detailed completion schedule. Partial submittals will not be accepted.
  3. No portion of the Work shall commence nor shall any equipment be procured until the Pre-fabrication Submittals have been approved.
  4. Submittals shall be accompanied by a letter of transmittal identifying the name of the Project, Contractor's name, date submitted for review, and a list of items transmitted.
- B. Samples
1. The Contractor shall submit samples of any equipment components upon request of the Architect.
- C. Record Documentation
1. Prior to any final acceptance testing, submit one set of preliminary (draft) record drawings to the Architect. The preliminary record drawings are to be used by the Engineer to conduct the system final test.
  2. Upon final acceptance of the work, the Contractor shall submit 3 Hard copies, and 1 soft copy of the record documentation within 30 days from the date of final acceptance to the Architect/Owner.
  3. Record documentation shall include all information required in the submittals but revised to reflect as installed conditions. Record documentation shall include the following:
    - a. Operation and maintenance manuals for all devices, equipment and software modules.
    - b. Floor plan drawings indicating device locations with device legends indicating manufacturers and model numbers for each device.
    - c. Floor plan drawings indicating conduit and wire routing and junction box locations. Wire routing shall include cable identification and terminal strip numbers.
    - d. Mounting details for all equipment and hardware.
    - e. Functional block diagrams for each system.
    - f. Wiring details showing rack elevations, equipment wiring, terminations and inter-rack wiring.

- g. Wiring diagrams for all custom circuitry.
  - h. Wiring diagrams for each Data Gathering Panel.
  - i. Point to point wiring diagrams.
  - j. Layout details for each riser location, including security panels, power supplies, junction boxes, conduit and any other security-related equipment located in the riser.
- 4. All record documents shall be supplied in both hard copy and in an electronic format as required by the Project at time of submittal.
- 5. Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Manuals
  - a. Operation and Maintenance Manuals shall include, as a minimum, the following:
    - 1) Operational description of each subsystem.
    - 2) Detailed programming descriptions for each subsystem, including step-by-step procedures with illustrations identifying how computer screens will appear after each entry.
    - 3) Explanations of subsystem interrelationships. Explanations shall include operations of each subsystem and operations unique to the interfaces between each of the subsystems and possible conflicts that may occur with the interfaces. Each explanation shall be identified, tagged, bound and indexed into a single binder.
    - 4) Electrical schematics for each piece of equipment specified.
    - 5) Power-up and power-down procedures for each subsystem.
    - 6) Description of all diagnostic procedures.
    - 7) A menu tree for each subsystem. The tree shall provide a graphical flow of commands within the menu system.
    - 8) Setup procedures for each component of the subsystems.
    - 9) A list of manufacturers, their local representatives and Integrators that have performed Work on the Project. The list shall include contact names, phone numbers and addresses for each.
    - 10) Installation and service manuals for each piece of equipment.
    - 11) Maintenance schedules for all installed components. Schedules shall include inspections and preventative maintenance schedules, and documentation of all repaired or replaced equipment.

- b. Operation and Maintenance Manuals shall include a separate section for each software program incorporated into the Project. The software section shall include, at a minimum, the following information:
  - 1) Definitions of all software related terms and functions.
  - 2) Description of required sequences.
  - 3) Directory of all disk files.
  - 4) Description of all communications protocols, including data formats, command characters, and a sample of each type of data transfer.
  - 5) Instructions for manufacturer supplied report generation with illustrations showing what reports should look like and screen-by-screen illustrations for each entry made.
  - 6) Instructions for custom report generation.
  - 7) Database format and data entry requirements.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Contractor Qualifications: The Bidder shall provide information in the proposal to demonstrate compliance with these requirements.
  - 1. Work specified herein shall be the responsibility of a single electronic security systems integration contractor.
  - 2. The security contractor shall have local in-house engineering and project management capabilities consistent with the requirements of the Work. The Contractor shall provide a team supervised by a full-time on-site foreman who is to be present at all times that Work is actively in progress. The Contractor shall provide a team managed by a full-time project manager who is to be present at all construction meetings and available to answer all questions by the Architect or the construction team.
  - 3. By submitting a Bid, the Contractor thereby certifies that it is qualified in all areas pertaining to, either directly or indirectly, the Work. In the event the Contractor becomes unable to complete the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, or the satisfaction of the Owner or its representatives, due to a lack of understanding of equipment, systems or services required by the Contract Documents, it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to retain the services of the applicable manufacturers' representatives to expeditiously complete the Work in accordance with the construction schedule at no additional cost.
  - 4. The Contractor shall maintain, or establish and maintain, a fully staffed local office including a service center capable of providing warranty and service to the Security System for the Project. The Contractor shall staff the service center with factory trained technicians and adequately equip the office to provide emergency service within 4 hours after being called, 24 hours per day, whether or not the Owner elects to purchase a maintenance contract from the Contractor.

5. The Contractor shall provide factory-certified technicians with the latest and most advanced training on the specified SMS/VMS/IDS/MNS and Video Intercom software/hardware, workstations and data gathering panels. These certified employees shall provide the installation of, and commission of, the Work. All installing personnel shall also be licensed as required by local and/or state jurisdictions. The Contractor shall provide all licensing documentation as part of the submittal process.
6. The Contractor shall ensure compliance with, and have a thorough understanding of, all local codes and contract conditions pertaining to this Project.
7. The Security contractor shall maintain an inventory of spare parts in house and other items critical to system operation and as necessary to meet the emergency service requirements of this Project within the local service center. A current inventory list shall be provided for within the submittal. Spare parts shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
  - a. SMS
    - 1) Data Gathering Panel (including all boards)
    - 2) Door controllers
    - 3) Input/output boards
    - 4) Elevator control input and output boards
    - 5) Card readers
    - 6) Door position switches
    - 7) Request-to-exit motion sensors
    - 8) Power supplies
  - b. VMS System
    - 1) Cameras
    - 2) Mega pixel dome cameras
    - 3) Monitors
    - 4) Lenses
    - 5) NVR
    - 6) Video transmitters and receivers
    - 7) Power supplies
  - c. IDS System

- 1) Panels
- 2) Extender panels
- 3) Keypads
- 4) Motion detectors
- 5) DPDT magnetic door contacts
- 6) Network communications
- 7) Cellular communications

B. Product Standards

1. All materials (except those existing materials or materials provided by other Sections and specified for incorporation in the completed work) included in the completed security system installation shall be new, not refurbished and shall fully comply with the latest published specifications of the manufacturer.
2. Unless otherwise specified, all components included in the completed security system shall be standard, unmodified production models.
3. Equipment that is installed, maintained, serviced, programmed, etc. by a single representative due to proprietary equipment and/or manufacturer region exclusive agreements shall not be acceptable. All equipment proposed by the Contractor shall be available to at least, three dealer/installer representatives, minimum, within a 50 mile radius of the Project site.
4. All equipment, components and materials provided by the Contractor shall, in every respect, meet or exceed the performance characteristics and technical specifications for referenced components.
5. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to provide complete and detailed technical information for all equipment, components and materials. In the event that submitted technical information is not sufficient to permit the Engineer to readily confirm that proposed equipment, components and materials will meet or exceed the performance and technical specifications, the proposed equipment, components or materials shall be rejected. The Engineer shall determine the final decision as to whether proposed equipment, components and materials are acceptable. In no case shall acceptance by the Owner of proposed equipment, components and materials relieve the Contractor of his responsibility to produce completed systems, which comply with these specifications.
6. Within the technical specifications for the system, certain manufacturers may be specified. These manufacturers are listed for example purposes only.
7. Provide at the time of installation the latest version of all equipment and software.
8. The systems (including software, hardware and firmware) proposed for this project shall have been installed in at least five projects of similar size and nature and shall have been in beneficial use for at least six months prior to submission

of the bid proposal. Provide a compliance statement from each manufacturer along with references.

9. All exterior devices shall be sealed and protected against all weather conditions including heat, cold, moisture, dust, and sand.
10. As Part of the Submittal process, the Security Contractor shall provide unit pricing for all components, hourly labor rate for all parties involved in the project (foreman, installer, PM), and installation costs for each component. Assume a 300ft run for each. Installation cost shall be broken out by materials and labor.

#### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Provide a two-year warranty on the Work. If, within the two years after the date of final acceptance of the Work or within such longer period of time as may be prescribed by law, or by the terms of any applicable special warranty required by the Contract Documents or provided by a manufacturer, any of the Work or equipment is found to be defective or not in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall correct it promptly including all parts and labor after receipt of notice from the Owner to do so unless the Owner has previously given the Contractor a written acceptance of such non-conforming condition. This obligation shall survive termination of the Contract. The Owner will give such notice promptly after discovery of the condition.
- B. Nothing contained in the Contract Documents shall be construed to establish a shorter period of limitation with respect to any other obligation that the Contractor might have under the Law, the Contract Documents, or any manufacturer's warranty. The establishment of the time period of one
- C.
  1. During the Warranty period, the Contractor shall, upon receipt of a request for service form the Owner, deploy service personnel to the Owner's premises within four hours (After hours time included) to initiate corrective action.
  2. All Warranty service and repair work shall be performed by personnel who have been trained, certified and are experienced in the operation and maintenance of the installed system(s).
    - a. Warranty service shall include the replacement of all parts and/or components as required to restore normal system operation. In the event that system parts or components must be removed for repair, it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to furnish and install temporary parts and/or components as required to restore normal system operation until the repaired parts or components can be repaired and re-installed.
    - b. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to maintain an inventory of spare parts or to arrange for manufacturer parts support as required to ensure correction of all critical component failures or malfunctions within 48 hours of the Owner's request for service. Critical parts shall be defined as those, which govern or affect the normal operation of more than one field device.



- c. The Contractor's Warranty obligation shall include correction of any software/firmware defects, which may be identified during the Warranty period. Any failure of the software/firmware to perform as specified by the software/firmware manufacturer at the time of final acceptance shall be defined as a software/firmware error.
  - d. In the event that the Contractor determines and demonstrates to the Owner's sole satisfaction that service or repairs are required as a result of misuse, abuse or abnormal wear and tear, the Contractor shall be compensated for such service or repairs as agreed upon by the Contractor and Owner. Similarly, such compensation to the Contractor shall apply in the event that repairs are required for devices and equipment not provided by the Contractor but incorporated in the completed systems.
  - e. Immediately following the completion of a Warranty repair or service call, the Contractor's service personnel shall submit a written report to the Owner which details the service work performed, the cause of the trouble, and any outstanding work which is required to restore complete and normal operation.
- D. Perform preventative maintenance during the warranty period. Submit a list of items to be included in the preventative maintenance program in the submittal process. The list shall include maintenance to each item, the frequency of such maintenance, and the amount of time to be spent on each item for maintenance. Preventative maintenance shall include, but not be limited to, the following.
  - 1. Annual Preventative Maintenance: Test and adjust system sensors.
  - 2. Semi-Annual Preventive Maintenance
    - a. Inspect and clean all Data Gathering Panels.
    - b. Inspect, test, and clean power supplies. Replace batteries as necessary.
    - c. Inspect, clean and vacuum all equipment racks.
    - d. Test and adjust all Cameras pan, tilt, zoom, and preset functions. Inspect, and adjust VMS Workstation views and test all network video servers/recorders.
  - 3. Quarterly Preventive Maintenance
    - a. Inspect and clean the printers, and system workstations. Perform hardware, firmware, software, and disk drive maintenance as required to ensure optimum performance.
    - b. Run SMS system diagnostics and perform file maintenance to insure optimal performance.
    - c. Clean all camera housing view panels.
    - d. Visually observe all camera and monitor displays and adjust as needed for optimal performance.

- e. Provide Security System Software updates as required.
- E. Include a manufacturer's software support agreement as part of the Warranty. This agreement shall include all software updates, revisions, telephone service assistance and training for any changes in operation.
- F. Provide written notice to the Owner documenting any work performed during the warranty period, including any preventative maintenance work performed.
- G. Provide loaner equipment for any equipment not field repairable. Such loaner equipment shall be in working order and the functional and technical equivalent of the item replaced.
- H. Provide loaner equipment that is fully compatible and fully functions with all associated equipment.
- I. Loaner equipment for system components (example: badge printer, cameras, network video servers etc.) that must be shipped from the manufacture or distributor shall be on site and operational within 48 hours of the component failure. Furnish lists of equipment that will require shipment from the manufacturer or distributor and lead times associated with that equipment.
- J. Repair or Replacement Service
  - 1. Repair or replacement service during the warranty period shall be performed in accordance with the following:
    - a. Major system components including, but not limited to, the SMS system workstations, data gathering panels (Data Gathering Panels, Network Video Recorders): 7 days, 24 hour, 2 hour response time.
    - b. All other components and devices: 7 days, 24 hour, 4 hour response time.
- K. If the Contractor is unable to restore system operation during the warranty period within one business day of a system failure, the Owner reserves the right to require the Contractor to provide on-site manufacturer's service technicians at no additional cost.
- L. The Owner reserves the right to expand or add to the system during the warranty period using firm(s) other than the Contractor for such expansion without affecting the Contractor's responsibilities, provided that the expansion is done by a firm which is an authorized dealer or agent for the equipment or system being expanded.
- M. Provide on-line software maintenance and support during the warranty period including all software and hardware updates for all provided equipment. It is up to the contractor to inform the building management about all updates during the warranty period.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SECURITY MONITORING SYSTEM (SMS)

#### A. Existing System Architecture

##### 1. General

- a. The Security Monitoring System (SMS) consists of rack mounted SMS Server, Client software, printers, enrollment readers and card readers, Reader Boards, I/O Boards, and Intelligent IP controllers, as indicated on the drawings. The system workstations shall be moved to the new security offices in each school. Refer to the architectural drawings for the phasing of the security offices for each school.
- b. The SMS workstations communicate with the owners SMS file server over an Owner provided enterprise network. Interface with communications outlets located in the telecommunications equipment rooms at each school, and the security rooms at each school and the district offices, and other designated areas. Configure all SMS workstations, existing servers and ancillary equipment. Coordinate with the Owner for naming conventions, IP address programming, and switch port connections to the network.
- c. The SMS is a part of a server database and incorporate active directory user authentication. Data Gathering Panels shall provide an intelligent interface between point monitoring and access control devices, and the SMS file server / system workstations. Data Gathering Panels shall collect point monitoring and access control messages from field devices, multiplex and transmit the data to the SMS file server / system workstations.
- d. All SMS network devices shall synchronize their system time with the owner's network time source. SMS software shall not impede use of the NTP or SNTP protocols, MD5 authentication algorithm or the operating system's NET TIME command.

##### 2. System Workstations

- a. All operator interface with the SMS shall be through system workstations. System workstation display terminals shall display real-time SMS messages, data files and records, live video images, operator instructions, data programming information and custom graphic illustrations. Provide a workstation that meets the requirements from the SMS manufacturer. The system workstation keyboard and mouse shall provide for entry of operator commands and acknowledgments, and SMS databases queries.
- b. The Security rooms at each school: (1) new Workstation in this location at each school shall support all SMS functions including video pull up. Also, a new Security Workstation at the district office shall include an enrollment reader, and access to the existing Visitor/Facility

Management software. The workstations shall interface the existing SMS server over the Owner LAN via Web Browser interface. Security contractor shall provide two 22" 1080P monitors for each workstation. Provide the most current video card recommended by the VMS manufacturer for the monitors

- c. The Security contractor shall provide a 900VA ultra-compact line interactive UPS for each workstation shown on the security drawings. UPS shall provide surge protect of the 12 battery backup outlets. Input power shall be a NEMA 5-15P. The Unit shall be no larger than 5.5x14.5x9.8, and is a desktop form factor.

3. Network Switch

- a. Interface to Owner-provided network switch as indicated on the Drawings.
- b. Edge Network switch shall provide 30 watts across all ports
- c. Edge Network switch shall support both in IPv4 and IPv6
- d. Edge Network switch shall be 24 or 48 port
- e. Edge Network switch shall have a minimum of 4 SFP ports that support a 10Gbps uplink
- f. Edge Network switch shall support redundant power supplies
- g. Edge Network configuration shall be done with a GUI interface
- h. Edge Network switch shall support IEEE 802.11x
- i. Edge network switch shall allow for stacking of up to 8 network switches of same type
- j. Edge network switch shall support Audio Video Bridging (AVB)
- k. Edge Network switch shall support up to 4092 VLAN/VMANS
- l. Edge, and core network switch shall support IEEE 802.3ab, IEEE 802.3ae, IEEE 802.3af, IEEE 802.3at, IEEE 802.3az, IEEE 802.3u, IEEE 802.3z
- m. Core Network Switch 10Gbps with a total overhead of 40Gbps per port and a minimum of 16 SFP+ ports.
- n. GBICS for core and edge switching shall support LC connector and OM4 fiber cabling.
- o. Security contractor shall coordinate with the district IT for the placement of patch panels for network interfacing devices in the telecommunications rooms.

4. Data Gathering Panels (Data Gathering Panels)
  - a. The Data Gathering Panels shall collect alarm input point status and access control data, multiplex the information, and transmit that data back to the SMS file server / system workstations.
  - b. The Data Gathering Panel shall incorporate Flash EPROM to allow for efficient firmware update downloads from the system software and/or remotely from the SMS manufacturer.
  - c. The Data Gathering Panels shall receive and execute instructions issued automatically or manually from the SMS file server / system workstation.
  - d. The Data Gathering Panels shall have memory and logic circuits as required to ensure continued operation of connected devices without degradation in system security in the event that communications with the SMS file server is interrupted.
  - e. All system Data Gathering Panels shall communicate with the SMS file server / system workstations via the owner's data network. Provide all equipment necessary to facilitate communications.
  - f. The Data Gathering Panel shall provide the following:
    - 1) Supervised alarm inputs to monitor the status of alarm circuits and report the status information to the SMS file server.
    - 2) Control relay outputs for controlling devices by remote command from the SMS file server and system workstation, through time programming or on alarm point activation.
    - 3) Flash EPROM technology and shall provide for remote update of Data Gathering Panel firmware.
    - 4) Activation of door control relay output and shunting of the intrusion alarm upon verification of a card authorization or request-to-exit.
    - 5) Adjustable door control relay activation time through SMS software from 1 to 30 seconds on an individual card reader basis. The door shall automatically relock upon closure.
    - 6) An intrusion alarm indication on the SMS if the card reader controlled door is opened without an authorized card use or request to exit.
    - 7) A door prop alarm indication if the card reader controlled door is held open past an adjustable time period after an authorized card use or request to exit. The door prop time delay shall be adjustable through SMS software from 1 to 60 seconds on an individual card reader basis.

- 8) A wiring chart delineating wire routings, labeling, and all termination points. The chart shall be produced by the Contractor, laminated and housed in a clear plastic sleeve affixed to the inside of the enclosure cover.
    - 9) A tamper switch to sense the removal or opening of the enclosure cover.
  - g. Provide one spare card reader input point and 20 percent spare alarm input points and output points after all specified points are initially connected. Each Data Gathering Panel shall support a minimum of sixteen card readers. Sufficient plug in modules shall be provided to accommodate only the number of card readers initially installed, as well as one spare input per Data Gathering Panel.
  - h. Provide interface between the data gathering panels and the owner's network.
  - i. Provide interface between the data gathering panels and the fire alarm system for fail-safe operation of doors
  - j. Provide interface between the data gathering panels and the lighting system for light control at the detention areas.
5. Card Reader Controlled Doors
- a. Provide card reader, door control panel that is capable of system workstation and time schedule control of electric locking mechanisms.
  - b. Provide one normally closed DPDT magnetic door position switch for each leaf of card reader controlled doors to monitor door prop, intrusion alarms and open/closed status. In addition, the SMS shall monitor the card reader for invalid card use. The SMS shall annunciate each condition individually.
  - c. The SMS shall record a valid access for the cardholder only when the door opens after a valid card read. The SMS shall record a no entry access if the door does not open after a valid card read.
6. Enrollment Card Reader
- a. Provide USB enrollment card reader at the district office workstation.
  - b. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - 1) RFideas pcProx Plus
    - 2) Or approved equal
7. Request-to-Exit Devices
- a. Request To Exit (REX) Motion Sensors

- 1) Provide REX motion sensors for detecting authorized exits through card reader controlled doors as indicated on the Security Device Drawings.
  - 2) Wire the REX motion sensor to the manufacturer's recommended input of the Data Gathering Panel or door controller. Also Rex shall be wired for 4-state Supervision and report circuit shorted, switch closed, switch open, open circuit.
  - 3) For doors equipped with electromagnetic locks, activation of the REX motion sensor shall release the electric locking mechanism and shall shunt the intrusion alarm output.
  - 4) For doors equipped with electric locking mechanisms that are free exiting at all times (e.g. mortise electric locks, electric strikes, etc.), the REX motion sensor shall only shunt the intrusion alarm output and shall not unlock the lock. Use of door control buttons and graphics shall not affect the request to exit motion sensor operation for doors with free egress hardware.
  - 5) REX motion sensors shall be labeled to meet local codes.
  - 6) REX Motion Sensor must be dual technology, and be line of sight adjustable.
  - 7) Refer to Division 8 construction documents, and security drawings for locations.
  - 8) Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a) Bosch DS160
    - b) Tyco T.Rex-LT-NL
    - c) Integrlogix RCR-REX-W
- b. Request-to-Exit Pushbutton
- 1) Provide a UL Listed request-to-exit (REX) pushbuttons as indicated on the Security Device Drawings for unlocking card reader controlled doors with electromagnetic locks, and as required.
  - 2) Wire the REX pushbuttons to the REX input of the associated Data Gathering Panel or door controller. Activation of the REX pushbutton shall release the lock and shall shunt the door alarm.
  - 3) The REX pushbutton shall contain an adjustable time delay relay for door unlock and shall be intrinsically fail-safe in order to release the door(s) in the event of a failure of the exit control circuitry within the Data Gathering Panel. It shall also be pneumatic, and require no additional power.
  - 4) Refer to Division 8 construction documents, and security drawings for locations.

- 5) Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a) Dortronics W5286-P23DAXE1
  - b) Or approved equal
- 8. Electric Locking Mechanisms
  - a. Refer to Division 8 construction Documents for required electric locking types. All door hardware is specified by Division 8.
  - b. Electric locks to be provided and installed by division 8 contractor.
  - c. Electrical Contractor to provide 120VAC power local, and Fire relay each door as indicated in the construction documents.
  - d. Security contractor to provide cabling and make final connections to electric locking mechanisms and power transfer devices provided by the hardware contractor as indicated on the Security Device Drawings.
  - e. Provide fail-safe operation of electric locking mechanisms as required by local codes.
  - f. Provide cabling from device to power supplies for all electric locking mechanisms. Fail-safe locking devices shall unlock automatically under the following conditions:
    - 1) Any building fire alarm
    - 2) Loss of building power
    - 3) Failure of the power supply
  - g. Fail-secure locks shall remain operational during a fire alarm condition or power failure.
- 9. Automatic openers
  - a. Refer to Division 8 construction documents for required locations, and types.
  - b. Electrical Contractor to provide 120VAC for all auto openers.
  - c. Auto openers to be provided and installed by division 8 contractor.
  - d. Security contractor to provide cabling and make final connections to the auto openers, and interface with the access control system as indicated on the Security Device Drawings.
- 10. Power Supplies
  - a. Provide power supplies for all SMS equipment, Data Gathering Panels, as specified herein.



- b. Provide independent, fused outputs for each device connected to the power supply.
  - c. For Locks, provide a multi-output access power controller with independent fused relay outputs and Fire Relay interface.
  - d. All power supplies to contain two 12AH batteries for backup.
  - e. Monitor power fail alarms for each location within the SMS.
  - f. All 12/24VDC Power Supplies must be UL listed.
  - g. All 120VAC for 12/24DVC power supplies must be wired directly in the enclosure in order to maintain UL listing. Refer to manufacturer's guidelines.
  - h. Refer to Division 8 construction documents for lock power requirements.
11. Magnetic contact (door position switches):
- a. Provide Double Pull Double Throw position switch to monitor the open/closed status of doors as indicated on the Security Device Drawings.
  - b. Magnetic contact (door position switches): Provide normally closed door position switches to monitor the open/closed status of doors and for camera callup whether the callup is for a door held open, door forced or the camera activation when a door is closed and the contact is made.
  - c. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - 1) Interlogix 1076
    - 2) Or approved equal
12. Tamper Switches
- a. Provide normally closed tamper switches to monitor the secure status of all Security and power related enclosures
  - b. Include the number of tamper switches in the total alarm input figures.
  - c. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - 1) Interlogix 3012-N
    - 2) Or approved Equal
13. Blue Light Indicators
- a. Provide blue light indicators at all card reader-controlled doors to indicate a lockdown has been implemented at the school
  - b. A 12 LED, Hyper-Efficient, High Intensity, Waterproof Light, wall mount.
  - c. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- 1) Beast beam Alert Model 4812
- 2) Or approved Equal

14. Fire Alarm System

- a. Electrical Contractor to Monitor normally closed fire alarm contacts from the Fire Alarm System.
- b. Electrical Contractor to provide all required fire alarm relays at each Security head end location and as required by the division 8 construction documents and security drawings.
- c. Security Contractor to Interface with a normally closed contact from the Fire Alarm Relay to the door power supply. This is to provide for automatic unlocking of fail-safe locks during a fire alarm.
- d. Security Contractor to provide UL Listed Fire Alarm interface at each lock power location.
- e. Security Contractor to provide all cable and connections as required to interface the terminals with the SMS and fail-safe locks. The Fire Alarm System Contractor will provide cable and connections as required from the interface terminal cabinet to the Fire Alarm System.

15. Video Management System

- a. Provide full SMS integration of the Video Management System. This integration shall include the following:
  - 1) Camera call up for all SMS alarms
  - 2) Video motion detection within the SMS interface.
  - 3) Camera call up of all card related activity.
  - 4) Call up of recorded video
  - 5) Export of alarms to VMS
  - 6) Graphical map location with video of all events

16. Graphical Maps at the workstations

- a. The SMS software shall provide graphical maps that depict SMS status in real time. Icons placed on graphical backgrounds shall be used to indicate the real time status of each SMS connection including card reader inputs, alarm inputs, control point outputs, cameras, communication connections, etc.
- b. Device icons shall graphically differentiate normal, alarm, trouble, time program shunt, manual shunt, and other status conditions provided by the SMS by enhancement, color change, and/or flashing.
- c. Graphical maps shall allow the user to call up a graphic displaying the location of a selected alarm or control function. The device icon shall graphically differentiate each monitored status by enhancement, color change and/or flashing.

- d. Graphical maps shall allow assignment of a minimum of three displays/screens to each alarm point, each varying in scale, icon size and icon location. When sequencing to a larger scale graphic/screen (zooming in), each graphic/screen shall incorporate a key plan indicating what section of the overall plan is being enlarged. Full graphic display shall occur within one second of request by the operator or alarm condition.
- e. Graphical maps shall support import of graphics generated by other drawing programs.
- f. Map graphics quality shall be of comparable quality and detail to the Security Device Drawings and shall illustrate all partitions, doors and other major built-in structures.

17. Access Control

- a. The SMS software shall provide the following access control functions at the workstations:
  - 1) Card reader and remote control of doors as indicated in the Security Device Drawings.
  - 2) Control point outputs for lock power control activated by card reader, file server / system workstation keyboard or time schedule.
  - 3) Control of access through card reader controlled devices based on the card user's access levels. An access level shall define a door or group of doors accessible by a card holder during a certain time period. Time periods shall include both authorized days and hours, and shall include independent holiday schedules. The SMS shall allow each card holder to have multiple access levels.
  - 4) Automatic card invalidation after a programmable time period.
  - 5) Alarm indication at the file server / system workstation for unauthorized reader use attempts. Unauthorized reader use alarms shall be user selectable on a reader by reader basis.
  - 6) System workstation display and event printing of card use (all transactions or violations only; by card and/or by card reader).
  - 7) Momentary, programmable time, or maintained release of card reader controlled door locks via the system workstation keyboard.
  - 8) Monitoring of the status of card reader controlled doors against intrusion or door propping.
  - 9) Selective Card Reader and Card Holder Tracking

- a) Selective card holder tracking by individual cards or groups of cards (range of card numbers, department, access levels, etc.).
    - b) Selective card reader tracking by individual card reader or groups of card readers.
  - 10) Valid Entry/No Access Events
    - a) When a card holder passes through a protected door after a valid card read, the SMS shall record a "valid entry" event in history for the card holder.
    - b) When a card holder does not pass through a protected door after a valid card read, the SMS shall record a "no access" event in history for the card holder.
  - b. The system shall have the capability of displaying a stored video image on any workstation within the system for the purposes of verification.
  - c. The system shall provide for automatic call up and display of stored images on any system workstation during alarm.
  - d. The system shall provide for automatic call up and display of stored images on any system workstation during a card read. The system shall allow for automatic display on valid card read, invalid card read, or both. The automatic call up and display shall be individually programmable for each workstation and card reader to call up on a valid card read, an invalid card read, or both.
  - e. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - 1) S2 Security Netbox Extreme
18. Point Monitoring and Control Outputs
- a. The SMS shall provide for the following point monitoring functions:
    - 1) User programming of the following data for each alarm input point:
      - a) Point number
      - b) Point priority group
      - c) Point description
      - d) Point normal and abnormal status descriptions (SECURE, TROUBLE, ALARM, SHUNTED, BYPASSED, etc.)

- e) Operator instructions to be displayed upon acknowledgment of the alarm (Provide a minimum of one page of programmable text)
- 2) Queuing of multiple alarms in their order of priority. Highest priority alarms shall annunciate from the top of the alarm queue and be displayed downward in order of decreasing priority. Coordinate with the Owner to develop priorities for each type of SMS alarm. Default priorities shall be defined as follows (highest to lowest):
  - a) Duress buttons
  - b) Fire alarms
  - c) Building perimeter devices
  - d) Interior perimeter devices
  - e) Video motion detectors
  - f) Tamper switches
  - g) Video loss
  - h) Device communication failure
  - i) Power supply alarms
- 3) Automatic and manual software routing of all alarm input points in the SMS for selective reporting at certain system workstations during certain time periods and at other system workstations during other time periods. Coordinate these requirements fully with the Owner prior to system programming.
- 4) "Transparent" alarms. These points, used to initiate another event within the SMS, shall not be annunciated at the system workstation.
- 5) User programming of the following data for each control output point:
  - a) Point number
  - b) Point activation (alarm point, time schedule or real time)
  - c) Maintained or momentary output
  - d) Normally open or normally closed output
- 6) Time programmable and real time arming and disarming of all alarm input points and all control output points.

- b. Alarm reporting shall take precedence over all other SMS/workstation functions. The system workstation shall visually and audibly annunciate that an alarm condition exists, independent of any other current system workstation activity. The transaction time shall not be more than one second from the time the alarm condition is initiated until it is reported on the system workstation. Response to an alarm condition shall under no circumstance require the operator to log out of one SMS application and log into another for alarm response. The use of a hot key shall be the maximum acceptable operator action.
- c. Upon operator acknowledgment of an alarm, the system workstation shall display up to one page of text for each alarm. The first line shall be the alarm message as described above and the additional space shall be used for an Owner programmable response message or an operator instruction list unique to each alarm point. The SMS shall allow the user to move freely between pages of text.
- d. The SMS shall require an operator to enter a response / resolution / acknowledgment message for the event before the event is cleared from the system workstation screen. The SMS shall allow the Owner to require an acknowledgment message on an individual alarm point basis.

19. Database Partitioning

- a. The SMS software database shall provide for database partitioning by password to allow segregation of various areas of the facility and other facilities. Coordinate with the Owner to determine the initial partitioning requirements.
- b. Partitioning shall permit access to the database information by the Owner only based on password level and/or classification.
- c. Configure the SMS software such that the Owner may or may not, at the Owner's discretion, view all or some portions of the partitioned database based on password level and/or classification.
- d. Partitioning of the card holder database shall restrict access to card programming functions for groups of cards.
- e. Partitioning of the card reader and control output point databases shall restrict access to card programming functions for groups of cards, card readers and control output points.
- f. Operators with partitioned access shall only be able to view and/or edit information (databases, card reader controlled doors, maps, alarm inputs, control point outputs, etc.) for sections of the database that their password gives them privileges.
- g. Operators with partitioned access shall only be able to receive and/or respond to alarms for sections of the database that their password gives them privileges.

- h. SMS software shall not allow an operator to grant access to doors or assign access privileges to card holders for doors that are not included in the respective operator's partitioned database privileges.

20. Database Queries and Editing

- a. The SMS software shall provide for the following database querying and editing functions:
  - 1) Database queries, database editing and report printing via user definable parameters.
  - 2) Printing requested queries and reports to the system workstation screen or report printer.
  - 3) File search by field or any combination of user defined fields.
  - 4) Displaying and/or printing searched and sorted files in the order dictated by the user, i.e. alphabetically by last name, numerically by badge number, alphabetically by department name, etc.
  - 5) Database queries on any field or combination of fields in the system databases.
  - 6) Editing queried records by the operator after the search. The operator shall only be required to search the database once to edit multiple associated database records.
- b. Database operations that require a large number of temporary files to be generated as a result of database queries shall not affect any aspect of overall SMS/workstation performance.

21. Report Printing

- a. The SMS/workstation software shall provide for report printing and/or display of any group of events within any selectable time period. The report printer shall be capable of producing a hard copy of any report that the system may generate. Reports shall include historical events, defined by any combination of the following categories:
  - 1) All events
  - 2) Location
  - 3) Point number
  - 4) Event type (e.g. intrusion, door open, etc.)
  - 5) Point status (e.g. on, off, alarm, normal, shunted, etc.)
  - 6) Management reports of transaction history by card number, cardholder data, reader number, time period, or invalid attempts

- 7) Audit reports (e.g. card holders with access to specific areas and/or doors, including time periods, queried by area)
  - 8) Access reports (e.g. areas and doors that can be accessed by specific card holders and groups of card holders, including time periods)
  - 9) Audit trail reports
  - 10) SMS shall also be capable of interfacing with a 3<sup>rd</sup> party reporting software.
- b. The SMS shall provide seamless integration with the IP video as specified in this document. The video associated with alarms must be prompted onto the operators monitor without any interface by the operator.

B. Technical Specifications

1. Security Monitoring System (SMS) and software
  - a. The existing SMS and software comply with all of the functional and software requirements.
2. Data Gathering Panel
  - a. Provide new Data Gathering Panels as indicated on the drawings and the new panels shall provide the following:
    - 1) An IP based intelligent interface between card reader controllers and the file server utilizing distributed processing technology.
    - 2) Simultaneous support of a minimum of two access card facility codes and bit-formats. The Data Gathering Panel shall grant access through card reader controlled devices based on cardholder access level, access card facility code, and access card number.
    - 3) Supervised alarm inputs to monitor the status of alarm circuits and report the status information to the SMS file server. Supervision of all wiring between the Data Gathering Panel and the monitored alarm devices shall meet UL 1076 guidelines for 4-state supervision.
    - 4) Control relay outputs for controlling devices by remote command from the system workstation, through time programming or on alarm point activation. Outputs shall be rated for a minimum of 2A at 24VDC.
    - 5) Supervision and monitoring of all wiring between the Data Gathering Panel and the monitored alarm devices for secure, alarm, and fault conditions. Supervision shall meet UL 1076 guidelines.



- 6) Adequate EPROM to maintain a minimum card database of 20,000 expandable to 250,000 cards including access levels and time zones.
  - 7) Capable to maintaining a minimum of 65,000 transactions within the controllers EPROM
  - 8) Ethernet communications between Data Gathering Panels and the file server.
  - 9) Automatic disconnection from the communication loop upon a communication failure within the Data Gathering Panel to prevent communication to other Data Gathering Panels in the loop from being interrupted.
  - 10) Intrusion alarm indication on the system workstation if a card reader controlled door is opened without an authorized card use or request to exit signal.
  - 11) A door prop alarm indication on the system workstation if the card reader controlled door is propped open past an adjustable time period after an authorized card use or request to exit. The door prop time delay shall be adjustable from the system workstation from one to 60 seconds on a per reader basis.
  - 12) Each Data Gathering Panel shall include one spare card reader input point and 20 percent spare alarm input points and output points after all specified points are initially connected.
  - 13) A locking steel enclosure designed for surface mounting. Provide a tamper switch to sense the removal or opening of the enclosure cover. Provide any conduit required from the Data Gathering Panel to power supplies, junction boxed or wireways. All Data Gathering Panels shall be keyed alike and shall be on the same key as all security system power supplies and power distribution cabinets.
- b. Upon loss of communication with the file server, the Data Gathering Panel shall contain enough RAM to operate normally. In addition, the Data Gathering Panel shall store up to 10,000 card transactions and up to 16 events per potential alarm input, and transmit that data to the file server as soon as communication is restored.
- c. Upon verification of card authorization or request to exit the Data Gathering Panel shall activate a door control relay output and shunt the intrusion alarm. The lock control output contacts shall be rated for 2 A @ 24 VDC. Relay activation time shall be adjustable from the system workstation from one to 30 seconds on a per reader basis. The door shall automatically relock upon closure.
- d. Transaction time for authorized cards shall be less than 0.5 seconds from the time of card read until the door is unlocked.

- e. All alarm and control points as well as card reader inputs, shall be capable of independent time programming via software controls from the system file server.

3. Data Gathering Panel Power Supply

- a. The Data Gathering Panel power supply shall be dedicated to Data Gathering Panels and shall not provide power for locks or any other low voltage device.
- b. Minimum Specifications:

1)	Type	UL Listed Class II power limited
2)	Input	120 VAC hard wired
3)	Output	Regulated and filtered DC
4)	Alarm outputs	Individual low battery and power fail
5)	Battery backup	Four hours of rechargeable backup for the connected load
6)	Battery support	Battery charger to maintain battery
7)	Battery	Sealed gel type
8)	Enclosure	Key lockable wall mount housing with tamper switch

- c. The Data Gathering Panel Power Supply shall be housed in a locking steel enclosure designed for surface mounting. The housing shall include a tamper switch to sense the removal or opening of the enclosure cover. All Data Gathering Panel power supplies shall be keyed alike and shall be on the same key as all security system Data Gathering Panels, power supplies and power distribution cabinets.
- d. Acceptable Manufacturers: As per the SMS manufacturer's recommendations and/or specifications.

4. Tamper Switch

a. Minimum Specifications:

- |    |               |  |
|----|---------------|--|
| 1) | Type          | Plunger  |
| 2) | Configuration | Normally closed when the cabinet door is closed                            |
| 3) | Mounting      | Fastened within cabinet with no access to fasteners when cabinet is closed |

5. Card Reader

- a. Provide contactless/proximity card readers as indicated on the Security Device Drawings.
- b. Provide manufacturer recommended power supplies as required. The power supplies shall be UL Class II, power limited and shall provide necessary output voltage to allow the card readers to operate at maximum specified read range.
- c. All card readers shall meet the following requirements:
- 1) The card reader shall read encoded data from access cards (125kHz proximity and 13.56MHz) and transmit the data to the Data Gathering Panel. The operating frequency shall meet all local regulations.
  - 2) A two-color LED and an audible tone shall indicate authorized and unauthorized reader uses. Operation of LEDs, and audible tones shall be consistent throughout.
  - 3) The card reader shall be capable of mounting directly to a metal surface.
  - 4) Reader shall be rated for outdoor use.
  - 5) The card reader and bit pattern shall not be proprietary to a single contractor or SMS manufacturer.
  - 6) Card reader must be Bluetooth enabled.
  - 7) Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a) HID Multiclass SE
    - b) AptiQ MT series

6. Request-To-Exit Motion Sensor. Provide request-to-exit motion sensors as indicated on the security drawings.
  - a. Minimum Specifications:
    - 1) Detection technology      Passive Infrared
    - 2) Detection pattern      Adjustable to provide coverage of immediate door area.
    - 3) Output contact      Normally open contact that closes momentarily (one second or less) when sensor is activated
    - 4) Power requirements      12-24 VDC
    - 5) Mounting      Surface mount to wall or ceiling or integral to the latching hardware.
  - b. Provide a manufacturer recommended power supply. The power supply shall be UL Class II, power limited.
7. Concealed Magnetic Contact (Door Position Switch). Provide concealed magnetic contact switches as indicated on the security device drawings.
  - a. Minimum Specifications:
    - 1) Gap      1/2 inch between the magnet and switch
    - 2) Configuration      DPDT Contact, White in Color.
    - 3) Security      Biased
    - 4) Mounting      As recommended by the door position switch manufacturer

## 2.2 INTRUSION DETECTION SYSTEM

### A. BASE PANEL

1. The security control panel shall have a base capacity of 16 fully supervised and programmable zones with integral power supply and supervised battery charger, auxiliary power for powering security detection devices, program switched auxiliary power supply for 4-wire smoke detectors, integral supervised digital

alarm communicator, two general purpose program controllable outputs which can be programmed as general-purpose outputs or as Addressable loops and a supervised bell/siren output. One 12Amp hour battery is required for backup power for each panel.

**B. PANEL ZONE EXPANSION**

1. The panel shall be expandable to a maximum of 128 zones by adding standard hardwired 8 and/or 16 zone modules connected to the base panel via a supervised four-wire power/communication bus, by adding up to 112 addressable detection devices to one or both addressable loops on the base panel or by adding 64 zone 433 MHz. Narrow Band wireless receivers (to expand coverage area, up to 8 receivers shall be supported) to the four-wire communication bus. The system shall be capable of expansion using hardwired, addressable and wireless simultaneously in any mix that suits the application. The system shall support hardwired seismic sensors and programmable scheduled testing of these seismic sensors.

**C. SYSTEM KEYPADS**

1. The system shall accommodate up to 16 LCD keypads which are powered from the base panel via the four-wire communications bus. LCD keypads shall have a display capacity of at least 32 alphanumeric characters with the display having brightness and contrast control. Control keys shall be backlit for low light level ease of use. The keypads shall include individual "Armed", "Ready" and "Trouble" indicators and five programmable 'function' buttons and three keypad activated alarm buttons. Keypads shall have the capability to operate in a power-save mode in the event of a power failure.

**D. ALTERNATE REPORTING METHODS**

1. The system shall be capable of reporting all alarms, trouble and system status information over various combinations of the single integral digital alarm communicator, the dual digital alarm communicators, a cellular transmitter, an internet (IP) communicator and over a dedicated line DVAC channel.

**E. CENTRAL STATION REPORTING**

1. The system shall provide high speed 20 bps 1400/2300 Hz. handshake, contact ID and SIA reporting formats and shall be capable of being programmed to call up to 3 telephone numbers. The system shall also allow communication to a pager. The telephone numbers shall be programmable for 'backup' dialing should the primary number fail. The system shall be programmable for split reporting such that alarms/restorals, openings/closing and miscellaneous events can be sent to different telephone numbers or communication paths.
2. The system shall report an account code for each partition and a separate account code for non-partition (system) events.
3. The system shall provide opening/closing scheduled suppression to prevent opens and closes from being reported to the central station.

F. HARD COPY PRINTOUT

1. The system shall be capable of including a serial output for a hard copy printer. All system events, alarms and restorals shall be printed and each event shall include the date and time.

G. OUTPUT RELAYS

1. The system shall be capable of including up to 64 fully programmable output relays with each relay having form 'C' contacts rated 2 Amps at 30 VDC. Relays shall be added in increments of four and may be located anywhere on the communication bus. Relay modules shall include an integral power supply, supervised battery charger and supply up to 1.0 Amp of auxiliary power at 12 VDC.

H. LOW POWER OUTPUTS

1. The system shall be capable of including up to 144 low power outputs with each output able to source 50 mA at 12 VDC. Outputs shall be added in increments of 16 and may be added anywhere on the communications bus.

I. REMOTE ANNUNCIATION

1. The system shall be capable of remote zone alarm and system status annunciation, up to 144 points, by adding 32 and/or 64 point annunciators anywhere on the 4-wire communications bus. Annunciators shall be capable of being flush mounted. The annunciators shall provide bull's eye and graphic annunciation capability.
2. The dual access control module shall accept a variety of proximity readers, magnetic stripe readers and any 26-bit Wiegand reader and readers shall be capable of being located up to 500 feet from the module. The dual module shall have inputs for two 'request-to-exit' detectors, two 'postpone arm' pushbuttons, two 'arm' pushbuttons, two 'door' contacts and two outputs for door strikes.
3. Access control software shall be an integral component of the base panel software and shall provide the following functions: capacity for 1,500 cards and up to 64 access levels, 99 seven-day schedules with 4 intervals per schedule, holiday scheduling for a two-year period, individual door unlock schedules, a programmable option to require 2 cards to open a specific door, ability to unlock doors automatically on fire alarm and automatic daylight saving time adjust. Access control functions shall be fully programmable through any system keypad and either locally or remotely using any PC and the upload/download software.
4. All access control transactions shall be recorded in the systems 3,000 event buffer for viewing via the keypad, for printing on a local printer or viewing locally or remotely via the upload/download software.

J. VOICE ASSISTED STATUS AND CONTROL

1. The system shall be capable of adding a module to provide system status and control via any local or remote touch-tone telephone with the system providing

system status information by voice. The system shall include a word library and allow custom words for zone labels.

K. AUTOMATION CONTROL

1. The system shall be capable of controlling by event and/or by schedule up to 32 control devices. The automation control module shall connect to the system via the 4-wire communications bus. The system shall include
2. 16 schedules to control the automation devices. Automation shall be controllable via any keypad and local or remote touch-tone telephone.

L. SYSTEM SOFTWARE

1. The base panel shall come complete with all the software to implement every system feature and allow the addition of every expansion or functional module without changes or addition to the basic software.

M. SYSTEM PROGRAMMING

1. The system shall be fully programmable via the LCD keypads and shall also allow event buffer viewing via the keypads.
2. Separate PC based Upload/Download software shall provide the ability to fully program the system and read all current system programming and the event buffer. The system shall provide a connector on the base panel to allow local upload/download operation and shall be capable of being remotely, over the telephone lines or internet (IP network), uploaded or downloaded. The system shall provide a separate telephone number that can be called for the remote upload/download operation. Remote upload/download access shall be controllable by the user to prevent unauthorized access.
3. All system programming shall be maintained in non-volatile memory such that program information is maintained even if all AC and battery power is removed.

N. USER CODES

1. The system shall provide for 1,500 user codes selectable as either 4 or 6 digits. For Access Control, user codes shall be assignable to 1 of 64 access levels. User codes shall assignable to one or multiple partitions. The system shall offer a programmable option to allow users to program their own access code. The system shall offer a programmable option to require 2 users to disarm certain partitions.

O. PARTITIONS

1. The system shall be programmable for up to 8 fully independent partitions each partition shall have its own account code. Keypads shall be assignable as 'partition' keypads or 'global' keypads. Each zone in the system shall be assignable to one or more partitions.

P. SCHEDULING

1. The system shall provide for 99 date schedules with 4 intervals per schedule, 4 holiday schedules with 2 years of scheduling capacity, 50 open/close suppression schedules and 16 automation schedules. All schedules shall be programmable via the LCD keypads and via downloading either locally or remotely.

Q. GROUND FAULT DETECTION

1. For commercial fire installations, the system shall include an integral ground fault detector which shall detect a single ground fault on any extended conductor in the system.

R. SUPERVISION

1. Each zone in the system shall be supervised. General system supervision shall include; loss of AC for the base panel and any remote functional. Provide 4 state supervision for all intrusion devices. The panel with its own AC input, batteries for the base panel and all remote functional panels shall be supervised and short circuit protected, each addressable device and each wireless input device shall be supervised for its presence and the 4-wire communication bus shall be supervised for low voltage and the presence of each enrolled module and keypad. Digital alarm communicators shall be supervised for telephone line trouble and failure to communicate and the system shall report any cellular or IP network communication panel trouble.

S. FALSE ALARM PREVENTION

1. The system shall include the following false alarm prevention features: audible exit delay, arm/disarm bell squawk, audible exit fault, urgency on entry delay, no entry arming/disarming, swinger shutdown programmable by zone, transmission delay by zone, AC fail, TLM trouble and low battery trouble transmission delay, rotating keypress buffer, recent close code transmission, police code (cross zone) transmission, scheduled seismic sensor testing and opening after alarm transmission.

T. AUTOMATIC ARMING/DISARMING

1. The system shall allow for automatic arming and disarming partition(s) according to a programmable schedule. The system shall include a method to automatically arm a partition after it has been disarmed for a set period of time. The system shall include a programmable limitation for basic users which shall delay disarming a specific partition for a set period of time.

U. TEMPORARY ZONE DISABLING/BYPASSING

1. The system shall include the following temporary zone disabling/bypassing features: arm partition with zone violated and arm zone upon restore, manual zone bypass by user, temporary bypass of a programmable group of zones which shall re-activate zones after programmable time.

V. NETWORK COMMUNICATIONS

1. The system shall be capable of network (LAW/WAN) and Internet communications according to ULC Level5 and/or UL-AA (Highline Security)



standards. The Network communicator shall utilize 128-bit AES encryption over 10/100 base-T networks and support static or dynamic IP addressing. The IP communicator shall be capable of sending alarm events to a primary and backup IP receiver address and up to two standard email addresses. The internet communicator shall perform full alarm reporting directly to the central monitoring station as well as performing full system configuration programming and viewing system status using remote upload/download software over encrypted connection. For security purposes, the internet communicator shall be capable of end-to-end supervision and hardwire substitution detection.

W. DUAL TECHNOLOGY MOTION SENSORS

1. The dual technology sensor shall use both microwave and PIR as detection methods. Sensor shall have a detection range of a minimum of 40ft. Unit shall be either wall or ceiling mountable. Current draw shall be 17 milliamps at 12VDC. Unit shall be no larger than 5in x 2.76in x 2in in size or in ceiling mounted no larger than 3.5in in diameter. Unit shall be wired with 4 state line supervision.

X. GLASS BREAK DETECTORS

1. Glass break sensor shall be an acoustic type sensor that had a minimum detection diameter of 50ft. The detector shall have pattern recognition technology that listens for actual patterns of glass breaking and eliminating the false alarms patterns. Alarm response must be a minimum of 4 seconds. The unit shall be a maximum of 4 inches in diameter or 4.6 inches x 2.75 inches x 1 inch. Current draw must not exceed 25 milliamps.

Y. Acceptable Manufacturers:

1. Bosch D9412GV3 with Conettix IP-based communication option

2.3 VIDEO MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

A. Function

1. The Video Management shall be in High Definition (1080P) and be an all color or color/black & white, It shall be compatible with local video broadcast standards.
2. The VMS System shall be IP based with and controllable through GUI and keyboard controllers.
3. The VMS shall provide for analytics to detect the following:
  - a. Objects in area
  - b. Object loitering
  - c. Objects crossing beam
  - d. Object appears or enters area
  - e. Object not present in area
  - f. Objects enter area
  - g. Objects leave area
  - h. Objects stops in area
  - i. Direction violation
  - j. Tamper Detection

4. The VMS analytics shall be integral to the full video surveillance system with all camera views having the capabilities to be used as forensic investigation devices and associated recordings.
5. The VMS analytics shall have capabilities to warn the monitoring station of events based on the above criteria.
6. The VMS system shall be Open Network Video Interface Forum (ONVIF) compliant for integration with 3<sup>rd</sup> party manufacturer's devices and software configurations through API/SDK configurations and software interfaces.
7. Provide complete ONVIF documentation that all devices within the VIDEO SURVEILLANCE system has been tested to comply with all ONVIF categories for 3<sup>rd</sup> party integration.
8. All IP based security devices shall be compatible with the latest release of ONVIF.
9. The VMS shall provide the following:
  - a. On-screen alphanumeric identification (16-character minimum) of the displayed camera location, on each monitor. Such identification shall be consistent through all system elements. The position of the on-screen identification on each monitor shall be user selectable and coordinated with the Owner prior to programming.
  - b. Remote control of cameras with zoom lenses and pan/tilt drives. Receiver driver units shall be integrated into the camera dome enclosures. Remote control of the camera shall include pan, tilt, zoom, and focus and iris control. Remote control capabilities shall include automatic preset position control on alarm of pan, tilt and zoom cameras through the integrated keyboards and GUI.
  - c. Continuous color recording of all cameras within the system to allow a minimum of 64 cameras to be simultaneously recorded in high definition (1080P) onto a hard drive.
  - d. Programming of automatic camera call-up of any camera on any Workstation. Coordinate with the Owner to establish configuration guidelines and provide all initial programming.
  - e. Programming of any camera within the system to sequence on any monitor. Dwell times shall be individually programmable for each camera. Coordinate with the Owner for camera-to-monitor sequences.
  - f. Programming the alarm monitor(s) to be blank or display any video input signal when not in alarm condition. The VMS shall automatically display alarm related video on the alarm monitor(s) when an alarm occurs. Following the specified dwell time, the VMS System shall return to the display selected before the alarm condition was initiated.
  - g. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- 1) Milestone
- h. Network Video Recorders (Video Management System)
- 1) The Network video recorders shall communicate with the designated cameras via onboard RJ-45 inputs and category 6 copper cabling for camera control and view processing.
  - 2) Provide network video recorders in each building and connect to the owner's network for communications with the SMS.
  - 3) Network Video Recorders shall include a "video loss" alarm output to indicate loss of video from any camera supervised by the unit.
  - 4) The Network Video Recorders shall incorporate an internal activity detection system, which shall provide for an increased number of recorded frames from cameras viewing activity.
  - 5) Network Video Recorders shall incorporate alphanumeric identification (16-character minimum) of each camera supervised. Program the names and identification numbers of all cameras into the network video server. The intent is for each camera's numeric identification and alphanumeric location descriptors to appear on the video during playback.
  - 6) Network Video Recorders shall incorporate internal motion detection alarms and shall provide for those alarms to an external source.
  - 7) The Network Video Recorders shall provide network access through an internal network connection that supports 100/1000Mbps network operation.
  - 8) The network video recorder shall be a minimum of two NICs, and also have redundant power.
  - 9) The Network Video Recorders shall at a minimum, combine multiplexing, alarm detection, event detection, audio, video and text recording.
  - 10) The network video recorders shall provide for audio for each camera with video and speech synconization.
  - 11) The Network Video Recorders shall at a minimum be a quad core processor, 20GB of system memory and 40GB of local system disk space running latest version Windows Server or equivalent.
  - 12) The Network Video Recorders shall have at a minimum a 40 terabyte of local storage, in a 4RU enclosure SAS-3 Raid 5 with a minimum of 4 available slots.

- 13) The Network Video Recorders shall support a minimum 64 IP cameras with a minimum performance of 1080P resolution on all cameras with H.264 compression.
- 14) Security contractor to provide the adequate amount of storage for the total number of cameras based on 45 days, 12 frames per second, 2MP resolution, and 45% motion.
- 15) Security Contractor to provide all licenses for the full capacity of the NVR with the maximum amount of video streams for its lifetime.
- 16) Security Contractor to provide rack mount 8-port KVM pullout 17" monitor with touchpad for viewing at each school.
- 17) Security contractor to provide a 3000VA line-interactive sine wave UPS for each rack. UPS shall require a NEMA L5-30P dedicated outlet on standby power. UPS shall also be Energy star complaint. UPS shall also power a total of 8 NEMA L5-15/20 outlets. The unit shall also provide external battery pack connection. It must fit in a 19 inch EIA/TIA equipment rack and be no larger than 2 rack units.
- 18) The Network Video Recorders shall have the ability to capture critical information at higher frame rates for particular cameras and assign the remainder of the available IPS to non-critical cameras
- 19) The Network Video Recorders must incorporate self-diagnostic and reporting technology that monitors the internal operation of a drive to provide early warning of potential problems with the server.
- 20) The Network Video Recorders shall have an integrated DVD/CD writer (CD-RW/DVD combo drive) and shall allow users to save video, audio and text to a standard recordable DVD/CD. The network video recorder shall have the capability to include any additional software to the DVD/CD for ease of playback.
- 21) The Network Video Recorders must have the appropriate SDK/API's to seamlessly view alarms through the security management system.
- 22) Provide any additional software to integrate the Network Video Recorders into the owner's network without compromising the existing security protocols.
- 23) The Network Video Recorders shall include remote configuration and management software to allow a user to configure the unit, view live video, and select video segments by time, date, alarm, or search results. The management software shall have the capabilities to save, and organize copied video into incident folders to aid with investigations.

- 24) The Network Video Recorders shall be rack mountable and have redundant power supplies.
- 25) Provide all camera licensing for the complete NVR even if all ports are not connected at this time.
- i. Video Authentication
  - 1) The Network Video Recorders shall provide encryption and authentication for all video. The authentication shall automatically identify and notify the viewer of any video that has been altered in any way.
  - 2) The Network Video Recorders shall identify and store altered and/or enhanced video separately from original video. Under no circumstances shall the system allow original, unaltered video to be replaced by altered or enhanced video.
- j. The Network Video Recorders shall provide for overlay and on-screen display of descriptive text for each camera within the system. Camera name, camera number, image time and date shall be provided. Owner and program the NVR accordingly.
- k. Image Enhancement: The Network Video Recorders shall provide for image enhancement when video is viewed from the review workstations. Contrast, brightness, color, hue, inverse and digital zoom shall be controlled on live and recorded video for each camera within the system.
- l. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - 1) Milestone XPROTECT EXPERT Software with Husky X8 NVR's
- m. Graphical User Interface (GUI)
  - 1) The GUI shall provide for a computer-based, networked, user-friendly operator interface for monitoring and controlling the VIDEO SURVEILLANCE system and Network Video Recorders through the use of a mouse and keyboard. The GUI shall be incorporated with and share a common interface between the SMS workstation monitoring and administration applications. View of live and recorded video shall be accessible from any SMS workstation.
  - 2) Access to the GUI shall be through review workstations and shall provide for password protected, graphics-based remote programming of VIDEO SURVEILLANCE system and Network Video Recorders equipment. A minimum of 16 operator password levels shall be provided to restrict operator access to programming and set-up controls.
  - 3) The GUI shall provide for any monitoring directly on the video surveillance workstation and control of video surveillance system equipment as follows:

- 4) Video surveillance cameras (pan/tilt/zoom, iris control, focus adjustment as applicable, preset positioning)
  - 5) Information displayed for each monitor in the VIDEO SURVEILLANCE system indicating monitor number and currently displayed camera(s) and/or sequences of multiple cameras.
    - a) All set-up and operating parameters including, but not limited to camera call-up, preset, alarm, and descriptors; and monitor output assignment.
- n. Recording
- 1) Alarm/event recording
    - a) The Network Video Recorders shall provide for pre and post alarm/event recording for future SMS alarms, based on individual pre-programmed time frames for applicable VIDEO SURVEILLANCE cameras within the system. Coordinate exact pre and post recording times with the Owner.
    - b) Alarm event recording shall record at a minimum of 15 images per second.
    - c) Recording of audio for cameras that are audio enabled must be synchronized for complete and seamless playback and copy to CD/DVD.
  - 2) Activity Detection
    - a) The Network Video Recorders shall be capable of detecting activity within the video scene and automatically initiate pre-programmed events, including but not limited to the following:
      - (1) Increased/decreased record rates
      - (2) Increased/decreased resolution
      - (3) Capture of pre and/or post activity footage
      - (4) Activity detection shall be individually programmable for each video surveillance camera within the system. Reference the Drawings and coordinate individual camera requirements with the Owner.
  - 3) The Network Video Recorders shall incorporate motion masking to ignore areas of the camera view where motion events should not trigger alarm/event recording. Motion masking shall be configurable on an individual camera basis.

- 4) The amount of activity required to trigger motion recording shall be configurable on an individual camera basis. In order to provide for individually programmable motion triggers, the following parameters shall have adjustable values:
  - a) Sensitivity (the change to a pixel required for that portion of the image to be considered changed).
  - b) Percentage of unmasked area video change (the percentage of an image that must be changed as compared to a reference image).
  - c) Repeated motion frame for alarm (the number of consecutive images that must be changed).

10. Video Review

- a. The Network Video Recorders shall provide for simultaneous and synchronous review of live and recorded video from any camera within the system as a single camera (1x1, full screen), four cameras simultaneously (2x2), or sixteen cameras simultaneously (4x4) from multiple review workstations while recording video without any interruption or degradation in system performance.
- b. Each video feed shall maintain individual, user-selectable refresh rates dependent on speed of the source network connection. Video acquired from remote systems (as applicable) with slow network connections shall not decrease the refresh rate of video acquired from faster network connections.
- c. Video shall be selectable for review as individual cameras or from predefined camera groups. Coordinate with the Owner to determine predefined camera groups and program the system accordingly.
- d. The Network Video Recorders shall allow the operator to simultaneously search for video from multiple IP cameras while reviewing archived and/or live video from other IP cameras.
- e. Activity Search: The Network Video Recorders shall be capable of identifying archived video that contains motion based on operator query by specific area of the recorded image. Search examples shall include, at a minimum, movement of any kind, movement of a specific object and movement in a specific direction.
- f. Image Export and Printing
  - 1) The Network Video Recorders shall provide for printing of still video images to a default Windows printer and export of video images in standard Windows image file formats to any device shown as a drive letter.
  - 2) When printing a still video image, the camera name, camera number, image time and an optional operator-entered comment shall be printed with the image.

11. Video Surveillance Cameras

- a. PTZ IP Cameras shall be ¼ inch HAD Progressive scan CCD, 2MP WDR and be IR compatible
- b. Fixed IP Cameras shall be ¼ inch Progressive scan RGB CMOS, 5MP WDR and be IR compatible.
- c. 180° type cameras shall be 1/3" progressive scan RGB CMOS CCD, 5MP, with dewarping at the camera.
- d. Multi-focal cameras shall have 1/3" progressive scan with a total of 4 gimbals, totaling 12MP, WDR Day/Night, IP66 and IK-10 rated, interchangeable lenses and Remote Focus, and stitching of video.
- e. All cameras shall be audio capable. Provide manufacturer recommended microphones for each camera.
- f. For IP devices over 300ft from the nearest IDF/MDF/security closet an Ethernet extender may be used. It shall be able to extend an additional 300ft from the power source, and be capable to extend IP video and POE to 3000ft.
- g. An Ethernet over coax extender may be required for some cameras. The unit shall be capable to transmitting power and data to up 5,000ft. A unit will be required at the camera and at the coax termination point. It shall be able to maintain up to 4K in resolution. The extender shall also be up to RFC-2544 TCP/IP network bandwidth packet transmission standards.
- h. For cable runs beyond 300ft from the nearest IDF/MDF, an Ethernet extender may be used. The unit shall be IP67 rated and be capable of passing 74W. It shall be a plug and play device and require no programming. It shall be able to maintain up to 4K(UHD) resolution
- i. Camera type, location, enclosure and mounting requirements shall be as indicated on the Security Device Drawings and schedules.
- j. Provide infrared modules at the exterior cameras where exterior lighting is not available for clear night field of view.
- k. Exterior cameras shall be equipped with heaters, and blowers for year-round operation



- I. All Cameras shall be powered by PoE802.3af or PoE802.at
    - 1) Video surveillance cameras with digital pan, tilt and zoom capabilities shall be configured such that any and all future SMS alarm points or card reader controlled doors or emergency phones located within the available field of view are programmed as presets for automatic viewing and real time recording. Applicable alarms generated by the SMS shall cause the camera to pan around, tilt up or down as required, and zoom in on the alarm event. Verify all preset positioning with the Owner prior to system programming.
  - m. Lenses
    - 1) Provide lenses for the field of view intended as indicated on the Security Device Schedules. Field verify lens requirements to provide for the defined desired angle of view, and high quality, glare-free, clear pictures at the video monitors.
    - 2) Varifocal lenses are acceptable.
    - 3) All camera lenses shall incorporate auto iris control.
  - n. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - 1) Axis Communications
12. Video Surveillance Camera Housings and Mounts
- a. Provide video surveillance camera housings and mounts as indicated on the Security Device Drawings.
  - b. Wiring to all cameras shall pass from the back box through the mount and into the housing. Exposed wiring or liquid tight of any kind shall not be acceptable.
  - c. Provide sun shields/tinted bubble for camera housings in outdoor locations exposed directly to sunlight.
  - d. Provide weather and dust proof camera housings with thermostatically controlled heaters and blowers in outdoor locations.
  - e. Provide lightning protection for power, control, and network cables for all exterior cameras.
13. Video Surveillance High Power Infrared Illuminator
- a. Provide high power infrared illuminators as indicated on the drawings.
  - b. Radiational angle of the IR illuminators shall be 10\* or 30\*. The angle shall match the intended field of view.
  - c. The IR illuminator shall be capable of a minimum of 100meter distance.

- d. The wavelength for the illuminator shall be 850nm
- e. The enclosure for the illuminators shall be IP66 rated
- f. The power for the illuminators shall be 24V AC or 12V DC with a power consumption 22 watts
- g. The illuminator shall operate at temperatures down to -40\*-50\* C
- h. Provide mounting brackets for each illuminator.
- i. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - 1) Samsung
  - 2) Or approved equal

## 2.4 WIRE AND CABLE

### A. Minimum Specifications:

- 1. All wire and cable shall be Underwriter's Laboratories (UL) approved for its intended application, shall meet all national, state and local code requirements for its application, and shall meet or exceed manufacturers' recommendations for the components connected.
- 2. Provide plenum-rated cable as required by code.
- 3. All wire and cable shall meet individual system or subsystem manufacturer specifications.
- 4. All insulated wire and cable shall conform to the minimum requirements of Insulated Cable Engineers Association (ICEA) Standards.
- 5. Wire and cable shall comply with the applicable requirements of the National Electrical Code (NEC), latest edition, in regards to cable construction and usage.
- 6. The conductors of wires shall be copper, and have conductivity in accordance with the standardization rules of the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (IEEE). The conductor and each strand shall be round and free of kinks and defects.
- 7. All cable carrying data or voice transmissions shall be shielded. All other cable shall be shielded where necessary to guarantee interference-free signals.
- 8. Insulation shall be rated for a minimum of 300 V.
- 9. Color coding shall be accomplished by using solidly colored insulation. Grounding conductors, where insulated, shall be colored solid green or identified with green color as required by the National Electric Code (NEC).
- 10. All category cabling shall be in strict accordance with the division 27 specification, and be provided for by the telecommunications contractor.

11. The structure cabling system for the integrated security system must be manufacturer certifiable.
- B. Minimum Wire Types and Sizes
1. Low Voltage Power Cable: Wire size shall be a minimum of 18 AWG, twisted, stranded, insulated and jacketed.
  2. Control Point Cable (Non-Power): Wire size shall be a minimum of 20 AWG, twisted, stranded, insulated and jacketed.
  3. Control Point Cable (Low Voltage Power): Wire size shall be a minimum of 18 AWG, stranded, insulated, and jacketed.
  4. For all IP devices provide category 6 UTP plenum cable as detailed in the 27000 UTP specification.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 GENERAL

- A. The requirements of Part One and Part Two also apply to the execution of the work.
- B. When a Manufacturer, or authorized Representative accepts an order for material and equipment, they agree to adjust Submittals and production schedules as required to accommodate the project schedule. Schedules shall be included with Submittals indicating review times as specified herein and manufacturing and delivery times such that material and equipment will be manufactured and delivered to the site sufficiently ahead of schedule so as not to delay the completion of the work.
- C. Prior to bid, inspect the site, existing conditions, fully understand the Work required, and provide the Work according to Contract Documents and all existing site conditions. Confer with the Manufacturer's of existing systems to be retained, modified or extended. Include all required costs and components for a fully functional system performing as indicated herein and on the Drawings. No additional compensation will be granted because of existing conditions.
- D. Verify the exact location prior to bid of all items that may be indicated and determine exact location of all electrical items that are not indicated on the Drawings.
- E. Any work installed contrary to the Contract Documents or written directions from the Architect shall be subject to change as directed by the Architect and no extra compensation will be allowed for making these changes or any work of any other trade due to these changes.
- F. Upon completion of work, the security contractor shall submit a testing and commissioning report for engineer/architect/owner approval. This document shall be in a excel spreadsheet format.
- G. Upon approval from the engineer/architect/owner of the testing and commissioning report shall commence the warranty period.

- H. Equipment and systems shall not be installed without first coordinating the location and installation of equipment and systems with all other Trades.
- I. Any and all material installed or work performed in violation of above requirements shall be re-adjusted and corrected by the Installer without charge.
- J. Refer to all Drawings associated with the project, prior to the installation or roughing-in of outlets, conduit and equipment, to determine the exact location of all outlets.
- K. Assure that all equipment is accessible, such as junction boxes, pull boxes, controls and such other apparatus as may require maintenance and operation from time to time. Security contractor to coordinate with electrical provided construction access panels sized in order to provide adequate and required access for installation. Provide rated panel or door appropriate for the construction being installed into (fire, smoke and/or acoustical).
- L. After installation, equipment shall be protected to prevent damage during the construction period. Openings in conduits and boxes shall be closed to prevent the entrance of foreign materials.
- M. Home runs indicated are not to be combined or reduced without written consent from the engineer.
- N. All connections to equipment shall be made as required, and in accordance with the approved submittal, setting drawings, and manufacturer's guidelines.
- O. Site Observation:
  - 1. Site observation visits will be performed randomly during the project by the engineer. Reports will be generated noting observations. Deficiencies noted on the site visit reports shall be corrected. All work shall comply with the Contract Documents, applicable Codes, regulations and local Authorities whether or not a particular deficiency has been noted in a site visit report.
  - 2. The general contractor or construction manager is responsible to notify the engineer ten working days prior to closing in work behind walls, raised access floors, ceilings, etc., so that installed work can be observed prior to being concealed.
  - 3. Work concealed prior to observation and correction of deficiencies shall be made accessible for review at the discretion of the engineer. Bear all costs for allowing work to be reviewed.
  - 4. Areas shall stay accessible until deficiencies are corrected and accepted. Notify the Engineer when all deficiencies are corrected. Return reports with items indicated as corrected prior to re-observation by the engineer.

### 3.2 SITE INSPECTION

- A. Security contractor to continuously verify that the site conditions are in agreement with the Contract Documents and the design package. Submit a report to the Engineer documenting changes to the site or conditions that affect the performance of the system to be installed. For those changes or conditions, which affect system installation or

performance, provide (with the report) specification sheets, or written functional requirements to support the findings, and a cost estimate to correct the deficiency. No deficiency shall be corrected without written permission from the Engineer.

- B. Specific mounting locations, exact wire and cable runs, and conduit routing have not been specified or delineated on the Security Device Drawings. Coordinate all aspects of the Work with the engineer/architect/construction manager.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Coordination

1. Security contractor to coordinate with the GC/electrical contractor to ensure that adequate conduit is provided and that equipment backboxes are adequate for system installation.
2. Security contractor to coordinate with the Electrical contractor to ensure that adequate power has been provided and properly located for the security system equipment, and door hardware.
3. Security contractor to coordinate with the general contractor/construction manager to ensure that doors and doorframes are properly prepared for electric locking hardware and door position switches.
4. Security contractor to coordinate with the door hardware contractor to ensure that the appropriate architectural/security door hardware is installed.
5. Security contractor to coordinate locations of all devices with the general contractor/construction manager and architect prior to installation.
6. Security contractor to coordinate and verify the location of each piece of rack-mounted equipment with the engineer and owner's IT.
7. Security contractor to coordinate custom SMS report requirements with the Owner. Submit report formats to the Owner for review and acceptance.
8. Security contractor to coordinate all access rights, time zones, lockdown, cardholder group and other SMS programming parameters with the owner.
9. Security contractor to coordinate all initial database partitioning and setup with the Owner prior to initial programming and card holder data entry.
10. Security contractor to coordinate final camera locations, desired views, and camera housing and mount requirements with the Owner prior to installation.
11. Security contractor to coordinate camera housing and mount finishes with the architect/owner prior to installation.
12. Security contractor to coordinate finishes and colors of all equipment with the architect/owner. Submit all finish and graphics for all equipment in public areas to the Engineer for approval prior to installation.
13. Security contractor to coordinate all requirement penetrations both interior and exterior with architect and construction manager.

14. Security contractor to coordinate all fire stopping with construction manager/architect as require by code.
15. Security contractor to coordinate with owner's IT for all network based requirements. This shall include but not be limited to IP address, DHCP server requirements, cyber security requirements, and network traffic management requirements.
16. Security contractor to coordinate all requirement of the turnstiles with the architect, engineer, and construction manager.
17. Installation methods must be in strict accordance with ANSI/BICSI 005-2016, owner's standards, and manufacturer's guidelines.
18. Mounting heights for all device must comply with ADA standards.
19. Security contractor shall be in compliance with the NEC, IBC, and other local codes that are required by the AHJ.

B. General

1. Security contractor to verify acceptance of each type of specified request-to-exit hardware for each application with local life safety code officials.
2. Security contractor to verify fail-safe and fail-secure lock requirements with the architect and engineer.
3. Contractor or equipment manufacturer logos or names shall not be visible on equipment in public areas.
4. Security contractor to provide tamper proof fasteners for all equipment in public areas. Fastener finish shall match equipment finish.

C. Conduit shall be used in all garage areas, and exposed areas. Contractor's conduit design layout shall be coordinated and approved by architect, engineer, and construction manager. All conduits shall have no more than a 40% fill at the end of the project.

D. If approval by architect/engineer, hanger assemblies located the garage areas and areas exposed to the weather, including; anchors, clamps, threaded rod, nuts, washers and pipe hanger shall be provided with a factory applied hot dipped galvanized coating. Any components or assemblies that require field modification, cutting, welding, or removal of the applied hot dipped galvanized coating shall be repainted with the appropriate coating.

E. Equipment: Installation requirements are as follows:

1. Data Gathering Panel Locations
  - a. Security contractor to provide the following:
    - 1) Configure security equipment as indicated in the Security Device Drawings.

- 2) Wire all power supply power fail alarm contacts in each equipment room as a single alarm input to the SMS.
    - 3) Wire each power supply low battery alarm contact as individual alarm inputs to the SMS.
  2. Data Gathering Panels
    - a. Security contractor to provide the following:
      - 1) Configure the system such that devices can be connected to spare input points, output points and card reader inputs on the Data Gathering Panel without requiring reconfiguration of the SMS.
      - 2) Configure the Data Gathering Panel IP communication chains such that no more than 12 Doors (including all possible spare card readers) shall be connected to each Data Gathering Panel IP chain. RS-232 and RS-485 chains without direct connection to an IP network is not permitted.
  3. Card Readers
    - a. Security contractor to provide the following:
      - 1) Wire card reader LEDs to indicate valid and invalid card reads, and door locked and unlocked conditions. All card reader LED indicators shall operate identically.
  4. Electric Locking Mechanisms
    - a. Security contractor to provide the following:
      - 1) Provide connection to electric locking mechanisms provided by the hardware contractor.
      - 2) Wire electric locking mechanism as indicated on the Security Device Drawings.
      - 3) Wire fail-safe electric locking mechanisms in accordance with local codes.
      - 4) Wire fail-secure electric locking mechanisms and power supplies such that locks remain powered and operational during a fire alarm condition or building power failure.
  5. Fire Alarm Interface
    - a. Security contractor to provide the following:
      - 1) Connect (hard wire) fail-safe electric and time delay locking mechanisms to the building fire alarm system for fail-safe release upon any fire alarm.

- 2) Interface with a single low voltage/low current normally closed dry contact from the fire alarm system provided by the fire alarm contractor in the Fire Command Center (FCC). The contact will open on any fire alarm condition.
- 3) Provide all additional UL listed fail-safe relays and power supplies necessary to interface to this contact and unlock all fail-safe doors.
- 4) Connect fail-safe relays and UL listed power supplies to standard building power. Connection of fail-safe devices to emergency or UPS power shall not be acceptable.
- 5) Reference the Security Device Drawings for fire alarm interface requirements.

6. IP Cameras

a. Security contractor to provide the following:

- 1) Field verify the exact location and positioning of all cameras with the Owner prior to installation.
- 2) Power all interior and exterior cameras from centrally located power supplies at each Data Gathering Panel location.
- 3) Field verify and confirm views with the Owner prior to final installation and adjust camera positions and lens sizes as required.
- 4) Coordinate all exterior camera mounting heights, and locations with architect/engineer.

F. System Programming and Data Entry

1. Security contractor to provide all initial system programming and setup of the SMS including, but not limited to the following:
  - a. Graphical maps and icons. Coordinate with the Engineer to obtain AutoCAD Owner/Architectural backgrounds for implementation as graphical maps. Import all AutoCAD background information provided by the Engineer and produce a complete set of graphical maps depicting all SMS points.
  - b. SMS card reader information. Coordinate all card reader values and text, including descriptors, alarm messages, Camera call up, map call up and identification with the Owner and Engineer.
  - c. Input and output points for the SMS. Coordinate all input and output priorities and text, including descriptors, alarm messages, camera call up, and map call up and identification with the Owner and Engineer.



- d. Initial system Card Reader information. Coordinate all Card Reader values and text, including descriptors, alarm messages, camera call up, map call up and identification, with the Owner.
  - e. Input and output points for the SMS. Coordinate all point priority and point text, including descriptors, alarm messages, camera call up, map call up and identification, with the Owner.
  - f. Initial camera call up and alarm information for interface with Video Management System.
  - g. Initial camera call up and alarm information for interface with Intercom System. Coordinate all inputs and outputs for the intercom system with the SMS for seamless action through the master station.
2. Security contractor to provide all initial system programming and setup of the Video Management System including, but not limited to the following:
- a. Initial setup for the interface with the SMS. The interface shall provide for automatic video surveillance Camera selection upon alarms within the SMS as defined in the Specification. Coordinate automatic video surveillance Camera selection, real-time record initialization, and record status alarm annunciation requirements with the Owner prior to programming.
  - b. On-screen alphanumeric identification of each VIDEO SURVEILLANCE Camera, on each Monitor. Coordinate descriptors with the Owner prior to programming.
  - c. Automatic selection of a VIDEO SURVEILLANCE Camera adjacent to a Card Reader upon an invalid card use. Coordinate automatic camera selection requirements with the Owner prior to system programming.
  - d. Programming triggers for the video surveillance analytical references.

### 3.4 WIRING TECHNIQUES

- A. Security contractor or construction manager to provide code compliant fire proofing techniques for all penetrations of fire rated partitions and slabs, where the penetrations are made by or used for installation of the Security System.
- B. Route all wire and cable as required to prevent interference and signal contamination of both security system cable and cable associated with other systems. Coordinate the routing of wire and cable requiring isolation from power, radio frequency (RF), telephone, etc. with the Owner.
- C. Separate 120 VAC and other line voltage cables from low voltage cables within enclosures.
- D. Wire nuts shall not be an acceptable means of connecting wire and cable. Use B-wire crimp connectors or equal.
- E. Splicing of cable is not acceptable. All cabling shall be home run back to its designated closet.

- F. Run all wire and cable continuous from device location to the final point of termination. No mid-run cable splices will be allowed unless approved by the Engineer.
- G. Securely fasten junction boxes to the building structure.
- H. Secure junction box covers with tamperproof screws
- I. Provide compression type fittings to secure cable at junction box openings.
- J. Make cable connection for device terminations in junction boxes with crimp type connectors. Connectors shall provide a hermetic seal and test probe access such that the circuit may be checked without breaking the connection.
- K. Ensure all that back boxes and junction boxes have the approved an UL listed cover.
- L. All RJ45 male connectors shall be UL listed.
- M. All security cabling shall be done in strict accordance with ANSI/BICSI 005-2016, Electronic Safety, and Security System Design, and Implementation.
- N. Component Connections
  - 1. Prepare wire ends for attachment to components in accordance with manufacturer recommendations.
  - 2. Wherever possible, and unless otherwise recommended by the manufacturer, connect individual wire conductors with crimp type spade lugs.
- O. Grounding
  - 1. Establish an earth ground connection within each Data Gathering Panel location. The intent of the earth ground is to prevent ground loops within security system circuits, ensure proper communications between system components and devices, and isolate security equipment from building electrical system noise.
  - 2. Connect all security equipment located at each Data Gathering Panel location to the earth ground connection at each location.
  - 3. Under no conditions shall the AC neutral, either in a power panel or in receptacle outlets, be used for a reference ground.
  - 4. Provide all necessary hardware and cable to properly ground security equipment.
  - 5. Ground all equipment according to the manufacturer recommendations for each piece of equipment. The Contractor shall be responsible for any damage to equipment or communications problems that may occur due to improper grounding.
- P. Testing
  - 1. Test all cabling for continuity before connection to data gathering panels, cameras etc.

### 3.5 POWER REQUIREMENTS

- A. Emergency backup 120 VAC power will be dedicated for the Security System as indicated on the Electrical Device Drawings. Coordinate with the Engineer to establish locations of security dedicated 120 VAC circuits.
- B. Connect to the AC power and provide UL listed power supplies and transformers to distribute low voltage power to the system components as required.
- C. Provide hinged cover terminal cabinets with tamper switches that are lockable for all power supplies, transformers and power distribution terminal strips. Provide all conduit and wiring from the AC power facilities to the terminal cabinets.
- D. All power supplies are to be installed in accordance with manufacturer's guidelines in an effort to maintain its UL listing.
- E. Surge Protection
  - 1. Provide protection against spikes, surges, noise, and other line problems for all system equipment and components.
  - 2. Protect all exterior and building-to-building video, control, power, signal cables and conductors against power surges. Video surge protectors shall not attenuate or reduce video and sync signals under normal conditions. Each surge protector shall be UL Listed.

### 3.6 LABELED DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. In no instance shall any UL labeled door or frame be drilled, cut, penetrated, or modified in any way.
- B. The Contractor shall be responsible for replacing any labeled door or frame that is modified without written approval from the Engineer.

### 3.7 LABELING

- A. Place wire identification numbers on each end of all conductors by using sleeve type, heat shrinkable markers. Wire markers shall be T&B Shrink-Kon Type HVM or equivalent. Install markers to be readable from left to right or top to bottom. Wire numbers shall be computer printed. Hand written labels shall not be acceptable.
- B. Mark all connectors with common designations for mating connectors. The connector designations shall be indicated on the record drawings.
- C. Permanently mark all terminals. Terminal and cable markings shall agree with markings shown on as-built drawing.
- D. Coil all spare conductors in the device backbox or panel wire way. Neatly bundle and tag conductors.
- E. All labeling shall be done in strict accordance with ANSI/TIA-606-B standard for labeling.

3.8 TRAINING

- A. Security contractor to coordinate with the Owner to establish a training outline and schedule.
- B. The training party shall provide the following:
  - 1. Training on a complete and fully operational system, equal to the system(s) being provided.
  - 2. All reference materials required to fully train personnel.
  - 3. Provide a minimum of 40 hours of end user training for all systems.
  - 4. Certification and Competence
    - a. Provide certification and competence evaluations for each trainee for each training session.
    - b. The trainer shall establish criteria for competence levels for the system(s). Submit criteria to the Owner for evaluation.
    - c. Return competence evaluations for each trainee directly to the Owner.
- C. Provide manufacturer-certified training as follows:
  - 1. SMS
    - a. Operator Training
      - 1) The manufacturer shall provide one initial 1-day (8 hours total) session on-site and shall include, but not be limited to all operating system procedures, system configuration, alarm acknowledgment, alarm response logging, and Graphics functionality.
      - 2) The manufacturer shall provide a one-day (eight hours total) session on site for a minimum of two Owner representatives and shall include those items unique to the installed SMS, VIDEO SURVEILLANCE, Video Recording, Intercom, and Guard Tour systems, and the SMS interfaces with other systems.
  - 2. VMS System
    - a. Operator Training
      - 1) Contractor
        - a) The security contractor shall provide 2, 1-day (16 hours total) sessions on site for a minimum of 4 Owner representatives (each session).

- b) Training shall include, but not be limited to all operating procedures, system configuration, video call-up, camera and monitor control, and Graphics functionality.

2) Follow-up Training

- a) The Security Contractor shall provide one four-hour training session each month for three months.
- b) Follow-up training shall begin one month after initial contractor training.
- c) Training shall include follow-up training and testing for system competence.

D. Telephone Support

- 1. The SMS manufacturers shall establish direct telephone support for the Owner during normal business hours.
- 2. The Contractor shall provide on call service during the warranty period to answer any questions the Owner's representatives might have.
- 3. The contractor shall provide 5 days of in service support to the owner. The technician shall be required to be on site during normal working hours, 8 a.m. to 5 p.m. and be available for after hours call back for service related events.

3.9 SYSTEM START-UP

- A. The Security System shall be complete and ready to operate prior to the Consultant's final acceptance of the system.
- B. Load all of the initial user database as defined in this Section into all programmable systems up to the inaugural day of beneficial use of the system. The Owner will assist in establishing procedural guidelines and in defining terminology and conditions unique to the Owner's operation.
- C. Label all controls as necessary to agree with their function.

3.10 SYSTEM ACCEPTANCE

- A. Final acceptance testing of the Work will be conducted by the manufacturer's certified rep.
- B. Prior to any final acceptance testing, the Security Contractor shall submit two sets of preliminary (draft) Record Drawings to the Engineer. The preliminary Record Drawings are to be used by the Engineer to conduct the system final test.

- C. Submit a paragraph by paragraph completion matrix indicating completion or delinquency for each item included in the Specification and all subsequent addenda and bulletins as part of the Work. Indicate completion of the requirement by the word "Completed" following each paragraph number. Indicate delinquency for the requirement by the words "To Be Completed" following the applicable paragraph number. Should work on any item be under way, but not yet fully complete, indicate the extent (or lack thereof) of completion to date, and the proposed date of completion.
- D. Conduct a complete test of the entire Security System and provide the Engineer with a written report on the results of that test. During the course of this test, calibrate and test all equipment, place the integrated Security System in service, and test the integrated system.
- E. Following completion of the initial testing and correction of any noted deficiencies, conduct a five day burn-in test. The intent of such test shall be to prove the Security System by placing it in near real operating conditions. During this period the Security System shall be fully functional and programmed such that all points, interfaces, controls, reports, messages, prompts, etc. can be exercised and validated. Record and correct any system anomaly, deficiency, or failure noted during this period. Scheduling of the final acceptance test shall be based on a review of the results of this burn-in test.
- F. Deliver a report describing the results of functional tests, burn-in tests, diagnostics, calibrations, corrections, and repairs including written certification to the Engineer that the installed complete Security System has been calibrated, tested, and is fully functional as specified herein.
- G. Prior to the final acceptance test, coordinate with the Engineer for security related construction clean-up and patch work requirements. Security equipment closets and similar areas should be free of accumulation of waste materials or rubbish caused by operations under the Contract. At completion of the Work, remove all waste materials, rubbish, the Contractor's and its subcontractors' tools, construction equipment, machinery and all surplus materials.
- H. Upon written notification from the Contractor that the Security System is completely installed, integrated and operational, and the burn-in testing completed, the Engineer will conduct a final acceptance test of the entire system.
- I. During the course of the final acceptance test by the Engineer, the Contractor shall be responsible for demonstrating that, without exception, the completed and integrated system complies with the contract requirements. ALL PHYSICAL AND FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS OF THE PROJECT SHALL BE DEMONSTRATED AND SHOWN. This demonstration will begin by comparing "as built" conditions of the Security System to requirements outlined in the Specification, item by item. Following the Specification compliance review, all Security System head-end equipment will be evaluated.
- J. In order to sufficiently demonstrate the Security System's functionality, the console operator on duty and his/her superior will be requested to perform certain daily operations inherent to the Security System. These operations may include, but not be limited to, manually locking and unlocking of doors within the SMS, verifying the status of current alarm/control points within the SMS, responding to alarms, adding/deleting personnel from the card holder database, camera call-up on various monitors, manipulation of PTZ cameras, changing setting on various pieces of equipment. As all of these operations depend heavily on the training outlined within the Specification, the Contractor shall have completed all of the required training prior to initiation of the final acceptance test.

- K. Demonstrate the functionality of the various interfaces between systems. This will include, but not be limited to, correct camera call-up on certain alarms within the SMS, generation of alarms from related systems failure (e.g. video loss detection alarms loss of communications, etc.), fire alarm system fail safe lock release, and interface to any externally controlled devices and/or database system(s).
- L. Following the Security System equipment and workstation review, the installation of all field devices will be inspected. This field inspection will weigh heavily on the general neatness and quality of installations, complete functionality of each individual device, and mounting, backbox and conduit requirements compliance.
- M. All equipment shall be on and fully operational during any and all testing procedures. Provide all personnel, equipment, and supplies necessary to perform all site testing. Provide a minimum of two employees familiar with the system for the final acceptance test. One employee shall be responsible for monitoring and verifying alarms while the other will be required to demonstrate the function of each device. Supply at least two two-way radios for use during the test. A manufacturer's representative may be present on site to answer any questions that may be beyond the technical capability of the Contractor's employees, if the Contractor so elects or by specific request of the Engineer or Owner, at no charge to the Engineer or Owner.
- N. Upon successful completion of the final acceptance test (or subsequent punch list retest) the Engineer will issue a letter of final acceptance.
- O. The Engineer retains the right to suspend and/or terminate testing at any time when the system fails to perform as specified. In the event that it becomes necessary to suspend the test, all of the Engineer's fees and expenses related to the suspended test will be deducted from the Contractor's retainage. Furthermore, in the event it becomes necessary to suspend the test, the Contractor shall work diligently to complete/repair all outstanding items to the condition specified in the Specification and as indicated on the Security Device Drawings. The Contractor shall supply the Engineer with a detailed completion schedule outlining phase by phase completion dates and a tentative date for a subsequent punch list retest. During the final acceptance test, no adjustments, repairs or modifications to the system will be conducted without the permission of the Engineer.

END OF SECTION

**SCHEDULE A  
GREENVALE ELEMENTARY  
NEW CAMERA SCHEDULE**

CAMERA SCHEDULE														INTEGRATION							
Device Number	Cable N=New E=Existing	Camera N=New XR= Existing to be Replaced	Mount C=Ceiling W=Wall P=Pendant	Type Interior/ Exterior	Field of View	Lens	Mega-Pixel Resolution	4K	Fixed	WDR	Record Rate (FPS)	Record on Motion	Basis of Design Model	Intrusion Camera Callup (Device Number)	Card Access Camera Callup (Device Number)	POE	IP ADDRESS	MAC ADDRESS			
GR 301	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W					
GR 302	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W					
GR 009	E	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W					
GR 304	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W					
GR305	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W					
GR 306	N	N	C	Interior	Doors	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W					
GR 307	N	N	W	Exterior	Courtyard	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W					
GR 315	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W					
GR 022	E	N	C	Interior	Cafeteria	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W					
GR 314	N	N	C	Interior	Custodian area	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W					
GR 313	N	N	C	Interior	Boiler room	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W					
GR 312	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W					
GR 021	E	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W					
GR 311	N	N	W	Interior	Stairway	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W					
GR 310	N	N	W	Interior	Stairway	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W					
GR 309	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W					
GR 308	N	N	C	Interior	Room	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W					
GR 007	E	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W					
GR 317	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W					
GR 013	E	N	W	Interior	Doors	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W					
GR 319	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W					
GR 003	E	N	W	Interior	Stairway	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W					
GR 320	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W					
GR 321	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W					
GR 322	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W					
GR 323	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W					
GR 324	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W					
GR 316	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W					
GR 318	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W					
GR 024	E	N	C	Interior	Door	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W					



SCHEDULE A  
ANN HUTCHINSON ELEMENTARY SCHOOL  
NEW CAMERA SCHEDULE

CAMERA SCHEDULE														INTEGRATION					
Device Number	Cable N=New E=Existing	Camera N=New XR= Existing to be Replaced	Mount C=Ceiling W=Wall P=Pendant	Type Interior/ Exterior	Field of View	Lens	Mega-Pixel Resolution	4K	Fixed	WDR	Record Rate (FPS)	Record on Motion	Basis of Design Model	Intrusion Camera Callup (Device Number)	Card Access Camera Callup (Device Number)	POE	IP ADDRESS	MAC ADDRESS	Comments
AH 301	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W			
AH 018	E	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W			
AH 302	N	N	W	Interior	Entry	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
AH 022	E	N	C	Interior	Office	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
AH 023	E	N	W	Interior	Stairway	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
AH 010	E	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W			
AH 007	E	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
AH 018	E	N	W	Exterior	Door	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W			
AH 303	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
AH 304	N	N	C	Interior	Door	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
AH 305	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
AH 306	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W			
AH 307	N	N	W	Interior	Stairway	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
AH 308	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
AH 309	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
AH 310	N	N	W	Interior	Gym	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
AH 311	N	N	W	Exterior	Field	12-48 mm	10 MP	4K	X	X	20 FPS	X	Axis Q1798-LE			POE 30W			
AH 312	N	N	W	Interior	Gym	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
AH 501	E	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
AH 313	N	N	W	Interior	Auditorium	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
AH 314	N	N	W	Interior	Auditorium	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
AH 315	N	N	W	Exterior	Field	12-48 mm	10 MP	4K	X	X	20 FPS	X	Axis Q1798-LE			POE 30W			
AH 316	N	N	C	Interior	Doors	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
AH 317	N	N	C	Interior	Bathroom doors	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
AH 318	N	N	C	Interior	Bathroom doors	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W			
AH 014	E	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W			
AH 319	N	N	W	Exterior	Field	12-48 mm	10 MP	4K	X	X	20 FPS	X	Axis Q1798-LE			POE 30W			
AH 321	N	N	C	Interior	Vestibule	3-8 mm	5MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
AH 320	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			

CAMERA SCHEDULE														INTEGRATION						
Device Number	Cable N=New E=Existing	Camera N=New XR= Existing to be Replaced	Mount C=Ceiling W=Wall P=Pendant PO=Pole	Type Interior/ Exterior	Field of View	Lens	Mega-Pixel Resolution	4K	Fixed	WDR	Record Rate (FPS)	Record on Motion	Basis of Design Model	Intrusion Camera Callup (Device Number)	Card Access Camera Callup (Device Number)	POE	IP ADDRESS	MAC ADDRESS		NOTE
WA 301	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W				
WA 302	N	N	W	Exterior	Driveway	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W				
WA 017	E	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W				
WA 303	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W				
WA 304	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade & Doors	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W				
WA 305	N	N	W	Exterior	Parking	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W				
WA 306	N	N	W	Exterior	Parking	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W				
WA 307	N	N	W	Interior	Gym	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W				
WA 308	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W				
WA 309	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W				
WA 310	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W				
WA 022	E	N	C	Interior	Entry	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W				
WA 312	N	N	W	Interior	Door	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W				
WA 311	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W				
WA 501	N	N	PO	Exterior	Field	12-48 mm	10 MP	4K	X	X	20 FPS	X	Axis Q1798-LE			POE 30W				
WA 502	N	N	PO	Exterior	Playground	12-48 mm	10 MP	4K	X	X	20 FPS	X	Axis Q1798-LE			POE 30W				
WA 021	E	N	C	Interior	Kitchen Door	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W				
WA 313	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W				
WA 314	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W				
WA 013	E	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W				
WA 315	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W				
WA 316	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W				
WA 317	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W				
WA 318	N	N	W	Interior	Stairway	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W				
WA 319	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W				
WA 007	E	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W				
WA 320	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W				
WA 321	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W				
WA 322	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W				
WA 323	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W				
WA 324	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W				
WA 019	E	N	C	Interior	Reception	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W				

SCHEDULE A  
EASTCHESTER MIDDLE SCHOOL  
NEW CAMERA SCHEDULE

CAMERA SCHEDULE														INTEGRATION						
Device Number	Cable N=New E=Existing	Camera N=New XR=Existing to be Replaced	Mount C=Ceiling W=Wall P=Pendant CO=Corner	Type Interior/ Exterior	Field of View	Lens	Mega-Pixel Resolution	4K/180°	Fixed	WDR	Record Rate (FPS)	Record on Motion	Basis of Design Model	Intrusion Camera Callup (Device Number)	Card Access Camera Callup (Device Number)	POE	IP ADDRESS	MAC ADDRESS		NOTES
MS 005	E	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W				
MS 009	E	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W				
MS 011	E	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W				
MS 020	E	N	W	Interior	Lobby	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W				
MS 033	E	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W				
MS 051	E	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W				
MS 301	N	N	W	Exterior	Ramp	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W				
MS 302	N	N	CO	Interior	Elevator	1.8 mm	3 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	P9106-V			POE 4W				
MS 303	N	N	W	Exterior	Field	12-48 mm	10 MP	4K	X	X	20 FPS	X	Axis Q1798-LE			POE 30W				
MS 304	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade & Doors	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W				
MS 305	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W				
MS 306	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W				
MS 307	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W				
MS 308	N	N	W	Exterior	Field	12-48 mm	10 MP	4K	X	X	20 FPS	X	Axis Q1798-LE			POE 30W				
MS 309	N	N	W	Exterior	Field	12-48 mm	10 MP	4K	X	X	20 FPS	X	Axis Q1798-LE			POE 30W				
MS 310	N	N	W	Exterior	Field	12-48 mm	10 MP	4K	X	X	20 FPS	X	Axis Q1798-LE			POE 30W				
MS 311	N	N	W	Exterior	Door	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3205-LVE			POE 15W				
MS 312	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W				
MS 313	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.2 mm	8 MP	180°	X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis P3807-PVE			POE 15W				
MS 314	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W				
MS 315	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3-8 mm	5 MP		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W				
MS 501	E	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.2 mm	8 MP	180°	X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis P3807-PVE			POE 15W				

SCHEDULE A  
EASTCHESTER HIGH SCHOOL  
NEW CAMERA SCHEDULE

CAMERA SCHEDULE														INTEGRATION					
Device Number	Cable N=New E=Existing	Camera N=New XR= Existing to be Replaced	Mount C=Ceiling W=Wall P=Pendant	Type Interior/ Exterior	Field of View	Lens	Mega-Pixel Resolution	4K/180°	Fixed	WDR	Record Rate (FPS)	Record on Motion	Basis of Design Model	Intrusion Camera Callup (Device Number)	Card Access Camera Callup (Device Number)	POE	IP ADDRESS	MAC ADDRESS	NOTES
HS 003	E	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 007	E	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 008	E	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 013	E	N	W	Interior	Stairway	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 015	E	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.2 mm	8 MP	180°	X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis P3807-PVE			POE 15W			
HS 019	E	N	W	Interior	Stairway	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 026	E	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 042	E	N	W	Exterior	Fields	12-48 mm	10 MP	4K	X	X	20 FPS	X	Axis Q1798-LE			POE 30W			
HS 042	E	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 045	E	N	C	Interior	Office	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 058	E	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 067	E	N	C	Interior	Main Entry	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 082	E	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 083	E	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 110	E	N	W	Exterior	Façade & Stair door	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W			
HS 163	E	N	C	Interior	Cafeteria	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 164	E	N	C	Interior	Cafeteria	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 262	N	N	C	Interior	Main Entry	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 301	N	N	W	Interior	Stairway	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 302	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade & Gym Doors	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W			
HS 303	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W			
HS 304	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.2 mm	MP	180°	X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis P3807-PVE			POE 15W			
HS 305	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade & Courtyard	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3205-LVE			POE 15W			
HS 306	N	N	W	Interior	Fitness	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 307	N	N	W	Interior	Stairway	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 308	N	N	C	Interior	Fitness	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 309	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3205-LVE			POE 15W			
HS 310	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 311	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 312	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade & Courtyard	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W			
HS 313	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade & Courtyard	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W			
HS 314	N	N	C	Interior	Entry	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 315	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade & Doors	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W			
HS 316	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 317	N	N	W	Exterior	Fields	12-48 mm	10 MP	4K	X	X	20 FPS	X	Axis Q1798-LE			POE 30W			
HS 318	N	N	W	Exterior	Fields	12-48 mm	10 MP	4K	X	X	20 FPS	X	Axis Q1798-LE			POE 30W			
HS 319	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 320	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade and Doors	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 321	N	N	W	Exterior	Parking	12-48 mm	10 MP	4K	X	X	20 FPS	X	Axis Q1798-LE			POE 30W			
HS 322	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W			
HS 323	N	N	C	Interior	Stairway	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 324	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 325	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 326	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 327	N	N	W	Interior	Stairway	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 328	N	N	W	Exterior	Doors	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W			
HS 329	N	N	C	Interior	Bathroom door	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 330	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 331	N	N	W	Interior	Auditorium	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 332	N	N	W	Exterior	Driveline	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W			
HS 333	N	N	W	Exterior	Driveline	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W			
HS 334	N	N	W	Exterior	Driveline	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W			
HS 335	N	N	W	Exterior	Façade and Doors	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W			
HS 336	N	N	W	Interior	Lobby	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 337	N	N	C	Interior	Office	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 338	N	N	W	Exterior	Fields	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LVE			POE 15W			
HS 339	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 340	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 341	N	N	W	Interior	Stairway	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 342	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 343	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 344	N	N	C	Interior	Bathroom door	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 345	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 346	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 347	N	N	W	Interior	Auditorium	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 348	N	N	W	Interior	Stairway	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 349	N	N	W	Interior	Stairway	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 350	N	N	W	Interior	Stairway	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 351	N	N	C	Interior	Stairway	3.2 mm	8 MM	180°	X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis P3807-PVE			POE 15W			
HS 352	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 353	N	N	C	Interior	Bathroom door	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			
HS 354	N	N	C	Interior	Corridor	3.2 mm	8 MM	180°	X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis P3807-PVE			POE 15W			
HS 356	N	N	C	Interior	Bathroom door	3.2 mm	8 MM	180°	X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis P3807-PVE			POE 15W			
HS 357	N	N	C	Interior	Bathroom door	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W			

SCHEDULE A  
EASTCHESTER HIGH SCHOOL  
NEW CAMERA SCHEDULE

CAMERA SCHEDULE														INTEGRATION						
Device Number	Cable N=New E=Existing	Camera N=New XR= Existing to be Replaced	Mount C=Ceiling W=Wall P=Pendant	Type Interior/ Exterior	Field of View	Lens	Mega-Pixel Resolution	4K/180*	Fixed	WDR	Record Rate (FPS)	Record on Motion	Basis of Design Model	Intrusion Camera Callup (Device Number)	Card Access Camera Callup (Device Number)	POE	IP ADDRESS	MAC ADDRESS		NOTES
HS 358	N	N	W	Interior	Stairway	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W				
HS 359	N	N	W	Interior	Stairway	3.1 mm	1080P		X	X	30 FPS	X	Axis 3267-LV			POE 15W				

## EASTCHESTER UNION FREE SCHOOL DISTRICT

[illegible]

## SECTION 238100 – FIRE DETECTION AND ALARM

### PART 1 – GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENT

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the project: (1) the contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contractor [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

#### 1.2 WORK INCLUDED

- A. The work covered by this Section of the Specification shall include all labor, equipment, materials and services to furnish and install an extension to the existing fire alarm system of the addressable, non-coded type. It shall be complete with all necessary hardware, software and memory specifically tailored for this installation. It shall be possible to permanently modify the software on site by using a plug-in programmer. The system shall consist of, but not be limited to, the following:
  - 1. Remote Annunciators with semi flush backbox.
  - 2. Addressable manual fire alarm stations.
  - 3. Addressable analog area smoke detectors.
  - 4. Addressable analog heat detectors.
  - 5. Visual notification appliances - strobes.
  - 6. Sprinkler supervisory switches and tamper switch supervision.
  - 7. Battery standby.

#### 1.3 APPLICABLE CODES AND STANDARDS

- A. All equipment shall be UL listed for its intended use and conform to the latest UL Standards.
- B. Underwriters Laboratories Inc.: The system and all components shall be listed by Underwriters Laboratories Inc. for use in fire protective signaling system under the following standards as applicable:
  - UL 864/UOJZ, APOU Control Units for Fire Protective Signaling Systems.
  - UL 268 Smoke Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems.
  - UL 521 Heat Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems.
  - UL 38 Manually Activated Signaling Boxes.
  - UL 1481 Power Supplies for Fire Protective Signaling Systems.
- C. This installation shall comply with:
  - 1. Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)
  - 2. National Electric Code, Article 760.
  - 3. National Fire Protection Association Standards: NFPA72
  - 4. Local and State Building Codes and the Local Authorities Having Jurisdiction.
  - 5. International Standards Organization (ISO): ISO-9001
  - 6. New York State Building Code (Chapter 9, Mechanical Code) and other sections as they apply.
  - 7. New York State Education Department.

#### 1.4 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Secure permits and approvals prior to installation.
- B. Submit letter of approval for installation before requesting acceptance of system.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Provide list of all types of equipment and components provided. This shall be incorporated as part of a Table of Contents, which will also indicate the manufacturer's part number, the description of the part, and the part number of the manufacturer's product datasheet on which the information can be found.
- B. Provide description of operation of the system (Sequence of Operation), similar to that provided in Part 2 of this Section of the Specifications, to include any and all exceptions, variances or substitutions listed. Any such exceptions, variances or substitutions that were not listed and are identified in the submittal, shall be grounds for immediate disapproval without comment. The sequence of operation shall be project specific, and shall provide individual sequences for every type of alarm, supervisory, or trouble condition that may occur as part of normal or off-normal system use.
- C. Provide manufacturer's printed product data, catalog cuts and description of any special installation procedures. Poorly photocopied and/or illegible product data sheets shall not be acceptable and shall be rejected. All product datasheets shall be highlighted or stamped with arrows to indicate the specific components being submitted for approval.
- D. Provide manufacturer's installation instruction manual for specified system.
- E. Provide samples of various items when requested.
- F. Provide copy of NYS License to perform such work.
- G. Provide copies of NICET Level II Fire Alarm certifications for the two (2) technicians assigned to this project.
- H. Provide shop drawings as follows:
  - 1. Coversheet with project name, address and drawing index.
  - 2. General notes drawing with peripheral device backbox size information, part numbers, device mounting height information, and the names, addresses, point of contact, and telephone numbers of all contract project team members.
  - 3. Device riser diagram that individually depicts all control panels, annunciators, addressable devices, and notification appliances. Shall include a specific, proposed point descriptor above each addressable device. Shall include a specific, discrete point address that shall correspond to addresses depicted on the device layout floor plans. Drawing shall provide wire specifications, and wire tags shown on all conductors depicted on the riser diagram. All circuits shall have designations that shall correspond with those require on the control panel and floor plan drawings. End-of-line resistors (and values) shall be depicted.
  - 4. Control panel termination drawing(s). Shall depict internal component placement and all internal and field termination points. Drawing shall provide a detail indicating where conduit penetrations shall be made, so as to avoid conflicts with internally mounted batteries. For each additional data gathering panel, a separate control panel drawing shall be provided, which clearly indicated the designation, service and location of the control enclosure. End-of-line resistors (and values) shall be depicted.
  - 5. See section 3.4 DOCUMENTATION AND TRAINING for other documents relating to this section.
  - 6. Device typical wiring diagram drawing(s) shall be provided which depict all system components, and their respective field wiring termination points. Wire type, gauge, and jacket shall also be indicated. When an addressable module is used in multiple configurations for monitoring or controlling various types of equipment, different device typical diagrams shall be provided. End-of-line resistors (and values) shall be depicted.
  - 7. Device layout floor plans shall be created for every area served by the fire alarm system. CAD Files (AutoCAD – latest edition) shall be provided by the Commissioner for the fire



alarm system equipment vendor in the preparation of the floor plans. Floor plans shall indicate accurate locations for all control and peripheral devices. Drawings shall be NO LESS THAN 1/8 INCH SCALE. All addressable devices shall be depicted with a discrete address that corresponds with that indicated on the Riser Diagram. All notification appliances shall also be provided with a circuit address that corresponds to that depicted on the Riser Diagram. If individual floors need to be segmented to accommodate the 1/8" scale requirements, KEY PLANS and BREAK-LINES shall be provided on the plans in an orderly and professional manner. End-of-line resistors (and values) shall be depicted.

8. Contained in the title block of each drawing shall be symbol legends with device counts, wire tag legends, circuit schedules for all addressable and notification appliance circuits, the project name/address, and a drawing description which corresponds to that indicated in the drawing index on the coversheet drawing. A section of each drawing title block shall be reserved for revision numbers and notes. The initial submission shall be Revision 0, with Revision A, B, or C as project modifications require.
- I. Battery calculations shall be provided on a per power supply/charger basis based on 24 hours of supervision and 45 minutes of alarm. These calculations shall clearly indicate the quantity of devices, the device part numbers, the supervisory current draw, the alarm current draw, totals for all categories, and the calculated battery requirements. Battery calculations shall also reflect all control panel component, remote annunciator, and auxiliary relay current draws. Failure to provide these calculations shall be grounds for the complete rejection of the submittal package.
- J. Table of contents, product data sheets, sequences of operation, battery calculations, installation instructions, licenses, NICET certifications and B-Size (blackline) reduced shop drawings shall be provided by the fire alarm vendor as part of a single, spiral bound submittal book. The submittal book shall have laminated covers indicating the project address, SED number, system type, and contractor. The book shall consist of labeled dividers, and shall not exceed 9 1/2" in width, and 11 1/2" in height. No less than three (3) sets of submittal booklets shall be provided to the Commissioner for review and comment. Additional copies may be required at no additional cost to the project.
- K. Scale drawing sets shall be submitted along with the submittal booklets. These drawings may be either D-Size or E-Size Blueline drawings and of a sufficient resolution to be completely read. Sets shall be bound and folded so as to not take up more than 100 square inches of space. No less than three (3) sets of scale drawing sets shall be provided to the Commissioner for review and comment. Additional copies may be required at no additional cost to the project.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. All work performed and all material and equipment furnished under this contract shall be free from defects and shall remain so for a period of at least one (1) year from the date of Substantial Completion.

## PART II - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. The catalog numbers used are those of Edwards EST or approved equal.
- B. All products used shall be of a single manufacturer. Submission of notification appliances, auxiliary relays, or documentation from other than a single manufacturer shall not be acceptable and will be grounds for immediate disapproval without comment.

## 2.2 CIRCUITING GUIDELINES

- A. Each Signaling Line Circuit (SLC) shall be circuited so device loading is not to exceed 80% of loop capacity in order to leave for space for future devices. The loop shall have Class B operation. Each DGP shall include an SLC loop on a per floor basis. T-Tapping a selected loop to cover an alternate floor shall not be accepted.
- B. NAC Circuits shall have Class B operation. Each of the following types of alarm notification appliances shall be circuited as shown on the drawings but shall be typically as follows:
  - 1. Audible Signals: Provide sufficient spare capacity to assure that the addition of five (5) audible devices can be supported without the need for addition control components (power supplies, signal circuit modules, amplifiers, batteries, etc.)
  - 2. Visual Signals Provide sufficient spare capacity to assure that the addition of three (3) visual devices can be supported without the need for addition control components (power supplies, signal circuit modules, batteries, etc.)
- C. The network riser shall be wired NFPA Style 7 (Class A with isolation).
- D. Where it is necessary to interface conventional initiating devices provide intelligent input modules to supervise Class B zone wiring.
- E. Each of the following types of devices or equipment shall be provided with supervised circuits as shown on the drawings but shall be typically as follows:
  - 1. Sprinkler Valve Supervisory Switches: Provide one (1) supervisory module circuit for each sprinkler valve supervisory switch.
  - 2. When waterflow and tamper switches exist at the same location, provide one (1) dual input addressable module. When odd numbers of devices exist at a single location, provide additional single input addressable modules.
- F. Provide a dedicated 24VDC circuit to feed all auxiliary relays required for inductive loads. Circuits shall be supervised via an end-of-line relay and addressable input module. Auxiliary relays shall not derive their power from the starter or load being controlled.
- G. In no case shall any fire alarm circuit be sized beyond 80% of circuit capacity.

## 2.4 COMPONENTS

- A. Intelligent Devices — General: Each remote device shall have a microprocessor with non-volatile memory to support its functionality and serviceability. Each device shall store as required for its functionality the following data: device serial number, device address, device type, personality code, date of manufacture, hours in use, time and date of last alarm, amount of environmental compensation left/used, last maintenance date, job/project number, current detector sensitivity values, diagnostic information (trouble codes) and algorithms required to process sensor data and perform communications with the loop controller. Each device shall be capable of electronic addressing, either automatically or application programmed assigned, to support physical/electrical mapping and *supervision by location*. Setting a device's address by physical means shall not be necessary.
- B. Intelligent Detectors — General: The System Intelligent Detectors shall be capable of full digital communications using both broadcast and polling protocol. Each detector shall be capable of performing independent fire detection algorithms. The fire detection algorithm shall measure sensor signal dimensions, time patterns and combine different fire parameters to increase reliability and distinguish real fire conditions from unwanted deceptive nuisance alarms. Signal patterns that are not typical of fires shall be eliminated by digital filters. Devices not capable of combining different fire parameters or employing digital filters shall not be acceptable. Each detector shall have an integral microprocessor capable of making alarm decisions based on fire

parameter information stored in the detector head. Distributed intelligence shall improve response time by decreasing the data flow between detector and analog loop controller. Detectors not capable of making independent alarm decisions shall not be acceptable. Maximum total analog loop response time for detectors changing state shall be 0.5 seconds. Each detector shall have a separate means of displaying communication and alarm status. A green LED shall flash to confirm communication with the analog loop controller. A red LED shall flash to display alarm status. The detector shall be capable of identifying up to 32 diagnostic codes. This information shall be available for system maintenance. The diagnostic code shall be stored at the detector. Each smoke detector shall be capable of transmitting pre-alarm and alarm signals in addition to the normal, trouble and need cleaning information. It shall be possible to program control panel activity to each level. Each smoke detector may be individually programmed to operate at any one of five (5) sensitivity settings. Each detector microprocessor shall contain an environmental compensation algorithm that identifies and sets ambient "Environmental Thresholds" approximately six times an hour. The microprocessor shall continually monitor the environmental impact of temperature, humidity, other contaminants as well as detector aging. The process shall employ digital compensation to adapt the detector to both 24-hour long term and 4-hour short-term environmental changes. The microprocessor shall monitor the environmental compensation value and alert the system operator when the detector approaches 80% and 100% of the allowable environmental compensation value. Differential sensing algorithms shall maintain a constant differential between selected detector sensitivity and the "learned" base line sensitivity. The base line sensitivity information shall be updated and permanently stored at the detector approximately once every hour. The intelligent analog detectors shall be suitable for mounting on any Signature Series or approved equal detector mounting base.

- C. Fixed Temperature/Rate of Rise Heat Detector/Combination Heat and CO Detector, SIGA2-HRS, SIGA2-HCOS or approved equal: Provide intelligent combination fixed temperature/rate-of-rise heat detectors SIGA-HRS or approved equal. The heat detector shall have a low mass thermistor heat sensor and operate at a fixed temperature and at a temperature rate-of-rise. It shall continually monitor the temperature of the air in its surroundings to minimize thermal lag to the time required to process an alarm. The integral microprocessor shall determine if an alarm condition exists and initiate an alarm based on the analysis of the data. Systems using central intelligence for alarm decisions shall not be acceptable. The intelligent heat detector shall have a nominal fixed temperature alarm point rating of 135°F (57°C) and a rate-of-rise alarm point of 15°F (9°C) per minute. The heat detector shall be rated for ceiling installation at a minimum of 70 ft (21.3m) centers and be suitable for wall mount applications. Where shown on the project plans, include SIGA2-HCOS combination Heat and Carbon Monoxide (CO) detector or approved equal. The combination Heat and CO device shall report separately to the control panel where a heat condition is considered a fire alarm and a CO condition is a supervisory alarm with separate and unique evacuation sequence.
- D. Photoelectric Smoke Detector, SIGA2-PS or approved equal: Provide intelligent photoelectric smoke detectors SIGA2-PS or approved equal. The analog photoelectric detector shall utilize a light scattering type photoelectric smoke sensor to sense changes in air samples from its surroundings. The integral microprocessor shall dynamically examine values from the sensor and initiate an alarm based on the analysis of data. Systems using central intelligence for alarm decisions shall not be acceptable. The detector shall continually monitor any changes in sensitivity due to the environmental affects of dirt, smoke, temperature, aging and humidity. The information shall be stored in the integral processor and transferred to the analog loop controller for retrieval using a laptop PC or the SIGA-PRO Signature Program/Service Tool or approved equal. The photo detector shall be rated for ceiling installation at a minimum of 30 ft (9.1m) centers and be suitable for wall mount applications. The photoelectric smoke detector shall be suitable for direct insertion into air ducts up to 3 ft (0.91m) high and 3 ft (0.91m) wide with air velocities up to 5,000 ft/min. (0-25.39 m/sec) without requiring specific duct detector housings or supply tubes. The percent smoke obscuration per foot alarm set point shall be field selectable to

any of five sensitivity settings ranging from 1.0% to 3.5%. The photo detector shall be suitable for operation in the following environment: Temperature: 32°F to 120°F (0°C to 49°C), Humidity: 0-93% RH, non-condensing, Elevation: no limit.

- E. Standard Detector Mounting Bases, SIGA-SB / SIGA-SB4 or approved equal: Provide standard detector mounting bases SIGA-SB suitable for mounting on North American 1-gang, 3½" or 4" octagon box and 4" square box. The base shall, contain no electronics, support all Signature Series detector types and have the following minimum requirements: Removal of the respective detector shall not affect communications with other detectors, Terminal connections shall be made on the room side of the base, bases that must be removed to gain access to the terminals shall not be acceptable. The base shall be capable of supporting one (1) Signature Series SIGA-LED Remote Alarm LED Indicator or approved equal. Provide remote LED alarm indicators where shown on the plans.
- F. Duct Detector Housing, SIGA-SD or approved equal: Provide model SIGA-SD or approved equal Low profile intelligent addressable DUCT smoke detector as indicated on the project plans. Provide for variations in duct air velocity between 100 and 4,000 feet per minute and include a wide sensitivity range of .79 to 2.46%/ft. Obscuration. Include one Form-C shut down relay rated 2.0 amps @ 30 Vdc and also include slave high contact relays if required. Provide an air exhaust tube and an air sampling inlet tube that extends into the duct air stream up to ten feet. The addressable DUCT housing shall be suitable for extreme environments, including a temperature range of -20 to 158 degrees F (-29 to 70 degrees Celsius) and offer a harsh environment gasket option. Provide Remote Alarm LED Indicators SIGA-LED or approved equal and/or remote test station model SD-TRK or approved equal as indicated on the project plans.
- G. Intelligent Modules — General: It shall be possible to address each Intelligent Signature Series module or approved equal without the use of DIP or rotary switches. Devices using DIP switches for addressing shall not be acceptable. The personality of multifunction modules shall be programmable at site to suit conditions and may be changed at any time using a personality code downloaded from the Analog Loop Controller. Modules requiring EPROM, PROM, ROM changes or DIP switch and/or jumper changes shall not be acceptable. The modules shall have a minimum of 2 diagnostic LEDs mounted behind a finished cover plate. A green LED shall flash to confirm communication with the loop controller. A red LED shall flash to display alarm status. The module shall be capable of storing up to 24 diagnostic codes which can be retrieved for troubleshooting assistance. Input and output circuit wiring shall be supervised for open and ground faults. The module shall be suitable for operation in the following environment:  
Temperature: 32°F to 120°F (0°C to 49°C), Humidity: 0-93% RH, non-condensing.
- H. Single Input Module, SIGA-CT1 (Waterflow Detectors, Tamper Switches etc.) or approved equal: Provide intelligent single input modules SIGA-CT1 or approved equal. The Single Input Module shall provide one (1) supervised Class B input circuit capable of a minimum of 4 personalities, each with a distinct operation. The module shall be suitable for mounting on North American 2 ½" (64mm) deep 1-gang boxes and 1 ½" (38mm) deep 4" square boxes with 1-gang covers. The single input module shall support the following circuit types: Normally-Open Alarm Latching (Manual Stations, Heat Detectors, etc.), Normally-Open Alarm Delayed Latching (Waterflow Switches), Normally-Open Active Non-Latching (Monitor, Fans, Dampers, Doors, etc.), Normally-Open Active Latching (Supervisory, Tamper Switches).
- I. Dual Input Module, SIGA-CT2 or approved equal: Provide intelligent dual input modules SIGA-CT2 or approved equal. The Dual Input Module shall provide two (2) supervised Class B input circuits each capable of a minimum of 4 personalities, each with a distinct operation. The module shall be suitable for mounting on North American 2 ½" deep 1-gang boxes and 1 ½" (38mm) deep 4" square boxes with 1-gang covers. The dual input module shall support the following circuit types: Normally-Open Alarm Latching (Manual Stations, Heat Detectors, etc.), Normally-Open Alarm Delayed Latching (Waterflow Switches), Normally-Open Active Non-Latching (Monitor, Fans, Dampers, Doors, etc.), Normally-Open Active Latching (Supervisory, Tamper Switches).

- J. Single Input Signal Module, SIGA-CC1 or approved equal: Provide intelligent single input signal modules SIGA-CC1 or approved equal. The Single Input (Single Riser Select) Signal Module shall provide one (1) supervised Class B output circuit capable of a minimum of 2 personalities, each with a distinct operation. When selected as a telephone power selector, the module shall be capable of generating its own "ring tone". The module shall be suitable for mounting on North American 2 ½" (64mm) deep 2-gang boxes and 1 ½" (38mm) deep 4" square boxes with 2-gang covers, or European 100mm square boxes. The single input signal module shall support the following operations: Audible/Visible Signal Power Selector (Polarized 24 Vdc @ 2A).
- K. Control Relay Module, SIGA-CR or approved equal: Provide intelligent control relay modules SIGA-CR or approved equal. The Control Relay Module shall provide one form "R" dry relay contact rated at 2 amps @ 24 Vdc to control external appliances or equipment shutdown. The control relay shall be rated for pilot duty and releasing systems. The position of the relay contact shall be confirmed by the system firmware. The control relay module shall be suitable for mounting on North American 2 ½" (64mm) deep 1-gang boxes and 1 ½" deep 4" square boxes with 1-gang covers.
- L. Manual Pull Station, SIGA-270 or approved equal: Provide intelligent single action fire alarm pull stations as indicated on the project plans. The fire alarm station shall be of metal construction with an internal toggle switch. Finish the station in red with silver "PULL IN CASE OF FIRE" English lettering. The manual station shall be suitable for mounting on North American 2 ½" (64mm) deep 1-gang boxes and 1 ½" (38mm) deep 4" square boxes with 1-gang covers. It shall be possible to address each Signature Series fire alarm pull station without the use of DIP or rotary switches. Devices using DIP switches for addressing shall not be acceptable. The manual stations shall have a minimum of 2 diagnostic LEDs mounted on their integral, factory assembled single or two stage input module. A green LED shall flash to confirm communication with the loop controller. A red LED shall flash to display alarm status. The station shall be capable of storing up to 24 diagnostic codes that can be retrieved for troubleshooting assistance. Input circuit wiring shall be supervised for open and ground faults. Fire alarm pull stations shall be suitable for temperatures 32°F to 120°F (0°C to 49°C), Humidity: 0-93% RH, non-condensing.
- M. Notification Appliances – General: All appliances shall be UL Listed for Fire Protective Service. All strobe appliances or combination appliances with strobes shall be capable of providing the "Equivalent Facilitation" which is allowed under the Americans with Disabilities Act accessibility guidelines (ADA(AG)), and shall be UL 1971, and ULC S526 Listed. All appliances shall be of the same manufacturer as the Fire Alarm Control Panel (NO EXCEPTIONS) specified to insure absolute compatibility between the appliances and the control panels, and to insure that the application of the appliances are done in accordance with the single manufacturers' instructions. Any appliances that do not meet the above requirements, and are submitted for use must show written proof of their compatibility for the purpose intended. Such proof shall be in the form of documentation from THE CONTROL PANEL MANUFACTURER clearly stating that the control equipment (as submitted) is 100% compatible with the submitted Notification Appliances.
- N. Multi-Voltage Control Relays, MR-200 Series or approved equal: Provide remote control relays connected to supervised ancillary circuits for control of fans, dampers, door releases, etc. Relay contact ratings shall be DPDT and rated for 10 amperes at 115 Vac. A single relay may be energized from a voltage source of 24 Vdc, 24 Vac, 115 Vac, or 230 Vac. A red LED shall indicate the relay is energized. A metal enclosure shall be provided.
- O. Fire alarm equipment shall be powered through an approved Fuse Disconnect Switch (FDS) connected ahead of the main service switch. The FDS shall be heavy duty (200,000 rms short circuit amps) safety switch @30 amps minimum, painted red, include a ground and Neutral kit with grounding screw (to bond neutral), include a padlock with Y1 cylinder keyed to a NYC/FDNY 2642 key (use ABUS re-keyable 83-45 or equivalent lock). All wiring shall be #10 minimum THHN or equivalent run in ¾ inch EMT/RGS and in accordance with NYC requirements. The ground to the FDS shall be made using a NYC accepted method (see NYC electrical code), and the ground wire to the FDS shall be #8 minimum (larger if necessary to meet feed size). The

equipment ground leaving from the FDS connecting to the fire alarm equipment shall include a #10 green ground. The FDS panel shall bear an engraved white-core phenolic or bakelite identification nameplate stating in minimum one-quarter inch (1/4") high white letters on a red background "FIRE ALARM FUSED DISCONNECT".

- P. Where additional circuits are required by the fire alarm system, a Fused Cutout, properly sized shall be included, wired after the FDS. The size of the fuses shall be sized appropriately but be twenty (20) amperes minimum. The fused cut-out panel shall bear an engraved white-core phenolic or bakelite identification nameplate stating in minimum one-quarter inch (1/4") high white letters on a red background "FIRE ALARM FUSED CUT-OUT". The neutral shall not be bonded in the Fused cutout".

### PART III - EXECUTION 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. The entire system shall be installed in a workmanlike manner, in accordance with approved manufacturer's wiring diagram. The contractor shall furnish all conduit, wiring, outlet boxes, junction boxes, cabinets and similar devices necessary for the complete installation. All wiring shall be of the type recommended by the manufacturer, and specified with in.
- B. All penetration of floor slabs and firewalls shall be sleeved (1" conduit minimum) fire stopped in accordance with all local fire codes.
- C. End of Line Resistors shall be furnished as required for mounting as directed by the manufacturer. Devices containing end-of-line resistors shall be appropriately labeled. Devices should be labeled so removal of the device is not required to identify the EOL device.
- D. All manual pull stations shall be mounted 42 - 48 inches above the finished floor, as measured to the handle.
- E. All audio/visual devices shall be mounted 80 inches above the finished floor, as measured to the lens. Devices shall be mounted no less than 6 inches from the ceiling. Audio visual devices shall be mounted per NFPA 72.
- F. No area smoke detectors shall be mounted within 36 inches of any HVAC supply, return air register or lighting fixture.
- G. No area smoke or heat detector shall be mounted within 12 inches of any wall. All detectors shall be installed in strict accordance with NFPA 72 as amended in Appendix Q guidelines for such devices.
- H. All mechanical rooms, boiler rooms, gymnasiums, wiring closets, custodian rooms, attic spaces, etc. or areas with no hung ceilings shall be piped with 3/4" conduit and installed as necessary by the electrical code. All areas in public view shall be in metal conduit. All boxes must be painted red and labeled "FIRE ALARM".
- I. All addressable modules shall be mounted within 36 inches of the monitored or controlled point of termination. This shall include, but is not necessarily limited to, fan shutdown, elevator recall, shunt trip, sprinkler status points, or door release. Label all addressable modules as to their function.
- J. All low voltage wiring terminated to the fire alarm system shall be PLENUM RATED with no exceptions and no less than No. 12 AWG in size for NAC circuits and 16 AWG for Initiating Circuits, and solid copper per the NYC Electrical code. Exposed wire above 8ft AFF shall be 150 degrees C and as specified in the electrical code.
- K. All line voltage (120VAC) wiring shall be no less than No. 12 AWG in size, and solid copper. This shall include all system grounding. FACP must have a DEDICATED fused disconnect arranged per the Electrical code.
- L. All wiring shall be color-coded throughout, to National Electrical Code standards.

- M. Power-limited/Non-power-limited NEC wiring standards SHALL BE OBSERVED.
- N. All junction box covers shall be painted red and labeled FIRE ALARM SYSTEM.
- O. Fire alarm system wiring shall not co-mingle with any other system wiring in the facility. Conduits shall not be shared under any circumstance. Only when fire alarm wiring enters the enclosure of a monitored or controlled system will co-habitation be permitted (i.e. at fan starters or elevator controllers). THIS WILL BE FIELD INSPECTED BY Commissioner.
- P. Fire alarm control panel enclosures shall have engraved labels indicating, "FIRE ALARM SYSTEM", and the areas of the building served by that panel.
- Q. Auxiliary relays shall be appropriately labeled to indicate "FIRE ALARM SYSTEM" and their specific function (i.e. FAN S-1 SHUTDOWN).
- R. All fire alarm wiring shall be continuous and unspliced. Terminations shall only occur at fire alarm devices or control panel enclosures under terminal screws. All other splicing methods are specifically disallowed (i.e. plastic wirenuts).
- S. All fire alarm wiring shall be installed using a dedicated system of supports (i.e. bridle rings). Fire alarm wiring shall not be bundled or strapped to existing conduit, pipe or wire in the facility.
- T. All fire alarm wiring shall be sleeved when passing through any wall, using conduit sleeves (1" min.) with bushings, and fire stopped in accordance with Code.
- U. All low voltage operation shall be provided from the fire alarm control panel.
- V. All fire alarm devices shall be accessible for periodic maintenance. Should a device location indicated on the Contract Drawings not meet this requirement, it shall be the responsibility of the installing contractor to bring it, in writing, to the attention of the Commissioner.
- W. The Contractor shall be responsible for the removal of ENTIRE existing fire alarm system components and controls on the demolition drawing shown or not, upon approval of the Commissioner. The End-User reserves the right to retain any existing fire alarm system components, upon their request. All existing fire alarm system components requiring special handling for disposal (due to radioactivity) shall be the responsibility of the installing contractor. Written proof of proper disposal by the installing contractor shall be required.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. The system shall be installed and fully tested under the supervision of a trained manufacturer's representative. The system shall be demonstrated to perform all of the function as specified.
- B. The contractor shall have no less than two (2) NICET Level II fire alarm technicians dedicated to this project.
- C. The contractor shall, upon the request of the Commissioner attend any and all project meetings for the purpose of accurately determining progress.
- D. It shall be the responsibility of the contractor to assure that construction debris does not adversely affect any sensing devices installed as part of this project. Should it be deemed necessary by the Commissioner the installing contractor shall be responsible for the cleaning of all smoke detectors prior to final acceptance.

### 3.3 TESTS

- A. The contractor with support of the fire alarm system vendor shall test the system in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements and NFPA 72. The contractor shall provide completed reports to the Commissioner for review and approval prior to final acceptance.
- B. Each individual system operation on a circuit by circuit basis shall be tested for its complete operation. The procedure for testing the entire fire alarm system shall be set forth with the consent of the code enforcement official and the manufacturer.

### 3.4 DOCUMENTATION AND INSTRUCTION

- A. The contractor shall compile and provide to the Commissioner three (3) complete manual on the completed system to include SITE SPECIFIC operating and maintenance instruction, catalog cuts of all equipment and components, as-built wiring diagrams and a manufacturer's suggested spare parts list.
- B. In addition to the above manuals, the Contractor shall provide the services of the manufacturer's trained representative for **two (2)** separate calendar days for a period of four **(4) hours** per day to instruct the CITY OF NY'S designated personnel on the operation and maintenance of the entire system.
- C. As-built drawings shall consist of the following:
  - 1. Complete revision of all previously submitted drawings
  - 2. Point-to-point depiction of all device wiring on the device layout floor plans.
  - 3. One (1) set of B-size, laminated as-built drawings.
  - 4. Two (2) sets of 30"x42"inch 1\16"=1' scale drawings showing all points of fire alarm. One set shall be submitted with the close-out documents. Second set shall be mounted in frame with a lexan cover. These drawing must be submitted to Commissioner or approval.
  - 5. Fire Alarm Matrix designed per NFPA 72: FIGURE A.10.6.2.3(9).
- D. Turnover of all software database hard/soft copies shall be required. This shall include all possible programming software logs, diskettes or CDs containing exported project files, hard copies of all device maps, the revision number of the version of programming utility used, and all required passwords. The turnover of all database information shall occur prior to the end of the One (1) warranty period.

END OF SECTION



SECTION 311000 - SITE PREPARATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes

1. Protection of trees, shrubs and other vegetation
2. Clearing and grubbing of site
3. Implementation of soil erosion and sediment control procedures
4. Demolition and removal of existing site features
5. Disposal of waste materials

1.02 DESCRIPTION

A. Design Requirements

1. The Contractor shall clear and grub the site as required to perform the construction shown on the contract documents. Clearing and grubbing of the site shall be confined closely to the limits shown on the Contract Documents.
2. Site preparation operations required, but not limited to in the work, include:
  - a. Protection of existing trees, shrubs and vegetation.
  - b. Removal of existing trees, shrubs and vegetation as indicated on the contract documents.
  - c. Clearing and grubbing.
  - d. Transplanting and relocating of existing trees and shrubs as indicated on the contract documents.
  - e. Temporary fencing.
  - f. Topsoil stripping.
  - g. Removal of above grade improvements and subsurface infrastructure.
  - h. Disconnecting and removing all existing utilities except those designated to remain.
  - i. Removal of debris.
  - j. Dust control.

1.03 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

A. Coordinate site preparation operations with the following:

1. Work with other prime contractors.
2. Shut down and relocation of site utilities in field of operations.
3. Various stages of completion in the project schedule.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification of Conditions: Examine conditions under which site preparation work is to be accomplished in coordination with the installer components specified in this Section.

Notify affected Prime Contractors, the Owner's Representative and the Architect in writing of any conditions detrimental to proper and timely accomplishment of the required work. Do not proceed with site preparation work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to the installer.

1. When the Installer confirms conditions as acceptable to ensure proper and timely installation and to ensure requirements for applicable warranty or guarantee can be satisfied, submit to the Architect written confirmation from the applicable installer. Failure to submit written confirmation and subsequent installation will be assumed to indicate conditions are acceptable to the Installer.

B. Perform the following prior to starting site preparation work:

1. Inspect the entire project site including all objects that are designated to remain or to be removed.
2. Locate all underground infrastructure and utilities and determine requirement for their protection.
3. Preserve in operating condition all active utilities traversing the site and designated to remain.
4. Schedule site preparation work in consideration of adjacent public and private property owners.
5. Avoid interference with use of and passage to and from adjacent buildings and facilities.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Protect existing objects designated to remain, both on and off the project site. In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary for approval of the Owner's Representative and the Architect.
- B. Prevent spread of dust during performance of the work throughout the life of the project. Thoroughly moisten all site areas as required to prevent dust from being a nuisance to the Owner, public, neighbors and performance of other work on the site.
- C. Use all means necessary to minimize interference with roads, streets, walks, and other traveled areas. Do not close, obstruct, or cause to make impassable any traveled areas without first obtaining permission from the appropriate agencies.
- D. Remove, relocate, store and protect from damage items designated to be salvaged.

3.03 PROTECTION OF EXISTING TREES, SHRUBS AND VEGETATION

- A. Install temporary fencing as required to protect existing trees, shrubs and other vegetation which are scheduled to remain from above ground damage including smothering of root systems. Do not store construction materials, debris or excavated materials within the drip line of trees. Restrict vehicular traffic, parking and pedestrian traffic from tree drip line areas to prevent excessive compaction of soil over root systems.
- B. Trees, shrubs or vegetation scheduled to be saved that are damaged during construction work due to contractor negligence shall be placed under the care of a certified nurseryman or arborist. The Prime Contractor responsible for the damage to the plant material shall be liable for the cost of all required work. Trees, shrubs or vegetation that die as a result of contractor negligence shall be evaluated by a qualified nursery industry professional selected by the Owner's Representative. The removal and replacement of

the affected trees, shrubs or vegetation and the associated evaluation expenses shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.

3.04 CLEARING AND GRUBBING

- A. Remove trees, shrubs and other vegetation that interfere with the installation of new construction or grading work, except for those indicated to remain. Use only hand methods for grubbing inside the drip line of trees indicated to remain. Removal of plant material includes the excavation and off-site disposal of new and old stumps of trees, shrubs and other vegetation and their entire root mass.
- B. Depressions caused by clearing operations shall be filled with satisfactory soil material unless further excavation or earthwork is required.
- C. **Trees of 6" diameter and greater shall remain in place. Any tree 6" diameter and greater that is in conflict with construction or grading operations shall be marked in field and identified for further owner discussion. NO TREE 6" diameter or greater shall be removed without consent from the owner or owner's representative.**

3.05 IMPLEMENTATION OF SOIL EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL PROCEDURES

- A. Install temporary and permanent measures to mitigate soil erosion and sediment control issues as directed by the Architect or interested State Agencies. Work may include the installation of berms, dikes, dams, sediment basins, fiber mats, netting, gravel, mulches, grasses, sloped drains and other erosion control devices.
- B. The temporary soil erosion and sediment control measures indicated on the Contract Documents shall be coordinated with the specified permanent erosion control features to the extent practical to assure economical, effective and continuous erosion control.

3.06 DEMOLITION AND REMOVAL OF EXISTING SITE FEATURES

- A. Remove foundations, pavement, sidewalks, curbs, retaining walls and other site features noted for removal that are encountered as part of the work.
  - 1. Remove asphalt concrete paving material to full depth and remove from site.
  - 2. Gravel and stone fill under removed sidewalks may be reused if suitable for the particular new use and approved by the Architect.
  - 3. Remove below grade structures such as retaining walls to a minimum depth of 2'-0" below new finished grade unless specifically noted otherwise within the Contract Documents.
  - 4. Break up and completely remove miscellaneous concrete such as small foundations.
- B. Leave cut edge neat and square where existing material is cut to adjoin new work.

3.07 DISPOSAL OF WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Burning on the Owner's property of combustible cleared and grubbed material is not permitted.
- B. Remove all combustible cleared and grubbed material, excess excavated subgrade material, broken stone, broken concrete, masonry materials, and debris from the Owner's

property and legally dispose of it. Obtain all permits for off-site disposal and submit a copy of each permit to the Owner's Representative.

END OF SECTION 311000

SECTION 312000 - EARTH MOVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Clearing and grubbing.
- B. Removal of topsoil.
- C. Underground utilities.
- D. Excavation.
- E. Rock excavation and blasting.
- F. Dewatering.
- G. Settlement detection.
- H. Sheet piling, shoring and bracing.
- I. Placing engineering fabric.
- J. Placing fill and backfill.
- K. Placing fill to support structures.
- L. Compaction.
- M. Rough grading.
- N. Subgrade surface for walks and pavement.
- O. Finish grading.
- P. Maintenance and restoration.
- Q. Disposal of excess and unsuitable materials.
- R. Field quality control.
- S. Protection.

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 024113 – Selective Site Demolition
- B. Section 311000 – Site Preparation
- C. Section 312500 – Erosion and Sediment Control
- D. Section 321216 – Asphalt Paving
- E. Section 321313 – Concrete Paving

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. The following terms shall have the meanings ascribed to them in this Article, wherever they appear in this Specification Section:
  - 1. Excavation - The removal of all surface and subsurface material not classified as rock (as defined below).
  - 2. Rock - Limestone, sandstone, shale, granite, and similar material in solid beds or masses in its original or stratified position which can be removed only by blasting operations, drilling, wedging, or use of pneumatic tools, and boulders with a volume greater than 1.5 cubic yards. Concrete building foundations and concrete slabs, not indicated, with a volume greater than 1.5 cubic yards shall be classified as rock.
    - a. Materials which can be loosened with a pick or backhoe, frozen materials, soft laminated shale or hardpan, pavements, curbs, and similar materials shall be classified as earth excavation. Concrete building foundations and concrete slabs, where indicated, shall be classified as earth excavation. Masonry building foundations, whether indicated or not, shall be classified as earth excavation.

3. Unclassified Earth Excavation - The excavation and disposal of all surface and subsurface materials of any description necessary to perform the work of this Contract. These materials shall include:
  - a. All soil deposits of any description both above and below groundwater levels. These may be naturally deposited or placed by previous construction operations.
  - b. Ledge rock of all quality including limestone, sandstone, shale, granite and similar materials in solid beds or masses in its original or stratified position which can only be removed by drilling, wedging, use of pneumatic tools or heavy ripping equipment. Blasting operations will not be permitted to loosen any ledge rock necessary to be removed in this Contract without prior written permission from the Architect and the Owner's Representative.
  - c. Boulders of any size.
  - d. Any materials of man-made origin.
4. Subgrade Surface - Surface upon which gravel base or topsoil is placed.
5. Base - Select granular material or Type 1, Type 2 or Type 4 base course which is placed immediately beneath pavement or concrete slabs.
6. Fill - Placement of specified fill materials, in layers, above ground surface to required elevations.
7. Backfill - Placement of specified backfill material, in layers, in excavations to required subgrade elevations.
8. Foundation Bearing Grade – Grade or elevation at which bottom of footings is to be constructed.
9. Maximum Density - The dry unit weight in pounds per cubic foot of the soil at "Optimum Moisture Content" when determined by ASTM D 698 (Standard Proctor), or ASTM D 1557 (Modified Proctor).
10. Structures - Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.
11. Landscaped Areas - Areas not covered by structures, walks, roads, paving, or parking.
12. Unauthorized Excavation - The removal of material below required elevations indicated on the Drawings or beyond lateral dimensions indicated or specified without specific written direction by the Owner's Representative.

#### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with the requirements of Section 013300 – Submittal Procedures and as modified below.
- B. Shop Drawings - Submit shop drawings for sheeting, shoring, and bracing shown on the Drawings. Shop drawings shall be signed by a New York State Licensed Professional Engineer.
- C. Product Data - Submit manufacturer's name, specifications and installation instructions as applicable for each item specified.
- D. Samples - At the Owner's discretion, take samples in the presence of the Owner's Representative, and submit to the Owner's Independent Testing Laboratory for analysis. Test for gradation, proctors and soundness shall be completed with results submitted to the Owner's Designated Representatives. Tests shall be performed in accordance with ASTM standards, shall be performed and signed by a certified soils laboratory, and shall

be submitted as part of the original submittal. At a minimum, unless agreed to differently, the samples taken shall be of the following quantities:

1. Select Type 1 Granular Material - 40 to 50 lbs.
2. Type 2 Base Course - 40 to 50 lbs.
3. Select Type 4 Granular Material - 40 to 50 lbs.
4. Drainage Fill – 40 to 50 lbs, mixed to specification.

E. Quality Control Submittals – Provide documentation complying with the following:

1. Base Materials - Name and location of source with the D.O.T. Source Number. If the material is not being taken from an approved D.O.T. source, the results of the gradation and soundness tests performed by an ASTM certified soils laboratory will be required.
2. Other Aggregates - Name and location of source and soil laboratory test results.
3. Excavation Procedure - Submit a lay out drawing or detailed outline of intended excavation procedure for the Owner's information. This submittal will not relieve the Contractor of responsibility for the successful performance of intended excavation methods.
4. Sheet piling, Shoring, and Bracing (Not shown on the Drawings) - Submit a detailed plan of intended sheet piling, shoring and bracing, signed by a New York State Licensed Professional Engineer, for the Owner's information. This submittal will not relieve the Contractor of responsibility for the successful performance of the intended sheet piling, shoring and bracing methods.
5. Soil Erosion and Sediment Control - Submit plan complying with the requirements of Section 312500.

F. Closeout Procedures - Comply with the requirements of Section 017700.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General - The systems listed reflect the intent to establish required earthwork function and standard of quality for construction.

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements - Establish and maintain required lines and elevations for grade control.
- B. Protect existing trees and plants during performance of the Work unless otherwise indicated. Box trees and plants indicated to remain within the grading limit line with temporary fencing or solidly constructed wood barricades as required. Protect root systems from smothering. Do not store excavated material or allow vehicular traffic or parking within the branch drip line. Restrict foot traffic to prevent excessive compaction of soil over root systems.
- C. Cold Weather Requirements – Comply with the following:
1. Excavation - When freezing temperatures are anticipated, do not excavate to final design elevations for concrete work unless concrete can be placed immediately.
  2. Backfilling - If backfill is being placed during freezing temperatures, the backfilling operations shall be monitored by the Owner's Representative and the following procedures shall be followed:

- a. Frozen ground shall be removed in its entirety from beneath and five (5) feet beyond the area of fill placement.
  - b. Fill material placed shall consist of Select Fill and shall be free of all frozen chunks that exceed four (4) inches in size. Material transported to the project site shall only consist of material excavated from below frost depth.
  - c. At the end of the workday, the area of fill placement shall be covered with insulated blankets or left protected. Other means of protection (hay, wood chips etc.) may also be used provided it is approved by the Owner's Representative.
  - d. Following workday - Remove insulated blankets or other approved protection methods and strip the area of all frozen material as specified previously.
  - e. Upon establishing subgrade elevations, protect grades with insulated blankets or place additional material that will adequately insulate the exposed earth surface from frost. This additional fill or protective material shall be stripped just prior to pouring concrete.
- D. Land Survey Information - Field verify provided existing boundary and topographic information prior to beginning site work. Immediately report any discrepancies in boundary locations or topographic elevations affecting site construction to the Owner's Representative. Provide profile information on existing site conditions and verification of existing topographic information to the Owner's Representative prior to beginning site construction. Beginning site work construction without this profile information and written notification indicates the Contractor's acceptance of the existing land survey data indicated on the Drawings as accurate. Adjustments to the Contract will not be made for discrepancies brought to the Owner's attention after site construction has begun.

#### 1.07 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Proceed with, and complete earth moving operations as rapidly as portions of the work area become available, working within seasonal limitations for the tasks required.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Select Type 1 Granular Material: Where indicated, supply stockpiled, sound, durable, sand, gravel, stone, or blends of these materials, free from organic and other deleterious materials. Comply with New York State Department of Transportation gradation and material requirements specified below:

Sieve		Percent Passing
Sieve Size	Size opening (mm)	
3 inch	76.2	100
2 inch	50.8	90-100
1/4 inch	6.35	30-65
No. 40	0.425	5-40
No. 200	0.075	0-10

- B. Base Course Type 2 Crushed Stone: Where indicated, supply stockpiled, crushed ledge rock or approved blast furnace slag. Comply with New York State Department of transportation gradation and material requirements modified below:

Sieve	Percent Passing
-------	-----------------



Sieve Size	Size opening (mm)	
2 inch	50.8	100
1/4 inch	6.35	25-60
No. 40	0.425	5-40
No. 200	0.075	0-7

- C. Select Type 4 Granular Material: Where indicated, supply stockpiled, sound, durable, sand, gravel, stone, or blends of these materials, free from organic and other deleterious materials. Comply with New York State Department of Transportation gradation and material requirements specified below:

Sieve		Percent Passing
Sieve Size	Size opening (mm)	
2 inch	50.8	100
1/4 inch	6.35	30-65
No. 40	0.425	5-40
No. 200	0.075	0-7

- D. Drainage Fill: Equal blend of No.1 and No. 2 washed crushed or uncrushed stone.

- a. No. 1 Coarse Aggregate:

Sieve		Percent Passing
Sieve Size	Size opening (mm)	
1 inch	25.4	100
½ inch	12.7	90-100
¼ inch	6.35	0-15

- b. No. 2 Coarse Aggregate:

Sieve		Percent Passing
Sieve Size	Size opening (mm)	
1-1/2 inch	38.1	100
1 inch	25.4	90-100
½ inch	12.7	0-15

- E. Rip Rap: Fine, Light, Medium or Heavy Stone Filling that complies with DOT Article 620-2.02 for stone filling and Figure 620-1 Stone Filling Gradation Requirements.

Fine Stone	
Size Designation	% Mixture by Weight
Smaller than 8"	90 – 100%
Larger than 3"	50 – 100%
Smaller than No. 8 Sieve	0 – 10%

- F. Engineering Fabric: Fabric composed of high tenacity polypropylene yarns woven into a stable network. The fabric is to be inert to biological degradation and resistant to naturally encountered chemicals, alkalis and acids complying with the following mechanical and physical properties:

Mechanical Properties	Test Method	Unit	Minimum. Average Roll Value
Wide Width Tensile Strength	ASTM D 4595	kN/m m <sup>2</sup>	MD 17.6 (100)/CD 21.0 (120)
Grab Tensile Strength	ASTM D 4632	kN (lbs)	MD 0.9 (200)/ CD 0.9 (200)
Grab Tensile Elongation	ASTM D 4632	%	MD 15/CD 10
Trapezoid Tear Strength	ASTM D 4533	kN (lbs)	MD 0.33 (75)/CD 0.33 (75)
Mullen Burst Strength	ASTM D 3786	kPa (psi)	2756 (400)
Puncture Strength	ASTM D 4833	kN (lbs)	0.4 (90)
Percent Open Area	COE-02215-86	%	1
Apparent Opening Size (AOS)	ASTM D 4751	mm (US Sieve)	0.300 (50)
Permittivity	ASTM D 4491	sec <sup>-1</sup>	0.05
Flow Rate	ASTM D 4491	l/min/m <sup>2</sup> (gal/min/ft <sup>2</sup> )	200 (5.0)
UV Resistance (at 500 Hours)	ASTM D 4355	% strength retained	70

Physical Properties	Test Method	Unit	Typical Value
Weight	ASTM D 5261	g/m <sup>2</sup> (oz/ydm <sup>2</sup> )	136 (4.0)
Thickness	ASTM D 5199	mm (mils)	0.51 (20)
Roll Dimensions (Width X Length)	-----	m (ft)	3.8 X 132 or 5.3 X 94.2 (12.5 X 432) or (17.5 X 309)
Roll Area	-----	m <sup>2</sup> (yd <sup>2</sup> )	502 (600)
Estimated Roll Weight	-----	kg (lb)	95 (210)

1. Manufacturer: For convenience, details have been based on Mirafi 500X as manufactured by Ten Cate/Mirafi, Pendergrast, GA (Tel. #706-693-2226).

## 2.02 SHEETING, SHORING AND BRACING

- A. Steel Sheet Piling - Continuous, interlocking type complete with all required accessories, complying with ASTM A 328 or ASTM A 572.
  1. Furnish steel sheet piling of design, configuration, and length to resist pressure of earth to be retained.
- B. Timber Sheeting, Shoring, and Bracing - Structural grade timber or lumber uprights, wales, and cross braces of sufficient dimension to resist pressure of earth to be retained.
  1. Timber and lumber used for permanent sheeting shall be pressure creosoted.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Installer Verification of Conditions - Examine conditions under which earthwork is to be accomplished with the materials and components specified in this section. Affected Prime Contractors, the Owner's Representative and the Architect shall be notified in writing of any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely installation of the work.
  - 1. When the installer confirms conditions as being acceptable to ensure proper and timely installation of the work and to ensure requirements of applicable warranties or guarantees can be satisfied, submit written confirmation to the Architect. Failure to submit written confirmation and subsequent installation will be assumed to indicate conditions are acceptable to the installer.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Protection
  - 1. Use of explosives: Do not bring explosives onto the site or use on the project without prior written permission from the Architect and the Owner's Representative. The Contractor remains solely responsible for the handling, storage and use of explosive materials when permitted. Use explosives in strict compliance with State, Local and OSHA regulations.
  - 2. Protection of Persons and Property:
    - a. Barricade open excavations and post with warning lights for safety of persons. Operate warning lights during hours from dusk to dawn each day.
    - b. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements and other facilities immediately adjacent to excavations from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout and other hazards.
    - c. Take precautions and provide necessary bracing and shoring to guard against movement and settlement of existing improvements or new construction. Contractor remains entirely responsible for strength and adequacy of bracing and shoring, and for safety and support of construction from damage or injury caused by lack of adequate protection or by movement or settlement.

### 3.03 CLEARING AND GRUBBING

- A. Clear and grub the site within the grading limit lines of trees, shrubs, brush, other prominent vegetation, debris, and obstructions except for those items indicated to remain. Completely remove stumps and roots protruding through the ground surface.
  - 1. Use only hand methods for grubbing inside the drip line of trees indicated to be left standing.
  - 2. Where roots and branches of trees indicated to be saved interfere with new construction, carefully and cleanly cut them back to point of branching
- B. Fill depressions caused by the clearing and grubbing operations in accordance with the requirements for filling and backfilling, unless further excavation is indicated.

### 3.04 REMOVAL OF TOPSOIL

- A. Remove existing topsoil from areas within the grading limit lines where excavation or fill is required.

- B. Stockpile approved topsoil where directed until required for use. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles for proper drainage.
  - 1. Topsoil shall be tested prior to stockpiling. Stockpile only quantities of topsoil approved in writing for re-use.

### 3.05 UNDERGROUND UTILITIES

- A. Locate existing underground utilities prior to commencing excavation work. Determine exact utility locations by hand excavated test pits. Support and protect utilities to remain in place.
- B. Do not interrupt existing utilities that are in service until temporary or new utilities are installed and operational.
- C. Utilities to remain in service shall be re-routed as shown on the Contract Drawings.
- D. Utilities abandoned beneath and five (5) feet laterally beyond a structure's proposed footprint shall be removed in their entirety. Excavations required for their removal shall be backfilled and compacted as specified herein.
- E. Unless otherwise noted in the Contract Documents, utilities extending outside the limit specified above (5 feet) may be abandoned in place provided their ends are adequately plugged as described below.
  - 1. Permanently close open ends of abandoned underground utilities exposed by excavations, which extend outside the limits of the area to be excavated.
  - 2. Close open ends of metallic conduit and pipe with threaded galvanized metal caps or plastic plugs or other approved method for type of material and size of pipe. Do not use wood plugs.
  - 3. Close open ends of concrete and masonry utilities with concrete or flow-able fill.
- F. Coordinate with other Prime Contractors or with local utility companies, as applicable, for shutoff service if lines are active.
- G. Coordinate scheduling of removal to accommodate relocation of lines when necessary.
- H. Demolish and remove or relocate additional uncharted underground utilities conflicting with construction operations as directed by the Project Designer. Measure additional removal and relocations as directed by the Project Designer and paid for by the Owner as a Change Order.

### 3.06 EXCAVATION

- A. Excavate earth as required for the work. Remove and dispose of all materials encountered to obtain required subgrade elevations. Remove from property and legally dispose of all excess fill material.
- B. Install and maintain all erosion and sedimentation controls during all earthwork operations as specified in Section 312500, on the Contract Drawings or as directed by local officials.

- C. Maintain sides and slopes of excavations in a safe condition until completion of backfilling. Comply with Code of Federal Regulations Title 29 - Labor, Part 1926 (OSHA).
  - 1. Trenches: Deposit excavated material on one side of trench only. Trim banks of excavated material to prevent cave-ins and prevent material from falling or sliding into trench. Keep a clear footway between excavated material and trench edge. Maintain areas to allow free drainage of surface water.
- D. Stockpile excavated materials classified as suitable material where directed, until required for backfill or fill. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles for proper drainage as approved by the Owner's Representative.
- E. Excavation for Structures - Conform to elevations, lines, and limits indicated. Excavate to a vertical tolerance of plus or minus 1". Extend excavation a sufficient lateral distance to provide clearance to execute the work.
- F. Footings and Foundations - The foundation bearing grade shall be established just prior to constructing concrete foundations when concrete is to bear on undisturbed soil.
  - 1. Stepping Footings - Cut sloping surfaces under footings, foundations, steps, and where required for other work as indicated.
  - 2. Pile Foundations - Stop excavations 6 to 12 inches above the bottom of pile cap elevation before the piles are placed. After pile installation, remove loose and displaced material and excavate to final grade, leaving a solid base to receive concrete pile caps.
  - 3. Where footings and other work requiring similar soil support will rest entirely on rock, remove loose soil and loose rock and place concrete to the required elevations. Where footings and other work requiring similar soil support will rest partially on rock and partially on soil, immediately notify the Owner's Representative before any backfilling or concrete placement occurs; the Owner's Representative will determine the correct foundation treatment for the work.
- G. Slabs and Floors - Excavate to the following depths below bottom of concrete for addition of select granular material:
  - 1. Interior Floors – 6" unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Exterior Slabs and Steps – 12" unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Pipe Trenches - Refer to Section 312317.
- I. Open Ditches - Cut ditches to cross sections and grades indicated.
- J. Pavement - Excavate to subgrade surface elevation.
- K. Unauthorized Excavations: Unless otherwise directed, backfill unauthorized excavation under footings, foundation bases, and retaining walls with compacted select granular Type 1 material without altering the required footing elevation. Elsewhere, backfill and compact unauthorized excavation as specified for authorized excavation of the same classification, unless otherwise directed by the Owner's Representative.
  - 1. Unauthorized excavations under structural work such as footings, foundation bases, and retaining walls shall be reported immediately to the Owner's Representative before any concrete or backfilling work commences.

- L. Notify the Owner's Representative upon completion of excavation operations. Do not proceed with the work until the excavation is inspected and approved.
- M. Removal of Unsuitable Material Beneath Structures and Other Improvements - Excavate encountered unsuitable materials which extend below required elevations to additional depth as directed by the Owner's Representative. Have cross sections taken, under the supervision of an independent Land Surveyor, to determine the quantity of such excavation. Do not backfill this excavation prior to quantity measurement.
- N. Such additional excavation and backfilling, not due to error, fault or neglect of the Contractor and exceeding the numeric quantities indicated on the Drawings, will be paid for at a pre-negotiated or pre-established unit price by Change Order.

### 3.07 ROCK EXCAVATION AND BLASTING

- A. Excavation - Consists of the removal and disposal of materials encountered that cannot be excavated with a 1½ cubic yard capacity power shovel without drilling and blasting, or requiring use of specialized equipment.
  - 1. Typical Rock Classified Materials: Boulders 1½ cubic yards or more in volume, solid rock, rock in ledges, and rock hard cementitious aggregate deposits.
    - a. The Contractor shall classify intermittent drilling or ripping performed to increase production and not necessary to permit excavation of material encountered as earth excavation.
  - 2. Rock payment lines shall be limited to the following:
    - a. Two feet outside of concrete work for which forms are required, except footings.
    - b. One foot outside of perimeter footings.
    - c. In pipe trenches, six inches below invert elevations of pipes and two feet wider than the inside diameter of the pipe, but not less than three foot minimum trench width.
    - d. Neat outside dimensions of concrete work where no forms are required.
    - e. Under slabs on grade, six inches below bottom of concrete slab.
- B. Blasting - Perform blasting operations using skilled personnel, in compliance with governing regulations. Comply with ANSI A10.1 "Safety Code for Building Construction".
  - 1. Store explosives, if permitted on the Owner's property, only where directed by the Owner's Representative and in proper storage structures. Keep storage facilities securely locked at all times for inspection and for delivery and storage of explosives. Provide full time watchman and other controls as required by governing regulations.
  - 2. Conduct blasting operations using explosives of such quantity and power, and fired in such sequence and locations, to avoid injury to personnel or damage to property or adjacent construction. Assume full responsibility for damages resulting from or attributable to blasting operations.

### 3.08 DEWATERING

- A. Refer to subsurface logs included in the Contract Documents for information regarding subsurface conditions. The Owner shall not be liable for Change Orders resulting from the Contractor's inability to properly dewater the site.
- B. Prior to the performance of any excavations provide dewatering methods such that the groundwater table is maintained at an elevation that is beneath the excavated depth.
- C. Prevent surface and subsurface water from flowing into excavations and trenches and from flooding the site and surrounding area.
- D. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations or trenches. Remove water from all excavations immediately to prevent softening of foundation bottoms, undercutting footings, and soil changes detrimental to the stability of subgrades and foundations. Furnish and maintain pumps, sumps, suction and discharge piping systems, and other system components necessary to convey the water away from the Site.
- E. Convey water removed from excavations, and rainwater, to collecting or run-off area. Cut and maintain temporary drainage ditches and provide other necessary diversions outside excavation limits for each structure. Do not use trench excavations as temporary drainage ditches.
- F. Provide temporary controls to restrict the velocity of discharged water as necessary to prevent erosion and siltation of receiving areas.

### 3.09 SETTLEMENT DETECTION

- A. Excavating Beneath the Bearing Grades of an Existing Structure - Establish a settlement detection method approved by the Owner's Representative for structures subject to settlement from excavation, sheeting or sheet piling operations. Maintain surveillance to detect any settlement.
- B. Surcharging - Establish a settlement monitoring plan to accurately determine the settlements that have occurred and the rate that they occurred to adequately determine when settlement caused by surcharge is complete.

### 3.10 SHEETING, SHORING, AND BRACING

- A. Temporary Sheeting - Install temporary sheeting (or sheet piling) with shoring and bracing as required to create a safe working environment and prevent settlement or other damage to adjacent grounds and structures resulting from excavation operations. Shore and brace sheeting in a manner which will not interfere with progress of other work or related contracts (if any) on this project. Check shoring and bracing for settlement and adjust for settlement. Promptly remove temporary sheeting, shoring, and bracing when no longer required.
- B. Permanent Sheeting - Install permanent steel sheet piling or timber sheeting where shown. Cut off top of permanent sheeting 12 inches below finish grade.

### 3.11 PLACING ENGINEERING FABRIC

- A. Place and overlap engineering fabric in accordance with the Manufacturer's installation instructions, unless otherwise shown.
- B. Cover tears and other damaged areas with additional engineering fabric layer extending 3 feet beyond the damage.

- C. Do not permit traffic or construction equipment directly on engineering fabric.
- D. Backfill immediately over engineering fabric. Backfill in accordance with the fabric manufacturer's instructions and in a manner to prevent damage to the fabric.

### 3.12 PLACING FILL AND BACKFILL

- A. Surface Preparation of Fill Areas - Strip topsoil, remaining vegetation, and other deleterious materials prior to placement of fill. Refer to Section 311000 – Site Preparation for additional information.
  - 1. Remove all asphalt pavement in its entirety from areas requiring the placement of fill.
  - 2. After topsoil is stripped and other improvements specifically indicated to be removed on the Contract Documents are removed, proof roll the site with a ten-ton vibratory compactor (minimum six overlapping passes required) or similar equipment. Excavate soft or loose soils identified during rolling and replace with properly compacted select Type 1 granular material as directed by the Owner's Representative or the Architect. Measure additional excavation and backfill as directed by the Owner's Representative or the Architect for payment by the Owner as a Change Order.
  - 3. Plow, strip, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so that fill materials bond with the existing surface.
- B. Excavations - Backfill as promptly as work permits, but not until completion of the following:
  - 1. Acceptance by the Owner's Representative of construction below finish grade including, where applicable, dampproofing, waterproofing, perimeter insulation, and bearing capacity of supporting soil.
  - 2. Inspection, testing, approval and recording locations of underground utilities.
  - 3. Removal of concrete formwork.
  - 4. Removal of temporary sheeting (or sheet piling) and backfilling of voids caused by removals.
  - 5. Cutting off top of permanent sheeting (or sheet piling).
  - 6. Removal of trash and debris.
  - 7. Installation of permanent or temporary bracing on horizontally supported walls.
- C. Place backfill and fill materials in layers not more than 8" thick in loose depth unless otherwise specified. Before compaction, moisten or aerate each layer as necessary to facilitate compaction to the required density. Do not place backfill or fill material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or covered with ice.
  - 1. Place fill and backfill against foundation walls and in confined areas (such as trenches) not easily accessible by larger compaction equipment, in maximum 6" thick (loose depth) layers.
  - 2. For large fill areas, the layer thickness may be modified by the Owner's Representative, at the Contractor's written request, if in the Owner's Representative's judgment, the equipment used is capable of compacting the fill material in a greater layer thickness. This request shall include the type and specifications of compaction equipment intended for use.
- D. Prevent wedging action of backfill against structures by placing backfill uniformly around the structure to approximately the same elevation in each layer. Place backfill against



- walls of structures containing basements or crawl spaces only after the first floor structural members are in place.
- E. Under exterior concrete slabs and steps, utilize the following fill materials:
    - 1. Type 1 granular material from subgrade to within 6" of the concrete slab or steps.
    - 2. Select Type 2 crushed stone for the next 6"
  - F. Against dampproofed or waterproofed structure faces or structure faces with foundation drains, utilize select Type 1 granular material.
  - G. Under Pavements and Walks - Utilize select Type 2 crushed stone as indicated on the Construction Drawings and in the applicable specification sections in the Project Manual.
  - H. Landscaped Areas: Place suitable material, when required to complete fill or backfill areas up to subgrade surface elevation. Do not use material containing rocks over 4" in diameter within the top 12" of suitable material.

### 3.13 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PLACING FILL TO SUPPORT STRUCTURES

- A. Place fill at the perimeter of the structure to be constructed as follows:
  - 1. Strip the area in accordance with the requirements for "Surface Preparation of Fill Areas" included in this Specification Section.
  - 2. Compact the stripped surface to 95% of maximum density.
  - 3. Place fill in horizontal layers not exceeding 8" loose depth and compact layers as specified.
- B. Place fill within the perimeter of the structure to be constructed as follows:
  - 1. Strip the area in accordance with the requirements for "Surface Preparation of Fill Areas" included in this Specification Section.
  - 2. Proof roll the stripped surface with at least 5 passes of a vibratory drum compactor having a minimum unsprung drum weight of 7 tons unless specifically indicated otherwise in the Contract Documents. Notify the Owner's Representative of the proposed date for beginning proof rolling at least 2 working days prior to commencing proof rolling.
  - 3. Excavate unsuitable materials (soft and unstable earth) disclosed by the proof rolling operation and replace with compacted Select Type 1 granular material.
  - 4. Place fill in horizontal layers not exceeding 8" in loose depth and compact layers as specified.
- C. Obtain written approval of fill area compaction before excavating for footings.
- D. Excavate for footing width plus 1 foot on each side.
- E. Excavate 1 foot below footing elevations where bottom of footings are 2 feet or less above or 4 feet or less below original ground surface.
  - 1. Compact footing bottom and place a 1-foot bed of select granular material. Compact select granular material in 6" layers.
  - 2. Omit excavation and select granular material below bottom of footings where footing elevations are more than 2 feet above or more than 4 feet below the original ground surface.

### 3.14 COMPACTION

- A. Compact each layer of fill and backfill for the following area classifications to the percentage of maximum density specified below and at a moisture content suitable to obtain the required densities, but at not less than 3% drier nor more than 2% wetter than the optimum content as determined by ASTM D 698 (Standard Proctor) or ASTM D 1557 (Modified Proctor).
  - 1. Structures (entire area within 10 feet outside perimeter) - Compact subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill material to 95%.
  - 2. Concrete Slabs and Steps - Compact subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill material to 95%.
  - 3. Landscaped Areas - Compact the top 2'-0" to a maximum of 85% and compact all subgrade areas beneath the upper 2'-0" to 95%.
  - 4. Natural Turf Athletic Fields - Compact the top 2'-0" to a maximum of 85% and compact all subgrade areas beneath the upper 2'-0" to 95%.
  - 5. Pavements and Walks - Compact subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill material to 95%.
  - 6. Pipes and Tunnels - Compact subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill material to 95%.
  - 7. Pipe Bedding - Compact subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill material to 95%.
- B. Compaction Equipment:
  - 1. Provide compaction equipment of suitable size and number and in satisfactory working condition to complete construction on schedule.
  - 2. Use sheepfoot rollers, pneumatic tired rollers, vibrating tampers, or other compaction equipment capable of obtaining required density throughout the entire layer being compacted.
- C. When the existing ground surface to be compacted has a density less than that specified for the particular area classification, break up and pulverize, and moisture condition to facilitate compaction to the required percentage of maximum density.
- D. Moisture Control:
  - 1. Where fill or backfill must be moisture conditioned before compaction, uniformly apply water to the surface and to each layer of fill or backfill. Prevent ponding or other free water on surface subsequent to, and during compaction operations.
  - 2. Remove and replace or scarify and air-dry soil that is too wet to permit compaction to the specified density. Soil that has been removed because it is too wet to permit compaction may be stockpiled or spread and allowed to dry. Assist drying by discing, harrowing or pulverizing, until moisture content is reduced to a value which will permit compaction to the percentage of maximum density specified.
- E. If a compacted layer fails to meet the specified percentage of maximum density, the layer shall be recompact and retested. If compaction cannot be achieved, the material/layer shall be removed and replaced. No additional material may be placed over a compacted layer until the specified density is achieved.

### 3.15 ROUGH GRADING

- A. Interior Grading - Trim unexcavated spaces within the building to levels indicated.

1. Subgrade for Interior Slabs: Compact as specified to receive fill material. Finish subgrade surface within 1" above or below level specified for fill required.
- B. Exterior Grading - Trim and grade area within the grading limits of the Contract Documents and excavations outside the limits, required by this Contract, to a level of 6" below the finish grades indicated unless otherwise specified herein or where greater depths are indicated. Provide a smooth uniform transition to adjacent areas.
  1. Grade areas outside building lines for each structure to drain away from structures and to prevent ponding of water. Finish surfaces free from irregular surface changes and large stones.
  2. Landscaped Areas: Provide uniform subgrade surface within 1" of required level to receive topsoil thickness specified. Compact fill as specified to within 2" of subgrade surface. Remove objectionable material detrimental to proper compaction or to placing full depth of topsoil. If the top 4" of the subgrade has become compacted above 85% before placement of topsoil, harrow or otherwise loosen rough graded surface to receive topsoil to a depth of 4" immediately prior to placing topsoil.

### 3.16 SUBGRADE SURFACE FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENT

- A. Shape and grade subgrade surface as follows:
  1. Walks - Shape the surface of areas under walks to required line, grade and cross section, with the finish surface not more than a 1/2" above or below the required subgrade surface elevation.
  2. Pavements: Shape the surface of areas under pavement to required line, grade and cross section, with the finish surface not more than 1/2" above or below the required subgrade surface elevation.
- B. Grade Control - During construction, maintain lines and grades, including crown and cross-slope of subbase course.
- C. Thoroughly compact subgrade surface for walks and pavement by mechanical rolling and tamping, or with vibratory equipment as approved to the density specified.
- D. Shoulders - Place shoulders along edges of filled subgrades to prevent lateral movement. Construct shoulders of specified fill material, placed in such quantity to compact to thickness of each subgrade course layer.

### 3.17 FINISH GRADING

- A. Uniformly grade rough graded areas within the grading limits to finish grade elevations indicated.
- B. Grade and compact to smooth finished surface within tolerances specified, and to uniform levels or slopes between points where finish elevations are indicated or between such points and existing finished grade.
- C. Grade areas adjacent to building lines so as to drain away from structures and to prevent ponding.
- D. Finish surfaces free from irregular surface changes, and as follows:
  1. Grassed Areas - Finish areas to receive topsoil to within 1" above or below the required subgrade surface elevations.

2. Walks - Place and compact base material as specified. Shape surface of areas under walks to required line, grade and cross section, with the finish surface not more than a ½" above or below the required subbase elevation.
  3. Pavements - Place and compact base material as specified. Shape surface of areas under pavement to required line, grade and cross section, with the finish surface not more than ½" above or below the required subbase elevation.
- E. Spread topsoil directly upon prepared subgrade surface to a depth measuring a minimum of Four inches (4") after natural settlement of the topsoil has occurred in areas to be seeded or to receive sod unless specifically indicated otherwise within the Contract Documents. Place to greater depth when necessary to adjust grades to required elevations.
1. Only approved existing topsoil within the grading limits may be used. Provide additional topsoil from outside sources as required.
- F. Finish topsoil surface free of depressions which will trap water, free of stones over ½" in any dimension, and free of debris.

### 3.18 MAINTENANCE AND RESTORATION

- A. Restore grades to indicated levels where settlement or damage due to performance of the work has occurred. Correct conditions contributing to settlement. Remove and replace improperly placed or poorly compacted fill materials.
- B. Restore pavements, walks, curbs, lawns, and other exterior surfaces damaged during performance of the work to match the appearance and performance of existing corresponding surfaces as closely as practicable.
- C. Topsoil and seed or sod damaged lawn areas inside and outside the indicated grading limits. Water as required until lawn areas are accepted by the Owner's Representative.

### 3.19 DISPOSAL OF EXCESS AND UNSUITABLE MATERIALS

- A. Remove from the work site and dispose of excess and unsuitable materials, including materials resulting from clearing and grubbing and removal of existing improvements.
- B. If acceptable to the Owner's Representative, transport excess and unsuitable materials to spoil areas on the Project Site designated by the Owner's Representative, and dispose of such materials as directed.
- C. Transport excess topsoil to areas on the Project Site designated by the Owner's Representative. Smooth grade deposited topsoil.
- D. **Refer to the Health and Safety Plan for testing and handling requirements of all materials to be removed from project site.**

### 3.20 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests - The Owner may provide soil testing and inspection services during earthwork operations. The Owner reserves the right to test and approve all subgrades and fill layers before construction proceeds. Refer to Section 014500 – Quality Control for additional requirements relating to testing.

- B. Compaction Testing: Provide the Owner's Representative adequate notice for all phases of filling and backfilling operations. Compaction testing will be performed by the Owner's Testing Agency to ascertain the compacted density of the fill and backfill materials. Compaction testing will be performed on certain layers of the fill and backfill as determined by the Owner's Representative and the Testing Agency. If a compacted layer fails to meet the specified percentage of maximum density, the layer shall be recompacted and retested. No additional material may be placed over a compacted layer until the specified density is achieved.
- C. Tests of subgrades and fill layers may, at the Owner's option, include:
1. Observation of proof rolling procedures.
  2. Observation and or inspection of unsuitable soil material.
  3. Footing subgrades, for each strata of soil for which footings will be placed, at least one plate bearing test and field density test may be conducted if the subgrade is non-cohesive, or unconfined compression test may be conducted if the subgrade is cohesive, to verify design bearing capacities shown on the Drawings. Subsequent verification and approval of each footing subgrade may be based on visual comparison of each subgrade with tested strata when acceptable to the Architect.
  4. Paved areas and building subgrade areas, at least one field density test of subgrade for every 2000 square feet of paved area or building slab, but not less than three tests may be made. In addition, in each compacted fill layer, at least one field density test of subgrade for every 2000 square feet of paved area or building slab, but not less than three tests may be made.
  5. Foundation wall backfill, field density tests at locations and elevations as directed may be made, with at least one test made for every 50 feet of wall.
  6. Fill under footings, in each compacted fill layer; one compaction test for every 30 LF of wall may be taken. One compaction test may be made under each individual footing.
  7. Fill under natural turf playfields, at least one field density test of subgrade for every 2000 square feet of playfield area, but not less than three tests may be made. In addition, in each compacted fill layer, at least one field density test of subgrade for every 2000 square feet of overlaying playfield, but not less than three tests may be made.
- D. If in the opinion of the Architect and based on reports of the testing service, completed subgrades or fills are below the specified density, provide additional compaction and testing at no additional expense to the Owner.

### 3.21 PROTECTION

- A. Protect graded areas from traffic and erosion and keep them free of trash and debris.
- B. Repair and re-establish grades and seeding in settled and rutted areas to specified tolerances.

END OF SECTION 312000

THIS PAGE HAS BEEN INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 312500 - EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 Applicable provisions of the Contract Documents govern work under this section.

1.2 WORK INCLUDED

A. Provide all labor, equipment and materials necessary to install and maintain erosion control blankets, silt fence, hay bale dikes, sediment traps, inlet protection, and to implement erosion control measures as shown on the plans, as required by regulatory permits, and as job conditions dictate. All contractors performing grading, trenching, or other earthwork shall provide certification that it will comply with the Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) prepared by the Architect and document their erosion control efforts during all construction activity and the one-year warranty period.

B. Related Work Specified Elsewhere:

1. Section 311000 – Site Preparation
2. Section 312000 – Earth Moving

1.3 SUBMITTALS: Designate erosion control and maintenance activities on submitted Project Schedule. Submit Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) certification statement(s) as herein specified before undertaking any construction activity at the site identified in the SWPPP. Also submit pre-construction photographs, short narrative of erosion control implementation as specified herein, and project schedule.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE: All Erosion/Sediment Control activities and water quality objectives performed by the Contractor shall be in compliance with the following standards of practice:

- A. NYSDEC SPDES General Permit for Stormwater Discharges from Construction Activity.
- B. NYSDEC's "New York Standards and Specifications for Erosion and Sediment Control" as published by the Empire State Chapter of the Soil and Water Conservation Society.
- C. NYSDEC's "New York State Stormwater Management Design Manual" as prepared by the Center for Watershed Protection.
- D. USDA Soil Conservation Service's "Guidelines for Urban Erosion and Sediment Control", latest revision.
- E. NYSDEC's "Erosion and Sediment Control Guidelines for New Development T.O.G.S. 5-1.10".
- F. Local Guidelines for Erosion and Sediment Control.
- G. NYSDEC's "Reducing the Impacts of Stormwater Runoff for New Developments", latest revision.
- H. NYSDOT Specifications.
- I. Project specific SWPPP and Notice of Intent (NOI).
- J. Directives of the Owner, Architect, Construction Manager and/or regulatory personnel of authority having jurisdiction requiring further control measures as warranted.

1.5 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Place erosion control measures wherever shown on the Contract Drawings before beginning any other Work of this Contract.
- B. Place other erosion control measures shown on the Contract Drawings as soon as possible, relative to other Work of this Contract including, but not limited to, the following:

1. At grading limits, before beginning rough grading.

2. In drainage channels, as soon as subgrade is established.

3. In drainage channels, as soon as topsoil and seed are applied.

4. At drainage structures, as soon as backfill is compacted and frame and grate are installed.

5. At flared end sections, as soon as installation is complete.

6. At all disturbed ground and subgrade as specified.

1.6 FINES FOR VIOLATIONS: Permits and their conditions are part of the Contract Documents and failure to implement these conditions and the requirements of this Contract may result in the issuing agency levying a fine for violating the terms of the permit. The Owner is the permittee on these permits and, therefore, would be fined for such violations. Recognizing that it is the responsibility of each pertinent contractor to abide by permit and contractual requirements, each pertinent contractor shall reimburse the Owner the full amount of all fines levied on account of the pertinent contractor's failure to abide by those requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MULCHES: Mulches shall be suitable material acceptable to the Project Designer and reasonably clean and free of noxious weeds and deleterious materials. The following materials are acceptable:

<u>Mulch Material</u>	<u>Quality Standards</u>	<u>Application Rates</u>		
		<u>Per 1000 SF</u>	<u>Per Acre</u>	<u>Depth</u>
Wood chips/shavings	Green or air-dried, free of objectionable coarse material.	500-900 lbs.	10-20 tons	2 - 7"
Straw	Air-dried; free of undesirable seeds and coarse materials	90-100 lbs. 2-3 bales	2 tons 100-120 bales	Cover 90% of surface

2.2 GRASS

- A. Grass shall be quick growing species suitable to the area and as a temporary cover which will not compete with the grasses sown later for permanent cover.
- B. Seed Mixtures

1. Temporary Seeding

<u>Type</u>	<u>Lbs./Acre</u>	<u>Lbs./1000SF</u>
a. Ryegrass (Annual or Perennial)	80	1.9
b. Certified Aroostook Winter Rye	100	2.5

Use winter rye if seeding in October/November.

2.3 SOIL AMENDMENTS

- A. Fertilizer and soil conditioners shall be a standard commercial grade acceptable to the Project Designer.
1. Lime: pH of 6.

2. Fertilizer: Meeting New York State Department of Transportation Specification 713-03 Type 1 or as approved. 1-2-1 N.P.P. ratio.



2.4 EROSION CONTROL BLANKET: Provide rolled erosion control product, biodegradable erosion control blanket, designed for use on slopes as per NYSDOT Approved Material List for rolled erosion control products and soil stabilizers, Class 1, Type C (short term).

## 2.5 SILT FENCE

A. Silt Fence: Assembled from filter fabric stapled to 36 inch long, 2-inch square hardwood posts or pre-assembled product of equivalent performance characteristics as detailed on the Contract Drawings and in compliance with Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan.

1. Filter fabric: Shall be on the NYSDOT Approved Material List for geotextiles, approved for use with silt fence, unsupported with 1.2m spacing.

2.6 STABILIZED CONSTRUCTION ENTRANCE: 50/50 mixture of NYSDOT Standard Specifications for Item No. 3 and No. 4 stone.

2.7 INLET PROTECTION: Provide Silt Sack Drop Inlet Protection for paved areas and Filter Fabric Inlet projection for non-paved areas as detailed on the Construction Drawings.

2.8 CHEMICAL BINDER: Non-toxic conforming to Item 713-12 of NYSDOT Specifications.

2.9 RIP-RAP: Per NYSDOT Specifications.

2.10 STONE: Sound durable stone per NYSDOT Specification Section 703, size(s) per plans.

2.11 ADDITIONAL PRODUCTS: As specified and illustrated on the project plans, as required by regulatory permits, and as job conditions dictate.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 Contractor shall implement erosion control measures as shown on the plans, as job conditions dictate, and to comply with the SWPPP. Intent is to minimize erosion and pollutants at the source, capture sediment at regular intervals and prevent sediment intrusion into storm sewer pipes, structures, and waterways. Work includes, but is not limited to hay bales, mulching, temporary silt fences, filter fabric, expeditious grading, stormwater diversion, prompt turf establishment, sediment dikes, and maintenance of same.

3.2 Contractor shall initiate stabilization measures as soon as practicable in portions of the site where construction activities have temporarily or permanently ceased, but in no case more than 14 days after the construction activity in that portion of the site has temporarily or permanently ceased. If disturbed soils surfaces are to be left exposed for a period of greater than 14 days, stabilize the soil with temporary seeding and/or mulch to limit erosion. Where the initiation of stabilization measures by the 14<sup>th</sup> day after construction activity temporarily or permanently ceased is precluded by snow cover or frozen ground conditions, stabilization measures shall be initiated as soon as practical. The onset of seasonally adverse weather is not intended as an excuse for not implementing the necessary erosion controls. The Contractor shall use foresight in his activities to only disturb areas that he can stabilize before adverse weather conditions prevail. The Contractor is encouraged to schedule his work such that final land surface restoration closely follows initial disturbance to the maximum extent possible in order to limit bare soil exposure and dependence on the temporary systems discussed above.

3.3 Sediment shall be removed from sediment traps, sediment ponds, or other devices whenever their capacity has been reduced by fifty (50) percent from the design capacity and/or as required to ensure intent. Prior to fine grading and restoration, the Contractor shall remove and dispose of accumulated sediments and silts as required.

### 3.4 AUTHORITY OF WORK

- A. The Owner, Construction Manager and Architect has the authority to limit the surface area of erodible earth material exposed by clearing and grubbing the surface area of erodible earth material exposed by excavation, borrow and fill operations and to direct the Contractor to provide immediate permanent or temporary pollution control measures to prevent contamination of adjacent streams or other watercourses and water bodies.

### 3.5 POLLUTION CONTROL

- A. Provide methods, means and facilities required to prevent contamination of soil, water or atmosphere by the discharge of noxious substances from construction operations. Promptly repair equipment leaks. Provide equipment and personnel to perform emergency measures required to contain any spillages, and to remove contaminated soils or liquids.
- B. Notify Owner, Architect, Construction Manager and regulatory authorities having jurisdiction if contaminated soil, groundwater or other forms of pollution are encountered. Excavate and dispose of any contaminated earth immediately in accordance with Federal, State and local regulations off-site, and replace with suitable compacted fill.
- C. Pollutants such as fuels, lubricants, bitumens, raw sewage and other harmful materials shall not be discharged into or near rivers, streams, and impoundments or into natural or man-made channels leading thereto. Wash water or waste from concrete mixing operations or trucks shall not be allowed to enter live streams.

### 3.6 DEWATERING AND WASHWATERS

- A. Water from aggregate washing, equipment washing, dewatering or other operations containing sediment, shall be treated by filtration, settling basin or other means sufficient to reduce the turbidity, so as not to cause a substantial visible contrast to natural conditions.

### 3.7 DIVERSION BERMS/SWALES

- A. Slopes of significantly barren slopes exceeding 15 percent require special treatment such as water diversion berms, swales, straw bale sediment barriers, sodding, approved mulch tacking agent over straw mulch applied over seeded areas, or a combination thereof.

### 3.8 SILT FENCE INSTALLATION

- A. A silt fence may be used subject to the following conditions:

- 1. Maximum allowable slope lengths contributing runoff to a silt fence are:

<u>Slope Steepness</u>	<u>Maximum Slope Length (Ft)</u>
2:1	30
3:1	70
4:1	80
5:1	150
Flatter than 10:1	250 or as shown on the plans

- 2. Maximum drainage area for overland flow to a silt fence shall not exceed 2 acres per 100 feet of fence.
    - 3. Erosion would occur in the form of sheet erosion.
    - 4. There is no concentration of water flowing to the barrier.

- B. Woven wire fence to be fastened securely to fence posts with wire ties or staples.

- C. Filter cloth to be fastened securely to woven wire fence with ties spaced every 24" at top and mid-section.
- D. Embed silt fence material a minimum of 6 inches below finished grade.
- E. When two sections of filter cloth adjoin each other, they shall be overlapped by six inches and folded.
- F. Maintenance shall be performed as needed and material removed when bulges develop in the silt fence, or when 6 inches of sediment has accumulated against it, whichever occurs first. All sediment barriers shall be repaired or replaced when they no longer function as a barrier.

### 3.9 CONSTRUCTION OPERATIONS

- A. When borrow material is obtained from other than commercially operated sources, erosion of the borrow site shall be so controlled, both during and after completion of the work, so that erosion will be minimized and sediment will not enter streams or other bodies of water. Waste or disposal areas and construction roads shall be located and constructed in a manner that will minimize sediment-entering streams. Install sediment containment devices around stockpiles and waste areas. Stabilize the surface of temporary haul roads to minimize sediment creation.
- B. Install stabilized construction entrances at all ingress/egress points to local and state roads as required and as detailed on the plans.

### 3.10 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

- A. The Contractor shall take good quality photographs of streams, ditches, channels, ponds or other water bodies immediately adjacent to project work area that will receive runoff from construction activity. Document existing conditions such as existing sediment deposition, water turbidity, eroded streambed/streambanks and condition of vegetation.

### 3.11 CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Prior to beginning construction, the Contractor shall submit for review and acceptance, a detailed project schedule which outlines his program for controlling erosion, limiting conveyance of silt and sediment, pollution prevention, maintenance of devices and controls, and restoration of graded surfaces for the duration of the project and the one-year warranty period.
- B. The Architect and Construction Manager may limit the area of clearing and grubbing, excavation, trenching and embankment operations in progress, commensurate with the Contractor's capability, responsiveness, and progress in keeping the finish grading, mulching, seeding and other such permanent control measures current in accordance with the accepted schedule. Should seasonal limitations make such coordination unrealistic, temporary erosion control measures shall be taken immediately to the extent feasible and justified.

### 3.12 FINAL STABILIZATION

- A. Final stabilization is defined as all soil disturbing activities at the site having been completed, and that a uniform perennial vegetative cover with a density of at least 80% has been established or equivalent stabilization measures (such as the use of mulches or geotextiles) have been employed on all unpaved areas and areas not covered by permanent structures.

### 3.13 REMOVAL OF TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL MEASURES

- A. Remove erosion control devices when final stabilization has occurred for the respective areas of the site and are no longer needed.

### 3.14 CONTRACTOR'S CERTIFICATION: (In general, Contractor's certification is not required if land disturbance is less than one acre for all phases of work. Refer to local government's soil erosion requirements).

- A. Contractors are responsible for the performance of their subcontractors and to ensure they properly comply with the SWPPP.
- B. All signed Contractor's Certification Statements shall be included in the SWPPP. Copies will be submitted to the Owner and also retained on site by the contractors.
- C. Submit a completed copy of the attached Contractor's Certification Statement for all prime and subcontractors anticipated to perform site work at least two weeks prior to beginning construction activity so that they can be included in the SWPPP.

### 3.15 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY

- A. The actual scheduling and implementation of the SWPPP and maintenance of required water quality is the responsibility of the Contractor(s). The erosion and sediment control plan and devices shown are considered to comprise the majority of efforts needed, but not necessarily all that will be required. Weather, the Contractor's schedule, extent of disturbance, site and unforeseen conditions can dictate that greater efforts will be necessary.
- B. The Owner shall retain the services of qualified professional(s) capable of assessing the status of erosion control on the site during its development, performing weekly inspections, quarterly reports complying with NYSDEC Permit Standards, assessing the site's erosion and sediment controls, and maintaining a log book of SWPPP inspections and relevant data. A qualified professional can be a licensed professional engineer, certified professional in erosion and sediment control (CPESC), licensed landscape architect or qualified soil scientist. This log must be available to the Construction Manager, the Project Design Team, the Owner or interested regulatory agencies.
- C. During each inspection, the qualified responsible person(s) designated by the contractor shall record the following information:
  - 1. On a site map, indicate the extent of all disturbed site areas and drainage pathways. Indicate site areas that are expected to undergo initial disturbance or significant site work within the next 14-day period;
  - 2. Indicate on a site map all areas of the site that have undergone temporary or permanent stabilization;
  - 3. Indicate all disturbed site areas that have not undergone active site work during the previous 14-day period;
  - 4. Inspect all sediment control practices and record the approximate degree of sediment accumulation as a percentage of the sediment storage volume (for example, 10 percent, 20 percent, 50 percent);
  - 5. Inspect all erosion and sediment control practices and record all maintenance requirements such as

verifying the integrity of barrier or diversion systems, earthen berms or silt fencing and containment systems (sediment basins and sediment tarps). Identify any evidence of rill or gully erosion occurring on slopes and any loss of stabilization vegetation or seeding and mulching. Document any excessive deposition of sediment or ponding water along diversion systems. Record the depth of sediment within containment structures, any erosion near outlet and overflow structures, and verify the ability of rock filters around perforated riser pipes to pass water.

6. All deficiencies that are identified with the implementation of the SWPPP.

E. During construction, copies of all inspection reports will be incorporated into a SWPPP log.

**CONTRACTOR CERTIFICATION STATEMENT**

Project Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Project Address: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

"I hereby certify that I understand and agree to comply with the terms and conditions of the SWPPP and agree to implement any corrective actions identified by the qualified inspector during a site inspection. I also understand that the owner or operator must comply with the terms and conditions of the New York State Pollution Discharge Elimination System ("SPDES") general permit for stormwater discharges from construction activities and that it is unlawful for any person to cause or contribute to a violation of water quality standards. Furthermore, I understand that certifying false, incorrect or inaccurate information is a violation of the referenced permit and the laws of the State of New York and could subject me to criminal, civil and/or administrative proceedings."

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name and Title

\_\_\_\_\_  
Company Name

\_\_\_\_\_  
Company Address and Phone Number

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature    Date

Responsible for: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Trained Individual Responsible for SWPPP Implementation:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name

\_\_\_\_\_  
Title

SECTION 321216 - ASPHALT PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Aggregate base for asphalt paving
- B. Asphalt paving installation over aggregate base
- C. Joining new asphalt pavement to adjacent construction
- D. Field quality control

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 312000 – Earth Moving
- B. Section 321313 – Concrete Paving
- C. Section 321613 – Concrete Curbs

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with the requirements of Section 013300 – Submittal Procedures.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's name, specifications and installation instructions for each item specified.
- C. Job Mix Formulas: Submit job mix formulas for asphalt paving indicating compliance with requirements of each asphalt type specified including name and location of the supplier.
- D. Quality Control Submittals
  - 1. Certificates: Submit one copy of all permits obtained from local regulatory agencies and the New York State Department of Transportation.
  - 2. Qualifications Certification: Submit written certification or similar documentation signed by the applicable subcontractor, prime contractor and/or manufacturer (where applicable) indicating compliance with the requirements specified below in the "Quality Assurance" section of this specification.
  - 3. Experience Listing: Submit a list of completed projects using the products proposed for this project, including owner's contact information and telephone number for each project, demonstrating compliance with applicable requirements specified in the "Quality Assurance" section of this specification.
- E. Closeout Procedures: Comply with the requirements of Section 017700.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Asphalt Producer Qualifications: Use only materials furnished by bulk asphalt producer regularly engaged in the production of hot-mix, hot laid asphalt.
- B. Regulatory Requirements
  - 1. Conform to the requirements of local regulatory agencies, or if applicable, the New York State Department of Transportation, which ever is more stringent for methods and materials in work areas subject to applicable agency's review and approval. Provide materials complying with referenced New York State Department of Transportation Standard Specifications where indicated.

2. Obtain written permission from applicable agencies prior to the start of construction. Submit one copy of the permit as specified in “Submittals-Quality Control Submittals” above.

#### 1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS

##### A. Environmental Requirements:

1. Do not apply tack coats when ambient temperature is below 50 degrees F., and when the temperature has not been above 35 degrees for 12 hours immediately prior to the application. Do not apply a tack coat when an asphalt base is wet or contains an excess of moisture.
2. Do not construct asphalt surface courses when the atmospheric temperature is below 40 degrees F., and when base material is not dry. Asphalt may only be placed when air temperatures are a minimum of 40 degrees F. and rising.

##### B. Field Measurements: Maintain required lines and elevations for grade control.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Aggregate Base: Comply with the NYSDOT Standard Specification, Section 304, Paragraph 304-2, as modified in Section 312000 – Earth Moving.
  - a. Base Course: Type 2 crushed stone as modified in Section 312000 – Earth Moving unless specifically noted otherwise on the Contract Documents.
- B. Asphalt Pavement: Paving materials shall comply with the New York State Department of Transportation Standard Specification. Section 400 for the materials indicated.
  1. Binder Course: Hot plant mixed asphalt, complying with the New York State Department of Transportation Standard Specification, Section 401 and 403 for Asphalt – Type 3 Binder.

Sieve		Percent Passing	
Sieve Size	Sieve Size (mm)	General Limits	Job Limit Tol. %
1 ½"	37.5	100	-
1"	25.0	95 – 100	-
½"	12.5	70 – 90	+/-6
¼"	6.3	48 – 74	+/-7
No. 6 Sieve	3.2	32 – 62	+/-7
No. 20 Sieve	.850	15 – 39	+/-7
No. 40 Sieve	.425	8 – 27	+/-7
No. 80 Sieve	.180	4 – 16	+/-4
No. 200 Sieve	.075	2 – 8	+/-2

- a. The PGB content shall be 4.5 – 6.5%, +/-0.4%.
- b. The mixing and placement temperature range shall be 120 – 165 degrees C.



2. Shim Course: Hot plant mixed asphalt, complying with the New York State Department of Transportation Standard Specification, Section 401 and 403 for Asphalt – Type 5 Shim.

Sieve		Percent Passing	
Sieve Size	Sieve Size (mm)	General Limits	Job Limit Tol. %
1/4"	6.3	100	-
No. 6 Sieve	3.2	80 – 100	+/-6
No. 20 Sieve	.850	32 – 72	+/-7
No. 40 Sieve	.425	18 - 52	+/-7
No. 80 Sieve	.180	7 – 26	+/-4
No. 200 Sieve	.075	2 – 12	+/-2

- a. The PGB content shall be 7.0 – 9.5%, +/-0.4%.
- b. The mixing and placement temperature range shall be 120 – 165 degrees C.

3. Topcourse: Hot plant mixed asphalt, complying with the New York State Department of Transportation Standard Specification, Section 401 and 403 for Asphalt – Type 7 Topcourse.

Sieve		Percent Passing	
Sieve Size	Sieve Size (mm)	General Limits	Job Limit Tol. %
1/2"	12.5	100	-
1/4"	6.3	90 – 100	-
No. 6 Sieve	3.2	45 – 70	+/-6
No. 20 Sieve	.850	15 – 40	+/-7
No. 40 Sieve	.425	8 – 27	+/-7
No. 80 Sieve	.180	4 – 16	+/-4
No. 200 Sieve	.075	2 – 6	+/-2

- a. The PGB content shall be 5.7 – 8.0%.
- b. The mixing and placement temperature range shall be 120 – 165 degrees C.

- C. Coatings: Comply with the New York State Department of Transportation Standard Specification, Section 702 for material designations indicated.

1. Tack Coat: Emulsified asphalt, slow setting type, New York State Department of Transportation designation 702-3601 (SS-1h) or 702-4501 (CSS-1h).
2. Asphalt Cement Filler: New York State Department of Transportation Designation 702-05.

## 2.02 EQUIPMENT

- A. Paving Equipment: Spreading, self propelled asphalt paving machines capable of maintaining the line, grade and minimum surface thickness specified. Spreader boxes may be used in areas where specifically approved by the Architect.
- B. Compacting Equipment: Self-propelled tandem roller with a minimum 10-ton weight. Handheld vibrator compactor may be used in areas not accessible to rollers when specifically approved by the Architect.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Installer Verification of Conditions: Examine conditions under which pavement is to be constructed with the materials and components specified in this section. Affected Prime Contractors, the Owner's Representative and the Architect shall be notified in writing of any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely installation of the work.
  - a. When the installer confirms conditions as being acceptable to ensure proper and timely installation of the work and to ensure requirements of applicable warranties or guarantees can be satisfied, submit written confirmation to the Architect. Failure to submit written confirmation and subsequent installation will be assumed to indicate conditions are acceptable to the Installer.

#### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Final Preparation of Subgrades: Upon completion of preparation of subgrades as specified in Section 312000, thoroughly scarify the entire area to be paved and compact by rolling to smooth, hard, even surface. Finish to required grades with allowance for pavement courses above.

#### 3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Aggregate Base: Comply with the requirements of the New York State Department of Transportation Standard Specification, Section 304-3, for aggregate gradations specified, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Base Course: Completely fill voids with grits and roll with a 10-ton roller, eliminating movement of the material ahead of the roller. After rolling, verify grading with a minimum ten-foot long straight edge. Satisfactorily eliminate any depression over 1/4" deep. Obtain approval of base prior to installing asphalt courses above. Install base course profiles as indicated on the Drawings.
- B. Asphalt Paving: Pave finished surface free from depressions that may collect water. The Contractor shall remove any depressions at their own expense over 1/8" deep when tested with a six-foot straight edge without evidence of patching. Pave asphalt profiles as indicated on the Drawings.
- C. Joining New Asphalt Pavement to Adjacent Construction
  - 1. Carefully construct joints between old and new pavements, or between successive days work to ensure continuous bond between adjoining paving. Construct joints with the same texture, density and smoothness as adjacent sections of asphalt courses. Clean sand, dirt and other deleterious material from contact surfaces and apply tack coat.
  - 2. Offset traverse joints a minimum of 24" between succeeding courses. Cut back pavement to the edge of previously placed courses to expose an even, vertical surface for the full course thickness.
  - 3. Offset longitudinal joints a minimum of 6" between succeeding courses. When edges of longitudinal joints are irregular, honeycombed or inadequately compacted, cut back all unsatisfactory sections to expose an even, vertical surface for the full course thickness.

4. In horizontal joints between the binder and the topcourse, clean all contact surfaces and spray a tack coat prior to the installation of the topcourse if the binder has been in place for longer than seven days or if the pavement is determined to be excessively dirty by the Architect.
5. Seal joints with the application of asphalt cement filler, a minimum of 2" to each side of the joint.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Flood Tests: Perform a flood test in the presence of the Owner's Representative or the Architect utilizing a water tank truck. If a depression ponding water more than 1/8" in depth is found, provide corrective measures to provide proper drainage.

END OF SECTION 321216

THIS PAGE HAS BEEN INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 321313 - CONCRETE PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Preparation for concrete paving
- B. Placement of fabric reinforcement
- C. Placement of concrete
- D. Placement of joints and sealants
- E. Placement of detectable warning surface
- F. Finishing and curing

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 31 20 00 – Earth Moving
- B. Section 32 12 16 – Asphalt Paving

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with the requirements of Section 013300 – Submittal Procedures and as modified below.
- B. Product Data
  - 1. Concrete Mix Design: Submit proposed concrete design mix together with the name and location of the batching plant.
  - 2. Portland Cement: Brand and manufacturer's name.
  - 3. Air Entraining Admixture: Brand and manufacturer's name.
  - 4. Water Reducing or High Range Water Reducing Admixture: Brand and manufacturer's name.
  - 5. Curing and Anti-Spalling Compound: Manufacturer's specifications and application instructions.
  - 6. Welded Wire Mesh and Reinforcing Bars and Dowels: Manufacturer's name.
  - 7. Joint Fillers and Sealants: Catalog sheets, specifications and installation instructions for each product specified.
  - 8. ADA Detectable Warning Surface: Manufacturer's specifications, product data, test reports, method of installation, and maintenance instructions.
- C. Closeout Procedures: Comply with the requirements of Section 017700.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. At location directed by the Architect, construct concrete flatwork sample panel approximately 5' wide by 15' long.
- B. Concrete batching plants shall be currently approved as concrete suppliers by the New York State Department of Transportation.
- C. Regulatory Requirements
  - 1. Conform to the requirements of local regulatory agencies, or if applicable, the New York State Department of Transportation, whichever is more stringent for methods and materials in work areas subject to applicable agency's review and approval.

Provide materials complying with referenced New York State Department of Transportation Standard Specifications where indicated.

2. Obtain written permission from applicable agencies prior to the start of construction.

#### 1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activity. Provide barricades, warning signals, warning lights, and similar items as required.
- B. Environmental Conditions
  1. Humidity and Moisture: Do not install the work under this specification section under conditions that are detrimental to the installation, curing and performance of the specified materials.
  2. Temperature: Unless otherwise approved or recommended in writing by the sealant manufacturer, do not install sealants below 40 degrees F. or above 85 degrees F.
- C. Protection: Protect all newly poured concrete surfaces from damage. Protect all surfaces adjacent to sealants with non-staining, removable tape or other approved covering to prevent soiling or staining.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Cast-In-Place Concrete: Normal weight, air entrained concrete with a minimum compressive strength of 4,500 psi at the end of 28 days.
  1. Design Air Content: ASTM C 260, and on the New York State Department of Transportation's current "Approved List"; 6% by volume +/- 1.5%.
  2. Cement: ASTM C 150 Type I or II portland cement. Minimum 6.5 bags or 611 pounds per cubic yard.
  3. Water: Potable.
  4. Slump: Between 2 and 4 inches except when a water reducing admixture is used, the maximum slump shall be 6 inches. When a high range water reducing admixture is used, the maximum slump shall be 8 inches.
  5. Water Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type A and on the current New York State Department of Transportation's current "Approved List".
  6. High Range Water Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type F and on the current New York State Department of Transportation's current "Approved List".
- B. Chemical Curing and Anti-Spalling Compound: Water based, acrylic polymer, Type 1, Class A (non-yellowing) compound complying with the requirements of ASTM C 1315.
  1. For convenience, details and specifications have been based on the following manufacturers and their products:
    - a. Vocimp 25 by W.R. Meadows, Inc., Hampshire IL.
    - b. Super Diamond Clear VOX, Euclide Chemical Co., Inc., Cleveland, OH.
    - c. Cure and Seal 25% J22UV by Dayton Superior, Dayton, OH.

C. Reinforcement

1. Welded Wire Mesh: Flat sheets of welded, plain, cold drawn steel wire fabric complying with ASTM A 185. Rolled wire will not be acceptable for installation as part of the project.
2. Reinforcing Bars and Dowels: Deformed steel bars, ASTM A 615, Grade 60.

D. ADA Detectable Warning Surface: Prefabricated units with a non-slip texture on the travel surface. Color shall be a shade of brick red. There shall be a minimum of 70% contrast in light reflectance between the detectable warning surface and the adjoining surfaces. Material used to provide visual warning shall be an integral part of the detectable warning surface. Visual contrast to meet the existing ADAAG A4.2.9.2.

1. For convenience, details and specifications have been based on the following manufacturers and their products:
  - a. Tactile Tiles: Access Tile, Buffalo, NY.
  - b. Tactile Tiles: Armor-Tile, Williamsville, NY.
  - c. Cast Iron Plates: Duralast Detectable Warning Plates, EJ Co., East Jordan, MI.

E. Joint Sealants

1. For horizontal joints, two-part self-leveling polyurethane sealant for traffic bearing construction.
  - a. For convenience, details and specifications have been based on the following manufacturers and their products:
    - (1) Vulkem 255 by Mameco International, Inc., Beachwood, OH.
    - (2) Urexpan NR-200 by Pecora Corp, Harleysville, PA.
    - (3) Chem-Calk 550 by Bostik Inc., Middleton MA.
    - (4) Sealtight Porthane Sealant by W.R. Meadows, Elgin, IL.
    - (5) Sonolastic SL-2 Joint Sealant Slope Grade by Sonneborn Building Products Inc., Minneapolis, MN.
2. For vertical joints, two-part non-sag polyurethane sealant.
  - a. For convenience, details and specifications have been based on the following manufacturers and their products:
    - (1) Vulkem 227 by Mameco International, Inc., Beachwood, OH.
    - (2) Dynatrol II by Pecora Corp, Harleysville, PA.
    - (3) Chem-Calk 500 by Bostik Inc., Middleton MA.

F. Joint Fillers

1. Closed Cell Polyurethane Joint Filler: Resilient, compressible, semi-rigid, closed cell isometric polymer foam material, minimum ½" thick similar to Ceramar Joint Filler as manufactured by W.R. Meadows, Inc., Elgin IL.
  - a. Fiber board or cork joint filler material is not acceptable for use in concrete expansion joint work.

2.02 EQUIPMENT

- A. Forms: Steel of size and strength to resist movement during concrete placement and to retain horizontal and vertical alignment until removal. Coat forms with non-staining, clear, paraffin based form oil that will not discolor or otherwise stain concrete surfaces.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Installer Verification of Conditions: Examine conditions under which pavement is to be constructed with the materials and components specified in this section. Affected Prime Contractors, the Owner's Representative and the Architect shall be notified in writing of any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely installation of the work.
  - 1. When the installer confirms conditions as being acceptable to ensure proper and timely installation of the work and to ensure requirements of applicable warranties or guarantees can be satisfied, submit written confirmation to the Architect. Failure to submit written confirmation and subsequent installation will be assumed to indicate conditions are acceptable to the installer.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Remove all loose material from the compacted sub-base surface prior to placing concrete.
- B. Forms: Set forms for 5" thick sidewalks unless specifically noted otherwise true to line and grade and anchor rigidly into position.
- C. Space expansion joints equally at not more than 30'-0" on center.
- D. Place joint filler at expansion joints and where new concrete abuts existing concrete paving and fixed structures and appurtenances. Protect the top edge of the joint filler during concrete placement with a temporary cap and remove after concrete has been placed. Fill expansion joint with joint sealant after the concrete has been cured complying with the sealant manufacturers installation instructions.

3.03 PLACEMENT OF FABRIC REINFORCEMENT

- A. Prior to placement of woven wire mesh, clean thoroughly of mill and rust scale and of coatings that could destroy or reduce bond.
- B. Install fabric reinforcement midway between the top and bottom of the concrete slab. Prior to placing concrete, place fabric reinforcement midway between the top and bottom of the slab and secure against displacement with the use of chair carriers or other approved materials.
  - A. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets of fabric reinforcement at least half the mesh width. Offset end laps in adjacent sheets to prevent continuous joints at ends. Interrupt reinforcement at expansion joints, stopping 2" from edges.



3.04 PLACING CONCRETE

- A. Moisten the concrete subgrade as required to provide a uniform dampened condition at the time that concrete is placed.
- B. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until these items are brought to the required grade and alignment.
- C. Consolidate concrete by spading, rodding, forking or using an approved vibrator eliminating all air pockets, stone pockets and honeycombing. Work and float concrete surface so as to produce a uniform texture.
- D. Locate construction joints (if any) at expansion joint locations.
- E. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between control joints.

3.05 PLACING DETECTABLE WARNING SURFACE

- A. Detectable warning surfaces shall be installed 2 inches behind the curb.
- B. Domes shall be aligned on a square grid in the predominant direction of travel to permit wheels to roll between the domes.
- C. Install pre-cast units in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- D. The curb, detectable warning surface, and sidewalk shall be flush with the elevation of the road surface.

3.06 FINISHING AND CURING

- A. After striking off and consolidating poured concrete, smooth the surface by screeding and floating. Adjust floating to compact the surface and produce a uniform texture.
- B. After floating, test the surface for trueness utilizing a 10' steel straight edge. Distribute concrete as required to remove surface irregularities and refloat repaired areas to provide a continuous smooth finish.
- C. Provide broom finish for walk surfaces.
- D. Finish edges of walk and expansion joints with a ½" radius edging tool. Space tool joints equally between expansion joints at approximately 5'-0" on center, unless specifically detailed otherwise on the construction documents.
- E. Apply curing and anti-spalling compound in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions.
- F. Saw control joints one inch deep after the concrete has set. Space control joints equally between expansion joints at approximately 5'-0" on center, unless specifically detailed otherwise on the construction documents.

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing by Owner of Concrete Sidewalks
  - 1. Contractor Requirements

- a. Provide access to concrete construction and concrete supplier's facilities for representatives of the testing agency employed by the Owner to perform concrete testing and facility inspections as described below.
  - b. Notify the Owner's Representative at least 48 hours in advance of each concrete placement to allow notification of the Owner's Testing Agency.
2. Concrete Testing During Construction by the Owner's Testing Agency
- a. Sampling Method: ASTM C 172 modified for slump to comply with ASTM C94.
  - b. Slump Testing (ASTM C143): One test for each concrete load at the point of discharge. One test for each set of compressive strength test specimens, and one test from the middle of each load.
  - c. Air Content Testing (ASTM C231, Pressure Method): One of each set of compressive strength test specimens; air content checked on every fourth load of "ready-mix" concrete delivered.
  - d. Compressive Strength Testing
    - (1) Specimen Preparation: In compliance with ASTM C31 requirements to prepare one set of standard cylinders (minimum six each) for each compressive strength test.
    - (2) Specimen Testing: In compliance with ASTM C39 requirements for testing of one set of specimens for each 100 cubic yards (or fraction thereof) of each type of concrete placed in each day as follows
      - (a) Two specimens at seven days after concrete completion.
      - (b) Three specimens at 28 days after concrete placement.
      - (c) One specimen retained for later testing, if required.
  - e. Reporting: Reports containing the following information shall be provided in writing by the Owner's Testing Agency to the Architect and the Prime Contractor the same day the tests are accomplished.
    - (1) Project identification name and number.
    - (2) Name of prime contractor, concrete supplier and testing agency.
    - (3) Number (or other designation) of truck delivering the concrete.
    - (4) Concrete type and class, date of placement, and location of concrete batch within the project.
    - (5) Design compressive strength at 28 days.
    - (6) Concrete mix proportions and materials.
    - (7) Compressive breaking strength and type of break for both 7 day test and 28 day test.
  - f. Concrete Temperature: Test hourly when air temperature is 40 degrees F. or lower, or when the air temperature is 80 degrees F. or above, and each time compression testing specimens are prepared.
  - g. Inspection of Supplier Facilities: The Owner's Testing Agency may inspect the concrete supplier's batch plant and review batching procedures as deemed necessary by the Owner, including inspecting the aggregate washing facility, concrete heating system, and concrete transportation equipment.
  - h. Inspection of Reinforcing Steel: The Owner's Testing Agency may inspect placement of reinforcing steel. Do not begin concrete placement on any pour unless the Owner's Representative and the Project Designer have been notified at least one day preceding the pour to allow reasonable time for inspection of the reinforcing steel.

3.08 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Repairs and Protection of Concrete Sidewalks

1. Repair or replace broken or defective concrete as directed by the Architect.
2. Protect concrete from damage until acceptance of concrete sidewalk construction. Exclude traffic from pavement for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain walks as clean as possible by removing surface stains as they occur.
3. Sweep concrete walks and wash them free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign materials just prior to final acceptance.

B. Patching Existing Construction: Repair or patch adjacent existing concrete or other surfaces damaged from concrete sidewalk construction.

END OF SECTION 321313

THIS PAGE HAS INTENTIONALLY BEEN LEFT BLANK

SECTION 321400 - UNIT PAVING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Installation of masonry unit paving

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 312000 – Earth Moving
- B. Section 321313 – Concrete Paving
- C. Section 321613 – Concrete Curbs

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with requirements of Section 013300 – Submittal Procedures and as modified below.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's name, specifications and installation instructions for each item specified.
- C. Furnish samples of each unit paver type to be installed as part of the project. Upon request of the Architect, submit samples demonstrating the manufacturer's full range of colors available.
- D. Quality Control Submittals
  - 1. Qualifications Certification: Submit written certification or similar documentation signed by the applicable subcontractor, prime contractor and/or manufacturer (where applicable) indicating compliance with the "Qualifications" requirements specified below in the "Quality Assurance" section of this specification.
  - 2. Experience Listing: Submit a list of completed projects using the products proposed for this project, including owner's contact information and telephone number for each project, demonstrating compliance with applicable "Installer Qualifications" requirements specified in the "Quality Assurance" section of this specification.
- E. Contract Closeout Submittals: Comply with the requirements of Section 017700.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Experienced firm with not less than five successfully completed unit paver installations using the products specified.
- B. Single Source Responsibility: Obtain each color, type and variety of unit paver from a single source. Materials shall be available and be consistent in quality, appearance and physical properties without delaying the progress of the work.
- C. Field Constructed Mock-up: Construct a 3' X 3' mock-up for each paving pattern required as part of the project and obtain the Architect's approval prior to beginning unit paving installation work.
- D. Regulatory Requirements: Obtain written permission from applicable agencies prior to the start of construction. Submit one copy of the permit as specified in "Submittals-Quality Control Submittals" above.

#### 1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Prior to commencing work specified in this section, verify accuracy of layout and grading. Verify that all subgrade and base course aggregate conditions are as specified.
- B. Cold Weather Protection: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost.
- C. Pavers shall not be installed during heavy rain or snowfall.
- D. No concrete pavers shall be laid over frozen materials or on an improperly prepared base.
- E. At the end of each work period, protect unrestrained edges with plywood or similar materials.

#### 1.06 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Provide extra unit paver materials to the Owner for their future use. Deliver to location on site as directed by the Owner. Obtain a signed receipt from the Owner acknowledging satisfactory delivery of the material.
- B. The extra materials for owner future use shall include:
  - 1. 10% quantity of paver.
  - 2. 1 Bag of polymeric jointing sand.

## 1.07 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Proceed with and complete unit paver installation as rapidly as portions of the site become available, working within seasonal limitations for the work required.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Masonry Unit Paver Border: Solid concrete, interlocking paving units made from normal weight aggregates complying with ASTM C 936. For convenience, details and specifications have been based on "Kingscourt Collection with Armortec" by Cambridge Pavers, Inc., Lyndhurst, N.J. (201) 933-5000.
  - 1. Pattern Laying Type: Soldier.
  - 2. Paver Type: Nominal 6"x9"
    - a. Minimum Average Compressive Strength: 8,000 psi
    - b. Maximum Absorption: 5%
    - c. Freeze Thaw Resistance: 50 freeze thaw cycles
    - d. Size: 6" X 9" X 2.375"
    - e. Color: Bluestone Blend
- B. Masonry Unit Paver Field: Solid concrete, interlocking paving units made from normal weight aggregates complying with ASTM C 936. For convenience, details and specifications have been based on "Kingscourt Collection with Armortec" by Cambridge Pavers, Inc., Lyndhurst, N.J. (201) 933-5000.
  - 3. Pattern Laying Type: Running bond
  - 4. Paver Type: Nominal 6"x9"
    - a. Minimum Average Compressive Strength: 8,000 psi
    - b. Maximum Absorption: 5%
    - c. Freeze Thaw Resistance: 50 freeze thaw cycles
    - d. Size: 6" x 9" x 2.375"
    - e. Color: Ruby Onyx
- C. Polymeric Joint Sand: Dry sand mix with polymeric binding agent activated with water. Compression strength of 550psi after 7 days. Compression testing

to use 2" diameter cylinder 4" tall. Color shall be black or dark gray. Gradation to match table below.

Sieve		Percent Passing By Weight
Sieve Size	Size opening (mm)	
No. 4	4.75	100
No. 8	2.36	95-100
No. 16	1.18	70-100
No. 30	0.60	40-75
No. 50	0.30	20-40
No. 100	0.15	10-25
No. 200	0.075	0-10

- D. Setting Bed Sand: Washed, clean, non-plastic, free from deleterious or foreign matter, symmetrically shaped, natural or manufactured from crushed rock. Gradation to match table below.

Sieve		Percent Passing By Weight
Sieve Size	Size opening (mm)	
3/8 in	9.50	100
No. 4	4.75	95-100
No. 8	2.36	85-100
No. 16	1.18	50-85
No. 30	0.60	25-60
No. 50	0.30	10-30
No. 100	0.15	2-10
No. 200	0.075	0-1

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Installer Verification of Conditions: Examine conditions under which unit pavers are to be installed with the materials and components specified in this section. Affected Prime Contractors, the Owner's Representative and the Architect shall be notified in writing of any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely installation of the work.
- When the installer confirms conditions as being acceptable to ensure proper and timely installation of the work and to ensure requirements of applicable warranties or guarantees can be satisfied, submit written confirmation to the Architect. Failure to submit written confirmation and



subsequent installation will be assumed to indicate conditions are acceptable to the installer.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Strip the site of the unit paver installation of all topsoil, organic materials, oversized rocks debris and unstable or unconsolidated materials to the grades indicated on the Contract Documents.
- B. All subdrainage or underground services within the pavement area must be completed in conjunction with the subgrade preparation and prior to the commencement of granular base construction.
- C. Proof-roll the prepared subgrade surface to check for unstable areas and areas requiring additional compaction. Do not proceed with the installation until deficient subgrades have been corrected and are ready to receive the sub-base for the unit pavers. The subgrade shall be compacted to at least 95% density per ASTM D 1557.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Unit Paver Installation
  - 1. Pavers with excessive chips, cracks, voids discolorations or other defects shall not be installed.
  - 2. Pattern: The unit pavers shall be set in the approved pattern as noted on the Contract Documents.
  - 3. Color Blending: Paving units shall be installed from a minimum of three bundles simultaneously drawing the paver vertically rather than horizontally.
  - 4. Joints: 1/16"-1/8" joint spacing between pavers and at edge restraints shall be consistent.
  - 5. Alignment: String lines or chalk lines on bedding sand shall be used to hold all pattern lines true.
  - 6. Cutting: Gaps at the edge of the paving surface shall be filled with manufactured edge pavers or with pavers cut to fit. Cutting should be accomplished to leave a clean edge to the traffic surface using a mechanical hydraulic guillotine cutter or masonry saw.
  - 7. Sweeping Clean: Upon completion of cutting, the area must be swept clean of all debris to facilitate inspection and to ensure pavers are not damaged during compaction.
  - 8. Inspection of Installed Pavers: After sweeping and prior to compaction, the paved area must be inspected to ensure satisfactory color blending. Pavers shall be moved as required to achieve good color distribution.

- B. Paver Inspection: Any unit pavers which are structurally damaged during compaction shall be immediately removed and replaced.
- C. Tolerances in Surface Profile
  - 1. All surfaces and pavement structures shall be true to the lines, levels, grades, thickness and cross sections as shown on the Contract Documents.
  - 2. All pavements shall be finished to lines and levels to ensure positive drainage at all drainage outlets and channels.
  - 3. The final surface elevation of the paving stones shall be 1/8 inch to 1/4 inch above adjacent drainage inlets, concrete collars or channels.
  - 4. The pavement surface shall not deviate by more than 3/8" inch in 10 feet from a straight edge laid in any direction.

#### 3.04 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Sweep clean all paved areas of excess sand, dirt or debris.
- B. Pick up and remove from the site all surplus materials, equipment and debris resulting from the work.
- C. Repairs and Protection of Unit Pavers
  - 1. Repair or replace broken or defective unit pavers as directed by the Architect.
  - 2. Protect unit pavers from damage until acceptance of the pavement construction.

END OF SECTION 321400

SECTION 321613 - CONCRETE CURBS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Curb installation
- B. Curb cut installation

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 312000 – Earth Moving
- B. Section 321216 – Asphalt Paving
- C. Section 321313 – Concrete Paving

1.03 REFERENCES

- A. Comply with ACI 301-89 for all work specified as part of this section unless specifically indicated otherwise within the Contract Documents.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with requirements of Section 013300 – Submittal Procedures.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's name, specifications and installation instructions for each item specified.
- C. Quality Control Submittals
  - 1. Qualifications Certification: Submit written certification or similar documentation signed by the applicable subcontractor, prime contractor and/or manufacturer (where applicable) indicating compliance with the "Qualifications" requirements specified below in the "Quality Assurance" section of this specification.
  - 2. Experience Listing: Submit a list of completed projects using the products proposed for this project, including owner's contact information and telephone number for each project, demonstrating compliance with applicable "Qualifications" requirements specified in the "Quality Assurance" section of this specification.
- D. Closeout Procedures: Comply with the requirements of Section 017700.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements
  - 1. Obtain written permission from applicable agencies prior to the start of construction. Submit one copy of the permit as specified in "Submittals-Quality Control Submittals" above.

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Maintain required lines and elevations for grade control.
- B. Existing Conditions: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activity. Provide barricades, warning signals, warning lights and similar items as required.

1.07 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Proceed with and complete concrete curb construction as rapidly as portions of the site become available, working within seasonal limitations for the work required.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Concrete: Normal weight, air entrained concrete with a minimum compressive strength of 4,500 psi at the end of 28 days. Design air content shall be 6% by volume, with an allowable tolerance of plus or minus 1%. Concrete shall contain a minimum of 6.5 bags of cement per cubic yard. Slump shall be between 2 and 4 inches.
- B. Joint Fillers: Closed Cell Polyurethane Joint Filler: Resilient, compressible, semi-rigid, closed cell isometric polymer foam material, minimum ½" thick similar to Ceramar Joint Filler as manufactured by W.R. Meadows, Inc., Elgin IL.
  - 1. Fiber board or cork joint filler material is NOT acceptable for use in concrete expansion joint work.
- C. Joint Sealants: Two-part non-sag polyurethane sealant. For convenience, details and specifications have been based on the following manufacturers and their products:
  - 1. Vulkem 227 by Mameco International, Inc., Beachwood, OH.
  - 2. Dynatrol II by Pecora Corp, Harleysville, PA.
  - 3. Chem-Calk 500 by Bostik Inc., Middleton MA.
- D. Reinforcing Bars and Dowels: Deformed steel bars, ASTM A 615, Grade 60.

2.02 EQUIPMENT

- A. Forms: Steel of size and strength to resist movement during concrete placement and to retain horizontal and vertical alignment until removal. Use straight forms, free of distortion and defects. Bent, twisted, split or defective form materials are not acceptable. Use flexible spring steel forms to form radius bends. Coat forms with non-staining, clear, paraffin base form oil that will not discolor or otherwise deface the surface of concrete.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Installer Verification of Conditions: Examine conditions under which concrete curbs are to be constructed with the materials and components specified in this section. Affected Prime Contractors, the Owner's Representative and the Architect shall be notified in writing of any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely installation of the work.
  - 1. When the installer confirms conditions as being acceptable to ensure proper and timely installation of the work and to ensure requirements of applicable warranties or guarantees can be satisfied, submit written confirmation to the Architect. Failure to submit written confirmation and subsequent installation will be assumed to indicate conditions are acceptable to the installer.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Remove all loose material from the compacted sub-base surface immediately before placing concrete. Establish and maintain required lines and grades.

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. Form Construction

1. Set approved forms true to line and grade, rigidly braced and secured. Cast curb in 30-foot long sections.
2. If curbs will abut existing pavement, locate joints opposite existing pavement joints.
3. Profile of curb to be 18" high by 6" wide with a tooled 1½" radius on the top corner unless specifically detailed otherwise on the Contract Documents.
4. Allow forms to remain in place a minimum of 24 hours after concrete placement.

- B. Joint Filler Installation: Provide joint fillers cut to size between the 30-foot sections, at the start and end of curved sections and where curbs abut existing concrete paving, fixed structures or appurtenances. Protect the top edge of the joint filler during concrete placement with a temporary cap and remove after concrete has been placed.

- C. Reinforcement Placement: Reinforce curbs as indicated on the Contract Drawings. Maintain a minimum 3" cover on all reinforcing bars.

- D. Concrete Placement: Do not place concrete until line and grade of subgrade and forms have been verified. Moisten subgrade as required to a uniform dampened condition at the time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around structures until these items are brought to the required grade and alignment. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between joints.

- E. Concrete Consolidation: Consolidate concrete by spading, rodding, forking or using an approved vibrator eliminating all air pockets, stone pockets and honeycombing. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocation of dowels and joints.

- F. Remove forms and rub exposed curb smooth. Plastering is not permitted.

- G. Control Joints: Saw cut control joints at 15' O.C.

- H. Concrete Curing: Cover and cure newly poured concrete curbs for a minimum of seven days in accordance with ACI 301.

- I. Joint Sealant Installation: Remove temporary joint filler cap and install joint sealant per the manufacturer's recommendations.

3.04 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Repairs and Protection of Concrete Curbing

1. Repair or replace broken or defective concrete curbing as directed by the Architect.
2. Protect concrete curbing from damage until acceptance of the curb construction.

END OF SECTION 321613

THIS PAGE HAS INTENTIONALLY BEEN LEFT BLANK

SECTION 321723 - PAVEMENT MARKINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Traffic line paint
- B. Application of traffic striping and control markings

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 321216 – Asphalt Paving
- B. Section 321313 – Concrete Paving

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with the General Requirements of Division 01.
- B. Product Data - Submit manufacturer's name, specifications and installation instructions for each item specified.
- C. Shop Drawings - Submit drawings and diagrams indicating stripe width of roadway divider stripes and parking stalls, configurations and dimensions of directional arrows, style and size of lettering, configuration and dimensions of international handicapped symbol, and any other traffic control markings on pavement as indicated on the Contract Documents.
- D. Quality Control Submittals
  - 1. Qualifications Certification - Submit written certification or similar documentation signed by the applicable subcontractor, prime contractor and/or manufacturer (where applicable) indicating compliance with the requirements of this specification.
  - 2. Experience Listing - Submit a list of completed projects using the products proposed for this project, including owner's contact information and telephone number for each project.
- E. Closeout Procedures - Comply with the requirements of Section 017700.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Design Requirements: Comply with the applicable requirements of New York State Department of Transportation Standard Specification, Section 640 and the "National Manual on Traffic Control Devices" – 2003 Edition and the New York State Supplement.
- B. Regulatory Requirements - Obtain written permission from applicable agencies prior to the start of construction. Submit one copy of the permit as specified in "Submittals-Quality Control Submittals" above.

1.05 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Proceed with and complete traffic marking installation as rapidly as portions of the site become available, working within seasonal limitations for the work required.
- B. Perform painting operations after working hours, on weekends or at such time so as not to interfere with the flow of traffic. Provide temporary barriers to prevent vehicles from driving over newly painted areas.

- C. Apply paint on dry pavement surface when the air temperature is above 40 degrees F.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Paint - Utilize paint as indicated in New York State Department of Transportation Standard Specification, 640-2.
1. White lines shall be used to delineate the separation the traffic flows in the same direction including channelizing lines, stop lines and cross walk lines.
  2. Yellow lines shall be used to delineate the separation of flows in opposing directions such as center lines on two-way roads.
  3. Yellow lines shall be used to delineate parking space limit lines including lines in no parking areas and associated word and symbol markings.
  4. Blue lines shall be used to delineate handicapped parking lines, international symbols and adjacent "no parking" side aisles.
- B. Acceptable Products - Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. "Setfast Acrylic Latex Traffic Paint" as manufactured by Sherwin Williams, Co., Cleveland, OH (Tel. #216-566-2902).
  2. "Waterborne Hydrophast Traffic Paint" as manufactured by Franklin Paint Company, Inc., Franklin, MA (Tel. #508-528-0303).
  3. "Traffic and Zone Marking Paint" as manufactured by PPG Porter Paints, Pittsburgh, PA (Tel. #1-800-332-6270).

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Installer Verification of Conditions - Examine conditions under which pavement markings are to be installed with materials and components specified. Affected Prime Contractors, the Owner's Representative and the Architect shall be notified in writing of conditions detrimental to proper and timely installation of work. When installer confirms conditions as being acceptable to ensure proper and timely installation of work and to ensure requirements of applicable warranties or guarantees can be satisfied, submit written confirmation to Architect. Failure to submit written confirmation and subsequent installation will be assumed to indicate conditions are acceptable to the installer.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Remove dust, dirt and other foreign material detrimental to paint adhesion.
- B. Mark layout of stripes and lines with chalk or paint.

### 3.03 APPLYING PAVEMENT MARKINGS

- A. Apply paint in accordance with NYSDOT Standard Specification Section 640 - 3.02.
- B. Do not apply pavement marking paint until layout, colors and placement have been verified with the Owner, Owner's Representative and the Architect.



- C. Allow paving to cure for 30 days prior to starting pavement marking.
- D. Sweep and clean surfaces to eliminate loose material and dust prior to applying pavement markings.
- E. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings of dimensions indicated with uniform, straight edges. Apply at the Manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils.
- F. At completion of pavement marking applications, the Contractor shall check all work thoroughly and shall touchup traffic control and parking stall markings that are not distinct or thorough in coverage or are not uniform in color.

3.04 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Repairs and Protection of Pavement Markings

- 1. Repair defective pavement markings as directed by the Architect.
- 2. Protect pavement markings from damage until acceptance of installation work.

END OF SECTION 321723

THIS PAGE HAS INTENTIONALLY BEEN LEFT BLANK

SECTION 323113 - CHAIN LINK FENCES AND GATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Excavation for fence post bases
- B. Concrete anchorage for posts
- C. Installation of chain link fences
- D. Installation of chain link gates

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 321216 – Asphalt Paving
- B. Section 321313 – Concrete Paving

1.03 REFERENCES

- A. Comply with ASTM A 53 for requirements of Schedule 40 piping.

1.04 DEFINITIONS

- A. Height of Fence: Distance measured from the top of the concrete footing to the top of the fabric.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with the requirements of Section 013300 – Submittal Procedures and as modified below.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's name, specifications and installation instructions for each item specified.
- C. Shop Drawings: Complete detailed drawings for each height and style of fence and gate required. Include separate schedule for each, listing all materials required and technical data such as size, weight and finish to ensure conformance to the specifications.
- D. Quality Control Submittals
  - 1. Qualifications Certification: Submit written certification or similar documentation signed by the applicable subcontractor, prime contractor and/or manufacturer (where applicable) indicating compliance with the "Qualifications" requirements specified below in the "Quality Assurance" section of this specification.
  - 2. Experience Listing: Submit a list of completed projects using the products proposed for this project, including owner's contact information and telephone number for each project, demonstrating compliance with applicable "Qualifications" requirements specified in the "Quality Assurance" section of this specification.
- E. Closeout Procedures: Comply with the requirements of Section 017700.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with the standards of the Chain Link Fence Manufacturer's Institute, including (unless otherwise indicated):

1. Specification for Metallic Coated Steel Chain Link Fence Fabric
2. Industrial Steel Specification for Fence Rails, Posts, Gates and Accessories
3. ASTM F-567 - Standard Practice for Installation of Chain Link Fence for installation unless otherwise indicated on the Contract Documents.

B. Qualifications

1. Provide metal fences and gates as a complete unit produced by a single manufacturer, including necessary erection accessories, fitting and fasteners. Products shall be provided by a company specializing in commercial quality chain link fencing with at least five years experience.

C. Regulatory Requirements

1. Obtain written permission from applicable agencies prior to the start of construction. Submit one copy of the permit as specified in "Submittals-Quality Control Submittals" above.

1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Establish and maintain required lines and elevations for grade control.

1.08 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Proceed with and complete chain link fence and gate installation as rapidly as portions of the site become available, working within seasonal limitations for the work required.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Framework Standards

1. Steel Pipe: Cold rolled steel pipe meeting the requirements of ASTM A-569 with a minimum yield strength of 50,000 psi.
2. Interior Coating: In line applied zinc rich coating with zinc powder loading of a minimum 90% by weight applied after fabrication conforming to ASTM B 6 high grade and Special High Grade Zinc.
3. Exterior Coatings
  - a. Base Coat: Minimum .9 ounces zinc per square foot.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Minimum 15 microgram chromate conversion per square inch.
  - c. Top Coat: Minimum 0.3 mil cross link polyurethane acrylic exterior coating.
  - d. PVC exterior coating: Fusion bonded polyvinyl chloride similar to Brighton Colorbond Fence System by Merchant Metals, Brighton, Michigan. Color to be black unless specifically noted otherwise on the Contract Documents.
4. Size of Pipe: As indicated.
5. Similar to SS-40 Pipe with Flo-Coat by Allied Tube and Conduit Corporation, Harvey, Illinois.

- B. Framework and Footings for Fences Up To 6'-0" High
  - a. End Posts, Corner Posts and Pull Posts.
    - a. Pipe: 2.50" O.D.
    - b. Set pull posts at the midway point of all lines 500 feet or longer and at all changes of direction or grade of 15 degrees or more. Place pull posts at each radius point within the curved line where the internal angle is 30 degrees or more.
    - c. Footing Size: No footing.
  - b. Line Posts
    - a. Pipe: 2.00" O.D.
    - b. Space line posts at a maximum of 10 feet on center unless specifically noted otherwise on the contract documents.
    - c. Footing Size: No footing.
- C. Framework and Footings for Fences 7'-0" To 9'-0" High
  - a. End Posts, Corner Posts, Pull Posts and Line Posts (All Posts).
    - a. Pipe: 3.00" O.D.
    - b. Set pull posts at the midway point of all lines 500 feet or longer and at all changes of direction or grade of 15 degrees or more. Place pull posts at each radius point within the curved line where the internal angle is 30 degrees or more.
    - c. Footing Size: No footing.
- D. Framework and Footings for Fences 10'-0" To 12'-0" High
  - a. End Posts, Corner Posts and Pull Posts.
    - a. Pipe: 4.00" O.D.
    - b. Set pull posts at the midway point of all lines 500 feet or longer and at all changes of direction or grade of 15 degrees or more. Place pull posts at each radius point within the curved line where the internal angle is 30 degrees or more.
    - c. Footing Size: No footing.
  - b. Line Posts
    - a. Pipe: 3.00" O.D.
    - b. Space line posts at a maximum of 10 feet on center unless specifically noted otherwise on the contract documents.
    - c. Footing Size: No footing.
- E. Framework and Footings for Fences Over 12'-0" High
  - a. End Posts, Corner Posts and Pull Posts.
    - a. Pipe: 4.00" O.D. unless specifically noted otherwise on the Contract Documents.
    - b. Set pull posts at the midway point of all lines 500 feet or longer and at all changes of direction or grade of 15 degrees or more. Place pull posts at each

- radius point within the curved line where the internal angle is 30 degrees or more.
- c. Footing Size: No footing.
- b. Line Posts
  - a. Pipe: 4.00" O.D.
  - b. Space line posts at a maximum of 10 feet on center unless specifically noted otherwise on the contract documents.
  - c. Footing Size: No footing.
- F. Post Brace: Provide manufacturer's standard adjustable brace at gate posts and at both sides of corner and pull posts, with a horizontal brace located at the mid-height of the fabric. Unless otherwise specified, provide PVC coating to match color of adjacent fence components.
- G. Top Intermediate and Bottom Rails
  - a. 1.66" O.D. pipe, weighing 1.84 pounds per linear foot. Install rails in the manufacturer's longest lengths utilizing expansion couplings, approximately 6" long at each joint. Provide means for attaching the top rail securely to each gate post, corner post, pull post and end post.
    - a. Provide bottom rail for all fences.
    - b. Unless otherwise specified, provide PVC coating to match color of adjacent fence components.
- H. Swing Gate Posts
  - 1. Single leaf of gate up to 6' wide and less than 10' in height: 2.875" O.D. pipe, 5.79 pounds per linear foot.
  - 2. Single leaf of gate 6' to 12' wide or over 10' in height: 4.00" O.D. pipe, 9.11 pounds per linear foot.
  - 3. Single leaf of gate 12' to 18' wide: 6.625" O.D. pipe, 18.97 pounds per linear foot.
  - 4. Single leaf of gate over 18' wide and less than 10' in height: 8.625" O.D. pipe, 24.70 pounds per linear foot.
- I. Swing Gate Framework
  - 1. Up to 6'-0" high and leaf width of 8'-0" or less: 1.660" O.D. pipe, 2.27 pounds per linear foot.
  - 2. 6'-0" to 12'-0" height or leaf width exceeding 8'-0": 1.90" O.D. pipe, 2.72 pounds per linear foot.
  - 3. 12'-1" to 20'-0" height: 2.375" O.D. pipe, 3.65 pounds per linear foot.
  - 4. Assemble gate frames by welding. Install mid-height horizontal rails on gates over 10'-0" in height. When the width of a gate leaf exceeds 10'-0", install mid-distance vertical bracing of the same size and weight as frame members. When either horizontal or vertical bracing is not required, provide truss rods as cross bracing to prevent sag or twist.
- J. Swing Gate Hardware
  - 1. Hinges: Non-lift type, offset to permit 180 degree swing and of a suitable size and weight to support the gate. Provide 1½ pair of hinges for each leaf over 6' high.

2. Latch: Heavy, industrial type latch complying with ICC A117.1 with padlock eye for single gates 10 feet wide or less. Drop bar type with keeper for double gates and single gates over 10 feet wide complete with flush plate set in concrete. Drop bar length shall be 2/3 the height of the gate. A padlock eye shall be an integral part of the latch construction.
3. Holdbacks for Vehicular Gates: Type which automatically engages the gate leaf and holds the gate in the open position until manually released.
4. Unless otherwise specified, provide PVC coating to match color of adjacent fence components.

K. Chain Link Fabric

1. PVC Coated Fabric: Unless otherwise specified, provide 2" mesh, 9 gauge steel wires, with one piece fabric widths for fencing up to 12 feet high. The PVC coating is to be fused and adhered to galvanized wire in accordance with Federal Specification RR-F-191 H/ID, ASTM F-668 Class 2B, and ASTM F934. Coating thickness to be 7 mils.
  - a. Softball and Baseball Backstops: 9 gauge, 2" mesh fabric roof system with 6 gauge, 2" mesh wire back and sides.
  - b. Manufacturer: Brighton Colorbond Fence System by Merchant Metals, Brighton, Michigan or similar.
  - c. Color to be black unless specifically noted otherwise on the Contract Documents.
2. Selvages: Top and bottom selvages to be knuckled unless specifically noted otherwise on the Contract Documents.

L. Post Caps:

1. Weather tight closure cap, one cap per post.
2. Furnish caps with openings to permit passage of rail.
3. Fasteners: Tamper resistant cadmium plated steel screws.
4. PVC Coated: Complying with the requirements of Brighton Colorbond Fence System by Merchant Metals, Brighton, Michigan.

M. Stretcher Bars: One piece equal to the full length of the fabric, minimum cross section 3/16" by 3/4". Unless otherwise specified, provide PVC coating to match color of adjacent fence components.

N. Metal Bands (for securing stretcher bars): Steel, wrought iron or malleable iron. Unless otherwise specified, provide PVC coating to match color of adjacent fence components.

O. Hardware: Self-locking bands, tie wires and similar accessories. All hardware ends to pipe rails and other fence components must be of solid construction that prevents access to wasps and similar insects.

1. PVC Coated Hardware: Complying with the requirements of Brighton Colorbond Fence System by Merchant Metals, Brighton, Michigan to match color of adjacent fence components.

P. Wire Ties: PVC finish complying with ASTM A809, 0.40 ounces per square foot.

1. For tying fabric to line posts, rails, and braces: 9-gauge steel wire installed at 12" O.C.

- Q. Truss Rods: 3/8" diameter. Unless otherwise specified, provide PVC coating to match color of adjacent fence components.
- R. Bolts and Nuts: ASTM A 307, Grade A. Unless otherwise specified, provide PVC coating to match color of adjacent fence components.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Installer Verification of Conditions: Examine conditions under which chain link fences and gates are to be constructed with the materials and components specified in this section. Affected Prime Contractors, the Owner's Representative and the Architect shall be notified in writing of any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely installation of the work.
  - 1. When the Installer confirms conditions as being acceptable to ensure proper and timely installation of the work and to ensure requirements of applicable warranties or guarantees can be satisfied, submit written confirmation to the Project Designer. Failure to submit written confirmation and subsequent installation will be assumed to indicate conditions are acceptable to the Installer.

#### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clear and grub plant material along the fence line as required to eliminate growth interfering with the fence alignment. Remove all debris from the project property.
- B. Do not begin installation of the fence until finish grading in area has been completed.

#### 3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Space posts equidistant in the fence line at a maximum of 10 feet on center unless specifically noted otherwise on the Contract Documents.
- B. Setting Post in Earth: Drive fence posts 48" minimum into grade. Posts shall be plumb and properly aligned with adjacent posts.
- C. Setting Posts in Rock: Drill holes into solid rock one inch wider than the post diameter, 18" deep for end, pull, corner and gate posts and 12" deep for line posts. Set posts into holes and fill annular space with shrink resistant grout.
- D. Located corner posts at corners and at changes in direction. Use pull posts at all abrupt changes in grade and at intervals no greater than 500 feet. On runs over 500 feet, space pull posts evenly between corner or end posts. On long curves, space pull posts so that the strain of the fence will not bend line posts.
- E. Install top rail continuously through post tops or extension arms, bending to radius for curved runs. Install expansion couplings as recommended by the fencing manufacturer.
- F. Install bottom and intermediate rails in one piece between posts and flush with the post on the fabric side using special offset fittings where necessary.



- G. Brace corner posts, pull posts, end posts and gate posts to adjacent line posts with horizontal rails.
- H. **Contractor shall inspect all fencing framework both existing and new and ensure all horizontal rails, caps, and hardware are properly aligned and in place prior to installing new fence fabric. Contractor shall provide all missing fence components and replace any damaged fence components incapable of functioning as intended.**
- I. Diagonally brace corner posts, pull posts, end posts and gate posts to adjacent line posts with truss rods and turnbuckles.
- J. Attach the fabric to the active playfield or security side of the fence. Maintain a 1-inch clearance above the finished grade except where indicated otherwise. Thread stretcher bars through the fabric using one bar for each gate and end post and two for each corner and pull post. Pull fabric tight so that the maximum deflection of the fabric is 2 inches when a 30-pound pull is exerted perpendicular to the center of a panel. Maintain tension by securing stretcher bars to posts with metal bands spaced at 15" O.C. Fasten fabric to steel framework with wire ties spaced 12" O.C. for line posts and 24" O.C. for rails and braces. Bend back wire ends to prevent injury. Tighten stretcher bar bands, wire ties and other fasteners securely.
  - 1. When the fabric height exceeds 12', overlap horizontal splices 6" at the intermediate rail and secure with wire ties spaced at 12" O.C.
- K. Position bolts for securing metal bands and hardware so nuts are located opposite the fabric side of the fence. Tighten nuts and cut off excess threads so no more than 1/8" is exposed. Peen ends to prevent loosening or removal of nuts. Secure post tops and extension arms with tamper resistant screws.
- L. Install gates plumb and level and adjust for full opening without interference. Install ground set items in concrete for anchorage as recommended by the fence manufacturer. Adjust hardware for smooth operation and lubricate where necessary. Install gate latch at 36" above finish grade to comply with ICC A117.1.
- M. Wire brush and repair welded and abraded areas with one coat of cold galvanizing compound.
- N. Restore disturbed ground areas to their original condition. Topsoil and seed to match adjacent areas.

### 3.04 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repairs and Protection of chain link fences and gates.
  - 1. Repair or replace broken or defective chain link fences and gates as directed by the Architect.
  - 2. Protect chain link fences and gates from damage until acceptance of the fencing construction.

END OF SECTION 323113

SECTION 329200 - TURF AND GRASSES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Subsoil preparation
- B. Placement of topsoil
- C. Seeding and application of soil amendments and fertilizers
- D. Mulching
- E. Protection of seeded areas
- F. Turf maintenance during warranty period
- G. Cleanup and protection
- H. Inspections and final acceptance

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 312000 – Earth Moving

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with the requirements of Section 013300 – Submittal Procedures and as modified below.

- B. Quality Control Submittals

- 1. Experience Listing: Submit a list of completed projects including owner's contact information and telephone number for each project, demonstrating compliance with applicable "Qualifications" requirements specified in the "Quality Assurance" section of this specification.
- 2. Topsoil Analysis Report: Submit topsoil analysis report for on-site stockpiled or imported topsoil. Do not mix or utilize topsoil until a soil analysis report is approved by the Architect.

- a. Provide required representative samples of topsoil and organic or inorganic amendment materials proposed for use in the project to the independent testing agency noted below for analysis and recommended treatment. The Contractor shall pay for all costs incurred for testing and analysis of the soil material. Test reports shall be from current year.

- (1) All soil samples and proposed amendments shall be sent to the Owner's Testing Agent:

Turf & Soil Diagnostics - NY, Inc.  
35 King Street  
Trumansburg, New York 14886  
Telephone Number: 607-387-5694

- b. All reports shall be sent to the Architect for approval.
- c. Samples of imported topsoil to be brought to the site must be approved prior to delivery.
- d. Deficiencies in the topsoil shall be corrected by the Contractor, as directed by the Architect, after review of the testing agency report.
- e. Ensure test reports include specific recommendations regarding exact types, times and rates of application of soil additives and fertilizers based upon soil

test results and type of seed mix to be planted. Follow soil additive recommendations before and during topsoil respread operations. Include the following in the topsoil analysis:

- (1) pH factor
  - (2) Percent organic matter as determined by a Loss on Ignition or Walkey/Black Test (ASTM F-1647.
  - (3) Proctor testing per ASTM D698.
  - (4) Chemical analysis testing nitrogen, phosphorus, potassium, calcium, magnesium, cation exchange capacity, base saturation percentages, micronutrients and acidity (pH).
  - (5) Particle size analysis of the topsoil as determined by ASTM F-1632, performed and compared to the USDA Soil Classification System.
- f. Include in the recommendations the type, composition, rate and means of application of soil amendments and fertilizer necessary to establish the required pH factor, organic matter content and supply of nutrients satisfactory for planting.
- g. All materials and procedures regarding soil amendments and fertilizers specified in this section are approximate; adjust all soil amendments to comply with the test reports.
3. Submit seed vendor's certified statement for each grass seed mixture required, stating botanical and common name, percentage by weight, and percentages of purity, germination, and weed seed for each grass seed species.

C. Contract Closeout Submittals: Comply with the requirements of Section 017700.

#### 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Worker's Qualifications: The person's performing turf grass related installations and supporting work and their direct supervisor shall be personally experienced in the construction and caring of lawn areas. On site supervisory personnel shall have been employed by the company engaged in the installation and care of lawn areas for a minimum of five years. All other individuals on the landscape crew must have a minimum of six months experience in the landscape contracting industry.

#### 1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Packing and Shipping: Ship seed and associated materials with certificates of inspection required by governing authorities.
- B. Do not make substitutions. If specified seed material is not obtainable, submit to the Architect proof of non-availability and a proposal for use of equivalent material.
- C. Store all seed at the site in a cool, dry place as approved by the Owner's Representative. Replace any seed damaged during storage.
- D. Deliver seed in vendor's unopened packages bearing labels showing the vendor's name and seed analysis by weight.
- E. Deliver fertilizer in the manufacturer's standard sized bags showing the weight, analysis, and manufacturer's name. Store all fertilizer under a waterproof cover or in a dry place as approved by the Owner's Representative.

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Water: If available on the site, water will be supplied for the purpose of watering newly planted lawn areas at no cost to the contractor. If water is not available on site, the contractor shall supply water at their own cost as required to maintain the health of the newly planted material.
- B. Provide irrigation materials capable of adequately watering new lawn areas until acceptance.

1.07 PESTICIDE APPLICATIONS

- A. Any contractor applying pesticides must notify the Owner's designated pesticide representative and all property neighbors not less than 48 hours in advance of any pesticide application including herbicides, insecticides and fungicides in accordance State Regulations and the School Pesticide Neighbor Notification Law, Section 409-H of the New York State Education Law and Commissioner's Regulation 155.24.

1.08 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Proceed with and complete lawn planting as rapidly as portions of the site become available, working within seasonal limitations for the work required.
- B. Seed lawn areas during a period between August 15 and October 1. Seeding during unseasonable conditions must be reviewed and approved with the Architect at the sole risk of Contractor.
- C. The Contractor shall complete a minimum of three mowings before requesting the Architect review for acceptance of seeding work.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 SEED

- A. Grass seed shall be certified "Blue Tag" seed composed of a blend of varieties mixed in proportion by weight and tested for minimum percentages of purity and germination. Submit the proposed mixture to the Architect for approval.
  - 1. Fall Seeding: Seed blend shall consist of 100% Kentucky Bluegrass on a weight basis. The seed shall be a blend of at least three Kentucky Bluegrass varieties of which no less than 60% of the seed shall be at least two of the following cultivars; Rambo, Princeton-105, Wildwood, Allure, Coventry, Champagne, Northstar, Cardiff, Nimbus, Raven, SR2100, Misty, America, Brilliant, Limousine, Conni, Liberator, Apollo, NuGlade, Total Eclipse, Unique, Impact, Midnight, Arcadia and Serene.
  - 2. Spring Seeding (If approved by the Project Designer): Seed blend shall consist of 80% Kentucky Bluegrass and 20% Perennial Ryegrass on a weight basis. The seed shall be a blend of at least two Kentucky Bluegrass varieties of which no less than 60% of the seed shall be at least two of the following cultivars; Rambo, Princeton-105, Wildwood, Allure, Coventry, Champagne, Northstar, Cardiff, Nimbus, Raven, SR2100, Misty, America, Brilliant, Limousine, Conni, Liberator, Apollo, NuGlade, Total Eclipse, Unique, Impact, Midnight, Arcadia and Serene. The Perennial Ryegrass may be any one of the following cultivars; Palmer III, Calypso II, Brightstar II, Secretariat, Monterey, Catalina, Pennant II, Premier II, Sonata,

Sunshine and Ascend. The Perennial Ryegrass shall have a minimum germination percentage of 85%. The percentage of weed seed shall not exceed 1% and other crop seed shall not exceed 0.5% by weight of the mixture. Any variety substitutions or deviations from these specifications must be approved by the Architect.

## 2.02 TOPSOIL

- A. Use either approved topsoil imported to the project site or approved on-site topsoil stripped, stockpiled and amended to meet the required specifications.
1. On-site topsoil shall be from existing stockpiles stripped from the project site and approved by the Architect.
  2. Where quantity of topsoil required exceeds that available from on-site stockpiles, provide imported topsoil from local sources or from areas having similar soil characteristics to that found on the project site which are producing or have produced fair to good yield farm crops without unusual fertilization for a minimum period of ten years or from arable or cultivable areas supplied with good natural drainage. Do not obtain topsoil from bogs or marshes or from farmland that has utilized "Atrazine" or similar herbicide within the past five years.
- B. Provide topsoil conforming to the following:
1. Original loam topsoil, well drained homogeneous texture and of uniform grade, without the admixture of subsoil material and entirely free of dense material, hardpan, sod, or any other objectionable foreign material.
  2. Containing not less than four percent nor more than 20 percent organic matter in that portion of a sample passing a ¼" sieve when determined by the wet combustion method on a sample dried at 105 degrees F.
  3. Containing a pH value within the range of 6.3 and 7.0 on that portion of the sample which passes a ¼" sieve.
  4. On-site and imported topsoil shall be mechanically screened prior to resspreading to comply with the following gradation:

SIEVE DESIGNATION	PERCENT PASSING
¾ inch	100
¼ inch	97 – 100
No. 200	20 - 65

## 2.03 FERTILIZER

- A. Mixed commercial fertilizers containing total nitrogen, available phosphoric acid and soluble potash in the ratio of 10-6-4 (50% N/UF). 50% of the total nitrogen shall be derived from a urea form furnishing a minimum of 3.5% water insoluble nitrogen (3.5% WIN). The balance of the nitrogen shall be present as methylene urea, water soluble urea, nitrate and ammoniacal compounds.

## 2.04 LIME

- A. Dolomitic Limestone: Approved agricultural dolomitic limestone containing no less than 50% of total carbonates and 25% total magnesium with a neutralizing value of at least

100%. The material shall be ground to such a fineness that 40% will pass through a number 100 U.S. standard sieve, and 98% will pass through a number 20 U.S. standard sieve. The lime shall be uniform in composition, dry and free flowing and shall be delivered to the site in the original, unopened containers, each bearing the manufacturer's guaranteed analysis. Any lime which becomes caked or otherwise damaged making it unsuitable for use will be rejected.

- B. Calcitic Limestone: Approved agricultural calcitic limestone containing a minimum of 86% calcium carbonate expressed as  $\text{CaCO}_3$ . The material shall be ground to such a fineness that 40% will pass through a number 100 U.S. standard sieve, and 98% will pass through a number 20 U.S. standard sieve. The lime shall be uniform in composition, dry and free flowing and shall be delivered to the site in the original, unopened containers, each bearing the manufacturer's guaranteed analysis. Any lime which becomes caked or otherwise damaged making it unsuitable for use will be rejected.

## 2.05 MULCH

- A. Dry Application Straw: Stalks of oats, wheat, rye or other approved crops which are free from noxious weeds. Weight shall be based on 15% moisture.
- B. Hydro-Application: Colored wood cellulose fiber product specifically designed for use as a hydro-mechanical applied mulch.
  - 1. For convenience, details and specifications have been based on the following manufacturers and their products:
    - a. Conwed Hydro Mulch as manufactured by Conwed Fibers, Hickory NC.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Installer Verification of Conditions: Examine conditions under which lawn installation is to be completed with the materials and components specified in this section. Affected Prime Contractors, the Owner's Representative and the Architect shall be notified in writing of any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely installation of the work.
  - 1. When the Installer confirms conditions as being acceptable, to ensure proper and timely installation of the work and to ensure requirements of applicable warranties or guarantees can be satisfied, submit written confirmation to the Architect. Failure to submit written confirmation and subsequent installation will be assumed to indicate conditions are acceptable to the Installer.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Strip and stockpile full depth of existing topsoil. Screen topsoil to comply with gradation specifications prior to respread of the material.
- B. Perform earthwork operations to accomplish design elevations as indicated on the Contract Documents. Loosen subgrade of lawn areas to a minimum depth of four inches. Remove stone and any other deleterious matter encountered over 1½" in any dimension within the subgrade.

- C. Respread screened topsoil in general lawn areas (non-playfield areas) to a minimum depth of FOUR inches as required to meet lines, grades, and elevations shown after light rolling and settlement.
- D. Provide lime or sulfur as required to adjust pH of the screened topsoil to be 6.3 to 7.0. Apply lime or sulfur materials at a rate of 80 pounds per 1000 square feet (final application rate to be determined by the soil test report). Cultivate soil amendments to a four-inch depth.
- E. Grade lawn areas to a smooth even surface with loose, uniformly fine texture. Roll, rake, remove ridges and fill depressions as required to meet finish grades. Limit fine grading operations to areas which can be planted immediately after grading.
- F. Moisten prepared lawn areas before seeding if soil is dry. Water thoroughly and allow surface moisture to dry before planting lawns. Do not create a muddy soil condition.
- G. Restore lawn areas to specified condition if eroded or otherwise disturbed after fine grading and prior to seeding.
- H. Preparation of Unchanged Grades: Where lawns are to be seeded in areas that have not been altered or disturbed by excavating, grading, or stripping operations, prepare the soil bed for lawn planting as follows:
  - 1. Prior to preparation of unchanged grades, remove existing grass, vegetation and turf. Dispose of such material outside of the Owner's property; do not turn over into the soil being prepared for lawns unless specifically indicated to do so on the Contract Drawings.
  - 2. Till soil to a depth of not less than six inches.
  - 3. Apply soil amendments and initial fertilizers as recommended.
  - 4. Remove high areas and fill in depressions.
  - 5. Till soil to a homogeneous mixture of fine texture, free of lumps, clods, stones, roots and other extraneous matter.

### 3.03 SEEDING

- A. Do not use wet seed or seed which is moldy or otherwise damaged in transit or storage.
- B. Application Rate: Six pounds of seed per 1000 square feet.
- C. Dry Mechanical Application of Seed: Sow seed with Brillion seeder with notched rollers in three passes, second pass at 90 degrees to the first and the third at 45 degrees to the second. Sow at a rate of two pounds per 1000 square feet for each pass for a total of six pounds per thousand square feet. Incorporate the seed into the upper one inch of the prepared soil bed and water with a fine spray.
- D. Hydroseeding
  - 1. Apply seeding material with an approved hydroseeder.
  - 2. Fill tank with water and agitate while adding seeding materials. Use sufficient fertilizer, mulch and seed to obtain the specified application rate. Maintain constant agitation to keep the contents in a homogeneous suspension. Prolonged delays in application or agitation that may cause injury to the seed will be the basis for rejection of the material remaining in the tank.
  - 3. Distribute uniformly a slurry mixture of water, seed, fertilizer and mulch at a minimum rate of 57 gallons per 1000 square feet. (2500 gallons per acre). The

Owner's Representative may order the amount of water increased if distribution of seeding materials is not uniform.

3.04 MULCHING

- A. Dry Application: Immediately following seeding operations cover seeded areas with a uniform blanket of shredded straw mulch mechanically blown at a rate of 100 pounds per 1000 square feet of seeded area.
- B. Hydro Application: Apply approved mulch in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions and recommended rates of application.

3.05 PROTECTION OF SEEDED AREAS

- A. Where grade is less than 3:1, mechanically spread mulch material and crimp into soil utilizing approved disc type machinery with rows at a 6" spacing.
- B. Where grade is 3:1 or greater, cover seeded areas with jute matting and roll matting down over the slopes without stretching or pulling.
  - 1. Lay the jute matting smoothly on the soil surface, burying the top end of each section in a narrow six-inch trench. Leave a 12-inch overlap from the top roll over the bottom roll. Leave a four-inch overlap over the adjacent section.
  - 2. Staple outside edges and overlaps at 36-inch intervals.
  - 3. Lightly dress slopes with topsoil to ensure close contact between the matting and the soil layer below.
  - 4. In ditches, unroll matting in the direction of flow. Overlap ends of strips six inches with the upstream section on the top.

3.06 MAINTENANCE

- A. Begin maintenance immediately after seeding. If seeded in the fall, continue maintenance the following spring until acceptable lawn conditions are established.
- B. Water to ensure proper seed germination and to keep the surface of the seed bed damp. Continue watering new seeding until acceptance by the Owner. Apply water slowly so that the surface of the soil will not puddle or crust.
- C. Cut grass for the first time when it reaches a height of 2½" and maintain a minimum height of 2". Do not cut more than 1/3 of the blade at any one mowing. Remove clippings.
- D. Apply herbicide as soon as weeds germinate, during calm weather when the air temperature is above 50 degrees F. using a licensed applicator to apply the herbicide. When using herbicides, apply in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Replant damaged grass areas showing root growth failure, deterioration, bare spots and eroded areas.
- F. Refertilize newly seeded areas 28 days after the initial seeding. Apply a minimum of one pound of nitrogen per 1000 square feet of athletic field area. Use a complete fertilizer with a 2-1-1 ratio or as recommended by soil test results.

3.07 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION



- A. During landscape construction work, keep pavements clean and the project area in an orderly condition.
- B. Protect landscape construction and materials from damage due to landscape operations, operations by other contractors, trades and trespassers. Maintain protection during installation and maintenance periods. Treat, repair or replace damaged landscape construction as directed.

3.08 INSPECTIONS AND FINAL ACCEPTANCE

- A. When seeding work and lawn establishment is completed, (including maintenance), request the Architect to make an inspection to determine acceptability. Final acceptance of lawn areas will be granted when a uniform stand of acceptable grass is obtained with a minimum of 95% coverage.
- B. Where inspected lawn installation does not comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents, repair rejected work. The Contractor's maintenance responsibility shall continue until reinspected by the Architect and found acceptable. Maintenance responsibilities shall include refertilization, overseeding, watering and mowing of seeded areas.

END OF SECTION 329200